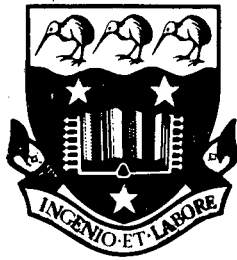


**The  
University  
of  
Auckland**

*Calendar 1991*



**Cover**

Early morning winter sunshine illuminates the façades of Wynyard Street, framed by the carved gateway to the University Marae.

The venerable History building, with its verandah and crenellations, and the tall modern Human Sciences building are typical of the architectural contrasts of the Auckland campus.

Photo: Pamela Russell

# Contents

|  | <i>Page</i> |  | <i>Page</i> |
|--|-------------|--|-------------|
| <b>Introductory Information</b>                    |             | Degree of Bachelor of Science Education .....        | 215         |
| Calendar 1991, 1992 .....                          | 4           | Degree of Master of Science .....                    | 218         |
| The University of Auckland Foundation .....        | 5           | Degree Course Prescriptions .....                    | 222         |
| History of the University .....                    | 5           | Diploma Course Regulations and Prescriptions .....   | 256         |
| <b>General Information</b>                         |             | Diploma in Clinical Psychology .....                 | 256         |
| Calendar Year 1991 .....                           | 9           | Diploma in Computer Science .....                    | 257         |
| Arms of the University .....                       | 15          | Diploma in Mathematics Education .....               | 257         |
| Officers of the University .....                   | 16          | Diploma in Science .....                             | 259         |
| The Council .....                                  | 16          | Diploma in Statistics .....                          | 260         |
| The Senate .....                                   | 17          | Postgraduate Diploma in Science .....                | 260         |
| Deans of Faculties .....                           | 17          | Certificate in the Principles and Practice of        |             |
| Honorary Graduates .....                           | 18          | Radiochemistry .....                                 | 261         |
| Professores Emeriti .....                          | 19          | <i>Faculty of Commerce</i>                           |             |
| Staff of the University (academic) .....           | 20          | Degree of Bachelor of Commerce .....                 | 263         |
| Staff of the University (library) .....            | 50          | Degree of Master of Commerce .....                   | 272         |
| Staff of the University (administration) .....     | 52          | Degree of Master of Business Administration .....    | 274         |
| <b>General Statutes and Regulations</b>            |             | Degree of Master of Taxation Studies .....           | 276         |
| Admission .....                                    | 59          | Degree Course Prescriptions .....                    | 277         |
| Pre-enrolment Application .....                    | 61          | Diploma Course Regulations and Prescriptions .....   | 284         |
| Enrolment and Course (General) .....               | 61          | Diploma in Business .....                            | 284         |
| Limitation of Entry .....                          | 71          | Diploma in Commerce .....                            | 286         |
| Enrolment Limitations .....                        | 71          | <i>Faculty of Law</i>                                |             |
| Enrolment 1991 .....                               | 75          | Degree of Bachelor of Laws .....                     | 288         |
| Enrolment Timetable 1991 .....                     | 75          | Degree of Bachelor of Laws (Hons) .....              | 291         |
| Extramural Enrolment .....                         | 78          | Professional Legal Studies Course .....              | 293         |
| Definitions of Full-Time Study .....               | 79          | Degree of Master of Laws .....                       | 293         |
| Examination .....                                  | 80          | Degree of Master of Jurisprudence .....              | 294         |
| Conferring of Degrees and Academic Dress .....     | 85          | Degree Course Prescriptions .....                    | 295         |
| Award of Honorary Degrees .....                    | 86          | Diploma Course Regulations and                       |             |
| Fees .....   | 86          | Prescriptions .....                                  | 301         |
| Discipline .....                                   | 90          | Diploma in Criminology .....                         | 301         |
| The Library .....                                  | 93          | Postgraduate Diploma in Legal Studies .....          | 301         |
| Preliminary Courses .....                          | 95          | <i>Faculty of Music</i>                              |             |
| <b>Course Regulations and Prescriptions</b>        |             | Degree of Bachelor of Music .....                    | 304         |
| <i>Faculty of Arts</i>                             |             | Degree of Bachelor of Music (Performance) .....      | 306         |
| Degree of Bachelor of Arts .....                   | 98          | Degree of Bachelor of Music (Performance)            |             |
| Degree of Master of Arts .....                     | 131         | with Honours .....                                   | 309         |
| Degree of Master of Education .....                | 137         | Degree of Master of Music .....                      | 310         |
| Degree of Master of Literature .....               | 138         | Degree of Doctor of Music .....                      | 312         |
| Degree Course Prescriptions .....                  | 139         | Degree Course Prescriptions .....                    | 313         |
| Diploma Course Regulations and Prescriptions ..... | 180         | Diploma Course Regulations and Prescriptions .....   | 315         |
| Diploma in Arts .....                              | 180         | Diploma in Music .....                               | 315         |
| Diploma in Broadcast Communication .....           | 180         | Diploma in Music with Honours .....                  | 317         |
| Diploma in Drama .....                             | 181         | Regulations for Course of Instruction in a Single    |             |
| Diploma in Education .....                         | 182         | Instrument .....                                     | 318         |
| Diploma in Educational Psychology .....            | 183         | <i>Faculty of Architecture Property and Planning</i> |             |
| Diploma in English Language Teaching .....         | 184         | Degree of Bachelor of Architecture .....             | 321         |
| Diploma in Guidance and Counselling .....          | 185         | Degree of Master of Architecture .....               | 326         |
| Diploma in Local Government and                    |             | Joint Special Examination NZIA and AERB .....        | 327         |
| Administration .....                               | 185         | Architecture Degree Course Prescriptions .....       | 329         |
| Postgraduate Diploma in Arts .....                 | 187         | Degree of Bachelor of Property Administration .....  | 334         |
| Postgraduate Diploma in Social Research .....      | 187         | Degree of Master of Property Administration .....    | 337         |
| <i>Faculty of Science</i>                          |             | Property Administration Degree Course                |             |
| Degree of Bachelor of Science .....                | 192         | Prescriptions .....                                  | 338         |
| Degree of Bachelor of Science (Hons) .....         | 209         | Degree of Bachelor of Planning .....                 | 340         |
| Degree of Bachelor of Optometry .....              | 212         | Degree of Master of Planning .....                   | 343         |
|  |             | Planning Degree Course Prescriptions .....           | 344         |

|  | <i>Page</i> |  | <i>Page</i> |
|--|-------------|--|-------------|
| <i>Faculty of Engineering</i>                      |             | <i>Inter-Faculty</i>                                       |             |
| Degree of Bachelor of Engineering .....            | 348         | Degree of Master of Philosophy .....                       | 421         |
| Degree of Master of Engineering .....              | 354         | Degree of Doctor of Philosophy .....                       | 421         |
| Degree Course Prescriptions .....                  | 357         | Certificate of Proficiency .....                           | 423         |
| Diploma Course Regulations and Prescriptions ..... | 372         | Transitional Certificate .....                             | 424         |
| Diploma in Geothermal Energy Technology .....      | 372         | Inter-Faculty Studies .....                                | 424         |
| Diploma in Pulp and Paper Technology .....         | 373         | Operations Research .....                                  | 424         |
| Certificate in Geothermal Energy Technology .....  | 374         | Intermediate Courses (Other NZ Universities) .....         | 425         |
| <i>Faculty of Fine Arts</i>                        |             | <i>Continuing Education, Computer Centre</i>               |             |
| Degree of Bachelor of Fine Arts .....              | 376         | Centre for Continuing Education .....                      | 427         |
| Degree of Master of Fine Arts .....                | 378         | Computer Centre .....                                      | 427         |
| Degree Course Prescriptions .....                  | 379         | Computer Systems Regulations .....                         | 428         |
| <i>Faculty of Medicine and Human Biology</i>       |             | <i>General Student and Staff Information</i>               |             |
| Degree of Bachelor of Human Biology .....          | 385         | Student Services .....                                     | 430         |
| Degree of Bachelor of Medicine and                 |             | Halls of Residence .....                                   | 431         |
| Bachelor of Surgery .....                          | 386         | Students' Association .....                                | 434         |
| Degree of Master of Medical Science .....          | 387         | Alumni Association .....                                   | 435         |
| Degree of Master of Audiology .....                | 388         | University Club .....                                      | 435         |
| Degree of Master of Health Sciences .....          | 390         | Lecture & Laboratory Timetables 1991 .....                 | 436         |
| Degree of Master of Public Health .....            | 392         | Lecture Timetable 1991 .....                               | 437         |
| Degree of Doctor of Medicine .....                 | 393         | Laboratory Timetable 1991 .....                            | 458         |
| Degree Course Prescriptions .....                  | 394         | <i>Scholarships, Student Allowances, Awards and Prizes</i> |             |
| Diploma Course Regulations and                     |             | Student Allowances .....                                   | 462         |
| Prescriptions .....                                | 400         | Scholarships and Prizes .....                              | 463         |
| Diploma in Paediatrics .....                       | 400         | National Scholarships 1990 .....                           | 464         |
| Diploma in Gynaecology and Obstetrics .....        | 401         | University of Auckland Scholarships 1990 .....             | 464         |
| Diploma in Obstetrics .....                        | 402         | University of Auckland Prizes 1989 .....                   | 467         |
| <i>Joint Boards of Study</i>                       |             | <i>Legislation</i>   |             |
| Degree of Bachelor of Education .....              | 405         | Legislation .....  | 471         |
| Degree of Bachelor of Theology .....               | 406         | <i>Prescribed Texts</i>                                    |             |
| Degree Course Prescriptions .....                  | 411         | Prescribed Texts .....                                     | 488         |
| <i>Higher Degrees</i>                              |             | Directory .....  | 508         |
| Degree of Doctor of Literature .....               | 416         | Index .....  | 511         |
| Degree of Doctor of Science .....                  | 417         | Campus Map .....   | 516         |
| Degree of Doctor of Laws .....                     | 418         |  |             |
| Degree of Doctor of Engineering .....              | 419         |  |             |

### Official Address:

The correspondence of the University is conducted by the Registrar, and all communications on University matters should be addressed as follows:

The Registrar  
The University of Auckland  
Private Bag, Auckland  
New Zealand

Telegrams and Cables should be addressed as follows:

University Auckland  
Telephone: 737-999  
Facsimile No: 649-732878

## 1991 CALENDAR

| JANUARY |    |    |    |    |    |    | FEBRUARY |    |    |    |    |    |    | MARCH     |    |    |    |    |    |    |
|---------|----|----|----|----|----|----|----------|----|----|----|----|----|----|-----------|----|----|----|----|----|----|
| M       | T  | W  | T  | F  | S  | S  | M        | T  | W  | T  | F  | S  | S  | M         | T  | W  | T  | F  | S  | S  |
|         | 1  | 2  | 3  | 4  | 5  | 6  |          |    |    |    | 1  | 2  | 3  |           |    |    |    | 1  | 2  | 3  |
| 7       | 8  | 9  | 10 | 11 | 12 | 13 | 4        | 5  | 6  | 7  | 8  | 9  | 10 | 4         | 5  | 6  | 7  | 8  | 9  | 10 |
| 14      | 15 | 16 | 17 | 18 | 19 | 20 | 11       | 12 | 13 | 14 | 15 | 16 | 17 | 11        | 12 | 13 | 14 | 15 | 16 | 17 |
| 21      | 22 | 23 | 24 | 25 | 26 | 27 | 18       | 19 | 20 | 21 | 22 | 23 | 24 | 18        | 19 | 20 | 21 | 22 | 23 | 24 |
| 28      | 29 | 30 | 31 |    |    |    | 25       | 26 | 27 | 28 |    |    |    | 25        | 26 | 27 | 28 | 29 | 30 | 31 |
| APRIL   |    |    |    |    |    |    | MAY      |    |    |    |    |    |    | JUNE      |    |    |    |    |    |    |
| M       | T  | W  | T  | F  | S  | S  | M        | T  | W  | T  | F  | S  | S  | M         | T  | W  | T  | F  | S  | S  |
| 1       | 2  | 3  | 4  | 5  | 6  | 7  |          |    |    | 1  | 2  | 3  | 4  |           |    |    |    | 1  | 2  |    |
| 8       | 9  | 10 | 11 | 12 | 13 | 14 | 6        | 7  | 8  | 9  | 10 | 11 | 12 | 3         | 4  | 5  | 6  | 7  | 8  | 9  |
| 15      | 16 | 17 | 18 | 19 | 20 | 21 | 13       | 14 | 15 | 16 | 17 | 18 | 19 | 10        | 11 | 12 | 13 | 14 | 15 | 16 |
| 22      | 23 | 24 | 25 | 26 | 27 | 28 | 20       | 21 | 22 | 23 | 24 | 25 | 26 | 17        | 18 | 19 | 20 | 21 | 22 | 23 |
| 29      | 30 |    |    |    |    |    | 27       | 28 | 29 | 30 | 31 |    |    | 24        | 25 | 26 | 27 | 28 | 29 | 30 |
| JULY    |    |    |    |    |    |    | AUGUST   |    |    |    |    |    |    | SEPTEMBER |    |    |    |    |    |    |
| M       | T  | W  | T  | F  | S  | S  | M        | T  | W  | T  | F  | S  | S  | M         | T  | W  | T  | F  | S  | S  |
| 1       | 2  | 3  | 4  | 5  | 6  | 7  |          |    |    | 1  | 2  | 3  | 4  | 30        |    |    |    |    |    | 1  |
| 8       | 9  | 10 | 11 | 12 | 13 | 14 | 5        | 6  | 7  | 8  | 9  | 10 | 11 | 2         | 3  | 4  | 5  | 6  | 7  | 8  |
| 15      | 16 | 17 | 18 | 19 | 20 | 21 | 12       | 13 | 14 | 15 | 16 | 17 | 18 | 9         | 10 | 11 | 12 | 13 | 14 | 15 |
| 22      | 23 | 24 | 25 | 26 | 27 | 28 | 19       | 20 | 21 | 22 | 23 | 24 | 25 | 16        | 17 | 18 | 19 | 20 | 21 | 22 |
| 29      | 30 | 31 |    |    |    |    | 26       | 27 | 28 | 29 | 30 | 31 |    | 23        | 24 | 25 | 26 | 27 | 28 | 29 |
| OCTOBER |    |    |    |    |    |    | NOVEMBER |    |    |    |    |    |    | DECEMBER  |    |    |    |    |    |    |
| M       | T  | W  | T  | F  | S  | S  | M        | T  | W  | T  | F  | S  | S  | M         | T  | W  | T  | F  | S  | S  |
| 1       | 2  | 3  | 4  | 5  | 6  | 7  |          |    |    |    | 1  | 2  | 3  | 30        | 31 |    |    |    |    | 1  |
| 8       | 9  | 10 | 11 | 12 | 13 | 14 | 4        | 5  | 6  | 7  | 8  | 9  | 10 | 2         | 3  | 4  | 5  | 6  | 7  | 8  |
| 15      | 16 | 17 | 18 | 19 | 20 | 21 | 11       | 12 | 13 | 14 | 15 | 16 | 17 | 9         | 10 | 11 | 12 | 13 | 14 | 15 |
| 22      | 23 | 24 | 25 | 26 | 27 | 28 | 18       | 19 | 20 | 21 | 22 | 23 | 24 | 16        | 17 | 18 | 19 | 20 | 21 | 22 |
| 29      | 30 | 31 |    |    |    |    | 25       | 26 | 27 | 28 | 29 | 30 |    | 23        | 24 | 25 | 26 | 27 | 28 | 29 |

## 1992 CALENDAR

| JANUARY |    |    |    |    |    |    | FEBRUARY |    |    |    |    |    |    | MARCH     |    |    |    |    |    |    |
|---------|----|----|----|----|----|----|----------|----|----|----|----|----|----|-----------|----|----|----|----|----|----|
| M       | T  | W  | T  | F  | S  | S  | M        | T  | W  | T  | F  | S  | S  | M         | T  | W  | T  | F  | S  | S  |
|         | 1  | 2  | 3  | 4  | 5  | 6  |          |    |    |    | 1  | 2  | 3  | 30        | 31 |    |    |    |    | 1  |
| 6       | 7  | 8  | 9  | 10 | 11 | 12 | 3        | 4  | 5  | 6  | 7  | 8  | 9  | 2         | 3  | 4  | 5  | 6  | 7  | 8  |
| 13      | 14 | 15 | 16 | 17 | 18 | 19 | 10       | 11 | 12 | 13 | 14 | 15 | 16 | 9         | 10 | 11 | 12 | 13 | 14 | 15 |
| 20      | 21 | 22 | 23 | 24 | 25 | 26 | 17       | 18 | 19 | 20 | 21 | 22 | 23 | 16        | 17 | 18 | 19 | 20 | 21 | 22 |
| 27      | 28 | 29 | 30 | 31 |    |    | 24       | 25 | 26 | 27 | 28 | 29 |    | 23        | 24 | 25 | 26 | 27 | 28 | 29 |
| APRIL   |    |    |    |    |    |    | MAY      |    |    |    |    |    |    | JUNE      |    |    |    |    |    |    |
| M       | T  | W  | T  | F  | S  | S  | M        | T  | W  | T  | F  | S  | S  | M         | T  | W  | T  | F  | S  | S  |
|         | 1  | 2  | 3  | 4  | 5  | 6  |          |    |    |    | 1  | 2  | 3  | 1         | 2  | 3  | 4  | 5  | 6  | 7  |
| 6       | 7  | 8  | 9  | 10 | 11 | 12 | 4        | 5  | 6  | 7  | 8  | 9  | 10 | 8         | 9  | 10 | 11 | 12 | 13 | 14 |
| 13      | 14 | 15 | 16 | 17 | 18 | 19 | 11       | 12 | 13 | 14 | 15 | 16 | 17 | 15        | 16 | 17 | 18 | 19 | 20 | 21 |
| 20      | 21 | 22 | 23 | 24 | 25 | 26 | 18       | 19 | 20 | 21 | 22 | 23 | 24 | 22        | 23 | 24 | 25 | 26 | 27 | 28 |
| 27      | 28 | 29 | 30 |    |    |    | 25       | 26 | 27 | 28 | 29 | 30 | 31 | 29        | 30 |    |    |    |    |    |
| JULY    |    |    |    |    |    |    | AUGUST   |    |    |    |    |    |    | SEPTEMBER |    |    |    |    |    |    |
| M       | T  | W  | T  | F  | S  | S  | M        | T  | W  | T  | F  | S  | S  | M         | T  | W  | T  | F  | S  | S  |
|         | 1  | 2  | 3  | 4  | 5  | 6  | 31       |    |    |    | 1  | 2  | 3  |           |    |    |    | 1  | 2  | 3  |
| 6       | 7  | 8  | 9  | 10 | 11 | 12 | 3        | 4  | 5  | 6  | 7  | 8  | 9  | 7         | 8  | 9  | 10 | 11 | 12 | 13 |
| 13      | 14 | 15 | 16 | 17 | 18 | 19 | 10       | 11 | 12 | 13 | 14 | 15 | 16 | 14        | 15 | 16 | 17 | 18 | 19 | 20 |
| 20      | 21 | 22 | 23 | 24 | 25 | 26 | 17       | 18 | 19 | 20 | 21 | 22 | 23 | 21        | 22 | 23 | 24 | 25 | 26 | 27 |
| 27      | 28 | 29 | 30 | 31 |    |    | 24       | 25 | 26 | 27 | 28 | 29 | 30 | 28        | 29 | 30 |    |    |    |    |
| OCTOBER |    |    |    |    |    |    | NOVEMBER |    |    |    |    |    |    | DECEMBER  |    |    |    |    |    |    |
| M       | T  | W  | T  | F  | S  | S  | M        | T  | W  | T  | F  | S  | S  | M         | T  | W  | T  | F  | S  | S  |
|         | 1  | 2  | 3  | 4  | 5  | 6  | 30       |    |    |    |    | 1  | 2  |           |    |    |    | 1  | 2  | 3  |
| 5       | 6  | 7  | 8  | 9  | 10 | 11 | 2        | 3  | 4  | 5  | 6  | 7  | 8  | 7         | 8  | 9  | 10 | 11 | 12 | 13 |
| 12      | 13 | 14 | 15 | 16 | 17 | 18 | 9        | 10 | 11 | 12 | 13 | 14 | 15 | 14        | 15 | 16 | 17 | 18 | 19 | 20 |
| 19      | 20 | 21 | 22 | 23 | 24 | 25 | 16       | 17 | 18 | 19 | 20 | 21 | 22 | 21        | 22 | 23 | 24 | 25 | 26 | 27 |
| 26      | 27 | 28 | 29 | 30 | 31 |    | 23       | 24 | 25 | 26 | 27 | 28 | 29 | 28        | 29 | 30 | 31 |    |    |    |



## THE UNIVERSITY OF AUCKLAND FOUNDATION

In commemoration of the Centenary of the University, the University of Auckland Foundation is established for the advancement of education in New Zealand in ways which extend the University's ability to meet the higher educational needs of the Community.

The Trustees will apply the income of the foundation from time to time in fulfilling within the University District and elsewhere in New Zealand the purpose for which the Foundation is established:

1. To encourage the transfer and exchange of knowledge among scholars and the dissemination of knowledge among the community.
2. To encourage overseas scholars to visit New Zealand and New Zealand scholars to visit overseas to carry out study and research and to exchange and impart their knowledge and experience.
3. To arrange the movement within New Zealand of resident and visiting scholars.
4. To facilitate those visits and movements of scholars to, from and within New Zealand, assisting to arrange the temporary exchange or occupation of academic posts in New Zealand and (where New Zealand scholars are concerned) overseas.
5. To arrange the giving of lectures and the promotion of educational discussion and debate in New Zealand before invited or public audiences by scholars from both within and without New Zealand and to arrange itineraries and accommodation for the participants; and in encouraging, arranging and facilitating those activities the Trustees may make such grants, pay such fees, cost of travel and accommodation and make such other expenditure as they consider necessary or desirable.

Note: "New Zealand Scholar" means a scholar resident in New Zealand who is pursuing his career here. "Scholar" includes a person engaged in any discipline, in the study or practice of administration and of technology and in the management or custody of libraries.

Donations to the Foundation should be sent to:

The Registrar,  
University of Auckland,  
Private Bag,  
Auckland 1.

A form of legacy for the Foundation, or for the University as a whole, is available on request from the Registrar.

## HISTORY OF THE UNIVERSITY OF AUCKLAND

As early as 1862 an unknown writer, 'J.G.', proposed in *Chapman's New Zealand Monthly Magazine* that a university should be established in Auckland. No one took up the suggestion. In the South Island, where the inhabitants were wealthier and keener on education, a university was established in Otago in 1869 and a college in Canterbury in 1873. In 1870 Parliament passed legislation to create the University of New Zealand as an examining body with affiliated teaching colleges. An Auckland politician, later Speaker of the House of Representatives, Maurice O'Rorke, tried to induce Parliament to place the University in Auckland, but he failed. The University of New Zealand had no fixed abode; its Senate met in the main towns in turn.

The citizens of Auckland did nothing to establish a college, but some so-called 'university' instruction was provided at the Auckland Grammar School. One student, Kate Edger, in 1877 became the first woman to graduate B.A. at a British university.

In 1878 O'Rorke was appointed chairman of a Royal Commission to report on higher education. It recommended that University Colleges should be established at Auckland and Wellington. In 1882 the Auckland University College was set up by Act of Parliament. Thus the College was a creation, not of the citizens and local government, like those in the south, but of the state.

The applicants for the first four chairs, of Classics and English, Mathematics, Natural Science, Chemistry and Physics, were interviewed in England by the New Zealand Agent-General and some of the most famous scientists and scholars of the day, including the great Benjamin Jowett of Balliol College, Vice-Chancellor of Oxford University. The men appointed formed an impressive group. The chemist, F.D. Brown, had studied both in France and at Leipzig as well as London, and taught at Oxford and London. He had published a dozen papers. Algernon Phillips Thomas, the biologist, was a Balliol man who had discovered the life history of the liver fluke. The classicist, T.G. Tucker, was to become a famous scholar. When he left to go to Melbourne University in 1885 he was succeeded by Hutcheson Macaulay Posnett, an Irishman who had written several books, including one on comparative literature, what would now be called the sociology of literature, a subject which he is now credited with inventing. The first professor of Mathematics was drowned shortly after he reached Auckland and he was succeeded by W.S. Aldis, who had been the senior wrangler at Cambridge and was the author of several mathematical books.

The College was formally opened on 21 May 1883 in the Choral Hall, then the largest hall in Auckland. The Governor, Sir William Jervois, announced that the College was to be a thoroughly democratic institution, open to all, women as well as men, and to all classes. He remarked that the first College building was a barn. It was, in fact, a disused courthouse.

When O'Rorke had first tried to secure a University for Auckland, in 1872, he had suggested housing it in Government House, left empty when the capital was moved to Wellington in 1865. This immediately aroused opposition in the newspapers, for many Aucklanders hoped that the capital - and the governor - would eventually return to Auckland. These conflicting ambitions lay at the basis of a recurrent feature of the history of the College, the great 'site row' which raged with particular violence in the years 1909-12, with the College trying to get at least part of the grounds of Government House while numerous citizens strongly opposed it. One result was that for years the College has no permanent site or permanent buildings. Instead, it acquired the disused Admiralty House and a building which had been the original Parliament House. In 1907 the Choral Hall was purchased. In 1917 the College occupied the deserted Grammar School. Not until 1926 did it acquire its first permanent building, now the Old Arts building, in Princes Street.

The College was poor: its statutory grant was for many years only £4,000 a year, while educational reserves were of such poor land that they brought in very little. It was small: there were 95 students in 1883; 156 by 1901. Many of the students had not passed the matriculation examination. Most of them were part-time, trainee teachers and Law clerks, Music students from 1888 onwards, Commerce students by 1905. The College was dominated by the lay members of Council, especially by Sir Maurice O'Rorke, who was its chairman from 1883 to 1916. When Professor Aldis complained in 1892 that he had found the College stables occupied by O'Rorke's son's polo ponies he was dismissed! Despite a prolonged public controversy, Council would not reinstate him. Posnett also left, in 1891.

Some of the best professors departed. Most of the remainder grew increasingly out-of-date in their subjects. There was no system of sabbatical or study leave until the nineteen-twenties. The teachers simply handed on traditional knowledge: research was not expected and was rarely done. The staff lectured for very long hours. In some subjects research was impossible. For instance, the library took no mathematical journals, so the mathematicians knew little about recent work. Some students, however, carried out good research notably in Chemistry. In general the students were given a good, traditional undergraduate education, but standards were not rigorous and had in some subjects declined by the twenties.

In that decade and well into the thirties the College was ruled by a Registrar, Rocke O'Shea, and a new Chairman (President after 1924), another former Cabinet Minister, Sir George Fowlds. Under their not always benevolent dictatorship some improvements were made. The first New Zealand graduates with post-graduate education abroad were appointed to the staff, notably the very able economist, Horace Belshaw, the philosopher, R.P. Anschutz, and the physicist, P.W. Burbridge. An excellent researcher, W.F. Short, was appointed as a lecturer in Chemistry.

Some advances were made in providing professional education. The only such education offered at the College was in Law, which attracted large numbers of students. The only 'professional schools' recognised by the University of New Zealand were Medicine at Otago and Engineering at Canterbury. In 1906 the College established a School of Mining, which, covertly by degrees was turned into a 'School of Engineering'. After fierce battles with Canterbury, fired by provincial rivalry, the Auckland School received University recognition for its teaching in the first two professional years. Students then had to go to Canterbury to complete their final year of education. In the course of this battle, in 1917, the College also began instruction in Architecture.

During the depression of the early nineteen-thirties there was great disputation and rancour. The temporary appointment of a lecturer in history, J.C. Beaglehole, later a world famous scholar, was terminated, his friends believed, because of a letter of liberal or radical tendency, to a newspaper, defending the right of Communists to distribute their literature. This episode led to a Council election in which a liberal, Hollis Cocker, displaced a conservative. The College Council now adopted resolutions in favour of academic freedom and received the undeserved congratulations of the flower of the British academic establishment, including Lord Rutherford and Wittgenstein. At this time, in a modern terminology, the College 'came alive'. For instance, some students, led by James Bertram, established a new literary journal, *Phoenix*, which was the focus for the first literary movement in New Zealand history: Allen Curnow, A.R.D. Fairburn, R.A.K. Mason and other writers, later distinguished, wrote for it.

The College received a great intellectual stimulus in 1934 when four new professors arrived, H.G. Forder, a very able mathematician, Arthur Sewell, a brilliant lecturer in English, a classicist, C.G. Cooper, and a new historian, James Rutherford.

The College had never had academic leadership. Cocker came to dominate it before and during World War II as much as had O'Rorke and O'Shea. But Council now appointed the first Principal (later Vice-Chancellor) K.J. Maidment. He came in 1950 and remained for two decades. He was a Classics don from Merton College, Oxford.

The nineteen-fifties was a very difficult period in the history of the College - the University of Auckland, as it was called from 1958 onwards. There was a further, fierce 'site row'. Council wanted to move to a larger site out of town. The National Government in 1956 offered Government House to the College as a compensation for staying in Princes Street. Another 'save Government House' campaign followed. Both academic staff and the public were deeply divided over the issue, which was resolved in 1960: The University was to stay where it was. The 'site row' held up the building programme for about six years, while student rolls rose rapidly, to 4,000 by 1959, with the result that there was bad overcrowding in quite inadequate buildings - army huts for instance, were erected. Universities everywhere were expanding rapidly. New Zealand salaries were low and many able Auckland staff were recruited by Australian or other universities. Despite these problems, there was significant progress. New subjects were introduced: Geography, Anthropology, Maori Studies, Fine Arts. There was a new emphasis on staff research. Many of the new and younger academics became very active researchers, as could be seen in the growing lists of staff publications.

A general improvement in conditions was spearheaded by a Committee, the Hughes Parry Committee, which reported on University conditions. Staff salaries were raised. For the first time the students were given fairly generous bursaries, which led to a rapid increase in the proportion of full-time students. The government grant to the University rose rapidly. There was a massive university building programme, and over the next two decades the campus was transformed as one large building after another was erected: Fine Arts, Science, Engineering buildings, a Student Union, a new Library... A number of new subjects were introduced, including Political Studies, Art History, and Sociology. In 1968 teaching commenced in the new Medical School, which was the most important 'new development'.

By the end of the sixties Auckland had the largest University Library in the country, whereas it had usually been the smallest. Most of the credit for this belonged to Kenneth Maidment. One other change must be mentioned. In 1962 the University at last became independent, when the University of New Zealand was abolished.

When Dr Kenneth Maidment departed in 1970, there were 9,300 students. Under his successor, Dr Colin Maiden, the roll increased to over 14,500 by 1988. Dr Maiden was an Auckland engineer who headed a research division of General Motors in Michigan. One of the first things that struck him in Auckland was the paucity of student facilities. He pushed ahead to get them a theatre, a splendid gymnasium and recreation centre, and a large playing field 'complex'. The entire administrative organisation, from faculties and committees to deputy vice-chancellors, was reformed. The academic boom of the sixties continued well into the seventies and several new buildings, like Human Sciences, were built and new subjects, like Management Studies and Computer Science, were introduced.

The seventies brought numerous social changes: an increase in the proportion of Maori and Polynesian students and in the proportion of women as well as in the proportion of older students. Only in the years 1975-81 were the first two women professors appointed, Marie Clay and Patricia Bergquist. At a time of high inflation the government grant to the University rose rapidly, to \$95.2 million by 1989. Nevertheless there was a certain austerity by then, in a bleak economic climate, but after a century of growth the University seems sufficiently strongly established in the community to withstand hard conditions.

*In 1991 the Education Amendment Act 1990 will lead to a number of changes in both the structure and functioning of the University. However, as many provisions of the Act do not come into effect until 1 January 1991, details cannot be provided at the time of printing of this edition of the Calendar.*

---

# General Information

## *Contents*

---

|    |                                |
|----|--------------------------------|
| 9  | Calendar Year 1991             |
| 15 | Arms of the University         |
| 16 | Officers of the University     |
| 16 | The Council                    |
| 17 | The Senate                     |
| 17 | Deans of Faculties             |
| 18 | Honorary Graduates             |
| 19 | Professores Emeriti            |
| 20 | Academic Staff                 |
| 50 | Library Staff                  |
| 52 | University Administration      |
| 52 | Registrar's Section Staff      |
| 53 | Academic Registry              |
| 53 | Finance Registry               |
| 53 | Staff Registry                 |
| 54 | Works Registry                 |
| 54 | Faculties and Departments      |
| 55 | Other Services and Departments |

---

## THE CALENDAR YEAR 1991

---

### January 1991

---

|             |  |
|-------------|--|
| Tuesday 1   | New Year's Day   |
| Thursday 3  | Registry opens   |
| Thursday 10 | Applications close for:<br>Pre-enrolment for all students wishing to be considered for enrolment in 1991 except for students who were <i>not</i> enrolled at the University of Auckland in 1990 where the closing date was 14 December 1990 (or 23 November 1990 for Provisional Entrance) or where an earlier date is prescribed for a Limited Entry Course or Paper. |
| Tuesday 15  | Applications close for Enrolment as an Extramural student (Massey, if application includes limited-entry papers)   |
| Monday 28   | Auckland Anniversary Day holiday   |
| Thursday 31 | Applications close for enrolment as an Extramural student (Massey, if application includes no limited-entry papers)  |

---

### February 1991

---

|              |  |
|--------------|--|
| Friday 1     | Enrolments (with fees) close with the Registrar for the next examination for DipObst   |
| Tuesday 5    | Meeting of Appointments Committee 8.30   |
| Wednesday 6  | Waitangi (New Zealand) Day   |
| Thursday 7   | Meeting of Works Committee 3.30  |
| Monday 11    | Meeting of Deans Committee 9.30  |
|              | Meeting of Education Committee 3.30  |
| Wednesday 13 | Meeting of Leigh Laboratory Management Committee 11.00   |
|              | Meeting of Human Subjects Ethics Committee 1.00  |
|              | Meeting of Press Committee 2.00  |
| Thursday 14  | Meeting of Recreation Committee 3.30   |
| Friday 15    | Meeting of Audio-Visual Committee 10.00  |
|              | Last day for additions and deletions of MBA, MTaxS and DipBus papers commencing 4 February   |
| Monday 18    | Meeting of Academic Committee 9.30   |
|              | Meeting of Council 4.00  |
| Tuesday 19   | Meeting of Research Committee 10.00  |
| Wednesday 20 | Meeting of Equal Employment Opportunities Advisory Committee 9.00  |
|              | Meeting of Computer Committee 9.30   |
| Thursday 21  | <b>Enrolment begins (21 Feb - 1 Mar)</b><br>Times for enrolment for the various Faculties are set out under General Statutes and Regulations, Enrolment Timetable 1991   |
|              | Meeting of General Staff Committee 3.30  |
| Monday 25    | Meeting of Student Welfare Committee 3.30  |
| Tuesday 26   | Meeting of Student Union Management Committee 3.30   |
| Thursday 28  | Candidates who have not presented theses, essays, dissertations and original investigations to complete their Degree or Diploma by this date are required to re-enrol and are not entitled to have their Degree conferred or Diploma awarded at the Graduation Ceremony in May |

---

### March 1991

---

|            |   |
|------------|---|
| Friday 1   | Enrolments (with fees) close with the Registrar for the June examination for DipG&O |
| Monday 4   | <b>FIRST TERM BEGINS</b>  |
| Tuesday 5  | Meeting of Appointments Committee 8.30  |
| Thursday 7 | Meeting of Finance Committee 3.30   |
| Monday 11  | Meeting of Senate 9.30  |
| Tuesday 12 | Meeting of Library Committee 10.00  |

|              |  |
|--------------|--|
| Wednesday 13 | Meeting of Human Subjects Ethics Committee 1.00  |
| Friday 15    | Last day for additions and deletions to all courses of study other than BE, ME, MBA, MTaxS, DipBus, DipG&O, DipObst, DipPaed and final year for MBChB for papers commencing before 24 June<br>Last day for additions and deletions to courses for BE and ME for papers commencing before 15 July |
| Monday 18    | Meeting of Deans Committee 9.30<br>Meeting of Education Committee 3.30   |
| Tuesday 19   | Meeting of Research Committee 10.00  |
| Wednesday 20 | Meeting of Equal Employment Opportunities Advisory Committee 9.00<br>Meeting of Computer Committee 9.30<br>Meeting of Promotions Advisory Sub-Committee 3.30   |
| Thursday 21  | Meeting of Theatre Management Committee 3.00   |
| Friday 22    | Meeting of Departmental Grants Committee 9.00  |
| Monday 25    | Meeting of Academic Committee 9.30<br>Meeting of Council 4.00  |
| Tuesday 26   | Meeting of Student Union Management Committee 3.30   |
| Thursday 28  | Meeting of Public Relations & Cultural Activities Committee 3.30<br>Last day for receipt of applications for the conferment of Degrees and award of Diplomas for the May Graduation Ceremony including applications for Masters and other Degrees with a research content.                       |
| Friday 29    | <b>Easter Recess begins</b><br>Good Friday   |

**April 1991**

|              |   |
|--------------|---|
| Monday 1     | Easter Monday   |
| Tuesday 2    | University closed   |
| Wednesday 3  | <b>Lectures resume after Easter Recess</b><br>Last day for deletions to courses for DipG&O and DipObst for June examination |
| Thursday 4   | Meeting of Works Committee 3.30   |
| Monday 8     | Meeting of Senate 9.30<br>Meeting of Press Committee 2.00<br>Meeting of Student Accommodation Committee 3.30                |
| Tuesday 9    | Meeting of Appointments Committee 8.30  |
| Wednesday 10 | Meeting of Human Subjects Ethics Committee 1.00   |
| Thursday 11  | Meeting of Audit Sub-Committee 10.00  |
| Monday 15    | Meeting of Deans Committee 9.30<br>Meeting of Education Committee 3.30<br>Meeting of Research Committee 10.00               |
| Tuesday 16   | Meeting of Equal Employment Opportunities Advisory Committee 9.00   |
| Wednesday 17 | Meeting of Computer Committee 9.30<br>Meeting of Recreation Committee 3.00  |
| Thursday 18  | Meeting of Audio-Visual Committee 10.00   |
| Friday 19    | Meeting of Academic Committee 9.30<br>Meeting of Council 4.00   |
| Monday 22    | Meeting of General Staff Committee 3.30   |
| Wednesday 24 | Anzac Day   |
| Thursday 25  | Meeting of Student Welfare Committee 3.30   |
| Monday 29    | Meeting of Student Union Management Committee 3.30  |
| Tuesday 30   |   |

**May 1991**

|             |  |
|-------------|--|
| Thursday 2  | Meeting of Finance Committee 3.30  |
| Monday 6    | Meeting of Senate 9.30   |
| Tuesday 7   | Meeting of Appointments Committee 8.30   |
| Wednesday 8 | Meeting of Leigh Laboratory Management Committee 11.00<br>Meeting of Human Subjects Ethics Committee 1.00<br>Graduation Ceremonies |
| Thursday 9  | Graduation Ceremonies  |

|              |  |
|--------------|--|
| Friday 10    | Graduation Ceremonies  |
| Saturday 11  | <b>FIRST TERM ENDS</b>   |
| Monday 13    | Meeting of Deans Committee 9.30  |
|              | Meeting of Education Committee 3.30  |
| Tuesday 14   | Meeting of Research Committee 10.00  |
| Wednesday 15 | Meeting of Equal Employment Opportunities Advisory Committee 9.00                        |
|              | Meeting of Computer Committee 9.30   |
| Thursday 16  | Meeting of Theatre Management Committee 3.00   |
| Monday 20    | Meeting of Academic Committee 9.30   |
|              | Meeting of Council 4.00  |
| Monday 27    | Meeting of Student Accommodation Committee 3.30  |
| Tuesday 28   | Meeting of Student Union Management Committee 3.30                                       |
| Thursday 30  | Meeting of Public Relations & Cultural Activities Committee 3.30                         |
| Friday 31    | Last day for alterations and deletions of MBA, MTaxS and DipBus papers commencing 20 May |

*June 1991*

|              |   |
|--------------|---|
| Monday 3     | Queen's Birthday  |
| Tuesday 4    | <b>SECOND TERM BEGINS</b>   |
|              | Meeting of Appointments Committee 8.30                            |
| Thursday 6   | Meeting of Works Committee 3.30                                   |
| Monday 10    | Meeting of Senate 9.30  |
|              | Meeting of Press Committee 2.00                                   |
| Tuesday 11   | Meeting of Library Committee 10.00                                |
| Wednesday 12 | Meeting of Human Subjects Ethics Committee 1.00                   |
| Thursday 13  | Meeting of Audit Sub-Committee 10.00                              |
| Monday 17    | Meeting of Deans Committee 9.30                                   |
|              | Meeting of Education Committee 3.30                               |
| Tuesday 18   | Meeting of Research Committee 10.00                               |
| Wednesday 19 | Meeting of Equal Employment Opportunities Advisory Committee 9.00 |
|              | Meeting of Computer Committee 9.30                                |
| Thursday 20  | Meeting of Recreation Committee 3.30                              |
| Friday 21    | Meeting of Audio-Visual Committee 10.00                           |
| Monday 24    | <b>Engineering Study Break begins</b>                             |
|              | Meeting of Academic Committee 9.30                                |
|              | Meeting of Council 4.00   |
| Thursday 27  | Meeting of General Staff Committee 3.30                           |

*July 1991*

|              |   |
|--------------|---|
| Monday 1     | Applications close for admission in 1992 for BMus (Performance) (for the first time)  |
|              | <b>Engineering Study Break ends and Engineering Examinations begin</b>  |
|              | Meeting of Senate 9.30  |
|              | Meeting of Student Welfare Committee 3.30   |
| Tuesday 2    | Meeting of Appointments Committee 8.30  |
|              | Meeting of Student Union Management Committee 3.30  |
| Thursday 4   | Meeting of Finance Committee 3.30   |
| Friday 5     | <b>Engineering Examinations end</b>   |
|              | Last day for additions and deletions to all courses of study other than BE, ME, MBA, MTaxS, DipBus, DipG&O, DipObst, DipPaed and final year for MBChB for papers commencing after 24 June |
| Monday 8     | <b>Mid-term Study Break begins</b>  |
|              | Meeting of Education Committee 3.30   |
| Tuesday 9    | Meeting of Library Committee 10.00  |
| Wednesday 10 | Meeting of Human Subjects Ethics Committee 1.00   |
| Thursday 11  | Meeting of Theatre Management Committee 3.00  |
| Saturday 13  | <b>Mid-term Study Break ends</b>  |

|              |   |
|--------------|---|
| Monday 15    | Meeting of Deans Committee 9.30   |
|              | Meeting of Council 4.00   |
| Tuesday 16   | Meeting of Research Committee 10.00   |
| Wednesday 17 | Meeting of Equal Employment Opportunities Advisory Committee 9.00                                 |
|              | Meeting of Computer Committee 9.30  |
| Thursday 18  | Meeting of Public Relations and Cultural Activities Committee 3.30                                |
| Monday 22    | Meeting of Academic Committee 9.30  |
|              | Meeting of Student Accommodation Committee 3.30   |
| Friday 26    | Last day for additions and deletions to courses for BE and ME for papers commencing after 15 July |
| Tuesday 30   | Meeting of Student Union Management Committee 3.30  |

---

### August 1991

---

|              |  |
|--------------|--|
| Thursday 1   | Meeting of Works Committee 3.30  |
|              | Applications close with the Registrar for Rhodes Scholarships                        |
|              | Enrolments (with fees) close with the Registrar for the next examination for DipObst |
| Monday 5     | Meeting of Senate 9.30   |
|              | Meeting of Press Committee 2.00  |
| Tuesday 6    | Meeting of Appointments Committee 8.30   |
| Wednesday 7  | Meeting of Leigh Laboratory Management Committee 11.00                               |
| Thursday 8   | Meeting of Audit Sub-Committee 10.00   |
| Monday 12    | Meeting of Deans Committee 9.30  |
|              | Meeting of Education Committee 3.30  |
| Wednesday 14 | Meeting of Human Subjects Ethics Committee 1.00                                      |
| Thursday 15  | Meeting of Recreation Committee 3.30   |
| Friday 16    | Meeting of Audio-Visual Committee 10.00  |
| Saturday 17  | <b>SECOND TERM ENDS</b>  |
| Monday 19    | Academic Committee 9.30  |
|              | Meeting of Council 4.00  |
| Tuesday 20   | Meeting of Research Committee 10.00  |
| Wednesday 21 | Meeting of Equal Employment Opportunities Advisory Committee 9.00                    |
|              | Meeting of Computer Committee 9.30   |
|              | Meeting of Promotions Advisory Sub-Committee 3.30                                    |
| Thursday 22  | Meeting of General Staff Committee 3.30  |
| Monday 26    | Meeting of Student Welfare Committee 3.30  |
| Tuesday 27   | Meeting of Student Union Management Committee 3.30                                   |

---

### September 1991

---

|              |   |
|--------------|---|
| Monday 2     | Applications close for overseas students for entry to the course for DipGeothermTech        |
|              | Enrolments (with fees) close with the Registrar for the December examinations for DipG&O    |
| Tuesday 3    | Meeting of Appointments Committee 3.30  |
| Wednesday 4  | Meeting of Promotions Advisory Sub-Committee 3.30   |
| Thursday 5   | Meeting of Finance Committee 3.30   |
| Monday 9     | <b>THIRD TERM BEGINS</b>  |
|              | Meeting of Senate 9.30  |
| Tuesday 10   | Meeting of Library Committee 10.00  |
| Wednesday 11 | Meeting of Human Subjects Ethics Committee 1.00   |
| Thursday 12  | Meeting of Theatre Management Committee 3.00  |
| Friday 13    | Last day for additions and deletions of MBA, MTaxS and DipBus papers commencing 2 September |
| Monday 16    | Meeting of Deans Committee 9.30   |
|              | Meeting of Education Committee 3.30   |
| Tuesday 17   | Meeting of Research Committee 10.00   |



|              |   |
|--------------|---|
| Wednesday 18 | Meeting of Equal Employment Opportunities Advisory Committee 9.00<br>Meeting of Computer Committee 9.30 |
| Thursday 19  | Meeting of Public Relations & Cultural Activities Committee 3.30  |
| Monday 23    | Meeting of Academic Committee 9.30<br>Meeting of Council 4.00   |
| Tuesday 24   | Meeting of Student Union Management Committee 3.30  |
| Monday 30    | Meeting of Student Accommodation Committee 3.30   |

**October 1991**

|              |  |
|--------------|--|
| Tuesday 1    | Meeting of Appointments Committee 8.30<br>Applications close with the Registrar for Commonwealth (U.K. and Canada), Postgraduate and some Auckland Scholarships.<br>Applications close for entry to the course for BHB for 1992.<br>Last day for deletions to courses for DipG&O and DipObst for December examinations |
| Thursday 3   | Meeting of Works Committee 3.30  |
| Monday 7     | Meeting of Senate 9.30<br>Meeting of Press Committee 2.00  |
| Tuesday 8    | Meeting of Library Committee 10.00   |
| Wednesday 9  | Meeting of Human Subjects Ethics Committee 1.00  |
| Thursday 10  | Meeting of Audit Sub-Committee 10.00   |
| Friday 11    | Lectures end   |
| Monday 14    | Meeting of Deans Committee 9.30<br>Meeting of Education Committee 3.30   |
| Tuesday 15   | Meeting of Research Committee 10.00<br>Applications close for entry to MBA programmes (for the first time) for 1992 and for DipGeothermTech (NZ students) for 1992   |
| Wednesday 16 | Meeting of Equal Employment Opportunities Advisory Committee 9.00<br>Meeting of Computer Committee 9.30  |
| Thursday 17  | Meeting of Recreation Committee 3.30   |
| Friday 18    | Meeting of Audio-Visual Committee 10.00<br><b>Degree examinations begin</b>  |
| Monday 21    | Meeting of Academic Committee 9.30<br>Meeting of Council 4.00  |
| Wednesday 23 | Meeting of Promotions Advisory Sub-Committee 8.30  |
| Thursday 24  | Meeting of General Staff Committee 3.30  |
| Friday 25    | Meeting of Promotions Advisory Sub-Committee 8.30<br><b>Engineering Lectures end</b>   |
| Monday 28    | Labour Day   |
| Tuesday 29   | Meeting of Student Union Management Committee 3.30   |
| Wednesday 30 | Applications close for entry to Education 14.410, 14.418, BFA Studio I and MFA/MPHil (for the first time), Environmental Science MSc, 64.401 (for the first time) for 1992   |
| Thursday 31  | <b>THIRD TERM ENDS</b>   |

**November 1991**

|          |   |
|----------|---|
| Friday 1 | <b>Engineering Examinations begin</b><br>Applications close for most remaining Auckland Scholarships.<br>Candidates for all Masters Degrees except MSc in subjects other than Geography and Mathematics must present theses and dissertations by this date except by special permission of Head of Department. DipEd and DipEdPsych candidates must present their original investigations and written reports to the Registrar by this date.<br>Applications close for accommodation for University Halls of Residence for 1992.<br>Last day for deletions to courses for DipPaed |
| Monday 4 | Meeting of Senate 9.30<br>Meeting of Student Welfare Committee 3.30   |

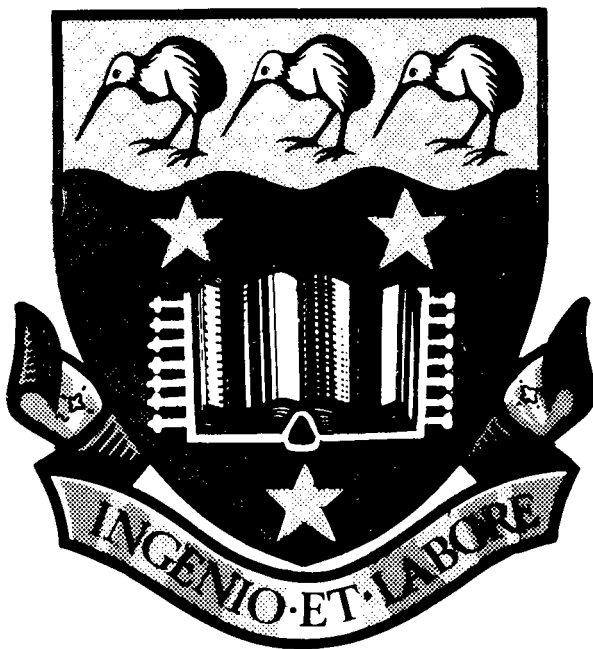
|              |   |
|--------------|---|
| Tuesday 5    | Meeting of Appointments Committee 8.30<br>Applications close for DipBus programmes (for the first time) for 1992  |
| Wednesday 6  | Meeting of Leigh Laboratory Management Committee 11.00  |
| Thursday 7   | Meeting of Finance Committee 3.30   |
| Monday 11    | Meeting of Deans Committee 9.30<br>Meeting of Education Committee 3.30  |
| Wednesday 13 | Meeting of Human Subjects Ethics Committee 1.00<br>Last day for withdrawal from the final year course for MBChB   |
| Thursday 14  | Meeting of Theatre Management Committee 3.00  |
| Friday 15    | Applications close for Education 14.451 and 14.452 in 1992  |
| Monday 18    | Meeting of Academic Committee 9.30<br>Meeting of Council 4.00   |
| Tuesday 19   | Meeting of Research Committee 10.00   |
| Wednesday 20 | Meeting of Equal Employment Opportunities Advisory Committee 9.00<br>Meeting of Computer Committee 9.30   |
| Thursday 21  | Meeting of Public Relations and Cultural Activities Committee 3.30  |
| Friday 22    | Applications close for Provisional Entrance in 1991 (subject to review)   |
| Monday 25    | Meeting of Student Accommodation Committee 3.30   |
| Tuesday 26   | Meeting of Appointments Committee 8.30<br>Meeting of Student Union Management Committee 3.30  |
| Friday 29    | Meeting of Works Committee 3.30   |
| Saturday 30  | Applications close for entry to DipBrC, DipELT, Anthropology 03.340 for 1992<br>Applications close for overseas students seeking admission with graduate status and wishing to enrol for a graduate Degree or Diploma |

---

### December 1991

---

|              |   |
|--------------|---|
| Monday 2     | Applications close for entry to the course for MAud in 1992<br>Meeting of Senate 9.30<br>Meeting of Press Committee 2.00            |
| Wednesday 4  | Meeting of Education Committee 3.30   |
| Monday 9     | Meeting of Computer Committee 9.30  |
| Tuesday 10   | Meeting of Deans Committee 9.30   |
| Wednesday 11 | Meeting of Research Committee 10.00<br>Meeting of Equal Employment Opportunities Advisory Committee 9.00                            |
| Monday 16    | Meeting of Human Subjects Ethics Committee 1.00<br>Meeting of Council 4.00<br>Last day for deletions to final year course for MBChB |
| Wednesday 25 | Christmas Day   |
| Thursday 26  | Boxing Day  |



## ARMS OF THE UNIVERSITY OF AUCKLAND

As granted by Garter, Clarenceux and Norry and Ulster, Kings of Arms by Letters Patent bearing date the 15th February 1962 and recorded in the College of Arms, London.

### Heraldic Description

Azure between three Mulletts Argent an open Book proper edged and bound Or with seven clasps on either side Gold on a Chief wavy also Argent three Kiwis proper.

On a scroll set below the Arms appear the words 'Ingenio et Labore'.

### Symbolism

The open book together with the motto 'Ingenio et Labore', freely translated as 'by natural ability and hard work', indicate in a general way the aim of the institution and combined with the three stars express the idea of learning pursued under the sky of the Southern Hemisphere. The kiwis are indicative of New Zealand as the bird is absolutely confined to its Islands and the silver wavy chief upon which they are set directs attention to the fact that Auckland is on the sea coast.

**Note:** British Colour Council Dictionary of Colour Standards, references: AZURE (BCC 196) OR (BCC 114).

## UNIVERSITY PERSONNEL

### OFFICERS OF THE UNIVERSITY

Chancellor M. J. A. BROWN (Judge), (*Retires 30-6-92*)

Pro-Chancellor E. G. BOLLARD (*Retires 30-6-90*)

Vice-Chancellor C. J. MAIDEN, ME N.Z., DPhil Oxf.

Deputy Vice-Chancellor P. N. TARLING, MA PhD LittD Camb., FRAS, FRHist

Registrar W. B. NICOLL, BCom

### THE COUNCIL OF THE UNIVERSITY

At the time of printing this *Calendar* the composition of the Council is as follows. The composition will change, under the provisions of the new legislation, from 1-1-91.

#### PRESIDENT, AUCKLAND UNIVERSITY STUDENTS' ASSOCIATION

*Ex officio*

R. I. BARKER (The Hon Mr), BA LLB N.Z.

*Elected by Graduates (Retires 30-6-93)*

A.R. BELLAMY, BSc N.Z., MSc PhD

*Appointed by Senate (Retires 31-12-90)*

PATRICIA R. BERGQUIST, MSc PhD N.Z., FRSNZ

*Professor of Zoology, appointed by the Senate (Retires 31-12-90)*

EDWARD G BOLLARD, CBE, BSc N.Z., PhD Camb., HonDSc, FRSNZ

*Appointed by the Governor-General in Council (Retires 30-6-91)*

M. J. A. BROWN (Judge), (Chancellor)

*Appointed by Council (Retires 28-2-90)*

RUTH H. BUTTERWORTH, MA DPhil Oxf.,

*Appointed by Senate (Retires 31-12-91)*

R. H. L. FERGUSON, CBE, MBChB N.Z., DO Lond., HonLLD, FRCS, FRACS

*Appointed by the Governor-General in Council (Retires 30-6-89)*

A. M. FINLAY, QC, LL.M N.Z., PhD Lond.

*Elected by Graduates (Retires 30-6-91)*

JENNIFER B. GIBBS, MA N.Z.

*Elected by Graduates (Retires 30-6-93)*

GAEWYN E. GRIFFITHS, MA AIED(Lond), ATCL

*Elected by the Governing Bodies of Secondary Schools within the Auckland University District (Retires 31-12-91)*

J. H. INGRAM, CBE, BE N.Z., FIPENZ, FAIMM, MIMechE

*Appointed by Council (Retires 30-6-91)*

ROBERT W. LACK, BA

*Elected by Graduates (Retires 30-6-93)*

C. J. MAIDEN, ME N.Z., DPhil Oxf. (Vice-Chancellor)

*Ex officio*

E. D. G. MANN, BA N.Z.

*Appointed by the Governor-General in Council (Retires 30-6-90)*

DEIRDRE G. MILNE, LLB Well., MA

*Elected by Graduates (Retires 30-6-91)*

J. D. K. NORTH, CBE, MBChB N.Z., DPhil Oxf., FRCP, FRACP

*Professor of Medicine, appointed by the Senate (Retires 31-1-91)*

BRIAN H. PICOT, CMG

*Appointed by Council (Retires 28-2-90)*

HELEN M. RYBURN (Ms), MA N.Z.

*Elected by Graduates (Retires 30-6-91)*

PATRICIA SHAW, MSc

*Appointed by Students' Association (Retires 30-6-90)*

T. L. STURM, PhD Leeds, MA

*Professor of English, appointed by the Senate (Retires 31-12-91)*

J. L. WOODWARD, BE N.Z., MASc Tor., FIEE, FIEAust., FIPENZ

*Professor of Engineering, appointed by the Senate (Retires 31-12-91)*

## THE SENATE OF THE UNIVERSITY

Chairman: THE VICE-CHANCELLOR

ALL PROFESSORS (and their equivalents)

HEADS OF DEPARTMENTS AND ACTING HEADS OF DEPARTMENTS (subprofessorial).

DEANS (not being members of the professorial staff).

LIBRARIAN

LIAISON OFFICER

ASSOCIATE DEAN OF POST GRADUATE AFFAIRS IN MEDICINE

ELECTED MEMBERS OF THE SUB-PROFESSORIAL STAFF (three from the Faculty of Arts; two from the Faculty of Science; one each from the Faculties of Architecture Property and Planning, Commerce, Engineering, Fine Arts, Law, Medicine and Human Biology, Music and from the Centre for Continuing Education and five from the sub-professorial staff at large).

PRINCIPAL, AUCKLAND COLLEGE OF EDUCATION

PRESIDENT, AUCKLAND CONSORTIUM FOR THEOLOGICAL EDUCATION

*Faculty of Architecture Property and Planning*

G. R. JENNER (*Retires 31-1-93*)

*Faculty of Arts*

J. LAMB (*Retires 31-1-93*)

R. NOLA (*Retires 31-1-92*)

C. WEST-NEWMAN (*Retires 31-1-92*)

*Faculty of Commerce*

J. S. DEEKS (*Retires 31-1-92*)

*Faculty of Engineering*

R. McKIBBIN (*Retires 31-1-92*)

*Faculty of Fine Arts*

D. WATKINS (*Retires 31-1-93*)

*Faculty of Law*

E. J. KELSEY (*Retires 31-1-93*)

*Faculty of Medicine and Human Biology*

I. J. SIMPSON (*Retires 31-1-92*)

*Faculty of Music*

F. E. McALPINE (*Retires 31-1-93*)

*Faculty of Science*

J. E. BRAGGINS (*Retires 31-1-92*)

G. A. BOWMAKER (*Retires 31-1-93*)

*Centre for Continuing Education*

J. McMORLAND (*Retires 31-1-93*)

*Sub-professorial Staff at Large*

R. H. BUTTERWORTH (*Retires 31-1-92*)

J. PACKER (*Retires 31-1-93*)

N. J. DAWSON (*Retires 31-1-93*)

V. I. J. FLINT (*Retires 31-1-92*)

J. W. HUNTSMAN (*Retires 31-1-92*)

PRESIDENT, AUCKLAND UNIVERSITY STUDENTS' ASSOCIATION

FIVE STUDENT MEMBERS (nominated by Auckland University Students' Association).

S. RAE (*Retires 30-4-91*)

A. O. OGILVIE (*Retires 30-4-91*)

R. H. PYM (*Retires 30-4-91*)

.....  
S. NEWMAN (*Retires 30-4-91*)

## DEANS

*Dean of the Faculty of Architecture Property and Planning*

ALLAN A. WILD, BArch N.Z., RIBA, FNZIA, FRSA

*Dean of the Faculty of Arts*

P. N. TARLING, MA PhD LittD Camb., FRAS, FRHistS

*Deputy Deans of the Faculty of Arts*

J. A. GRIBBEN, MA N.Z., PhD Well.

MICHAEL A. R. TOWNSEND, MA Cant., PhD Ill.

SUZANNE TYNDEL (Mrs), MA N.Z.

*Dean of the Faculty of Commerce*

ALASTAIR MacCORMICK, MA PhD Yale, BSc MCom

*Associate Dean for Undergraduate Studies in Commerce*

JOHN B. RYAN, BCom N.Z., MCom, ACA, ACIS, CMA, CPA, FAIM, FASA

*Deputy Deans*

KATHRYN G. CAIRD, BSc Otago, BCom

HELEN C. GEORGE, MCom, ACA

NIGEL A. F. HAWORTH, BA MPhil PhD Liv.

*Dean of the Faculty of Engineering*

R. F. MEYER, BE N.Z., PhD Manc., FCASI, MAIAA, FIPENZ, FRAES

*Associate Dean of the Faculty of Engineering*

ROBERT McKIBBIN, MSc Cant., PhD

*Dean of the Faculty of Fine Arts*

J. D. SAUNDERS, DipFA N.Z., DipIndusDesign, NDD, FNZSID

*Sub Dean of the Faculty of Fine Arts*

ROBERT W. ELLIS, ARCA, RBA, MNZSSP, FRSA, MNZID

*Dean of the Faculty of Law*

R. G. HAMMOND, LLM Ill., LLB MJur

*Deputy Deans of the Faculty of Law*

E. JANE KELSEY, LLB Well., BCL Oxf., MPhil Camb.

K. A. PALMER, LLM Harv. &amp; Auck., SJD Virginia

*Dean of the Faculty of Medicine and Human Biology*

J. D. K. NORTH, CBE, MBChB N.Z., DPhil Oxf., FRCP, FRACP

*Deputy Dean of the Faculty of Medicine and Human Biology*

C. H. MACLAURIN, MBChB N.Z., FRICS, FRACS

*Dean of the Faculty of Music*

JOHN F. RIMMER, BA N.Z., MusD Tor., MA

*Dean of the Faculty of Science*

R. GEDDES, BSc PhD Edin.

*Deputy Deans of the Faculty of Science*

J. L. CRAIG, BSc Otago, PhD Massey

PETER M. FENWICK, MSc PhD, MIEE, MACM

**HONORARY GRADUATES**

HER MAJESTY QUEEN ELIZABETH, THE QUEEN MOTHER,

LLD 1966

PAUL JOHN BEADLE,

MFA 1979

SIR DAVID STUART BEATTIE,

LLD 1983

EDWARD GEORGE BOLLARD,

DSc 1983

SIR THOMAS HARCOURT CLARKE CAUGHEY,

LLD 1986

SIR WILLIAM HENRY COOPER,

LLD 1974

RICHARD HENRY LINDO FERGUSON,

LLD 1986

SIR RAYMOND WILLIAM FIRTH,

LittD 1978

DAVID FULTON FOWLDS,

ME 1987

ARTHUR OSWALD MICHAEL GILMOUR,

DSc 1983

OLIVE AVERIL JOHNSON,

MA 1979

DAME KIRI TE KANAWA,

MusD 1983

KENNETH JOHN MAIDMENT,

LLD 1970

ERIC HALL McCORMICK,

LittD 1983

RICHARD DENNIS McELDOWNEY,

LittD 1986

ROY GRANVILLE McELROY,

LittD 1976

SIR LEWIS NATHAN ROSS,

LLD 1983

WALTER SCHEEL,

LLD 1978

WILLIAM KENDRICK SMITHYMAN,

LittD 1986

SIR GRAHAM DAVIES SPEIGHT,

LLD 1983

SIR ALEXANDER KINGCOME TURNER,

LLD 1965

DOROTHY GERTRUDE WINSTONE

LLD 1983

LESLIE COLIN WOODS

DSc 1983

## PROFESSORES EMERITI

- COLIN JAMES ALEXANDER, MBChB N.Z., MD *Otago*, HonFRCR, FRACR, HonFACR (Medicine) Retired 1986
- JOHN ALEXANDER ASHER, QSO, Grosses Verdienstkreuz *Germany*, RNO *Sweden*, Ehrenkreuz I. Klasse *Austria*, Goethe Med. *Munich*, MA N.Z., DrPhil *Basle* (German) Retired 1986
- PAUL JOHN BEADLE, HonMFA, HonMNZSSPA, MFIM, FRSA (Fine Arts) Retired 1983
- BRUCE GRANDISON BIGGS, OBE, MA N.Z., PhD *Indiana*, FRSNZ (Anthropology) Retired 1984
- ARCHIBALD GORDON BOGLE, BE N.Z., DPhil *Oxf.*, CEng, FIEE, FIPENZ (Engineering) Retired 1978
- GEOFFREY PETER BRAAE, MCom N.Z., DPhil *Oxf.* (Economics) Retired 1987
- DENNIS BROWN, DSc *Brist.*, FInstP, FRSNZ (Physics) Retired 1967
- ROBERT MACDONALD CHAPMAN, CMG, MA N.Z., (Political Studies) Retired 1988
- DAVID SIMPSON COLE, CBE, BMedSc MBChB N.Z., FRCS, FRACS (Medicine) Retired 1989
- EDWIN RICHARD COLLINS, OBE, MSc N.Z., PhD *Birm.*, FIP, FRSNZ (Physics) Retired 1982
- KENNETH BRAILEY CUMBERLAND, CBE, MA *Lond.*, DSc N.Z., FRSNZ (Geography) Retired 1978
- PETER BERNARD DAVID de la MARE, MSc N.Z., PhD DSc *Lond.*, FRIC, FNZIC, FRSNZ (Chemistry) Retired 1982
- JOHN CHARLES DOWER, AB MD *Johns H.*, FRACP (Paediatrics) Retired 1987
- PETER DAVID HENSMAN GODFREY, CBE, MA MusB *Camb.*, HonFRSCM, FRCO, ARCM (Music) Retired 1983
- DAVID HALL, MSc PhD N.Z., DSc, FNZIC, FRSNZ (Chemistry) Retired 1984
- BRIAN DUTTON HENSHALL, BSc PhD DSc *Brist.*, CEng, FRAeS, FNZIM (Management Studies) Retired 1987
- PETER BARRIE HERDSON, BMedSc MBChB N.Z., PhD *Northwestern*, FRCPA (Medicine) Retired 1986
- GEORGE WILLIAM HINDE, LL.M N.Z., LL.D (Law) Retired 1987
- KENNETH JAMES HOLLYMAN, MA N.Z., DU *Paris* (French) Retired 1987
- DAVID JOHN HOOTON, MSc N.Z., PhD *Edin.*, FInstP, FNZIP, CPhys (Physics), Retired 1987
- TREVOR ROBERT JOHNSTON, LL.M BCom N.Z., MCom *Melb.*, PhD *Camb.*, FCA, FASA (Accountancy) Retired 1981
- ROBERT TERENCE KENNEDY, CBE, FRIBA, MTPI, ANZIA, MNZPI (Town Planning) Retired 1968
- ALICK CHARLES KIBBLEWHITE, MSc N.Z., DIC PhD *Lond.*, FInstP(Lond), FNZIP, FASA CPhys(Physics) Retired 1989
- WALTER KIRKPATRICK LACEY, MA *Camb.* (Classics and Ancient History) Retired 1987
- GRAHAM COLLINGWOOD LIGGINS, CBE, MBChB N.Z., PhD, FRCSEd, FRACS, FRCOG, FRNZCOG, FRs, FRSNZ (Medicine) Retired 1987
- ARNOLD ROBERT LILLIE, MA *Camb.*, DesSc *Geneva*, FRSNZ (Geology) Retired 1975
- RICHARD ELLIS FORD MATTHEWS, ONZ, MSc N.Z., PhD ScD *Camb.*, FRs, FNZIC, FRSNZ (Cell Biology) Retired 1987
- ANTHONY HENRY McNAUGHTON, MA *Calif. & N.Z.*, PhD *Calif.*, DipEd N.Z., (Education) Retired 1989
- JOHN EDWARD MORTON, QSO, MSc N.Z., PhD DSc *Lond.*, FRSNZ, HonFLS (Zoology) Retired 1989
- CHARLES NALDEN, CBE, BMus *Durh. & Lond.*, DMus *Lond.*, (Music) Retired 1974
- FRANCIS JOHN NEWHOOK, OBE, MSc N.Z., DIC PhD DSc *Lond.*, FRSA (Botany) Retired 1984
- ALLAN LLOYD ODELL, MSc N.Z., PhD *Lond.*, DSc, FNZIC (Chemistry) Retired 1985
- DAVID MURRAY PATON, MBChB *Cape T.*, MD DSc *Witw.*, FRCPCan, FRACP, CBiol, FIBiol (Pharmacology) Retired 1988
- ARVED JAAN RAUDKIVI, DipIng (Civil) *Tallinn & T.H. Braunschweig*, DRIngEh *Braunschweig*, PhD, CEng, FICE, FIPENZ (Engineering) Retired 1986
- HUBERT SAMPSON, MA *Br. Col.*, PhD *McG.*, FNZPsS (Psychology) Retired 1984
- FORREST SMYTH SCOTT, MA *MLitt Camb.* (English) Retired 1985
- ERNEST JOHNSTONE SEARLE, QSM, MSc N.Z., DSc (Geology) Retired 1972
- CECIL MARIN SEGEDIN, MSc N.Z., PhD *Camb.*, FIMA, FRSA (Hon) FIPENZ (Engineering) Retired 1981
- SIR KEITH SINCLAIR, Kt., CBE, MA PhD N.Z., LittD (History) Retired 1987
- CHRISTIAN KARLSON STEAD, CBE, MA N.Z., PhD *Brist.*, LittD (English) Retired 1986
- RUSSELL CYRIL JAMES STONE, MA N.Z., PhD (History) Retired 1989
- PETER WHITAKER TAYLOR, BSc BE N.Z., PhD, CEng, FICE, FIPENZ, FASCE (Engineering) Retired 1986
- ALAN LEE TITCHENER, CBE, BSc BE N.Z., ScD *M.I.T.*, AOSM, MIMechE, FIPENZ, MAIME, FIM (Engineering) Retired 1986
- RICHARD HORTON TOY, OBE, BArch N.Z., PhD *Dub.*, RIBA (Architecture) Retired 1977

THOMAS NEIL MORRIS WATERS, MSc PhD N.Z., DSc, FNZIC, FANZAAS (Chemistry) Retired 1983  
 PHILIP RICHARD HYLTON WEBB, MA LLB Camb., LLD (Law) Retired 1987  
 HENRY ARTHUR WHALE, MSc N.Z., PhD Camb., FIP, SMIEEE (Engineering) Retired 1983  
 RALPH WINTERBOURNE, MA DipEd N.Z., PhD Lond., FBPsS (Education) Retired 1975

---

## UNIVERSITY STAFF (ACADEMIC)

---

*Dates given are dates of taking up full-time employment. Where Degrees and Diplomas are shown without the name of the awarding university, the university is Auckland. List prepared 25-10-90*  
 \*Denotes a part-time permanent appointment.

---

## ACCOUNTING & FINANCE, *see* School of Commerce

---

## ANATOMY, *see* Medicine and Human Biology

---

## ANCIENT HISTORY, *see* Classics

---

## ANTHROPOLOGY

### *Professor of Maori Studies*

1965-70, 1985 Sir HUGH KAWHARU, Kt, BSc N.Z., MA Camb., MLitt DPhil Oxf.

### *Professor of Prehistory*

1961-66, 1973 ROGER C. GREEN, BA BSc New Mexico, PhD Harv., FRSNZ., MANAS

### *Associate Professors in Social Anthropology*

1966 ANTONY B. HOOPER, MA N.Z., PhD Harv.

1973 JUDITH W. HUNTSMAN, AB PhD Bryn Mawr, MA Brown

### *Associate Professor in Ethnomusicology*

1973 MERVYN E. McLEAN, MA N.Z., PhD Otago

### *Associate-Professor in Maori Studies*

1970 R. J. I. WALKER, MA PhD

### *Associate Professor in Prehistory*

1975 GEOFFREY J. IRWIN, PhD A.N.U., MA

### *Associate Professor in Social Anthropology and Maori Studies*

1973 M. ANNE SALMOND, CBE, PhD Penn., MA

### *Senior Lecturers in Social Anthropology*

1972 NANCY BOWERS, BS PhD Col.

1972 M. R. RIMOLDI, BA DipAnth Syd., PhD A.N.U.

1972 STEVEN S. WEBSTER, BA Minn., PhD Wash.

### *Senior Lecturers in Prehistory*

1973 HARRY R. ALLEN, BA Syd., PhD A.N.U.

1982 DOUGLAS G. SUTTON, MA PhD Otago

### *Senior Lecturers in Maori Studies*

1965 P. W. HOHEPA, MA N.Z., PhD Indiana

1986 C. D. BARLOW, MA PhD Brigham Young

### *Senior Lecturers in Linguistics*

1973 D. ROSS CLARK, BA Br. Col., PhD Calif.

1980 F. LICHTENBERK, MA Tor., PhD Hawaii

### *Lecturers in Maori Studies*

1988 VIOLET B. NORMAN, MA

1988 MARGARET S. MUTU, BSc MPhil PhD

### *Senior Tutor*

1987 R. E. CLOUGH, PhD Lond., MA

### *University Post-Doctoral Fellow*

P. J. SHEPPARD, BA Wat., MA PhD Tor.

### *Tohunga Whakairo*

PAAKAARIKI HARRISON



## SCHOOL OF ARCHITECTURE PROPERTY AND PLANNING

*Dean, Professor of Architecture*

1969 ALLAN A. WILD, BArch N.Z., RIBA, FNZIA, FRSA

### ARCHITECTURE

*Head of Department*

1989 RICHARD M. AYNLEY, BArch PhD N.S.W., MS(ArchEng) Penn. State, FRAIA, RIBA, MAIB, ANZIA, MNZIOB

*Professor, Architectural Design*

1964 PETER J. BARTLETT, BArch N.Z., PhD, RIBA, FNZIA, FRSA

*Professors*

1961-66, 1973 A. HAROLD MARSHALL, BArch BSc N.Z., PhD S'ton., RIBA, FNZIA, FRAIA, FASA

*Associate-Professor of Property Administration*

1978 W. KENNETH S. CHRISTIANSEN, DipTP, FRICS, FPMI, MNZPI, AREINZ

*Senior Lecturers*

1964 I. E. GEORGE, BArch N.Z., MArch Calif., ANZIA

1967 M. R. AUSTIN, BArch N.Z., PhD, FNZIA

1969 C. W. MEGSON, MArch, RIBA, FNZIA

1970 JOHN D. DICKSON, BArch PhD

1973 R. J. W. GRANWAL, ME, MIPENZ

1974 G. DODD, BSc R'dg., MSc (Eng) PhD DipAud S'ton.

1979 K. J. MORROW, DipArch RMIT

1979 H. B. WILLEY, MA PhD Camb., BArch MSc

1979 JOHN G. HUNT, BArch PhD, ANZIA

1979 M. P. T. LINZEY, BE Cant., PhD Melb., ME, MIEAust

1979 C. A. BIRD, MA DipUD Oxf.Pol, BArch

1981 G. R. JENNER, BA Otago, BArch

1982 A. WARD, DipArch Birm., RIBA

1985 GRAEME L. ROBERTSON, BArch, ANZIA, MNZIOB, FRSA

*Lecturer*

1981 SARAH TREADWELL, BArch

*Lecturer, part-time*

\*PATRICK J. HANLY, MNZSP

### PROPERTY

*Associate Professor, Head of Department (to 31.1.91)*

1978 W. KENNETH S. CHRISTIANSEN, DipTP, FRICS, FPMI, MNZPI, AREINZ

*Professor, Head of Department (from 1.2.91)*

*Senior Lecturers*

1974-1976, 1988 RODNEY L. JEFFERIES, BCA Well., DipUrbVal, FNZIV, FPMI

1979-1987, 1989 ROBIN A. BELL, DipSurv Lond., DipUrbVal, FPMI, ANZIV, AREINZ

1989 D. M. LINDBERG, BA, MPMI

*Lecturer*

1986 DEBORAH S. LEVY, BLE Aberd., ARICS, MPMI

### PLANNING

*Senior Lecturer, Head of Department*

1965 MICHAEL H. PRITCHARD, BSc Wales, DipTP, MNZPI

*Professor*

1984 ROBERT B. RIDDELL, MA Camb., PhD N'cle. (U.K.), DipTP N.Z., ARICS, MNZPI, MNZIS

*Senior Lecturers*

\*1963 J. R. DART, MSc DIC Lond., DipTP, MNZIS, MNZPI

1974 M. A. TAYLOR, MA N.Z., PhD Lond., MRTPI, MNZPI

\*1986 L. ANTHONY WATKINS, BArch N.Z., MArch DipTP, FNZIA, RIBA

*Lecturers*

1987 P. M. AUSTIN, BSc Sus., BPhil N'cle. (U.K.)

1989 DANIEL J. BARRY, BA N.Y. State, JD Virginia, MPAURP Prin.

\*1989 JEANETTE M. FITZSIMONS, BA

\*1989 J. D. LUNDAY, BA Glas., MRTPI

## ART HISTORY

*Professor, Head of Department*

1969 A. S. G. GREEN, MA Camb., PhD Edin., DipHistArt Lond.

*Senior Lecturers*

1979 MICHAEL R. DUNN, DipFA Cant. & Auck., MA Melb., PhD

1971 ALAN J. WRIGHT, MA Edin.

\*1969-71, 1975 ELIZABETH E. EASTMOND, MA Edin.

1973 LEONARD B. BELL, DipArtHist Edin., BA PhD

1974 I. B. BUCHANAN, BA Manc., MA Essex, MA

*Lecturers*

1977 ROBIN L. WOODWARD, PhD Edin., MA

1988 NGAHUIA TE AWEKOTUKU, DPhil Waik., MA

*Senior Tutor*

1985 D. J. D. BASSETT, PhD Edin., MA

## ASIAN LANGUAGES AND LITERATURES

*Professor of Chinese*

.....  
*Associate Professor of Chinese*

1967 MARGARET T. S. SOUTH, BA Syd., PhD A.N.U.

*Senior Lecturer in Chinese*

1988 BINGJUN PANG, BA Nankai

*Senior Lecturers in Indonesian*

1968 J. B. KWEE, BA Lond., PhD

1974 E. O. van REIJN, Drs Ley

*Senior Lecturers in Japanese*

1970 SETSUKO ITO, (Miss), MA Doshisha, MPhil PhD Lond.

1972 T. TAKAGAKI, BA Wakayama, MA San Francisco State

1973 T. AKIMA, MA Waseda

*Lecturers in Chinese*

1984 MANYING IP (Mrs), BA H.K., MA PhD

1986 D. M. CAMPBELL, BA Well., MA

*Lecturers in Japanese*

1986 JUDITH N. RABINOVITCH, BA Wash., MA PhD Harv.

1987 WAYNE P. LAWRENCE, MA Tokyo U.F.S.

1988 ATSUKO KIKUCHI, BA Sophia, MA Hawaii

## BIOCHEMISTRY

*Senior Lecturer, Head of Department*

1976 G. K. SCOTT, BSc Manc., PhD Edin.

*Professor*

1974 A. G. C. RENWICK, MA Camb., MDChB PhD Edin., FRCPATH, CChem, FRSCHEM

*Associate Professors*

1970 R. GEDDES, BSc PhD Edin

1977 THOMAS BRITAIN, BSc PhD ScD E. Anglia, CChem, FRSCHEM, FNZIC

*Senior Lecturers*

1969 A. M. ROBERTON, BSc Otago, DPhil Oxf.

1974 P. M. BARLING, BA Oxf. PhD Lond.

1984 D. L. CHRISTIE, BSc PhD

*Assistant Lecturers*

A. DAVID HIEBER, MSc Otago

SUSHILA B. MANILAL, BSc

B. RABEL, MSc Colombo

*Tutor*

E. HITCHINGS (Mrs) BSc

*University Post-Doctoral Fellow*

G. WEISSHAAR, PhD DipChem Heidel.

HILARY C. TALBOT, BSc PhD Lond.

**BOTANY***Professor, Head of Department*

1976 PETER H. LOVELL, BSc PhD Sheff.

*Associate-Professor,*

1956 JOHN M. A. BROWN, BSc PhD Durh.

*Senior Lecturers*

1966 FRANK I. DROMGOOLE, BSc N.Z., MSc PhD

1969 JOHN E. BRAGGINS, MSc Well., PhD

1972 LAWRENCE C. W. JENSEN, AB Brown, MSc PhD Minn.

1977 NEIL D. MITCHELL, MA Oxf., MSc Wales, PhD N'cle. (U.K.)

1979 JOHN OGDEN, MSc PhD Wales

1983 MICHAEL N. PEARSON, BSc C.N.A.A., PhD Exeter

1984 BRIAN G. MURRAY, BSc PhD R'dg., FLS

1987 PHILIP J. HARRIS, MA PhD Camb.

*Lecturers*

1984 ALISON STEWART, BSc Glas., PhD Stir.

1988 KEVIN S. GOULD, BSc Bath, PhD Manc.

*Senior Tutor*

G. MARIE TAYLOR, MSc Well.

*Research Fellow*

JULIE WHITE, BSc PhD

*Honorary Lecturers*

R. L. BIELESKI, MSc N.Z., PhD Syd., FRSNZ

A. ROSS FERGUSON, MSc Well., PhD

FRANK H. WOOD, MAgrSc Massey, PhD Cant.

**CELLULAR AND MOLECULAR BIOLOGY***Professor, Head of Department*

1966 S. BULLIVANT, BSc PhD DSc Lond.

*Professors*

1964 P. L. BERGQUIST, MSc PhD N.Z., FRSNZ

1963 R. K. RALPH, MSc N.Z., PhD DSc N.S.W., MNZIC

*Associate-Professor*

1968 A. R. BELLAMY, BSc N.Z., MSc PhD, FRSNZ

*Senior Lecturer*

1978 R. C. GARDNER, BA MSc PhD

*Lecturers*

1982 W. JUDD, BA PhD

\*1981 Mrs J. A. O'BRIEN, MSc

*MRC Senior Research Fellows*

J. KISTLER, DipNat ETH Zür., PhD Basle

T. WILSON, BSc PhD

*Research Fellows*

R. D. BUTCHER, BSc PhD Oxf.

D. J. DAY, BSc PhD *S'ton.*  
 P. J. DONALDSON, BSc PhD *Otago*  
 A. GRUENBERG, BSc PhD *Monash*  
 A. KÖNIGSTORFER, PhD *Salzburg*  
 E. LIN, BSc PhD *C'nell.*  
 R. H. McHALE, BSc *Edin.*, PhD *Adel.*  
 T. E. RICHARDSON, BA PhD *Penn.*  
 D. J. SAUL, BSc PhD *Sheff.*  
 P. M. STAPLETON, MSc PhD  
 L. R. WISEMAN, BSc PhD *N'cle.*  
*University Post-Doctoral Fellows*  
 K. M. BORGES, BSc PhD *Dartmouth*  
 D. P. FIGGITT, BSc PhD *Nott.*  
 J. A. TAYLOR, BSc *Aber.*, PhD *Edin.*  
*Honorary Lecturer*  
 L. G. FRASER, MSc PhD

## CHEMICAL AND MATERIALS ENGINEERING, *see* Engineering

### CHEMISTRY

#### *Professor, Head of Department*

1986 RALPH P. COONEY, BSc PhD *Q'ld.*, FRACI, FNZIC

#### *Professors*

1958 R. C. CAMBIE, MSc PhD *N.Z.*, DPhil *Oxf.*, DSc., FRSNZ, FNZIC  
 1962 BRIAN R. DAVIS, MSc PhD *N.Z.*, DPhil *Oxf.*, DSc., CChem, FRSC, FNZIC  
 1966 W. R. ROPER, MSc *N.Z.*, PhD *Cant.*, FRs, FRSNZ, FNZIC  
 1958 CHARMIAN J. O'CONNOR, CBE, JP, MSc *N.Z.*, PhD DSc, FRSNZ, CChem, FRSC, FNZIC

#### *Associate-Professors*

1961 GRAHAM A. WRIGHT, MSc *N.Z.*, DPhil *Oxf.*, FNZIC  
 1967 P. S. RUTLEDGE, MSc PhD *N.Z.*, DSc, FNZIC  
 1968 D. J. McLENNAN, BSc *N.Z.*, MSc PhD *Well.*, DSc, FNZIC  
 1962 J. E. PACKER, MSc *N.Z.*, PhD *Lond.*, FNZIC, CChem, FRSC  
 1966 MICHAEL J. TAYLOR, MA DPhil *Oxf.*, FNZIC, CChem, FRSC  
 1970 GEORGE R. CLARK, MSc PhD DSc, FNZIC  
 1971 PAUL D. WOODGATE, MSc PhD DSc, FNZIC  
 1968 GRAHAM A. BOWMAKER, BSc PhD *Syd.*, FNZIC, ARACI

#### *Senior Lecturers*

1965 B. A. GRIGOR, MSc *N.Z.*, PhD *Leic.*, MNZIC,  
 1966 ALLAN J. EASTEAL, MSc *N.Z.*, PhD *Tas.*, MNZIC  
 1968 C. E. F. RICKARD, BSc *N.Z.*, MSc PhD, FNZIC  
 1969 DAVID SHOOTER, MSc PhD, MNZIC  
 1978 P. D. W. BOYD, BSc *Tas.*, PhD *Monash*, FNZIC, ARACI  
 1984 S. J. de MORA, BSc *Wales*, PhD *Br. Col.*, CChem, MRSC, FNZIC

#### *Lecturers*

1984 L. JAMES WRIGHT, MSc PhD, MNZIC, MACS  
 1985 J. B. METSON, BSc PhD *Well.*, MNZIC  
 1987 J. M. CODDINGTON, BSc PhD *Monash*, MNZIC  
 1988 PENELOPE J. BROTHERS, MSc *Stan.*, PhD, MNZIC, MACS  
 1991 PETER HAUSER, BEng *Winterthur*, MSc *Br. Col.*, PhD *LaT.*

#### *Senior Tutors*

1982 JUDITH M. BRITTAIN, BSc PhD *E. Anglia*, MNZIC  
 1982 SHEILA D. WOODGATE, BS *Arizona*, PhD *Stan.*

#### *Honorary Professor*

WILLIAM A DENNY, MSc PhD DSc, FRSNZ, FNZIC

#### *University Post-Doctoral Fellows*

CAROL STEWART, BSc PhD *Cant.*  
 M. P. HAY, BSc PhD *Cant.*  
 THOMAS F. BARTON, BSc *Purdue*, PhD *VPI&SU*  
 RANJITH S. K. A. GAMAGE, BSc *Perad'ya*, PhD *Otago*  
 GRAHAM SAUNDERS, BA DPhil *Oxf.*

## **CIVIL ENGINEERING, *see* Engineering**

## **CLASSICS AND ANCIENT HISTORY**

*Professor, Head of Department*

1974 VIVIENNE J. GRAY, PhD Camb., MA

*Senior Lecturers*

1960 R. G. COWLIN, MA Camb.

1963 W. F. RICHARDSON, MA N.Z. & Camb., BD Otago, PhD

1971 W. R. BARNES, BA Syd., MA PhD Camb.

1981 A. J. SPALINGER, BA C.U.N.Y., MPhil PhD Yale

*Lecturers*

1987 M. J. WILSON, BA LLB Tas., MA Tor. PhD Monash

1989 A. D. LEE, BA Syd., PhD Camb.

## **SCHOOL OF COMMERCE AND ECONOMICS AND GRADUATE SCHOOL OF BUSINESS**

*Dean, Professor of Management*

1969 ALASTAIR MacCORMICK, MA, PhD Yale, BSc MCom

## **GRADUATE SCHOOL OF BUSINESS**

*Director MBA Programmes*

*Director, Executive Short Course Programme*

1987 J. RICHARD S. HIGHAM, MA Oxf., DipArch Lond.

*Director, Diploma in Business Programme*

1989 MICHAEL C. GROVES, MA Otago

## **ACCOUNTING & FINANCE**

*Senior Lecturer, Head of Department*

1969 G. L. D. MORRIS, BCom BCA Well.

*Professors*

1968-71, 1975 D. M. EMANUEL, MCom PhD, FCA

1989 BARRY H. SPICER, BCom Q'ld., PhD Wash.

*Professor of Finance*

1987 R. G. BOWMAN, BA Pomona, MS San Diego State, PhD Stan., CPA Calif.

*NZI Professor of Banking and Insurance*

1988 C. F. ANSLEY, BSc Cant., MSc Well., PhD Mich., FFIA, ASA

*Associate-Professors*

1978 MARTIN S. PUTTERILL, MBA PhD Cape T., CA, FCMA

1990 JOHN B. RYAN, BCom N.Z., MCom, ACA, ACIS, CMA, CPA, FAIM, FASA

*Senior Lecturers*

1971 M. A. PERKINSON, MCom, ACA

1982 MICHAEL E. BRADBURY, MCom PhD, ACA, CMA

1984 MICHAEL G. KEENAN, PhD St And., MA BCom DipVal

1985 ALAN M. TEIXEIRA, MCom, ACA

1987 A. P. B. ROUSE, MCom, ACA

1988 WILLIAM A. A. MAGUIRE, BCom Natal, MBL S.A., CA(SA)

*Lecturers*

1984 DEREK M. SPEER, MCom, ACA

1986 HELEN C. GEORGE (Miss), MCom, ACA

1986 SONJA NEWBY (Mrs), MCom, ACA

1987 C. CLIFFE (Miss), BA MCom Cant., ACA

1988 FORREST E. YOUNG, BS Seattle & Lewis & Clark, MAcc Montana, CPA Wash.

1989 LLOYD M. M. AUSTIN, MCom, ACA

1989 ANNE R. DAVY, BCom, ACA, ACIS

1990 ALISTER HUNT, BSc MCom

*Senior Tutors*

1973 C. B. FRANKHAM, BCom *N.Z.*, MCom, ACA  
 1979 KATHRYN G. CAIRD, BSc *Otago*, BCom  
 1986 B. K. BENNETT, MCom, ACA, ACIS  
 1986 ROSEMARY F. SPENCE (Mrs), BA *Cant.*, BBS *Massey*, ACA, ANZIM  
 1988 Y. K. H. YIP, BEc *Macq.*

**COMMERCIAL LAW***Professor, Head of Department*

1971 IAN G. EAGLES, BA, LLB *Q'ld.*, PhD *Camb.*, LLM

*Associate Professor*

1975 GARTH A. HARRIS, LLB MJur

*Senior Lecturers*

1979 JOHANNA C. VROEGOP (Ms), LLM  
 1984 WAYNE D. MAPP, LLM *Tor.*, PhD *Camb.*, LLB  
 1985 M. J. ROSS, BCom LLM

*Lecturers*

1985 M. LOUISE LONGDIN, BA LLB MJur  
 1988 BARBARA REA (Mrs), BA LLB  
 1989 ROSS B. GRANTHAM, LLM  
 1990 CHRISTOPHER M. OHMS, BCom LLM  
 1990 CHRISTOPHER C. NICOLL, BA LLM  
 1990 LEIGH MILLER (Ms), BA LLM  
 1990 ELIZABETH C. MINOGUE (Ms), LLB

*Senior Tutor*

1990 BARBARA UEHLIN (Ms), BA LLB

**ECONOMICS***Associate Professor, Head of Department*

1978 S. R. H. JONES, BSc (Econ) PhD *Lond.*

*Professors*

1972 C. A. BLYTH, MA *N.Z.*, PhD *Camb.*  
 1973 R. H. COURT, BA BSc *N.Z.*, PhD *N.S.W.*, MA

*Senior Lecturers*

1964 K. D. S. JONES, BA *Wales*, MSc(Econ) PhD *Lond.*  
 1972 KENNETH E. JACKSON, BA PhD *Kent*  
 1983 ANTHONY M. ENDRES, MSocSc *Waik.*, PhD *W' gong*  
 1985 SHOLEH MAANI, MS PhD *Ill.*  
 1986 ROSELYNE JOYEUX, BA *Aix*, MA PhD *Calif.*  
 1986 ALAN J. ROGERS, AM PhD *Prin.*, MA  
 1981 SUSAN M. ST. JOHN, BSc MA *N.Z.*  
 1990 BASIL M. H. SHARP, BAgCom(Econ) DipVFM DipAg *Lincoln*, MS PhD *Wis.*

*Lecturers*

1979 ROBERT D. J. SCOLLAY, MA *Well. & Camb.*, B.Com  
 1988 MIA MIKIC, MSc *Calif.*, MSc PhD *Zagreb*  
 1988 ANJUM SIDDIQUI, MA *Ott.*, PhD *S.Fraser*  
 1989 SIMON P. VILLE, BA PhD *Lond.*

*Senior Tutors*

1983 KATHRIN M. BOARDMAN, BSc MCom *Cant.*  
 1987 SUSAN S. LAURENSEN, BCom MA  
 1990 GILLIS MACLEAN, BSc

**MANAGEMENT SCIENCE AND INFORMATION SYSTEMS***Professor, Head of Department*

1990 JUSTO A. DIAZ, BSc *Ottawa*, PhD *Calif.*

*Senior Lecturers*

1974 DONALD H. PETERS, BA *Washington & Jefferson*, MBA *Stan.*  
 1982 JAMES SHEFFIELD, MBA *Wis.*, PhD *Arizona*, MSc  
 1984 KAMBIZ E. MAANI, MSc *Tehran*, MSc PhD *Ill.*

1986 LECH J. JANCZEWSKI, MAsc *Tor.*, MEng DEng *Warsaw*

1989 PETER MAZANY, PhD *Yale*, BSc MCom

*Lecturer*

1989 MICHAEL D. MYERS, MA PhD

*Tutors*

1989 MOERA BUTLAND, BCom

1990 MARK COSTER, BCom

## MANAGEMENT STUDIES AND LABOUR RELATIONS

*Professor, Head of Department*

1980 J. H. KERR INKSON MA *Aberd.*, MPhil *Lond.*, PhD *Otago*

*Associate Professor*

1972 JOHN S. DEEKS, MA *Camb.*, DipPM *Lond.*

*Senior Lecturers*

1973 JUDITH C. I. McMORLAND, BA *Leeds*, MA DipEd *Massey*, DipYthWk *Manc.*, PhD (Jtly with Continuing Education)

1987 J. RICHARD S. HIGHAM, MA *Oxf.*, DipArch *Lond.*

1988 NIGEL A. F. HAWORTH, BA, BPhil, PhD *Liv.*

1988 MICHAEL J. POWELL, PhD *Chicago*, MA

1990 MARYAN STREET, BA *Well.*

*Lecturers*

1982 PAUL F. ROBINSON, BA *Open*, BSc U.M.I.S.T.

1987 PETER F. BOXALL, MCom.

1990 JUDITH K. PRINGLE (Ms), BSc PhD *Otago*

*Senior Tutor*

1989 FELICITY LAMM, BA MPhil

## MARKETING AND INTERNATIONAL BUSINESS

*Professor, Head of Department*

1988 R. J. BRODIE, BSc PhD *Cant.*, MA *Otago*

*Professor*

1986 R. WAYNE CARTWRIGHT, MAgrSc *Massey*, PhD *Purdue*

*Associate Professor*

1983 RICHARD W. BROOKES, BCA *Well.*, MSc *Lond.*

*Senior Lecturers*

1971 BRIAN D. MURPHY, MA PhD

1987 ROBERT A. BERG, BScE W.P.I., MBA *Chic.*

1987 DONALD R. SCOTT, BSc *Rhodes*, MBA PhD *Witw.*

1989 MICHAEL C. GROVES, MA *Otago*

*Lecturers*

1978 ROGER MARSHALL, MCom

1985 MICHELLE E. M. AKOORIE, MBA *City*, BA

1987 DAVID S. E. SHIEFF, MCom

1989 BRIAN J. BLOCH, MCom *Witw.*, PhD *S.A.*

1989 NICOLE E. COVIELLO, BCom MSc *Sask.*

## COMMERCIAL LAW, *see* Commerce

## COMMUNITY HEALTH, *see* Medicine and Human Biology

## COMPUTER SCIENCE

*Associate-Professor, Head of Department*

1982 ROBERT W. DORAN, BSc *Cant.*, MS *Stan.*

*Professors*

*Senior Lecturers*

- 1971 MICHAEL J. J. LENNON, PhD *M.I.T.*, MSc  
 1972 PETER M. FENWICK, MSc PhD, MIEEE, MACM  
 1973 G. ALAN CREAK, BA *Camb.*, PhD *Leeds*  
 1979 RICHARD J. E. LOBB, MSc PhD  
 1981 PETER B. GIBBONS, MSc *Massey*, PhD *Tor.*  
 1984 WARWICK B. MUGRIDGE, BSc BA *Massey*, MSc PhD  
 1985 JOHN G. HOSKING, BSc PhD, MemIEEE

*Lecturer*

- 1981 BRUCE W. HUTTON, PhD *Warw.*, MSc

*Senior Tutors*

- 1985 JENNIFER A. LENNON, BSc *N.Z.*, MSc

*Honorary Lecturer*

- J. N. BROWNLEE, MSc PhD, MIEE, MNZIP

**CONTINUING EDUCATION, Centre for***Director*

- 1985 NOELINE E. ALCORN, MA *N.Z.*, PhD *Calif.*, DipEd *Massey*, FNZEAF

*Senior Lecturers*

- 1962 PETER B. BECROFT, MA *N.Z.*, PhD *Calif.*  
 1973 JUDITH C. I. McMORLAND, BA *Leeds*, MA DipEd *Massey*, DipYthWk *Manc.*, PhD (jointly with Dept. of Management Studies and Labour Relations)  
 1978 ANTHONY A. MORRISON, MA PhD DipEd (jointly with Higher Education Research)

*Lecturer*

- 1986 CLAUDIA H. F. BELL, BA *Massey*, MA

**EDUCATION***Professor, Head of Department*

- 1973 JAMES D. MARSHALL, BA PhD *Brist.*

*Professor*

- 1989 I. ROGER DALE, BA *Leeds*, PhD *Brist.*, PGCE *Lond.*

*Associate-Professors*

- 1976 STUART S. McNAUGHTON, MA PhD  
 1980 KERI M. WILTON, PhD *Alta.*, MA  
 1990 TOM NICHOLSON, MA *Syd.*, PhD *Minn.*

*Senior Lecturers*

- 1968 BARTON A. MacARTHUR, MA PhD  
 1971 JOHANNES F. EVERTS, MA DipClinPsych *Cant.*, PhD DipEdPsych  
 1976 VIVIANE M. J. ROBINSON, PhD *Harv.*, MA  
 1978 ROGER A. PEDDIE, MA *N.Z.*, Dipd'Etsup *Poitiers*, PhD  
 1978 COLIN J. LANKSHEAR, MA PhD *Cant.*  
 1982 BRYAN F. TUCK, PhD *Cant.*, MA  
 1984 GARY J. McCULLOCH, MA PhD *Camb.*  
 1985 DENNIS W. MOORE, PhD *P.N.G.*, MA DipEdPsych  
 1986 DEREK HODSON, Bsc, PhD *Manc.*, MEd *Wales*, PGCE *Exe.*, CChem, FRSC, FNZIC

*Senior Lecturer in Child Studies*

- 1981 MICHAEL A. R. TOWNSEND, MA *Cant.*, PhD *Ill.*

*Senior Lecturers in Bi-cultural Education*

- 1988 GRAHAM H. SMITH, MA  
 1988 LINDA T. T. R. SMITH, MA

*Lecturers*

- 1987 ALISON JONES, BSc *Massey*, MPhil PhD  
 1989 DIANNE S. SNOW, BA PhD DipEd *W'gong.*  
 1990 MARGARET N. AGEE, MA, DipGuid

*Senior Tutor*

- 1979 KATHRYN C. IRWIN, BA *Min.*, MEd *Harv.*



## ENGINEERING

*Dean, Professor of Mechanical Engineering*

1969 R. F. MEYER, BE N.Z., PhD Manc., FCASI, MAIAA, FIPENZ, FRAeS

## CHEMICAL AND MATERIALS ENGINEERING

*Professor, Head of Department*

1969 GEOFFREY G. DUFFY, BSc N.S.W., PhD DEng, ASTC, FRSNZ, FICHEM, FIMCNZ, CEng

*Professor of Chemical and Materials Engineering*

1981 BARRY J. WELCH, MSc N.Z., PhD DSc, FRSNZ, MAICHe, FRACI, FNZIC, MAIME

*Professor*

1973 ROY M. SHARP, MA DPhil Oxf., CEng, MIMMA

*Associate-Professors*

1968 W. GEORGE FERGUSON, BSc BE N.Z., PhD, CEng, MIPENZ, FIMMA, FIM

1986 KEVIN W. FREE, ME MSc N.Z., PhD Camb.

1969 ERROL G. KELLY, BE PhD Otago, AOSM, CEng, MAIME, MIMM, FAUSIMM

*Senior Lecturers*

1970 JOSEPH T. GREGORY, BSc Idaho, PhD Wis., MASM, MAWS, MIMMA

1971 MICHAEL L. ALLEN, BSc(Eng) Lond., ME, CEng, MICHEM, MAICHe., MIPENZ

1984 JOHN J. J. CHEN, BE PhD, CEng, MICHEM, MIPENZ

1986 HANS M. MULLER-STEINHAGEN, DiplIng DrIng Karlsruhe, MASME, MAICHe

*Lecturer*

1989 PETER A. DEARNLEY, BSc PhD Birm., CEng, MIM

*University Post-Doctoral Fellows*

M. JAMIALAHMADI, BSc Ferdowsi, MSc PhD PGDip Asto

MARGARET M. HYLAND, BSc Guelph, PhD W. Ont.

## CIVIL ENGINEERING

*Professor, Head of Department*

1981 PETER G. LOWE, BE N.Z., MA Camb., MEngSc Syd., PhD Lond., CEng, FIPENZ, MICE, MIEAust

*Professors*

1977 MICHAEL J. PENDER, BE PhD Cant., MIPENZ, MASCE

1987 JOHN D. FENTON, BE MEngSc Melb., PhD Camb., DipCE B.J.T., MIEAust, MIPENZ

*Associate Professor*

1975 RICHARD C. FENWICK, BE N.Z., PhD Cant., MIPENZ

*Senior Lecturers*

1967 BRUCE H. CATO, BE N.Z., CEng, FIPENZ, FIHT, AARBINZ

1969 IAN W. GUNN, BE N.Z., DipPHE N'cle (U.K.), CEng, MICE, MIPENZ, FIWEM

1969 ANTHONY H. BRYANT, BE PhD Cant.

1972 ROGER C. M. DUNN, BE BSc N.Z., MEngSc N.S.W., DipTP, FITE, MIHT, MIPENZ

1979 COLIN D. CHRISTIAN, BSc(Eng), PhD S'ton., CEng, MICE, MIPENZ, MASCE

1979 BARRY J. DAVIDSON, BE PhD

1980 JOHN W. BUTTERWORTH, BE PhD Sur.

1980 THOMAS J. LARKIN, BE PhD, AMASCE

1981 BRUCE W. MELVILLE, BE PhD, AMICE, MIAHR

1986 LAURENCE D. WESLEY, MSc DIC PhD Lond., ME, MASCE, MIPENZ

1986 LESLIE M. MEGGET, ME Cant., DiplISEE Tokyo, MIPENZ

1989 HUGH W. MORRIS, ME, MIPENZ

*Timber Engineering Research Fellow*

R. D. HUNT, BE PhD

## ELECTRICAL AND ELECTRONIC ENGINEERING

*Professor, Head of Department*

1975 A. G. WILLIAMSON, BE PhD CEng, FIEE, MemIEEE, MIPENZ

*Professors*

1977 J. L. WOODWARD, BE, N.Z., MASCE Tor., CEng, FIEE, FIEAust, FIPENZ

1977 JOHN T. BOYS, ME PhD, MIPENZ

*Associate Professor*

\*\*\*\*\*

*Senior Lecturers*

- 1966 H. B. GATLAND, BSc N.Z., DipElectronics S'ton., CEng, MIEE, FIMCNZ  
 1986 L. J. CARTER, BSc Kent, MPhil, P.N.G. Tech., CEng, SMIEEE, MIEE  
 1987 G. G. COGHILL, BSc H.-W., BA Open, PhD Kent, CEng, MIEE

*Lecturers*

- 1984 G. B. ROWE, ME PhD, MemIEEE  
 1985 B. J. GUILLEMIN, BE PhD  
 1990 N. C. PAHALAWATHTHA, BSc PhD Calg., MemIEEE  
 1990 K. W. SOWERBY, BE PhD, MemIEEE  
 1990 M. ANDREWS, BE PhD, MemIEEE  
 1990 A. GREEN, BE PhD

*Senior Tutor*

- 1984 G. R. HIGGIE, ME, MIEE

**ENGINEERING SCIENCE***Professor, Head of Department*

- 1981 IAN F. COLLINS, MA PhD Camb., FIMA

*Associate Professors*

- 1962 DONALD A. NIELD, MA Camb., MSc N.Z., BD Otago, PhD, FIMA  
 1969 MICHAEL J. O'SULLIVAN, BE N.Z., PhD Cal. Tech, BSc ME  
 1975 DAVID M. RYAN, MSc Otago, PhD A.N.U., FIMA

*Senior Lecturers*

- 1978 PETER J. HUNTER, DPhil Oxf., ME  
 1981 ROBERT McKIBBIN, MSc Cant., PhD  
 1986 SUSAN J. BYRNE, BSc Well., DIC PhD Lond

*Lecturers*

- 1986 ANDREW B. PHILPOTT, BA BSc Well., MPhil PhD Camb.  
 1988 ROGER I. NOKES, BSc PhD Cant.  
 1990 ANDREW J. PULLAN, BSc PhD

*Research Fellows*

- MARGARET R. BLAKELEY, BE, PhD  
 DAVID P. BULLIVANT, MSc PhD

**MECHANICAL ENGINEERING***Professor, Head of Department*

- 1986 JOHN L. DUNCAN BMechEng Melb., MSc PhD Manc., FASM

*Professor*

- 1977 PETER S. JACKSON, PhD Camb., ME, CEng, MIPENZ, MRAeS

*Associate Professor*

- 1982 GORDON D. MALLINSON, BSc Well., PhD N.S.W., MIEAust

*Associate Professor in Professional Engineering*

- 1969 DEREK H. FREESTON, BSc Lond., CEng, MRAeS, FIMechE, MIPENZ (jtdy with Geothermal Institute)

*Senior Lecturers*

- 1970 G. W. BLANCHARD, MSc Man., MIMC  
 1973 GEORGE MOLTSCHANIWSKYJ, MSc(Eng) Lond.  
 1975 J. DES TEDFORD, BSc(Eng), PhD Belf., CEng, MIProdE, ANZIM  
 1977 ROBERT R. RAINE, BSc PhD S'ton.  
 \*1980 FERGUS J. THOMSON, MSc Otago, PhD  
 1981 DEBES BHATTACHARYYA, ME Calc., PhD Jad., MASME  
 1982 PETER J. RICHARDS, BSc R'dg, PhD C.N.N.A., AMRAeS  
 1982 BRIAN R. MACE, MA DPhil Oxf.  
 1984 RICHARD G. J. FLAY, BE PhD Strath., CEng, MIMechE, MIPENZ  
 1987 JOHN S. McFEATERS, BS ME Pitt., MS ME Minn., PhD C.M.U.  
 1988 JOSEPH DEANS, BSc PhD Strath., CEng, MIMechE, MIPENZ

*Lecturers*

- 1986 RAINER H. A. SEIDEL, DiplWirtschIng Karlsruhe, PhD  
 1988 STEPHEN M. PANTON, BSc PhD Aston  
 1988 PRADEEP K. BANSAL, BSc Meerut, MSc Roor., PhD I.I.T. Delhi  
 MRC Senior Research Fellow  
 NEIL D. BROOM, BE Melb., PhD

*Research Fellow (Yacht Research Unit)*

DAYNE LAIRD, ME

**MINING ENGINEERING incorporating the Otago School of Mines***Associate Professor, Head of Department*

1957 MICHAEL H. BUCKENHAM, BSc Lond., ME Otago, MSc DIC Lond., CEng, AOSM, FAusIMM, MIPENZ, MIMM

*Senior Lecturers*

1977 JOHN D. ST GEORGE, BSc Lond., MSc N'cle U.K., CEng, ARSM, MIMM

1984 WILLIAM E. VANCE, MSc Nott., CEng, FIMM, MIEAust, FAusIMM, FIMinE, MIPENZ

**GEO THERMAL INSTITUTE within the Faculty of Engineering***Associate-Professor, Director of Geothermal Institute*

1972 M. P. HOCHSTEIN, DipGeophys T.U. Clausthal, DrRerNat Mün. (jtly with Dept. of Geology)

*Associate Professor in Professional Engineering*

1969 D. H. FREESTON, BSc Lond., CEng, MRAeS, FIMechE, MIPENZ (jtly with Dept. of Mech. Eng.)

*Associate Professor*

1979 P. R. L. BROWNE, BSc Cape T., MSc Leeds, PhD Well. (jtly with Dept. of Geology)

*Senior Lecturer (in Engineering)**Lecturer*

1987 K. NICHOLSON, BSc C.N.A.A., MSc Manc., PhD Strath., CChem, MRSC, MNZIC, FAEG

**ENGLISH***Professor, Head of Department*

1964 M. P. JACKSON, MA N.Z., BLitt Oxf.

*Professors*

1973 D. I. B. SMITH, MA N.Z., DPhil Oxf.

1980 T. L. STURM, CBE, PhD Leeds, M.A.

1988 ALBERT WENDT, MA Well.

*Associate Professors*

1966 R. J. HORROCKS, BA N.Z., MA PhD

1967 M. A. F. NEILL, MA Otago, PhD Camb.

1970 W. T. L. CURNOW, BA N.Z., PhD Penn., MA

*Senior Lecturers*

1966 W. SEBASTIAN BLACK, BA Leeds

1968 AOREWA P. McLEOD, MA Well., BPhil Oxf., BA

1969 J. LAMB, BA DPhil York (U.K.)

1972 STEPHANIE J. HOLLIS, BA Adel., PhD A.N.U.

1973 K. J. LARSEN, PhL Rome, MA PhD Camb.

1973 R. H. LEEK, MA PhD

1977 R. H. NICHOLSON, MA Well.

1979 D. G. WRIGHT, MA Cant., PhD Tor.

1980 BRIAN D. BOYD, MA Cant., PhD Tor.

*Lecturer in Drama**Lecturers*

1981 M. J. WRIGHT, MA Oxf., PhD N.E.

1985 W. SCOTT ALLAN, MA PhD Edin.

1986 ROBIN E. HOOPER, MA

1987 JOANNE C. WILKES, BA Syd., DPhil Oxf.

1990 BRIDGET E. ORR, BA Well., MA C' nell, PhD Camb.

1991 SOPHIE E. TOMLINSON, BA Well

*Lecturer in English Language Teaching**Senior Tutors*

1971 RIEMKE ENSING, MA

1971 MARGARET A. EDGE CUMBE, MA

1987 JACQUELINE R. GREENWOOD, MA

1988 A. J. CALDER, MA PhD

*Tutor*

.....  
*Honorary Research Fellow*

W. H. PEARSON, MA N.Z., PhD Lond.

## FINE ARTS

*Professor, Head of Department*

1961 JOLYON D. SAUNDERS, DipFA N.Z., DipIndusDesign, NDD, FNZSD

*Associate Professors*

1957 ROBERT W. ELLIS, ARCA, RBA, MNZSSPA, FRSA, MNZSD

1966 G. L. TWISS, DipFA, N.Z.,

*Senior Lecturers*

1971 JOHN B. TURNER

1975 A. GARCIA-ALVAREZ, PD Barcelona

1979 D. H. BINNEY, DipFA N.Z., MNZSSPA

1978 R. M. SIMPSON, MFA Ill., BFA

1977 P. E. DADSON, DipFA

1980 B. G. de THIER, DipFA Cant., MNZSD

1980 D. C. WATKINS, DipRCA Lond., DipGD Well. P.

\*1981 R. J. FRIZZELL, DipFA

\*1984 CHRISTINE HELLYAR, DipFA

*Lecturer*

1985 MEGAN L. JENKINSON, BFA

\*1989 CAROLE M. SHEPHEARD, DipFA

1990 JOHN FAIRCLOUGH, MA Middx. P., ATD Liv.

## FRENCH, *see* Romance Languages

## GEOGRAPHY

*Professor, Head of Department*

1972 PAUL W. WILLIAMS, BA Durh., MA Dub., PhD Camb.

*Professor*

1968 WARREN MORAN, MA N.Z., PhD

*Associate Professors*

1965 G. ROSS COCHRANE, MA BSc N.Z., PhD, FBIS

1970 R. J. WARWICK NEVILLE, MA DipEd N.Z., PhD Lond

*Associate-Professor, Director Environmental Science*

1987 JOHN E. HAY, BSc Cant., PhD Lond

*Senior Lecturers*

1968 PETER L. HOSKING, BA N.Z., MA Cant., PhD S.Ill.

1976 HONG-KEY YOON, BA Seoul, MS Brigham Young, PhD Calif.

1977 CHRISTOPHER R. de FREITAS, MA Tor., PhD Q'ld.

1980 STEPHEN G. BRITTON, MA Massey, PhD A.N.U.

1982 NEAL J. ENRIGHT, BA W.Aust., PhD A.N.U.

*Lecturers*

1985 CHRISTOPHER R. COCKLIN, BSocSc Waik., MA Guelph, PhD McM.

1986 DAVID V. HAWKE, BA Adel., MSc Winw., PhD

1986 KEVIN E. PARNELL, MA PhD James Cook

1989 ROBIN A. KEARNS, MA PhD McM.

## GEOLOGY

*Professor, Head of Department*

1970 PHILIPPA M. BLACK, BSc N.Z., MSc PhD, FMSAm, FRSNZ

*Associate Professors*

1958 J. A. GRANT-MACKIE, MSc N.Z., PhD

1969 K. B. SPÖRLI, DipIngGeol DrScNat Zür., FGSAm

1964 K. A. RODGERS, MSc PhD, FRNSNZ, FNZIC

1978 M. P. HOCHSTEIN, DipGeophys *T.U. Clausthal*, DrRerNat *Mün.* (jtlly with Geothermal Institute)

1979 P. R. L. BROWNE, BSc *Cape T.*, MSc *Leeds*, PhD *Well.*, (jtlly with Geothermal Institute)

#### *Senior Lecturers*

1960 P. F. BALLANCE, BSc PhD *Lond.*

1966 G. W. GIBSON, BSc *N.Z.*, PhD *Well.*

1967 H. W. KOBE, DrPhil *Zür.*

1971 M. R. GREGORY, BSc *N.Z.*, PhD *Dal.*, MSc

1975 W. M. PREBBLE, MSc *Well.*, PhD

1980 I. E. M. SMITH, BSc *Well.*, PhD *A.N.U.*

1981 R. J. PARKER, MSc *Cape T.*, PhD *Lond.*

\*1981 J. CASSIDY, BSc PhD *Liv.*

#### *Lecturers*

1987 B. B. BEAMISH, BSc *Tas.*, MSc *N.S.W.*, MAusIMM

1987 K. NICHOLSON, BSc *C.N.A.A.*, MSc *Manc.*, PhD *Strath.*, CChem, MRSC, MNZIC (jtlly with Geothermal Institute)

1989 D. S. CLARKE, BSc *W. Aust.*, MSc *W. Ont.*, MAusIMM

#### *Honorary Lecturer*

CORINNE A. LOCKE, BSc PhD *Liv.*, FGS

*University Post-Doctoral Fellow*

C. C. HARVEY, MSc PhD *Ind.*

## GERMANIC LANGUAGES AND LITERATURE

#### *Professor, Head of Department*

1966-72, 1986 ALAN KIRKNESS, BA *N.Z.*, DPhil *Oxf.*, MA

#### *Associate-Professor*

1966 KATHRYN SMITS, MA *N.Z.*, DrPhil *Freib.*

#### *Senior Lecturers*

1972 SUZANNE TYNDEL, (Mrs), MA *N.Z.*

1976 JAMES NORTHCOTE-BADE, MA *Well.*, DrPhil *Zür.*

1978 FRIEDRICH VOIT, DrPhil *Saar*

#### *Senior Lecturer in Scandinavian Studies*

1965-68 1975 O. LENNART WAARA, FilMag *Uppsala*

#### *Senior Tutors*

1969 MARTIN J. SUTTON, MA

1979 UTA HAGEN (Mrs), MA *Freib.*

#### *Tutor in Scandinavian Studies*

1989 I. ANITA WILTSHIRE (Mrs), MA *Göteborg*

## GREEK, *see* Classics

## HEBREW, *see* Classics

## HISTORY

#### *Associate-Professor, Head of Department*

1972 RAEWYN DALZIEL, BA PhD *Well.*

#### *Professors*

1965 P. N. TARLING, MA PhD LittD *Camb.*, FRAS, FRHistS

1956-58, 1964 M. P. K. SORRENSON, MA *N.Z.*, DPhil *Oxf.* FRHistS

#### *Associate Professors*

1971 VALERIE I. J. FLINT, MA DPhil *Oxf.*, FRHistS

1966 JUDITH M. C. BINNEY BA N.Z., MA  
 1967 M. A. R. GRAVES, BA *Camb.*, PhD *Otago*  
 1972 P. H. ROUSSEAU, MA DPhil *Oxf.*, FRHistS  
 1978 L. Y. ANDAYA, BA *Yale*, AM PhD *C' nell*.

*Senior Lecturers*

1965 MARGARET H. LAMB (Mrs), BA PhD *Lond.*  
 1970 H. M. LARACY, MA *Well.*, PhD *A.N.U.*  
 1976 R. T. PHILLIPS, MA PhD *Camb.*  
 1980 B. H. MOSS, BA *C' nell*, MA PhD *Col.*, J.D *Calif.*, Dipd'Ei *Paris*  
 1982 B. G. REAY, BA *Adel.*, DPhil *Oxf.*, FRHistS

*Lecturers*

1988 LINDA BRYDER, DPhil *Oxf.*, MA  
 \*1989 RAELENE FRANCES, MA *W. Aust.*, PhD *Monash*  
 1989 G.A. HAYWOOD, MPhil *Col.*, MA  
 \*1989 B. SCATES, BA PhD *Monash*, DipEd *Melb.*

*Senior Tutors*

\*1974 JUDITH O. BASSETT, MA, LLB  
 1979 BARBARA J. WATSON ANDAYA, BA *Syd.*, MA *Hawaii*, PhD *C' nell*.

**INDONESIAN, see Asian Languages and Literatures**

**ITALIAN, see Romance Languages**

**JAPANESE, see Asian Languages and Literatures**

**KOREAN, see Asian Languages and Literatures**

**LATIN, see Classics**

## LAW

*Professor, Head of Department*

1988 R. G. HAMMOND, LL.M. Ill., LL.B. MJur

*Professors*

1961 BRIAN COOTE, LL.M. N.Z., PhD *Camb.*  
 1966 F. M. BROOKFIELD, BA LL.B. N.Z., DPhil *Oxf.*  
 \*1987 J. A. FARMER, QC, PhD *Camb.*, LL.M.  
 1982 M. B. TAGGART, LL.M. *Harv.*, LL.B.

*Associate-Professors*

1962-65, 1969 B. J. BROWN, LL.B. *Leeds*, LL.M. *Sing.*  
 1968 D. W. McMORLAND, PhD *Camb.*, LL.M.  
 1969 K. A. PALMER, LL.M. *Harv. & Auck.*, SJD *Virginia*  
 \*1973-78, 1981 G. F. DAWSON, BA BCL *Oxf.*  
 1972 W. C. HODGE, AB *Harv.*, JD *Stan.*

*Senior Lecturers*

1969 P. J. EVANS, BA LL.B. *Otago*, PhD *Camb.*, LL.M.  
 1970 PAMELA E. RINGWOOD, BA *Syd.*, LL.M. DipSocSc *Adel.*  
 1973 J. B. ELKIND, BA *Col.*, JD *N.Y.*, LL.M. *Lond.*  
 1977 MARGARET A. VENNEL, LL.B. N.Z.  
 1974 PAULINE TAPP, LL.B. MJur  
 1974 DAVID V. WILLIAMS, BA LL.B. *Well.*, BCL *Oxf.*, PhD *Dar.*, DipTheol *Oxf.*  
 1979 S. J. MACFARLANE, MA LL.B. N.Z.

1974 M. A. WILSON, LLB MJur  
 1980 T. J. McBRIDE, LLB *Well.*, LLM *Dal.*  
 1979 E. JANE KELSEY, LLB *Well.*, BCL *Oxf.*, MPhil *Camb.*  
 1985 J. K. MAXTON (Miss), LLB *Lond.*, LLM *Cant.*

*Lecturers*

1983 G. L. WILLIAMS, BCom LLM, ACA  
 1983 W. J. BROOKBANKS, LLM  
 1985 P. G. WATTS, LLB *Cant.*, LLM *Camb.*  
 1986 R. J. PATERSON, BCL *Oxf.*, LLB  
 1986 JOANNA M. MANNING, LLM *George Wash.*, BA LLB  
 1987 P. T. RISHWORTH, LLB MJur  
 1988 ANNABEL L. MIKAERE, LLB *Well.*  
 1988 K. BOSSELMANN, DrIur *Freie U. Berlin*

*Lecturers, Part-time*

JUDGE J. CADENHEAD, LLB *N.Z.*  
 MARGUERITE HALLEN, BA LLB *Natal*  
 T. KENNEDY-GRANT, MA *Oxf.*  
 D. B. MATHIAS, BSc LLM PhD  
 L. L. STEVENS, BCL *Oxf.*, BA LLB  
 P. C. SUMPTER, MA LLB  
 A. I. M. TOMPKINS, LLB *Cant.*, LLB *Camb.*  
 J. W. TURNER, MJur, LLM *Dal.*  
 D. A. R. WILLIAMS, QC, LLM *Harv.*

*Visiting Professors*

V. BLACK, MA *Ott.*, LLB *Tor.*, LLM *Calif.*  
 J. D. DAVIES, LLB *Wales*, BCL *Oxf.*  
 D. PACIOCCO, LLB *U.W.O.*, BCL *Oxf.*

*Seconded Lecturer (from Department of Sociology)*

CATHERINE WEST-NEWMAN, MA *Lond.*, MA PhD

*Co-ordinator of Community Law Placements*

ANN E. JONES, BA DipEd *Wales*, LLB

## LEIGH LABORATORY

*Lecturer, Scientist in Charge*

1987 T. A. V. REES, BSc *Liv.*, PhD *Wales*, MIBiol

*Senior Lecturer*

1965 W. J. BALLANTINE, MA *Camb.*, PhD *Lond.*, MIBiol

*Lecturers*

1982 R. G. CREESE, BSc PhD *Syd.*  
 1987 N. W. PANKHURST, BSc *Otago*, PhD *Brist.*

*Post-Doctoral Fellow*

M. DEDUAL, DipBiol PhD *Frib.*

## MANAGEMENT SCIENCE & INFORMATION SYSTEMS, *see* Commerce

## MANAGEMENT STUDIES & LABOUR RELATIONS, *see* Commerce

## MARKETING & INTERNATIONAL BUSINESS, *see* Commerce

## MATHEMATICS AND STATISTICS

### *Professor, Head of Department*

1972 ALASTAIR J. SCOTT, MSc N.Z., PhD Chic., (Statistics Unit)

### *Professors*

1958 J. A. KALMAN, MA, N.Z., AM PhD Harv.

1969 DAVID B. GAULD, PhD Calif., MSc

1966 JOHN C. BUTCHER, MSc N.Z., PhD DSc Syd., FRSNZ, FIMA (Applied & Computational Mathematics Unit)

### *Professor, Head of Statistics Unit*

1965-71, 1973 GEORGE A. F. SEBER, MSc N.Z., PhD Manc.

### *Associate-Professors*

1966 PETER J. LORIMER, MSc N.Z., PhD McG., FRSNZ

1970 IVAN L. REILLY, BA MSc Well., AM PhD Ill., FIMA

1971 MAVINA K. VAMANAMURTHY, MSc Mys., MS PhD Mich.

### *Senior Lecturers*

1967 KENNETH ASHTON, BSc Manc.

1968 GANESH D. DIXIT, BA Agra, MA DPhil Alld.

1968 GARRY J. TEE, MSc N.Z., FIMA

1970 PAUL R. HAFNER, DipMaths DrPhil Zür.

1971 P. RAMANKUTTY, BA Madr., MSc Kerala, MA PhD Indiana

1969 DAVID P. ALCORN, BSc N.Z.

1971 BRUCE D. CALVERT, MS PhD Chic., BSc

1969 CHRISTOPHER C. KING, MSc Well., MSc Warw.

1970 DAVID J. SMITH, BA Portland State, MA PhD Wash. State

1971 JOEL L. SCHIFF, AM PhD Calif.

1971 WAYNE J. WALKER, PhD Ill., MSc

1974 ALAN J. LEE, PhD N. Carolina, MA (Statistics Unit)

1979 CHRISTOPHER J. WILD, PhD Wat., MSc (Statistics Unit)

1981 KEVIN BURRAGE, MSc PhD, FIMA (Applied and Computational Mathematics Unit)

1986 CATHERINE A. A. MACKEN, MSc Massey, PhD C' nell. (Statistics Unit)

1982 SIMON P. FITZPATRICK, BSc W. Aust., PhD Wash.

1983 MARSTON D. E. CONDER, MSocSc Waik., MSc DPhil Oxf.

1990 CHRISTOPHER M. TRIGGS, MSc PhD (Statistics Unit)

1990 PETER J. DANAHER, BSc N.Z., MS Purdue, PhD Flor. (Statistics Unit)

1990 COLIN FOX, MSc N.Z., PhD Camb. (Applied and Computational Mathematics Unit)

### *Lecturers*

1986 WIREMU SOLOMON, PhD Wis., MSc

1988 GAVEN J. MARTIN, PhD Mich., MSc

### *Senior Tutors*

1969 R. E. SWENSON, MSc

1985 MARGARET J. MORTON, PhD Penn. State, MSc

### *Computer Programmers*

\*JOHN R. PEMBERTON, MSc

\*PETER DOBCSANYI, MSc Szeged

## MECHANICAL ENGINEERING, *see* Engineering



---

## MEDICINE AND HUMAN BIOLOGY

---

### SCHOOL OF MEDICINE

*Dean, Professor of Medicine*

1989 J. D. K. NORTH, CBE, MBChB N.Z., DPhil Oxf., FRCP, FRACP

*Senior Lecturers, Physico-Chemistry*

1960 GRAHAM R. WHITE, MSc N.Z., MNZIC

---

### POST GRADUATE AFFAIRS IN MEDICINE

*Associate-Dean of Postgraduate Affairs in Medicine*

1975 C. H. MACLAURIN, MBChB N.Z., FRCS, FRACS

---

### ANATOMY

*Associate-Professor, Head of Department*

1978 RICHARD L. M. FAULL, BMedSc MBChB Otago, PhD

*Professor*

1968 JOHN B. CARMAN, BMedSc MBChB N.Z., DPhil Oxf.

*Professor of Radiology*

1986 STUART W. HEAP, MBBS Lond., FRCR, FRACP

*Associate-Professor in Reproductive Biology (jtly with Dept. of Physiology)*

1969 DENYS P. BOSHIER, MSc N.Z., PhD Brown

*Associate-Professors*

1976 MERVYN J. MERRILEES, BSc Otago, PhD Tor.

1973 CYNTHIA G. JENSEN, AB Brown, PhD Minn.

*Senior Lecturer*

1984 J. MARTIN WILD, MA Cant., PhD

*Senior Lecturer in Radiology*

1988 ALAN R. LIST, MBChB Otago, FRACP

*Senior Lecturer in Biology for Medicine*

1989 LOUISE F. B. NICHOLSON, MSc PhD

*Lecturer in Anatomy*

1989 BRENDA V. DAWSON, BA Keele, MD Arizona

*Senior Tutors in Biology for Medicine*

1972 R. MERE ROBERTS BSc Cant. MSc

1982 COLIN G. QUILTER, PhD Otago, BSc

*Senior Research Fellow*

STEPHEN J. M. SKINNER, BSc PhD S'ton (jtly with Department of Paediatrics)

---

### BIOCHEMISTRY, *see Biochemistry*

---

### COMMUNITY HEALTH

*Professor, Head of Department*

1979 ROBERT BEAGLEHOLE, MDChB Otago, MSc Lond., MRCP, FRACP, MCCMNZ

*Senior Lecturer in Medical Sociology*

1976 PETER B. DAVIS, BA S'ton., MSc Lond., PhD

*Senior Lecturer in Community Health*

\*1988 ROBERT N. McKEGG, BDS N.Z., DipPH(Dent) Syd.

*Senior Lecturer in Epidemiology*

1983 ROBERT K. R. SCRAGG, MBBS Adel., PhD Flin., MCCMNZ

1990 RODNEY T. JACKSON, DipComH Otago, BSc MBChB MMedSc PhD DipObst, MCCMNZ

*Lecturer in Biostatistics*

1986 ROGER J. MARSHALL, MSc S'ton., PhD Brist.

*Lecturer in Maori & Pacific Island Health*

1989 DAVID C. TIPENE-LEACH, DipComH Otago, MBChB

*Senior Research Fellow*

IAN C. T. LYON, MSc Well., PhD Otago, MAACB

*Deputy Director, National Testing Centre*

DIANNE R. WEBSTER, PhD Lond., MSc, MNZIC

*Executive Director Alcohol Research Unit*

SALLY CASSWELL, BA Sheff., PhD Otago

**GENERAL PRACTICE***Elaine Gurr Professor of General Practice, Head of Department*

1989 BRIAN R. McAVOY, BSc MBChB Glas. MD Leic., MRCP, FRCGP

*Associate Professors*

1973 JOHN G. RICHARDS, MBChB N.Z., FRCGP, FRNZCGP, FRCPEd, FRACP

*Senior Lecturers*

1988 ALEX N. THOMSON, BSc MBChB DipObst, MRNZCGP

1990 PAULINE A. McAVOY, MBChB Glas. (Bristol-Meyers Squibb Teaching Facilitator)

1990 JOCELYN M. TRACEY, MBChB MMedSc DipObst, MRNZCGP

*Sir William Goodfellow Director of Continuing Medical Education in General Practice*

1978 P. M. BARHAM, BSc MBChB Otago, DipObst, MRCGP, FRNZCGP

**MEDICINE, The Department of***Associate-Professor, Head of Department*

1978 D. N. SHARPE, MBChB MD Otago, DipABIM DipABCVD, FRACP FACC

*Professor of Medicine*

1973 SIR JOHN SCOTT, KBE, BMedSc MBChB N.Z., MD Birm., FRSNZ, FRCP, FRACP

*Professor of Endocrinology*

1970 H. K. IBBERTSON, MBChB N.Z., FRCP, FRACP

*N.Z. Masonic Professor of Geriatrics*

1973 D. E. RICHMOND, MBChB N.Z., MD Otago, MHPed N.S.W., DipABIM, DipABNeph FRCP, FRACP

*National Heart Foundation Professor of Cardiovascular Studies*

1979 W. F. LUBBE, MBChB MD Cape T., FCP(SA), FRACP, FACC

*Honorary Professor*

1969 PHILIPPA M. WIGGINS, MSc N.Z., PhD Lond.

*Associate-Professor of Gastroenterology and Human Nutrition*

1971 C. TASMAN-JONES, BSc MBChB N.Z., FRCP, FRACP

1978 I. J. SIMPSON, MBChB Otago, MD, FRACP

*Senior Lecturers*

1971 D. J. SCOTT, BMedSc MBChB N.Z., MRCP(UK), FRACP

1980 E. W. WILLOUGHBY, MBChB Otago, FRACP

1987 J. KOLBE, MBBS Q'ld., FRACP

1987 I. R. REID, MBChB MD, FRACP

1987 I. HAMILTON, MBBS MD Lond., MRCP, MRCS

1988 T. F. CUNDY, MA MBBChir MD Camb., MRCP(UK)

1990 P. N. BLACK MBChB, FRACP

*Senior Lecturer in Geriatric Medicine*

1986 J. J. BASKETT, MBChB Otago, FRACP

*Honorary Associate-Professor*

1981 I. M. HOLDAWAY, BMedSc. MDChB Otago, FRFACP

## MOLECULAR MEDICINE

*Professor, Head of Department*

1980 J. D. WATSON, MSc PhD

*Honorary Professor*

1976 J. MARBROOK, MSc PhD

*Associate-Professor, Haematology*

\*1971 J. G. BUCHANAN, BMedSc MBChB N.Z., MA Mich., FRCPEd, FRACP, FRCPath, FRCPA

*Senior Lecturers in Microbiology*

1971 D. A. BREMNER, MBChB N.Z., FRCPA

1988 M. G. THOMAS, MBChB DipObst, FRACP

*Senior Lecturer in Haematology*

1989 P. J. BROWETT, BMedSc MBChB Otago, FRACP, FRCPA

*Senior Lecturers in Immunology*

1987 L. McK. CAIRNS, MSc MBChB MD, FRACP

1987 P. L. J. TAN, MBBS Sing., FRACP

*Senior Tutor*

1987 M. G. HEAP, MSc Otago

*Senior Research Fellows*

MARGOT A. SKINNER, BSc PhD

N. M. BIRCHALL, MBChB Brist.

R. J. BOOTH, MSc PhD

P. S. CROSIER, MSc PhD Otago

R. L. PRESTIDGE, BSc PhD Massey

J. D. FRASER, BSc PhD

G. W. KRISSANSEN, BSc PhD DipSc Otago

A. GEURSEN, MSc PhD Otago

## OBSTETRICS and GYNAECOLOGY

*Professor in Obstetrics and Gynaecology, Head of Department*

1973 C. D. MANTELL, BMedSc MBChB Otago, PhD DipObst, FRNZCOG, FRCOG

*Professor*

.....  
*Associate-Professor in Steroid Biochemistry*

1969 J. T. FRANCE, MSc N.Z., PhD, FNZIC, FAACB

*Senior Lecturers*

1982 M. G. JAMIESON, BMedSc MBChB Otago, MSc Edin., DPhil Oxf., MRCOG, FRNZCOG

1982 A. B. ROBERTS, MDChB Aberd., MRCOG

1985 N. S. PATTISON, BSc MBChB MD DipObst, MRCOG

\*1987 L. M. E. McCOWAN (Mrs.), BSc MBChB DipObst, MRCOG, MRNZCOG

1989 J. C. SCHELLENBERG, DM Lausanne, PhD, FHM, FRNZCOG, DABA

1989 C. M. FARQUHAR (Mrs) MBChB DipObst, MROG

*MRC Career Fellow*

W. B. WATKINS, MSc PhD DSc

## PAEDIATRICS

*Professor, Head of Department*

1988 P. D. GLUCKMAN, MBChB Otago, MMedSc DSc, FRSNZ, FRACP

*Research Professor in Child Health*

1970 R. B. ELLIOT, MBBS MD Adel., FRACP

*Associate-Professors*

1971 J. M. COSTELLO, MBChB N.Z., FRCP, FRACP

1972 R. N. HOWIE, MBChB N.Z., FRACP

*Senior Lecturers*

- 1976 M. C. MORRIS, MBChB Otago, FRACP, FRCPCan  
 1976 S. R. WEALTHALL, MDChB Sheff.  
 1981 M. INNES ASHER, BSc MBChB, FRACP  
 1982 DIANA R. LENNON, MBChB Otago, FRACP  
 1984 E. A. MITCHELL, BSc MBBS Lond., DCH, FRACP  
 1989 JANE E. HARDING, DPhil Oxf., BSc MBChB, FRACP

*Senior Lecturer in Clinical Genetics*

1990 C. J. CHAPMAN, BSc BMedSc MBChB Otago, PhD

*Senior Lecturer in Paediatric Surgery*

\*1990 ANNE KOLBE, MBBS, FRACS

*MRC Senior Research Fellow*

BARBARA M. JOHNSTON, BSc S'ton., DPhil Oxf.

*NCHRF Senior Research Fellow*

SUZANNE L. DAVIS, BMedSc MBChB Otago

*Senior Research Fellow*

ALISON W. WESLEY, MBChB Otago, DipObst, DCH, FRACP

*Research Fellows*

S. REDDY, DipSc MSc Otago, PhD

B. BREIER, Diplng Gott., PhD

G. AMBLER, MBBS Syd., FRACP

*UGC Postdoctoral Fellow*

N. KLEMPPT, DiplngAgr Gott., PhD

*Honorary Associate Professor*

1990 TANIA GUNN, MBCh MD, FRCPCan

**PATHOLOGY***Professor, Head of Department*

1988 J. R. JASS, BSc MD Lond., MRCPATH

*Professor, Experimental Pathology*

1970 J. B. GAVIN, BDS N.Z., PhD DDS DSc Otago, FRCPath

*Associate-Professor, Anatomical Pathology*

1970 J. F. ARTHUR, MD Lond., FRCPath

*Associate-Professor, Forensic Medicine*

1981 T. D. KOELMEYER, MBBS Ceyl., FRACS, FRCPA

*Associate-Professor, Oncology*

1976 J. C. PROBERT, MA BMCh Oxf., DMRT Lond., FRCR, MBACR, DipAmerBdRad

*Honorary Professors*

1985 B. C. BAGULEY, MSc PhD, MNZMS

1986 W. A. DENNY, MSc PhD DSc, FNZIC

*Senior Lecturer, Anatomical Pathology*

1978 BETH J. L. SYNEK, MBChB Otago, FRCPA

*Senior Lecturer*

1989 JANE C. VULETIC, MBChB, FRACS, FRCPA

*Senior Research Fellow*

LOIS C. ARMIGER, BSc N.Z., MSc PhD

*MRC Senior Research Fellow*

W. R. WILSON, BSc Well., MSc PhD

*Research Officer*

Y. S. CHOONG, BSc Lagos, MSc Cran. I.T., DIC PhD Lond.

**PHARMACOLOGY and CLINICAL PHARMACOLOGY***Professor, Head of Department*

1977 G. S. M. KELLAWAY, MDChB N.Z., FRCP, FRCPEd, FRACP

*Honorary Professor in Cardiovascular Therapeutics*

1980 R. M. NORRIS, MBChB N.Z., MD Birm., FRCP, FRACP

*Associate-Professor of Anaesthetics*

1978 R. A. BOAS, MBChB, N.Z., FFARACS

*Senior Lecturers*

1977 J. W. PAXTON, BSc PhD Glas.

1979 SHEILA A. DOGGRELL, BSc PhD S'ton.

*Senior Lecturer in Clinical Pharmacology*

1984 N. H. G. HOLFORD, MSc MBChB Manc., MRCP(UK), FRACP

*MRC Senior Research Fellow*

IAIN G. C. ROBERTSON, BSc Massey, PhD

**PHYSIOLOGY***Professor, Head of Department*

1968 J. D. SINCLAIR, BMedSc MBChB MD N.Z., FRACP

*Professor of Neurophysiology*

1986 J. LIPSKI, MD PhD DSc Warsaw

*Associate-Professor*

1971 P. McN. HILL, MA MBChB BAO PhD Dub.

*Senior Lecturers*

1970 M. N. EADE, MBChB N.Z., MD Birm., FRACP

1972 NOEL J. DAWSON, BSc PhD N.E.

1976 E. M. A. BULLIVANT, BSc Lond., PhD

1977 J. R. SLACK, BSc PhD Lond.

1977 B. H. SMAILL, BSc BE Cant., PhD Lond., DIC

1982 D. S. LOISELLE, MSc Alta., PhD Dal., DipPhEd Otago

1984 S. M. ROBINSON, MBChB Otago, MSc Adel., FFARACS

1989 P. R. THORNE, BSc DipSc Otago, PhD

*MRC Senior Research Fellow*

S. POCKETT, MSc PhD

*Research Fellows*

1989 G. HOUSLEY, MSc PhD

1989 I. LE GRICE, BE BHB MBChB DipTP

**PSYCHIATRY AND BEHAVIOURAL SCIENCE***Associate-Professor in Adult Psychiatry, Head of Department*

1976 J. J. WRIGHT, MBChB MD Otago, FRACP, MRPsych, FRANZCP

*Professor*

1970 J. S. WERRY, BMedSc MBChB N.Z., MD Otago, DipPsych McG., FRCPCan, FRANZCP

*Senior Lecturers in Psychiatry*

1978 R. G. LARGE, MBChB DPM Cape T., PhD, FFPsych SA, FRANZCP

1984 R. R. KYDD, MBChB Otago, PhD, FRANZCP

1988 M. J. VAMOS, BHB MBChB, FRANZCP

*Senior Research Fellow*

G. J. LEES, BSc PhD Melb.

*Associate-Professor in Behavioural Science*

1972 J. M. RAEBURN, PhD Qu., MA MSc

*Senior Lecturer in Behavioural Science*

1989 KEITH PETRIE, PhD DipClinPsych

*Senior Tutors in Behavioural Science*

1975 R. G. R. NAIRN, MSc

1980 VALERIE J. GRANT, MA PhD, NZRN

*Lecturer in Behavioural Science***SURGERY***Professor, Head of Department*

1980 GRAHAM L. HILL, MBChM Otago, MD Leeds, FRACS, FRCS, FACS

*Sir William Stevenson Professor of Orthopaedic Surgery*

1975 D. HARLEY GRAY, MBChB N.Z., MMedSc ChM Otago, FRACS

*Associate Professors*

1970 RONALD G. KAY, MBChB, N.Z., FRCS, FRACS

1984 JAMES H. F. SHAW, BMedSci MDChB Otago, FRACS

*Sir William Stevenson Associate-Professor of Plastic and Reconstructive Surgery*

1979 DONALD F. LIGGINS, MBMS Syd., FRACS

*Sir William Stevenson and Lady Stevenson Senior Lecturer in Ophthalmology*

1984 M. M. GILLIAN CLOVER, MBChB Otago, PhD Lond., FRACS, FRACO

*Senior Lecturers*

1974 W. THOMAS MORRIS, MBChB Brist., PhD Sheff., FRCS

1979 JOHN P. COLLINS, MBMCh N.U.I., FRCS, FRCSEd, FRACS

1989 ANDREW C. L. CAMPBELL, MBChB

*Senior Lecturer in Transplantation Surgery*

1989 STEPHEN R. MUNN, MBChB Otago, FRACS

*Senior Lecturer in Orthopaedic Surgery*

1979 GARNET D. TREGONNING, MBChB Otago, FRACS, FRCSCan

*Honorary Senior Lecturer: Trauma & Military Surgery*

IAN D. S. CIVIL, BSc MBChB, FRACS

*Lecturer*

1990 DEBBIE VERRAN MBChB, FRACS

*Senior Research Fellow*

C. ANTHONY POOLE, BSc PhD Otago

*Senior Research Physicist*

LINDSAY PLANK, MSc PhD

*Research Physicist*

S. MITRA, MSc PhD Poona

*M.R.C. Research Fellow*

GRANT S. KNIGHT, MSc PhD

**CLINICAL LECTURERS TO THE SCHOOL OF MEDICINE****Anatomy***Clinical Lecturers*

M. Flint, MBBS Lond., FRCS, FRACS

G. A. Foote, MBChB Otago, FRACR

M. R. Hart, MBChB Cape T.

M. L. Herdson, MBChB, FRACR

B. Hochstein, BSc MBChB, DRACR, FRACR

A. Hope, MBChB Dundee, DDR, FRACR

R. G. Sim, MBChB Otago, DipObst, FRACR

**Community Health***Clinical Lecturers*

T. Ashton, MA

J. W. McLeod, MBChB, DPH Otago, MCCMNZ

**General Practice***Clinical Lecturers*

Wilma F. Grant, BA MEd Aberd. MBChB,

MRNZCGP

D. Hoadley, MBChB, DRCOG, MRCGP

A. N. Thompson, MBChB, DipObst, MRNZCGP

**Medicine***Clinical Readers*

J. A. Birkbeck, MBChB Edin., FRCPCan AMBD

CertPed

Robin H. Briant, MDChB Otago, FRACP,

MRCP(UK)

D. E. Caughey, MBChB N.Z., FRCPEd, FRACP

J. M. Neutze, MD Otago, MBChB N.Z., FRACP

*Clinical Lecturers*

T. M. Agnew, MBChB N.Z.,

MFRACP, MFRCP(Lond)

M. R. Ali, MBBS Mys., FRACP

N. E. Anderson, BSc MBChB, FRACP

H. P. Birch, MBChB Sheff., MRCP (UK)

- M. J. Butler, MBChB *Otago*, DipObst, MRCP(UK), FRACP  
 M. Caruana, MBBS *Lond.*, FRACP  
 E. D. Clarke, MBChB *Otago*, MRCP(UK), FRACP  
 J. F. Collins, MBChB *Otago*, FRACP  
 J. V. Conaglen, MDChB *Otago*, FRACP  
 H. A. Coverdale, MBChB *Otago*, FRACP  
 M. S. Croxson, MBChB *Otago*, FRACP  
 R. G. Cutfield, MBChB FRACP  
 A. Daniels, MBChB *Cape T.*, FCP (SA)  
 J. G. Davison, MBChB *Otago*, FRACP  
 P. B. Doak, MBChB *N.Z.*, MRCP, FRACP  
 R. Dunlop, MBChB *Otago*, FRACP  
 R. J. Eason, MBBChir *Camb.*, DipObst, FRACP  
 P. D. Frankish, BSc MBChB, FRACP  
 P. A. Frengley, MBChB *Otago*, FRCPCan, FRACP  
 R. W. Frith, BSc MBChB, FRACP  
 J. E. Garrett, MBChB *Otago*, FRACP  
 P. G. Gow, MBChB BMedSc *Otago*, FRACP, FACRM  
 R. R. Grigor, MBChB *Otago*, FRACP  
 R. G. Harris, MBChB *Otago*, DipObst, FRACP  
 A. G. Harrison, MBBS *Adel.*, FRACP  
 H. H. Hart, BSc MBBCh *Witw.*, FCP(SA), MRCP(UK), FRACP  
 R. K. Haydon, MBChB *Otago*, DipObst, FRACP, MNZCGP  
 J. W. Henley, MBChB *Otago*, FRACP  
 P. G. Henley, MBChB *Otago*, FRACP  
 I. M. Holdaway, MDChB, BMedSc *Otago*, FRACP  
 N. C. Karalus, BSc, MBChB, FRACP  
 M. R. Lane, BSc, MBChB, FRACP  
 N. Lynch, MBChB, FRACP  
 C. J. Mercer, MBChB *N.Z.*, FRCP, FRACP  
 G. I. Nicholson, MBChB DipObst *N.Z.*, FRCP, FRACP  
 R. M. Norris, MBChB *N.Z.*, MD *Birm.*, FRCP, FRACP  
 J. C. Okpala, MBBS *P.N.G.*, MRCPI  
 H. H. Rea, MDChB *Edin.*, FRCPEd(UK), FRACP  
 R. M. Reynolds, MBChB *Otago*, BSc, FRACP  
 M. D. J. Robertson, MBChB *N.Z.*, FRCP, FRACP  
 A. H. G. Roche, MBChB *N.Z.*, FRACP  
 T. Rose, MBChB *Otago*, FRACP  
 R. P. Rothwell, MBChB *N.Z.*, FRCP, FRACP  
 P. Janet Say, MBBS *Lond.*, MRCS, LRCP, DipVen *Lond.*, FRCPPath  
 Marilyn A. Scott, MBChB, FRACP  
 M. Searle, BSc, BM *S'ton.*, MRCP  
 J. P. Simcock, VRD, MBChB, BMedSc *N.Z.*, FRACP, FRCP  
 G. P. Singh, MBChB *Natal.*, FRACP  
 W. M. Smith, MBChB *Otago*, FRACP  
 W. M. Van der Merwe, MBChB *Cape T.*, FRACP  
 A. G. Veale, MBChB *Otago*, BSc, FRACP, DipDHM  
 M. R. Wallace, MBChB, BMedSc *N.Z.*, FRCP, FRACP  
 W. E. Wallis, BA *Harv.*, MD *Rochester*, FRACP, AMBD Cert Neurol  
 L. C. Williams, MBChB *Otago* FRACP  
 M. Wilsher, MDChB *Otago*, FRACP  
 J. N. Wishart, MBChB *Otago*, FRACP  
**Molecular Medicine**  
*Clinical Readers*  
 R. B. Ellis-Pegler, MBChB *Otago*, FRACP, FRCPA, DTM & H *Lond.*  
 J. R. D. Matthews, BAgSci *Massey*, MBChB *Otago*, DipObst, FRCPA, FRACP  
*Clinical Lecturers*  
 H. A. Blacklock, MBChB *Otago*, FRACP, FRCPA  
 M. C. Croxson, MBChB *Otago*, FRCPA  
 R. Y. Harding, MBBS *Lond.*, FRCPC  
 S. D. R. Lang, MBChB *Otago*, FRACP, FRCPA  
 P. A. Ockelford, MBChB, FRACP, FRCPA  
 A. M. Ramirez, MBChB *Brist.*, DCH, DTM & H, MRCP(UK), FRCPA, FRACP  
 A. R. Varcoe, MBChB, *Otago*, FRACP, FRCPA  
 D. G. Woodfield, MBChB *N.Z.*, PhD, FRCP *Edin.*, FRCPA  
**Obstetrics and Gynaecology**  
*Clinical Lecturers*  
 D. A. Ansell, BSc MBChB BMedSc *Otago*, MRCOG, FRNZCOG  
 M. A. H. Baird, MBChB *Otago*, FRCOG, FRNZCOG  
 G. C. Bye, MBChB DipObst *Otago*, MRCOG, FRNZCOG  
 M. Carter, MBChB, MRCOG  
 S. Hastie, MBChB *Otago*, MRCOG, FRNZCOG, DCH  
 C. P. T. Hutchison, MBChB DipComH *Otago*, MRCOG, FRNZCOG  
 M. Insull, MBChB DipObst, MRCOG, FRNZCOG  
 Y. Lake, MBBS *Lond.*, MRCOG  
 Hilary S. Liddell, BSc MBChB DipObst, MRCOG, MRNZCOG  
 A. R. MacIntosh, MBChB, MRCOG, MRNZCOG  
 E. Ozumba, BMBCh *Nigeria*, MObstetGynae *Liv.*, MRCOG  
 P. T. Patten, MBChB, FRCOG, FRNZCOG  
 C. Roke, MBChB *Otago*, DipObst  
 J. H. Taylor, MBChB *N.Z.*, FRCOG, FRNZCOG  
 A. H. Widjaja, MD *Antwerp*, MRCOG, FRNZCOG  
 J. R. Whittaker, MBChB *Otago*, MRCOG, MRNZCOG

**Paediatrics***Clinical Lecturers*

S. F. Aftimos, MD *Am.U.Beirut*, AM, BD Cert Ped  
 Patricia M. Clarkson, MBChB N.Z., FRACP  
 Suzanne L. Davis, BMedSc MBChB *Otago*  
 D. J. Duvall, BA *Durham (NC)*, MD, AMBD Cert  
 Ped, ABEmer Med  
 Keith Farmer, MBChB N.Z., PhD DCH *Lond.*,  
 FRCPed, FRACP  
 R. S. Ferguson, MBChB *Otago*, FRACS  
 J. D. Gillies, MBChB *Otago*, FRCPCan, FAAP,  
 FRACP  
 Tania R. Gunn, MBChB N.Z., MD, FRCPCan,  
 AMBD Cert Ped  
 A. G. James, BSc MBChB, FRACP  
 D. L. Jamison, MBChB *Otago*, FRACP  
 A. Y. L. Liang, MBBS *H.K.*, FRACP  
 R. E. Marks, MBChB *Brist.*, FRACP  
 J. E. Newman, MBChB *Otago*, FRACP  
 P. T. Nobbs, BSc MBChB, FRCPCan  
 P. W. B. Pease, MBBCh *Witw.*, FRCS  
 R. S. H. Rowley, MBChB *Otago*, FRACP  
 N. L. Stewart, MBChB *Otago*, DCM, FRACP  
 A. A. G. Trenholme, BChir MB *Camb.*, FRACP  
 M. W. Watt, MBChB *Otago*, FRACP  
 Alison W. Wesley, MBChB *Otago*, DipObst DCH  
*Lond.*, FRACP

**Pathology***Clinical Reader*

D. M. O. Becroft, MDChB N.Z., FRCPA, FRACP,  
 FRCPath, FRNZCOG

*Clinical Lecturers*

J. P. Allen, MBChB DipObst, FRCPA  
 C. S. Benjamin, MBBS *Madur*, MD DMRT *Madr.*,  
 FRACR

A. Bierre, MBChB, FRCPA  
 V. J. Harvey, MD *Lond.*, MRCS, LRCP,  
 MRCP(UK), FRACP

M. V. Miller, MBChB DipObst, FRCPA  
 J. M. Nixon, MBBS *N.S.W.*

S. P. Rainer, BSc, MBChB, FRCPA

**Pharmacology***Clinical Reader*

Robin H. Briant, MDChB *Otago*, FRACP,  
 MRCP(UK)

*Clinical Lecturers*

M. E. Futter, BSc MBBS *Lond.*, FFARCS,  
 FFARCS

B. P. Hodgkinson, BSc MBBS *N'cle. (U.K.)*,  
 FFARCS

A. H. Mark, MBChB, FFARCS

C. Moller, BSc MBBCh *Witw.* FFA(SA)

J. G. Walker, MBChB *Otago*, FFARCS,  
 FFARCSI

**Physiology***Clinical Lecturers*

E. A. Harris, MD *Liv.*, PhD *Edin.*, FRCP, FRACP  
 R. M. L. Whitlock, MBChB N.Z., DIC *Lond.*,  
 FRACP

**Psychiatry***Clinical Lecturers*

H. W. F. Albrecht, MD *Gottingen*, FRANZCP  
 L. A. Armstrong, MBChB, MRCP(UK),  
 FRANZCP

P. E. Capelle, MBBCh DPM *Witw.*, FRANZCP  
 D. Chaplow, MBChB *Otago*, FRANZCP

H. O. Clarkson, MBChB *Otago*, DipObst,  
 FRANZCP

C. G. Cumming, MBChB *Otago*, MRCPsych,  
 FRANZCP

F. C. Donnelly, DipEd N.Z., DipReligEd *Gregorian*  
*U. Brussels*, MA PhD DipCrim

R. J. Elliott, MBChB *Birm.*, FRANZCP

L. P. Fernandez, MBBS *Madras*, FRANZCP

A. R. Fraser, MBChB, DPM *Otago*, MRCPsych,  
 FRANZCP

M. S. Gudex, MBChB, MRCPsych, FRANZCP

C. Hapgood, MBBS *Lond.*, FRANZCP

M. Honeyman, MBChB *St. And.*, FRANZCP

P. Leathem, BSc MBChB, Dip.Psychiat, FRANZCP  
 D. Logie, MBChB FFPsych S.A.

Sally N. Merry, MBChB, FRANZCP

S. W. Miles, MDChB *Otago*, DipPsychiat,  
 FRANZCP

M. Patton, MBChB *Otago*, FRANZCP

F. Plunkett, MBChB *Otago*, FRANZCP

S. Wong, MBBS, MRCPsych, FRANZCP

**Surgery***Clinical Readers*

P. G. Alley, MBChB *Otago*, FRACS

J. C. Cullen, MBChB N.Z., MSc *Oxf.*, FRCS,  
 FRACS

R. J. Goodey, BMedSc MBChB *Otago*, FRACS

*Clinical Lecturers*

T. M. Astley, MBChB *Otago*, FRACS

C. S. Barber, MBChB *Otago*, FRACS

J. A. Cadwallader, MBChB, FRACS

J. F. Carter, MBChB N.Z., FRCS, FRACS

M. Caughey, MBChB *Otago*, FRACS

Joan S. Chappel, MBChB N.Z., FRACS

K. E. Clark, MBChB *Otago*, FRCSEd, FRACS

A. G. Clarke, BSc MBChB *Brist.*, FRACS, FRCS

E. B. Dorman, MBChB *Otago*, FRACS

I. D. Elliott, MBChB *Otago*, FRACS, FRACO,  
 FRCO

R. W. Farmilo, BSc MBChB, DipObst, FRACS

J. C. Gillman, MBChB N.Z., FRCS, FRCSEd,  
 FRACS



R. G. Gunn, MBChB, FRACS  
 A. E. Hardy, MBChB *Otago*, FRACS  
 C. H. Hope, MBChB, FRACO  
 J. E. Horton, MBChB *N.Z.*, FRCSEd, FRCS,  
 FRACS  
 G. F. Lamb, MBChB *N.Z.*, FRCS, FRACS  
 M. MacCormick, MBChB *Otago*, FRACS  
 A. R. McKenzie, MBChB *N.Z.*, FRCS, FRACS  
 C. G. Mellow, MBChB, FRACS  
 R. P. Morton, MBBS *Adel.*, MSc(Med) *Cape T.*  
 FRACS  
 R. O. Nicol, MBChB *Otago*, FRCSEd, FRACS  
 N. M. F. Officer, MBE, MBChB *Otago*, FRCS,  
 FRACS

C. P. Ring, MBChB *Otago*, DO *Lond.*, FRCS,  
 FRACS  
 D. L. Rothwell, MBChB *Otago*, MMedSc, FRACS  
 P. S. Simcock, MBChB *Otago*, FRCS, FRACS  
 H. L. M. Smith, MBChB *N.Z.*, FRCS, FRACS  
 D. L. Snow, MBChB *St.And.*, FACEM  
 V. F. Sorrell, MBChB *N.Z.*, FRCS, FRCSEd,  
 FRACS  
 S. J. Streat, MBChB, FRACP  
 D. S. Sumner, MBChB *Otago*, FRCS, FRACS  
 L. J. Tonkin, MBChB *Otago*, FRACS  
 B. J. Williams, BSc MBChB *Otago*, FRACS  
 J. A. Windsor, BSc MBChB MD, DipObst

## MINING ENGINEERING, *see* Engineering

## MUSIC

*Senior Lecturer, Head of Department*

1977 G. WARREN J. DRAKE, BA *N.Z.*, PhD *Ill.*, MA

*Professor*

1983 HEATH LEES, BMus MA *Glas.*, FTCL

*Associate-Professors*

1965 GERALD R. SEAMAN, MA DPhil *Oxf.*

1974 JOHN F. RIMMER, BA *N.Z.*, MusD *Tor.*, MA

*Senior Lecturers*

1979 CORAL BOGNUDA, 1er Prix (Violincello) 1er Prix (Musique de Chambre) *Paris*, ACMMelb.

1976 ANTHONY J. JENNINGS, BMus *Well.*, DipSup 1er Prix *Brussels*, CertAdvStud, GSM(Lond)

1974 DAVID NALDEN, BA *N.Z.*, 1er Prix (Violin) 1er Prix (Musique de Chambre) *Brussels*

1976 MARY T. O'BRIEN, DipPedagog *Paris Cons.*

1975 BRYAN A. SAYER, BA DipMus, LRSM, ARCM, LTCL

1983 TAMAS VESMAS

*Lecturers*

1984 JOHN A. ELMSLY, BSc BMus *Well.*, 1er Prix (Comp) *Brussels*, SpCert *Liège*, LCTL

1980 FIONA E. McALPINE, MA *Well.*, DèS *L Paris*

*Lecturer in Ethnomusicology*

1989 RICHARD M. MOYLE, MA PhD, LTCL

## OBSTETRICS & GYNAECOLOGY, *see* Medicine and Human Bio.

## OPTOMETRY

*Professor, Head of Department*

1978 L. F. GARNER, BAppSc DipEd *Melb.*, PhD *City*, LOSc DCLP, FBCO, FAAO, FVCO

*Senior Lecturer*

1984 R. J. JACOBS, MSc PhD *Melb.*, LOSc, FVCO

1991 M. K. H. YAP, BSc PhD *Brad.*, MBCO

*Lecturer*

1989 P. R. HERSE, DipAppScOptom *Q.I.T.*, PhD *Houston*

*Clinic Supervisor*

B. C. NIELSEN, BS(Optom)OD *Ill.*, MEd *Pacific*

\*Visiting Ophthalmologists

C. HOPE, MBChB, FRCS

A. T. MORRIS, MBChB *Otago*, DO Lond., FRCS, FRACO

D. SHARPE, MBChB, FRACO

*\*Academic Associates*

H. G. L. Bowen, BSc, FBCO

I. K. Laird, MSc PhD DipOpt

*\*Clinical Associates*

K. W. Atkinson, FBOA, DCLP

C. Bhargav, BOptom

E. Brown, BOptom

C. R. Earnshaw, BSc DipOpt

S. Govender, BOptom *S.A.*, MSc PhD *Houston*

S. Grindell, BOptom

L. B. Grocott, SDONZ

W. A. P. Facer, BCom

B. Howes, BOptom

S. Hunt, BOptom

J. Northey, BSc DipOpt

R. Scott, MSc

P. D. Skeates, BAAppSc *Melb.*, LOsc

G. A. Watters, DipOpt

## PACIFIC STUDIES, CENTRE FOR

*Director*

1990 MARJORIE T. CROCOMBE, BA *USP*, MA *UPNG*

*Liaison Officer*

T. AARON MARSTERS, MA

## PAEDIATRICS PATHOLOGY PHARMACOLOGY AND CLINICAL PHARMACOLOGY

} see **Medicine and  
Human Biology**

## PHILOSOPHY

*Senior Lecturer, Head of Department*

1981 JOHN C. BISHOP, BA *A.N.U.*, PhD *Camb.*

*Professor*

1980 K. KRISTER SEGERBERG, BA *Col.*, Fil Dok *Uppsala*, PhD *Stan.*

*Senior Lecturers*

1969 ROBERT NOLA, BSc *N.Z.*, PhD *A.N.U.*, MA MSc

1971 JULIAN P. YOUNG, MA *Camb. & Wayne State*, PhD *Pitt.*

1974 FREDERICK W. KROON, MA PhD *Prin.*, MA

1978 CHRISTINE H. M. SWANTON, BPhil DPhil *Oxf.*, MA

1983 STANISLAW J. SURMA, MSc PhD DSc *Cracow*

1983 STEPHEN J. DAVIES, MA *Monash*, PhD *Lond.*

*Lecturers*

1985 DENIS J. ROBINSON, BA *Melb.*, BPhil *Oxf.*, PhD *Monash*

1989 JAN CROSTHWAITE, MA *La T.*, PhD *Melb.*

## PHYSICS

*Professor, Head of Department*

1969 ALAN R. POLETTI, MSc *N.Z.*, DPhil *Oxf.*, FlInstP, FAPS, FNZIP, FRSNZ CPhys

*Professor*

1987 D. F. WALLS, MSc *N.Z.*, PhD *Härv.*, FRSNZ, FOSA, FAPS, FNZIP

*Associate-Professors*

1958 R. F. KEAM, BA *Camb.*, MSc DipHons *N.Z.*, DPhil *Oxf.*

1966 ALAN P. STAMP, MSc *N.Z.*, DPhil *Oxf.*, FlInstP, CPhys

1967 PHILIP C. M. YOCK, MSc *N.Z.*, PhD *M.I.T.*

1969 C. DAVID STOW, BSc PhD *Manc.*, DSc, FlInstP FRMetS(Japan), CPhys

1971 PAUL H. BARKER, BA *Oxf.*, PhD *Manc.*

1972 C. T. TINDLE, PhD *Br. Col.*, MInstP, MNZIP, FASA, CPhys

1975 JOHN D. HARVEY, PhD *Sur.*, MSc, MemIEEE, MNZIP

#### *Senior Lecturers*

1963 J. R. STOREY, MSc PhD *N.Z.*, MNZIP, MIEE, MAAPT

1961 ROSS GARRETT, BA MSc *N.Z.*, PhD, MInstP

1963 A. CHISHOLM, MSc *N.Z.*, PhD, MInstP(Lond.), MNZIP, CPhys

1969 Z. C. TAN, BSc *N.Z.*, MSc PhD, MInstP, CEng, MIEE

1970 GARY E. J. BOLD, BSc *N.Z.*, MSc PhD, MNZIP, MemIEEE, MASA

1970 MURRAY D. JOHNS, BSc *N.Z.*, MSc PhD, MNZIP, MemIEEE, MASA

1971 GRAEME D. PUTT, BSc PhD *Melb.*, FAIP, FNZIP

1979 BARRY J. BRENNAN, BSc PhD

1982 STUART G. BRADLEY, MSc PhD, MInstP(Lond.), MNZIP, MAMetS, FRMetS, CPhys

#### *Senior Lecturer in Physico-Chemistry*

1981 PETER R. WILLS, BSc PhD (jdy with School of Medicine)

#### *Lecturer*

1989 M. J. COLLETT, MSc *Waik.*, PhD *Essex*

1991 SZE TAN, MSc, *N.Z.*, PhD *Camb.*, MemIEE, MNZIP, AASA

#### *Senior Research Fellow*

JOHN E. TITHERIDGE, MSc DipHons *N.Z.*, PhD *Camb.*, SenMemIEE, FlInstP, FNZIP, FRSNZ

#### *Honorary Research Fellows*

1969 A. C. KIBBLEWHITE, MSc *NZ*, DIC PhD *Lond.*, FlInstP(Lond.), FNZIP, CPhys, FASA

1963 ROBERT E. WHITE, MSc PhD *N.Z.*, DSc, FlInstP, FNZIP, CPhys

#### *Postdoctoral Research Fellow*

WEIPING ZHANG, BSc MSc PhD

#### *Visiting Associate Professor*

1991 J. BRIAN EARNSHAW, MSc(Eng) *Manc.*, PhD

## **PHYSIOLOGY, *see* Medicine and Human Biology**

## **POLITICAL STUDIES**

#### *Professor, Head of Department*

1989 RICHARD G. MULGAN, BA *N.Z.*, BPhil MA *Oxf.*

#### *Associate-Professors*

1965 RUTH H. BUTTERWORTH, MA DPhil *Oxf.*

1967 GRAHAM W. A. BUSH, MA *N.Z.*, PhD *Brist.*, DipEd

1968 BARRY S. GUSTAFSON, MA *N.Z.*, DipEd *Massey*, DipSovStud *Glas.*, PhD

1972 J. STEPHEN HOADLEY, BSc *Purdue*, MA *Calif. State*, PhD *Calif.*

#### *Senior Lecturers*

1969 E. PETER AIMER, MA *N.Z.*, PhD *A.N.U.*

1970 JOHN D. PRINCE, MA *Case W. Reserve & Auck.*, PhD

1971 R. ANDREW SHARP, BA *N.Z.*, MA *Cant.*, PhD *Camb.*

#### *Lecturer*

1979 JOSEPH B. ATKINSON, MA *Cant.*, MPhil *Yale*

1990 HELENA D. CATT, MA *Edin.*, PhD *Lond.*

#### *Senior Tutor*

1984 RAYMOND K. MILLER, BA *McM.*, MA PhD DipEd

## **PSYCHIATRY, *see* Medicine and Human Biology**

## PSYCHOLOGY

### *Professor, Head of Department*

1968 GRAHAM M. VAUGHAN, MA N.Z., PhD Well., FNZPsS

### *Professors*

1962 R. J. IRWIN, MA N.Z., PhD Tufts., FNZPsS

1978 M. C. CORBALLIS, BA MSc N.Z., PhD McG., MA, FRSNZ, FAAAS, FAPA, FNZPsS

1969 MICHAEL C. DAVISON, BSc Brist., PhD Otago, DSc., FRSNZ, FNZPsS

### *Associate-Professor*

1964 IVAN L. BEALE, MSc, N.Z., PhD

### *Senior Lecturers*

1965 J. A. GRIBBEN, MA N.Z., PhD Well.

1968 GUY D. de F von STURMER, BA N.Z., MA Melb., PhD

1969 BARRY J. KIRKWOOD, BA N.Z., MA PhD

1981 JEFFERY FIELD, BA Macq., PhD A.N.U.

1985 DIANNE C. MCCARTHY, BA MSc PhD

1986 JENNIFER A. OGDEN, BSc Massey, DipSocSc N.E., MSc PhD DipClinPsych

1988 FREDERICK W. SEYMOUR, BA Well., MA W. Aust., PhD

### *Lecturers*

1988 ANTHONY J. LAMBERT, BSc Sheff., PhD Leic.

1988 JAN E. PRYOR (WATT), BSc Otago, MA PhD Cant.

1990 FIONA M. CRAM, BA PhD DipPsych Otago

### *Senior Tutor*

1990 DOUGLAS M. ELLIFFE, Bsc PhD

### *Research Fellow*

IAN M. COLRAIN, BSc PhD Tas., MACS

### *\*Associates in Clinical Psychology*

Aloma H. Colgan

P. J. Gherardi

Ruth Jackson

Sara Nevezie

Gail Ratcliffe

Jasbindar Singh

Eileen Swan

P. Waddell

## ROMANCE LANGUAGES

### *Professor of French, Head of Department*

1987 DAVID G. BEVAN, BA Leeds, MA Cape T., MèsL Grenoble, DLitt DPhil S.A.

### *Associate-Professor of French*

1969 J. C. CORNE, MA PhD

### *Associate-Professor of Italian*

1990 BRUNO G. R. FERRARO, BA Syd., PhD Flin., DipScStLettlt Urbino

### *Senior Lecturers in French*

1966 JUDITH I. A. GRANT, MA N.Z., PhD Tor., Dipd'EtSup Paris, CertPhon Inst. de Phon., Paris

1970 M. D. JAMIESON (Mrs), LèsL, Dipd'EtSup Lille

1970 B. D. McKAY, DU Paris, MA

1972 G. Y. EKAMBI (Mrs), Dipd'EtSup Besançon, MA

1978 PIERRE A. PETIT, MA Penn., MèsL DèSL Bordeaux

### *Senior Lecturers in Italian*

1968-70, 1974 MICHAEL D. HANNE, BA Oxf.,

1971 RICHARD B. BACKHOUSE, MA

### *Senior Lecturers in Spanish*

1969 J. G. HOWLEY, MA Glas.

1981 M. K. READ, BA MLitt Brist., PhD Wales

1986 M. S. HARVEY, BA PhD Monash

### *Lecturer in Italian*

1980 LAURENCE E. SIMMONS, MA

*Lecturer in Spanish*

1987 CHRISTINE R. ARKINSTALL, MA Oviedo, BA

*Senior Tutor in Italian*

1967 MEME CHURTON (Mrs)

*Senior Tutor in Spanish*

1978 FIONA M. TALER, MA

*Honorary Research Fellow*

K. J. HOLLYMAN, MA N.Z., DU Paris

**RUSSIAN***Senior Lecturer (in charge)*

1975 IAN K. LILLY, MA Cant. &amp; Monash, PhD Wash.

*Associate-Professor*

1970-72, 1975 HANS-PETER STOFFEL, DrPhil Zür.

*Lecturer**Senior Tutor*

1981 HANNAH BRODSKY-PEVZNER, DipPhil Latvian State

**SCANDINAVIAN STUDIES, see Germanic Languages and Literature****SOCIOLOGY***Professor, Head of Department*

1982 I. R. CARTER, BSc Bath, MA Essex, PhD Aberd., FRSA

*Associate-Professor*

1987 BARRY SMART, BSc Lond., PhD Sheff.

*Senior Lecturers*

1972 DAVID R. BEDGGOOD, MA Cant., DPhil Waik.

1974 KITSIRI MALALGODA, BA Ceyl., DPhil Oxf.

1973 IVANICA M. VODANOVICH, BA N.Z., PhD DipSocAnthrop Lond.

1973 A. J. CLUNY MACPHERSON, MA DPhil Waik.

1977 NICK H. PERRY, BA Strath., BSc(Soc) Lond.

1982 CHARLES H. G. CROTHERS, BA Waik., BA PhD Well.

*Lecturers*

1980-82, 1984 CATHERINE WEST-NEWMAN, MA Lond., MA PhD

1987 MAUREEN A. MOLLOY, BEd MA Br. Col., PhD

**SPANISH, see Romance Languages****SURGERY, see Medicine and Human Biology****ZOOLOGY***Professor, Head of Department*

1957 PATRICIA R. BERGQUIST, MSc PhD N.Z., DSc, FRSNZ

*Professors*

1972 E. C. YOUNG, MSc N.Z., DIC, PhD Lond.

1976 R. M. G. WELLS, PhD DSc Lond., MSc, FRSNZ

*Associate Professors*1958 M. C. MILLER, BSc PhD *Liv.*1970 B. A. FOSTER, PhD *Wales*, MSc DSc1976 J. L. CRAIG, BSc *Otago*, PhD *Massey*1978 J. C. MONTGOMERY, BSc *Otago*, PhD DSc *Brist.*, FRSNZ*Senior Lecturers*1958 D. R. COWLEY, MSc *N.Z.*, PhD1968 R. D. LEWIS, BSc PhD *Wales*1972 J. A. MACDONALD, AB *Stan.*, PhD *Texas*1977 B. H. McARDLE, BSc *Brist.*, DPhil *York (U.K.)*1980 D. M. LAMBERT, MSc *Q'ld.*, PhD *Witw.*

1987 C. W. EVANS, BSc PhD

*Lecturer*

1987 G. P. JONES, MSc PhD

*Senior Tutors*1961 JOAN M. MILLER (Mrs), BSc *Liv.*

1967 MAUREEN H. LEWIS, MSc PhD

*University Post-Doctoral Fellows*J. CARRAGHER, BSc *Wales*, PhD *Brunel*A. G. RODRIGO, BSc PhD *Cant.*M. M. WALKER, MSc PhD *Hawaii**Honorary Research Fellows*JOAN ROBB, MSc *N.Z.*, DipAgr *Cant. U. Coll.*MARSHALL LAIRD, MSc PhD DSc *N.Z.*, FAAAS**UNIVERSITY STAFF (LIBRARY)***Librarian*PETER B. DUREY, BA *Durh.*, FLA, ALAA, FNZLA*Deputy-Librarian*KENNETH PORTER, MA *N.Z.*, DipNZLS, FNZLA*Head of Acquisitions*

ALISON M. GRANT, BA DipNZLS, ANZLA

*Head Cataloguer*

CHRISTINE I. WILSON, BA DipNZLS

*Head of Lending Services*JOHN W. HAYWARD, BA *Cant.*, DipNZLS*Head of Information Services*A. CATHERINE HUTCHINSON, MA *Well.*, DipNZLS, ANZLA*Head of Serials Unit, Acquisitions*NEIL C. HEINZ, MA *Well.*, DipNZLS*Architecture Librarian*WENDY S. GARVEY (Mrs), BA *Well.*, DipNZLS*Asian Languages Librarian*KUAN-HOONG LUN, BA *Nan & Well.*, MA *Well.*, DipNZLS*Biological Sciences Librarian*FLAVIA A. CLIFFORD-WHITE, BSc *Otago*, DipNZLS, ANZLA*Engineering Librarian*

PATRICIA D. HULSE, BA, DipNZLS, ANZLA

*Fine Arts Librarian*

GAIL KEEFE, BA, NZLSCert

*Geography Librarian*BRIAN W. MARSHALL, BA *Massey*, MA, DipNZLS, ANZLA

*Geology Librarian*

ELVA LEAMING, BA, NZLACert

*Law Librarian*

E. JULIA McMAHON O'HIGGINS, BA N.Z., MA LLB, NZLACert

*Librarian, Centre for Continuing Education*

MARY ANN CRICK, BA, NZLSCert

*Librarian New Zealand and Pacific Collection*

R. STEPHEN INNES, BA PGDA DipLibr

*Librarian, School of Medicine*

MARGARET A. GIBSON SMITH (Mrs), MA, NZLACert, ANZLA

*Librarian, Te Hukatai (Maori Studies)*

P. JANE McRAE, BA Otago, MA PhD

*Music Librarian*

BEVERLEY A. ANSCOMBE (Miss), BMus Well., DipNZLS, ANZLA, LTCL

*Science Librarian*

INGE E. B. RUDOLPH, BA(LibrSci) S.A.

*Systems Manager*

P. SHANE BEVERLEY, MSc

*Associate-Librarians*

GAIKA E. HAWKINS, (Mrs), BA Stell., LibDip CapeT.

ELAINE M. ROBINSON, NZLACert, ANZLA

*Senior Librarians*

SUSAN M. FOGGIN (Mrs), MA, DipNZLS

JENNIFER J. HART, MA DipNZLS, ANZLA

BRUCE A. HOWIE, BA Well., DipNZLS

PATRICIA D. HULSE, BA DipNZLS, ANZLA

IAN G. JOHNSTONE, MA DipLibr Well.

HAZEL M. LANYON, BA Cant., DipLIS Lond., ALA

ELIZABETH MAJOR, BSc NZLSCert

ELIZABETH H. MCKENZIE, DipLibr Well., BA

ROSLYN M. G. SMITH, LLB DipNZLS

RAINER WOLCKE, Staatsexamen H mburg, DipLibr Well.

JENEFER M. WRIGHT, BA NZLACert

*Assistant Librarians*

CORAL D. ASHFORD (Mrs), BA CertNZLS

ANNA K. BELTOWSKI, BALib C.N.A.A.

DAPHNE CARRUTHERS, MA N.Z., DipNZLS

MARGARET I. FREEMAN, MA, NZLACert

MARK P. HANGARTNER, BA DipLibr

SUSAN HORN, MA DipNZLS, ANZLA

MARGARET E. KNIGHTBRIDGE, NZLACert

EMIL MELNICHENKO, BSc NZLSCert DipTchg SecTchCert

KEVIN MOFFAT, BA DipLibr

LINDA A. PLATTS, BA DipLibr Well.

KATHLEEN A. SHAWCROSS, MA NZLSCert

FELICITY STEWART, BA DipNZLS

MASAKO TAKAGAKI (Mrs), BA Aoyama Gakuin, NZLSCert

SHELLEY TAYLOR, MA DipLibr

ROBERTA WHELAN, MA N.Z., NZLACert

## UNIVERSITY STAFF (ADMINISTRATION)

### *Vice-Chancellor*

C. J. MAIDEN, ME N.Z., DPhil Oxf.

### *Assistant Vice-Chancellors*

P. R. BERGQUIST, MSc PhD N.Z., DSc, FRSNZ

P. N. TARLING, MA PhD LittD Camb., FRAS, FRHistS

P. L. BERGQUIST, MSc PhD N.Z., FRSNZ

### *Assistant Vice-Chancellor (Buildings and Site Development)*

J. L. WOODWARD, BE N.Z., MAsC Tor., CEng, FIEE, FIEAust, FIPENZ

### *Assistant Vice-Chancellor (Equal Employment Opportunities and Staff Development)*

CHARMIAN J. O'CONNOR, CBE, JP, MSc N.Z., PhD DSc, FRSNZ, CChem, FRSC, FNZIC

### *Assistant Vice Chancellor (Student Accommodation and Welfare)*

R. C. CAMBIE, MSc PhD N.Z., DPhil Oxf., DSc, FNZIC, FRSNZ

### *Assistant Vice Chancellor (Tamaki)*

R. F. MEYER, BE, N.Z., PhD Manc., FCASI, MAIAA, FIPENZ, FRAeS

### *Registrar*

WARWICK B. NICOLL, BCom

### *Assistant to Registrar*

GRANT WILLS

### *Vice-Chancellor's Secretary*

JENNIFER M. TOPLISS

### *Registrar's Secretary*

JOCELYN I. HIGGINS

## REGISTRAR'S SECTION

### *Head of the Audio-Visual Centre*

ERIC M. ANDERSON, MA

### *Assistant Registrar Student Accommodation*

MARGERIE MACKY

### *Warden, O'Rorke Hall*

MORAG MURRAY, MA Edin.

### *Manager, International House*

SHIRLEY SULLIVAN

### *Administrative Assistants*

PAMELA S. COWEY

ROSELLA D. CHANDRA

### *Managing Editor, Auckland University Press*

ELIZABETH P. CAFFIN, MA Cant., MS Georgetown

### *Information and Public Affairs Officer*

W. R. S. WILLIAMS, LLB Well., DipJ Cant.

### *Editor, Public Affairs Office*

A. H. ASHTON, BA

### *Alumni Officer*

CHRISTINE SMITH, BA Massey, MA Cant.

### *Manager University Printing Services*

PAUL G. SMITH

### *Internal Auditor*

PETER G. DORMON, ACA



## ACADEMIC REGISTRY

### *Academic Registrar*

LORNA A. WILSON (Mrs), JP

### *Deputy Academic Registrar*

R. F. METCALFE, MA Cant.

### *Assistant Registrars, Academic*

JOHN R. CLARKE, DipBusStuds Massey

MICHAEL G. CRONIN, BA

### *Senior Administrative Assistants*

RICHARD G. BOLLEY, BA York (U.K.)

K. G. BRADFORD

CAROLINE LYNCH (Mrs), BA Leeds

### *Administrative Assistants*

AMY CHEN (Ms)

PAUL L. COLVIN

### *Senior Systems Analyst*

KEITH W. SALMON, MA

### *Systems Analysts*

SUSAN COLVIN

F. RICHARD V. MILNE, BA Lond.

KENNETH M. MILNE, DipAgr M.A.C.N.Z.

GRETCHEN A. L. SPALINGER (Mrs), BA Calif.

RAYMOND J. WATKINS, MA

DOROTHY MEAD (Mrs)

CHERYL NIXON, BA Otago, DipEd

PAUL SINNOCK, BA

## FINANCE REGISTRY

### *Finance Registrar*

B. M. COCKER, ACA

### *Deputy Registrar, Finance*

RICHARD J. TOWNSEND, ACA

### *Financial Management Accountant*

IAN R. JOHNSON, BCom, ACA

### *Assistant Registrar, Salaries*

MAURICE WONG SHEE

### *Computer Systems Controller*

FAYE GROOM (Mrs)

### *Accountant*

ANITA B. JANSEN

### *Senior Systems Analyst*

DYLAN ROGERS

### *University Cashier*

FAY BUCHANAN (Mrs)

### *Assistant Registrar, Research & Supply*

G. J. SANDERSON, BSc Massey

### *Financial Systems Manager*

LINDA M. ROBERTS

### *Assistant Accountants*

ROSEMARY A. BROWN, BCom

GREGORY T. FITZPATRICK, BCom

## STAFF REGISTRY

### *Staff Registrar*

G. E. W. THOMAS, BA

### *Assistant Registrars*

M. V. LELLMAN, BA

### *Assistant Registrar (Equal Employment Opportunities)*

TRUDIE E. P. McNAUGHTON, MA

### *Assistant Registrar (Staff Development and Assessment)*

LORRAINE PARKER, BA

### *Senior Administrative Assistants*

ROBIN V. HUDSON (Ms)

GAIL CROSS (Mrs), BA Well.

JOY L. GILCHRIST

## WORKS REGISTRY

### *Works Registrar*

M. B. MATTHEWSON, BE Cant., MIPENZ

### *Deputy Registrar, Services*

S. B. THORN, MA CEng, MIMarE, MBIM, MIPENZ

### *Assistant Registrars*

R. K. JOHNSON, FCIS

K. G. LONGDIN-PRISK, ME

C. P. M. BAKKER, BE

### *Senior Administrative Assistants*

R. F. ATTWELL

### *Accountant*

J. E. REDKNAP (Mrs), DipNZIM

### *Draughtsman, Works and Services*

D. K. CAMPBELL

### *Superintendent of Horticulture*

A. PALMER, NCH, DipHort Hert.Inst.Hort

### *Assistant Superintendent of Horticulture*

J. P. ADAM, DipHort Dip P & R Cant.

### *Head Groundsman University Park*

M. WEAVER

### *University Custodian*

J. D. CLARK

### *Deputy University Custodian*

L. W. TYRER

C. B. M. JACKSON, BA DipLGA

DENIS R. AGATE, NZCE

J. M. SWEENEY

## FACULTIES AND DEPARTMENTS

### *School of Architecture Property and Planning*

#### *Assistant Registrar*

D. J. S. HARVEY, BMus

#### *Administrative Assistants*

F. S. FRASER

#### *Administrative Secretary*

JANET THORNBURY

### *Faculty of Commerce*

#### *Assistant Registrar*

KAY WILLS (Mrs), MA

#### *Administrative Assistant*

MARGARET M. ROTONDO

#### *Administrative Secretaries*

J. BALE (Mrs)

LESLEY CAVANAGH

### *Centre for Continuing Education*

#### *Senior Continuing Education Officer*

GEORGE J. DIBLEY, BA

#### *Continuing Education Officers*

C. ANNE DAVIS, MA

\*JOAN DIAMOND, BA

#### *Assistant Continuing Education Officer*

MARION P. FEASEY

### *School of Engineering*

#### *Assistant Registrar*

G. C. BEACH

BRENDA FERN, BA Manc.

BARRY T. WILLIAMS, BCA Well.

ALISON C. SIMCOCK, BA

*Senior Administrative Assistant*

J. E. M. JONES

*Administrative Assistant*

MARJORIE WOODS

*Administrative Secretary*

A. MONTEITH (Mrs)

*School of Fine Arts**Administrative Assistant*

A. M. A. REES

*Graduate School of Business**Administrative Assistants*

DOROTHEA MULDER (Mrs), BAdmin Griff.

*School of Law**Assistant Registrar*

STEPHEN F. PENK, MA PGDA Otago, BA

*Administrative Secretary*

TRISH LYNES

*Optometry**Administrative Assistant*

M. ELIZABETH SHARLAND

*School of Medicine**Assistant Registrar*

SUSAN CATHERSIDES, BA

*Administrative Assistants*

KAREN M. WELLS, MA

*Administrative Secretary*

J. BOWMAN (Miss)

*Department of Anthropology**Senior Administrative Assistant*

SANDRA JONES, BA Q'ld.

*Department of Chemistry**Administrative Assistant*

TINEKE LIEBREGS, DèsL Amst.

*Department of Education**Administrative Assistant*

JOANNE B. WILLIAMSON, BA

*Geothermal Institute**Senior Administrative Assistant*

OSCAR HUIJSSE

*Department of Physics**Administrative Secretary*

ELIZABETH WARDE

*Department of Romance Languages**Administrative Secretary*

D. KING (Miss)

SHAHNAZ S. AKBAR, BA S. Pac., BA

*Deans Office Arts and Science**Administrative Assistant*

ANGELA M. MAY, BA

*Department of Geography**Administrative Assistant*

GAEL P. JOHNSON

*Leigh Laboratory**Administrative Assistant*

J. J. C. KAMPMAN

*Department of Psychology**Senior Administrative Assistant*

YVONNE B. O'BRIEN

*Department of Zoology**Administrative Assistant*

MARGARET L. BRICKLAND, BA

**AUCKLAND UNISERVICES LTD***Executive Officer*

JOHN A. KERNOHAN, PhD Boston, MSc

*Consulting and Testing Services Manager*

NEIL C. GEDGE, BA

*Administrative Assistant*

JOANNE W. HOLLIDAY

## WELFARE SERVICES

*Director of Welfare Services, Head of the Counselling Service*

D. W. SIMPSON, BA Cant., MA Well., DipEdPsych

*Medical Director of the Student Health Service*

PATRICIA MAUGER, MBBS Lond., MRCS

*Nursing Sister*

ANNETTE K. FAHY, NZRN

*Counsellors*

P. CLAIRE CARTWRIGHT, MA DipClinPsych

SANDRA NEVEZIE, BAWell., MA DipClinPsych

*Adviser to Overseas Students*

B. R. LYTHER, MA

*Mediator in Harassment Procedures*

.....  
*Maclaurin Chaplain to the University*

R. J. GALVIN, BD Otago, BE

*Roman Catholic Chaplains*

TERESA ROUGHAN (Sr.), OP

MICHAEL SHIRRES (Rev.Fr.)

CLARE CONAGLEN (Sr.), RSJ

*Disabled Students Resource Officer*

JOHN LAMBERT

*Director, Physical Recreation*

S. C. HOLLINGS, DipPE Madeley Coll., Keele

*Physical Recreation Officers*

L. T. HADFIELD

JULIE M. STILL, BPhEd Otago

G. J. ROBSON, MSc

*Recreation Centre Manager*

LYNDALL FRASER (Mrs)

## LIAISON OFFICE

*Liaison Officer with Secondary Schools*

ROSS A. SPURDLE, DipEd Cant., MA

*Deputy Liaison Officer*

CHRISTINE M. HAMMETT (Mrs) BSc S'ton.

*Liaison Officer for Women in Physical Sciences  
and Engineering*

J. ELIZABETH GODFREY, MSc

*Maori Liaison Officer*

TAIMIHINGA S. POTAKA (Mrs), BA

*Pacific Islands Liaison Officer*

T. AARON MARSTERS, MA

## CAREERS ADVISORY SERVICE

*Careers Adviser*

W. GUY NASH, ANZIM, ANZIPM

*Assistant Careers Adviser*

## HIGHER EDUCATION RESEARCH

*Associate Professor, Head*

1974 JOHN JONES, BSc PhD Wales, MA Malawi

*Staff and Teaching Development Officer*

1978 ANTHONY A. MORRISON, MA PhD DipEd (jointly with Continuing Education)

*Research Officer*

\*1990 ADELE GRAHAM, MA DipKU

*Administrative Assistant*  
1989 SEAN MILLAR, MA DipBIA

---

## COMPUTER CENTRE

*Director*

1971 J. C. B. WHITE, MScN.Z., PhD A.N.U.

*Assistant Director*

1971 J. N. BROWNLEE, MSc PhD, MIEE, MNZIP

*Operations Manager*

J. D. LUFF

*Senior Computer Programmers*

A. R. ANDERSON, BSc A.N.U., DipCompSc W'gong., R. W. L. MARTIN, BSc A.N.U.

DipEd Monash

R. J. FULTON, BSc DipCompMaths Dal.

S. J. C. HARENAPE, BSc

P. J. JEPSON

J. R. POWELL

H. A. ROSS, BSc York (Can.), MSc Brock, PhD

D. WHITESIDE

---

## CENTRE FOR INFORMATION SCIENCE

*Director*

C. J. POTTER, BSc Cant.

*Deputy Director*

C. M. JERRETT, BSc Cant

*Seminars and Promotions Manager*

R. M. PHILIPP

*Industry Consultants*

R. W. ABBOTT

K. J. FLAVALL, MSc

*University Consultants*

M. A. FORTH

D. J. HUGHES

---

## STUDENT LEARNING UNIT

*Director*

1976 DAVID W. SIMPSON, BA Cant., MA Well., DipEdPsych

*Senior Tutor*

\*1985 BARBARA J. REILLY, BSc Well., MS Ill.

*Tutor*

\*1989 BARBARA M. GRANT, BA

---

## STUDENT UNION

*Manager*

R. LEE, BSc Wales

*Director (Maidment Arts Centre)*

P. A. SHEEHAN (Ms), DipDrama

*Theatre Administrator (Maidment Arts Centre)*

\*\*\*\*\*

---

# General Statutes and Regulations

## *Contents*

---

|    |   |
|----|---|
| 59 | Admission Regulations                                   |
| 61 | Pre-enrolment Application Regulations                   |
| 61 | Enrolment and Course (General) Regulations              |
| 71 | Limitation of Entry Statute 1985                        |
| 71 | Enrolment Limitations: Limited Entry Courses and Papers |
| 75 | Enrolment 1991  |
| 75 | 1991 Enrolment Timetable                                |
| 78 | Extramural Enrolment Statute                            |
| 78 | Extramural Enrolment Regulations                        |
| 79 | Definitions of Full-Time Study 1991                     |
| 80 | Examination Regulations                                 |
| 85 | Conferring of Degrees and Academic Dress Regulations    |
| 86 | Award of Honorary Degrees Regulations                   |
| 86 | Fees Regulations  |
| 90 | Discipline  |
| 90 | Disciplinary Regulations                                |
| 93 | The Library   |
| 93 | Library Regulations                                     |
| 95 | Preliminary Courses                                     |

# GENERAL STATUTES AND REGULATIONS

## ADMISSION REGULATIONS

### Prerequisites and Conditions

1. Subject to the Council's statutory powers to decline enrolment (whether for insufficiency of accommodation or of teachers or for other cause) and to Regulation 2, a person is qualified to matriculate (that is, to be admitted to the University and placed on its books as a student) if that person has been granted:
  - (a) the University Entrance qualification by the New Zealand Universities Entrance Board either by accrediting or examination, or
  - (b) admission by the New Zealand Universities Entrance Board at the Standard of the University Entrance examination (see Notes (i) and (ii) below); or
  - (c) admission by the University Council at its discretion at a standard to be determined in respect of work done in any other university or other place of learning substantially corresponding or equivalent to courses taught at the University of Auckland (see Admission Ad Eundem Statum); or
  - (d) admission by the University Council under Regulation 7; or
  - (e) special admission; or
  - (f) provisional entrance by the New Zealand Universities Entrance Board.

**Notes:** (i) Overseas students not previously enrolled at a university, who are seeking admission to New Zealand Universities at entrance level are required to apply for a place, and for recognition of overseas educational qualifications to: The Secretary, Overseas Students Admissions Committee, P.O. Box 12348, Wellington North, New Zealand.

(ii) New Zealand students and others who are ordinarily resident in New Zealand who have obtained University Entrance qualifications for countries outside New Zealand and who seek admission to New Zealand Universities at entrance level must apply for recognition of their qualifications to: The Secretary, Universities Entrance Board, P.O. Box 12348, Wellington North, New Zealand.

2. (a) Save with the permission of the Senate, a person who:
  - (i) has not reached the age of 16 years, by the 31st December of the year preceding that in which admission is sought; or
  - (ii) is on the books of another university; or
  - (iii) is enrolled for full-time instruction in a secondary school, area school or technical institute shall not matriculate or be eligible to be on the books of the University.
- (b) The Senate's permission in relation to paragraph (a) (i) of this Regulation shall be granted only in exceptional circumstances.

**Note:** To paragraph (2) approval has been given for Auckland College of Education, physical education and music students enrolled at Massey University for BEd to be enrolled in the same year in approved courses at the University of Auckland.

3. A person seeking to matriculate shall comply with the Pre-enrolment Application Regulations.

### Matriculation

4. At matriculation (that is, on admission to the University) every student shall make the following declaration: 'I promise to obey the Statutes, Regulations and requirements of the University of Auckland'.

### Personal Interest Course - Non-Matriculated Students

5. (a) A person who has not reached 20 years of age and has a personal interest in a paper or papers but is ineligible to matriculate may make application in accordance with the Pre-Enrolment Application Regulations and subject to Senate approval may enrol in a paper or papers and sit the University Examinations.
- (b) A student who passes a paper in which he or she is enrolled under (a) above and who subsequently matriculates may have such a paper credited towards a degree or diploma provided that all the necessary conditions for such a degree or diploma (other than matriculated status) were filled at the time that paper was passed.

**Note:** (i) Approval will not normally be granted to courses or papers with limited entry.

(ii) Applications must be made on Pre-Enrolment Application Form 1A and submitted with the prescribed fee of \$30.00 to the Registrar not later than 14 December. In the case where application is required for a limited entry course or paper, by the date specified in the Schedule.

(iii) Under the Fees Regulations a late application may be received with a late fee of \$60.00, but not in the case of a limited entry course or paper.

### Admission Ad Eundem Statum

**Note:** For students applying to transfer to this University from another university, the Council pursuant to S24 of the University of Auckland Act 1961:

- (a) may grant admission with credits and exemptions for papers towards the course for a Bachelor's Degree or a diploma for work which in the opinion of the Senate is substantially corresponding or equivalent;
- (b) may grant admission to the status of a degree holder or diploma holder with the right to proceed to a specific higher degree or diploma with or without Honours.

Credits may be specified or unspecified and the grant of admission may include permission to advance in specified subjects.

Prerequisites may be prescribed as a condition of the approval to proceed to a higher degree or diploma.

### Students from another University in New Zealand

6. A student from another University in New Zealand who wishes to transfer or be admitted to the University of Auckland:
  - (a) shall do so in accordance with the Pre-enrolment Application Regulations;
  - (b) shall be granted admission only if in the opinion of the Senate there are compelling circumstances for transfer to this University.

**Students from an Overseas University**

7. (a). A person ordinarily resident overseas who holds a degree or other qualification from an overseas university may apply for admission to graduate status by completing the prescribed form and submitting it with the prescribed fee to the Registrar not later than 30 November.
- (b). A person ordinarily resident in New Zealand who holds a degree or other qualification from, or has partly qualified in an overseas university may apply for admission at the appropriate level by completing the prescribed form and delivering it with the prescribed fee to the Registrar not later than 10 January in the year of the intended enrolment.

**Note:** A student wishing to enrol in a limited entry course or paper must comply with the Pre-enrolment Application Regulations and submit his or her application in accordance with the application deadlines applicable to limited entry courses and papers.

8. All applications under Regulation 6 and 7 shall be accompanied or supplemented by such evidence as the Senate may require as to:
  - (i) identity
  - (ii) academic standing, and
  - (iii) any degree or diploma obtained by the applicant from another University.

**Special Admission**

9. A person who does not hold a University entrance qualification but who is a New Zealand citizen or permanent resident and has attained the age of 21 years by 31 December in the year preceding that for which application is made may be granted special admission to any course of study. The Senate may waive that age requirement where the applicant is in its opinion otherwise fit to be admitted and in particular has:
  - (a) satisfied any qualification for admission specified in the regulations for that course of study; or
  - (b) completed two years of study at a Teachers' College and attained a sufficient standard therein; or
  - (c) passed School Certificate and attained the age of 16 years by 31 December in the year before enrolment, where granted a place in the course for the Diploma in Music; or
  - (d) obtained any other qualification approved by the Senate.
10. A student granted Special admission may enrol only for papers or subjects for the course of study for which admission is granted.
11. (a). Special admission becomes normal admission when the student:
  - (i) having been admitted direct to a Professional Examination in Architecture, Engineering or Fine Arts has qualified to proceed to the next Professional Year, or
  - (ii) having been admitted to any course of study has passed an equivalent full-time course approved for a particular course of study.
- (b). When a student has qualified for normal admission the student may enrol in any course of study subject to any requirements for enrolment in that course.
12. A person seeking special admission to the University shall apply for it in accordance with the Pre-enrolment Application Regulations, submit evidence of age and educational qualifications, and pay the prescribed fees.

**Note:** (i) Closing date for applications for Special Admission is 14 December (except: DipG&O - 1 March or 1 September; DipObst - 1 May or 1 November; DipPaed - 1 October).

(ii) On payment of a late fee of \$60.00 an application for any course of study (except DipO&G, DipObst and DipPaed) may be considered.

(iii) In courses such as DipCom, or in Fine Arts, where practical qualifications may receive merit classification, students should apply for a place on the appropriate enrolment form and if they are offered a conditional place they should then apply for Special Admission where this is required.

**Provisional Entrance**

- Note:** 1. A person who is a New Zealand citizen or permanent resident but who does not hold a University Entrance qualification and has not reached the age to apply for Special Admission may be granted Provisional Entrance to any course of study if that person (a) has reached the age of 16 years by 31 December of the year preceding that in which admission is sought (b) (i) has been awarded in the year in which application is made sixth form certificate in one or more subjects OR (ii) has gained a University Entrance credit in at least one subject under Regulation 10 of the Universities Entrance Regulations 1962.
2. The entrance qualification shall cease to be provisional when the student has passed one year's full-time study or its equivalent.

**Note:** The Universities Entrance Board will issue a certificate when the student has satisfactorily completed one year's full-time study or its equivalent.

3. (a). While the entrance qualification remains provisional a student may enrol only for papers or subjects of the course of study for which permission is granted.
- (b). When the entrance qualification ceases to be provisional the student may enrol for any other course of study subject to any requirement for enrolment in that course.
4. A person seeking Provisional Entrance to University shall apply on the appropriate Pre-Enrolment Application Form and submit it to the Registrar by 23 November of the year preceding that for which admission is sought.
5. The fee for Provisional Entrance is \$60.00 (including GST).



## PRE-ENROLMENT APPLICATION REGULATIONS

1. Every person intending to enrol or to re-enrol in the University shall give notice of that intention by completing the Pre-enrolment Application Form and submitting it to the Registrar to be received:
  - (i) by 14 December in the year preceding the year of intended enrolment, for persons enrolling for the first time at a New Zealand University, or
  - (ii) by 10 January if previously enrolled at a New Zealand University, or
  - (iii) in the case of a limited entry course or paper, by the date specified in the Schedule.
2. The Pre-Enrolment Application Form also includes the following categories:
  - (a). Persons seeking Special Admission.
  - (b). Students wishing to Transfer from another New Zealand University.
  - (c). Students who come under the Academic Requirements and Unsatisfactory Academic Progress Regulation and need the special permission of Senate to enrol.
  - (d). Persons seeking to enrol who are ineligible to matriculate.
  - (e). Students who wish to enrol in a limited entry course of study or paper.

**Note:** The fees prescribed for categories (a) (b) (c) and (d) are \$30.00. There are no fees for other categories submitted on or before the closing date. Late applications, except for limited entry courses of study will be received on payment of a late fee of \$60.00.

## ENROLMENT AND COURSE REGULATIONS (GENERAL)

### Dates of Terms

1. (a). There shall be in each year three terms. The first term shall begin on the first Monday after 25 February and shall end on the Saturday preceding the 19th Monday of the calendar year. The second term shall begin on the 22nd Monday of the calendar year and shall end on the Saturday of the 11th week thereafter. The third term shall begin on the 36th Monday of the calendar year and shall end on 31 October of each year. The Easter recess shall extend from Good Friday to the Tuesday of Easter week, both days inclusive. The mid-term break during the second term shall consist of the whole of the 6th week.
- (b). For the purpose of the holding of such examinations as may be required at the conclusion of the University year, lectures and laboratory courses shall normally cease about the end of the fifth week of the third term in each year.
- (c). Lecture and laboratory courses in Engineering shall be suspended for the fourth and fifth weeks of the second term and shall end in the seventh week of the third term.

### General Course Provisions

2. (a). Subject to the Admission Regulations and to the express provisions of any other regulations every candidate for a degree, diploma or certificate course shall be required to:
  - (i) be a matriculated student of the University;
  - (ii) follow the prescribed course of study in the order prescribed or indicated in accordance with the regulations governing the course;
  - (iii) carry out the prescribed practical work (if any);
  - (iv) comply with the provisions of the Examination Regulations;
  - (v) pass the prescribed examinations.
- (b). The personal course of study of every candidate shall require the approval of the Senate provided that:
  - (i) the Senate may delegate to the Dean of the Faculty within which the student is enrolled the power to give such approval;
  - (ii) the Senate may in exceptional circumstances approve a personal course of study which does not in every particular satisfy the regulations for the degree or diploma for which the student is enrolled;
  - (iii) any person who produces evidence to the satisfaction of the Senate of inability to attend classes and who wishes to take any paper or papers the equivalent of which is not available by extramural enrolment at Massey University may in exceptional circumstances be permitted to enrol at the University of Auckland with such dispensations and upon such conditions as the Senate thinks fit;
  - (iv) where approval of a personal course of study has been withheld by a decision of the Dean acting under delegation of that power the student may appeal to the Senate against that decision;
  - (v) where options are prescribed for a course of study the Senate may at its discretion determine which of them shall be available in any year; provided always that sufficient options shall be available to enable a candidate to complete his or her course.
- (c). Where in the opinion of a Head of Department an insufficient number has enrolled for a paper taught in the Department or there are insufficient staff to teach it, that Head of Department may, with the approval of the Dean of the Faculty, withdraw that paper for the current year within one week of the beginning of the first Term, if the essential prerequisites for any candidate's course of study are not thereby affected. No candidate shall be charged a fee for any change of course required because of the withdrawal of a paper.
- (d). In relation to the time limit for the presentation of a dissertation, original investigation, or thesis, 'academic year' shall in these and all other regulations of the University, unless the context requires otherwise, mean the period from the first day of March in one calendar year to the last day of February in the calendar year next following.

(e). Except (i) as provided in the Extramural Enrolment Statute 1962 and the Extramural Enrolment Regulations and (ii) otherwise with the special permission of the Senate, no student shall enrol or continue to be enrolled at the University of Auckland while enrolled at any other university.

#### **Eligibility to Enrol**

3. (a). Students entitled to enrol at the University of Auckland subject to pre-enrolling and places being available, and who otherwise fulfil the eligibility requirements shall include:
  - (i) those previously enrolled whose official record remains at this University;
  - (ii) those living in the area defined in the Appendix of these Regulations who wish to enrol for the first time at a university in a course of study in the Faculties of Arts (including the course for the Diploma in Education but excluding other Diploma courses);  
Commerce  
Law, for the Intermediate Examination  
Music, for the Degree of Bachelor of Music  
Science (including the subjects of the Architecture & Planning and Engineering Intermediate Examinations but excluding the course for the Degree of Bachelor of Optometry);
- (iii) those living in New Zealand south of the area defined in the Appendix of these Regulations who wish to enrol for the first time at a university in a course of study approved for the purpose of this subclause by the Senate. Each student shall be subject in enrolment to any restrictions or conditions imposed by the Senate or by the Faculty or Faculties in which he or she enrolls.
- (b). Students who may be permitted by the Senate to enrol at the University of Auckland, subject to pre-enrolling and places being available, and who otherwise fulfil the eligibility requirements shall include:
  - (i) those who wish to enrol for the first time in a course of study in the Faculty of Architecture, Property and Planning, for the Professional Examinations, or Engineering, for the Professional Examinations, Fine Arts, Medicine and Human Biology, Music for the Degree of Bachelor of Music (Performance), Bachelor of Music (Performance) with Honours, Diploma in Music or Diploma in Music with Honours;  
Science for the Degree of Bachelor of Optometry or for the following Diploma Courses: Arts, Broadcast Communication, Business, Clinical Psychology, Commerce, Computer Science, Drama, Educational Psychology, English Language Teaching, Geothermal Energy Technology, Guidance and Counselling, Gynaecology and Obstetrics, Legal Studies, Local Government and Administration, Mathematics Education, Obstetrics, Paediatrics, Social Research, Statistics;
  - (ii) those who wish to enrol at a university for the first time and are not entitled to enrol under subclauses (i) and (iii) of Regulation 3 (a) of these Regulations;
  - (iii) those who have failed to make satisfactory academic progress in their university studies or have been excluded from the University under Regulation 10 of these Regulations;
  - (iv) those transferring from another university in New Zealand who satisfy the Senate as required by the Admission Regulations that there are compelling reasons for their transfer;
  - (v) those who wish to enrol to complete the course requirements of another university in New Zealand;
  - (vi) those overseas students granted Admission Ad Eundem Statum with credits; or
  - (vii) those overseas students selected for admission at entrance level.

Each student permitted to enrol shall be subject in enrolment to any restrictions or conditions imposed by the Senate or by the Faculty or Faculties in which he or she enrolls.

#### **Enrolment**

4. (a). Every internal student shall enrol at the university in person before the beginning of the first term in accordance with the detailed enrolment timetable published in this *Calendar*; provided that where the student is by reason of illness or of any exceptional circumstances beyond his or her control, unable to enrol in due time, he or she may with the permission of the Senate enrol late without penalty if he or she:
  - (i) applies for that permission on or before 31 January, or as soon as reasonably possible in any case where it is after that date that the student becomes ill or the exceptional circumstances arise; and
  - (ii) produces with the application a medical certificate or reasonable evidence of the exceptional circumstances relied upon.
- (b). Students whose dissertations, original investigations, or theses for a degree or diploma are incomplete shall be required to re-enrol at the beginning of each academic year until the dissertation, original investigation, or thesis is presented.
- (c). (i) Candidates for the Diploma in Gynaecology and Obstetrics must complete a formal enrolment and pay the prescribed fees not later than 1 March for the June examination or 1 September for the December examination.
- (ii) Candidates for the Diploma in Obstetrics must complete a formal enrolment and pay the prescribed fees not later than 1 March for the June examination or 1 September for the December examination.
- (iii) Candidates for the Diploma in Paediatrics must complete a formal enrolment and pay the prescribed fees not later than 1 October or such date as approved by the Senate.
- (iv) Candidates for the final year of the Degree of Bachelor of Medicine and Bachelor of Surgery must complete a formal enrolment and pay the prescribed fees not later than 15 November or such date as approved by the Senate for the commencement of the Trainee Internship year.
- (d). Extramural students shall enrol in accordance with the provision of the Extramural Enrolment Statute and Regulations.

(e). Students who have applied for Ad Eundem Statum Admission, or Special Admission to be eligible to matriculate, and who have not received a decision before the beginning of enrolment week, shall enrol and pay fees as if their application has been granted. If the application is refused they shall be admitted as non-matriculated students to lectures and laboratories only; provided that the enrolment may be cancelled and the fees fully refunded if within fourteen days of the posting to them of notice of refusal they lodge at the Registry an appropriately completed 'Alteration to Course' form.

(f). Students who were last enrolled at another university in New Zealand and wish to enrol at the University of Auckland may make application in accordance with the Pre-enrolment Application Regulations:

(a) to transfer to the University of Auckland

O R

(b) to take papers for Certificate of Proficiency to complete a degree or diploma of another New Zealand university.

### Exceptions

5. (a). No student shall be enrolled in the same year for more than two distinct courses of study for degrees and diplomas. A student enrolling for two such courses of study shall be permitted to sit for examination in only two papers or their equivalent more than the maximum allowed in either course of study.

(b). (i) No student shall be enrolled in the same year for papers the content of which is substantially similar. (ii) No student shall be enrolled in any paper already credited to a course of study or in any paper the content of which is substantially similar to any paper for which credit has been received provided that in exceptional circumstances the Senate may permit such enrolment for Certificate of Proficiency.

(iii) For the purposes of sub-paragraphs (i) and (ii) above substantially similar papers are not limited to those that are specifically restricted under any regulations for a course of study.

(c). Subject to the provisions of the Regulations for any degree or diploma no student shall be enrolled in two stages of a subject in the same year, provided that the Senate may waive this requirement in the case of a student of proven merit.

(d). Any student who has twice enrolled for, but has failed to be credited with a pass in an optional paper or subject shall not be entitled to enrol again for that paper or subject other than in exceptional circumstances approved by the Senate.

(e). Students who satisfy the Senate that they are unable to attend the full course of study for which they are enrolled may, on the recommendation of the Head of Department concerned, be granted partial exemption from lectures.

6. (a). Each student (except for DipG&O, DipObst, DipPaed, or for final year MBChB) shall enrol on the appropriate day and morning or afternoon as set out in the enrolment timetables. Provided that on payment of the prescribed late fee and penalties as Senate may in its discretion impose, an enrolment may be accepted after the day prescribed but in no case shall:

(i) a student whose home is outside New Zealand be accepted later than the commencement of the second week of lectures, or

(ii) a student be accepted for enrolment in a laboratory subject (including the subject Studio in the Faculty of Architecture, Property and Planning and Faculty of Fine Arts) and any subject prescribed for the First, Second or Third Law Examination for LLB or LLB (Hons) Degree or for the Law Professional Examination and any paper in the Faculty of Engineering except with the special permission of the Senate.

Note: (i) A late fee of \$60.00 if prescribed.

(ii) Where enrolment is applied for after the end of the first week of term an additional fine of \$6.00 is payable for each week or part of a week after the first week of term by which the application to enrol had been delayed.

(b). Each student for the Diploma in Gynaecology and Obstetrics or the Diploma in Obstetrics shall enrol not later than 1 March for the June examination or 1 September for the December examination in that year.

Note: On payment of a fine of \$6.00 for each week or part of a week after 1 March or 1 September a late application to enrol may be considered.

(c). Each student for the Diploma in Paediatrics shall enrol by 1 October or such later date as approved by the Senate.

Note: On payment of a fine of \$6.00 for each week or part of a week after 1 October a late application may be considered.

(d). Each student for the final year for the Degree of Bachelor of Medicine and Bachelor of Surgery shall enrol by 15 November or such later date as approved by the Senate.

Note: On payment of a fine of \$6.00 for each week or part of a week after 15 November a late application may be considered.

### Choice of Course of Study

(e). The courses of study of those enrolled after the date prescribed will be determined by the Senate and will not necessarily conform with those proposed by the students concerned. In determining such courses, the Senate will have regard to the prior claims upon both laboratory and classroom space of those students who have enrolled at the approved time.

### PhD Enrolments

(f). The provisions of this Regulation do not apply to enrolments for the Degree of Doctor of Philosophy.

### Alterations to Course of Study

7. (a). **Additions or Deletions of Papers and Subjects**

(i) A student who having completed enrolment wishes to alter the course of study may apply to the Senate upon the conditions in the schedule of this Regulation for permission to add or delete, any paper or subject. Any application made after the commencement of the first term in each year shall be submitted to the Registry on the appropriate form with the prescribed fees.

**Notes:** (i) It is not sufficient to notify a change of course of study solely to a Department. An "Application to Alter Course" form must be handed in at the Registry.  
(ii) The prescribed fee is \$30.00.  
(iii) On payment of a late fee of \$6.00 for each week or part of a week a late addition (but not late deletion) may be considered.

### Schedule

Applications for Additions, Deletions and Substitutions of papers and subjects must be handed in at the Registry not later than the date prescribed below:

|  |   |
|--|---|
| All courses of study other than BE, ME, MBA, MTaxS, DipBus, DipG&O, DipObst, DipPaed and final year of MBChB | <b>ADDITIONS, DELETIONS</b><br>15 March<br>for papers commencing before 24 June<br>6 July<br>for papers commencing after 24 June  |
| BE and ME  | <b>ADDITIONS, DELETIONS</b><br>15 March<br>for papers commencing before 15 July<br>26 July<br>for papers commencing after 15 July   |
| MTaxS, MBA and DipBus  | <b>ADDITIONS, DELETIONS</b><br>15 February<br>for papers commencing 4 February<br>31 May<br>for papers commencing 20 May<br>13 September<br>for papers commencing 2 September |
| DipG&O and DipObst   | <b>DELETIONS</b><br>1 April for June examinations or 1 October<br>for December examination  |
| DipPaed  | <b>DELETION</b><br>1 November   |
| Final year for MBChB   | <b>DELETION</b><br>15 December in the year of enrolment   |

(ii) The Senate may in its absolute discretion permit a candidate to make a late application to delete a paper or subject after the closing date prescribed in the above schedule but not later than three weeks before lectures for the paper or subject finish if the reasons are illness, injury or exceptional circumstances beyond the candidate's control.

**Notes:** (a). **Additions:** A student may be permitted to add a paper after the date prescribed in Regulation 7(a)(i) subject to the approval of the Head of the Department concerned and the Dean of the Faculty and subject to an alteration fee of \$30.00 and a late fee of \$6.00 per week or part of a week that the application is late.

(b). **Deletions:** Where a student deletes a paper in accordance with Regulation 7(a)(i) the paper will be deleted from the academic record. This also deletes the paper for student allowances purposes and will automatically reduce the number of points a student is enrolled in. This could result in a student becoming ineligible to receive allowances if the deletion brings the total points below the full-time definition. (For refund of fees refer Regulation 7(c) of these regulations.)

(c). **Withdrawals:** (i) Where a student ceases to take a paper after the closing date in the Schedule under 7(a)(i) the following will apply: provided a 'Notification of Withdrawal after Prescribed Date' form is submitted to the Registrar not later than three weeks before lectures for the paper finish (a) the academic record will show the date of notification against the paper concerned (eg 'withdrew May') (b) for 'Academic Requirements and Unsatisfactory Progress' purposes the paper will be treated as a failure (c) for student allowances purposes the paper will be treated as a failure and the withdrawal will automatically reduce the number of points a student is enrolled in. This could result in a student becoming ineligible to receive allowances if the withdrawal brings the total points below the full-time definition. (d) For selection in a limited entry course/paper there is no overall policy. It is important therefore to ask the Dean of the Faculty or the Head of the Department concerned for information in this respect. (e) The tuition and other fees must be paid in full i.e. there is no refund or reduction of the fees due.

(ii) Where the student ceases to take a paper and is permitted to delete the paper under Regulation 7(a)(ii) because of medical or other exceptional circumstances the paper is deleted as outlined in 'Note (b) Deletions'; partial fees will be payable as under Regulation 7(c)(ii) and a note will appear in the notes section of the record (not the official academic record) concerning the deletion. This note is for audit purposes (e.g. partial fees, payment of allowance up to the date of the deletion).

(d). Where a student ceases to take a paper and does not complete the appropriate form by the dates prescribed for deletion or withdrawal 'Did not sit' will show against the paper on the academic record and the paper will be treated as a failure for all purposes.

#### Fees

(b). **Payment of Additional Fees or Late Fees**

Any additional tuition fees and all late fees shall be paid at the time of the lodging of the application.

(c). **Refund of Fees**

For all courses of study:

(i) where a candidate applies under paragraph (a) of this Regulation and within the appropriate time limit:

(1) to delete all the papers for which he or she is enrolled, he or she shall receive a full refund of all tuition fees, and of the Students' Association Fee and Welfare Fee;

(2) to delete paper(s) but not all the papers for which he or she is enrolled or to substitute a paper for which a lesser fee is prescribed, he or she shall receive a refund of the difference between the total fees paid and the total due.

(ii) Where a candidate has been permitted to delete a paper under Regulation 7 (a) (ii) a refund of 50% of tuition fees will be granted provided that the Senate may in its absolute discretion increase this percentage but there will be no refund of the Students' Association Fee or Welfare Fee.

Note: Students who have their tuition fees paid under University Scholarships, Youth Support System, Government Study Awards, Training College Bursaries, Secondary Teachers' Studentship, or Bilateral aid Programme should note that if they do not comply with the Regulations relating to 'Alterations to Course of Study' they may prejudice their scholarship or bursary in a future year.

#### **Non-Matriculated Students**

8. Admission to lectures or laboratories may be granted to non-matriculated students provided they comply with all other Regulations governing admission. The Council may from time to time restrict entry of non-matriculated students to one or more subjects by reason of shortage of accommodation or other special circumstances.

#### **Academic Requirements and Unsatisfactory Progress**

9. (a). This Regulation shall apply to all courses of study at the University of Auckland unless otherwise specified in the particular regulations for degrees and diplomas printed elsewhere in this *Calendar*.

(b). For the purposes of this Regulation, and for any student, 'a year of academic studies' means a year in which a student has enrolled and has not deleted enrolment by the date prescribed under Alterations to Course of Study, and the minimum enrolment for a 'full-time programme' is as defined under Definitions of Full-time Study.<sup>1</sup>

#### **Full-time Students**

(c). A full-time student is required to pass in any two successive years of academic studies at least the equivalent of one year's full-time programme.

(d). A full-time student is required to pass in each year of academic studies at least the equivalent of half of one year's full-time programme. In the event of failure to meet that requirement the student will be permitted to enrol in the next year of academic studies for no more than a minimum full-time programme.

#### **Part-time Students**

(e). A part-time student is required to pass in any two successive years of academic studies at least the equivalent of half the programme for which he or she is enrolled.

(f). A part-time student is required to pass in each year of academic studies at least half of the programme for which he or she is enrolled. In the event of failure to meet that requirement the student will be permitted to enrol in the next year of academic studies for no more than a third of a minimum full-time programme.

#### **All Students**

(g). In the event of failure to meet the requirements of either clause (c) or clause (e) of this Regulation a student shall be suspended for at least one academic year from enrolment at the University of Auckland and will require the prior permission of the Senate to re-enrol. When applying he or she will need to satisfy the Senate that, as a result of study or other activity in the intervening period, there is a reasonable chance of success in subsequent academic studies at this University. Application must be made in accordance with the Pre-Enrolment Application Regulations.

(h). The Senate, in granting a student permission to re-enrol under clause (g) of this Regulation, may impose on the student such conditions as it thinks fit.

(i). If the failure to meet the requirements of either clause (c) or clause (e) of this Regulation is considered to be due to medical or compassionate circumstances or where a significant improvement in academic progress has been shown in the second of any two years of academic studies, a student may apply to the Senate for special consideration in respect of the suspension under clause (g) of this Regulation. Such an application must:

- (i) be made in writing;
- (ii) include evidence if special consideration is sought on medical or compassionate grounds;
- (iii) state the programme in which the student intends to enrol should the application be successful;
- (iv) reach the Registrar, University of Auckland, Private Bag, Auckland on or before 10 January.

In such cases, notwithstanding the provisions of clause (g) of this Regulation, the Senate may permit re-enrolment upon such conditions as it thinks fit.

(j). This Regulation shall also apply to a student intending to transfer to the University of Auckland from any other New Zealand university.

(k). Any student declined enrolment at this University after applying under clause (g) of this Regulation may within fourteen days appeal to the Council against the decision of the Senate.

(l). Provided that the student is enrolled for no other paper or papers, this Regulation shall not apply to a student enrolling for any one of: case study, dissertation, original investigation, thesis or the Degree of Doctor of Philosophy.

Note: (i) Applications must be made on the appropriate Pre-Enrolment Application Form and submitted with the prescribed fee of \$30.00 to the Registrar not later than 14 December 1990 (for a student not enrolled at the University of Auckland in 1990) or 10 January 1991 (for a student who was enrolled at the University of Auckland in 1990).

(ii) Under the Fees Regulations a late application may be received with a late fee of \$60.00, but not in the case of a limited entry course or paper.

#### **Cross Credits**

10. (a). In this Regulation, cross-credits means papers or subjects which:

- (i) are common to two or more courses of study;

- (ii) have been passed by a candidate for the purpose of one of those courses of study; and  
 (iii) that the candidate desires to transfer to another of those courses of study.
- (b). A candidate may, on payment of the prescribed fees under the Fees Regulations, transfer to the course of study for any degree or diploma named or referred to in the left hand column of the Schedule to this Regulation cross-credits as shown opposite the degree or diploma so named or referred to in the right hand column of that Schedule (subject or any other provisions of this Regulation).
- (c). No Stage III paper that fulfils the Stage III requirements of a course of study may be cross-credited to meet the Stage III requirement of another course of study, e.g. Stage III maths credits passed as the only Stage III credits for BSc, could not be credited to BA unless three other Stage III papers were passed for the BA course of study.
- (d). No candidate may transfer as a cross-credit any paper or subject passed with a conceded pass or restricted pass; and if that paper or subject is compulsory any other paper or subject may be substituted for it as the Senate may approve.
- (e). No candidate may transfer as a cross-credit any paper or subject already so transferred under this Regulation.
- (f). In any case where an application for the transfer of cross-credits:
- (i) is not otherwise covered by this Regulation or not covered by special provisions made elsewhere in the Regulations of the University, or
- (ii) is subject to any doubt or difficulty in the interpretation of these or any other Regulations of the University - the Vice-Chancellor may approve any such transfer of credit, or give any such direction in relation to the application, as he thinks fit.

### Schedule

---

#### Architecture Property and Planning

|  |   |
|--|---|
| (i) Degree of Bachelor of Architecture             | The papers or subjects of the Intermediate Examination. |
| (ii) Degree of Bachelor of Property Administration | The papers or subjects of the Intermediate Examination. |
| (iii) Degree of Bachelor of Planning               | The papers or subjects of the Intermediate Examination. |

---

#### Arts

|                                 |                             |
|---------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| (iv) Degree of Bachelor of Arts | Not more than seven papers. |
|---------------------------------|-----------------------------|

---

#### Commerce

|                                    |                             |
|------------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| (v) Degree of Bachelor of Commerce | Not more than eight papers. |
|------------------------------------|-----------------------------|

---

#### Music

|   |                             |
|---|-----------------------------|
| (vi) Degree of Bachelor of Music                | Not more than seven papers. |
| (vii) Degree of Bachelor of Music (Performance) | Not more than seven papers. |

---

#### Science

|                                      |                           |
|--------------------------------------|---------------------------|
| (viii) Degree of Bachelor of Science | Not more than 36 credits. |
| (ix) Degree of Bachelor of Optometry | Not more than 48 credits. |

---

#### Other Degrees and Diplomas

|   |   |
|---|---|
| (x) Any Bachelors degree other than those named above                                     | Not more than six papers or three subjects.                       |
| (xi) Any diploma other than those named above and other than the diploma in Town Planning | Not more than one-third of the paper requirements of the diploma. |

Note: (i) in the case of Master's degrees no cross-credits are available, except where the course Regulations so provide.

(ii) A student taking two courses of study may be permitted to transfer as cross-credits no more than the maximum allowed for one course or the other but not for both.

### Credit

11. (a). A candidate may with the approval of the Senate and on payment of the prescribed fees under the Fees Regulations be granted towards a degree or diploma named or referred to in the left-hand column of the Schedule of this Regulation, credit not exceeding that shown opposite the degree or diploma so named or referred to, in the right-hand column of that Schedule.
- (b). No candidate may be granted credit for work already so credited under this Regulation.

## Schedule

### Arts

#### (i) Degree of Bachelor of Arts

(a) For a student who has successfully completed in or after 1974 and up to and including 1977 a three-year course full-time division A course at a Teachers' College under the control of the Auckland Teachers' Colleges Council, not more than four unspecified Stage I papers to count as one unspecified subject in Group B in the Schedule to the BA Regulations. (b) For a student who has successfully completed in or after 1978 a three-year full-time Division A course at a Teachers' College under the control of the Auckland Teachers' Colleges Council or (from 1986) at the Auckland College of Education, seven unspecified papers, four at Stage I level and three at Stage II level. For the purpose of BA Regulation 5, the papers so credited shall count as papers in two subjects. For the purpose of BA Regulation 3, three papers shall count as papers in Group A in the Schedule to the BA Regulations and four papers shall count as papers in Group B in the Schedule to the BA Regulations.

(c) For a student who has successfully completed in or after 1974 and up to and including 1979 a Division B (concurrent study course) at a Teachers' College under the control of the Auckland Teachers' Colleges Council, not more than two unspecified Stage I papers to count as one unspecified subject in Group B in the Schedule to the BA Regulations. For a student who has successfully completed in or after 1980 a three year Division B (concurrent study course) at a Teachers' College under the control of the Auckland Teachers' Colleges Council or (from 1986) at the Auckland College of Education, three unspecified Stage I papers to count as one unspecified subject in Group B in the Schedule to the BA Regulations. For a student who had successfully completed in or after 1980 a two year full-time Division B (concurrent study course) at a Teachers' College under the control of the Auckland Teachers' Colleges Council or (from 1986) at the Auckland College of Education, two unspecified Stage I papers to count as one unspecified subject in Group B in the Schedule to the BA Regulations.

(d) For a student who has successfully completed in or after 1974 and up to and including 1979 a three-year full-time Home Economics or Commercial course at the Auckland Secondary Teachers' College not more than four unspecified Stage I papers to count as one unspecified subject in Group B in the Schedule to the BA Regulations. For a student who has successfully completed in or after 1980 a three-year full-time Home Economics or Commercial course at the Auckland Secondary Teachers' College or (from 1986) at the Auckland College of Education, seven unspecified papers, four at Stage I level and three at Stage II level. For the purpose of BA Regulation 5 the papers so credited shall count as paper in two subjects. For the purpose of BA Regulation 3, three papers shall count as papers in Group A in the Schedule to the BA Regulations and four papers shall count as papers in Group B in the Schedule to the BA Regulations.

(e) For a student who has successfully completed in or after 1976 a two-year full-time course in Division A at a Teachers' College under the control of the Auckland Teachers' Colleges Council or (from 1986) at the Auckland College of Education two unspecified Stage I papers to count as one unspecified subject in Group B in the Schedule to the BA Regulations.

(f) For a student who has successfully completed in or after 1977 a two-year full-time course in Division E at a Teachers' College

under the control of the Auckland Teachers' Colleges Council or (from 1986) at the Auckland College of Education two unspecified Stage I papers to count as one unspecified subject in Group B in the Schedule to the BA Regulations.

(g) For a student who has in or after 1975 completed the requirements for a Certificate Course of the Centre for Continuing Education with a grade B or higher, one or two papers to count as one unspecified Stage I subject.

(h) For a student who has in or after 1984 successfully completed Studio I for the BFA Degree but is not continuing with that degree, two papers to count as papers in one unspecified Group B Stage I subject.

(i) For a student who has successfully completed the course for the Diploma in Physiotherapy, Auckland Technical Institute only, or the Diploma in Nursing at one of the following institutions in or after 1985:

Auckland Technical Institute  
Carrington Technical Institute  
Manukau Technical Institute  
Northland Polytechnic

four Stage I and two Stage II papers to count as papers in two unspecified subjects in Group B of the BA Schedule.

(j) For a student who has in or after 1988 passed the subject Legal System for LLB but is not continuing with the Degree, one paper to count as a paper in one unspecified Group B Stage I subject.

(k) For a student who has in or after 1989 passed the subject Introduction to Property for the Intermediate Examination for the BPA Degree but is not continuing with the Degree, one paper to count as a paper in one unspecified Group B Stage I subject.

#### **Commerce**

##### **(ii) Degree of Bachelor of Commerce**

(a) For a student who has in or after 1975 completed the requirements for Certificate in Personnel Management of the Centre for Continuing Education with a grade of B or higher or two unspecified Stage I papers.

(b) For a student who has successfully completed in or after 1977 a three year full-time Division A course at a Teachers' College under the control of the Auckland Teachers' Colleges Council or (from 1986) at the Auckland College of Education, three unspecified papers to count as elective papers.

(c) For a student who has successfully completed in or after 1977 and up to and including 1979 a Division B (concurrent study course) at a Teachers' College under the control of the Auckland Teachers' Colleges Council not more than one unspecified paper to count as an elective paper. For a student who has successfully completed in or after 1980 a Division B (concurrent study course) at a Teachers' Colleges Council or (from 1986) at the Auckland College of Education three elective papers for the three-year Division B course, or two elective papers for the two-year Division B course.

(d) For a student who has successfully completed in or after 1977 a three-year full-time Home Economics or Commercial course at the Auckland Secondary Teachers' College or (from 1986) at the Auckland College of Education not more than three unspecified papers to count as elective papers.

#### **Fine Arts**

##### **(iii) Degree of Bachelor of Fine Arts**

(a) For a student who has successfully completed in or after 1974 a three year full-time course at a Teachers' College under the control of the Auckland Teachers' College Council or (from 1986) at the Auckland College of Education, two unspecified Stage I papers which shall not be credited in lieu of the required Stage I papers in Art History.

(b) For a student who has successfully completed in or after 1974 a Division B (concurrent study course) at a Teachers' College under the control of the Auckland Teachers' College Council or (from 1986) at the Auckland College of Education, not more than one unspecified Stage I paper which shall not be credited in lieu of either of the required Stage I papers in Art History.

(c) For a student who has successfully completed in or after 1974 a three year full-time Home Economics or Commercial course at Auckland Secondary Teachers' College or (from 1986) at the



Auckland College of Education, not more than one unspecified Stage I paper which shall not be credited in lieu of either of the required Stage I papers in Art History.

**Law**  
(iv) Degree of  
Bachelor of Laws

(a) For a student who has in or after 1975 completed the requirements for a Certificate in Criminology of the Centre for Continuing Education with a grade B or higher, one or two unspecified papers.

**Music**  
(v) Degree of  
Bachelor of Music

(a) For a student who has successfully completed in or after 1974 a three-year full-time Division A course at a Teachers' College under the control of the Auckland Teachers' Colleges Council or (from 1986) at the Auckland College of Education, two unspecified papers (not being a paper in music) in lieu of the BA papers prescribed for the Degree. For a student specialising in music in the above three-year course, a further two unspecified Stage I papers.  
(b) For a student who has successfully completed in or after 1974 a Division B (concurrent study course) at a Teachers' College under the control of the Auckland Teachers' Colleges Council or (from 1986) at the Auckland College of Education not more than one unspecified paper (not being a paper in Music) in lieu of a BA paper prescribed for the Degree.  
(c) For a student who has successfully completed in or after 1974 a three-year full-time Home Economics or Commercial course at the Auckland Secondary Teachers' College or (from 1986) at the Auckland College of Education not more than one unspecified paper (not being a paper in Music) in lieu of a BA paper prescribed for the Degree.

**Science**  
(vi) Degree of  
Bachelor of Science

(a) For a student who has successfully completed in or after 1976 and up to and including 1980 a two-year full-time course in Division A at a Teacher's College under the control of the Auckland Teachers' Colleges Council, not more than six unspecified Stage I Science credits.  
(b) For a student who has successfully completed in or after 1974 and up to and including 1980 a Division B (concurrent study course) at a Teachers' College under the control of the Auckland Teachers' Colleges Council, not more than six unspecified Stage I Science credits.  
(c) For a student who has successfully completed any other approved three-year course at a Teachers' College under the control of the Auckland Teachers' College Council, or (from 1986) at the Auckland College of Education, 12 unspecified Stage I credits. For any other approved two-year course under the same authority, 8 unspecified Stage I Science credits.

**Note:** The progress of students granted credit for Certificate Courses of the Centre for Continuing Education will be reviewed following their first year of study after the granting of the credit.

### Exemptions

12. (a). A candidate for a degree or diploma, who has passed in a paper or subject not prescribed for that degree or diploma but the same as or substantially equivalent to a paper or subject so prescribed, may at the discretion of the Senate be exempted from that prescribed paper or subject; subject, however, to the provisions of any other regulation.  
(b). A candidate exempted either under this or any other regulation for a paper or subject shall pay the prescribed fee under the Fees Regulations to be exempted from that paper or subject.  
13. Except as permitted by Regulation 12 of these Regulations or by the regulations for any particular course of study, no candidate may be granted in all more than one-third of the paper requirements of a course of study as cross-credits, credit, or exemptions.

### Abandonments

14. A student may apply on the appropriate form and on payment of the prescribed fee to abandon papers credited to one course of study and have them credited to another course of study.

**Note:** The prescribed fee for an "Abandonment" application is \$12.00.

### Completion of Degree or Diploma at Another University

15. A student who leaves the University of Auckland district either to reside in another university district within New Zealand or to reside overseas, and who has passed for a degree or diploma of the University of Auckland such part of the work as the Senate may from time to time determine to be the major part of the work for that degree or diploma may make application on the prescribed form not later than 10 January to complete that degree or diploma by taking appropriate examinations at another university and may, with like approval be granted credits under these Regulations for such examinations.

**Note:** (i) Applications must be made on the appropriate form and submitted not later than 10 January with a prescribed fee of \$60.00 for papers taken at an overseas university or \$30.00 for papers taken at another New Zealand university.

(ii) Under the Fees Regulations a late application may be received with a late fee of \$60.00 after 10 January.

**Additional Lectures**

16. A student while pursuing a course of study in the University may with the approval of the Dean of the appropriate Faculty, after consultation with the Heads of Departments concerned, take lectures in a subject which he or she is not offering for examination without payment of fee for the course provided that this facility shall be granted only where the additional lectures would be useful in supplementing the student's course of study.

**Vice-Chancellor's Special Powers**

17. (a). The Vice-Chancellor may give such direction, or make such provision as he shall think fit for the relief of undue hardship where it is shown to his satisfaction:
- (i) that an alteration or amendment to statutes or regulations involving a change in a course of study or in examination requirements has caused a candidate hardship; or
  - (ii) that official advice has been given in writing and acted upon, and it is later found that a candidate's course of study is not in accordance with the governing regulations and hardship would be caused if the candidate were to be compelled to comply with the full requirements of the regulations.
- (b). Where a candidate for a Master's degree or Bachelor of Science (Honours) Degree writes a script outside the prescribed time for the examination, the Vice-Chancellor shall have power to:
- (i) admit or reject the script as part of the examination;
  - (ii) authorise the Head of Department to conduct an oral examination, and the Head of the Department where appropriate and if necessary, shall submit a mark based on the year's work and the oral examination.
- (c). A candidate may appeal against any decision of the Vice-Chancellor under this Regulation to the Council by giving notice in writing to the Registrar within fourteen (14) days of being notified of the decision. Council shall have the power to make such provision as it may think fit. The decision of the Council on any appeal under this Regulation shall be final.

## THE LIMITATION OF ENTRY STATUTE 1985

*This Statute was made under the University of Auckland Act 1961. It is currently being revised consistent with the provisions of Section 194 of the Education Amendment Act 1990. A new Statute will come into effect for 1991 Enrolment. Copies will be available from the Registrar early in 1991.*

1. This Statute may be cited as the Limitation of Entry Statute 1985 and shall come into force on 1 January 1986.
2. There is deemed to be an insufficiency of accommodation or of teachers in respect of a faculty, department, class or course if:
  - (i) students cannot be allocated places in appropriate lecture rooms or laboratories at times when they can be reasonably expected to attend, or
  - (ii) the number of teaching staff does not ensure that all students can be adequately taught.
3. The maximum number of students that may be enrolled in any such faculty, department, class or course shall be such as the Council after securing a recommendation from the Senate and after consultation with the University Grants Committee shall from time to time determine in respect of each such faculty, department, class or course.
4. In determining such maximum number of students the Council may after securing a recommendation from Senate and after consultation with the University Grants Committee:
  - (a) prescribe academic standards to be achieved as a prerequisite for enrolment in any such faculty, department, class or course and
  - (b) prescribe other criteria for selection of students to be permitted enrolment in any such faculty, department, class or course.

## ENROLMENT LIMITATIONS

### LIMITED ENTRY COURSES OF STUDY AND PAPERS

Because of insufficient accommodation and restrictions on staffing there will be a limitation on the number of students who can be enrolled for certain courses of study or papers at the University in 1991.

#### Approved limitations

Applications for a place in any of the Limited Entry Courses or Papers specified in parts A and/or B of the Schedule below must be made on the Pre-Enrolment Application Form (PAF) in accordance with the requirements set down on that form.

Unless otherwise specified in the notes column below the closing dates for applications are:

**14 December 1990** For all applicants who did not attend the University of Auckland in 1990.

**10 January 1991** For all applicants who attended the University of Auckland in 1990.

Applications received after the specified application closing date will not be considered.

#### (A) Limited Entry Courses of Study

| Faculty/<br>Subject                     | Limited Entry Course                            | Approved<br>Limit | Notes                               |
|---|---|-------------------|-------------------------------------|
| Architecture,<br>Property &<br>Planning | BArch (First Professional) (for the first time) | 72                |                                     |
|   | BPlan (First Professional) (for the first time) | 45                |                                     |
|   | BPA (First Professional) (for the first time)   | 45                |                                     |
| Arts                                    | DipDrama  | 16                |                                     |
|   | Dip ELT   | 24                | Apply by 30 Nov for following year  |
|   | DipBrC 6  |                   | Apply by 30 Nov for following year  |
|   | Geography Masters total                         | 50                |                                     |
|   | Psychology Masters total                        | 35                |                                     |
| Commerce                                | BCom (for the first time)                       | 700               |                                     |
|   | MBA (Exec) (for the first time)                 | 40                | Apply 15 Oct for the following year |
|   | MBA (Man) (for the first time)                  | 40                | Apply 15 Oct for the following year |
|   | DipBus(Finance) (for the first time)            | 45                | Apply 5 Nov for the following year  |
|   | DipBus(InfoSystems) (for the first time)        | 40                | Apply 5 Nov for the following year  |
|   | DipBus(Marketing) (for the first time)          | 120               | Apply 5 Nov for the following year  |
|   | DipBus(PMER) (for the first time)               | 40                | Apply 5 Nov for the following year  |
|   | DipBus (each Paper or Stream)                   | 40                |                                     |
| Engineering                             | BE First Year                                   | 220               |                                     |
|   | Chem&Mat/Met&Mat                                | 35                |                                     |

| Faculty/<br>Subject | Limited Entry Course                           | Approved<br>Limit | Notes  |
|---------------------|--|-------------------|--|
|                     | Civil  | 60                |  |
|                     | Elect  | 65                |  |
|                     | EngSc  | 15                |  |
|                     | Mech   | 60                |  |
|                     | Mining/MinProc                                 | 25                |  |
|                     | BE Second Year                                 | 255               | Completed BE(Int) 1990 or before   |
|                     | Chem&Mat/Met&Mat                               | 40                |  |
|                     | Civil  | 65                |  |
|                     | Elect  | 75                |  |
|                     | EngSc  | 20                |  |
|                     | Mech   | 65                |  |
|                     | Mining/MinProc                                 | 25                |  |
|                     | DipGeothermTech                                | 30                | 1 Sep (Overseas Students) for following year<br>15 Oct (New Zealand Students) for following year |
|                     | DipPulpPaper                                   | 10                | Apply as advised by the Head of the Department of Chemical & Materials Engineering               |
| Fine Arts           | BFA - Studio I                                 | 45                | Apply by 31 Oct for following year   |
|                     | MFA/MPhil (for the first time)                 | 20                | Apply by 31 Oct for following year   |
| Law                 | First Law for LLB                              | 270               |  |
| Medicine            | BHB  | 110               | Apply by 1 Oct for following year  |
|                     | MAud   | 10                | Apply by 1 Dec for following year  |
| Music               | BMus(Perf) or DipMus                           | 35                | Apply by 30 Jun for following year   |
|                     | BMus & BA (advancing in Music)                 | 25                |  |
|                     | Masters  | 12                |  |
| Science             | MSc Environmental Science (for the first time) | 10                | Apply by 31 Oct for following year   |
|                     | MSc, MPhil (Geography)                         | 50                |  |
|                     | BOptom Year II                                 | 20                |  |
|                     | Psychology Masters total                       | 35                |  |
|                     | DipClinPsych Year I                            | 8                 |  |
|                     | Zoology - Masters and PhD                      | 60                |  |

**(B) Limited Entry Papers**

| Subject              | Limited<br>Entry<br>Papers | Approved<br>Limit | Notes  |
|----------------------|----------------------------|-------------------|--|
| Accounting & Finance | 01.102                     | 125               | For BA, BSc, PropAdminInt or PlanInt<br>01.100 and 01.101 are only available for BCom students |
|                      | 01.103                     | 125               |  |
| Anthropology         | 03.309                     | 70                | Apply by 30 Nov for following year   |
|                      | 03.327                     | 30                |  |
|                      | 03.340                     | 15                |  |
| Biochemistry         | 66.202                     | 100               |  |
|                      | 66.203                     | 50                |  |
|                      | 66.301                     | 30                |  |
|                      | 66.302                     | 30                |  |
| Botany               | 06.250                     | 60                |  |
|                      | 06.313                     | 24                |  |
|                      | 06.361                     | 24                |  |
|                      | 06.371                     | 24                |  |

|                                       |         |           |                                    |
|---------------------------------------|---------|-----------|------------------------------------|
| Botany                                | 39.311  | 24        |                                    |
| Cellular & Molecular Biology          | 40.303  | 48        |                                    |
|                                       | 40.304  | 30        |                                    |
|                                       | 40.305  | 30        |                                    |
| Chemistry                             | 08.230  | 135       |                                    |
|                                       | 08.370  | 30        |                                    |
| Chinese                               | 48.100  | 70        |                                    |
|                                       | 48.101  | 70        |                                    |
| Computer Science                      | 07.100  | 500       |                                    |
|                                       | 07.111  | 350       |                                    |
| Commercial Law                        | 02.100  | 750       |                                    |
| Economics                             | 13.100  | 1100      |                                    |
|                                       | 13.101  | 1100      |                                    |
|                                       | 13.205  | 100       |                                    |
| Education                             | 14.410  | 18        | Apply by 31 Oct for following year |
|                                       | 14.418  | 15        | Apply by 31 Oct for following year |
|                                       | 14.451  | 12        | Apply by 15 Nov for following year |
|                                       | 14.452  | 12        | Apply by 15 Nov for following year |
| English                               | 18.328  | 12        |                                    |
|                                       | 18.331  | 60        |                                    |
| Film & Television Studies             | 85.200  | 160       |                                    |
| Geography                             | 20.101  | 400       |                                    |
|                                       | 20.102  | 400       |                                    |
| Japanese                              | 81.100  | 130       |                                    |
|                                       | 81.101  | 130       |                                    |
|                                       | 81.110  | 130       |                                    |
| Law (Legal System for LawInt)         | 25.103  | 425       |                                    |
|                                       | Seminar | 15        |                                    |
| LLB(Hons)                             | papers  | per paper |                                    |
| Management Studies & Labour Relations | 72.101  | 900       |                                    |
|                                       | 72.314  | 35        |                                    |
| Mathematics & Statistics              | 26.200  | 12        |                                    |
| Music                                 | 28.210  | 12        |                                    |
|                                       | 28.215  | 20        |                                    |
|                                       | 28.216  | 20        |                                    |
|                                       | 28.218  | 20        |                                    |
|                                       | 28.310  | 8         |                                    |
|                                       | 28.318  | 5         |                                    |
| Pharmacology                          | 96.301  | 24        |                                    |
|                                       | 96.302  | 24        |                                    |
| Physiology                            | 67.201  | 80        |                                    |
|                                       | 67.301  | 32        |                                    |
|                                       | 67.302  | 32        |                                    |
|                                       | 67.303  | 32        |                                    |
| Property Administration               | 37.100  | 100       |                                    |

|            |        |     |  |
|------------|--------|-----|--|
| Psychology | 32.108 | 840 | { Identical Papers: 32.118 taught at Auckland College of Education<br>Identical Papers: 32.119 taught at Auckland College of Education |
|            | 32.118 | 200 |  |
|            | 32.109 | 450 |  |
|            | 32.119 | 200 |  |
|            | 32.408 | 12  |  |
|            | 32.409 | 14  |  |
|            | 32.421 | 14  |  |
|            | 32.422 | 8   |  |
| Zoology    | 38.310 | 24  |  |
|            | 38.316 | 24  |  |
|            | 38.320 | 24  |  |

**(C) Limited Entry Papers (non-selecting)**

Limitations on Enrolment have been approved for the following papers in 1991 but the limits will only apply if the prescribed number has been reached or exceeded at the completion of the enrolment period. Thus all qualified candidates enrolling in accordance with the instructions set down in the enrolment timetable will be accepted and application for a place is not required.

| Subject           | Paper Number   | Approved Limit   |
|-------------------|--|--|
| Anthropology      | 03.100   | 800  |
|                   | 03.101   | 800  |
|                   | 03.326   | 20   |
| English           | Stage I papers<br>papers per student in the degree<br>18.113, 18.115 | Overall limit of 2300 paper enrolments with a limit of two Stage I<br>75 each. Taught at Auckland College of Education |
| Philosophy        | 29.100   | 360  |
|                   | 29.101   | 280  |
|                   | 29.102   | 360  |
| Political Studies | 30.100   | 200  |
|                   | 30.106   | 250  |
|                   | 30.107   | 300  |
|                   | 30.109   | 300  |
| Psychology        | 32.210   | 150  |
|                   | 32.220   | 150  |
|                   | 32.230   | 150  |
|                   | 32.240   | 150  |
| Mathematics       | 26.120   | 1100 total   |
|                   | 26.121   |  |
|                   | 26.122   |  |
|                   | 26.140   | 1100 total   |
|                   | 26.141   |  |
|                   | 26.142   |  |
|                   | 26.165   | 250  |
|                   | 26.181   | 1400   |
|                   | 26.182   | 100  |
|                   | 26.281   | 300  |
|                   | 26.293   | 100  |

The following papers are not available for Courses of Study other than BCom or DipCom except with the specific approval of the Head of Department concerned:

|  |                                   |
|--|-----------------------------------|
| Accounting & Finance                     | All Stage II and Stage III papers |
| Commercial Law                           | All Stage II and Stage III papers |
| Management Science & Information Systems | All papers                        |
| Marketing & International Business       | All papers                        |

## ENROLMENT 1991

1. To facilitate enrolment ALL students are required to complete a Pre-Enrolment Application Form. For 1991 there are three slightly different Pre-Enrolment Application Forms. They are:  
 PAF 1A For all students who have not previously enrolled at any New Zealand university.  
 PAF 1B For students who are transferring from another New Zealand university or whose last enrolment was at the University of Auckland before 1990.  
 PAF 1C For students who were enrolled at the University of Auckland in 1990. (This form will be sent to the appropriate students with 1990 examination results).
2. Pre-enrolment Application forms are available from the Registrar, University of Auckland, Private Bag, Auckland or at the Enquiries Office, Registry Building, 24 Princes Street.
3. For 1991 there are some important deadline dates by which Pre-Enrolment Application Forms must be received at the Registry:
  - (a) 23 November 1990 — for Provisional Entrance applications
  - (b) 14 December 1990 — PAF 1A and PAF 1B submission deadline for *all* students who were *not* enrolled at the University of Auckland in 1990
  - (c) 10 January 1991 — PAF 1C submission deadline for all students who were enrolled at the University of Auckland in 1990.
4. In addition to completing the Pre-Enrolment Application Form all students must complete their enrolment by attending in person at the University in accordance with the Enrolment Timetable. Students failing to enrol in accordance with the Timetable may forfeit their place or be charged with late penalties in full.

Note: Early enrolment is not permitted.

### Notes:

#### 1. Admission Ad Eundem Statum

##### (a) Students From Other New Zealand Universities Wishing to Transfer to the University of Auckland

Students from other New Zealand Universities wishing to transfer to the University of Auckland are required to apply to transfer. Applications must be made on the Pre-enrolment Application Form and submitted with the prescribed fee of \$30.00 to the Registrar not later than 14 December, or if wishing to include a limited entry course or paper by the date set down in the foregoing Schedule. Late applications, except for limited entry courses of study or papers, will be received on payment of a late fee of \$60.00.

##### (b) Students From Overseas Requiring a Student Permit

(i) Overseas students from South Pacific countries seeking admission at entrance level should apply to the New Zealand Vice-Chancellor's Committee, P.O. Box 11915, Manners Street, Wellington.

(ii) Overseas students from countries outside the South Pacific and *all* students applying for postgraduate courses of study must apply to the University for admission. Enquiries and applications should be addressed to the Overseas Students Unit.

#### 2. Special Admission

Students are referred to Regulation 9 of the Admission Regulations and General Fees and Penalties under the Fees Regulations.

#### 3. Academic Requirements and Unsatisfactory Progress

Students are referred to Regulation 9 of the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General) and General Fees and Penalties under the Fees Regulations.

#### 4. Student Advice

A Student Advice Centre in the Old Arts Building, 22 Princes Street, will be open as follows: 3-14 December 1990, 7-10 January 1991, 21 February - 1 March 1991 (in each case, weekdays only from 9am to 5pm).

#### 5. Penalties

##### (a) Late Pre-enrolment, Late Enrolment, Late Additions or Deletions to Courses

Students are referred to Penalties under the Fees Regulations for applications for late submission of the Pre-enrolment Application Form and late enrolment. For late additions or deletions of courses refer to Regulation 7 of the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General).

##### (b) Choice of Course

The course of study of a student making a late enrolment will be determined by the Senate and will not necessarily conform with that proposed by the student concerned. In determining the student's course the Senate will have regard to prior claims upon both laboratory and classroom space of students who have enrolled in accordance with the enrolment timetable.

#### 6. Refund of Fees

Students are referred to Regulation 7 of the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General).

## 1991 ENROLMENT TIMETABLE

Students wishing to enrol at the University of Auckland in 1991 are required to attend at the University, Princes Street, to enrol during the hours of 9 a.m. to 5 p.m. Thursday 21 February, Friday 22 February, Monday 25 February to Friday 1 March 1991 in accordance with this timetable. Enrolment is not completed until fees are

paid (credit cards are not acceptable). Students who were required to apply for entry to a limited entry course of study or paper are asked to bring with them their 'advice of place'.

Students enrolling for the first time at a university should bring their UE, HSC, 6th Form Certificate, Provisional Entrance, Special Admission, Bursary or Scholarship results or evidence of admission ad eundem statum at entrance level.

Any Student who has changed name since last enrolment should produce evidence e.g. marriage certificate, deedpoll.

Students enrolling in more than one Faculty should note that only one enrolment form is required.

Students other than those enrolling for the first time at a New Zealand University, must collect their enrolment forms from Room B28 Basement, Library Building, Alfred Street, the day of their enrolment.

Students enrolling for the first time at a New Zealand University must collect their enrolment forms from Room B15 Basement, Library Building, Alfred Street, the day of their enrolment.

Students who may have difficulty completing enrolment due to disability should write to The Disabled Students Resource Officer, AUSA, not later than 10 January, giving their name, address, telephone number, details of their disability, assistance required and the papers and course in which they propose to enrol.

Note: Students should seek the Departmental and Dean's approval on the day set down in this timetable. Early enrolment is not permitted. Late enrolment during the Enrolment period may result in a fine and in the case of papers where a place has been granted students may forfeit their place.

## INITIALS OF SURNAME MORNING AFTERNOON

### ARCHITECTURE PROPERTY AND PLANNING

|   |             |       |       |
|---|-------------|-------|-------|
| Intermediate for BArch and BPA                        | 21 Thursday | A - K | L - Z |
| BArch, MArch, MPhil, PhD, NZIA/AERB Special, BPA, MPA | 28 Thursday | A - K | L - Z |
| Intermediate for BPlan                                | 25 Monday   | A - K | L - Z |
| BPlan, MPlan, COP                                     | 1 Friday    | A - K | L - Z |

### ARTS

#### BA, COP

All BA and COP papers EXCEPT for those listed below under the heading 'OTHERS'

### OTHERS

#### CONJOINT BCom/BA

Accounting papers

Management Studies & Labour Relations papers

#### DipEdPsych

LLB papers (As for Law Faculty)

#### MA, MLitt, MPhil, DipArts, PGDipArts, DipBrC, DipDrama

DipEd, DipELT, DipGuid, DipLGA, PGDipSocRes, PhD

### SCIENCE papers (BA Schedule Group B)

INTERMEDIATE courses including Arts papers - refer appropriate Faculty

### \*COMMERCE

#### BCom, COP

BCom Part I except for those listed below

Other BCom, COP except for those listed below

### OTHERS:

#### BCom/LawInt

#### CONJOINT BCom/BSc

BCom/LLB

BCom/BA

### ARTS papers

LLB papers (As for Law Faculty)

MCom, MPhil, MTaxS, PhD

DipCom

### SCIENCE papers (including Computer Science & Mathematics)

(\*MBA students enrol 24 & 25 January, DipBus 30 & 31 January 1991)

|              |        |        |
|--------------|--------|--------|
| 22 Friday    | A - B  | C - E  |
| 25 Monday    | F - G  | H - J  |
| 26 Tuesday   | K - Me | Mi - O |
| 27 Wednesday | P - S  | T - Z  |

|             |       |       |
|-------------|-------|-------|
| 28 Thursday | A - K | L - Z |
|-------------|-------|-------|

|            |       |       |
|------------|-------|-------|
| 25 Monday  | A - Z |       |
| 26 Tuesday | A - K | L - Z |

|             |       |       |
|-------------|-------|-------|
| 28 Thursday | A - K | L - Z |
|-------------|-------|-------|

|           |       |       |
|-----------|-------|-------|
| 22 Friday | A - K | L - Z |
|-----------|-------|-------|

|              |       |       |
|--------------|-------|-------|
| 27 Wednesday | A - K | L - Z |
| 28 Thursday  | A - D | E - K |
| 1 Friday     | L - P | Q - Z |

|           |       |       |
|-----------|-------|-------|
| 25 Monday | A - K | L - Z |
|-----------|-------|-------|

|             |       |       |
|-------------|-------|-------|
| 25 Monday   | A - K | L - Z |
| 26 Tuesday  | A - K | L - Z |
| 28 Thursday | A - K | L - Z |

|             |       |       |
|-------------|-------|-------|
| 26 Tuesday  | A - K | L - Z |
| 26 Tuesday  | A - K | L - Z |
| 21 Thursday | A - K | L - Z |
| 1 Friday    | A - K | L - Z |

|           |       |       |
|-----------|-------|-------|
| 25 Monday | A - K | L - Z |
|-----------|-------|-------|



**ENGINEERING**

|   |             |       |       |
|---|-------------|-------|-------|
| First year for BE                                 | 22 Friday   | A - K | L - Z |
| ME, MPhil, PhD                                    | 21 Thursday | A - K | L - Z |
| Second year for BE                                | 25 Monday   | A - K | L - Z |
| Third and Fourth year for BE }<br>DipGeothermTech | 26 Tuesday  | A - K | L - Z |

**FINE ARTS**

|                      |             |       |       |
|----------------------|-------------|-------|-------|
| BFA, MFA, MPhil, PhD | 21 Thursday | A - K | L - Z |
| COP                  | 1 Friday    | A - Z |       |

**LAW**

|   |           |       |       |
|---|-----------|-------|-------|
| Intermediate for Law (including BCom/LawInt, BA/LawInt) | 25 Monday | A - K | L - Z |
| LLB, LLB(Hons), LLM, MJur, MPhil, PhD                   |           |       |       |
| PGDipLS, COP  |           |       |       |

|  |              |       |       |
|--|--------------|-------|-------|
| All students except those listed below | 27 Wednesday | A - K | L - Z |
|--|--------------|-------|-------|

|  |            |       |       |
|--|------------|-------|-------|
| CONJOINT BA/LLB, BCom/LLB }<br>ARTS papers | 26 Tuesday | A - K | L - Z |
|--|------------|-------|-------|

|                |           |       |       |
|----------------|-----------|-------|-------|
| SCIENCE papers | 25 Monday | A - K | L - Z |
|----------------|-----------|-------|-------|

|                            |              |  |       |
|----------------------------|--------------|--|-------|
| PROFESSIONAL LEGAL STUDIES | 27 Wednesday |  | A - Z |
|----------------------------|--------------|--|-------|

**MEDICINE AND HUMAN BIOLOGY**

|  |          |       |       |
|--|----------|-------|-------|
| BHB, MHB, COP                              | 1 Friday | A - Z |       |
| MAud, MBChB, MHSc, MMedSc, MPH, MPhil, PhD | 1 Friday |       | A - Z |

**MUSIC**

|   |              |       |       |
|---|--------------|-------|-------|
| BMus, BMus(Performance), BMus(Performance)(Hons), }<br>MMus, MPhil, PhD, DMus, DipMus, DipMus(Hons) }<br>All students except those in the categories below: | 25 Monday    | A - C | D - F |
|   | 26 Tuesday   | G - K | L - N |
|   | 27 Wednesday | O - S | T - Z |
| SCIENCE papers  | 22 Friday    | A - K | L - Z |

**SCIENCE**

|  |             |       |       |
|--|-------------|-------|-------|
| BSc, BScEd, COP  |             |       |       |
| All BSc and COP papers EXCEPT for those listed below<br>under the heading 'OTHERS' | 21 Thursday | A - D | E - K |
|  | 22 Friday   | L - P | Q - Z |

**OTHERS:**

|   |             |       |       |
|---|-------------|-------|-------|
| SCIENCE papers requiring PRE-ENROLMENT i.e. papers }<br>for which application for a place is required | 21 Thursday | A - K | L - Z |
|---|-------------|-------|-------|

|             |           |       |       |
|-------------|-----------|-------|-------|
| ARTS papers | 22 Friday | A - K | L - Z |
|-------------|-----------|-------|-------|

|        |             |       |       |
|--------|-------------|-------|-------|
| BOptom | 21 Thursday | A - K | L - Z |
|--------|-------------|-------|-------|

|  |             |       |       |
|--|-------------|-------|-------|
| BSc(Hons), MSc, MPhil, PhD }<br>DipCompSci, DipMathsEd, DipSci, DipStats, PGDipSci } | 21 Thursday | A - K | L - Z |
|--|-------------|-------|-------|

|              |              |       |       |
|--------------|--------------|-------|-------|
| DipClinPsych | 27 Wednesday | A - K | L - Z |
|--------------|--------------|-------|-------|

|                 |           |       |       |
|-----------------|-----------|-------|-------|
| COMMERCE papers | 25 Monday | A - K | L - Z |
|-----------------|-----------|-------|-------|

|            |           |       |       |
|------------|-----------|-------|-------|
| LAW papers | 25 Monday | A - K | L - Z |
|------------|-----------|-------|-------|

|              |           |       |       |
|--------------|-----------|-------|-------|
| MUSIC papers | 22 Friday | A - K | L - Z |
|--------------|-----------|-------|-------|

INTERMEDIATE courses including Science papers- refer appropriate Faculty

|     |              |       |       |
|-----|--------------|-------|-------|
| BEd | 27 Wednesday | A - K | L - Z |
|-----|--------------|-------|-------|

|        |           |       |       |
|--------|-----------|-------|-------|
| BTheol | 22 Friday | A - K | L - Z |
|--------|-----------|-------|-------|

## EXTRAMURAL ENROLMENT STATUTE

1. (1). This Statute may be cited as the Extramural Enrolment Statute 1981.  
(2). This Statute shall come into force on 1 January 1982.
2. Any person qualified to enrol at a university in New Zealand who in any year is living in the urban area of Auckland and who satisfies the Senate of the University of Auckland that he or she should not be required to attend classes at the University, shall, subject to the provisions of this Senate and upon such conditions as Senate thinks fit, be permitted to enrol extramurally in that year.
3. No person who is already on the books of another university in New Zealand as a candidate for any degree, diploma or other qualification shall be permitted to enrol extramurally without the permission of that other university.
4. Except where the Senate otherwise permits, a person who is permitted to enrol extramurally in any paper or papers for which extramural tuition is provided at Massey University, shall:
  - (a) be required to register or enrol for tuition in each such paper at Massey University;
  - (b) not enrol in the same year for any other paper or papers at the University of Auckland;
  - (c) take the examinations of Massey University, and appropriate credit shall be granted at the University of Auckland for the paper or papers passed.
5. Save with the permission of the Senate granted in such exceptional circumstance as it thinks fit, no person on the books of the University of Auckland may be enrolled extramurally in respect of:
  - (a) any Stage III paper;
  - (b) any work for a Master's Degree;
  - (c) any work for a diploma;
  - (d) any paper requiring practical or laboratory work;
  - (e) any paper or other work which, in the opinion of Senate, requires internal tuition at a University.
6. (1). A person who is on the books of the University of Auckland as a candidate for any degree, diploma or other qualification but who lives outside the urban area of Auckland but within New Zealand, may be permitted to enrol extramurally.  
(2). Permission for the purpose of subsection (1) of this section shall be at the discretion of Senate, but it shall be granted:
  - (a) in the case of a person not living in the Auckland University District, only with the approval of the appropriate other university;
  - (b) in the case of a person living in the urban area of Dunedin, Christchurch, Wellington, Palmerston North or Hamilton, only if he or she is unable to attend classes at the appropriate other University.
- (3). For the purpose of subsection (2) of this section "the appropriate other University" is Massey University or the University of Waikato, as the case may be, when the person lives in the urban area of Palmerston North or Hamilton; and is otherwise the University of the District in which the person lives (that is, the University of Otago, the University of Canterbury, or the Victoria University of Wellington, as the case may be).
7. A person on the books of this University who ceases to reside in New Zealand, and who requires to pass in the final paper or papers for any degree, diploma or other qualification, may enrol extramurally in the paper or papers at the discretion of Senate and upon such conditions as it thinks fit.
8. For the purpose of this Statute:  
the urban area of each University town named is as defined from time to time by the Council of the University concerned;  
the Auckland University District is as defined in the First Schedule to the University of Auckland Act 1961 but with the exclusion of the urban area of Hamilton.  
New Zealand includes Cook Islands, Niue and Tokelau.
9. The Extramural Enrolment Statute 1962 is repealed.

**Note:** (i) A person who is already on the books of another university in New Zealand who is not qualified to enrol extramurally in accordance with Section 2 of this Statute is, unless the Senate otherwise decides in exceptional circumstances, expected either to transfer to the University of Auckland or to enrol for such paper or papers at the University of Auckland as may be acceptable to the other university.

(ii) A student living in the urban area of Auckland who has been permitted to enrol extramurally at another university in any particular year will be expected, in any subsequent year or university study, either to enrol at the University of Auckland or to obtain the Senate's permission to continue to enrol extramurally.

(iii) The Senate normally permits Auckland Secondary Teachers' College physical education or music students, who are enrolled for BEd at Massey University, to enrol at the University of Auckland for a paper or papers other than those in respect of which extramural enrolment is permitted.

## EXTRAMURAL ENROLMENT REGULATIONS

1. Every person wishing, in any year, to enrol extramurally under the Extramural Enrolment Statute 1981 shall apply to the Registrar of the University not later than 15 January of that year.
2. Every application shall state:
  - (a) the papers or other work in respect of which extramural enrolment is sought;
  - (b) the grounds of the application;
  - (c) whether the applicant is already on the books of, or (where it may be permitted or required) purposes to enrol at any other university and if so, which university and for what course, papers or other work;
  - (d) (i) The applicant's current business and residential address;

- (ii) whether to the best of the applicant's knowledge and belief there will be any change of residence during the year of enrolment; and if so the expected new address and approximate date of change.
3. The applicant if living within the urban area of Auckland shall provide such evidence as the Senate deems fit that he or she is unable or should not be required to attend classes at the University of Auckland.
  4. The application for extramural enrolment under section 6 of the Statute by a student already on the books of this University who lives in the urban area of a university town other than Auckland must be supported by a certificate from the Registrar of the appropriate university that the applicant is unable to attend classes at that university.
  5. Every student permitted to enrol extramurally:
    - (a) shall pay the prescribed fees for course approval (in addition to any fees payable at another University);
    - (b) may withdraw from his or her studies by written notice to the Registrar not later than 31 March; and having done so by that date, shall be entitled to a full refund of fees (but not any late fee or fine).
  6. (1). The studies of students permitted to enrol extramurally under the Statute are subject to Regulation 10 of the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General).  
 (2). For the purpose of this Regulation students who have not withdrawn under Regulation 5 (b) or, being enrolled also at Massey University, have not withdrawn in accordance with the Regulations of that University, shall be deemed engaged in academic studies in the relevant year.
  7. The Extramural Regulations last published in the 1981 *Calendar* are revoked.
  8. These Regulations shall come into force on 1 January 1982.

## DEFINITIONS OF FULL-TIME STUDY 1991

### Architecture Property and Planning

#### Architecture Intermediate

All subjects required for the Intermediate under BArch Reg 5(72 points)\*

#### BArch

36 credits

#### Planning Intermediate

72 points\*

#### BPlan

36 credits

#### Property Administration Intermediate

72 points\*

#### BPA

A professional year or equivalent

### Arts

#### BA

72 points\*

#### DipArts

72 points\*

#### DipBrC

All work as specified under DipBrC Reg 3

#### DipDrama

All work as specified under DipDrama Reg 3 and 4

#### DipEd

The required 4 papers and Original Investigation. In the case of a student taking Education 14.100 and 14.101 as well as Diploma subjects: 14.100 and 14.110 and either 4 papers or 3 papers and Original Investigation

#### DipEdPsych

Pt I or Pt II

#### DipELT

All papers as specified under DipELT Reg 3

#### DipGuid

Pt I or Pt II

#### DipLGA

All subjects required under DipLGA Reg 5

#### Wellesley Programme

48 points\*

### Commerce

#### BCom

72 points\*

#### MBA

9 papers

#### DipCom

6 papers as specified under DipCom Reg 3

### Engineering

#### BE

A Professional Examination or equivalent

#### DipGeothermTech

Parts I, II and III

### Fine Arts

#### BFA

6 papers in the first Professional year

9 papers in the second, third and fourth Professional years

### Law

#### Law Intermediate

All subjects required under LLB Reg 3, (72 points\*)

#### LLB

72 points\*

#### PGDipLS

All subjects required under PGDipLS Reg 3 and 4

#### ProflS

Short course of 13 weeks

**Medicine and Human Biology**

|       |                   |
|-------|-------------------|
| BHB   | Part I, II or III |
| MBChB | Part I, II or III |

**Music**

|                           |                                   |
|---------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| BMus                      | 72 points*                        |
| BMus (Performance)        | Performance and 3 papers          |
| BMus (Performance) (Hons) | All work as specified under Reg 4 |
| DipMus                    | 6 papers                          |
| DipMus (Hons)             | 6 papers                          |

**Science**

|                     |  |
|---------------------|--|
| BSc                 | 72 points*                                     |
| BSc (Hons)          | Part III or IV                                 |
| BOptom              | Year I, II, III or IV or equivalent            |
| DipClinPsych        | All subjects required under DipClinPsych Reg 3 |
| DipCompSci          | All subjects required under DipCompSci Reg 4   |
| DipMathsEd          | All subjects required under DipMathsEd Reg 3   |
| DipStats            | All subjects required under DipStats Reg 3     |
| Wellesley Programme | 48 points                                      |

**Joint Boards of Study**

|        |            |
|--------|------------|
| BEd    | 72 points* |
| BTheol | 72 points* |

|                                 |            |
|---------------------------------|------------|
| <b>Transitional Certificate</b> | 72 points* |
|---------------------------------|------------|

**\*Points**

- (a) Papers in the Schedules for BA, BCom, BMus:
- |                   |                     |
|-------------------|---------------------|
| at Stage I and II | 12 points per paper |
| at Stage III      | 16 points per paper |
- (b) Papers in the Schedule for BSc:
- |              |                     |
|--------------|---------------------|
| at Stage I   | 2 points per credit |
| at Stage II  | 3 points per credit |
| at Stage III | 4 points per credit |
- (c) Papers in the Schedule for LLB I
- |   |                   |
|---|-------------------|
| Papers in the Schedule for LLB I        | 18 points each    |
| Papers in the Schedule for LLB II & III | 8 points per hour |

**Masters Courses**

The student must be pursuing a full-time programme approved by the Head of the Department.

**Prerequisites for Postgraduate Courses**

A course of papers, prescribed to fulfil prerequisites for entering a postgraduate degree, may, with the approval of Senate, be deemed full-time for the purpose of these Regulations.

Note: Students enrolled for less than a full-time programme are for all purposes considered to be part-time students except that under the Student Allowances Regulations a student may be defined as limited full-time for allowance purposes only.

---

**EXAMINATION REGULATIONS****Eligibility to Sit Examinations**

- To be eligible to present himself or herself for examination in a paper or subject, a candidate
  - must have been enrolled as an internal student, have attended classes to the satisfaction of the Senate, and performed to the satisfaction of the Senate such oral, practical, written and other work as the Senate may require

Note: Students will be informed by each department of the specific requirements for courses in that department and the extent to which the year's work will be taken into consideration in assessing final results. In some cases students may not be permitted to sit the final examination.

- not being enrolled as an internal student, must have been granted exemption in accordance with the Extramural Statute and Regulations.

**Time of Examinations**

- The examination shall be held at the times specified in the timetable each year.

**Place of Examinations**

- All internal students must sit their examinations at Auckland. Extramural students who do not wish to sit their examinations at Auckland may sit at one of the centres specified in the Extramural Enrolment Regulations, provided that, with the approval of the Senate, a special examination centre may be established under special circumstances subject to the payment of the extra fee prescribed in the Fees Regulations.

**Conduct of Examinations**

- The examinations shall comprise such written, oral and practical examinations as the examiners may determine.

(b). Where degree Regulations or prescriptions permit, or the Senate upon such conditions as it thinks fit approves, the examiners may in respect of any examination release to the candidates, the examination paper in advance of the sitting of the examination.

(c). Candidates shall write out answers to the questions in the presence of a supervisor, who shall be appointed or approved by the Council in accordance with such detailed instructions as may be furnished by the Council.

(d). No candidate shall communicate with an examiner in regard to an examination except through the Registrar.

(e). No candidate may be examined in any subject or part of a subject at any time other than that set down for him or her in the timetable.

(f). No candidate shall be allowed to enter the room:

(i) for a 3-hour examination later than one hour thirty minutes after candidates have begun writing the examination;

(ii) for a 2-hour examination later than one hour after candidates have begun writing the examination;

(iii) for a 1½-hour examination later than forty-five minutes after candidates have begun writing the examination;

(iv) for a 1-hour examination later than thirty minutes after candidates have begun writing the examination.

(g). No candidate shall be permitted to leave the room:

(i) of a 3-hour examination until one hour forty-five minutes has elapsed from the time the writing of the examination began;

(ii) of a 2-hour examination until one hour fifteen minutes has elapsed from the time the writing of the examination began;

(iii) of a 1½-hour examination until one hour has elapsed from the time the writing of the examination began;

(iv) of a 1-hour examination until forty-five minutes has elapsed from the time the writing of the examination began,

and then only with the permission of the supervisor and upon handing in his or her script.

(h). Candidates shall be allowed to read their examination papers for a period of not more than ten minutes before the examination commences but may not begin writing their answers until the room supervisor announces that they may do so.

(i). No candidate shall bring into examination an electronic calculator except by direction of the examiner. Where an examination has been designed 'calculator permitted':

(i) the calculator used in the examination must be electronic, truly portable and self-powered, and noiseless. No audible alarms may be used;

(ii) no supplementary material (e.g. operating manuals) related to the use and operation of the calculator will be permitted in the examination room other than spare batteries;

(iii) in all cases it is the responsibility of the candidate to maintain the operation and operating power of the calculator.

**Note:** In the context of Regulation 4 (i) above Electronic Calculator refers to any electronic device capable of information storage, or processing or retrieval.

(j). No candidate shall bring to an examination any written or printed matter except by direction of the examiner:

(i) Where an examination is designated "Open Book", candidates may take into the examination room any written or printed material including Books, Acts, etc., and there will be no check on items taken into the examination room.

(ii) Where an examination is designated "Restricted Book", candidates shall take into the examination room only material specified by the examiner, and that material shall not be annotated, written or typed upon, or otherwise marked.

(iii) Where an examination is designated "Restricted Book - may be written upon", candidates shall take into the examination room only material specified by the examiner; and that material may be annotated, written or typed upon or otherwise marked in a relevant or contextual manner.

(iv) All books and papers not approved for use in the examination, along with any spare personal belongings brought to the examination shall be left in such part of the room as the supervisor shall direct. All paper used during the examination must be handed to the supervisor before the candidate leaves the examination room.

(v) Where material is permitted under items (ii) and (iii) above, examiners will be required to be present at the commencement of the examination to check material brought in to the examination room.

(k). No candidate shall communicate with another in the examination room.

(l). No candidate shall continue writing an answer after the supervisor has announced the expiration of time. In no circumstances is any time over and above the time allotted to any paper to be allowed a candidate for reading over his scripts or making any amendment or addition to his scripts.

(m). Any complaint that a candidate has committed an examination offence shall be referred to the Deans Committee of the Senate (to which the Senate has delegated power to deal with all matters relating to examinations) to determine whether the complaint should be investigated. For the purposes of this Regulation an examination offence includes any breach of any rules relating to the conduct of examinations and any dishonest practice occurring in the preparation or submission of any work (whether in the course of an examination or not) which counts towards the attainment of a pass in any subject or otherwise occurring in connection with any examination.

(n). The Discipline Committee of the Senate (to which the Senate has delegated the appropriate powers) shall hear and determine any complaint which the Deans Committee has resolved should be investigated. The candidate concerned shall be notified in writing of the subject matter of the complaint and the time and place of the hearing. He or she shall be invited to state in writing his or her answer to the complaint and may attend the hearing.

(o). The Senate shall have power (which it may delegate to its Discipline Committee) to do all or any of the following things in the case of a candidate found guilty of an examination offence:

- (i) Impose upon him or her any of the penalties prescribed in the Disciplinary Regulations.
- (ii) Disqualify him or her from sitting any examinations for such period as may be prescribed.
- (iii) Cancel any pass with which he or she may have been credited in the subject or examination in respect of which the offence has occurred.

(p). Where the Senate or any committee of the Senate is satisfied that a candidate has not complied with any Regulation of the University whether in respect of any examination or any other matter having given the candidate such opportunity as it considers reasonable of remedying non-compliance with the Regulation or Regulations, then the Senate shall have power (which it may delegate to its Discipline Committee) to suspend for such time as may be prescribed the release to the candidate of the results of any examination, or to decline to credit to his or her course any subject or subjects, or to impose both those penalties.

(q). A candidate may appeal to the Council from any decision of the Senate or its Discipline Committee under paragraphs (n) or (o) of this Regulation by giving notice in writing to the Registrar within 14 days of being notified of the decision. A candidate so appealing shall be entitled to make submissions in writing and may, with the consent of the council, appear when the appeal is determined. The council may dismiss or allow the appeal or vary the penalty but shall not impose any penalty which the Senate or its Discipline Committee could not have imposed. The decision of the Council on any appeal under this Regulation shall be final.

### Marking of Scripts

5. (a). In determining a candidate's result the examiners:

- (i) may take into consideration the work done by the candidate during the year;
- (ii) shall give due weight to reports on practical work done by the candidate wherever these are required;
- (iii) shall include marks obtained by the candidate where the Senate has allotted a percentage of marks for awarding on the year's work of the candidate in any paper or subject.

### Passes - Grades and Marks

(b). A pass mark in any paper or subject including papers and thesis for a Master's Degree is: for a single paper, 50%;

for two or more combined or linked papers, an average of 50%;

for one or more papers and a thesis, and average of 50%;

provided that:

- (i) the Senate may give approval for a thesis to count as more than one paper;
- (ii) a candidate not attaining a minimum of 37% in any combined or linked paper except in the papers or thesis for a Master's Degree and mid-year examinations, will fail the subject as a whole provided that this requirement may be waived in exceptional circumstances at the discretion of the Senate;
- (iii) a candidate taking papers in the Faculty of Music not attaining a minimum of 37% of the marks allocated for the end of the year examination, will fail the paper as a whole. This does not apply to examinations in Performance;
- (iv) a candidate for the Degree of Master of Engineering must pass in each of eight subjects or in each of three subjects and a thesis;
- (v) where oral work is required for a paper of a language, unless otherwise provided, a pass in both oral work and written papers is necessary;
- (vi) where both practical and written work is required for a paper or subject a pass in both practical work and written paper is necessary.

These are eleven pass grades and two fail grades as set out:

### Pass Grades

A+ high first

B+ high second

C+ sound pass

A clear first

B clear second

C pass

A- bare first

B- bare second

C- marginal pass

Note: (i) Candidates for BMus (Performance) who pass the subject Performance 28, 120 with a grade of C- and are therefore not eligible to proceed with the course of study for BMus (Performance) may in respect of that pass apply for a credit of two unspecified Stage 1 Music papers towards the course of study for the Degree of BMus.

### Restricted Passes

A restricted pass shall apply:

(a) only to a paper in the Faculties of Arts, Commerce or Science;

(b) to the course of study awarded and may not be transferred to another course of study.

A candidate at the discretion of the appropriate Faculty may be considered for a restricted pass. No application by the candidate is required. A restricted pass in a paper which is a prerequisite for enrolment in another paper shall not be accepted as fulfilling that prerequisite except with the approval of the relevant Head of Department in each case.

A candidate may decline the award of a restricted pass in a paper by notifying the Registrar in writing not later than 31 March in the year following the award.

Note: A student with a Restricted Pass in a paper who wishes to take the paper again may do so for Certificate of Proficiency only.

**Conceded Passes**

A conceded pass shall apply only to the following courses of study and may not be transferred to another course of study: Bachelor of Architecture, Diploma in Business and Industrial Administration, Bachelor of Engineering, Bachelor of Fine Arts, Bachelor of Human Biology, Bachelor of Laws, Bachelor of Laws with Honours, Law Professional Examination, Bachelor of Medicine and Surgery, Bachelor of Music, Bachelor of Music (Performance), Diploma in Music, Bachelor of Optometry, Bachelor of Property Administration, Bachelor of Planning including Intermediate years where applicable).

A candidate at the discretion of the appropriate Faculty may be considered for a conceded pass. No application by the candidate for consideration is required.

**Fail Grades**

D+ Marginal Fail

D Clear Fail

D- Poor Fail

**Work at Standard of Honours**

6. A candidate whose work is at the standard of Honours or a First or Second Class Pass under the relevant degree or diploma Regulations but who is ineligible for the award of Honours or First or Second Class Pass under the Regulations shall be informed of the standard that he or she would have been awarded had he or she been eligible.

**Recount of Marks**

7. By making application within four weeks from the date of the mailing of his or her official result of the examinations, any candidate sitting for an examination for a degree, diploma, professional qualification, or certificate of proficiency may have the marks awarded his or her script recounted in any paper or subject which he or she has failed. The fee for such a recount shall be as prescribed in the Fees Regulations. A recount of marks covers a careful rechecking of the marks recorded by the examiner and ensures that no answer or any portion of an answer submitted by a candidate has been overlooked. No information relative to the application will be placed before the examiner. Candidates for the Degree of Bachelor of Architecture, Bachelor of Fine Arts, Master of Fine Arts, Bachelor of Music (Performance), Bachelor of Music (Performance) with Honours, or for the Diploma in Music, or the Diploma in Music with Honours may apply for a recount of marks for written papers only.

Note: The prescribed fee for an application for recount of marks is \$28.15, which includes postage within New Zealand. The fee is not refundable.

**Availability of Scripts**

8. By making application not later than the Friday preceding the Enrolment period a candidate may obtain a photocopy of his or her final examination script.

Note: The prescribed fee for a photocopy of an examination script is \$28.15, which includes postage within New Zealand.

**Aegrotat Pass**

9. A candidate who has been prevented by illness or injury from presenting himself or herself at any examination in any paper or subject, or who considers that his or her performance in any examination in any paper or subject has been seriously impaired by illness or injury may on application and with the approval of the Senate be granted an aegrotat pass in such paper or subject if the following conditions are satisfied:

- (a) that the candidate is enrolled as an internal student for the course of instruction in the paper or subject in question;
- (b) that the illness or injury was reported in writing to the Registrar within one week of the date upon which the examination affected took place or if more than one examination has been affected then within one week of the last of such examinations;
- (c) that as soon as practicable after reporting the illness or injury, the candidate furnish to the Registrar a certificate (on the form provided) from a registered medical practitioner which
  - (i) states that the practitioner examined the candidate on a certain date;
  - (ii) states that in the practitioner's opinion, illness or injury of the candidate at the actual time of the examination in question either prevented the candidate from taking the examination or was likely to have seriously impaired his or her performance in it;
  - (iii) gives sufficient detail of the illness or injury to show clearly that the candidate was not responsible for his or her disability;
  - (iv) is suitable for submission, in cases of doubt, to a medical referee;
- (d) that the candidate's responsible teachers in the paper or subject of the examination in question certify that his or her work therein during the course of instruction was well above the minimum pass standard (or where relevant the minimum standard for a class of Honours) and that he or she is in their opinion clearly worthy to pass in that paper or subject (or where relevant) to be awarded First or Second Class Honours or alternatively that the Senate is satisfied upon considering the quality of the candidate's work during the course of instruction and of any work which he or she has completed in the current examinations (whether in the paper or subject in question or any other paper or subject) that the candidate is clearly worthy to pass in the paper or subject in question or (where relevant) to be awarded First or Second Class Honours OR First or Second Class Pass therein.

Provided that in either case:

- (i) Honours may not be given to a candidate who has been awarded a pass under this Regulation in respect of more than two papers for a degree or diploma;

- (ii) a candidate for the Degree of Bachelor of Engineering may, on the recommendation of the Senate, be given Honours irrespective of the number of aegrotat passes awarded.

**Note:** The fee prescribed under the Fees Regulations for each application for an Aegrotat Pass is \$6.00.

### Compassionate Pass

10. Where by reason of any exceptional circumstances beyond his or her control other than his or her own illness or injury a candidate has been prevented from presenting himself or herself at any examination in any paper or subject or considers that his or her performance in any examination in any paper or subject has been seriously impaired, he or she may on application and with the approval of the Senate be granted a compassionate pass subject to compliance with the same condition (with necessary changes) as those appearing in Clauses (a) and (d) of Regulation 9. Such an application must be made to the Registrar on the form provided within one week of the date upon which the examination affected took place, or, if several examinations have been effected, then within one week of the last of those examinations, and must be supported by such evidence as the Registrar shall require.
11. (a). The provisions of Regulations 9 and 10 shall apply to:
- any final written examination presented for a paper or subject of a course of study for a degree, or for a diploma, or for a Certificate of Proficiency, or for a professional qualification;
  - any final practical examination presented for a paper or subject of a course of study for a degree, or for a diploma, or for a Certificate of Proficiency, or for a professional qualification.
- (b). The provisions of Regulation 9 and 10 shall apply (with necessary changes) to:
- the final submission in each year of work for the practical subjects for the Degree of Bachelor of Fine Arts, or the Degree of Master of Fine Arts;
  - the final submission in each year of studio work for the Degree of Bachelor of Architecture as if such final submission were an examination and as if the date upon which such final submission was due were the date of examination.
12. Where (i) a percentage of the marks awarded for a final examination is allocated to a prior written test; and (ii) a candidate is prevented by illness, injury or circumstances beyond his or her control, from sitting the test; or considers that his or her performance in the test has been seriously impaired by any of those causes - then; if the conditions in Clauses (a), (b) and (c) of Regulation 9 are (with the necessary changes) complied with, the candidate may on application and at the discretion of the Senate:
- be permitted to sit another written test; or
  - receive a mark based on the average of marks awarded for other course work; or
  - take a viva voce examination; or
  - have the entire mark allocated to the final examination.
13. A candidate who is eligible to apply and has applied for an aegrotat or compassionate pass in any paper or subject may, in exceptional circumstances and on a recommendation from the Head of the Department concerned, be granted permission by the Senate to take a viva voce examination in any paper or subject of his or her aegrotat or compassionate pass application.

### Concessions

14. Where degree Regulations or prescriptions permit, or the Senate upon such conditions as it thinks fit approves, the examiners may in respect of any examination require or permit the candidates, either wholly or partly in lieu of taking an examination held in accordance with Regulations 2 to 5 inclusive and 7 to 9 inclusive of these Regulations, submit for examination such written assignments of work as may be required.

### Theses

15. Where a thesis is required as part of an examination the following conditions shall apply:
- Diplomas, Bachelors and Masters Degrees**
    - The candidate shall submit two bound copies of the thesis to the Registrar and a short abstract not exceeding 350 words bound in each copy of the thesis.
    - The Registrar shall transmit the submitted copies to the examiners.
    - On completion of the examination the supervisor of the thesis shall be responsible through the Head of the Department for the deposit of two copies with the University Library.
  - Degree of Doctor of Philosophy**
    - The candidate shall submit three bound copies of the thesis to the Registrar and a short abstract not exceeding 350 words bound in each copy of the thesis.
    - On completion of the examination two copies shall be deposited with the University Library. The disposal of the third copy shall be at the discretion of the Head of the Department.

**Notes:** (i) In the case of PhD theses, a further unbound copy of the thesis and abstract will be required by the University Library if the candidate wishes to have the thesis published by the University Microfilms International. Information in this connection will be forwarded to the candidate when the Degree is awarded.

(ii) Candidates are recommended to obtain the booklet *Guide to the Presentation of Theses* from the Library before proceeding with the typing and binding of the thesis. A clear, legible type style is to be used and the thesis must be submitted in hardbound form.

(iii) The author of a thesis has a right to impose conditions restricting the publication of his or her work for such a period as he or she may stipulate without however curtailing the University Librarian's right to make and supply copies thereof in terms of subsection (3) of Section 21 of the Copyright Act (1962).

(iv) Where it is suspected that a thesis contains defamatory material the University Librarian may restrict access to the thesis subject to confirmation by the Library Committee.

(v) Supervisors are requested to notify the University Library when a thesis is submitted if it is believed to contain material which could be considered defamatory.

(vi) Where a thesis has been presented as part of a degree which:

(a) has been awarded but the thesis itself is failed, that thesis will not be deposited in the Library;

(b) has not been awarded, the thesis will not be deposited in the Library irrespective of whether the thesis itself has been given a pass or fail grade.



**Examination Centres**

16. Pursuant to Regulation 1 hereof the University of Auckland will conduct examinations in the following centres: Apia, Auckland, Dargaville, Gisborne, Lautoka, Nuku'alofa, Paeroa, Rotorua, Rarotonga, Suva and Whangarei. Internal candidates are required to sit their examinations at Auckland.

## CONFERRING OF DEGREES AND ACADEMIC DRESS REGULATIONS

1. Every degree and every diploma of the University shall be conferred or awarded in pursuance of a resolution of the Council in that behalf and at a meeting of the Council by the Chancellor or if he or she is absent from New Zealand or incapacitated by sickness or otherwise then by the Vice-Chancellor.
2. Every recipient of a degree shall receive a certificate in appropriate form, under the Common Seal of the University, that his or her Degree has been conferred and stating the class of Honours (if any) awarded.
3. Every diploma shall be in appropriate form under the Common Seal of the University.
4. In May of each year the Council shall meet in Convocation of the University for a ceremony of conferring Degrees and awarding Diplomas. Persons desiring to have their degree conferred or diploma awarded (whether in person or in absentia) at a ceremony in May shall make application to the Registrar not later than 31 March in the year of the ceremony.
5. The form of words to be used by the Chancellor (or Vice-Chancellor) in conferring a degree shall be as follows: "By authority vested in me as Chancellor (or Vice-Chancellor) I now proceed to confer the degrees stated upon those who, within their several Faculties, have satisfied the requirements of this University."
6. The form of words to be used by the Chancellor (or Vice-Chancellor) in awarding a diploma shall with the necessary changes be the same as for the conferring of a degree.
7. The Regulations for academic dress shall be as follows:
  - (a) Graduates must appear at all public ceremonies of the University in the academic costume proper to their degree, but doctors may on special occasions wear a scarlet gown and graduates admitted Ad Eundem Statum may wear the academic costume of their own university. Unless the holder of a diploma is also a graduate, the only academic dress he or she may wear is an undergraduate gown.
  - (b) The robe for the Chancellor of the University is a blue damask gown with facings of gold lace, bearing on each shoulder the coat of arms of the University. The cap is a black velvet trencher with gold lace and tassel. The robe for the Pro-Chancellor is a black gown with facings of blue silk and gold lace, bearing on each shoulder the coat of arms. The cap is a black velvet trencher with gold tassel. The robe for the Vice-Chancellor is a blue silk gown with facings of silver lace, bearing on each shoulder the coat of arms. The cap is a black velvet trencher with silver lace and tassel.  
The robe for the Registrar is a gown of black silk with facings of blue silk, bearing on each shoulder the coat of arms. The cap is a black velvet trencher with a black silk tassel.
  - (c) The gown for a Bachelor's degree is as for the Cambridge Bachelor of Arts. The gown for a Master's degree is as for the Cambridge Master of Arts. The hood for every degree is the size and shape as for the Cambridge Master of Arts. The hood for a Bachelor's degree is lined with coloured silk and bordered with white fur. The hood for a Master's degree is lined with coloured silk only.  
The colours of the linings of the hoods for the Bachelor's and Master's degrees are as follows:
 

|                               |  |
|-------------------------------|--|
| Architecture .....            | lemon (BCC 111 primrose)               |
| Arts .....                    | pink (BCC 32 rosepink)                 |
| Business Administration ..... | burgundy (Polysatin 115cm width)       |
| Commerce .....                | orange (BCC 57 spectrum orange)        |
| Engineering .....             | violet (BCC 179 violet)                |
| Fine Arts .....               | gold (BCC 144 gold)                    |
| Laws .....                    | light blue (BCC 194 pompadour)         |
| Medicine                      |  |
| BHB .....                     | lilac (BCC 228 mayflower lilac)        |
| MBChB, MMedSc .....           | crimson (BCC 240 medici crimson)       |
| Music .....                   | white (BCC 1 white)                    |
| Optometry .....               | blue-green (BCC 119 honey bird)        |
| Planning .....                | light green (BCC 171 chartreuse green) |
| Property Administration ..... | silver grey (BCC 41 violet grey)       |
| Science .....                 | dark blue (BCC 87 empire blue)         |
  - (d) The gown for the Degree of Doctor of Philosophy is as for the Cambridge Master of Arts with the addition of facings four inches wide of scarlet satin (3in-BCC 209 post office red) edged with gold satin (1in-BCC 114 gold). The hood is made wholly of scarlet silk.
  - (e) The gown for a Doctor's degree other than that of Doctor of Philosophy is as for the Cambridge Master of Arts but it is made of blue silk or of scarlet silk or cloth. The hood is made wholly of silk and is of the following colours for the different degrees:
 

|                   |                                |
|-------------------|--------------------------------|
| Engineering ..... | violet (BCC 179 violet)        |
| Laws .....        | light blue (BCC 194 pompadour) |

- Literature ..... pink (BCC 32 rosepink)  
 Medicine ..... crimson (BCC 240 medici crimson)  
 Music ..... white (BCC 1 white)  
 Science ..... dark blue (BCC 87 empire blue)  
 (f) The cap for all graduates other than Doctors and the officers of the University is a black trencher with a tassel.  
 (g) The cap for all Doctors other than the officers of the University is as for the full dress Cambridge Doctor of Philosophy, namely a round black velvet bonnet with a gold cord around the crown ending in tassels.

Note: (1) The colour of the lining of the hood for the Degree of Master of Philosophy is that of the Faculty in which the Degree is taken.  
 (2) Number references are from the British Colour Council Dictionary of Colour Standards. Approximate colours in the substitute material satin may be seen on a chart at the inquiry counter at the Registry.  
 (3) Satin or taffeta is frequently used as a substitute for silk which is not always obtainable.

## AWARD OF HONORARY DEGREES

Clause 19 (3) of the University of Auckland Act 1961 gives Council power to confer any degree as an honorary degree in accordance with such conditions as it may prescribe: provided that no honorary degree shall be conferred on any person by the Council unless that person has been recommended therefore by a joint committee of the Council and the Senate set up in accordance with the Statutes or Regulations of the University. Pursuant to the above clause of the Act, Council has drawn up regulations and set up an Honorary Degrees Committee for the conferment of the following honorary degrees:

Doctor of Laws  
 Doctor of Science  
 Doctor of Literature  
 Doctor of Music  
 Any Master's Degree

Information regarding the procedure and criteria for the nomination of a candidate for one of the above honorary degrees may be obtained from either the Vice-Chancellor or the Registrar.

## FEES REGULATIONS

The following fees have been prescribed by Council and are all subject to Goods and Service Tax of 12.5% which is included in the following schedule.

### GENERAL FEES

|  | \$     |
|--|--------|
| Abandonment .....  | 12.00  |
| Ad Eundem Statum Admission (from overseas) .....   | 120.00 |
| Additions to a Course of Study .....   | 30.00  |
| Academic Certificates .....  | 6.00   |
| Aegrotat Pass .....  | 6.00   |
| Availability of Scripts .....  | 30.00  |
| Completion of an Auckland Degree or Diploma  |        |
| at an overseas University .....  | 60.00  |
| at a New Zealand University .....  | 30.00  |
| Cross-credits, Credit or Exemptions .....  | 18.00  |
| .....  | 4.00   |
| There is a \$60.00 maximum for each full-time course as defined under the Section 'Definitions of Full-Time Study' with an overall maximum of \$145                        |        |
| Extramural Enrolment (University of Auckland) .....  | 8.00   |
| Extramural Enrolment (Massey University)   |        |
| Any student whose record is held at the University of Auckland who wishes to enrol extramurally for tuition at Massey University while remaining on Auckland's books ..... | 12.00  |
| Personal Interest Course - Non-matriculated Students .....   | 30.00  |
| Provisional Entrance .....   | 60.00  |
| Special Admission .....  | 30.00  |
| Recount of Marks .....   | 30.00  |
| *Examination Centres Examinations sat at Auckland but outside normal hours   |        |
| ..... each paper   | 45.00  |
| Examinations sat in New Zealand but out of Auckland .....  | 60.00  |

|  |                  |          |
|--|------------------|----------|
| Examinations sat outside New Zealand .....                 | each paper       | \$ 90.00 |
| Special Statements (e.g. Admission to the Bar, etc.) ..... | each statement   | 30.00    |
| Transfer from another New Zealand University .....         | each application | 30.00    |
| Unsatisfactory Progress .....                              | each application | 30.00    |

## EXAMINATION FEES

|   |      |           |
|---|------|-----------|
| DSc, LittD, LLD .....   | each | \$ 650.00 |
| DMus (for tuition fees refer Tuition and Research Fees)<br>on submission of work to be examined ..... |      | 325.00    |
| MD application to be examined .....   |      | 150.00    |
| on submission of thesis .....   |      | 300.00    |

## COURSE MATERIAL

Departments may charge for materials supplied. Briefly these materials will be in lieu of text books and charges will vary from department to department.

## STUDENTS' ASSOCIATION FEE

Students' Association Fee ..... \$147.00  
 All students are required to pay the Students' Association Fee which includes a building levy and GST for a maximum period of three years enrolled at this or any other tertiary institute. The three year enrolment requirement is retroactive from 1990.  
**IN ALL OTHER CASES ANY STUDENT WISHING TO BE EXEMPTED THE ABOVE FEE MUST APPLY TO THE STUDENTS' ASSOCIATION OFFICE FOR THE APPROPRIATE EXEMPTION.**

This includes:

- (i) students transferring from another tertiary institute who will need written proof of enrolment and number of years attending other institutions
- (ii) students who are members of the Auckland University Medical Students' Association who are enrolled in year 1, 2 or 3 of the BHB course may pay a reduced fee of \$33 less than the Auckland University Students' Association Fee, exclusive of the building levy ..... \$114.00
- (iii) students concurrently enrolled at any other tertiary institute who are undertaking some study at Auckland University may pay a reduced fee of one half of the Students' Association Fee including the building levy ..... \$73.50
- (iv) students who are concurrently enrolled full-time at any other tertiary institute who are undertaking their full Auckland University degrees off-campus in 1991 need not pay the fee and will receive none of the benefits of AUSA membership
- (v) students who feel they may qualify for exemption under the provisions of the Education Amendment Act 1990 229(2) will not pay the fee and will receive none of the benefits of AUSA membership.

Late applications will be considered but in no case after 30 November in the year for which the exemption is sought.

## WELFARE FEE

|                     |         |
|---------------------|---------|
| Welfare Fee .....   | \$33.75 |
| (Subject to review) |         |

All students are required to pay the Welfare Fee (with limited exceptions).

- (i) The following students if they wish to use the Welfare Service must pay the Welfare Fee and the Students' Association Fee:  
 Students living outside Auckland and not using the University Facilities other than the Library who are enrolled for thesis, dissertation or research essay.  
 Students not required to pay the Students' Association Fee (see under Students' Association see para (i) above).
- (ii) Students enrolled full-time at Auckland College of Education or Auckland Technical Institute, may pay a reduced Welfare Fee of \$11.25. Evidence of having paid a welfare charge at the College or Institute in the same year must be produced at enrolment.
- (iii) Students on an approved cadetship may pay a reduced Welfare Fee of \$11.25.
- (iv) Full-time members of staff who are enrolled for courses may not use the Welfare Services except by payment of standard charges for non-student users. The Student Health Service is available only in an emergency.
- (v) Students sponsored by the United Nations for DipGeothermTech and students under approved University exchange schemes may use the Welfare Services without payment of the fee.

## PENALTIES

Note: General fees, late fees, fines and penalties are not refundable.

### Late Enrolments

|  |       |
|--|-------|
| Internal Students  | \$    |
| (a) During the Enrolment Period  |       |
| Failure to enrol on the appropriate day, morning or afternoon as required by the enrolment timetable ..... | 24.00 |
| (b) After the Enrolment Period .....   | 60.00 |
| In addition after end of first week of first term ..... per week or part of a week                         | 6.00  |
| (c) DipG&O, DipObst - after 1 February or 1 August...per week or part of a week                            | 6.00  |
| (d) DipPaed - after 1 October .....  | 6.00  |
| (e) MBChB (final year) - after 15 November ..... per week or part of a week                                | 6.00  |
| Students for Instruction in a Single Instrument (Music)  |       |
| After the Enrolment Period .....   | 60.00 |
| In addition after end of first week of first term ..... per week or part of a week                         | 6.00  |

### Late Applications

Note: Late fees are payable in addition to the General Fee.

|  |       |
|--|-------|
| (i) Additions to Courses of Study  |       |
| Applications received after the date prescribed in the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General) Regulation 7 ..... | 6.00  |
| (ii) Admission Ad Eundem Statum  |       |
| From a New Zealand University  |       |
| After 10 January .....   | 60.00 |
| From an overseas University  |       |
| After 1 September for an undergraduate course .....  | 60.00 |
| After 30 November for a graduate course .....  | 60.00 |
| (iii) Completion of Degree or Diploma at another University  |       |
| After 10 January .....   | 60.00 |
| (iv) Pre-Enrolment Application Form after due date   |       |
| (refer Pre-Enrolment Application Regulations) .....  | 60.00 |

## TUITION AND RESEARCH FEES 1991

Note: 1. A Master's candidate required to re-submit a thesis must re-enrol and pay the prescribed fee.

2. Students may be required to pay towards the cost of their field trips.

3. No refund of fees will be made unless an 'Application to Alter Course' form is handed in to the Registry on or before the appropriate date prescribed in Regulation 8 of the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General) and approved.

4. Definitions of full-time study are listed after the Extramural Enrolment Regulations in this Calendar.

### FEES FOR NEW ZEALAND CITIZENS AND PERMANENT RESIDENTS

#### A. ALL COURSES OF STUDY (other than those in Section B)

|                                  |          |
|----------------------------------|----------|
| Standard Tertiary Fee            | \$       |
| Full-time course of study .....  | 1,300.00 |
| Part-time course of study* ..... | 15.50    |

Note: Students may apply for a reduction of the fee if their circumstances meet the criteria set by the Ministry of Education - refer to end of this section.

Applications must be submitted at enrolment.

#### B. DOCTOR OF PHILOSOPHY

|  |           |          |
|--|-----------|----------|
| First two full-time years .....  | each year | 1,300.00 |
| Each subsequent 6 months or part of 6 months of full-time study .....  |           | 650.00   |
| (Candidates registered part-time for PhD are required to pay each year half the fee prescribed for full-time study.) |           |          |

#### DOCTOR OF MUSIC

|                                 |           |          |
|---------------------------------|-----------|----------|
| Full-time course of study ..... | each year | 1,300.00 |
| Part-time course of study ..... | each year | 650.00   |

#### PROFESSIONAL LEGAL STUDIES

|                        |             |                                      |
|------------------------|-------------|--------------------------------------|
| Courses of Study ..... | per session | (1,462.50 in 1990)<br>(under review) |
|------------------------|-------------|--------------------------------------|

#### MASTERS DEGREES

|   |      |        |
|---|------|--------|
| Third and subsequent years of study if two previous years were equivalent |      |        |
| full-time fee .....   | each | 164.00 |

#### MLitt

|                                 |            |          |
|---------------------------------|------------|----------|
| Full time course of study ..... | each year  | 1,300.00 |
| Part-time course of study ..... | each year  | 650.00   |
| MTaxS .....                     | each paper | 1,406.25 |

#### BUSINESS ADMINISTRATION

|  |            |        |
|--|------------|--------|
| MBA .....  | each paper | 832.50 |
| DipBus (except for the Information Systems option) ..... | each paper | 832.50 |
| DipBus (Information Systems) .....                       | each paper | 945.00 |

**MEDICINE AND HUMAN BIOLOGY**

|                              |           |           |
|------------------------------|-----------|-----------|
| DipG&O Part I and II .....   | each      | \$ 272.50 |
| Dissertation .....           | per point | 7.75      |
| DipObst, composite fee ..... |           | 650.00    |
| DipPaed, composite fee ..... |           | 434.00    |

**OTHERS**

|  |                                   |          |
|--|-----------------------------------|----------|
| Dissertation, Original Investigation, Research Essay, Research Topic |                                   |          |
| Project 44.421 for BOptom, DipGuid Part II .....                     | first year, per point             | 15.50    |
| .....  | subsequent years, per point       | 7.75     |
| DipCompSci, DipEdPsych Part II,                                      |                                   |          |
| DipGeothermTech, DipMathsEd, DipStats full time .....                | first year                        | 1,300.00 |
| (if first year was equivalent full time fee) .....                   | second and subsequent years, each | 164.00   |
| DipClinPsych Part I .....  | year one                          | 489.00   |
| .....  | year two                          | 1,300.00 |
| DipClinPsych Part II .....   | first year                        | 650.00   |
| .....  | subsequent years, each            | 108.00   |
| Instruction in a single instrument .....                             |                                   | 225.00   |

\* Part-time course of study has a maximum fee of \$1,300, unless the student is enrolling in a cost recovery course as listed in Section B, or is enrolling in more than one tertiary institution in 1991.

**Reduction of Standard Tertiary Fee**

If students come under one of the following categories they may apply for a reduction of the standard tertiary fee:

1. PhD students.
2. Masters students. Note that those enrolled in 100% research will qualify for 60% reduction. All other masters students will qualify for a 30% reduction in fees.
3. Students under 18 years of age on 4 March 1991.
4. Students with dependents who are eligible to receive the equivalent of the full unemployment benefit.
5. Students who will be 18 or 19 years of age on 4 March 1991 and whose parents' combined gross income for the 1989/90 tax year was less than \$37,233.00.
6. Students who on 4 March 1991 will have been social welfare beneficiaries for the 26 weeks immediately prior to the commencement of their course of study and will not be receiving a Training Incentive Allowance. Note: Students who received this reduction in 1990 are not eligible to apply under this category again.
7. Students with dependent child(ren) and who have a combined gross income of less than \$37,233.00.

Full details of these reductions are in the 1991 Student Fees booklet.

Notes: Applications are to be made on the form included with the pre-enrolment package. (These will also be available from the Registry.)

**FULL FEES PAYING OVERSEAS STUDENTS** (students who are (i) not New Zealand Citizens; (ii) do not hold permanent residence status in New Zealand; (iii) have been granted a New Zealand Ministry of External Relations and Trade Fees Scholarship; (iv) are being fully funded under the New Zealand Ministry of External Relations and Trade Overseas Development Assistance programme; or (v) are exempt from payment of full fees under Section 34B (2) of the Education Amendment Act 1989.)

**Undergraduate courses of study**

|   |           |               |
|---|-----------|---------------|
| Architecture, Planning, Engineering ..... | each year | NZ\$16,190.00 |
| Arts, Law, Property Admin .....           | each year | NZ\$8,730.00  |
| Commerce .....                            | each year | NZ\$10,500.00 |
| Fine Arts, Music, Science .....           | each year | NZ\$12,840.00 |
| Optometry (1st year) .....                |           | NZ\$12,840.00 |
| Optometry (subsequent years) .....        | each year | NZ\$26,000.00 |
| Medicine .....                            | each year | NZ\$32,290.00 |

N.B. Science includes Geography, Psychology and 1st year Human Biology

**Postgraduate courses of study**

|   |           |               |
|---|-----------|---------------|
| Arts, Commerce, Law, Property Admin .....               | each year | NZ\$13,950.00 |
| Architecture, Planning, Fine Arts, Music, Science ..... | each year | NZ\$24,770.00 |
| Engineering, Medicine, Health Sciences .....            | each year | NZ\$29,400.00 |

N.B. Health Sciences includes Optometry, Pharmacology and Physiology.

Notes: 1. The charge covers all tuition fees but not the Students' Association fee, the Welfare fee and some other charges such as late fees, notes for courses, field trips.

2. Students exempted from the charge pay tuition fees as prescribed for the appropriate course of study.

**PAYMENT OF TUITION FEES**

Students whose tuition fees amount to at least \$650.00 in 1991 will have the opportunity to pay the tuition fees:

- (a) in full at enrolment, or
- (b) by deductions from their student allowances, or
- (c) to pay half of the tuition fees at enrolment and the balance by 30 June 1991. An administrative charge of \$22.50 will be payable in respect of each instalment.

In all cases students will be required to pay all other charges at enrolment, e.g. Students' Association fee, Building Levy, Welfare Fee, course materials.

### **HARDSHIP FUND**

A limited fund will be available to assist students who would otherwise experience serious hardship in paying their tuition fees. Application forms are available from the Tuition Fees Section of the Academic Registry.

### **NON-PAYMENT OF CHARGES AND FEES**

The University Council shall have the right to exclude from the University any student whose fees have not been paid by the due date. Such exclusion does not discharge the debt which will be placed in the hands of the University Debt Collector and while the fees or fines of any kind remain owing the following additional penalties shall apply:

- (a) the person's academic results will be withheld;
- (b) the person shall not be re-enrolled as a student of the University;
- (c) the person shall not be entitled to have his or her record transferred to any other University;
- (d) the person will not be entitled to receive a copy of his or her academic record;
- (e) the person who has graduated will not receive his or her Degree or Diploma Form.

Note: A student who stops attending lectures is still liable for the fees owing unless he or she has submitted an 'Application to Alter Course' in accordance with the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General) Regulation 7.

---

## **DISCIPLINE**

*Subject to confirmation on review by the Council in 1991*

Under the provisions of the University of Auckland Act 1961, the Senate has, subject to a right of appeal to the Council, the power to deal with all questions relating to the discipline of students. During the intervals between meetings of the Senate, and subject to a right of appeal to the Senate, the Vice-Chancellor may exercise alone the powers of the Senate as to discipline.

---

### **DISCIPLINARY REGULATIONS**

1. These Regulations may be cited as the Disciplinary Regulations 1972.
2. These Regulations shall come into force on 1 January, 1973.
3. In these Regulations unless the context otherwise requires:
  - 'Class' means any lecture, tutorial, seminar, laboratory, or other assembly of students at which tuition is being given and includes any lecture or address within the University at which students are present;
  - 'Hall' means any hostel or hall of residence or other student accommodation under the control of the Council;
  - 'Student' means a duly enrolled student of the University and includes for the purposes of Regulation 4 hereof a person applying so to enrol;
  - 'Students' Association' means the Auckland University Students' Association Incorporated;
  - 'Warden' means the person who is for the time being in charge of any Hall and includes his duly appointed deputies;
  - 'The Act' means the University of Auckland Act 1961 and its amendments;
  - 'The University' includes any institution under the control of the Council;
  - 'University property' includes property occupied by the University, property owned by any institution under the control of the Council, and any property held by the Crown on behalf of or for the purposes of the University.
  - 'University precincts' means any land or premises in the possession or occupation of the University. Words and expressions defined in the Act have the meanings so defined.
4. (a) Every student shall on enrolling at the University sign a declaration in the following form or to the like effect:
 

'I hereby solemnly promise that I will faithfully obey the rules and regulations of the University and be bound by the same'.

  - (b). The Senate shall have the power to impose conditions on the attendance at classes of any student and to obtain his or her undertaking to observe those conditions, either at his or her enrolment, or in the course of his or her attendance at the University in all cases where in the reasonable opinion of the Senate it is necessary so to do in order to prevent any possible disturbance to the carrying out of normal activities at the University or otherwise to maintain order and discipline.
  - (c). The Senate or the Discipline Committee of the Senate may as delegate of the Council exercise the powers conferred on the Council by S.24 (2) of the Act without however preventing the Council from exercising those powers.
5. No student or other member of the University shall:
  - (a) act in a manner contrary to the good government of the University or prejudicial to its functioning as such;
  - (b) wilfully or recklessly damage or deface, or wilfully move without authority, any property on the University or any other property within the University precincts;

- (c) wilfully impede the activities of the University, whether in teaching, research or otherwise;
  - (d) wilfully create any nuisance in or on the University precincts;
  - (e) wilfully obstruct any officer or member of the University employed at the University in the performance of his or her functions or of the work he or she is required to perform;
  - (f) interfere by offensive behaviour or unwanted attention with the pursuit of work or study by another student, member, or officer of the University or that other person's proper enjoyment of its amenities;
  - (g) be in a part of the University precincts in which he or she is not, at that time, entitled to be, knowing that he or she is not entitled to be there at that time;
  - (h) (i) start, ride or park without prior permission, a cycle, a motorcycle, or a motor vehicle in University grounds;
  - (ii) fail to comply with the University Parking Regulations at all times;
  - (i) fail to comply with the directions on any notice erected with the authority of the Council and governing entry, speed and exit of vehicles and the location of parking spaces;
  - (j) commit any criminal offence in the University precincts;
  - (k) smoke
    - (i) in any of the Libraries
    - (ii) in any General Lecture Theatre, Seminar Room, Tutorial Room or Laboratory;
  - (l) commit a breach of any University Statute or Regulation or of any rule of conduct made by any person authorised by the Council or the Senate to make such a rule, provided that the Statute, Regulation or rule had been published in the University *Calendar* or that reasonable notice thereof has been given by other means, to students generally or to the student charged with misconduct, before the misconduct is alleged to have taken place.
6. No student shall:
- (a) knowingly fail to identify himself or herself if required or to comply with such directions as may be reasonably made by the Vice-Chancellor, the Registrar, any Professor, member of the Senate, or Lecturer in order to maintain good order and discipline;
  - (b) knowingly fail to comply with any reasonable direction given to him or her by the person in charge of a group of students going to, engaged in, or returning from a field trip or any other academic activity conducted by the University beyond the University precincts, or, while a member of such a group, do anything which would constitute misconduct if done within the University precincts;
  - (c) fail to comply with any specific Department or Faculty Regulation in regard to appropriate dress in relation to safety or to professional courses;
  - (d) bring or consume alcoholic liquors within the precincts of the University for other than official functions except with the permission of the Senate. Permission for alcoholic liquors to be consumed at other functions will be subject to the following conditions:
    - (i) where the function is held in a lecture theatre, reading room, seminar room, staff study or staff common room, one senior member of the staff shall be present throughout the function;
    - (ii) where the function is held within the facilities under the control of the Student Union Management Committee, a senior member of the staff or a member of the Student Executive or a member of the Student Union Management Committee shall be present throughout the function;
  - (e) post student notices elsewhere than on the permanent notice boards provided for this purpose, and in accordance with the conditions laid down by the Students' Association.
7. (a). Where there is misconduct by a student in a class, the person in charge of the class may reprimand the student and may exclude him or her from not more than three successive class meetings. Any such exclusion for more than one class meeting shall be promptly reported to the Vice-Chancellor.
- (b). Where there is misconduct by a student in the use of any University facility, the person in charge of the facility may reprimand the student and may exclude him or her from using it for any period or indefinitely. Any such exclusion shall be promptly reported to the Vice-Chancellor except where it is for a period less than one week.
- (c). A student reprimanded or excluded under paragraph (a) or paragraph (b) of this Regulation may appeal to the Senate against the reprimand or order for exclusion. The Vice-Chancellor may suspend the operation of the order for exclusion until the appeal has been heard or determined.
- (d). In this Regulation, 'University facility' includes the Recreation Centre but does not include the University Library and the Computer Centre.
8. The Senate shall have power:
- (a) to impose on any student who does not observe the provisions of these Regulations; or the conditions (if any) attached to his or her attendance at classes pursuant to Regulations 4 and 6 thereof; or any direction given under Regulation 11 hereof; or who otherwise commits any breach of University discipline; any one or more of the following penalties as it thinks fit:
    - (i) such sum by way of restitution as may be appropriate for any damage so caused;
    - (ii) a fine not exceeding \$500;
    - (iii) a suspension from attendance at the University or any of its classes for such period as it thinks fit;
    - (iv) a suspension from attendance at any test or examination;
    - (v) expulsion from the University;
    - (vi) a limitation or prohibition on his or her attendance at any class or classes at the University or his or

- her use or enjoyment of any of the facilities of the University;
- (b) to prohibit the sitting of examinations by any student who is in default with any payment due to the University under these or any other Regulations or any Statute;
  - (c) to delegate the powers conferred on it by these Regulations to the Discipline Committee of the Senate without thereby preventing itself or the Vice-Chancellor pursuant to Regulation 9 hereof from exercising any such delegated power;
  - (d) In this Regulation, 'University facility' includes the Recreation Centre but does not include the University Library and the Computer Centre.
9. The Vice-Chancellor shall have power (subject always to Regulation 14 hereof) to exercise all the powers and authorities of the Senate under these Regulations and under the Act, including any powers delegated by the Senate to any committee of the Senate, during the intervals between meetings of the Senate or that Committee.
  10. The Vice-Chancellor, the Registrar, the Director of the Computer Centre, the Physical Recreation Officer, the Head of the Audio-Visual Centre, any Warden, or any Professor, member of the Senate or Lecturer shall have power to report any student to the Discipline Committee for any breach of these Regulations.
  11. Any Warden shall have the power (subject always to Regulation 14 hereof):
    - (a) from time to time to give such directions as he or she reasonably thinks fit for the maintenance of good order and discipline within the Hall under his or her charge provided however that all such directions shall if of general application be exhibited on the main notice board of the Hall to which they relate or be provided to each resident in writing;
    - (b) to impose as he or she thinks fit on any student who does not observe any of the directions so given, anyone or more of the following penalties:
      - (i) such sum by way of restitution as may be appropriate for any damage so caused;
      - (ii) a fine not exceeding \$200;
      - (iii) a suspension from attendance at the Hall for such period as the Warden thinks fit;
      - (iv) expulsion from the Hall.
  12. The Vice-Chancellor, the Registrar, or any Professor, member of the Senate, or Lecturer may, in addition to reporting any breach of these Regulations to the Discipline Committee, order any student to pay the cost of replacing or repairing any University property lost, damaged or destroyed by reason of the wilfulness, negligence or misconduct of that student. Any penalty so ordered shall be paid within 14 days.
  13. The Executive of the Students' Association shall (without prejudice to the power of the Senate under S.34 (3) of the Act) have power of disciplinary control over students within the Student Union Building or the precincts of the Student Union Building and in exercise of that power may:
    - (i) impose a fine not exceeding \$25 on any student guilty of any act prejudicial to the maintenance of discipline therein, and
    - (ii) (whether or not in addition to imposing a fine) order any student to pay as a penalty the cost of replacing or repairing any property therein lost, damaged or destroyed by reason of wilfulness, negligence or misconduct of that student.
  14. (a). (i) All fines and other penalties imposed under Regulation 9 and 12 or by the Discipline Committee under powers delegated to it under Regulation 8 and all suspensions or expulsions under Regulation 11(b)(iii) and (iv), shall forthwith be reported to the Senate by the person or body imposing them.  
 (ii) Every Warden shall maintain, and shall produce when required to do so by the Registrar, a register in which shall be entered details (including the reason for its being imposed) under Regulation 11(b)(i) and (ii).  
 (b). Any student on whom a fine or other penalty is imposed under Regulation 9, 11 and 12 hereof or by any committee of the Senate under powers delegated under Regulation 8 may within fourteen (14) days of imposition of that penalty, by giving notice to the Registrar in writing, appeal to the Senate against it. The Senate may hear and determine an appeal in such manner as it thinks proper.  
 (c). Any student who suffers any penalty under these Regulations by a decision of the Senate or the Discipline Committee of the Senate or the Executive of the Students' Association or whose appeal under the preceding clause of this Regulation is dismissed by a decision of the Senate may within fourteen (14) days of that decision, by giving notice to the Registrar in writing, appeal against it to the Council which may hear and determine the appeal in such manner as it thinks proper. The decision of the Council shall be final.
  15. (a). The grounds of Old Government House are open to all members of the University for their individual use for the purpose of quiet recreation.  
 (b). No organised group activities will be permitted in those grounds without specific permission of the Vice-Chancellor, acting on behalf of the Council, given in each case and in such terms as are appropriate.  
 (c). Members of the University may bring guests into the University grounds but not into the grounds of Old Government House except in terms of Clauses (a) and (b) above.  
 (d). At all times and more particularly at night, members of the University and their guests shall act in such a way as not to cause disturbance or inconvenience to those living in the grounds (both occupants of Old Government House and members of the custodial staff), or to residents in the immediate neighbourhood.

Notes: (i) If the above requirements are observed, no time limit on the use of the grounds will be necessary, nor shall there be any need for the Police to be on the campus by invitation or otherwise.

(ii) Members of the University while in the grounds are free to observe demonstrations which may occur in the adjoining streets, but they are reminded that the Statutory and Common Law powers of the Police enable the Police to enter the University campus and to take appropriate action in relation to offences committed thereon and to prevent a breach of the peace.



(iii) Whenever it appears likely that demonstrations of the kind mentioned in note (ii) above will occur, the Vice-Chancellor shall consult with the appropriate representative of staff and students.

(iv) Any privileges of staff, students and their guests in respect of the use of the grounds, may be withdrawn by the Vice-Chancellor, acting on behalf of Council; the Vice-Chancellor shall report the circumstances to the next following meeting of the Senate and Council.

16. (a). No member of the Security Service enrolled as a student at the University shall carry out any inquiries into security matters within the precincts of the University.  
(b). The proposed attendance of a member of the Security Service at the University shall be discussed between the Security Service and the University Authorities before his or her enrolment.
17. After the discussions contemplated in the preceding sub-clause 16 (b) have been held, the Senate shall determine each year what special conditions (if any) as to attendance at classes shall apply to students who are members of the Security Service in order to maintain discipline among the students of the University by preventing any possible disturbance to the carrying out of normal teaching activities.
18. Nothing in these Regulations shall prejudice the rights and remedies of the University under the general law in respect of the misconduct or negligence of any student.

## THE LIBRARY

The University Library was established in 1884 with a grant of £37 for books which were 'to be bought in England and uniformly bound in full calf with golden lettering'. Since then the Library has grown into a collection of more than 1 million volumes, excluding thousands of unbound periodicals, pamphlets and reprints. Over 14,000 periodical titles are currently received. *The University: A Short History of the University of Auckland Library 1883-1986* by Olive Johnson was published in 1988 as No. 16 of the Library's Bibliographical Bulletins.

The University Library comprises the General Library in the Library Building on the corner of Princes Street and Alfred Street, divisional libraries in Architecture Property and Planning, Biological Sciences, Continuing Education, Engineering, Fine Arts, Geography, Geology, Law, Te Hukatai (Maori Studies), Medicine, Music, Science. In addition there are departmental reading rooms in a number of subjects. The General Library contains most of the books needed for undergraduate reading in arts and commerce subjects. It also contains more advanced material in Accountancy, Anthropology, Economics, Education, Geography, History, Languages and Literature, both classical and modern, Management Studies, Philosophy, Political Studies, Psychology and Sociology.

A separate Undergraduate Reading Room is situated in the former Ballroom of Old Government House. This contains 140 seats for readers and a collection of works in heavy demand.

The Audio Visual Library is located in the Arts I Building. It contains a collection of videotapes, audio cassettes and slides.

More information about the Library, its services and organisations, can be found in the *Library Guide* and in the pamphlet *Books and Readings Accommodation in the University of Auckland*. These are available from the Information Desk in the General Library. Library tours are offered during the first three weeks of Term I. Readers are encouraged to seek assistance throughout the year from the Information Desk.

## LIBRARY REGULATIONS

1. These Regulations may be cited as the Library Regulations 1970 and shall come into force on 1 January, 1971.
2. Except where otherwise stated:
  - (a) these Regulations shall apply to all sections of the University Library, that is, the General Library, Undergraduate Reading Room, Architecture Property and Planning, Audio-Visual, Biological Sciences, Centre for Continuing Education, Engineering, Fine Arts, Geology, Geography, Law, Te Hukatai (Maori Studies), Medicine, Music and Science, and such other sections as may be added by the Senate;
  - (b) in these Regulations 'books' includes all types of printed, written, photographic, audio, visual and machine-readable material.

### Hours of Opening (General Library only)

3. The hours of opening shall be:

|                                   |                             |                       |
|-----------------------------------|-----------------------------|-----------------------|
|                                   | <b>Mondays to Thursdays</b> | <b>Saturdays</b>      |
|                                   | 8.30 a.m. - 11 p.m.         | 9 a.m. - 5 p.m.       |
|                                   | Fridays 8.30 a.m. - 8 p.m.  | (Third Term - 9 p.m.) |
|                                   | (Third Term - 11 p.m.)      |                       |
| May Study Break (first two weeks) | 8.30 a.m. - 6 p.m.          | 9 a.m. - 1 p.m.       |
| Summer Vacation                   | 9 a.m. - 5 p.m.             | 9 a.m. - 12 noon      |
|                                   | (Wed - 8 p.m.)              |                       |

The Library shall be open on Sundays in first and second terms and August Study Break from 9 a.m. to 5 p.m. and in third term from 9 a.m. to 9 p.m. No lending services shall be available on Sundays. The Library shall be closed on Anniversary Day, Waitangi Day, Good Friday, Easter Saturday, Easter Sunday, Easter Monday, Anzac Day, Queen's Birthday and for up to two weeks from and including Christmas Eve.

These hours may be varied at the discretion of the University Librarian and any variation shall be appropriately notified in the General Library. Books may be returned to the General Library when it is closed through the after-hours slot on the main concourse of the Library building.

**Readers**

4. (a). All members of the University Council, all professors, lecturers and junior lecturers, all enrolled students of the University, and all library, administrative and technical staff shall be readers for the purpose of these Regulations and may:
  - (i) use all sections of the Library; and
  - (ii) on completion of such registration formalities as the University requires, borrow books from it; provided that no person shall be deemed an undergraduate member of the University unless he or she is currently enrolled as such.
- (b). By special permission of the Librarian any person not included among those authorised by clause (a) of this Regulation may be a reader and accorded full or partial use of Library facilities.
- (c). The Librarian, may at any time require from any reader as a condition of that reader's use of the Library and borrowing facilities that he or she pay to the University a sum of not more than twice the approved readers' fee as a deposit to be applied in payment or part payment of any sum for which he or she may become liable under Regulation 6 (d). Any balance of the deposit shall be refunded on the termination of his or her use of the library.
- (d). Persons admitted as approved readers under clause (b) of this Regulation may be charged an annual fee which shall be determined by the Library Committee from time to time. No fee shall be charged to retired members of the University staff or such persons as the Librarian may determine.

**Borrowing**

5. (a). No reader shall borrow any book otherwise than in accordance with these Regulations.
- (b). (General Library only.) Borrowing starts at 9 a.m. and ceases 20 minutes before closing time. No borrowing on Sunday. The hours during which books may be borrowed may be varied at the discretion of the Librarian. Books may be borrowed (i) where there is a book card, by the borrower writing his name and address legibly on the card, and presenting the book, together with book card and ID card, at the Issue Desk for stamping with the return date; (ii) where there is a barcode, by presenting the book, together with ID card, at the Issue Desk for issuing and stamping with the return date.
- (c). Any person on leaving the Library shall on demand present all books and personal property for inspection.
- (d). (General Library only.) Unless a book on the open shelves is marked 'Not to be borrowed' or otherwise restricted, it may be borrowed until the next end of term or for such shorter periods as the Librarian may decide. Borrowers shall be required to check the date stamped in the book by the desk assistant. Glass case books without 'Not to be borrowed' labels may be borrowed for a fortnight only. All other materials shall be used only in the Library except that Teaching Staff and Postgraduate Students may borrow bound volumes of periodicals for fourteen days non renewable, and theses for fourteen days.
- (e). Books from any section of the Library other than the General Library shall be borrowed direct from that Section.
- (f). All books shall be subject to recall within 24 hours at any time during the year, including study breaks and summer vacation. Borrowers who fail to respond to a recall notice within 24 hours shall incur a fine (including GST) of \$1.50 plus \$1.50 for each further 24 hours that the book is overdue. Borrowers who retain other books beyond the date for return stamped on the date slip incur a fine (including GST) of 25c per day whether a notice has been sent or not.
- (g). The Librarian shall be under no obligation to notify borrowers when books are overdue and a fine may still be charged when books are returned after the date stamped, even though no notice has been received.
- (h). Borrowers who wish to renew a book on limited loan for a further period may apply by letter (giving author, title and call number on the spine of the book) or in person, or (in the case of theses, glass case books) by telephone. Renewal will be refused if the book is reserved, and may be refused at the discretion of an authorised librarian. At the end of the term, all outstanding books shall be returned or presented for renewal at the Lending Desk. They cannot be renewed by letter or by telephone at this time.
- (i). Readers may reserve for borrowing one book a day by filling in a reservation card at the Lending Desk. The length of loan allowed shall depend on the number of other readers who are also waiting for the book. Borrowers who return limited loan reserve books late shall incur a fine (including GST) of \$1.50 per volume for each 24 hours the book is overdue.
- (j). Books which are in heavy demand may be kept behind the Lending Desk. These Desk Copies shall be available for a specified period (advertised in the Library concerned) on surrender of the reader's identity card and may not be removed from the Library except in the case of overnight loans. Failure to return Desk Copies on time shall incur a fine (including GST) of \$1 per volume for each hour or part of an hour for which the book is not returned.
- (k). Teaching staff and postgraduate students may apply to borrow books from another library through the Interloans Assistant. Such books are subject to the conditions imposed by that library.
- (l). Material from the Library (audio) Record Collection shall be available for borrowing on payment of a subscription determined by the Librarian from time to time\*.
- (m). Library books may be taken out of New Zealand only with the prior permission of the University Librarian.
- (n). Authorised librarians may refuse to issue excessive numbers of books to any one reader.
- (o). ID cards are not transferable; any loss must be immediately reported to the Library in order to block unauthorized use.

**Note:** \*1990 subscriptions were \$40 (including GST) for the complete collection including compact discs; \$15 (including GST) for records and cassettes only.

### Discipline

6. (a). Bags, satchels and briefcases shall not be taken into the Library.
- (b). Under no circumstances shall a book be passed on to another reader without being reissued in that reader's name. Where this Regulation is broken the reader in whose name the book is issued shall remain liable for all fines payable by reason of failure to return a book which is overdue or recalled.
- (c). Every reader shall immediately notify to the Library any change of his or her address and thereupon renew the borrowing of all books issued to him or her.
- (d). (i) Readers shall be responsible for and shall make good, any loss of or damage to books on loan to them or being used by them in the Library. In addition to the cost of replacement or repair, readers may be charged an administration fee of \$10 (including GST), whether or not the book if lost is subsequently found and returned in good order.
- (ii) The loss of a book shall be reported immediately to an authorised librarian.
- (iii) A lost book remains the property of the University, notwithstanding payment of the bill for its replacement, and must be returned if found. A refund (in whole or part, according to the condition of the book on return) will be made for it but the administration fee may be retained.
- (e). No reader shall deface or mark any book or any piece of library furniture or property.
- (f). The reservation of seats in the Library shall not be permitted. Books and any other articles left for any length of time on chairs or tables may be removed by any of the Library staff. No responsibility is accepted for personal belongings left in the Library.
- (g). There shall be no noisy or disruptive behaviour in public reading areas.
- (h). Bottles of ink shall not be brought into the Library.
- (i). No reader shall smoke or shall consume food or drink in any part of the Library open to readers.
- (j). A warning signal will be given 15 minutes before closing time and all readers shall vacate the Library by closing time.
- (k). Library fines or bills shall be paid at the lending desk of the Library concerned.
- (l). Where a fine or charge is not paid within 14 days of becoming due:
  - (i) the Librarian may withdraw library privileges from the reader in default for such period as he thinks fit;
  - (ii) the Senate may impose on the reader any of the following penalties; prohibit the sitting of examinations; withholding of examination scripts; refusal of re-enrolment for the next academic year; disqualification from graduation.
- (m). No reader may borrow from the Library while any fine or charge payable by him or her is outstanding.
- (n). Any authorised librarian may require any reader who is guilty of disorderly or improper conduct or of any breach of these Regulations to withdraw from the Library and the University Librarian may withdraw library privileges from that person for such period as he or she thinks fit. Nothing in these Regulations shall limit the application to the Library (where relevant) of the Disciplinary Regulations 1972.

**Note:** The unauthorised borrowing or removal of books is regarded as a serious disciplinary offence.

### Copyright

7. Every reader using copyright facilities in the Library shall duly comply with the laws on copyright.

**Note:** (i) Readers are warned that if a copyright work is copied the copying must be a "fair dealing for the purpose of research or private study only" to comply with the laws on copyright.

- (a) No more than one copy of the work must be taken.
- (b) No whole copyright work by any author can be copied.
- (c) Single extracts must not exceed 4000 words. If a series of extracts is required, each extract must not exceed 3000 words to a total of 8000 words. In neither case must the total amount copied exceed 10% of the whole work.
- (ii) These rules apply to card-operated copying machines and not to photocopying supplied by librarians.
- (iii) Failure to observe these rules may be treated as a breach of discipline. Users who are in doubt as to whether an item is in copyright should consult a member of the Library staff.

## PRELIMINARY COURSES

The University of Auckland offers a number of courses designed to assist those who may be planning to enrol for formal degree or diploma courses.

These include the Wellesley Programme, prepared in association with the Auckland Institute of Technology. The main target group is in the up-to-25 age range, normally with a pass in School Certificate, motivated to take tertiary courses, but otherwise inadequately prepared for them. Students doing well in the programme should have a fair chance of success in appropriate first-year courses at university.

The Centre for Continuing Education offers preparation programmes for adults wishing to commence tertiary studies after a break in their formal education, and who may or may not have University entrance qualifications. The Centre offers many other courses, some of them being listed under the entry for the Centre for Continuing Education in the *Calendar*.

The Wellesley Programme and New Start and Continuing Education courses form part of the University's policy to enhance access to university education.

In addition the University is offering formal degree teaching at the Auckland College of Education and Northland Polytechnic.

## WELLESLEY PROGRAMME

### Course Content

All students cover four subjects. They take English (18.091) and Mathematics (26.091), and choose EITHER two Arts subjects, namely (New Zealand) History (24.091) and Geography (20.091) OR two Science subjects, namely two from Physics (31.091), Chemistry (08.091), Biological Science (39.091). The syllabus is designed to enable successful students to enter appropriate University or Polytechnic courses.

### Course Length

The course starts in mid-March and ends in early November; otherwise normal University study breaks apply. Each student has a total of 16-29 contact hours per week to cover the four subjects (daytime hours). In addition, besides private and follow-up study, each student is expected to spend at least a further 6-8 hours in the library or laboratory as directed by teaching staff. Tertiary assistance is available.

### Certification

Students completing the course are to be awarded a Tertiary Education Foundation Certificate. The certificate will show grades for each subject attempted. Arrangements will be made to provide university entry, either definite or provisional, to those who are successful. Achievement at an appropriate level should equip science students to enter certificate courses with the Polytechnics.

### NEW START PROGRAMME

**New Start for Commerce** - a 25 week course (four hours per week) providing a comprehensive introduction to Mathematics, Accounting and Economics. On satisfactory completion of this course students may make application to enrol in Part I of BCom or the MBA programme.

**New Start for BA, BTheol, LawInt, BPlan** - a ten week course (two hours per week) providing an introduction to subjects in the Arts Faculty.

New Start programmes include study skills and subject lectures, regular assignments, tests and realistic feedback. Students gain information on the structure of university degrees, knowledge of and practice in skills required for success, and an insight into the standard of work expected. The programme provides the University with criteria to evaluate applications for Special Admission.

Educational Guidance is an integral part of New Start and students are offered assistance in planning their on-going courses of study.

Alongside New Start are short Introductory Courses in specific subjects, a wide range of study skills workshops and other supportive activities.

New Start also caters for people with physical disabilities who may need special assistance in getting started. The Centre for Continuing Education offers Certificate programmes in Adult Education, Personnel Management and Industrial Relations, and Womens Studies. On satisfactory completion of a Certificate course a student may receive a credit of two papers towards the BA degree.

# Faculty of Arts

## Contents

---

|                                  |     |  |
|----------------------------------|-----|--|
| <b>Degree Course Regulations</b> | 98  | Degree of Bachelor of Arts                 |
|                                  | 101 | Schedule of Papers for Bachelor of Arts    |
|                                  | 131 | Degree of Master of Arts                   |
|                                  | 132 | Schedule of Papers for Master of Arts      |
|                                  | 137 | Degree of Master of Education              |
|                                  | 138 | Schedule of Papers for Master of Education |
|                                  | 138 | Degree of Master of Literature             |

---

|                                    |     |   |
|------------------------------------|-----|---|
| <b>Degree Course Prescriptions</b> | 139 | Department of Anthropology                          |
|                                    | 145 | Department of Art History                           |
|                                    | 145 | Department of Asian Languages and Literatures       |
|                                    | 149 | Department of Classics and Ancient History          |
|                                    | 155 | Department of Economics                             |
|                                    | 155 | Department of Education                             |
|                                    | 159 | Department of English                               |
|                                    | 160 | Film and Television Studies                         |
|                                    | 160 | Department of Geography                             |
|                                    | 162 | Department of Germanic Languages and Literature     |
|                                    | 164 | Hebrew  |
|                                    | 164 | Department of History                               |
|                                    | 167 | Department of Management Studies & Labour Relations |
|                                    | 168 | Department of Mathematics and Statistics            |
|                                    | 168 | Department of Music                                 |
|                                    | 168 | Pacific Studies                                     |
|                                    | 168 | Department of Philosophy                            |
|                                    | 170 | Department of Physics                               |
|                                    | 170 | Department of Political Studies                     |
|                                    | 171 | Department of Psychology                            |
|                                    | 173 | Department of Romance Languages                     |
|                                    | 177 | Department of Russian                               |
|                                    | 178 | Samoan  |
|                                    | 178 | Social Work   |
|                                    | 178 | Department of Sociology                             |

---

|   |     |  |
|---|-----|--|
| <b>Diploma Course Regulations and Prescriptions</b> | 180 | Diploma in Arts                                |
|   | 180 | Diploma in Broadcast Communication             |
|   | 181 | Diploma in Drama                               |
|   | 182 | Diploma in Education                           |
|   | 183 | Diploma in Educational Psychology              |
|   | 184 | Diploma in English Language Teaching           |
|   | 185 | Diploma in Guidance and Counselling            |
|   | 185 | Diploma in Local Government and Administration |
|   | 187 | Postgraduate Diploma in Arts                   |
|   | 187 | Postgraduate Diploma in Social Research        |

## FACULTY OF ARTS

The Faculty of Arts offers a first degree, the Bachelor of Arts, and a Master of Arts, which may be awarded with or without Honours.

The BA is intended to be a general Degree, containing a number of different subjects, but at least one subject has to be carried to Stage III level (sometimes informally called a 'major'). Students can choose from a very large number of subjects including some in Science and Commerce. They can thus partially prepare themselves for a range of occupations, and credits may be granted in respect of Teacher's College courses. But the concept behind the Degree is more that of a liberal education than a vocational one.

In the MA a student usually works within one particular discipline, and more often than not the Degree will include a research component.

The BA is, if taken full-time, a 3 year Degree, but it may be taken part-time. The MA, an Honours Degree, must be taken within a limited period, varying according to discipline, but not more than three years in any case. Several diplomas are available within the Faculty, normally post-graduate, and with a vocational emphasis. They include the Diplomas in Broadcast Communication, Drama, Education, Educational Psychology, Guidance and Counselling, and Local Government and Administration, and Postgraduate Diploma in Social Research.

The Diploma in Arts is designed to provide graduates with an opportunity to update or amplify their knowledge in subjects on which their degree concentrated or amplify their knowledge of cognate or relevant disciplines. The Postgraduate Diploma in Arts is designed to give Masters graduates the opportunity to gain a further qualification wholly or substantially in their main subject. The MLitt degree is open to students who have the qualification to attempt a PhD but wish, at least initially, to write a thesis of lesser dimensions.

## DEGREE COURSE REGULATIONS

### THE DEGREE OF BACHELOR OF ARTS BA

*The personal course of study of every candidate must be approved by the Senate. Approval will normally be granted for courses which are in accordance with the following Regulations; for general provisions affecting their courses of study students are referred to the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General), and the Examination Regulations.*

#### General Provisions

1. Subject to the Admission Regulations, a candidate for the Degree of Bachelor of Arts shall follow a course of study of not fewer than three years.
2. The course of study for the Degree shall consist of twenty-one papers selected from those listed in the Schedule to these Regulations. Papers are classified in three stages, I, II, III.
3. No course of study for the Degree shall include more than seven papers selected from Group B, nor more than eighteen in total from Pure and Applied Mathematics and subjects in Group B.
4. Every course of study for the Degree shall include:
  - (a) at least six papers in one subject of which three are at Stage III level;
  - (b) at least eleven papers higher than Stage I level selected from two or more subjects;
  - (c) no more than eleven papers in any one subject.
5. Every course of study shall consist of four, five or six subjects:  
Provided that in exceptional circumstances the Senate may, upon the recommendation of the Heads of Departments in which the candidate proposes to take advanced papers, approve a course consisting of more than six subjects.
6. Except with the permission of the Senate no candidate shall take in any one year more than eight papers for this Degree.

#### Requirements for Particular Subjects

7. A candidate wishing to be enrolled in any subject which is also a subject of examination for the Degree of Bachelor of Science shall comply with such of the course Regulations for that Degree relating to prerequisites, combinations of subjects, and practical work, as are applicable to that subject, save where the Senate in individual cases allows otherwise.

#### Botany, Chemistry, Economics, Geography, Mathematics, Physics, Zoology

8. (a). A candidate may with the permission of the Senate enrol for Stage II papers of a subject to which this Regulation applies without having been credited with the Stage I papers. Candidates credited with Stage II papers shall not also have the Stage I papers of the subject credited to their courses. If the examiner certifies that the candidate though failing a Stage II paper or papers, attained the standard of a pass at a Stage I of the subject, the candidate shall have the appropriate Stage I paper or papers credited to his or her course.

(b). This Regulation applies to the following subjects:

Applied Mathematics  
Botany

Chemistry  
Economics

Geography  
Physics

Pure Mathematics  
Zoology

9. (a). A candidate with previous knowledge of any subject to which this Regulation applies may be required by the Senate to take Stage II papers of that subject without having passed Stage I papers. A candidate who passes Stage II papers shall be credited with Stage II papers but shall not be credited with Stage I papers as papers for any University degree or diploma. If the examiner certifies that the candidate though failing a Stage II paper or papers, attained the standard of a pass at Stage I of the subject, the candidate shall have the appropriate Stage I paper or papers credited to his or her course.  
In a subject where a Beginners and Advanced paper is offered at Stage I level, a candidate with previous knowledge in any subject to which the Regulation applies may be required by the Senate to take the Advanced level paper. If the examiner certifies that the candidate though failing an Advanced level paper, attained the standard of a pass at Beginners level, the candidate shall have the Beginners level paper credited to his or her course.
- (b). This Regulation applies to the following subjects:  
Asian, Germanic, Romance Languages; Greek; Latin; Russian.  
**Law**
10. (a). This Regulation applies (notwithstanding the provisions of Regulations 2, 4, and 5) to a candidate for this Degree who has been credited for this Degree with not fewer than fifteen papers (in this Regulation called 'arts papers'), of which three are at Stage III level in one subject and five others are at a higher level than Stage I, and who is not fulfilling Regulation 4(a) above with a subject listed in Group B.
- (b). Where the candidate:
- has been credited with fifteen papers and
  - has been credited for the Degree of LLB or LLB (Hons) with six subjects from those listed in Parts I and II of 10(f) below, of which at least three are from Part II - the candidate shall be entitled to be credited with those six subjects as the remaining six papers for this Degree.
- (c). Where the candidate:
- has been credited with more than fifteen but fewer than twenty-one arts papers and
  - has been credited for the Degree of LLB or LLB (Hons) with one or more subjects from those listed in Parts I and II of 10(f) below the candidate shall be entitled to be credited with it or them as the remaining paper or papers for this Degree, provided that only subjects listed in Part II shall be credited as papers at Stage II.
- (d). A candidate who has completed or is completing the course for the Degree of Bachelor of Laws or Bachelor of Laws (Honours) under the Regulations published in the University of Auckland *Calendar* 1966, and who invokes this Regulation, may be credited with the subjects Constitutional and Administrative Law in place of the subject Constitutional Law.
- (e). This present regulation being in substitution for that which appeared in the University of Auckland *Calendar* 1987 ("the old regulation") - a candidate who before 1988 enrolled for this Degree and for any part of the First Law Examination for the Degree of LLB or LLB (Hons) may proceed under the old Regulation but with the substitution of the Schedule to this present Regulation; upon condition that the candidate completes the course for this Degree in 1988 or 1989.
- (f). Part I
- |                                   |  |        |   |
|-----------------------------------|--|--------|---|
| 25.205                            | Administrative Law   | 25.301 | Advanced Administrative Law   |
| 25.102                            | Constitutional Law (before 1989)                                   | 25.303 | Advanced Constitutional Law   |
| 25.209                            | Copyright, Patents, Trademarks, Un-fair Competition (before 1989)  | 25.304 | Advanced Criminology  |
| 25.209                            | Intellectual Property (after 1987)                                 | 25.305 | Advanced Family Law   |
| 25.210                            | Criminology  | 25.306 | Advanced Industrial Law   |
| 25.211                            | Family Law   | 25.307 | Advanced International Law  |
| 25.212                            | Industrial Law   | 25.335 | Advanced Law and Society  |
| 25.213                            | International Institutions   | 25.317 | Advanced Legal Philosophy   |
| 25.214                            | International Law  | 25.324 | Air and Space Law   |
| 25.217                            | Jurisprudence (before 1978)  | 25.310 | Comparative Law   |
| 25.225                            | Law and Society (if taken, after 1988, for the Law II Examination) | 25.311 | Conflict of Laws  |
| 25.218                            | Legal history (if taken for the Law II Examination)                | 25.313 | Environmental Law   |
| 25.219                            | Legal Process (before 1978)  | 25.315 | International Trade   |
| 25.103                            | Legal System   | 25.316 | Law Reform  |
| 25.226                            | Legal Theory (if taken for the Law II Examination)                 | 25.225 | Law and Society (if taken, after 1988, for the Law III Examination) |
| 25.232                            | Litigation   | 25.317 | Legal History (if taken for the Law III Examination)                |
| 25.220                            | Local Government Law   | 25.317 | Legal Philosophy (before 1988)                                      |
| 25.224                            | Pacific Legal Studies  | 25.226 | Legal Theory (before 1978)  |
| 25.106                            | Public Law   |        | Legal Theory (if taken for the Law III Examination)                 |
| 25.234                            | Welfare Law  | 25.325 | Legal Philosophy (before 1988)                                      |
| After 1977 and before 1989:       |  | 25.336 | Legal Theory (before 1978)  |
| Any two of 25.225 Law and Society |  | 25.319 | Legal Theory (if taken for the Law III Examination)                 |
| 25.226 Legal Analysis             |  | 25.320 | Maori Land Law  |
| 25.227 Legal Theory               |  |        | Natural Resources Law   |
|                                   |  |        | Planning Law  |
|                                   |  |        | Restitution   |

**Music**

11. (a). Except with the leave of the Senate, no candidates may advance in Music (that is take any papers in that subject beyond Stage I level) unless they have, before enrolling for any Stage I paper in Music, satisfied the Head of Department that they have attained a suitable standard in the subject.
- (b). Candidates advancing in Music shall comply with Regulation 6 of the Regulations for the Degree of Bachelor of Music as if they were enrolled for that Degree.

**Oral Work**

12. In each of the subjects Chinese, Indonesian and Japanese a candidate shall be required to pass in the oral work as well as the written papers.

**Cross-credits, Credit and Exemptions**

13. (a). Except in the case of students to whom Regulation 10 applies, the total cross-credits and exemptions granted to a candidate under Regulations 12, 13 and 14 or the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General) shall not exceed ten papers for this Degree.
- (b). In the case of students to whom Regulation 10 applies, the maximum number of cross-credits, credits and exemptions granted to a candidate under Regulation 12, 13 and 14 of the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General) shall be determined by the Dean.
14. A candidate who has successfully completed:
  - (i) a course or courses at Teacher's College under the control of the Auckland Teachers' Colleges Council; or
  - (ii) the requirements for a Certificate Course of the Centre for Continuing Education; or
  - (iii) the course either for the Diploma in Nursing or the Diploma in Physiotherapy at the Auckland Technical Institute and the course for the Diploma in Nursing at Carrington Technical Institute or Manukau Technical Institute or Northland Polytechnic or
  - (iv) Studio I for BFA but is not completing that Degree;
  - (v) Legal System for LLB but is not completing that Degree as listed in the Schedule to Regulation 12 of the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General), may be granted credit for this Degree as provided by that Regulation
  - (vi) Introduction to Property for PropAdminInt but is not completing the BPA Degree.
15. The Senate may in such exceptional cases as it thinks fit, approve a personal course of study which does not conform to the foregoing Regulations.
16. (a). Except as otherwise provided in this Regulation, the course of study of every candidate shall be governed by these Regulations.
- (b). A candidate who gained credit in any unit or units under any of the former Regulations for this Degree, shall be credited with such equivalent paper or papers as the Senate shall determine.
- (c). For candidates who enrolled for this Degree before 1973 the subject prerequisites, corequisites and restrictions, where not covered by these Regulations, shall be determined by the Head of the Department concerned.
- (d). A candidate who gained credit in any paper under any of the former Regulations may complete the Degree under these present Regulations.
- (e). These Regulations shall come into force on 1 January 1981.

**Schedule**

1. This Schedule sets out paper numbers, prerequisites, corequisites, subjects, restrictions and other conditions applying to courses for the Degree of Bachelor of Arts.
2. This Schedule shall be read with the Regulations for the Degree and with the prescriptions set out elsewhere in the *Calendar*.
3. (a). The heading 'prerequisites' in relation to a paper refers to other papers which must be passed before the candidate may take that paper.
- (b). Where a prerequisite has been waived by a Head of Department and re-imposed as a corequisite the paper or papers as to which that corequisite is imposed may not be credited as a pass for the candidate's course of study unless and until the candidate has passed that corequisite.
4. (a). The heading 'corequisites' in relation to a paper refers to other papers which must be taken concurrently with that paper or have been passed in a previous year. Except as provided elsewhere in these Regulations or in this Schedule, if a corequisite of a paper is failed then the paper passed cannot be used as a prerequisite to other courses.
- (b). Except as provided elsewhere in these Regulations or in this Schedule, the corequisites marked \*\* in the Schedule are linked in the sense that they:
  - (i) must be attempted in the same year and will not be credited separately;
  - (ii) will be treated as a unit for the purpose of Examination Regulation 5 (b), of the Examination Regulations.
5. The heading 'restrictions' in relation to a paper refers to a paper which cannot be taken in addition to that paper.
6. Except as provided elsewhere in these Regulations or in this Schedule, a candidate may not enrol for any paper until he satisfies all prerequisite and corequisite requirements and other requirements listed in the Schedule. The papers prescribed for this Degree are:



**SCHEDULE - GROUP A**

| Title Of Paper  | Prerequisites  | Corequisites   | Restrictions     | Qualifications   |
|---|--|--|------------------|--|
| <b>ANCIENT HISTORY</b>                                    |  |  |                  |  |
| <b>Egyptian Options</b>                                   |  |  |                  |  |
| 12.100 Near Eastern History                               |  |  |                  |  |
| * 12.200 Egypt in Dynasty XVIII                           | 12.100   | 12.102 or 12.103   | 12.320           | By special permission of the Head of Department the corequisites may be waived.  |
| 12.210 Egyptian Language I                                | as 12.200  |  |                  |  |
| 12.220 Egypt in Dynasties V-XI                            | as 12.200  | as 12.200  | 12.300           |  |
| 12.300 Egypt in Dynasties V-XI                            | 12.200   |  | 12.220           |  |
| 12.310 Egyptian Language II                               | 12.210   |  |                  |  |
| * 12.320 Egypt in Dynasty XVIII                           | 12.220   |  | 12.200           |  |
| <b>Mesopotamian Options</b>                               |  |  |                  |  |
| * 12.201 The Neo-Assyrian Empire                          | 12.100   | as 12.200  | 12.301           | as 12.200  |
| 12.211 Akkadian Language I                                | as 12.200  |  |                  |  |
| 12.221 Mesopotamia in the 18th Century B.C.               | as 12.200  | as 12.200  | 12.321           | as 12.200  |
| * 12.301 The Neo-Assyrian Empire                          | 12.221   |  | 12.201           |  |
| 12.311 Akkadian Language II                               | 12.211   |  |                  |  |
| 12.321 Mesopotamia in the 18th Century B.C.               | 12.201   |  | 12.221           |  |
| <b>Greek Options</b>                                      |  |  |                  |  |
| 12.102 Greek History                                      |  |  |                  |  |
| * 12.202 Greece and Persia                                | 12.102 or Greek II   | 12.100 or 12.103   | 12.332           | If 12.202 is taken as part of Greek III no corequisite is required; also as 12.200   |
| 12.212 Political Theory & Practice in Imperial Athens     | as 12.202  | as 12.202  | 12.312 or 10.309 |  |
| * 12.222 Tyranny  | as 12.202  | as 12.202  | 12.322 or 10.309 |  |
| 12.312 Imperial Athens                                    | 12.202 or 12.204 or 12.222 or approved alternative.          |  | 12.212 10.309    |  |
| * 12.322 Tyranny  | 12.202 or 12.204 or 12.212                                   |  | 12.222 or 10.309 |  |
| * 12.332 Greece and Persia                                | 12.204, 12.212 or 12.222                                     |  | 12.202 or 10.309 |  |
| <b>Roman Options</b>                                      |  |  |                  |  |
| 12.103 Roman History                                      |  |  |                  |  |
| * 12.203 Pax Romana                                       | 12.103 or Latin II   | 12.100 or 12.102   | 12.323 or 09.308 | If 12.203 is taken as part of Latin III no corequisite is required; also as 12.200   |
| 12.213 Empire, Politics and Society in the Roman Republic | as 12.203  | as 12.203  | 12.313 or 09.308 |  |
| * 12.214 Historians of Rome                               | as 12.203  | as 12.203  | 12.314           |  |
| 12.313 Empire, Politics and Society in the Roman Republic | 12.203 or 12.204   |  | 12.213 or 09.308 |  |
| * 12.323 Pax Romana                                       | 12.204 or 12.213   |  | 12.203 or 09.308 | as 12.203  |
| <b>Other Options</b>                                      |  |  |                  |  |
| * 12.204 Art & Society in Ancient Greece and Rome         | 12.102 or 12.103 or Greek II or Latin II or 73.105 or 19.151 | 12.102, 12.103 for those proceeding to Stage III Ancient History |                  |  |
| * 12.314 Historians of Rome                               | 12.103 and any Stage II Ancient History paper                |  | 12.214           | Candidates who are enrolled for or have passed Latin III may enrol without prerequisites. Candidates who are enrolled for or have passed Greek III may enrol without prerequisites |
| 12.324 Historians of Greece                               | 12.102 and any Stage II Ancient History paper                |  |                  |  |

Note: 1. One approved paper from another subject may, with the consent of the Head of Department, be substituted and counted as part of the subject

| Title Of Paper  | Prerequisites | Corequisites | Restrictions | Qualifications |
|---|---------------|--------------|--------------|----------------|
| Ancient History for the purposes of Regulation 4 and MA Regulation 1 (b). With the consent of the Head of Department students may offer as Stage III papers one or two of the papers 12.400-12.409, 12.412, 12.419, 12.422 as prescribed for the MA Degree. |               |              |              |                |

## ANTHROPOLOGY

### Anthropology I

|        |   |  |        |  |
|--------|---|--|--------|--|
| 03.100 | Introduction to Social Anthropology                     |  |        |  |
| 03.101 | Introduction to Archaeology and Biological Anthropology |  |        |  |
| 03.102 | Introduction to Maori Society                           |  | 04.101 |  |
| 03.103 | Ethnomusicology: An Introduction to World Music         | 28.105 or permission of Head of Department | 28.114 |  |

### Anthropology II

|        |  |  |  |                        |  |
|--------|--|--|--|------------------------|--|
| 03.200 | Ethnography of Island Polynesia  | 03.100 or 79.100 or 79.101                                     |  |                        | Available to candidates who have not passed any of the prerequisites provided that they have passed four papers in any subject or subjects and take one of the prerequisites as a corequisite. |
| 03.201 | Melanesian Ethnography   | 03.100   |  |                        | Available to candidates who have not passed 03.100 provided that they have passed four papers in any subject or subjects and take 03.100 as a corequisite.                                     |
| *      | 03.202 Social Organisation   | 03.100   |  |                        | As for 03.201  |
| *      | 03.203 Anthropology and the Concept of Culture                               | 03.100   |  |                        | As for 03.201  |
|        | 03.206 Origins of Civilisation   | 03.101   |  |                        | Available to candidates who have not passed 03.101 provided that they have passed four papers in any subject or subjects and take 03.101 as a corequisite.                                     |
| †      | 03.207 Human Evolution   | 03.101   |  |                        | As for 03.206  |
|        | 03.208 The Coming of the Maori   |  | 03.102 or 04.101 or permission of Head of Department | 04.203                 |  |
|        | 03.209 Ethnomusicology: Folk and Traditional Music of the Western Continents | 03.103 or 28.114   | 28.101   | 28.214                 | The corequisites for 28.101 are waived for students of 03.209  |
| *      | 03.210 Ethnic Groups and Interethnic Relations                               | 03.100   |  |                        | As for 03.201  |
|        | 03.211 Traditional Maori Society   | 03.102 or 04.101 or 24.120 or permission of Head of Department |  | 04.202                 |  |
|        | 03.212 Sociolinguistics  | 03.100   |  | 83.202, 18.201, 18.205 | As for 03.201  |
| *      | 03.213 Development of Ethnography  | 03.100   |  |                        | As for 03.201  |
|        | 03.214 Issues in Social Theory   | 03.100   |  |                        | As for 03.201  |
|        | 03.215 Method and Theory in Archaeology                                      | 03.101   |  |                        | As for 03.206  |
| *      | 03.216 Maori Kinship and Community   | 03.102 or 04.101   |  | 04.207                 |  |
|        | 03.217 The Languages of the Pacific  | Any Stage I paper  |  | 83.205                 |  |

|                  | Title Of Paper  | Prerequisites  | Corequisites   | Restrictions | Qualifications   |
|------------------|---|--|--|--------------|--|
|                  | 03.218 Ethnographies of the Contemporary Maori          | 03.100 or 03.102/04.101  |  |              | As for 03.200  |
|                  | 03.219 Anthropological Perspectives on Gender           | 03.100 or 03.101 or 03.102/04.101  |  |              | As for 03.200  |
| Anthropology III |   |  |  |              |  |
| *                | 03.300 History of Anthropology                          | Any two Stage II Social Anthropology papers; or 03.100 and permission of Head of Department                |  |              |  |
| *                | 03.301 Kinship and Marriage                             | 03.100   | 03.202 or 03.214   |              |  |
| *                | 03.302 Contemporary Problems in Social Anthropology     | 03.202 or 03.214 or 03.203 or 03.219   |  |              |  |
|                  | 03.304 Social History of Maori Land Legislation         | One or more Stage II papers in Social Anthropology or Maori Studies or permission of Head of Department    |  | 04.308       |  |
| *                | 03.305 Topics in Contemporary Melanesia                 |  | 03.201 and 03.202 or 03.214 or permission of Head of Department.   |              |  |
|                  | 03.306 Topics in Contemporary Maori Society             | One or more Stage II papers in Maori Studies or Social Anthropology  |  | 04.302       |  |
|                  | 03.308 Advanced Method and Theory in Archaeology        | 03.101   | 03.100 or 03.102/04.101; and 03.204 or 03.206 or 03.208/04.203 or 03.215 or permission of Head of Department |              |  |
| †                | 03.309 Advanced Biological Anthropology                 | 03.101 or permission of Head of Department   | 03.207 or permission of Head of Department.  |              | By special permission of the Head of Department the prerequisite and corequisite may be waived provided appropriate science papers have been passed. |
| *                | 03.310 Social Movements                                 | 03.100 and permission of Head of Department  |  |              |  |
| *                | 03.311 Studies in Oral Literature                       | Any two Stage II Social Anthropology papers; or 03.100 or 79.101 and permission of Head of Department      |  |              |  |
| *                | 03.313 Contemporary Polynesia                           | 03.100   | 03.200   | 03.329       |  |
| *                | 03.314 East Asian Archaeology & Biological Anthropology | 03.101   | 03.204 or 03.206 or 03.208/04.203 or 03.215  |              |  |
|                  | 03.315 Oceanic Prehistory                               | 03.101   | 03.204 or 03.206 or 03.208/04.203 or 03.215 or permission of Head of Department                              |              |  |
| *                | 03.316 Australian Aboriginal Archaeology and Society    | 03.101   | As for 03.315  |              |  |
|                  | 03.318 Music of Oceania                                 | 03.209 or 28.214   | 28.201   | 28.314       | The corequisites for 28.201 are waived for students of 03.318  |
|                  | 03.320 The Anthropology of Agriculture                  | 03.101 and 03.202 or 03.213 or 03.214 or 03.219; or 03.100 and 03.101 and permission of Head of Department |  |              |  |
| *                | 03.322 Urban Anthropology                               | 03.202 or 03.214 or 03.219; or 03.100 and permission of Head of Department                                 |  |              |  |

|          | Title Of Paper  | Prerequisites   | Corequisites  | Restrictions | Qualifications  |
|----------|---|---|---|--------------|---|
| * 03.323 | Diachronic Anthropology                               | As for 03.300   |   |              |   |
| 03.325   | Experimental and Ethnographic Archaeology             | 03.101  | 03.204 or 03.206 or 03.208/04.203 or 03.215 or permission of Head of Department |              |   |
| 03.326   | Statistical Methods in Anthropology                   | 03.100 or 03.101  |   |              |   |
| 03.327   | Human Osteology for the Archaeologist                 | 03.207  |   |              | By special permission of the Head of Department the prerequisite may be waived, provided appropriate science papers have been passed. |
| 03.329   | Contemporary South Pacific Societies                  | 03.200 or 03.201  |   | 03.305       |   |
| † 03.330 | Special Topic in Archaeology: New Zealand Archaeology | 03.101  | 03.204 or 03.206 or 03.208/04.203 or 03.215 or 03.215                           |              |   |
| 03.331   | Archaeological Resource Management                    | 03.101  | As for 03.330   |              |   |
| 03.333   | Economic Anthropology                                 | 03.100 and permission of Head of Department   |   |              |   |
| 03.334   | Special Topic in Social Anthropology                  | 03.100 and permission of Head of Department   |   |              |   |
| * 03.335 | Special Topic in Social Anthropology                  | 03.100 and permission of Head of Department   |   |              |   |
| * 03.336 | Special Topic in Social Anthropology                  | 03.202 or 03.214  |   |              |   |
| * 03.338 | Special Topic in Biological Anthropology              | 03.101 and 03.207 or permission of Head of Department   |   |              | By special permission of the Head of Department 03.207 may be waived, provided appropriate Science papers have been passed            |
| * 03.339 | Special Topic in Culture History                      | Permission of Head of Department  |   | 83.302       |   |
| 03.340   | Field Methods in Archaeology                          | 03.204 or 03.206 or 03.208/04.203 or 03.215   |   |              |   |
| 03.341   | Regional Approaches to Maori Society                  | One or more Stage II papers in Social Anthropology or Maori Studies or permission of Head of Department |   | 04.310       |   |
| 03.342   | Approaches to Archaeological Science                  | 03.101  | 03.204 or 03.206 or 03.208/04.203 or 03.215 or permission of Head of Department |              |   |

## ART HISTORY

### Art History I

- 19.151 Renaissance Art to c.1520
- 19.152 Western Art from c.1840 to the present day
- 19.153 Maori and Other Polynesian Art

### Art History II

- 19.259 Topics in 18th and early 19th Century Art
- 19.260 Topics in Baroque Art
- \* 19.261 Topics in 17th and early 18th Century Art in Northern Europe
- 19.262 Topics in 20th Century Art

Any two of  
19.151, 19.152 or  
19.153

| Title Of Paper  | Prerequisites  | Corequisites | Restrictions                  | Qualifications |
|---|--|--------------|-------------------------------|----------------|
| <b>Art History III</b>  |  |              |                               |                |
| 19.301 Special Topic in Medieval Art to be prescribed by the Head of Department | Two of 19.257, 19.258, 19.259, 19.260, 19.261, 19.262 or two of 19.251, 19.252 or 19.253 |              |                               |                |
| * 19.302 Mid 19th Century Painting in France and Britain                        | As for 19.301  |              |                               |                |
| 19.304 Dürer and his Sources and Influence                                      |  |              |                               |                |
| 19.305 NZ Art (General)   |  |              |                               |                |
| † 19.306 Special Topic in Western Art after 1500                                |  |              |                               |                |
| 19.307 Art in the USA, 1945 to the present day                                  |  |              |                               |                |
| 19.308 Topics in Early 20th Century Art 1989: 20th Century Sculpture            |  |              |                               |                |
| * 19.309 Women in Art   |  |              | 19.306 under 1981 Regulations |                |
| * 19.310 Topics in 17th Century Graphic Art                                     |  |              |                               |                |
| 19.311 Contemporary New Zealand Art   |  |              |                               |                |

## ASIAN GEOGRAPHY

|   |                  |  |        |  |
|---|------------------|--|--------|--|
| <b>Asian Geography I</b>  |                  |  |        |  |
| 20.130 Geography of East Asia   |                  |  |        |  |
| <b>Asian Geography II</b>   |                  |  |        |  |
| † 20.240 Geography of Malaysia Singapore and Indonesia (odd years only) | 20.102 or 20.130 |  | 20.310 | With permission of the Head of Department a student may enrol in this course without fulfilling prerequisites if two papers in Asian Studies have been passed. |

## ASIAN HISTORY

|  |  |  |                               |   |
|--|--|--|-------------------------------|---|
| <b>Asian History I</b>   |  |  |                               |   |
| 24.130 China Since the Opium War                                       |  |  |                               |   |
| * 24.132 Nationalism and Revolution in Vietnam, Thailand and Indonesia |  |  | 24.221 under 1980 Regulations | If a candidate attempts papers in both History and Asian History at the same level they will count as papers in separate subjects but not otherwise.  |
| 24.133 The Development of Modern Japan                                 |  |  |                               |   |
| <b>Asian History II</b>  |  |  |                               |   |
| 24.222 China under the Ming and Qing Dynasties                         | Two Stage I papers in History and/or Asian History |  |                               | The Head of Department may waive one or both of the prerequisites if a candidate is advancing in an Asian language, or, exceptionally, in other cases |
| * 24.223 State and Society in pre-colonial Island S.E. Asia            | As for 24.222                                      |  | 24.220 under 1980 Regulations |   |
| * 24.224 State and Society in pre-colonial Mainland S.E. Asia          | As for 24.222                                      |  | 24.220 under 1980 Regulations |   |

| Title Of Paper  | Prerequisites                                       | Corequisites | Restrictions | Qualifications   |
|---|---|--------------|--------------|--|
| Asian History III   |   |              |              |  |
| 24.312 Sino-Japanese relations since the Meiji restoration  | Two Stage II papers in History and/or Asian History |              |              | In exceptional circumstances the Head of Department may waive one prerequisite paper, provided it is taken as a corequisite. |
| 24.330 British Imperialism in S.E. Asia                     |   |              |              |  |
| * 24.340 Theravada Buddhism and Islam in S.E. Asian History |   |              |              |  |

## ASIAN POLITICS

|   |   |  |        |  |
|---|---|--|--------|--|
| Asian Politics II                         |   |  |        |  |
| * 30.210 Southeast Asian Foreign Policies | Any two papers from Political Studies I and/or Asian Politics I   |  |        | The Head of Department may exempt students who wish to enrol in 30.210, 30.216 or 30.313 from prerequisites, if they have passed other relevant papers in, for example, Asian Geography, Asian History, Asian Politics, or Asian Languages & Literature. |
| † 30.216 Politics of Japan                |   |  |        |  |
| Asian Politics III                        |   |  |        |  |
| † 30.313 Politics of China                | Any two papers from Political Studies II and/or Asian Politics II |  | 30.108 |  |

## ASIAN STUDIES

|   |                  |  |         |  |
|---|------------------|--|---------|--|
| Asian Studies I   |                  |  |         |  |
| 97.100 Introduction to Chinese Thought  |                  |  | 48.102  |  |
| * 97.101 Aspects of Traditional Chinese Culture                                     |                  |  | 48.104  |  |
| 97.102 Introduction to Modern China Through Literature                              |                  |  | 48.105  |  |
| 97.103 Ethnic Chinese Abroad with special reference to the New Zealand Chinese      |                  |  | 48.106  |  |
| † 97.120 Indonesian Literatures and Civilizations                                   |                  |  | 80.103  |  |
| 97.121 Introduction to Islam  |                  |  | 80.104  |  |
| 97.122 Literary Traditions and Religions of India                                   |                  |  | 80.105  |  |
| * 97.140 Japanese Literature in Translation   |                  |  | 81.102  |  |
| 97.141 Introduction to Japanese Thought and Culture                                 |                  |  | 81.103  |  |
| 97.160 Introduction to Korean Culture   |                  |  | 449.102 |  |
| Asian Studies II  |                  |  |         |  |
| * 97.200 Major Schools of Chinese Thought   | 97.100 or 48.102 |  | 48.203  |  |
| 97.221 Islamic Civilizations  | 97.122           |  | 80.203  | } Permission of Head of Department required. |
| 97.222 Early Indian Thought from the Upanishads to the Age of Shankara and Ramanuja | 97.122           |  | 80.205  |  |

| Title Of Paper                           | Prerequisites | Corequisites | Restrictions | Qualifications                      |
|--|---------------|--------------|--------------|-------------------------------------|
| <b>BIBLICAL HISTORY AND LITERATURE</b>   |               |              |              |                                     |
| Biblical History and Literature I        |               |              |              |                                     |
| 11.101 Introduction to the Hebrew Bible  |               |              | 376.100      | Students are advised to take 12.100 |
| 11.113 Introduction to the New Testament |               |              | 377.100      | Students are advised to take 12.103 |

## CHINESE

|  |                        |                                    |        |   |
|--|------------------------|------------------------------------|--------|---|
| Chinese I  |                        |                                    |        |   |
| 48.100 Language Acquisition A  |                        | 48.101                             |        |   |
| 48.101 Language Acquisition B  |                        | 48.100                             |        |   |
| 48.102 Introduction to Chinese Thought   |                        |                                    | 97.100 |   |
| * 48.104 Aspects of Traditional Chinese Culture                                |                        |                                    | 97.101 |   |
| 48.105 Introduction to Modern China through Literature                         |                        |                                    | 97.102 |   |
| 48.106 Ethnic Chinese Abroad with special reference to the New Zealand Chinese |                        |                                    | 97.103 |   |
| Chinese II   |                        |                                    |        |   |
| 48.200 Language Acquisition  | 48.100, 48.101         | 48.201, 48.202                     |        | By special permission of the Head of Department the prerequisites and corequisites may be waived. |
| 48.201 Introduction to Modern Chinese Literature                               | 48.100, 48.101         | 48.200, 48.202                     |        |   |
| 48.202 Introduction to Classical Chinese Language and Literature               | 48.100, 48.101         | 48.200, 48.201                     |        |   |
| * 48.203 Major Schools of Chinese Thought                                      | 48.102                 |                                    | 97.200 |   |
| Chinese III  |                        |                                    |        |   |
| 48.300 Language Acquisition  | 48.200, 48.201, 48.202 | Two from 48.301 to 48.303          |        | By special permission of the Head of Department the prerequisites and corequisites may be waived. |
| 48.301 Readings in Contemporary Chinese Literature                             | 48.200, 48.201, 48.202 | 48.300 and either 48.302 or 48.303 |        |   |
| 48.302 Readings in Classical Chinese Literature                                | 48.200, 48.201, 48.202 | 48.300 and either 48.301 or 48.303 |        |   |
| 48.303 Translation in Theory and Practice                                      | 48.300, 48.201, 48.302 | 48.301, 48.302                     |        |   |

## CLASSICAL STUDIES

|  |  |  |  |  |
|--|--|--|--|--|
| Classical Studies I  |  |  |  |  |
| 73.105 Introduction to Classical Literature in Translation |  |  |  |  |

## DUTCH

|  |  |              |  |  |
|--|--|--------------|--|--|
| † 421.100 Language Acquisition 1                           |  | 421.101, 102 |  |  |
| † 421.101 Language Acquisition 2                           |  | 421.100, 102 |  |  |
| † 421.102 Aspects of the Civilisation of the Low Countries |  |              |  |  |

## ECONOMICS

|                       |  |        |        |  |
|-----------------------|--|--------|--------|--|
| Economics I           |  |        |        |  |
| 13.100 Microeconomics |  | 13.101 | 13.103 |  |

|  | Title Of Paper  | Prerequisites  | Corequisites | Restrictions | Qualifications   |
|--|---|--|--------------|--------------|--|
|  | 13.101 Macroeconomics   |  | 13.100       | 13.103       | The corequisite for 13.101 is unlikely to be waived  |
| <p>Note: Students advancing in Economics require an adequate mathematical background and are advised to take both of the quantitative papers offered by the Commerce Faculty (290.100, 290.101) or equivalent papers in mathematics. It is likely that for 1992 the Stage II papers 13.200, 13.201 and 13.205 will require these papers as a prerequisite.</p> |   |  |              |              |  |
| Economics II   |   |  |              |              |  |
|  | 13.200 Microeconomics   | 13.100 and 13.101  |              | 13.203       | Students who passed 13.103 and 13.104 with at least a B- average prior to 1987 can proceed to any Economics II papers other than 13.205, for which a statistical prerequisite is also needed |
|  | 13.201 Macroeconomics   | 13.100 and 13.101  |              |              |  |
| *  | 13.203 Managerial Economics                                       | 13.100 and 13.101  |              | 13.200       |  |
| *  | 13.204 New Zealand Public Economics                               | 13.100 and 13.101  |              |              |  |
|  | 13.205 Introduction to Econometrics                               | 13.100 and 13.101; and (13.102 or 26.180 or 26.181 or 26.182)              |              |              |  |
|  | 13.210 Industrialisation and Economic Development                 | 13.100 and 13.101  |              |              |  |
|  | 13.211 The International Economy since 1870                       | 13.100 and 13.101  |              | 17.201       |  |
| *  | 13.213 Economic History of USA 1776-1940                          | 13.100 and 13.101  |              |              |  |
| *  | 13.214 The New Zealand Economy                                    | 13.100 and 13.101  |              |              |  |
| <p>Note: Students taking papers 13.300, 13.301, 13.302 or 13.305 should have previously passed at least one paper in pure mathematics, and are strongly advised to have taken 13.205 also.</p>   |   |  |              |              |  |
| Economics III  |   |  |              |              |  |
|  | 13.300 Theory of Value  | 13.200   |              |              |  |
|  | 13.301 Macroeconomic Theory and Policy                            | 13.200 and 13.201  |              |              |  |
|  | 13.302 Econometrics   | 13.200 or 13.201 and 13.205 or 26.280 or 26.281                            |              |              |  |
|  | 13.304 International Trade  | 13.200   |              |              |  |
|  | 13.305 Financial Economics  | 13.200   |              |              |  |
|  | 13.306 Classical Marxist and Modern Economic Ideas                | 13.200 or 13.201   |              |              |  |
|  | 13.307 Public Expenditure   | 13.200   |              |              |  |
|  | 13.308 Economics of Labour  | 13.200 or 13.201   |              |              |  |
|  | 13.309 International Finance                                      | 13.200, 13.201 and 13.205  |              |              | With permission of the head of Department students may take 13.205 as a corequisite  |
|  | 13.310 Economic History of Australia and NZ                       | 13.200 or 13.201   |              | 17.300       |  |
| †  | 13.311 Special Topic  |  |              |              | Enrolment in Special Topic papers requires Head of Department approval   |
| *  | 13.312 Special Topic  |  |              |              |  |
|  | 13.313 Management and Enterprise in the British Economy 1750-1939 | 13.200 or 13.201   |              |              |  |
|  | 13.314 Law and Economics  | 13.200 and 02.100 (or 25.104 and 25.105) or approval of Head of Department |              |              |  |

## EDUCATION

### Education I

|        |  |  |        |  |
|--------|--|--|--------|--|
| 14.100 | Schooling, Education and Society         |  | 14.102 | A candidate intending to take Stage III papers or more than two Stage II papers in Education must have passed 14.100 (or with approval of Head of Department, 04.101 or 79.100) and 14.101 |
| 14.101 | Introduction to Developmental Psychology |  | 14.109 |  |



| Title Of Paper |  | Prerequisites  | Corequisites                       | Restrictions | Qualifications  |
|----------------|--|--|------------------------------------|--------------|---|
| Education II   |  |  |                                    |              |   |
| 14.200         | Comparative Education                                    | A candidate enrolling in two or more Stage II papers must have passed 14.100 (or with approval of Head of Department, 04.101 or 79.100) and 14.101 or 14.109 | One other Stage II Education paper |              | The Head of Department may waive the prerequisites or restrictions in special circumstances. A candidate intending to take two or more Stage III papers must have passed two Stage II papers.                   |
| 14.201         | History of Education                                     |  |                                    |              |   |
| * 14.202       | New Zealand Education                                    |  |                                    |              |   |
| 14.203         | Educational Psychology                                   |  |                                    |              |   |
| 14.204         | Measurement & Evaluation in Education                    | A candidate enrolling in two or more Stage II papers must have passed 14.100 (or with approval of Head of Department, 04.101 or 79.100) and 14.101 or 14.109 | One other Stage II Education paper |              | A candidate intending to take only one or two Stage II papers not having passed 14.100 and 14.101 must have the permission of the Head of Department.   |
| 14.206         | The Sociology of Education                               |  |                                    |              |   |
| 14.208         | Educational Philosophy                                   |  |                                    |              |   |
| * 14.209       | Introduction to Methods of Research in Education         |  |                                    |              |   |
| 14.210         | Introduction to Curriculum Studies                       |  |                                    |              |   |
| 14.211         | Child Development: Language processes in early childhood |  |                                    |              |   |
| 14.212         | The State and Indigenous Education in Aotearoa           |  |                                    |              |   |
| Education III  |  |  |                                    |              |   |
| 14.300         | Educational Philosophy                                   | A candidate enrolling in two or more Stage III papers must have passed two Stage II papers   |                                    |              | The Head of Department may waive the prerequisites or restrictions in special circumstances. A candidate intending to take only one or two Stage III papers must have the permission of the Head of Department. |
| 14.301         | Comparative Education                                    |  |                                    |              |   |
| 14.302         | History of Education                                     |  |                                    |              |   |
| 14.303         | School and Society                                       |  |                                    |              |   |
| 14.305         | The Guidance Process                                     | 14.203   |                                    |              |   |
| 14.306         | Introduction to Counseling in the Community              |  |                                    |              |   |
| 14.308         | Educational Psychology: A Behavioural Approach           | 14.203 or 32.210   |                                    |              |   |
| 14.309         | Development Psychology                                   |  |                                    |              |   |
| 14.310         | The Psychology of Adolescence                            |  |                                    |              |   |
| 14.311         | Special Education  | 14.203   |                                    |              |   |
| 14.313         | Methods of Research in Education                         |  |                                    |              |   |
| 14.316         | Early Determinants of Behaviour                          | 14.203   |                                    |              |   |
| * 14.317       | Organisational Effectiveness                             |  |                                    |              |   |
| 14.319         | Special Topic: The Reading Process                       |  |                                    |              |   |
| 14.320         | Cognition and Motivation in the Classroom                | 14.203   |                                    |              |   |
| 14.322         | Adult Learning and Education                             |  |                                    |              |   |
| † 14.327       | Aspects of Science Education                             |  |                                    |              |   |
| 14.328         | Contemporary Feminist Perspectives in Education          |  |                                    |              |   |
| 14.329         | Special Topic  |  |                                    |              |   |
| 14.330         | The Seriously Ill Child                                  |  |                                    |              |   |

|   | Title Of Paper  | Prerequisites | Corequisites | Restrictions | Qualifications |
|---|---|---------------|--------------|--------------|----------------|
| † | 14.331 Computers in Education                                       |               |              |              |                |
|   | 14.333 Akonga Maori: Nga Take<br>E Pa Ana Ki Nga Akonga<br>Maori    |               |              |              |                |
|   | 14.334 Education Policy Studies                                     |               |              |              |                |
|   | 14.335 Historical Perspectives on the<br>Family, School and Society |               |              |              |                |
|   | 14.336 Special Topic: Issues in<br>Pacific Island Education         |               |              |              |                |

## ENGLISH

### English I

|        |  |  |  |                  |  |
|--------|--|--|--|------------------|--|
| 18.100 | Introduction to<br>Chaucer and Shakespeare |  |  |                  | Candidates intending to<br>take 18.200 are advised<br>to take paper 18.100   |
| 18.101 | 20th Century Literature                    |  |  |                  | Candidates should note<br>that for entry to English<br>II it is essential to have<br>passed <i>two</i> English I<br>papers |
| 18.103 | New Zealand Literature I                   |  |  | 18.113           |  |
| 18.104 | 19th Century Literature                    |  |  |                  |  |
| 18.105 | Introduction to English<br>Language        |  |  | 83.102<br>18.115 |  |
| 18.113 | New Zealand Literature I                   |  |  | 18.103           |  |
| 18.115 | Introduction to English<br>Language        |  |  | 18.105           |  |

### English II

|        |                                     |   |          |   |  |
|--------|-------------------------------------|---|----------|---|--|
| 18.200 | Mediaeval Literature                | Any two English I<br>papers   |          |   | Students are advised that<br>it is in their interest to<br>take three English II<br>papers in the same year  |
| 18.201 | Language, Literature and<br>Culture | As for 18.200   |          | 18.205,<br>83.202,<br>03.212            |  |
| 18.205 | Sociolinguistics                    | 18.105 or 83.102<br>or 03.100 and one<br>other English I paper            | See Note | 03.212,<br>83.202,<br>18.201            | 18.205 is available to<br>candidates who have not<br>passed 18.105 or 83.102<br>or 03.100 provided that<br>they have passed four<br>papers in any subject or<br>subjects and take 18.105<br>or 83.102 or 03.100 as a<br>corequisite  |
| 18.210 | The Age of Shakespeare:<br>Poetry   | As for 18.200   |          |   | Candidates may take a<br>fourth paper in English<br>II either concurrently or<br>in a later year. The<br>taking of a fifth paper<br>requires Head of<br>Department's<br>permission, which will<br>only be given in rare<br>cases   |
| 18.213 | The Age of Shakespeare:<br>Tragedy  | As for 18.200   | See Note | 18.211,<br>18.212,<br>18.313,<br>18.204 | By permission of the<br>Head of Department<br>prerequisites may be<br>waived; such action will<br>however be virtually<br>limited to single papers<br>for students who have<br>fulfilled or are fulfilling<br>Regulation 4 (a) with<br>three Stage III papers in<br>another subject. |
| 18.220 | 20th Century Fiction                | As for 18.200   |          | 18.321                                  |  |
| 18.221 | New Zealand Literature II           | As for 18.200   | See Note |   |  |
| 18.222 | Modern Poetry 1900-1945             | As for 18.200   |          |   |  |
| 18.223 | Phonology                           | 18.105 and one<br>other English I<br>paper or 83.102<br>and two English I |          | 83.203                                  |  |
| 18.224 | Grammatical Analysis                | As for 18.223   |          | 83.204                                  |  |

| Title Of Paper   | Prerequisites   | Corequisites   | Restrictions   | Qualifications   |
|--|---|--|----------------|--|
| 18.250 English Language for Teachers   |   |  |                | 18.250 may be taken by students who have passed any four University papers or the equivalent credits, and obtained the permission of the head of Department  |
| <p><b>Note:</b> Candidates should note that (i) for entry to English III it is essential to have passed one of 18.200, 18.201 or 18.205; one of 18.210 or 18.213; and one other English II paper.</p> <p>(ii) for 18.302, 18.200 is a prerequisite. For 18.304, 18.105 or 18.201 is a prerequisite and for 18.330, 18.224 is a prerequisite. 18.223 is a prerequisite for 18.416</p> <p>(iii) 18.250 may not be substituted for any Stage III prerequisite papers, though it may be taken in addition.</p> |   |  |                |  |
| <b>English III</b>   |   |  |                |  |
| 18.301 Old English: Language, Literature and Society   | 18.200 or 18.201 or 18.205, 18.210 or 18.213 and one other English II paper | One paper from 18.306-18.308 and one other English III paper                     |                | Candidates taking more than three papers in English III may take the extra papers or a fourth English II paper without corequisites  |
| 18.302 Middle English Literature   | 18.200, 18.210 or 18.213, and one other English II paper                    | As for 18.301  |                | Any one English paper from English III not previously taken may be taken for MA with the approval of the Head of Department  |
| * 18.303 The Linguistic Analysis of Literature   | As for 18.301   | As for 18.301  | 83.305         | By permission of the Head of Department corequisites may be waived. Such action will be virtually limited to candidates who have fulfilled or are fulfilling Regulation 4 (a) with three Stage III papers in another subject.  |
| 18.304 New Zealand English   | 18.105 or 18.201 18.210 or 18.213 and one other English II paper            | As for 18.301  | 83.307         |  |
| 18.305 Semantics   | As for 18.301   | As for 18.301  | 83.312         |  |
| * 18.314 16th and 17th Century Poetry and Prose  | As for 18.301   | As for 18.301  | 18.311, 18.312 |  |
| 18.315 16th and 17th Century Drama   | As for 18.301   | As for 18.301  |                |  |
| 18.306 Prose, Poetry and Drama of the 18th Century   | As for 18.301   | One paper from 18.301-18.305 or 18.314 or 18.315 and one other English III paper | 18.202         | By permission of the Head of Department prerequisites may be waived. Such action will be virtually limited to candidates who have fulfilled or are fulfilling Regulation 4(a) with three Stage III papers in another subject and who wish to enrol in a single English III paper |
| 18.307 Romantic Literature   | As for 18.301   | As for 18.306  | 18.203, 18.324 |  |
| 18.308 18th Century Novels   | As for 18.301   | As for 18.306  | 18.322         |  |
| * 18.310 Shakespeare: Selected Plays: Comedies and Tragicomedies   | As for 18.301   | One paper from 18.301-18.305 or 18.314 or 18.315 and one from 18.306-18.308      |                |  |
| 18.320 Victorian Literature  | As for 18.301   | As for 18.310  |                |  |
| 18.323 American Literature: Poetry   | As for 18.301   | As for 18.310  |                |  |
| 18.325 Special Topic II as prescribed by the Head of Department: Novels from the Post-Colonial World 1950-1980   | As for 18.301   | As for 18.310  |                |  |
| 18.326 Special Topic III as prescribed by the Head of Department: Women Writers of the 20th Century  | As for 18.301   | As for 18.310  |                |  |
| 18.327 Special Topic IV as prescribed by the Head of Department: Australian Literature   | As for 18.301   | As for 18.310  |                |  |

|   | Title Of Paper  | Prerequisites   | Corequisites  | Restrictions | Qualifications |
|---|---|---|---------------|--------------|----------------|
| 18.328  | Special Topic V as prescribed by the Head of Department: Creative Writing     | As for 18.301   | As for 18.310 |              |                |
| * 18.329  | Special Topic VI as prescribed by the Head of Department: Canadian Literature | As for 18.301   | As for 18.310 |              |                |
| 18.330  | Recent Trends in Grammar  | 18.224, 18.210 or 18.213 and one other English II paper | As for 18.310 | 83.300       |                |
| 18.331  | Shakespeare on Screen   | As for 18.310   | As for 18.310 |              |                |
| Note: 18.314 and 18.315 will normally be offered in alternate years. 18.310 and 18.331 will normally be offered in alternate years. |   |   |               |              |                |

## FILM AND TELEVISION STUDIES

- 85.200 Film and Television Studies Six BA papers: at least four must be from Group A with grades of B+ or better in two of these.

## FRENCH

### French I

#### Language Papers

|          |   |  |                         |  |   |
|----------|---|--|-------------------------|--|---|
| 34.100   | Language Acquisition  |  | One French I Text paper | All French I language papers other than 34.100 and 34.108 are mutually exclusive except that subject to the consent of the Head of Department, 34.100 may be taken after passing any other French I language paper | Selection of a French I language paper is subject to the consent of the Head of Department. Corequisite requirements refer to the courses of students advancing in French |
| * 34.102 | Language Comprehension  |  |                         |  |   |
| 34.104   | Language Comprehension in specific areas A: Science                       |  |                         |  |   |
| † 34.106 | Language Comprehension in specific areas B: *Social Science, †Art History |  |                         |  |   |
| † 34.108 | Language Comprehension in Music   |  |                         |  |   |
| 34.151   | French for beginners 1  |  | 34.152                  |  | Subject to the consent of the Head of Department, the corequisite requirement may be waived, whereby a student having some knowledge of French may enrol for 34.152 only  |
| 34.152   | French for beginners 2  |  | 34.151                  |  |   |

#### Text Papers

|        |                                 |  |        |  |
|--------|---------------------------------|--|--------|--|
| 34.109 | French History and Civilisation |  | 34.100 |  |
|--------|---------------------------------|--|--------|--|

### French II

|        |   |  |                                      |  |
|--------|---|--|--------------------------------------|--|
| 34.200 | Language Acquisition                    | 34.100 or 34.110                             | Two French II papers                 | Corequisite requirements refer to the course of students advancing in French. Prerequisites may be waived by the Head of Department in exceptional circumstances |
| 34.201 | 19th and/or 20th Century literary texts | 34.100 or 34.110 and one of its corequisites | 34.200 and one other French II paper |  |

|            | Title Of Paper  | Prerequisites                         | Corequisites                          | Restrictions | Qualifications   |
|------------|---|---------------------------------------|---------------------------------------|--------------|--|
|            | 34.202 19th and/or 20th Century literary texts              | As for 34.201                         | As for 34.201                         |              |  |
| *          | 34.203 19th Century literary texts                          | As for 34.201                         | As for 34.201                         |              |  |
|            | 34.205 Mediaeval texts                                      | As for 34.200                         | As for 34.201                         |              |  |
| *          | 34.210 Le français des métiers                              | As for 34.200                         | As for 34.201                         |              | Enrolment only by permission of Head of Department   |
|            | 34.214 Applied language studies                             | As for 34.200                         | As for 34.201                         |              |  |
| *          | 34.218 Historicity and variation in French                  | As for 34.200                         | As for 34.201                         |              |  |
| French III |   |                                       |                                       |              |  |
|            | 34.300 Language Acquisition                                 | 34.200                                | Two other French III papers           |              | Corequisite requirements refer to the course of students taking more than two Stage III papers in French. Prerequisites may be waived by the head of Department in exceptional circumstances |
| *          | 34.302 17th and 18th Century texts                          | 34.200 and two other French II papers | 34.300 and one other French III paper |              |  |
| †          | 34.306 Mediaeval French Language                            | As for 34.302                         | As for 34.302                         |              |  |
| *          | 34.307 A Literary Topic                                     | As for 34.302                         | As for 34.302                         |              |  |
| *          | 34.308 A topic in 19th and/or 20th Century literature       | As for 34.302                         | As for 34.302                         |              |  |
|            | 34.309 A topic in 19th and/or 20th Century literature       | As for 34.302                         | As for 34.302                         |              |  |
|            | 34.310 17th, 18th and 19th Century Literary texts           | As for 34.302                         | As for 34.302                         |              |  |
|            | 34.318 L'Espace francophone: French in France and Overseas  | As for 34.302                         | As for 34.302                         |              |  |
| *          | 34.320 Traduction et interprétation consécutive du français | As for 34.300                         | As for 34.302                         |              | Enrolment only by permission of Head of Department   |
| *          | 34.322 A linguistic topic                                   | As for 34.300                         | As for 34.302                         |              |  |

## GEOGRAPHY

### Geography I

20.101 Geography of the Natural Environment

20.102 Society, Space and Place

### Geography II

20.201 Processes in the Natural Environment

20.202 Society, Economy and Environment

20.203 Remote Sensing Techniques

20.204 Statistical Techniques in Geography

20.205 Human Impact in the Environment

\* 20.206 Geographical Perspectives on Developing Countries (even years only)

20.101 and 20.102

20.306

With special permission of the Head of Department (i) a student may enrol in one Stage II paper without fulfilling the prerequisites, or (ii) prerequisites may be waived and reimposed as corequisites

### Geography III

20.302 Regional Processes and Development

20.303 Geomorphology and Hydrology

20.304 Biogeography and Climatology

20.305 Population Processes Policies and Techniques

\* 20.306 Geographical Perspectives on Developing Countries (even years only)

Three Stage II papers in Geography including 20.204 (or equivalent) and at least one of 20.201 and 20.202

20.315

20.315

20.206

Students including three or more Stage III Geography papers must attempt at least one of 20.302, 20.303, 20.304, 20.305

With special permission of the Head of Department (i) a student may

|   | Title Of Paper  | Prerequisites   | Corequisites     | Restrictions | Qualifications   |
|---|---|---|------------------|--------------|--|
| † | 20.310 Geography of Malaysia Singapore and Indonesia (odd years only) | Three Stage II papers in Geography including 20.204 (or equivalent) and at least one of 20.201 and 20.202 | 20.302 or 20.305 | 20.240       | enrol in one or two Stage III papers without fulfilling the prerequisites, or (ii) prerequisites may be waived and reimposed as corequisites |
| * | 20.312 Special Topic  |   |                  |              |  |
| † | 20.313 Advanced Statistical Analysis in Geography                     |   |                  |              |  |
|   | 20.314 Geographic Information Systems and Image Processing            |   |                  |              |  |
|   | 20.315 Research Design and Methods in Human Geography                 |   |                  |              |  |
|   | 20.320 Resources and Environmental Management                         |   |                  |              |  |

## GERMAN

### German I

|        |                                   |  |        |   |  |
|--------|-----------------------------------|--|--------|---|--|
| 22.100 | Language Acquisition              |  | 22.101 | 22.103 and  |  |
| 22.101 | Introduction to German Literature |  | 22.100 | 22.105 may not be taken concurrently with 22.100. |  |
| 22.102 | German Civilisation               |  |        | 22.100 and its corequisite                        |  |
| 22.103 | Reading Knowledge of German       |  |        | 22.101 may be taken after passing either          |  |
| 22.105 | Introductory Language Acquisition |  |        | 22.105 or 22.105 and 22.103                       |  |

### German II

|        |  |                |                |   |  |
|--------|--|----------------|----------------|---|--|
| 22.200 | Language Acquisition                       | 22.100, 22.101 | 22.202, 22.203 | A student who presents or has presented 22.200 without having passed 22.100 may not enrol in 22.103 or 22.105 | By special permission of Head of Department the prerequisites and corequisites may be waived |
| 22.202 | 20th Century Literature                    | As for 22.200  | 22.200, 22.203 |   |  |
| 22.203 | German Linguistics and History of Language | As for 22.200  | 22.200, 22.202 |   |  |

### German III

|        |                                   |                        |                                    |  |  |
|--------|-----------------------------------|------------------------|------------------------------------|--|--|
| 22.300 | Language Acquisition              | 22.200, 22.202, 22.203 | 22.301 and one from 22.302, 22.303 |  |  |
| 22.301 | Mediaeval and Romantic Literature | As for 22.300          | 22.300 and one from 22.302, 22.303 |  |  |
| 22.302 | 18th and 19th Century Literature  | As for 22.300          | 22.300, 22.301                     |  |  |
| 22.303 | Post-war Literature               | As for 22.300          | 22.300, 22.301                     |  |  |
| 22.350 | Translation                       | 22.300, 22.202, 22.203 |                                    |  | Enrolment by special permission of Head of Department only |

## GREEK

### Greek I

|        |  |          |  |  |  |
|--------|--|----------|--|--|--|
| 10.100 | Greek Reading. Prescribed texts with grammatical questions | **10.101 |  |  | The papers may not be taken separately except under the most exceptional circumstances |
| 10.101 | Greek Reading. Prescribed texts with grammatical questions | **10.100 |  |  |  |

Note: If 10.100 and 10.101 are taken concurrently, they are linked corequisites. 10.101 may not be taken without prior or concurrent enrolment in 10.100.

| Title Of Paper |  | Prerequisites              | Corequisites           | Restrictions               | Qualifications   |
|----------------|--|----------------------------|------------------------|----------------------------|--|
| Greek II       |  |                            |                        |                            |  |
| 10.200         | Prescribed Texts                                     | } 10.100, 10.101           | 10.201, 10.202         |                            | The Head of Department may waive prerequisites for students with sufficient previous knowledge and corequisites in special cases |
| 10.201         | Greek Literature                                     |                            | 10.200, 10.202         |                            |  |
| 10.202         | Language   |                            | 10.200, 10.201         |                            |  |
| Greek III      |  |                            |                        |                            |  |
| 10.300         | Prescribed Texts                                     | } 10.200, 10.201<br>10.202 | 10.301, 10.302         |                            | As for 10.200  |
| 10.301         | Greek Literature                                     |                            | 10.300, 10.302         |                            |  |
| 10.302         | Language and History of Language                     |                            | 10.300, 10.301         |                            |  |
| 10.303         | Advanced Language                                    | 10.300, 10.301, 10.302     | 10.300, 10.301, 10.302 |                            | Permission of Head of Department required. Not all papers will be available every year   |
| 10.304         | Greek Poetry   | As for 10.300              |                        |                            |  |
| 10.305         | Greek Prose Authors                                  | As for 10.300              |                        |                            |  |
| 10.308         | New Testament Greek or Classical Greek Dialects      | As for 10.300              | As for 10.304          | 12.202 or 12.212 or 12.222 |  |
| 10.309         | *Greece and Persia or<br>*Tyranny or Imperial Athens | As for 10.300              | As for 10.304          |                            |  |

## HEBREW

|                 |                                 |  |                           |
|-----------------|---------------------------------|--|---------------------------|
| <b>Hebrew I</b> |                                 |  |                           |
| 23.110          | Introduction to Biblical Hebrew |  | 23.100, 23.101<br>375.160 |

## HISTORY

|                   |   |   |  |                   |   |
|-------------------|---|---|--|-------------------|---|
| <b>History I</b>  |   |   |  |                   |   |
| 24.100            | From Versailles to Pearl Harbor: issues of peace and war                      |   |  |                   |   |
| 24.101            | The Russian Revolution  |   |  |                   |   |
| 24.105            | The U.S.A. in the 20th Century  |   |  |                   |   |
| 24.107            | Women in New Societies  |   |  | 24.322            |   |
| † 24.109          | Special Topic: A topic in Modern European History                             |   |  |                   |   |
| 24.122            | New Zealand and its Peoples: Maori and Pakeha in the 19th Century             |   |  | 24.120, 24.121    |   |
| 24.123            | New Zealand and its Peoples: Maori, Pakeha and Polynesian in the 20th Century |   |  | 24.120, 24.121    |   |
| 24.140            | Europe in the Age of Kings and Queens 1450-1700                               |   |  |                   |   |
| 24.141            | Europe in the Age of Revolution 1750-1875                                     |   |  | 82.102 after 1984 |   |
| <b>History II</b> |   |   |  |                   |   |
| 24.200            | Rome and the Barbarians   | Two Stage I papers in History and/or Asian History or two of 12.100, 12.102, 12.103 |  |                   | In exceptional circumstances the Head of Department may waive prerequisites or require them to be taken as corequisites |
| 24.201            | Medieval English Kingship from Alfred to Henry III                            | As for 24.200   |  |                   |   |
| 24.214            | Parliaments, Estates and Revolutions 1500-1660                                | As for 24.200 but excluding 12.100, 12.102, 12.103                                  |  | 24.210            |   |

|                    | Title Of Paper  | Prerequisites                                       | Corequisites | Restrictions | Qualifications  |
|--------------------|---|---|--------------|--------------|---|
|                    | 24.215 Seventeenth-Century England: A Social History  | As for 24.214                                       |              | 24.211       |   |
|                    | 24.216 Modern France 1871 to the Present  | As for 24.214                                       |              |              |   |
|                    | 24.230 Polynesian and European Exploration of the Pacific                                       | As for 24.214                                       |              |              |   |
|                    | 24.233 Australian Social History 1788-1990  | As for 24.214                                       |              |              |   |
|                    | 24.234 New Zealand Communities 1840-1940  | As for 24.214                                       |              |              |   |
| †                  | 24.235 Special Topic  | As for 24.214                                       |              |              |   |
| †                  | 24.236 Special Topic  | As for 24.214                                       |              |              |   |
| *                  | 24.237 The First 100 Years. An ethnohistory of the colonisation of Mexico, Peru and New Zealand | As for 24.214                                       |              |              |   |
| <b>History III</b> |   |   |              |              |   |
| *                  | 24.301 The Mexican Revolution   | Two Stage II papers in History and/or Asian History |              |              | In exceptional circumstances the Head of Department may waive one prerequisite paper, provided it is taken as a corequisite. Students taking History III papers should note that it may prove impossible, owing to pressure of numbers in certain classes, to allow students to enrol for all the papers of their first choice. |
| *                  | 24.302 The Reign of Henry VIII  |   |              |              |   |
|                    | 24.307 The Origins of the First World War   |   |              |              |   |
|                    | 24.315 Pacific History: Culture Contact to about 1900   |   |              |              |   |
| †                  | 24.320 Special Topic  |   |              |              |   |
| †                  | 24.325 Special Topic: A Topic in New Zealand and/or Pacific History                             |   |              |              |   |
|                    | 24.329 Social Welfare in New Zealand from 1840 to the present day                               |   |              |              |   |
|                    | 24.331 Justinian and his Age  |   |              |              |   |
|                    | 24.333 A History of Medieval Europe from Charlemagne to Philip the Fair                         |   |              |              |   |
|                    | 24.334 Britain and Russia: a Century of Conflict  |   |              |              |   |
|                    | 24.336 Popular Culture in Early Modern Europe   |   |              |              |   |
| *                  | 24.350 Black-White Relations in Australia, 1788-1988  |   |              |              |   |
|                    | 24.351 Waitangi: the Treaty, Law and the Tribunal   |   |              |              |   |
|                    | 24.353 State and Society in Twentieth-Century United States                                     |   |              |              |   |
|                    | 24.370 Comparative History of Labour Relations  |   |              |              | The Head of Department may waive one prerequisite paper   |

## INDONESIAN

### Indonesian I

|   |   |        |  |        |  |
|---|---|--------|--|--------|--|
|   | 80.100 Language Acquisition A                     | 80.101 |  |        | By special permission of the Head of Department corequisites may be waived |
|   | 80.101 Language Acquisition B                     | 80.100 |  |        |  |
| † | 80.103 Indonesian Literatures and Civilizations   |        |  | 97.120 |  |
|   | 80.104 Introduction to Islam                      |        |  | 97.121 |  |
|   | 80.105 Literary Traditions and Religions of India |        |  | 97.122 |  |

### Indonesian II

|  |   |                |                |  |
|--|---|----------------|----------------|--|
|  | 80.200 Language Acquisition                       | 80.100, 80.101 | 80.201, 80.202 | By special permission of the Head of Department prerequisites and corequisites may be waived |
|  | 80.201 Twentieth Century Indonesian/Malay fiction | 80.100, 80.101 | 80.200, 80.202 |  |
|  | 80.202 Twentieth Century Indonesian/Malay poetry  | 80.100, 80.101 | 80.200, 80.201 |  |
|  |   |                |                |  |



|                | Title Of Paper  | Prerequisites          | Corequisites     | Restrictions | Qualifications   |
|----------------|---|------------------------|------------------|--------------|--|
| Indonesian III | 80.203 Islamic Civilizations  | 80.104                 |                  | 97.221       | Permission of Head of Department required  |
|                | 80.205 Early Indian Thought from the Upanishads to the Age of Shankara and Ramanuja                               | 80.105                 |                  | 97.222       |  |
|                | 80.300 Translation at sight of passages of Indonesian non-literary prose and translation at sight into Indonesian | 80.200, 80.201, 80.202 | 80.301, 80.302   |              | By special permission of the Head of Department prerequisites and corequisites may be waived |
|                | 80.301 Introduction to Classical Malay language and literature  | 80.200, 80.201, 80.202 | 80.300, 80.302   |              |  |
|                | 80.302 Modern Indonesian/ Malay literature  | 80.200, 80.201, 80.202 | 80.300 or 80.301 |              |  |
|                | 80.306 An approved Special Topic  | 80.200, 80.201, 80.202 |                  |              |  |
|                | 80.307 Introduction to Javanese language and literature   | 80.200, 80.201, 80.202 |                  |              |  |

## ITALIAN

### Italian I

|   |        |  |        |                |  |
|---|--------|--|--------|----------------|--|
| † | 35.104 | Italian Language in Opera and Song                 |        |                |  |
|   | 35.106 | Italian Language Studies (i)                       | 35.107 | 35.102, 35.103 |  |
|   | 35.107 | Italian Language Studies (ii)                      | 35.106 | 35.102, 35.103 |  |
|   | 35.110 | Images of Women in 20th Century Italian Literature |        |                |  |
| † | 35.111 | A special topic                                    |        |                |  |

### Italian II

|   |        |  |  |                                       |   |
|---|--------|--|--|---------------------------------------|---|
|   | 35.200 | Language Acquisition   | 35.100, 35.101 or 35.102, 35.103 or 35.106, 35.107   | Two from 35.202-35.231                | Students not fulfilling BA Regulation 4 (a) in Italian who wish to take 35.200 by itself or 35.200 and one other paper may seek Departmental approval |
|   | 35.204 | Italian Fiction and Cinema                                       | Two Italian I language papers from 35.102, 35.103, 35.106, 35.107  | 35.200 and one other Italian II paper |   |
|   | 35.209 | Major Themes in Italian Renaissance Culture A (Texts in Italian) | As for 35.204  | As for 35.204                         |   |
|   | 35.210 | Major Themes in Italian Renaissance Culture B (Texts in English) | Any six Stage One Arts papers from Group A in the <i>Calendar</i> . In the case of Fine Arts Students, a candidate must have passed the first Professional Examination |                                       | This paper does not qualify as a Prerequisite for Stage III Italian, 35.209   |
| * | 35.230 | 20th Century Poetry  | As for 35.204  | As for 35.204                         |   |
|   | 35.231 | A Special Topic in Italian Literature                            | As for 35.204  | As for 35.204                         |   |

### Italian III

|  |        |                      |  |                        |  |   |
|--|--------|----------------------|--|------------------------|--|---|
|  | 35.300 | Language Acquisition | 35.200 and two other Italian II papers except 35.210 | Two from 35.302-35.333 | No paper may be taken at Stage III whose | Students not fulfilling BA Regulation 4 (a) in Italian who wish to take 35.300 by itself or |
|--|--------|----------------------|--|------------------------|--|---|

|   | Title Of Paper  | Prerequisites  | Corequisites                           | Restrictions  | Qualifications  |
|---|---|--|--|---|---|
|   | 35.302 14th Century Texts: Dante  | 35.200 and two other Italian II papers except 35.210 | 35.300 and one other Italian III paper | content corresponds to that of a paper already passed at Stage II | 35.300 and one other paper may seek Departmental approval |
| * | 35.303 14th Century Literary Texts: Boccaccio and Petrarca                              | As for 35.302  | As for 35.302                          |   |   |
| † | 35.321 Linguistics: Principles and Methods Applied to the Study of Contemporary Italian | As for 35.302  | As for 35.302                          |   |   |
|   | 35.322 L'italiano nel mondo del lavoro: Working with Italian                            | As for 35.302  | As for 35.302                          |   | Enrolment by permission of Head of Department             |
|   | 35.331 A Special Topic in Italian Literature or Film                                    | As for 35.302  | As for 35.302                          |   |   |
|   | 35.332 A Special Topic in Italian Literature  | As for 35.302  | As for 35.302                          |   |   |
|   | 35.333 A Special Topic in Italian Literature  | As for 35.302  | As for 35.302                          |   |   |

## JAPANESE

### Japanese I

|   |   |  |                |        |  |
|---|---|--|----------------|--------|--|
|   | 81.100 Introduction to the Japanese Language A      |  | 81.101         |        | By special permission of the Head of Department corequisites may be waived |
|   | 81.101 Introduction to the Japanese Language B      |  | 81.100         |        |  |
| * | 81.102 Japanese Literature in Translation           |  |                | 97.140 |  |
|   | 81.103 Introduction to Japanese Thought and Culture |  |                | 97.141 |  |
|   | 81.110 Oral Japanese for Beginners                  |  | 81.100, 81.101 |        |  |

### Japanese II

|  |                                |                |                |  |  |
|--|--------------------------------|----------------|----------------|--|--|
|  | 81.200 Intermediate Japanese A | 81.100, 81.101 | 81.201, 81.202 |  | By special permission of the Head of Department prerequisites and corequisites may be waived |
|  | 81.201 Intermediate Japanese B | 81.100, 81.101 | 81.200, 81.202 |  |  |
|  | 81.202 Intermediate Japanese C | 81.100, 81.101 | 81.200, 81.201 |  |  |

### Japanese III

|  |  |                        |                             |  |  |
|--|--|------------------------|-----------------------------|--|--|
|  | 81.300 Translation at sight from and into Japanese   | 81.200, 81.201, 81.202 | 81.301 and 81.302 or 81.303 |  | By special permission of the Head of Department prerequisites and corequisites may be waived |
|  | 81.301 Translation of and comments on prescribed modern texts  | 81.200, 81.201, 81.202 | 81.300 and 81.302 or 81.303 |  |  |
|  | 81.302 Translation of and comments on prescribed classical texts together with questions on the history of Japanese literature | 81.200, 81.201, 81.202 | 81.300, 81.301              |  |  |
|  | 81.303 Modern Japanese   | 81.200, 81.201, 81.202 | 81.300, 81.301              |  |  |

## KOREAN

### Korean I

|  |  |  |         |        |  |
|--|--|--|---------|--------|--|
|  | 449.100 Language Acquisition A         |  | 449.101 |        |  |
|  | 449.101 Language Acquisition B         |  | 449.100 |        |  |
|  | 449.102 Introduction to Korean Culture |  |         | 97.160 |  |

| Title Of Paper                                     | Prerequisites               | Corequisites     | Restrictions | Qualifications  |
|--|-----------------------------|------------------|--------------|---|
| <b>Korean II</b>                                   |                             |                  |              |   |
| 449.200 Intermediate Korean A                      | 449.100, 449.101            | 449.201, 449.202 |              | By special permission of the Head of Department the prerequisites and corequisites may be waived. |
| 449.201 Intermediate Korean B                      | 449.100, 449.101            | 449.200, 449.202 |              |   |
| 449.202 Translation from and into Modern Korean    | 449.100, 449.101            | 449.200, 449.201 |              |   |
| 449.203 Korean Study Abroad                        | 449.200, 449.201<br>449.202 |                  |              |   |
| <b>Korean III</b>                                  |                             |                  |              |   |
| 449.300 Advanced Korean A                          | 449.200, 449.201<br>449.202 | 449.301, 449.302 |              | By special permission of the Head of Department the prerequisites and corequisites may be waived  |
| 449.301 Advanced Korean B                          | 449.200, 449.201<br>449.202 | 449.300, 449.302 |              |   |
| 449.302 Translation from and into Modern Korean    | 449.200, 449.201<br>449.202 | 449.300, 449.301 |              |   |
| † 449.303 Traditional and Modern Korean Literature | 449.200, 449.201<br>449.202 |                  |              |   |

## LATIN

|  |   |                |                   |  |
|--|---|----------------|-------------------|--|
| <b>Latin I</b>   |   |                |                   |  |
| 09.100 Prescribed Texts  |   | 09.101         |                   | A student who has previously passed 09.100, 09.101 may not enrol for 09.102, 09.103    |
| 09.101 Translation and Language  |   | 09.100         |                   |  |
| 09.102 Introduction to the Latin language                                |   |                |                   |  |
| 09.103 Introduction to Latin Literature                                  |   | 09.102         |                   |  |
| <b>Latin II</b>  |   |                |                   |  |
| 09.200 Prescribed Texts  | 09.100, 09.101 or   | 09.201, 09.202 |                   | The Head of Department may waive corequisites in special cases.                        |
| 09.201 Latin Literature  | 09.102, 09.103<br>with approval of the Head of Department | 09.200, 09.202 |                   |  |
| 09.202 Language  |   | 09.200, 09.201 |                   |  |
| <b>Latin III</b>   |   |                |                   |  |
| 09.300 Prescribed Texts  |   | 09.301, 09.302 |                   | The Head of Department may waive corequisites in special cases                         |
| 09.301 Latin Literature  | 09.200, 09.201<br>09.202                                  | 09.300, 09.302 |                   |  |
| 09.302 Language and History of Language                                  |   | 09.300, 09.301 |                   |  |
| 09.303 Advanced Language   | 09.300, 09.301,<br>09.302                                 |                |                   |  |
| 09.304 Latin Poetry  | As for 09.300   | 09.300, 09.301 | 09.302            | Permission of Head of Department required. Not all papers will be available every year |
| 09.305 Latin Prose Authors   | As for 09.300   | As for 09.304  |                   |  |
| 09.306 Early Latin or Vulgar Latin                                       | As for 09.300   | As for 09.304  |                   |  |
| 09.308 *Pax Romana, or Empire Politics and Society in the Roman Republic | As for 09.300   | As for 09.304  | 12.203,<br>12.213 |  |

## LINGUISTICS

|   |  |  |        |
|---|--|--|--------|
| <b>Linguistics I</b>  |  |  |        |
| 83.102 Introduction to Linguistics                            |  |  | 18.105 |
| 83.103 Introduction to Historical and Comparative Linguistics |  | 83.102 or 18.105<br>or permission of<br>Head of Department |        |

| Title Of Paper  |  | Prerequisites  | Corequisites | Restrictions           | Qualifications  |
|-----------------|--|--|--------------|------------------------|---|
| Linguistics II  |  |  |              |                        |   |
| 83.202          | Sociolinguistics                         | 83.102 or 18.105 or 03.100                             |              | 03.212, 18.205, 18.201 | Available to candidates who have not passed 03.100, 83.102 or 18.105 provided that they have passed four papers in any subject or subjects and take 03.100, 83.102 or 18.105 as a corequisite |
| 83.203          | Phonology                                | 83.102 or 18.105                                       |              | 18.223                 |   |
| 83.204          | Grammatical Analysis                     | 83.102 or 18.105                                       |              | 18.224                 |   |
| 83.205          | Languages of the Pacific                 | Any Stage I paper                                      |              | 03.217                 |   |
| Linguistics III |  |  |              |                        |   |
| 83.300          | Recent Trends in Grammar                 | Permission of Head of Department                       |              | 18.330                 | Available to a candidate who has not passed 83.103 or 04.204 provided that four papers in any subject or subjects have been passed and 83.103 is taken as corequisite                         |
| † 83.301        | Special Topics in Linguistics            | Permission of Head of Department                       |              |                        |   |
| * 83.302        | Special Topic in Comparative Linguistics | Permission of Head of Department                       |              | 03.339                 |   |
| † 83.303        | Languages of Polynesia                   | 83.103 or 04.204                                       |              | 04.305                 |   |
| * 83.304        | Theory of the Lexicon                    | Permission of Head of Department                       |              |                        |   |
| * 83.305        | Linguistic Analysis of Literature        | Permission of Head of Department                       |              | 18.303                 |   |
| * 83.306        | Philosophy of Language                   | Permission of Head of Department                       |              | 29.202                 |   |
| 83.307          | New Zealand English                      | Permission of Head of Department                       |              | 18.304                 |   |
| † 83.309        | Field Methods                            | 83.203 and 83.204, or permission of Head of Department |              |                        |   |
| † 83.310        | Special Topic in Linguistics             | Permission of Head of Department                       |              |                        |   |
| * 83.311        | Language and Statistics                  | Permission of Head of Department                       |              | 04.313                 |   |
| 83.312          | Semantics                                | Permission of Head of Department                       |              | 18.305                 |   |

## MANAGEMENT STUDIES AND LABOUR RELATIONS

### Management Studies & Labour Relations I

72.101 Organisation & Management 72.203

### Management Studies & Labour Relations II

72.204 Organisational Behaviour 72.101; and one of 32.108, 32.118, 82.100  
 72.207 Labour Relations 72.101; and one of 13.100, 13.101, 82.100, 82.101, 82.102, 82.103

### Management Studies & Labour Relations III

72.303 Comparative Labour Relations 72.207  
 72.313 Business and Society Permission of Head of Department  
 72.316 Organisational Psychology As for 32.301; or 72.204 32.312  
 † 72.317 Women in Organisations 72.101 or permission of Head of Department

|        | Title Of Paper                    | Prerequisites                    | Corequisites | Restrictions | Qualifications |
|--------|-----------------------------------|----------------------------------|--------------|--------------|----------------|
| 72.325 | Organisation Theory & Development | 72.203 or 72.204                 |              |              |                |
| 72.340 | Special Topic                     | Permission of Head of Department |              |              |                |

## MAORI STUDIES

### Maori Studies I

|          |   |  |        |        |  |
|----------|---|--|--------|--------|--|
| 04.100   | Introduction to the Structure of Maori Language |  |        |        |  |
| 04.101   | Introduction to Maori Society                   |  |        | 03.102 |  |
| 04.104   | Introduction to Spoken and Written Maori        |  |        |        |  |
| † 04.105 | Spoken and Written Maori for Fluent Speakers    |  | 04.100 |        | Available only to fluent speakers of Maori |

### Maori Studies II

|          |  |  |  |        |  |
|----------|--|--|--|--------|--|
| 04.202   | Traditional Maori Society                                  | 03.102 or 04.101 or 24.120 or permission of Head of Department |  | 03.211 |  |
| 04.203   | The Coming of the Maori                                    |  | 03.102 or 04.101 or permission of Head of Department | 03.208 |  |
| 04.204   | Second Year Maori Language: Structure and Prescribed Texts | 04.100   |  |        | Prerequisite may be waived for suitably qualified Maori language students provided that they take 04.100 as corequisite. |
| 04.205   | Second Year Maori Language: Oral and Written Skills        | 04.104   |  |        | Prerequisite may be waived for suitably qualified Maori language students provided that they take 04.104 as corequisite. |
| * 04.206 | A Topic in Maori Material Culture                          |  | 04.204, 04.205                                       |        | Corequisites 04.204, 04.205 waived for native speakers of Maori.   |
| * 04.207 | Maori Kinship and Community                                | 04.101/03.102  |  | 03.216 |  |

### Maori Studies III

|          |   |   |                   |        |  |
|----------|---|---|-------------------|--------|--|
| 04.302   | Topics in Contemporary Maori Society                      | One or more Stage II papers in Maori Studies or Social Anthropology                                     |                   | 03.306 |  |
| * 04.303 | Maori Oratory: Whaikoorero, Non-Casual Speech Forms       | Permission of Head of Department  | 04.306 and 04.307 |        |  |
| * 04.304 | Maori Poetry and Song                                     | 04.204 or 04.205  |                   |        |  |
| † 04.305 | Languages of Polynesia                                    | 83.103 or 04.204  |                   | 83.303 |  |
| 04.306   | Third Year Maori Language: Structure and Prescribed Texts | 04.204  | 04.307            |        |  |
| 04.307   | Third Year Maori Language: Oral and Written Skills        | 04.204 and 04.205   | 04.306            |        |  |
| 04.308   | Social History of Maori Land Legislation                  | One or more Stage II papers in Maori Studies or Social Anthropology or permission of Head of Department |                   | 03.304 |  |
| * 04.309 | Whanaungatanga-Whakapapa                                  | One or more Stage II papers in Maori Studies  | 04.306 and 04.307 |        |  |

Head of Department may waive the corequisites for students who are not taking Maori Studies papers as fulfilment of BA Degree Regulation 4(a)

|   | Title Of Paper  | Prerequisites   | Corequisites      | Restrictions | Qualifications  |
|---|---|---|-------------------|--------------|---|
|   | 04.310 Regional Approaches to Maori Society                 | One or more Stage II papers in Maori Studies or Social Anthropology or permission of Head of Department |                   | 03.341       | Head of Department may waive the corequisites for students who are not taking Maori Studies papers as fulfilment of BA Degree Regulation 4(a) |
| † | 04.311 Special Topic in Maori Studies                       | Permission of Head of Department  | 04.306 and 04.307 |              |   |
| * | 04.312 Computer Text Analysis and Research in Maori Studies | Permission of Head of Department  |                   |              |   |
| * | 04.313 Language and Statistics                              | Permission of Head of Department  |                   | 83.311       |   |
| † | 04.314 Te Kaupapa Waahine Maori                             | 04.204 and 04.205 or permission of Head of Department   |                   |              |   |

## MATHEMATICS APPLIED

A detailed schedule of the papers available in this subject can be seen by reference to the Schedule to the BSc Regulations. The following rules must be read in conjunction with the Schedule:

Six credits in Applied Mathematics at Stage I (BSc) are equivalent to one Stage I paper in Mathematics (BA)

Four credits in Applied Mathematics at Stage II (BSc) are equivalent to one Stage II paper in Mathematics (BA)

Four credits in Applied mathematics at Stage III (BSc) are equivalent to one Stage III paper in Mathematics (BA)

## MATHEMATICS PURE

A detailed Schedule of the papers available in this subject can be seen by reference to the Schedule to the BSc Regulations. The following rules must be read in conjunction with the Schedule:

Six credits in Pure Mathematics at Stage I (BSc) are equivalent to one Stage I paper in Mathematics (BA)

Four credits in Pure Mathematics at Stage II (BSc) are equivalent to one Stage II paper in Mathematics (BA)

Four credits in Pure Mathematics at Stage III (BSc) are equivalent to one Stage III paper in Mathematics (BA)

## MUSIC

**Note:** The number enrolling in certain papers is restricted. Candidates should consult *Calendar* Degree course Prescriptions for Department of Music.

### Music I

|        |                                     |  |        |   |
|--------|-------------------------------------|--|--------|---|
| 28.100 | Harmony and Counterpoint            | 28.101, 28.103                                       | 28.122 | A candidate must pass papers 28.100, 28.101 and 28.103 with an overall grade of at least C+ before proceeding to Music II |
| 28.101 | Musicianship and Materials of Music | 28.100, 28.103                                       |        |   |
| 28.103 | Music in Society                    | 28.100, 28.101                                       |        |   |
| 28.104 | Music and the Twentieth Century     |  | 28.101 |   |
| 28.105 | Basic Musical Techniques            | 28.104 or 28.114                                     |        |   |
| 28.113 | Acoustics                           | 28.101 or 28.105 or permission of Head of Department | 03.103 |   |
| 28.114 | Introduction to Ethnomusicology     |  |        |   |

### Music II

|        |   |  |                           |        |
|--------|---|--|---------------------------|--------|
| 28.201 | Musicianship, Materials and Analysis          | 28.100, 28.101 and 28.103 with an overall grade of at least C+ | 28.202; one of 28.203-208 | 28.209 |
| 28.202 | Harmony and Counterpoint                      |  |                           |        |
| 28.203 | The Middle Ages and Early Renaissance**       |  | 28.201                    | 28.205 |
| *      | 28.204 The Late Renaissance and Baroque Era†† |  |                           | 28.206 |
|        | 28.207 The Classic-Romantic Era**             |  |                           |        |
| *      | 28.208 The Twentieth Century ††               |  |                           |        |
| 28.214 | Ethnomusicology                               | 28.114; as for 28.201  | 28.201                    | 03.209 |
| 28.223 | Musicology                                    | As for 28.201  |                           |        |

| Title Of Paper |   | Prerequisites                        | Corequisites           | Restrictions | Qualifications |
|----------------|---|--------------------------------------|------------------------|--------------|----------------|
| Music III      |   |                                      |                        |              |                |
| 28.301         | Analysis                                |                                      | one of 28.303 - 28.308 | 28.309       |                |
| † 28.302       | Harmony and Counterpoint                | 28.201, 28.202;<br>one of 28.203-208 |                        |              |                |
| 28.303         | The Middle Ages and Early Renaissance** |                                      |                        | 28.203       |                |
| * 28.304       | The Late Renaissance and Baroque Era††  |                                      |                        | 28.205       |                |
| 28.307         | The Classic-Romantic Era**              | 28.201, 28.202;<br>one of 28.203-208 |                        | 28.207       |                |
| * 28.308       | The Twentieth Century ††                |                                      |                        | 28.208       |                |
| 28.314         | Ethnomusicology                         | 28.214; as for 28.301                | 28.301                 | 03.318       |                |
| † 28.322       | Special Topic                           |                                      |                        |              |                |
| 28.323         | Musicology                              | 28.223; as for 28.301                |                        |              |                |
| † 28.324       | Special Topic                           |                                      |                        |              |                |

**Note: Transitional**

A candidate whose course was begun under the Regulations set forth in the 1986 *Calendar* and has passed 28.101, 28.102 and 28.103 with an overall grade of C+ or better shall complete the course under those Regulations but, where required by Senate, with such substitute papers as it may determine.

\*\* Taught in odd-numbered years

†† Taught in even-numbered years

\* This paper will not be taught in the current *Calendar* year.

**PACIFIC STUDIES**

- 79.100 The Political Economy of the Pacific
- \* 79.101 Topics in Pacific Arts

**PHILOSOPHY****Philosophy I**

- 29.100 Introduction to Metaphysics and Theory of Knowledge
- 29.101 Introduction to Logic
- 29.102 Ethics
- \* 29.103 Social Philosophy
- \* 29.104 Introduction to Ethics and Social Philosophy
- 29.104
- 29.104
- 29.102, 29.103

**Philosophy II**

- \* 29.200 Philosophy of Mind
- 29.201 Logic II
- \* 29.202 Philosophy of Language
- 29.203 Philosophy of Science
- Any two Philosophy I papers
- 29.101 and one other Philosophy I paper
- As for 29.200
- Either any two Philosophy I papers or two Political Studies I papers including either 30.102 or 30.109
- As for 29.200
- As for 29.203
- As for 29.200
- As for 29.200
- As for 29.200
- As for 29.200
- Either any two Philosophy I papers or one Philosophy I paper and either 30.102 or 30.109
- 83.306

By special permission of Head of Department prerequisites may be waived

| Title Of Paper                                       | Prerequisites   | Corequisites | Restrictions | Qualifications  |
|--|---|--------------|--------------|---|
| * 29.211 History of Philosophy IIB                   | As for 29.200   |              |              | By special permission of Head of Department prerequisites may be waived |
| 29.212 Philosophy of the Arts                        | As for 29.200   |              |              |   |
| 29.213 Philosophical Issues in Feminism              | As for 29.203   |              |              |   |
| * 29.214 Special Topic                               | As for 29.200   |              |              |   |
| * 29.215 Special Topic                               | As for 29.200   |              |              |   |
| Philosophy III                                       |   |              |              |   |
| * 29.300 Theory of Knowledge III                     | Any two Philosophy II papers  |              |              |   |
| * 29.301 Metaphysics III                             | As for 29.300   |              |              |   |
| 29.302 History of Philosophy (Ancient and Mediaeval) | 29.204 and one other Philosophy II paper  |              |              |   |
| 29.303 Continental Philosophy III                    | As for 29.300   |              |              |   |
| 29.304 Ethics III                                    | Either two Philosophy II papers including 29.205 or 29.210 or else 29.102 or 29.104 plus any two Philosophy II papers |              |              |   |
| 29.305 Logic III                                     | 29.201 and any one other Philosophy II paper  |              | 26.315       |   |
| 29.306 Language, Truth and Meaning                   | 29.101 and any two Philosophy II papers   |              |              |   |
| 29.307 Topics in Recent Philosophy                   | As for 29.300   |              |              |   |
| * 29.308 Special Topic                               | As for 29.300   |              |              |   |
| † 29.309 Special Topic                               | As for 29.300   |              |              |   |
| 29.310 Political Philosophy III                      | As for 29.300   |              | 30.305       |   |

## PHYSICS

### Physics I

|                              |                        |
|------------------------------|------------------------|
| 31.101 The Physical Universe | 31.100, 31.140, 31.141 |
| 31.102 The World of Physics  | 31.150, 31.151         |

## POLITICAL STUDIES

### Political Studies I

|   |        |
|---|--------|
| 30.100 American Government: Themes and Practices in a Liberal Democracy |        |
| 30.106 Foreign and Defence Policies World Survey                        |        |
| 30.107 An Introduction to New Zealand Politics and Government           | 30.202 |
| 30.109 European Foundation of New Zealand Political Values              | 30.102 |

### Political Studies II

|  |   |   |
|--|---|---|
| * 30.200 Major Figures in Political Thought  | Any two papers from Political Studies I and/or Asian Politics I | In exceptional circumstances and by special permission of Head of Department prerequisites may be waived or taken as corequisites |
| 30.201 British Politics and Society  |   |   |
| 30.204 A Topic in the Structure of International Relations: New Zealand Foreign Policy |   |   |
| * 30.208 A Topic in European Politics  |   |   |
| 30.209 Modern Political Ideologies   |   |   |



|  | Title Of Paper   | Prerequisites   | Corequisites | Restrictions | Qualifications  |
|--|--|---|--------------|--------------|---|
|  | 30.211 Public Administration: Central and Local                                    | Any two papers from Political Studies I and/or Asian Politics I   |              | 30.105       | In exceptional circumstances and by special permission of Head of Department prerequisites may be waived or taken as corequisites |
| *  | 30.212 Australian Politics   |   |              |              |   |
|  | 30.213 Special Topic   |   |              |              |   |
|  | 30.214 Democracy in Theory and Practice  |   |              |              |   |
|  | 30.215 Soviet Communism in Theory and Practice                                     |   |              | 30.101       |   |
|  | 30.217 South Pacific Foreign Affairs   |   |              |              |   |
| Note: See also Asian Politics 30.210, 30.216 Political Studies III |  |   |              |              |   |
|  | 30.301 US Foreign Policy Decision Making   | Any two papers from Political Studies II and/or Asian Politics II |              |              | In exceptional circumstances and by special permission of Head of Department prerequisites may be waived or taken as corequisites |
|  | 30.302 A Topic in Conflict Resolution: Regulation v. Revolution in Southern Africa |   |              |              |   |
| *  | 30.304 Political Learning and Political Behaviour                                  |   |              |              |   |
|  | 30.305 Studies in Contemporary Political Ideas                                     |   |              |              |   |
|  | 30.306 Data Analysis in Political Studies  |   |              | 30.303       |   |
| *  | 30.307 Integration and Nationalism in Europe                                       |   |              |              |   |
| †  | 30.309 Explaining Political Action Explaining Revolutions                          |   |              |              |   |
| *  | 30.310 Public Administration: Theory and Process                                   |   |              |              |   |
| *  | 30.311 Comparative Public Policy   |   |              |              |   |
|  | 30.312 Green Politics  |   |              |              |   |
|  | 30.314 Special Topic   |   |              |              |   |
| Note: See also Asian Politics 30.313                               |  |   |              |              |   |

## PSYCHOLOGY

### Psychology I

|  |  |        |  |
|--|--|--------|--|
| 32.108 Introduction to General Psychology      |  | 32.118 |  |
| 32.109 Introduction to Experimental Psychology |  | 32.119 |  |
| 32.118 Introduction to General Psychology      |  | 32.108 |  |
| 32.119 Introduction to Experimental Psychology |  | 32.109 |  |

### Psychology II

|  |                                       |                        |   |
|--|---------------------------------------|------------------------|---|
| 32.210 Learning                            | 32.108 or 32.118 and 32.109 or 32.119 | 32.206                 | In exceptional circumstances and by special permission of Head of Department prerequisites may be waived or taken as corequisites |
| 32.220 Human Experimental Psychology       |                                       | 32.207, 32.211, 32.209 |   |
| 32.225 Special Topic                       |                                       | 32.220                 |   |
| 32.230 Brain and Behaviour                 |                                       | 32.207, 32.212, 32.213 |   |
| 32.240 Social and Developmental Psychology | 32.108 or 32.119                      | 32.214, 32.215         | Enrolment requires permission of Head of Department   |

| Title Of Paper        |  | Prerequisites  | Corequisites          | Restrictions | Qualifications  |
|-----------------------|--|--|-----------------------|--------------|---|
| <b>Psychology III</b> |  |  |                       |              |   |
| 32.301                | Psychology of Individual Differences             | 3 papers from 32.210, 32.220, 32.225, 32.230, 32.240; or all of 32.209, 32.211, 32.212, 32.213, 32.214, 32.215 | Four of 32.301-32.316 | 72.316       | In exceptional circumstances and by special permission of Head of Department prerequisites may be waived or taken as corequisites |
| 32.303                | Cognitive Science                                |  |                       |              |   |
| 32.304                | Theory & Systems of Personality                  |  |                       |              |   |
| † 32.305              | Physiological Psychology                         |  |                       |              |   |
| 32.306                | The Design of Psychological Experiments          |  |                       |              |   |
| 32.307                | The Psychological Analysis of Vision and Hearing |  |                       |              |   |
| 32.308                | Research Topic                                   |  |                       |              |   |
| 32.309                | Learning   |  |                       |              |   |
| 32.311                | Social Psychology                                |  |                       |              |   |
| 32.312                | Organisational Psychology                        |  |                       |              |   |
| † 32.313              | Special Topic in Psychology                      |  |                       |              |   |
| 32.314                | Ergonomics                                       |  |                       |              | Enrolment requires approval of Head of Department   |
| 32.315                | Abnormal Psychology                              |  |                       |              |   |
| 32.316                | Life-span Developmental Psychology               |  |                       |              |   |

## RUSSIAN

|                    |   |                        |                                      |  |  |
|--------------------|---|------------------------|--------------------------------------|--|--|
| <b>Russian I</b>   |   |                        |                                      |  |  |
| 43.100             | Russian Language Acquisition 1  |                        | **43.101                             | 43.111 may not be taken in the same year | By special permission of the Head of Department this restriction may be waived                   |
| 43.101             | Russian Language Acquisition 2  |                        | **43.100                             | 43.111 may not be taken in the same year | By special permission of the Head of Department this restriction may be waived                   |
| * 43.111           | Introduction to Serbo-Croatian  |                        |                                      |  |  |
| 43.112             | Russian Civilisation  |                        |                                      |  |  |
| 43.113             | The Classics of Russian Literature  |                        |                                      |  |  |
| <b>Russian II</b>  |   |                        |                                      |  |  |
| 43.210             | Language Acquisition: Russian   | 43.100, 43.101         | **43.211, **43.212                   |  | By special permission of the Head of Department the prerequisites and corequisites may be waived |
| 43.211             | (i) Introduction to Modern Russian and (ii) The Russian Lyric in the Nineteenth Century | 43.100, 43.101         | **43.210, **43.212                   |  |  |
| 43.212             | The Russian Short Story in the Nineteenth Century                                       | 43.100, 43.101         | **43.210, **43.211                   |  |  |
| <b>Russian III</b> |   |                        |                                      |  |  |
| 43.310             | Language Acquisition: Russian   | 43.210, 43.211, 43.212 | two from **43.311 to **43.313        |  | By special permission of the Head of Department the prerequisites and corequisites may be waived |
| 43.311             | Introduction to Russian and Slavonic Linguistics  | 43.210, 43.211, 43.212 | **43.310 and either 43.312 or 43.313 |  |  |
| * 43.312           | The Russian Novel in the Nineteenth Century   | 43.210, 43.211, 43.212 | **43.310 and either 43.311 or 43.313 |  |  |
| 43.313             | Introduction to Russian Literature of the Twentieth Century                             | 43.210, 43.211, 43.212 | **43.310 and either 43.311 or 43.312 |  |  |

| Title Of Paper  | Prerequisites | Corequisites | Restrictions | Qualifications |
|---|---------------|--------------|--------------|----------------|
| <b>SAMOAN</b>   |               |              |              |                |
| Samoan I  |               |              |              |                |
| 478.100 Samoan for Beginners                            |               |              |              |                |
| * 478.101 Spoken and Written Samoan for fluent speakers |               |              |              |                |

## SCANDINAVIAN STUDIES

|   |  |   |                |  |
|---|--|---|----------------|--|
| Scandinavian Studies I  |  |   |                |  |
| 46.100 Language Acquisition 1                                 |  | 46.102  |                |  |
| 46.101 Aspects of Scandinavian Civilisation                   |  |   |                |  |
| 46.102 Language Acquisition 2                                 |  | 46.100  |                |  |
| Scandinavian Studies II                                       |  |   |                |  |
| 46.200 Language Acquisition                                   | 46.100, 46.101   | Either 46.201, 46.202 or 46.203, 46.204       |                | By special permission of the Head of Department the prerequisites and corequisites may be waived for any paper |
| 46.201 Introduction to Scandinavian Languages and Linguistics | 46.100, 46.101   | 46.200, 46.202                                |                |  |
| 46.202 Scandinavian Drama and Film                            | 46.100, 46.101   | 46.200, 46.201                                | 22.409         |  |
| * 46.203 Modern Swedish Novels and Short Stories              | 46.100, 46.101   | 46.200, 46.204                                |                |  |
| * 46.204 Swedish Poetry                                       | 46.100, 46.101   | 46.200, 46.203                                |                |  |
| Scandinavian Studies III                                      |  |   |                |  |
| 46.300 Language Acquisition                                   | 46.200 and either 46.201 and 46.202 or 46.203 & 46.204 | Either 46.301 and 46.302 or 46.303 and 46.304 |                |  |
| 46.301 Scandinavian Languages and Linguistics                 | 46.200, 46.203, 46.204                                 | 46.300, 46.302                                | 46.201         |  |
| 46.302 Scandinavian Drama and Film                            | 46.200, 46.203, 46.204                                 | 46.300, 46.301                                | 46.202, 22.409 |  |
| * 46.303 Modern Scandinavian Novels and Short Stories         | 46.200, 46.201, 46.202                                 | 46.300, 46.304                                | 46.203         |  |
| * 46.304 Scandinavian Poetry                                  | 46.200, 46.201, 46.202                                 | 46.300, 46.303                                | 46.204         |  |

## SOCIOLOGY

|   |   |  |        |  |
|---|---|--|--------|--|
| Sociology I   |   |  |        |  |
| 82.100 Issues and Themes in Sociology   |   |  |        |  |
| 82.101 New Zealand Society: Structure and Change  |   |  |        |  |
| 82.102 A History of Sociological Ideas  |   |  | 24.141 |  |
| * 82.103 Debates in Social Policy   |   |  |        |  |
| 82.104 An Introduction to Sociological Analysis: Gender, Ethnicity and Class in New Zealand |   |  | 82.101 | In 1991 this paper will be taught only on the premises of Manukau Polytechnic                                |
| Sociology II  |   |  |        |  |
| 82.200 Social Theory and Modern Society   | Two from 82.100, 82.101, 82.102, 82.103, 82.104 |  |        | By special permission of the Head of Department the prerequisites or corequisites may be waived in any paper |
| 82.201 Social Research Methods: an Informal Introduction                                    | One of 82.100, 82.101, 82.102, 82.103, 82.104   |  |        |  |
| 82.202 A Topic in Comparative Sociology: New Zealand Community Studies                      |   |  |        |  |
| 82.204 Sociology and Social Problems  |   |  |        |  |

|                      | Title Of Paper  | Prerequisites  | Corequisites | Restrictions | Qualifications   |
|----------------------|---|--|--------------|--------------|--|
|                      | 82.205 Social Stratification  | One of 82.100, 82.101, 82.102, 82.103, 82.104        |              |              | Not available to students who have taken 82.302  |
| *                    | 82.207 Sociology of the Family  |  |              |              |  |
|                      | 82.208 Special Topic: Sociology of Occupations/Work                                       |  |              |              |  |
|                      | 82.209 Social Change and Modernisation: an Introduction to the Sociology of Development   | One of 82.100, 82.101, 82.102, 82.103, 82.104 79.100 |              |              | Not available to students who have taken 82.307  |
|                      | 82.210 Special Topic: Varieties of Religious Experience                                   | One of 82.100, 82.101, 82.102, 82.103, 82.104        |              |              | Not available to students who have taken 82.305  |
|                      | 82.211 Sociology and Popular Culture  |  |              |              |  |
|                      | 82.212 Class, Race and Gender Inequality in Australia and New Zealand                     |  |              |              |  |
| <b>Sociology III</b> |   |  |              |              |  |
| *                    | 82.300 Sociology of Industrial Relations  | 82.200 and one other Stage II Sociology paper        |              |              | Not available to students who have taken 82.208 in 1989  |
|                      | 82.301 A Topic in Political Sociology: The State in Transition to Socialism               |  |              |              |  |
|                      | 82.302 Family and Gender in the Pacific   |  |              |              |  |
| *                    | 82.303 A Topic in the Sociology of Religion   |  |              |              | Not available to students who have taken 82.212  |
| *                    | 82.304 A Topic in Minority and Ethnic Relations: Ethnicity and Ethnic Groups              |  |              |              |  |
|                      | 82.305 Class and Inequality in Australia and New Zealand                                  |  |              |              |  |
|                      | 82.306 Class, Race and Gender   |  |              |              | Not available to students who took 82.206 in 1982  |
| *                    | 82.307 Advanced Study in Social Change and Modernisation: The Pacific in the World System |  |              |              |  |
|                      | 82.308 Law in Society   |  |              |              |  |
|                      | 82.309 Special Topic: Social Policy, Planning and the State                               |  |              |              | Not available to students who took 82.203 before 1980  |
|                      | 82.310 Special Topic: Applied Social Research   |  |              |              |  |
|                      | 82.311 Special Topic: Science, Technology and Industry                                    |  |              |              |  |
|                      | 82.312 Sociological Analysis and Method   |  |              |              | Not available to students who took 82.309 in 1980  |
| *                    | 82.313 Sociology of a Selected Region   |  |              |              |  |
|                      | 82.314 Women/Deviance: The Politics of Naming   |  |              |              |  |
| *                    | 82.315 Sociology of the Arts  |  |              |              | Not available to students who took 82.309 in 1980<br>Enrolment requires approval of Head of Department |
|                      | 82.316 Research Projects: Design and Practice   |  |              |              |  |
| *                    | 82.317 Sociology of the Welfare State   |  |              |              |  |
|                      | 82.318 Sociology of the Media   |  |              |              |  |
|                      | 82.319 A Topic in Contemporary Social Theory: Post-modern Social Theory                   |  |              |              |  |

Note: Students including three Stage III Sociology papers in their Degree must attempt 82.312 as one of them.

| Title Of Paper   | Prerequisites  | Corequisites   | Restrictions                            | Qualifications   |
|--|--|--|---|--|
| <b>SPANISH</b>   |  |  |   |  |
| <b>Spanish I</b>   |  |  |   |  |
| * 45.101 20th Century Literary Texts                                 |  |  |   |  |
| 45.102 Language: Oral, Aural and Translation from Spanish to English |  |  | 45.100<br>45.104/<br>45.105             |  |
| 45.103 Contemporary Hispanic Civilisation                            |  |  |   |  |
| 45.104 Language Acquisition  |  | 45.105   | 45.100;<br>45.102                       |  |
| 45.105 Language Acquisition  |  | 45.104   | 45.100;<br>45.102                       |  |
| 45.107 Language Acquisition (Advanced)                               |  | 45.108   | 45.100,<br>45.102,<br>45.104/<br>45.105 | Enrolment in this paper by special permission of Head of Department  |
| 45.108 Language Acquisition (Advanced)                               |  | 45.107   | 45.100,<br>45.102,<br>45.104/<br>45.105 | Enrolment in this paper by special permission of Head of Department  |
| <b>Spanish II</b>  |  |  |   |  |
| 45.200 Language Acquisition  | 45.100/45.104/<br>45.105   | Two other Spanish II papers  | 45.208                                  |  |
| * 45.201 Golden Age Literary Texts                                   | 45.100 and 45.101<br>45.103; or<br>45.104/45.105<br>or 45.107/45.108 | 45.200 or 45.208<br>and one other<br>Spanish II paper                        |   | By special permission of the Head of the Department a candidate may present one or more papers at Stage II level provided that he has passed in one Stage I paper  |
| 45.202 19th and 20th Century Literary Texts                          | As for 45.201  |  |   |  |
| 45.203 Literary Analysis with Prescribed Texts                       |  | As for 45.201  |   |  |
| 45.204 20th Century Latin American Texts                             |  |  |   |  |
| 45.206 Spanish Study Abroad Programme                                |  | 45.200   | 45.306                                  |  |
| * 45.207 Modern Hispanic Literature                                  |  | 45.200 or 45.208<br>and one other<br>Spanish II paper                        |   | (As for Stage II papers)   |
| 45.208 Language Acquisition (Advanced)                               | 45.107/45.108  | Two other Spanish II papers  | 45.200                                  | By special permission of Head of Department a student having obtained an exceptionally high grade in 45.104/45.105 may enrol in 45.208 instead of 45.200<br>(As for Stage II papers)   |
| * 45.209 "Practising Critics" in the Hispanic World                  | As for 45.201  | As for 45.201  |   |  |
| * 45.210 Introduction to Spanish Literature and its Context          | As for 45.201  | As for 45.201  |   |  |
| <b>Spanish III</b>   |  |  |   |  |
| 45.300 Language Acquisition  | 45.200   | Two from 45.301-45.307 or 309  | 45.308                                  |  |
| * 45.301 Mediaeval Literary Texts                                    | 45.200 or 45.208<br>and two other<br>Spanish II papers               | 45.300 or 45.308<br>and one from<br>45.302-45.307 or 309                     |   |  |
| * 45.302 Golden Age Literary Texts                                   |  | 45.300 or 45.308<br>and one from 45.301<br>45.303-45.307 or 309              |   |  |
| * 45.303 19th Century Literary Texts                                 |  | 45.300 or 45.308<br>and one from 45.301,<br>45.302, 45.304-<br>45.307 or 309 |   |  |
| * 45.304 20th Century Literary Texts                                 | As for 45.301  | 45.300 or 45.308<br>and one from 45.301-<br>303, 45.305-307,<br>45.309       |   | By special permission of the Head of the Department a candidate may present: (a) 45.300 only provided that he has passed in 45.200, (b) one or more papers other than 45.300, provided that he has passed in 45.200 or one Stage I paper |

| Title Of Paper                                    | Prerequisites | Corequisites  | Restrictions | Qualifications  |
|---|---------------|---|--------------|---|
| 45.305 20th Century Latin American Literary Texts | As for 45.301 | 45.300 or 45.308 and one from 45.301-304, 306, 307 or 309 | 45.206       | (As per all Stage III papers)   |
| 45.306 Spanish Study Abroad Programme             |               | 45.300 or 45.308 and one from 45.301-305, 307 or 309      |              |   |
| 45.307 Modern Hispanic Literature                 |               | 45.300 or 45.308 and one from 45.301-45.306 or 309        |              |   |
| 45.308 Language Acquisition (Advanced)            | 45.208        | Two from 45.301-45.307 or 45.309                          | 45.300       | By special permission of Head of Department a student having obtained an exceptionally high grade in 45.200 may enrol in 45.308 instead of 45.300 |
| 45.309 Introduction to Professional Translation   | 45.208        | 45.308 and one from 45.301-45.307                         |              | By special permission of Head of Department 45.300 may be a corequisite, or 45.200 a prerequisite   |

### SCHEDULE - GROUP B

| Subject                        | Prerequisites   | Corequisites | Restrictions   |
|--------------------------------|---|--------------|----------------|
| Accounting                     | Accounting papers as prescribed for the Degree of BCom  |              |                |
| 01.102                         |   | 01.103       | 01.100         |
| 01.103                         |   | 01.102       | 01.101         |
| Planning                       |   |              | 64.200, 84.200 |
| 36.262 (Environmental Studies) |   |              |                |
| Biochemistry                   | { Six credits in each subject at Stage I (BSc) are equivalent to one Stage I paper in that subject (BA)<br>Four credits in each subject at Stage II (BSc) are equivalent to one Stage II paper in that subject (BA)<br>Four credits in each subject at Stage III (BSc) are equivalent to one Stage III paper in that subject (BA) |              |                |
| Botany                         |   |              |                |
| Computer Science               |   |              |                |
| Chemistry                      |   |              |                |
| Environmental Science          |   |              |                |
| Geology                        |   |              |                |
| Physics                        |   |              |                |
| Physiology                     |   |              |                |
| Zoology                        |   |              |                |

Note: \* Starred papers will not be taught during the current *Calendar* year.

† Daggered papers will not be taught during the current *Calendar* year unless sufficient staff is available.

\*\* Linked corequisite papers must be attempted in the same year and will not be credited separately.

## THE DEGREE OF MASTER OF ARTS MA

*The personal course of study of every candidate must be approved by the Senate. Approval will normally be granted for courses which are in accordance with the following Regulations; for general provisions affecting their courses of study students are referred to the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General), and the Examination Regulations.*

### General Provisions

1. Subject to the Admission Regulations, a candidate for the Degree of Master of Arts shall before enrolment for this Degree:
  - (a) have been admitted or qualified for admission to the Degree of Bachelor of Arts, except as provided in Regulation 2 below, and
  - (b) (i) have fulfilled the prerequisites for a subject as listed in the Schedule to these Regulations and have obtained a grade higher than average of C in the Stage III papers in that subject;  
(ii) provided that in special circumstances where the Head of Department so recommends the Senate may accept an average grade of less than C+ or waive such prerequisites as it thinks fit.
2. Subject to the Admission Regulations, a candidate may enrol for this Degree after having completed at least nineteen papers, including eleven papers at advanced level, for the Bachelor of Arts Degree, provided that:
  - (a) the course proposed for this Degree will extend over not fewer than two academic years;
  - (b) they have obtained grades averaging B- or above in the advanced papers for the Bachelor of Arts Degree of the subject which they propose to take for this Degree;
  - (c) they satisfy the conditions in Regulation 1 (b) above, or are exempted from them;
  - (d) the remaining paper or papers for the Bachelor of Arts Degree are not prerequisite to the course for this Degree;
  - (e) they enrol for these two papers in the first year of their course for this Degree;
  - (f) should they not pass the remaining paper or papers in the first year of their Master of Arts course, their Master's course shall be suspended until they have passed the remaining paper or papers.
3. A candidate for this Degree shall follow a course of study that may extend over one year or more according to the requirements for the respective subjects in the schedule but, except with the special permission of the Senate, shall not exceed three years in duration.
4. A candidate presenting subject 17, Languages and Literature, shall satisfy the requirements of Regulation 1 (b) (i) in respect of each of the languages in his or her course. A candidate presenting subject 21, Mathematics, shall satisfy the requirements of Regulation 1 (b) (i) in respect of Mathematics and Applied Mathematics.
5. A candidate shall be required to fulfil the requirements and pass the examination in one of the subjects prescribed in the Schedule provided that the Head of Department may require a student who fails to achieve a sufficient level in his paper or papers to substitute a further paper or papers for a thesis, dissertation or research essay where these are prescribed.
6. A candidate for this Degree may not:
  - (a) substitute a paper or papers for any paper in which the candidate has already been examined for this Degree;
  - (b) resit any paper for this Degree except as provided in Regulation 13.
7. Notwithstanding anything in Regulation 5, a candidate for this Degree in any subject listed in the appended Schedule other than the subject 17, Language and Literature, may with the permission of the Senate take:
  - (i) one Stage III or Master's paper or;
  - (ii) one Stage III and one Master's paper or;
  - (iii) two Master's papers, in a subject other than the one being taken for this Degree, or;
  - (iv) two Master's papers or one Master's and one Stage III paper
 in subjects that both differ from the one being taken for this Degree, if in each case such a paper is related to the candidate's research interests. Each such paper shall substitute for and be equivalent to one paper in the Master's course of the subject in which the Degree is being taken.
8. No candidate shall take for this Degree any paper the same as or substantially equivalent to any other paper he or she has passed or is taking and obtain credit for both for this Degree.
9. No candidate who has previously failed in a subject for this Degree shall enrol a second time in the same subject without the permission of the Senate. For the purpose of this Regulation, subject 17, Languages and Literature and any one of the individual subjects which under Clause 17 or the appended Schedule may be used to make up a combined Languages and Literature course, shall be regarded as the same subject.
10. The personal course of study of every candidate must be approved by the Head of Department.

### Thesis

11. Where a thesis is required the following conditions shall apply:
  - (a) The thesis shall embody the results obtained by the candidate in an investigation relating to some branch of the subject; or with the approval of the Senate shall consist of a review of the literature of some special problem, which may be combined with the reception of some standard investigation on an aspect of that problem.
  - (b) In the case of a thesis recording laboratory work, a certificate shall be supplied to the Registrar by the supervisor stating that laboratory work has been carried out within the University.

- (c) Except where otherwise provided in the Schedule, candidates must present their thesis in the year in which they first sit for their degree or, with the consent of the Head of Department concerned, in either of the subsequent two years, provided that the time may be extended, in exceptional cases, by Senate.
  - (d) Candidates shall submit their thesis to the Registrar by 1 November of the academic year in which it is presented or at a subsequent date within that academic year if so arranged with the Head of the Department. The Registrar shall deliver the thesis to the Head of Department concerned.
12. Where a dissertation or research essay is required the following conditions shall apply:
- (a) The candidate shall present the dissertation or research essay in the year prescribed under the appropriate Departmental heading in the Schedule.
  - (b) Except as provided in the Schedule, the candidate shall submit the dissertation or research essay to the Registrar by 1 November in the year in which it is due to be completed or at a subsequent date within the same academic year if so approved by the Head of Department concerned, provided that the period may extend, in exceptional cases, by Senate. The Registrar shall deliver the dissertation or research essay to the Head of Department.

**Note:** An abstract is to be submitted with each copy of a thesis, see Examination Regulations 15.

### **Honours**

13. (a). There shall be two classes of Honours: First Class Honours and Second Class Honours. Second Class Honours shall be awarded in two divisions, First Division and Second Division.
- (b). Honours shall be awarded only if a candidate obtains a sufficient standard in the papers taken and in the thesis at its first presentation, provided that, subject to sub-clause (c) of this Regulation, a candidate who qualifies for an aggregate or compassionate pass may retain eligibility for Honour by applying:
- (i) for an aggregate or compassionate pass in papers not in excess of the number permitted to a candidate for Honours under the Examination Regulations, or
  - (ii) to sit or resit in the year following all the papers affected, or
  - (iii) for a pass of passes under (i) and to sit or resit the remainder as in (ii) above.
- (c). A candidate permitted under Regulation 3 to take a course of study for this Degree for a longer period than three academic years shall not be eligible for Honours unless the Senate so decides.
14. A candidate shall not take for this Degree a subject already passed for the Degree of Master of Commerce, or for the Degree of Master of Science, or as a principal subject for the Degree of Bachelor of Science (Honours).
15. The Senate, upon the recommendation of the Head or Heads of Departments concerned, may, in such exceptional circumstances as it thinks fit, approve a personal course of study which does not conform to the foregoing Regulations or to the Schedule below.

## **SCHEDULE**

### **(1) Ancient History**

**Prerequisites:** Eight papers in the subject of Ancient History including three Stage III papers in Ancient History OR six papers in Ancient History if a student has passed three Stage III papers in Latin or Greek. From 1990 candidates must have two papers in a relevant ancient language, either 12.210, 12.310 or 12.211, 12.311 or 10.100, 10.101 or 09.102, 09.103.

**Requirements:** Six papers and a research essay which counts as one paper, OR four papers and a thesis which counts as three papers. Normally a candidate will present three papers and one paper of documents in the ancient language associated with one of those papers in the first year, and either a further paper with a paper of associated documents and an associated research essay (12.603), or a three paper thesis (12.601) in the following year. First year papers will be selected from 12.400 to 12.460. One or two papers not taken at Stage III may be substituted for first year papers, but will not have associated papers of documents in the ancient language.

A candidate in full time employment or with other demanding responsibilities may be permitted by the Head of Department to take two papers with one associated paper of documents in the ancient language in the first year, two papers with one associated paper of documents in the second year, and the research essay in the third, or one paper with its paper of associated documents in the second and three paper thesis in the third.

### **(2) Anthropology**

**Prerequisites:** Eight papers in Anthropology and Maori Studies, or Anthropology and Linguistics, including three Stage III papers in Anthropology;

**Requirements:** Seven papers, or four papers and a thesis (03.601) which counts as three papers. The papers shall be selected from 03.400 to 03.424, 03.300 to 03.341, 83.300 to 83.312, 04.302 to 04.314; with no more than three papers from the following group of papers: 03.300 to 03.341, 83.300 to 83.312, 04.302 to 04.314.

A candidate shall present four papers in the first year and if taking seven papers, present the remaining papers in the following year.

A candidate who is engaged in full-time employment, or with other demanding responsibilities, may be permitted by the Head of Department to present three papers in the first year, or in special circumstances, two papers in the first year, and if taking seven papers, shall present all papers within three years of first enrolment for the Degree.

### **(3) Art History**

**Prerequisites:** Eight papers in the subject of Art History including three Stage III papers.



**Requirements:** Seven papers or four papers and a thesis (19.601) which counts as three papers. The papers shall be selected from papers 19.400 to 19.413; except that among the first four papers presented for the Degree one paper may be taken from options presented for Art History III, and that a second paper prescribed for Art History III may be presented by students presenting three further papers instead of a thesis; but no paper that has been credited to the Degree of Bachelor of Arts shall be taken for this Degree, and papers 19.305 and 19.401 may not both be taken for this Degree. All candidates shall present four papers in the first year: except that a candidate in full-time employment or with other demanding responsibilities may be permitted by the Head of Department to present two papers in each of two years. Candidates presenting papers only shall present the remaining three papers in one year.

#### **(4) Asian Studies**

**Prerequisites:** Three Stage III papers in an Asian Language: and such Stage II or III papers in the other subjects as the respective Heads of Departments shall approve.

**Requirements:** Five papers and a thesis (97.601) which counts as two papers; or six papers and a research essay (97.603) which counts as one paper.

In either case candidates shall include three papers selected from those available at Masters level in Chinese, Indonesian or Japanese subject to the approval of the Head of Department. The remaining two or three papers shall, subject to the approval of the Heads of Departments, be selected from the Masters papers in one or two different subjects. At the discretion of the Heads of Departments one Stage III paper may be substituted for one of these Masters papers. In the thesis or research essay, sources in the Asian language begin studied will be used.

#### **(5) Chinese**

**Prerequisites:** Eight papers in the subject of Chinese including 48.300 or 48.303, 48.301 and 48.302.

**Requirements:** Four papers and a thesis (48.601) which counts as three papers; or six papers and a dissertation (48.604) which counts as one paper; or seven papers.

A candidate presenting:

- (a) four papers and a thesis or
- (b) six papers and a dissertation or
- (c) seven papers

shall present all papers or all papers and the dissertation or the thesis in the same year or, having presented four papers in the first year, present the remaining three papers or two papers and dissertation or thesis in the year next following. Other combinations may be presented only with the permission of the Head of Department. The papers to include 48.419 and papers selected from 48.400 to 48.421. The dissertation or the thesis must be presented by 1 November in the second year of the course provided that this period may be extended to 28 February of the following year with the permission of the Head of Department and provided further that the time may be extended by the Senate in special cases.

#### **(6) Economics**

**Prerequisites:** Eight papers in the subject of Economics including three Stage III papers.

**Requirements:** Six papers; or four papers and a thesis (13.601) which counts as two papers; or five papers and a research essay (13.603) which counts as one paper.

The papers shall be selected from 13.400 to 13.419.

#### **(7) Education**

**Prerequisites:** Eight papers in the subject Education including three Stage III papers.

**Requirements:** (i) Four papers and a thesis (14.601) which counts as three papers. The papers shall be selected from 14.400 to 14.425, 04.401, 04.402.

OR (ii) Six papers and a dissertation (14.604) which counts as one paper.

In exceptional circumstances the Head of Department may permit a candidate who has attempted a thesis or a dissertation or a folio of casework to complete the MA as

(iii) Seven papers.

A candidate may, with the consent of the Head of Department, be permitted to present three papers or two papers in the first year and remaining papers in the year next following.

Note: In considering applications to attempt two or three papers only in the first year, the Head of Department may take into account the extent of a student's employment or other responsibilities outside the University.

#### **(8) English**

**Prerequisites:** (i) Two approved papers in a language other than English (normally two Stage I papers of a European language or two approved language papers from Maori Studies) and

(ii) Eight papers in English including 3 papers at Stage III chosen in accordance with the corequisites.

**Requirements:** Seven papers; or five papers and a thesis (18.601) which counts as two papers; or six papers and a dissertation (18.604) which counts as one paper.

A candidate presenting:

- (a) Seven papers or
- (b) Six papers and a dissertation shall present all papers or all papers and the dissertation in the same year or, having presented four papers in the first year, present the remaining three papers or two papers and dissertation in the year next following. Other combinations may be presented only with permission of the Head of Department, provided that no candidate may present fewer than three papers in the first year. The papers shall be selected from 18.400 to 18.431 and from (but shall include not more than one of) the Stage III English papers for the Degree of Bachelor of Arts.

## **(9) French**

*Prerequisites:* Eight papers in the subject of French including three Stage III papers.

*Requirements:* Four papers including 34.400 and a thesis (34.601) which counts as three papers; or six papers including 34.400 and a research essay (34.603) which counts as one paper.

A candidate shall present, in the first year: four papers including 34.400; in the second year either (i) the thesis, or (ii) two papers and the research essay. In exceptional circumstances, the Head of Department may approve a course of study which occupies a period other than two years and/or which varies the above sequence of papers. Paper 34.400: students must obtain a minimum pass of 50% in this paper before the degree can be awarded.

Paper 34.417 is not available to students who have passed paper 34.214.

Papers 34.421 and 34.431 may be taken only with the permission of the Head of Department.

## **(10) Geography**

*Prerequisites:* Eight papers in the subject Geography including three Stage III papers.

*Requirements:* Four papers and a thesis (20.601) which counts as three papers. A candidate shall present four papers in the first year, and the thesis in the following year. A candidate in full-time employment or with other demanding responsibilities may, with the consent of the Head of Department, be permitted to present the papers in two consecutive years with at least two papers in the first year, the thesis then being submitted in the third year. Papers shall be selected from 20.400 to 20.445.

## **(11) German**

*Prerequisites:* Eight papers in the subject German including three Stage III papers.

*Requirements:* (i) Four papers and a thesis (22.601) which counts as three papers. Paper 22.400 and four papers selected from 22.401 to 22.440. OR (ii) Six papers and a dissertation (22.603) which counts as one paper. Paper 22.400 and five papers selected from 22.401 to 22.440. OR (iii) Seven papers. Paper 22.400 and six papers selected from 22.401 to 22.440.

Candidates shall present four papers in the first year and either the thesis, or the dissertation and two papers, or three papers in the year next following. In exceptional cases, candidates may present seven papers in one year. Those students taking their MA over two years may present all papers at the end of their second year, if they have within the first year been officially admitted to a university of a German-speaking country to pursue a course of bona-fide study for no longer than six months.

## **(12) Greek**

*Prerequisites:* Eight papers in the subject Greek including three Stage III papers.

*Requirements:* Six papers, comprising 10.400, one or both of 10.401, 10.404, and three or four others selected from 10.402-408. A candidate may be permitted by the Head of Department to present a paper in Ancient History and an associated Greek language paper as prescribed for Ancient History MA. The choice of all papers is subject to the approval of the Head of Department.

A candidate in full-time employment, or with other demanding responsibilities may be permitted by the Head of Department to spread the papers over two years, provided that at least three papers are taken in the first year. Normally three papers will be taken in each year.

## **(13) History**

*Prerequisites:* Eight papers in the subjects History or Asian History or both including three Stage III papers.

*Requirements:* Either (a) six papers, and a dissertation (24.604) counting as one paper; or (b) (with the permission of the Head of Department) four papers and a thesis (24.611) counting as three papers.

In respect both of (a) and (b), papers are to be selected from 24.400 to 24.429, and must include 24.410. With the permission of Head of Department, however, a student following the (a) option may include as one of the six papers required a special study (24.430), involving a research programme prepared in consultation with one or more staff members. In exceptional cases, a second special study (24.431) may be included.

In respect both of (a) and (b) students must attempt four papers (excluding 24.430 and 431 but including 24.410) in the first year. Those following the (a) option must complete their remaining work in their second year. However, a student in full-time employment or with other demanding responsibilities may be permitted by the Head of Department to pursue the (a) option by attempting fewer papers in the first year and spreading the remaining work over the one or at most two years following.

## **(14) Indonesian**

*Prerequisites:* Eight papers in the subject Indonesian including three papers at Stage III.

*Requirements:* Five papers together with a thesis (80.601) which counts as two papers on a selected topic; or alternatively seven papers to be selected in consultation with the Head of Department.

The thesis must be presented by 1 November in the second year of the course provided that this period may be extended to 28 February of the following year with permission of the Head of Department and provided further that the time may be extended by the Senate in special cases.

## **(15) Italian**

*Prerequisites:* Eight papers in the subject Italian including three Stage III papers.

*Requirements:* Four papers including 35.400 and a thesis (35.601) which counts as three papers; or six papers including 35.400 and a research essay (35.603) which counts as one paper.

A candidate shall present, in the first year: four papers including 35.400; in the second year either (i) the thesis, or (ii) two papers and the research essay. In exceptional circumstances, the Head of Department may approve

a course of study which occupies a period other than two years and/or which varies the above sequence of papers. Paper 35.400: students must obtain a minimum pass of 50% in this paper before the degree can be awarded.

### **(16) Japanese**

*Prerequisites:* Eight papers in the subject Japanese including 81.300, 81.301 and 81.302.

*Requirements:* Four papers including 81.401 and a thesis (81.601) which counts as three papers; or six papers and a research essay (81.603) which counts as one paper. The thesis or research essay must be presented by 1 November in the second year of the course. For the thesis, however, this date may be extended to 28 February of the following year with permission of the Head of Department, and may be further extended by the Senate in special cases.

### **(17) Languages and Literature**

*Prerequisites:* For the specific prerequisites for the individual courses a candidate is referred to the individual subjects making up a combined Languages and Literature course.

*Requirements:* Seven papers or their equivalents (see below) in any two of the subjects (i) to (xii); three papers to be taken from each language chosen and the seventh paper to be taken from either language chosen to be approved by the Head of the Department concerned.

#### **(i) English**

Three or four papers from 18.400 to 18.431.

#### **(ii) Greek**

Paper 10.400, and two or three from 10.401 to 10.409.

#### **(iii) Latin**

Paper 09.400 and two or three from 09.401 to 09.408.

#### **(iv) French**

Paper 34.400 and two or three from 34.401 to 34.431.

#### **(v) German**

Paper 22.400 and two or three from 22.401 to 22.440.

#### **(vi) Italian**

Paper 35.400 and two or three from 35.401 to 35.424.

A candidate presenting seven papers shall either present all papers in the first year or, having presented four papers in the first year, present three papers in the year next following.

Candidates taking the degree over two years may with the approval of the Head(s) of Department concerned substitute in their second year either a dissertation or research essay for one paper or a thesis for two or three papers.

### **(18) Latin**

*Prerequisites:* Eight papers in the subject Latin including three Stage III papers, together with Greek 10.100, 10.101 or approved alternatives.

*Requirements:* Six papers comprising 09.400, one or both of 09.401, 09.404, and three or four others selected from 09.402-408. A candidate may be permitted by the Head of Department to present a paper in Ancient History and an associated Latin language paper, as prescribed for Ancient History MA. The choice of all papers is subject to the approval of the Head of Department.

A candidate in full-time employment or with other demanding responsibilities may be permitted by the Head of Department to spread the papers over two years, provided that at least three papers are taken in the first year. Normally three papers will be taken in each year.

### **(19) Linguistics**

*Prerequisites:* Either eight papers in the subject Linguistics including three papers at Stage III level; or with the permission of the Senate on the recommendation of the Head of Department, five papers in the subject Linguistics and three papers at Stage III level in the subject Maori Studies or in a language subject other than English.

*Requirements:* Four papers and a thesis (83.601) which shall count as three papers. The papers shall be selected from papers 83.400 to 83.406, 83.300 to 83.312 except that not more than two papers may be selected from 83.300 to 83.312.

A candidate shall present four papers in the first year.

A candidate who is engaged in full-time employment, or with other demanding responsibilities, may be permitted by the Head of Department to present two papers in the first year and two papers in the following year.

### **(20) Maori Studies**

*Prerequisites:* Eight papers in the subject Maori Studies including three papers at Stage III level, two of which must be Maori Language papers 04.306 and 04.307.

*Requirements:* Four papers and a thesis (04.601) which shall count as three papers. The papers shall be selected from papers 04.400 to 04.406 and 04.302 to 04.314 with not more than two papers being selected from 04.302 to 04.314.

A candidate shall present four papers in the first year.

A candidate who is engaged in full-time employment, or with other demanding responsibilities, may be permitted by the Head of Department to present two papers in the first year and two papers in the following year.

### **(21) Mathematics**

*Prerequisites:* Mathematics 26.220 or 26.221 or 26.222, 26.240 or 26.241, at least one of 26.260, 26.280, 26.281,

plus twenty 300 or 400 level credits approved by the Head of the Department of Mathematics and Statistics. Normally at least 16 of those 20 credits shall be from papers in Mathematics but 12 credits in Mathematics may be approved in special cases.

**Requirements:** Papers totalling 20 credits and a thesis (26.601) which will count as 16 credits or papers totalling 20 credits and an advanced course of study (26.605) which will count as 16 credits.

The selection of papers is to be made with the approval of the Head of the Department of Mathematics and Statistics of papers from Mathematics 26.400 to 26.499. Up to four of these credits may be replaced by four Stage III credits taken from papers in Mathematics not already taken for any other degree or diploma.

## **(22) Music**

**Prerequisites:** Eight papers in the subject Music including 28.301 at least one of 28.303 to 28.308, at least one of 28.314 and 28.323; where necessary a candidate will be required to satisfy the Head of the Department of his or her proficiency as a performer, or the ability to read an approved language other than English, or both.

**Requirements:** Four papers and a thesis (28.601) which shall count as three papers. The papers shall be selected from 28.400, 28.401, 28.402, 28.406, 28.409, 28.414, 28.419 and 28.423. All candidates must enrol for 28.423 (Seminar in Musicology) and one of 28.402, 28.406, 28.409 and 28.414 in their first year of enrolment. Candidates may with the approval of the Head of Department include one paper not previously taken from those listed for Music III, but their course must include two examinable papers from those listed above.

## **(23) Philosophy**

**Prerequisites:** Eight Philosophy papers, including 29.101 and four Philosophy III papers (or 29.101 and three Philosophy III papers in the case of students who are taking or have taken three Stage III papers in another subject). Students will also be required to satisfy the Head of Department that they have adequately covered the areas of (i) Theoretical Philosophy (Metaphysics, Epistemology, etc); (ii) Practical Philosophy (Ethics, Political Philosophy, etc); (iii) Logic; and (iv) History of Philosophy in their BA Degree. Adequate coverage normally means passes in papers in at least three of the areas at Stage III.

**Requirements:** Seven papers; or four papers and a thesis (29.601) which shall count as three papers. One and only one paper may be selected from those at Philosophy III (29.300 to 29.310) which the student has not previously passed. All other papers must be selected from 29.400 to 29.420. A candidate shall present either all papers in the same year or, having presented four papers in the first year, either present the remaining three papers in the year following or, with the approval of the Head of Department, a thesis.

The Head of Department may, in special circumstances (e.g. if the student is part time), approve a different sequence of papers over a period of time which accords with Regulation 3, no less than two papers being taken in any one year.

## **(24) Political Studies**

**Prerequisites:** Eight papers in the subjects Political Studies and Asian Politics including three Stage III papers.

**Requirements:** Four papers and a thesis (30.601) which shall count as three papers; or six papers and a research essay (30.603) which shall count as one paper; or seven papers.

The papers shall be selected from 30.400 to 30.420, and 30.500 as prescribed for DipLGA.

Each candidate shall present four papers in the first year and the remainder in the year next following, except that, with the consent of the Head of Department, the candidate may present three papers in the first year and the remainder in the year next following or, in special circumstances, four papers in the first year, two in the second year and the remainder in the third. Other combinations of papers may be approved by the Head of Department in special cases provided that: they comply with Regulations 3 & 13 (c) at the MA Regulations and; no candidate may present fewer than two papers in either of the first two years.

A candidate presenting a research essay must submit it at the end of the second term in the year of presentation.

## **(25) Psychology**

**Prerequisites:** *Either:* (i) Nine papers in the subject Psychology including 32.306 and three other Stage III papers in Psychology or (ii) In special circumstances and with the approval of the Head of Department eight papers in the subject Psychology including 32.306 and two other Stage III papers.

**Requirements:** Four papers and a thesis (32.601) which shall count as three papers. A candidate shall present four papers in the first year, and the thesis in the following year. In exceptional circumstances a candidate with demanding responsibilities may, with the consent of the Head of Department, be permitted to present the papers in two consecutive years with at least two papers in the first year, the thesis then being submitted in the third year. The papers shall be selected from 32.401 to 32.425.

## **(26) Russian**

**Prerequisites:** Eight papers in the subject Russian including three Stage III papers (43.310 and two others).

**Requirements:** Seven papers, or four papers and a thesis (43.601) which shall count as three papers, or six papers and a research essay (43.603) which shall count as one paper. Papers 43.410 and at least one paper from 43.411 to 43.416 and at least one from 43.419 to 43.425. A candidate presenting seven papers may present four papers in the first year and the remaining three papers in the year next following, or, with the consent of the Head of Department, three papers in the first year and the remaining four in the year next following. A candidate presenting a thesis shall present either three or four papers in the first year and the remaining paper (if any) and the thesis in the year next following.

## **(27) Social Work**

**Prerequisites:** Eight papers, including three at Stage III level, in any one of Anthropology (Social), Maori Studies,

Economics, English, Education, Geography, History, Philosophy, Political Studies, Psychology, Sociology; together with a professional social work qualification and three years' approved post-qualification experience. **Requirements:** *Either* (a) Four papers and a thesis (690.601) which counts as three papers; *or* (b) four papers, a thesis (690.611) which counts as two papers, and a research project (690.420) which counts as one paper. The four papers are to include two relevant papers at the MA level in the subject with which the prerequisite requirement was fulfilled, one other paper, at Stage III or MA level, selected on the advice of the co-ordinating committee and with the approval of the relevant Head of Department and a compulsory paper in the theory and practice of social work (690.400). The thesis and the research project are to be on subjects within the Social Work area approved by the committee.

A candidate may present the four papers and the thesis or the thesis and the research project in one year or, having completed the four papers in the first year, present the thesis or the research project in the year next following. In addition one of the examiners of a thesis or a research project must be a social worker.

### **(28) Sociology**

**Prerequisites:** Eight papers in the subject Sociology including 83.312 and two other Stage III papers.

**Requirements:** *Either:* Four papers and thesis (82.601) equivalent to three papers;

*or:* Six papers and a research essay (82.603) equivalent to one paper.

Papers to be drawn from 82.400 to 82.419, except that one paper not already taken may be drawn from 82.300 to 82.319. A candidate shall present four papers in the first year, and the remaining papers in the second year: except that a candidate who is engaged in full-time employment or with other demanding responsibilities may be permitted by the Head of Department to present three papers in the first year, or in special circumstances two papers in the first year, the remaining papers to be completed within the following two years.

The date for the presentation of the research essay (82.603) shall be not later than 1 November in the year for which enrolment in this paper is accepted.

### **(29) Spanish**

**Prerequisites:** Eight papers in the subject Spanish including three Stage III papers.

**Requirements:** Four papers including 45.400 and a thesis (45.601) which counts as three papers; or six papers including 45.400 and a research essay (45.603) which counts as one paper.

A candidate shall present, in the first year: four papers including 45.400; in the second year either (i) the thesis, or (ii) two papers and the research essay. In exceptional circumstances, the Head of Department may approve a course of study which occupies a period other than two years and/or which varies the above sequence of papers. Paper 45.400: students must obtain a minimum pass of 50% in this paper before the degree can be awarded.

## **THE DEGREE OF MASTER OF EDUCATION MEd**

*The personal course of study of every candidate must be approved by the Senate. Approval will normally be granted for courses which are in accordance with the following Regulations; for general provisions affecting their courses of study students are referred to the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General), and the Examination Regulations.*

### **General Provisions**

1. Subject to the Admission Regulations, a candidate for the Degree of Master of Education shall before enrolment for this Degree:

- (a) have been admitted or qualified for admission to a degree or have been awarded or qualified for the award of a University diploma, approved by the Senate, and
- (b) hold or have qualified for the award of a professional qualification in teaching, counselling, nursing, social work, or other approved profession, and
- (c) have had not less than three years practical experience in that or a related profession.

**Note:** In any one year no more than 12 students will be admitted to the Educational Administration option and no more than 15 students to the Folio of Casework. Students will be chosen on academic and professional criteria. Details on these criteria can be obtained from the Department of Education.

2. The personal course of study of every candidate must be approved by the Head of Department of Education.
3. A candidate for this Degree shall follow a course of study that may extend over one year or more but, except with the special permission of the Senate, shall not exceed four years in duration.
4. A candidate shall be required to fulfil the requirements and pass the examinations for the papers and a thesis or dissertation or folio of casework prescribed.
5. A candidate for this Degree may not
  - (a) substitute a paper or papers for any paper in which the candidate has already been examined for this Degree;
  - (b) resit any paper for this Degree except as provided in Regulation 11.
6. A candidate for this Degree must include one Stage III paper or one Masters paper in a subject other than Education, unless the Head of Department waives this requirement. The choice of paper will require the Head of Department's approval. A further paper from that or another subject may, with the approval of the Head of Department, be included provided it is at Masters level.
7. No candidate shall take for this Degree any paper the same as or substantially equivalent to any other paper passed or being taken and obtain credit for both.

8. No candidate may be awarded the Degree of Master of Education if he or she has been awarded a Degree of Master of Arts in Education at this University, except with the permission of the Senate.
9. No candidate who has previously failed this Degree shall enrol a second time without the permission of the Senate.

#### **Thesis/Folio of Casework/Dissertation**

10. Where a thesis or folio of casework is required, the following conditions shall apply:
  - (a) The thesis or folio of casework or dissertation shall embody the results obtained by the candidate in an investigation relating to some aspect of Education.
  - (b) The candidate shall present the thesis or folio of casework or dissertation in the year prescribed in the Schedule.
  - (c) The candidate shall submit the thesis or folio of casework or dissertation to the Registrar by 1 November of the academic year in which it is presented or at a subsequent date within that academic year if so arranged with the Head of the Department of Education. The Registrar shall deliver the thesis or folio of casework or dissertation to the Head of Department of Education. An abstract is to be submitted with each copy of a thesis or folio of casework (Exam Regulation 15).
  - (d) If the Examiner with the concurrence of the Assessor so recommends, a thesis or folio of casework which is not considered satisfactory shall be returned to the candidate, who may be permitted to revise it and to resubmit it by a later date specified by the examiner and approved by the Senate.

#### **Honours**

11. (a) There shall be two classes of Honours: First Class Honours and Second Class Honours. Second Class Honours shall be awarded in two divisions, First Division and Second Division.
- (b) Honours shall be awarded only if a candidate obtains a sufficient standard in the papers taken and in the thesis or folio of casework at its first presentation, provided that, subject to sub-clause (c) of this Regulation, a candidate who qualifies for an aegrotat or compassionate pass may retain eligibility for Honours by applying:
  - (i) for an aegrotat or compassionate pass in papers not in excess of the number permitted to a candidate for Honours under the Examination Regulations, or
  - (ii) to sit or resit in the year following all the papers affected, or
  - (iii) for a pass or passes under (i) and to sit or resit the remainder as in (ii) above.
- (c) A candidate permitted under Regulation 3 to take a course of study for this Degree for a longer period than four academic years shall not be eligible for Honours unless the Senate so decides.
12. The Senate, upon the recommendation of the Head of Department of Education, may in such exceptional circumstances as it thinks fit, approve a personal course of study which does not conform to the foregoing Regulations or to the Schedule below.

## **SCHEDULE**

#### **Requirements:**

- (i) Four papers and a thesis (14.621) which counts as three papers, or
- (ii) Four papers and a folio of casework (14.626) in the area of guidance and counselling which counts as three papers.
- (iii) Six papers and a dissertation (14.624) which counts as one paper.
- (iv) In exceptional circumstances the Head of Department of Education may permit a candidate who has attempted a thesis or dissertation or a folio of casework to complete the MEd as seven papers.

The papers shall be selected from:

- (a) 14.400 to 14.425, 04.401, 04.402
- (b) 14.450 to 14.459
- (c) Papers in other subjects under Regulation 6.

**Note:** Not all papers in the 14.450 range may be offered in any one year. Prospective candidates should consult with the Department of Education on the availability of particular papers.

A candidate may, with the consent of the Head of Department of Education, be permitted to present three papers or two papers in the first year and remaining papers in the year next following. A candidate presenting a folio of casework will normally be required to submit it in the year after which papers have been completed. Refer Regulation 3 of these regulations for the deadline for submitting a thesis or dissertation.

**Note:** In considering applications to attempt two or three papers only in the first year, the Head of Department of Education may take into account the extent of a student's employment or other responsibilities outside the University.

## **THE DEGREE OF MASTER OF LITERATURE MLitt**

*The personal course of study of every candidate must be approved by the Senate. Approval will normally be granted for courses which are in accordance with the following Regulations; for general provisions affecting their courses of study students are referred to the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General), and the Examination Regulations.*

#### **General Provisions**

1. Subject to the Admission Regulations, a candidate for the Degree of Master of Literature shall before enrolment have been admitted or qualified for admission to a Master's Degree with First or Second Class

Honours, or, in exceptional cases, one of the another preliminary qualifications that would be required for enrolment for the Degree of Doctor of Philosophy.

2. A candidate for this Degree shall follow a course of full-time supervised study of not less than one year, nor more than two years, or the equivalent in part-time study.

#### Course Content

3. The course of study for this Degree shall comprise the preparation and presentation of a thesis, based on original research in one of the subjects available in the Faculty of Arts. The research topic shall be approved by the Head of Department and by the Senate.
4. The Senate shall, on the recommendation of the Head of Department, appoint a supervisor or supervisors or the thesis.

#### Other Provisions

5. The Senate may, in such exceptional circumstances as it thinks fit, approve a personal course of study which does not conform to the foregoing Regulations.
6. The Degree may, on the recommendation of the Senate, be awarded with Distinction.
7. Notwithstanding Regulation 12 (b) of the Regulations for the Degree of Doctor of Philosophy, a thesis rejected for that Degree shall not be submitted for this Degree.
8. These Regulations shall come into force on 1 January, 1988.

## DEGREE COURSE PRESCRIPTIONS

### DEPARTMENT OF ANTHROPOLOGY

The Department of Anthropology includes three subjects: Anthropology, Maori Studies and Linguistics.

Some papers in this Department are offered under more than one subject. Such a paper will be listed under the same short title but with a different code number for each subject. Thus *Introduction to Maori Society* is listed both under Anthropology with the code number 03.102, and Maori Studies, with the code number 04.101. Students will choose the subject under which they wish to take such double-listed papers.

No paper may be credited twice to the same degree.

Note: \*This paper will not be taught during the current *Calendar* year.  
†This paper will not be taught during the current *Calendar* year unless sufficient staff is available.

### ANTHROPOLOGY

#### Anthropology Stage I Level

##### 03.100 Introduction to Social Anthropology

Basic anthropological issues and approaches to the study of culture and society.

(1 hour lecture per week, 1 hour tutorial; taught in two streams.)

##### 03.101 Introduction to Archaeology and

##### Biological Anthropology

Biological variation and evolution of the human species; evolution of culture up to the emergence of the first cities and the prehistory of the Pacific region.

(1 hour lecture per week and 1 hour tutorial; taught in two streams.)

##### 03.102 Introduction to Maori Society

Traditional Maori society; the effects of European contact; the contemporary culture. This same paper is offered as Maori Studies 04.101.

(1 hour lecture, 1 hour tutorial.)

##### 03.103 Ethnomusicology: An Introduction to World Music

An introduction to the history, scope and principles of music structure and music behaviour, and a survey of the traditional musics of selected non-western societies.

*Corequisite:* 28.105 or permission of Head of Department of Music.

The same paper is offered as Music 28.114.

(2 hour lecture per week; no tutorial.)

#### Anthropology Stage II Level

Students should note that most Stage II papers are pre or corequisite to one or more Stage III and MA papers. Papers 03.200, 03.201, 03.202, 03.203, 03.206, 03.207, 03.210, 03.212, 03.213, 03.214, 03.215, 03.218 and 03.219 are available to candidates who have not completed the normal prerequisite, provided that they have passed four papers in any subject, or subjects, and take the normal prerequisites as a corequisite.

##### 03.200 Ethnography of Island Polynesia

A survey of a number of pre-European and contemporary rural Polynesian societies.

*Prerequisite:* 03.100 or 79.100 or 79.101.

(2 hour lecture/tutorial.)

##### 03.201 Melanesian Ethnography

A survey of Melanesian societies, with emphasis on traditional and changing social, economic, political and cultural features, especially on the village level.

*Prerequisite:* 03.100.

(2 hour lecture/discussion; taught in two streams.)

##### \*03.202 Social Organisation

A survey of various methods for the description and analysis of social organisation.

*Prerequisite:* 03.100.

(1 hour lecture, 1 hour fortnightly tutorial.)

##### \*03.203 Anthropology and the Concept of Culture

The bases of the notion of culture in European, British and New Zealand social history.

*Prerequisite:* 03.100.

(1 hour lecture, followed by 1 hour discussion; tutorials as necessary.)

##### 03.206 Origins of Civilisation

The study of the early civilisations of the Near East and a comparative survey of early Chinese, American and other civilisations.

*Prerequisite:* 03.101.

(1 hour lecture, 1 hour fortnightly tutorial.)

##### †03.207 Human Evolution

Examination of the fossil and contemporary genetic,

anatomical and behavioural evidence for the evolution of humankind and of human origins.

**Prerequisite:** 03.101.

(1 hour lecture weekly, 1 or 2 hour tutorial/labs fortnightly.)

### **03.208 The Coming of the Maori**

Archaeological perspectives on Polynesian origins, initial adaptations to New Zealand, local cultural development, classic Maori society, history to 1840 A.D.

**Corequisite:** 03.102 or 04.101 or permission of Head of Department.

The same paper is offered as Maori Studies 04.203.

(1 hour lecture, 1 hour fortnightly tutorial required. Field trips and short practical project.)

### **03.209 Ethnomusicology: Folk and Traditional Music of the Western Continents**

English Folksong; African music south of the Sahara; American Indian and South American music.

**Prerequisites:** 03.103 or 28.114.

**Corequisite:** 28.101. Music Department corequisites for 28.101 are waived for students of 03.209.

The same paper is offered as Music 28.214.

(1 hour lecture, 1 hour listening.)

### **\*03.210 Ethnic Groups and Inter-ethnic Relations**

Ethnicity in relation to notions of race, culture and social classes examined in the political and economic contexts of New Zealand, Peru and the Caribbean.

**Prerequisite:** 03.100.

(1 hour lecture, followed by 1 hour discussion; tutorials as necessary.)

### **03.211 Traditional Maori Society**

Some accounts of traditional Maori life.

**Prerequisites:** 03.102 or 04.101 or 24.120 or permission of Head of Department.

The same paper is offered as Maori Studies 04.202.

### **03.212 Sociolinguistics**

The study of language in its social context.

**Prerequisite:** 03.100.

The same paper is offered as Linguistics 83.202 and English 18.205.

**Restriction:** 18.201.

(2 hours per week.)

### **\*03.213 Development of Ethnography**

The history and theory of ethnographic writing.

**Prerequisite:** 03.100

(1 hour lecture followed by 1 hour discussion.)

### **03.214 Issues in Social Theory**

An introduction to theoretical issues in Social Anthropology.

**Prerequisite:** 03.100

(1 hour lecture, 1 hour fortnightly tutorial.)

### **03.215 Method and Theory in Archaeology**

An examination of current concepts in archaeological research and their place in the development of archaeological thought.

**Prerequisite:** 03.101.

(1 hour lecture, 1 hour tutorial.)

### **\*03.216 Maori Kinship and Community**

A study of selected patterns of social relations e.g. kinship and residence; kinship and ancestral land; kinship and tribal identity.

**Prerequisites:** 03.102 or 04.101.

**Note:** The same paper is offered as Maori Studies 04.207.

### **03.217 The Languages of the Pacific**

General introduction to the languages and linguistics

of the Pacific Islands and Australia, with commentary on associated cultural institutions, conceptual systems and oral literatures.

**Prerequisite:** Any Stage I paper.

(2 hours weekly.)

The same paper is offered as Linguistics 83.205.

### **03.218 Ethnographies of the Contemporary Maori**

**Prerequisite:** 03.100 or 03.102/04.101

(1 hour lecture followed by 1 hour discussion)

A study of the history of ethnographic and other accounts of contemporary Maori society, examining the derivation of various social theories and their application to the Maori under changing political economic circumstances in New Zealand since industrialisation.

### **03.219 Anthropological Perspectives on Gender**

An examination of diverse social, cultural and biological constructions of gender differences.

**Prerequisites:** 03.100 or 03.101 or 03.102/04.101.

(2 hour lecture/tutorial.)

## **Anthropology Stage III Level**

Students should note that paper 03.308 is a prerequisite to paper 03.401 at MA level.

### **\*03.300 History of Anthropology**

Anthropology and its history of ideas - the theorists, the theories and their social contexts.

**Prerequisite:** Any two Stage II Social Anthropology papers; or 03.100 and permission of Head of Department.

(2 hour lecture/seminar.)

### **\*03.301 Kinship and Marriage**

A survey of the anthropological literature on kinship and marriage with emphasis on different models of interpretation.

**Prerequisite:** 03.100.

**Corequisite:** 03.202 or 03.214.

(2 hour lecture/seminar.)

### **\*03.302 Contemporary Problems in Social Anthropology**

Selected contemporary issues in social anthropology.

**Prerequisite:** 03.202 or 03.214 or 03.203 or 03.219.

(2 hour lecture and discussion.)

### **03.304 Social History of Maori Land Legislation**

Historical study of Maori land legislation in its political economic context, oriented toward learning to research library, government and archive resources.

**Prerequisite:** One or more Stage II papers in Social Anthropology or Maori Studies or permission of Head of Department.

The same paper is offered as Maori Studies 04.308.

(2 hour lecture and discussion)

### **\*03.305 Topics in Contemporary Melanesia**

A survey of changing social, economic and political institutions in Melanesia since the late nineteenth century.

**Corequisite:** 03.201 and 03.202 or 03.214 or permission of Head of Department.

(2 hour lecture/seminar.)

### **03.306 Topics in Contemporary Maori Society**

A survey of current Maori institutions, social groupings and events.

**Prerequisites:** One or more Stage II papers in Maori Studies or Social Anthropology.

The same paper is offered as Maori Studies 04.302.

(2 hour lecture and discussion.)



### 03.308 Advanced Method and Theory in Archaeology

*Prerequisite:* 03.101.

*Corequisite:* 03.100 or 03.102/04.101 and 03.204 or 03.206 or 03.208/04.203 or 03.215 or permission of Head of Department.

(2 hour lecture/tutorial.)

### †03.309 Advanced Biological Anthropology

A choice of topics in advanced biological anthropology that allows a consideration of the relevance of information from the study of human biology to the understanding of our species.

*Prerequisite:* 03.101 or permission of Head of Department.

*Corequisite:* 03.207 or permission of the Head of Department given appropriate science papers.

(2 hour lecture/seminar/tutorial arranged.)

### \*03.310 Social Movements

The origins, structure, and ideology of a variety of movements of protest and change.

*Prerequisite:* 03.100 and permission of Head of Department.

(2 hour lecture/seminar.)

### \*03.311 Studies in Oral Literature

The study of oral narrative and other folklore materials. Various theoretical frameworks and analytical techniques are considered and applied to materials drawn from Pacific and other societies.

*Prerequisite:* Any two Stage II Social Anthropology papers; or 03.100 or 79.101 and permission of Head of Department.

(2 hour lecture/seminar.)

### \*03.313 Contemporary Polynesia

A survey of recent social, economic and political changes in Fiji and Island Polynesia.

*Corequisite:* 03.200.

*Prerequisite:* 03.100.

*Restriction:* 03.329.

(2 hour lecture/seminar.)

### \*03.314 East Asian Archaeology and Biological Anthropology

The study of recent archaeological discoveries and of theoretical frameworks with particular reference to China, Japan, Thailand and island South East Asia.

*Prerequisite:* 03.101.

*Corequisite:* Either 03.204 or 03.206 or 03.208/04.203 or 03.215.

(2 hour lecture/seminar.)

### 03.315 Oceanic Prehistory

Archaeology, prehistory, historical linguistics, colonisation, settlement pattern and ethnohistory of a region.

*Prerequisite:* 03.101.

*Corequisite:* 03.204 or 03.206 or 03.208 or 04.203 or 03.215 or permission of Head of Department.

(2 hour lecture/tutorial.)

### \*03.316 Australian Aboriginal Archaeology and Society

*Prerequisite:* 03.101.

*Corequisite:* 03.204 or 03.206, or 03.208/04.203, or 03.215 or permission of Head of Department.

(2 hour lecture/seminar weekly.)

### 03.318 Music of Oceania

*Prerequisite:* 03.209 or 28.214.

*Corequisite:* 28.201.

Maori music and music styles of Polynesia,

Melanesia, Micronesia and Aboriginal Australia.

(Music Department corequisites for 28.201 are waived for students of 03.318.)

(2 hour lecture.)

The same paper is offered as Music 28.314.

### 03.320 The Anthropology of Agriculture

Ecological and economic aspects of interactions between plants and human subsistence activities in traditional and developing societies, with emphasis on Pacific humid tropics.

*Prerequisite:* 03.101 and 03.202 or 03.213 or 03.214 or 03.219; or 03.100 and 03.101 and permission of Head of Department.

(2 hour lecture/seminar.)

### \*03.322 Urban Anthropology

*Prerequisite:* 03.202 or 03.214 or 03.219; or 03.100 and permission of Head of Department.

### \*03.323 Diachronic Anthropology

Anthropological approaches to the time dimension especially in non-industrial societies.

*Prerequisite:* Any two Stage II Social Anthropology papers; or 03.100 and permission of Head of Department.

(2 hour lecture/seminar.)

### 03.325 Experimental and Ethnographic Archaeology

Experimental approaches to the interpretation of archaeological data, involving basic training in techniques of field and laboratory analysis and practical experimental research projects.

*Prerequisite:* 03.101.

*Corequisite:* 03.204 or 03.206 or 03.208/04.203 or 03.215 or permission of Head of Department.

(3 hour lecture/laboratory.)

### 03.326 Statistical Methods in Anthropology

Introduction to analytical approaches to anthropological data. Basic statistical concepts and methods, computer skills and their uses within anthropology. Aspects of research design, quantitative analysis, statistical inference, data management, pattern recognition.

*Prerequisite:* 03.100 or 03.101.

(2 hour lecture/tutorial.)

### 03.327 Human Osteology for the Archaeologist

Designed for those interested in the human skeleton and its biological and cultural contexts. Focuses on bone as an organ and tissue as well as on interpretation of present and past adaptation and variation; nutrition, pathology, demography.

*Prerequisite:* 03.207 or permission of Head of Department given appropriate science papers.

(1 hour lecture/seminar; 2 hours practical work per week.)

### 03.329 Contemporary South Pacific Societies

Recent cultural, social, economic and political developments in Melanesia, Fiji and Island Polynesia.

*Prerequisite:* 03.200 or 03.201.

*Restriction:* 03.305 and 03.313.

(2 hour lecture/discussion.)

### †03.330 Special Topic in Archaeology:

#### New Zealand Archaeology

*Prerequisite:* 03.101.

*Corequisite:* 03.204 or 03.206 or 03.208/04.203 or 03.215.

(2 hour lecture/tutorial; some lab work required.)

**03.331 Archaeological Resource Management**

An investigation of the legislation, philosophy and practical implications of archaeological resource management within bicultural New Zealand.

*Prerequisite:* 03.101.

*Corequisite:* 03.204 or 03.206 or 03.208/04.203 or 03.215.

(2 hour lecture/seminar.)

**03.333 Economic Anthropology**

*Prerequisite:* 03.100 and permission of Head of Department.

**03.334 Special Topic in Social Anthropology**

*Prerequisite:* 03.100 and permission of Head of Department.

(2 hour lecture/discussion)

**\*03.335 Special Topic in Social Anthropology**

*Prerequisite:* 03.100 and permission of Head of Department.

**\*03.336 Special Topic in Social Anthropology**

*Prerequisite:* 03.202 or 03.214.

(2 hour lecture/seminar.)

**\*03.338 Special Topic in Biological Anthropology**

Human biocultural adaptation in the Pacific. Contemporary, historic and archaeological populations.

*Prerequisite:* 03.101 and 03.207 or permission of Head of Department.

By special permission of the Head of Department the prerequisites may be waived provided appropriate Science papers have been passed.

(2 hour lecture/seminar.)

**\*03.339 Special Topic in Culture History**

Austronesian settlement of the Pacific: the view from linguistics.

*Prerequisite:* Permission of Head of Department.

The same paper is offered as Linguistics 83.302.

**03.340 Field Methods in Archaeology**

An introduction to archaeological excavation fieldwork methods, laboratory analysis and the writing of reports.

*Prerequisite:* 03.204 or 03.206 or 03.208/04.203 or 03.215.

(Fieldwork: 15 days. Lab/seminar: Ten two-hour classes.)

**03.341 Regional Approaches to Maori Society**

Students will be familiarised with research methods and resources for research into topics of regional and tribal significance.

*Prerequisite:* One or more Stage II papers in Social Anthropology or Maori Studies or permission of Head of Department.

The same paper is offered as Maori Studies 04.310.

**03.342 Approaches to Archaeological Science**

The application of scientific techniques in archaeology.

*Prerequisite:* 03.101

*Corequisites:* 03.204 or 03.206 or 03.208/04.203 or 03.215 or permission of Head of Department.

**Anthropology for MA and Honours**

The course of study of every student must be approved by the Head of Department. A candidate may present either seven papers, or four papers and a thesis (03.601) counting as three papers.

Students wishing to regard their degree as a qualification in social anthropology are required to take not fewer than three 03.400 level papers in this

subdiscipline, and when their course consists entirely of papers, to take not fewer than four such papers. Students wishing to regard their degree as a qualification in archaeology or biological anthropology are required to take 03.401 or 03.412 and at least one other paper in Anthropology at 03.400 level, and, where their course consists entirely of papers, are required to take 03.409. Full-time students are, except with the special permission of Senate, required to present four papers in their first year of enrolment and either three papers or a thesis in their second year. Part-time students who are engaged in full-time employment or with other demanding responsibilities, may be permitted by the Head of Department to present three papers in the first year, and if taking seven papers shall present all papers within three years of first enrolment for the degree. Students presenting theses who are candidates for scholarships and prizes will be required to meet appropriate deadlines determined by their supervisors and Head of Department.

**Social Anthropology Papers****03.400 Theory in Social Anthropology**

A study of some major theoretical domains in anthropological thought.

*Prerequisite:* At least two papers from 03.300-03.306, 03.310-03.313, 03.320-03.323, 03.329, 03.333

(2 hour seminar.)

**\*03.402 Topic in the Social Anthropology of Polynesia**

Recent studies of Polynesian culture are examined and past studies re-examined from a comparative and structural/historical perspective.

*Prerequisite:* As for 03.400.

(2 hour seminar.)

**\*03.404 Ritual and Symbolism**

Anthropological interpretations of religion, ritual and systems of belief.

*Prerequisite:* As for 03.400.

(2 hour seminar.)

**\*03.405 Ethnohistory**

An examination of theories of history and oral tradition and the redefinition of Pacific history.

(2 hour lecture/seminar.)

**03.408 Ethical Problems in Social Research**

An examination of questions of responsibility, relevance, and the place of values in the conduct of social research.

(2 hour lecture/seminar.)

**\*03.411 Special Topic in Social Anthropology**

Topic to be announced.

**03.413 Anthropology and History**

An examination of the ways in which Anthropology deals with the past, and questions cross-cultural differences in the production of histories in New Zealand and the Pacific Islands.

**03.414 Field Methods in Social Anthropology**

An examination of the experience, methods and techniques of anthropological field work in relation to particular research problems.

(3 hour practical/seminar.)

**03.415 Research Topic in Social Anthropology**

*Corequisite:* At least two 03.400 level papers in social anthropology excluding those labelled "Special Topic". This paper is not available to students who are

intending to enrol for a thesis (03.601), except with special permission of Head of Department.

### **03.419 Topic in Social Anthropology**

For 1991: Contemporary Ethnography  
(2 hour lecture/seminar.)

### **\*03.420 Critical Literary Theory and Ethnographic Texts**

An historical critique of ethnographic form through the study of selected 20th Century ethnographies.

### **03.423 Maori Ethnicity**

Also offered as Maori Studies 04.402.

### **\*03.424 Topics in the History of Social Anthropology**

An examination of the historical background of contemporary anthropological theories and ethnographic practices.

(2 hour seminar.)

### **Archaeology and Biological Anthropology Papers**

#### **03.401 Archaeological Method**

Illustrative, laboratory and analytical techniques. Artefact drawing, field surveys, photography and conservation. Report writing.

Prerequisite: 03.308 or permission of Head of Department. Previous fieldwork is also required for enrolment in this paper.

(3 hour lecture and laboratory; 4 weeks fieldwork.)

#### **03.403 Prehistoric Ecology and Economics**

Ecological and economic approaches to the study of prehistoric society from both a conceptual and a practical point of view.

A current or previous enrolment in 03.308 is strongly advised.

(2 hour lecture/seminar.)

#### **03.409 Research Topic in Biological Anthropology and/or Archaeology**

Research problems in archaeology and/or biological anthropology such as computer applications and other special topics selected in consultation with staff. The paper requires either a series of research essays, or one major essay in the form of a short (40-50 pp.) research paper. Required of students who wish to regard their degree as a qualification in biological anthropology or archaeology and whose course consists entirely of papers. Also available to students doing a thesis degree, but not in the form of a single research essay

#### **†03.412 Theory in Biological Anthropology**

A study of evolutionary theory, its history and its application to humans, primates and hominids for the understanding of anatomical behavioural and/or social attributes.

Prerequisite: One Stage III paper in biological anthropology or permission of Head of Department given appropriate Science papers.

(Lecture, seminar or individual study, to be worked out with students each year depending on numbers enrolled.)

#### **03.416 Special Topic in Biological Anthropology**

For 1991: Special topics selected in consultation with appropriate staff according to field of research.

#### **03.418 Research Design and Methodology**

The course is designed to introduce students to procedures used in the definition of research problem, development and implementation of research design and the presentation of results.

Prerequisite: Any Stage III paper in Archaeology,

Biological Anthropology or Maori Studies, or permission of Head of Department.

(2 hour lecture/seminar.)

#### **†03.421 Topic in Biological Anthropology**

A directed reading and individual study course to prepare students for doing research in a selected subfield of biological anthropology.

Prerequisite: As for 03.412.

#### **03.422 Special Topic in Archaeology**

Special topics selected in consultation with appropriate staff according to the student's field of research.

#### **Ethnomusicology**

#### **03.410 Advanced Theory and Method in**

#### **Ethnomusicology**

Field method; transcription and analysis; study of selected scholars.

The same paper is offered as Music 28.414.

Corequisite: 03.318.

(1 hour lecture.)

#### **03.601 Thesis**

## **MAORI STUDIES**

Full details concerning Maori Studies papers are contained in *Courses in Maori Studies for 1991* available from Maori Studies secretary.

### **Maori Studies Stage I Level**

Students who are beginning their study of Maori language should take 04.100 and 04.104 concurrently.

#### **04.100 Introduction to the Structure of Maori Language**

#### **04.101 Introduction to Maori Society**

traditional Maori society; the effects of European contact; the contemporary culture.

The same paper is offered as Anthropology 03.102.

#### **04.104 Introduction to Spoken and Written Maori**

#### **†04.105 Spoken and Written Maori for Fluent Speakers**

For 1991: Maori legal terms and texts.

### **Maori Studies Stage II Level**

Students should note that 04.204 and 04.205 are designed to be taken together and should be enrolled in concurrently.

#### **04.202 Traditional Maori Society**

Some accounts of traditional Maori life.

Note: The same paper is offered as Anthropology 03.211.

#### **04.203 The Coming of the Maori**

Archaeological perspectives on Polynesian origins, initial adaptations to New Zealand, local cultural development, classic Maori society, history to 1840 A.D. The same paper is offered as Anthropology 03.208.

#### **04.204 Second Year Maori Language: Structure and Prescribed Texts**

#### **04.205 Second Year Maori Language: Oral and Written Skills**

#### **\*04.206 A Topic in Maori Material Culture**

#### **\*04.207 Maori Kinship and Community**

A study of selected patterns of social relations e.g. kinship and residence; kinship and ancestral land; kinship and tribal identity.

Note: The same paper is offered as Anthropology 03.216.

**Maori Studies Stage III Level**

The language papers 04.306 and 04.307 are designed to be taken together and students should enrol in them concurrently. Students who are taking Maori Studies papers in fulfilment of BA Degree Regulation 4 (a) must pass 04.306 and 04.307.

**04.302 Topics in Contemporary Maori Society**

A survey of current Maori institutions, social groupings and events.

Note: The same paper is offered as Anthropology 03.306.

**\*04.303 Maori Oratory**

*Whaikoorero* and other Non-Casual Speech Forms.

**\*04.304 Maori Poetry and Song**

A study of selected traditional song texts, their musical and literary form, and the traditional circumstances of their composition.

**†04.305 Languages of Polynesia**

A comparative historical survey.

The same paper is offered as Linguistics 83.303.

**04.306 Third Year Maori Language: Structure and Prescribed Texts****04.307 Third Year Maori Language: Oral and Written Skills****04.308 Social History of Maori Land Legislation**

Historical study of Maori land legislation and its social context, oriented towards critical analysis of contemporary New Zealand society.

The same paper is offered as Anthropology 03.304.

**\*04.309 Whanaungatanga - Whakapapa**

*Prerequisite:* One or more Stage II papers in Maori Studies.

**04.310 Regional Approaches to Maori Society**

The same paper is offered as Anthropology 03.341

**†04.311 Special Topic in Maori Studies****\*04.312 Computer Text Analysis and Research in Maori Studies****\*04.313 Language and Statistics**

Descriptive, inferential and multivariate statistical methods as applied to language.

(The same paper is offered as Linguistics 83.311.)

**†04.314 Te Kaupapa Waahine Maori**

A study and analysis of the customs and ritual of traditional and contemporary Maori women.

**Maori Studies for MA and Honours**

The course of study of every student must be approved by the Head of Department. A candidate must present four papers and a thesis (04.601) counting as three papers. Up to two papers listed under Stage III level Maori Studies, if not credited for a BA Degree, may be offered as papers for MA.

**04.400 A Topic in Maori Language**

For 1991: Recent Developments in the Study of Maori and Polynesian Grammar.

**04.401 A Topic in Maori Literature****04.402 Maori Ethnicity**

Also offered as Anthropology 03.423.

**\*04.403 Tikanga Maori****†04.404 Special Topic in Maori Culture and Society****†04.405 Special Topic in Maori Studies****†04.406 Maori Myths and Tribal Traditions****04.601 Thesis****LINGUISTICS**

Fuller details concerning Linguistics papers are contained in *Courses in Linguistics for 1991* available from the Department.

**Linguistics Stage I Level****83.102 Introduction to Linguistics**

The structure of human languages. Methods of analysis and formal description.

Restriction: English 18.105.

**83.103 Introduction to Historical and Comparative Linguistics**

The study of language change and historical relationships among languages.

**Linguistics Stage II Level****83.202 Sociolinguistics**

The study of language in its social context.

The same paper is taught as Anthropology 03.212 and English 18.205.

Restriction: English 18.201.

**83.203 Phonology**

Phonological and phonetic theory. The study of sound systems. Problems of analysis.

The same paper is offered as English 18.223.

**83.204 Grammatical Analysis**

Grammatical theory. Types of grammatical systems. Descriptive problems in morphology and syntax.

The same paper is offered as English 18.224.

**83.205 The Languages of the Pacific**

General introduction to the languages and linguistics of the Pacific Islands and Australia. With commentary on associated cultural institutions, conceptual systems and oral literatures.

(The same paper is offered as Anthropology 03.217.)

**Linguistics Stage III Level****83.300 Recent Trends in Grammar**

Modern theories of syntax and morphology. Syntactic and morphological topics.

The same paper is offered as English 18.330

**†83.301 Special Topic in Linguistics****\*83.302 Special Topic in Comparative Linguistics**

The same paper is offered as Anthropology 03.339.

**†83.303 Languages of Polynesia**

A comparative-historical survey.

The same paper is offered as Maori Studies 04.305.

**\*83.304 Theory of the Lexicon****\*83.305 Linguistic Analysis of Literature**

For prescription see under English 18.303.

**\*83.306 Philosophy of Language**

For prescription see under Philosophy 29.202.

**83.307 New Zealand English**

For prescription see under English 18.304.

**†83.309 Field Methods**

Practical work with a native speaker of an unfamiliar language. Phonological and grammatical description of the language.

**†83.310 Special Topic in Linguistics****\*83.311 Language and Statistics**

Descriptive, inferential and multivariate statistical methods as applied to language.

(The same paper is offered as Maori Studies 04.313.)

**83.312 Semantics**

For prescriptions see under English 18.305

## Linguistics for MA and Honours

The course of study of every student must be approved by the Head of Department. A candidate must present four papers and a thesis (83.601) counting as three papers.

A candidate who has passed three papers at Stage III level in the subject Maori Studies or in a language subject other than English and five papers in Linguistics may proceed to MA in Linguistics with the permission of Senate upon recommendation of the Head of Department.

Up to two papers listed under Stage III Linguistics, if not credited for a BA Degree, may be offered as papers for MA.

### 83.400 A Topic in Descriptive Linguistics

#### †83.401 A Topic in Descriptive Linguistics

#### †83.402 A Topic in Sociolinguistics

#### †83.403 A Topic in Comparative Linguistics

#### \*83.404 Special Topic in Linguistics

#### †83.405 Advanced Studies in Syntax

(This paper will also be offered as English 18.408.) Theories of syntax grammar and topics currently of interest to linguists; metatheory.

#### \*83.406 English Linguistics

Also offered as English 18.410.

### 83.601 Thesis

Note: \*This paper will not be taught during the current *Calendar* year  
†This paper will not be taught during the current *Calendar* year unless sufficient staff is available.

## DEPARTMENT OF ART HISTORY

For Art History prescriptions for BA, BFA, MFA see Faculty of Fine Arts, Degree Prescriptions.

### Art History for MA and Honours

four papers from 19.400 to 19.413, or three papers from 19.400 to 19.413 and one paper from the options prescribed for Stage III Art History.

and either:

(a) A Thesis, 19.601, (value 3 papers)

or

(b) Three papers from 19.400 to 19.413, or two papers from 19.400 to 19.413 and one paper from the options prescribed for Stage III Art History.

#### †19.400 Topics in 17th Century Drawing

#### †19.401 Topics in Australian and New Zealand Art (Advanced)

#### †19.402 Special Topic in Western Art Before 1600

To be prescribed by the Head of Department

#### \*19.403 Watteau and his Sources and Influences

#### †19.404 Film Studies

#### †19.405 Nicolas Poussin and 17th Century Classicism

Note: A candidate who has been credited with a pass in paper 19.303 may not take this paper.

#### 19.406 Art Historiography

#### \*19.407 A Topic in Medieval Art

#### \*19.408 A Topic in 19th Century Art

#### 19.409 Topics in the Theory of Modern Art

#### 19.410 Topics in 19th and 20th Century Sculpture

#### 19.411 Modern Literature and the Visual Arts

#### 19.412 Women in Art (Advanced)

#### 19.413 Topics in Maori Art

The thesis (19.601) shall not exceed 30,000 words, and two copies must be handed in to the Registrar, not later than 1 November.

The subjects for the thesis shall be chosen in consultation with the Head of Department.

Book lists will be distributed at the beginning of the year.

Note: \*This paper will not be taught during the current *Calendar* year.  
†This paper will not be taught during the current *Calendar* year unless sufficient staff is available.

## DEPARTMENT OF ASIAN LANGUAGES AND LITERATURES

The Department offers five subjects for the BA Degree. Chinese, Indonesian, Japanese and Korean may be taken to the Stage III Level. Asian Studies does not proceed to Stage III, but makes more freely available general papers that do not involve a language component.

Other Departments also offer teaching in this field. See, in particular, the entries for the subjects Asian Geography, Asian History and Asian Politics.

Detailed guides are available from the Department concerned. A general guide, *The study of Asia at the University of Auckland*, is also available.

## ASIAN STUDIES

The following papers are taught entirely in English, and are open to students whether or not they are taking language papers. Where they are also available for Chinese, Indonesian, Japanese or Korean, they may be regarded as papers in those subjects or as papers in the subject Asian Studies. Students may choose the way such papers are designated, provided they comply with the Regulations for the Degree.

### Asian Studies I

#### 97.100 Introduction to Chinese Thought

A survey in English translation of traditional Chinese philosophical and religious literature (Confucian, Taoist, Buddhist, etc.) and of the ideas which have helped shape Chinese culture.

Also offered as Chinese 48.102.

#### \*97.101 Aspects of Traditional Chinese Culture

This course explores many diverse but related aspects of Chinese culture within the framework of the great 18th century novel *The Story of the Stone* (to be studied in English translation).

Also offered as Chinese 48.104.

#### 97.102 Introduction to Modern China Through Literature

This paper is designed as an accompanying paper to 97.101, and deals with Chinese literature in the modern era, since the end of the Qing dynasty (1911). The paper covers the May 4th period, the development of literary and artistic trends in the 20's and 30's, the establishment of the Maoist orthodoxy at Yan'an, the literary debates of the post-49 period, the post-Mao "renaissance" and the recent massacre and purge. Developments in Taiwan and Hong Kong are also introduced.

Also offered as Chinese 48.105.

#### 97.103 Ethnic Chinese abroad, with special reference to the New Zealand Chinese

This paper will survey factors which motivated Chinese migrants to go abroad, and the problems of discrimination and integration they face in various host societies, New Zealand in particular. Special

issues like the preservation of culture and the identity crisis will be explored from a cultural perspective, using literary materials ranging from essays of pioneers like Lin Yutang to contemporary fiction by Pai Hsien-yung, Maxine Hong Kingston, Bette Bao Lord, etc. Samples of creative works like poetry and essays by Chinese New Zealanders will also be used. Also offered as Chinese 48.106

**\*†97.120 Indonesian Literatures and Civilizations**  
A survey of social, religious and intellectual forces which have contributed to the formation of Indonesian literature; including traditional and contemporary dance and drama.

Also offered as Indonesian 80.103.

**97.121 Introduction to Islam**

This course will trace the origins of Islam in the Middle East. The fundamental doctrines of the Muslim tradition will be examined.

Also offered as Indonesian 80.104.

**97.122 Literary Traditions and Religions of India**

An introduction to those elements in Indian civilizations which have helped to shape the cultures of Southeast Asia (and in particular Java and Bali). This course is to be a supplement to 80.103 (Indonesian Literatures and Civilizations) and 80.104 (Introduction to Islam). Together, the three papers will give a comprehensive picture of the components of Indonesian civilizations: animistic, Indian and Islamic.

Also offered as Indonesian 80.105.

**\*97.140 Japanese Literature in Translation**

A survey of Japanese literature in English translation from earliest times to the modern period. This paper will normally be offered every second year alternating with paper 97.141.

Also offered as Japanese 81.102.

**97.141 Introduction to Japanese Thought and Culture**

A survey of Japanese intellectual and cultural traditions from earliest times. This paper will normally be offered every second year alternating with paper 97.140.

Also offered as Japanese 81.103.

**97.160 Introduction to Korean Culture**

This course examines continuity and change in Korean values as reflected in literature, art, music, landscape, daily life, religion, festivals and other aspects of Korean society in general.

Also offered as Korean 449.102.

**Asian Studies II**

**\*97.200 Major Schools of Chinese Thought**

A study of the major schools of Chinese Thought. Texts in English translation representative of Confucianism, Mohism, Taoism, Legalism, Chinese Buddhism and Neo-Confucianism will be analysed and discussed.

This course will normally be offered in alternative years.

Also offered as Chinese 48.203.

**97.221 Islamic Civilizations**

A summary of the development of thought and literature in the Islamic world. This course will be a supplement to 80.104 (Introduction to Islam) which will focus on Islamic Law, theology and mysticism, in particular in the formative period (623-1400 AD).

97.221 will deal with the interaction between Islam and various indigenous systems in Subsaharan Africa, India, Central Asia and Indonesia, as well as the major trends in Arabic, Persian, Turkish and Urdu literature. Also offered as Indonesian 80.203

**97.222 Early Indian Thought from the Upanishads to the Age of Shankara and Ramanuja**

This paper will deal with subjects not covered by 97.122/80.105 "Literary Traditions and Religions of India", in particular the Upanishads, Buddhism and Jainism, Advaita philosophy and Tantra. On the other hand, 97.122/80.105 will deal with the Rigveda and Atharvaveda, the Brahmanas, the Puranas, the Mahabharata and Ramayana, and Kavya (Court Poetry). Together, both papers will present a comprehensive picture of Indian thought and literatures, including the vernacular literatures of India and the development of Shaiva Hinduism as reflected in Old Javanese and Balinese literature.

Also offered as Indonesian 80.205.

**Asian Studies for MA and Honours**

Five papers and a thesis (97.601) which counts as two papers; or six papers and a research essay (97.603) which counts as one paper.

In either case candidates shall include three papers selected from those available at Master's level in Chinese, Indonesian or Japanese subject to the approval of the Head of Department. The remaining two or three papers shall, subject to the approval of the heads of Departments, be selected from the Master's papers in one or two different subjects. At the discretion of the heads of Departments one Stage III paper may be substituted for one of these Master's papers. In the thesis or research essay, sources in the Asian language being studied will be used.

## CHINESE

### Chinese I

Papers 48.100 and 48.101 are corequisites, and entail six hours of teaching per week.

**48.100 and 48.101 Language Acquisition A and B**

A beginner's course in the written and oral use of modern Chinese, tested in some or all of the following ways: translation into and from Chinese, reading and comprehension, re-arrangement of words and phrases, sentence-making and conversation.

**48.102 Introduction to Chinese Thought**

Also offered as Asian Studies 97.100.

**\*48.104 Aspects of Traditional Chinese Culture**

Also offered as Asian Studies 97.101.

**48.105 Introduction to Modern China Through Literature**

Also offered as Asian Studies 97.102.

**48.106 Ethnic Chinese Abroad with special reference to New Zealand Chinese**

Also offered as Asian Studies 97.103.

### Chinese II

Papers 48.200, 48.201 and 48.202 are corequisites.

**48.200 Language Acquisition**

Advanced written and oral use of modern Chinese, tested in some or all of the following ways: translation into and from Chinese, dictation, reading, comprehension and conversation.

**48.201 Introduction to Modern Chinese Literature.**

Readings of selected passages from the works of representative authors, prose and poetry written in Baihua.

**48.202 Introduction to Classical Chinese Language and Literature****\*48.203 Major Schools of Chinese Thought**

Also offered as Asian Studies 97.200.

**Chinese III**

Candidates must take 48.300, 48.301 and 48.302 or 48.301, 48.302. Paper 48.303 may be taken as an additional paper, or if directed to do so by the Head of Department instead of 48.300. Three papers 48.300, 48.301 and 48.302 or 48.301, 48.302 and 48.303 are prerequisites for the MA Degree. Students intending to take MA papers 48.402 and 48.421 should take paper 48.303.

With approval of the Head of Department certain papers prescribed for Chinese for MA and Honours may be selected as additional Stage III papers.

**48.300 Language Acquisition**

Written and oral use of Modern Chinese tested in some or all of the following ways: translation, composition, comprehension, conversation, dictation, reading.

**48.301 Readings in Contemporary Chinese Literature****48.302 Readings in Classical Chinese Literature****48.303 Translation in Theory and Practice**

Students will normally be required to have passed 48.300 or achieved a comparable standard of language competence. Native speakers of Chinese may be required to take this paper instead of 48.300.

**Chinese for MA and Honours**

Four papers (which must include 48.419) and a thesis (48.601) of 25,000 words or more on a selected topic for which Chinese sources will be used; or six papers (which must include 48.419) and a dissertation (48.604) of 10,000 words or more on a selected topic for which Chinese sources will be used; or seven papers (which must include 48.419). Students intending to enrol for MA should consult the Head of Department towards the end of the previous year to discuss the availability of papers and obtain advice on vacation reading.

**48.400 Advanced Language Skills for Practical and Research Use****48.402 Chinese Prose Literature of the Tang and Song Dynasties****48.403 Introduction to Chinese Historiography and Translation of Historical Texts****48.405 Chinese Poetry of the Tang and Song Dynasties****48.406 Readings in the Confucian and Taoist Classics****48.411 The Novel in Imperial China****48.412 Modern Chinese Fiction****48.413 Traditional Chinese Drama, with Special Reference to the *Xixiang Ji*****48.414 Modern Chinese Drama, with Special Reference to the Plays of Cao Yu****48.415 A Study of Newspaper and other Nonliterary Forms of Modern Chinese****48.416 Special Topic****48.417 Special Topic****48.418 Advanced Readings in Contemporary Chinese Literature****48.419 Bibliography and Research Methodology**

Candidates who have taken paper 48.401 prior to 1988 may not take paper 48.419.

**48.420 Principles and Practice of Chinese-English Translation****48.421 Principles and Practice of English-Chinese Translation**

This paper is designed to complement the MA paper Chinese-English translation presently taught. The emphasis of the course will be upon literary translation and the method employed will be comparative, looking at different versions of the same text, and different strategies of translation, in order to arrive at an understanding of the relationship between two different systems of rhetoric.

Every candidate will be required to pass an examination in the oral use of the language. In determining the class of Honours, the candidate's performance in the written papers, the dissertation, the oral examination and in Coursework will be taken into consideration. The attention of students who intend to enrol for MA is drawn to Regulation 6 of the General Provisions for the Degree of Master of Arts.

Note: There is no guarantee that all the papers listed above will be available in any one year.

**INDONESIAN****Indonesian I**

Papers 80.100 and 80.101 are corequisites and entail six hours of teaching per week plus language labs. No previous knowledge of Indonesian is required.

**80.100 and 80.101 Modern Spoken Indonesian 1 and 2****\*80.103 Indonesian Literatures and Civilizations**

Also offered as Asian Studies 97.120.

**80.104 Introduction to Islam**

Also offered as Asian Studies 97.121.

**80.105 Literary Traditions and Religions of India**

An introduction to those elements in Indian civilizations which have helped to shape the cultures of Southeast Asia (and in particular Java and Bali). This course is to be a supplement to 80.103 (Indonesian Literatures and Civilizations) and 80.104 (Introduction to Islam). Together, the three papers will give a comprehensive picture of the components of Indonesian civilizations; animistic, Indian and Islamic.

Also offered as Asian Studies 97.122.

**Indonesian II**

Papers 80.200, 80.201 and 80.202 are corequisites.

**80.200 Language Acquisition**

Written and oral use of Indonesian/Malay tested in some or all of the following ways: translation, composition, comprehension, conversation, dictation, reading.

**80.201 Twentieth Century Indonesian/Malay Fiction****80.202 Twentieth Century Indonesian/Malay Poetry****80.203 Islamic Civilizations**

A summary of the development of thought and literature in the Islamic world. This course will be a

supplement to 80.104 (Introduction to Islam) which will focus on Islamic Law, theology and mysticism, in particular in the formative period (632-1400 AD). 80.203 will deal with the interaction between Islam and various indigenous systems in Subsaharan Africa, India, Central Asia and Indonesia as well as the major trends in Arabic, Persian, Turkish and Urdu literature. Also offered as Asian Studies 97.221.

**80.205 Early Indian Thought from the Upanishads to the Age of Shankara and Ramanuja**

Also offered as Asian Studies 97.222.

### **Indonesian III**

Papers 80.300, 80.301 and 80.302 are corequisites. With the approval of the Head of Department certain papers prescribed for Indonesian for MA and Honours may be selected as additional Stage III papers.

**80.300 Translation at Sight of Passages of Indonesian Non-Literary Prose and Translation at Sight into Indonesian**

**80.301 Introduction to Classical Malay Language and Literature**

**80.302 Modern Indonesian/Malay Literature**

**80.306 An Approved Special Topic**

**80.307 Introduction to Javanese Language and Literature**

### **Indonesian for MA and Honours**

Students intending to enrol for MA must consult the Head of Department towards the end of the previous year to discuss optional papers and to obtain advice on vacation reading.

**80.400 Translation at Sight from and into Indonesian and Free Composition**

**80.401 A Study of Modern Indonesian/Malay Literature**

**80.402 A Study of Selected Classical Malay Texts**

**80.404 An Introduction to Textual Criticism with Special Reference to Classical Malay**

**80.405 Muslim Mysticism in Classical Malay Literature**

**80.406 An Introduction to the Structural Analysis of Indonesian/Malay**

**80.407 A Study of Another Indonesian Language**

**80.409 An Approved Special Topic**

In determining the class of Honours, the candidate's performance in the written papers, the thesis the oral examination and in Coursework will be taken into consideration. the attention of students who intend to enrol for MA is drawn to Regulation 6 of the General Provisions for the Degree of Master of Arts.

Note: There is no guarantee that all the papers listed above will be available in any one year.

## **JAPANESE**

### **Japanese I**

Students enrolling without a previous knowledge of the subject may receive a total of eight hours of teaching per week.

Papers 81.100 and 81.101 are corequisites and entail six hours of teaching per week.

### **81.100 Language Acquisition A**

A basic course in grammar and reading comprehension together with some oral drills.

### **81.101 Language Acquisition B**

Written and oral use of modern Japanese tested in some or all of the following ways: translation, composition, writing of *kana* and *kanji* scripts, aural comprehension, conversation and dictation.

### **81.110 Oral Japanese for Beginners**

An optional paper open to students with one year or less previous study of Japanese.

### **\*81.102 Japanese Literature in Translation**

Also offered as Asian Studies 97.140.

### **81.103 Introduction to Japanese Thought and Culture**

Also offered as Asian Studies 97.141.

### **Japanese II**

Six hours of teaching in modern Japanese per week.

### **81.200 Intermediate Japanese A**

Reinforcement and expansion of knowledge of grammar and script through English-Japanese translation and linguistic analysis. Candidates will be examined on grammatical analysis and at sight translation into Japanese.

### **81.201 Intermediate Japanese B**

This paper will be a continuation of 81.100. Candidates will be examined on the prescribed textbooks.

### **81.202 Intermediate Japanese C**

Oral and aural practice in modern Japanese. Candidates will be examined by some or all of the following ways: conversation, aural comprehension, dictation, composition, reading and grammar.

### **Japanese III**

Either six or eight hours of teaching in Japanese per week.

Candidates must take either 81.300, 81.301 and 81.302 or 81.300, 81.301 and 81.303.

Papers 81.300, 81.301 and 81.302 are prerequisites for the MA Degree.

With the approval of the Head of Department certain papers prescribed for Japanese for MA and Honours may be selected as additional Stage III Level papers.

**81.300 Translation at Sight from and into Japanese**

**81.301 Translation of and Comments on Prescribed Modern Texts**

**81.302 Translation of and Comments on Prescribed Classical Texts Together with Questions on the History of Japanese Literature.**

### **81.303 Modern Japanese**

Written and oral use of Japanese utilising selected non-literary texts. The texts will be based upon the materials covered.

### **Japanese for MA and Honours**

Four papers including 81.401 with a thesis (81.601) of 20,000 to 30,000 words or more, on a selected topic for which Japanese sources will be used, or an annotated translation of a Japanese text. Or six papers with a research essay (81.603) not exceeding 7,000 to 10,000 words, on a selected topic for which Japanese sources will be used, or a translation of Japanese text.

Students intending to enrol for MA must consult the Head of Department towards the end of the previous year to discuss optional papers and to obtain advice on vacation reading.

**Prerequisites:** Eight papers in Japanese including 81.300, 81.301 and 81.302.



Students are strongly advised to take 81.102, 81.103 and 81.303 as part of their BA Degree.

#### **81.400 Translation at Sight into Japanese and Free Composition**

**81.401 Translation at Sight from Modern Japanese Texts Together with Questions on Research Materials and Methodology**

**81.402 Translation of and Comments on Prescribed Modern Prose Literature**

**81.403 Translation of and Comments on Prescribed Classical Prose**

**81.404 Translation of and Comments on Selections from Japanese Poetry**

**81.405 Translation of and Comments on Selections from Japanese Drama**

**81.406 An Approved Special Topic in Japanese Language, Literature, Thought or Culture**

**81.407 Translation of and Comments on Modern Non-Literary Texts Including Selections from Newspapers and Periodicals**

**81.408 Introduction to Japanese Linguistics**

**81.409 Advanced Language Acquisition**

**84.410 Special Topics in Japanese Linguistics**

**84.411 Major Works of Traditional Japanese Thoughts**

**84.412 Major Works of Modern Japanese Thinkers**

**84.413 History of Japanese Literary Criticism**

Every candidate will be required to pass an examination on the oral use of the language. In determining the class of Honours, the candidate's performance in the written papers, Coursework including skills, the dissertation and the oral examination will be taken into consideration. The attention of students who intend to enrol for MA is drawn to Regulation 6 of the General Provisions for the Degree of Master of Arts.

Note: There is no guarantee that all the papers listed above will be available in any one year.

## **KOREAN**

Korean III is available for the first time in 1991.  
**Korean I**

Papers 449.100 and 449.101 are corequisites. Paper 449.102 is a separate paper. However, those students who are taking 449.100 and 449.101 are strongly encouraged to enrol for this paper as well.

**449.100 and 449.101 Language Acquisition A and B**

A beginner's course in the written and oral use of Modern Korean, including fundamental grammar and vocabulary.

**449.102 Introduction to Korean Culture**

Also offered as 97.160.

**Korean II**

Papers 449.200, 449.201 and 449.202 are corequisites, and entail a total of seven hours of classes per week, including a conversation class.

**449.200 and 449.201 Intermediate Korean**

**A and B**

This course is the continuation of 449.100 and 449.101. It introduces further points of grammar and conversation skills, and basic Hanja (Chinese Characters).

## **449.202 Translation From and Into Modern Korean**

This paper attempts to develop translation skills from and into Korean. The materials will be drawn from newspaper articles and a variety of other sources covering the society, geography, culture, economy and daily life of Korea.

### **449.203 Korean Study Abroad**

This will consist of a short (c.10 weeks) intensive language-acquisition programme at the Yonsei University Korean Language Institute, preceded by a series of preparatory lectures in Term 3.

### **Korean III**

Paper 449.300, 449.301 and 449.302 are corequisites and entail a total of seven hours of classes per week, including a conversation class. Paper 449.303 is a separate paper which students are encouraged to take in addition to the language papers.

### **449.300 and 449.301 Advanced Korean A and B**

These papers are designed to reinforce the Korean language skills that students have learned during the previous two years. A variety of audio and written material covering various aspects of modern Korea will be used.

### **449.302 Translation From and Into Modern Korean**

This paper is an advanced level version of 449.202 and follows basically the same course structure.

### **†449.303 Traditional and Modern Korean Literature**

This paper explores Korean Literature from the Three Kingdom period through the Koryo and the Chosun dynasties to the present. Important literary works throughout Korean history will be introduced and commented on.

## **DEPARTMENT OF CLASSICS AND ANCIENT HISTORY**

The Department of Classics and Ancient History includes four subjects. Latin, Greek and Ancient History are taught to MA with Honours Level, Classical Studies at Stage I only.

All students wishing to advance beyond Stage I should plan their courses carefully in consultation with a member of staff.

All first year Latin students should consult the Head of Department about their course. First year Latin students may be enrolled in 09.102 or 09.102, 09.103 or 09.100, 09.101 or 09.200, 09.201, 09.202, depending on previous experience and achievements. Papers 09.102, 09.103, are normally for those with up to only three years previous experience of Latin: 09.100, 09.101 for those with more than three; 09.200, 09.201, 09.202 for those who have obtained a good mark in Scholarship Latin. Those wishing to advance to Stage III in three years must at least take both 09.102, 09.103 in their first year.

Students who intend to advance to MA with Honours in Latin or Greek are strongly advised to enrol for both languages in their first year. Greek I is a prerequisite to MA in Latin.

An MA with Honours in Latin and Greek (Combined Honours) requires that students pass Latin III and Greek III before enrolling in their MA year. Students

planning this course should therefore start Latin and Greek together in their first year.

Students who intend to advance to MA in Ancient History must study at least one ancient language. They must fulfil certain prerequisites for MA, including, normally, *two* papers in a language. Students who wish to take the Egyptian option must pass 12.210 and 12.310 and must plan to take 12.210 in their Stage II year to enable them to progress to 12.310 in their Stage III year before MA.

Students who wish to take the Mesopotamian option must likewise pass 12.211 and 12.311 before MA. Students in the Greek option must pass 10.100, 10.101 and in the Roman option 09.102, 09.103, or have equivalent qualifications.

Students who wish to take the Greek or Roman options at MA are advised to enrol in Greek or Latin papers in their first year, and do more than the prerequisite minimum. As much of the scholarly work on Ancient History (especially Egyptian and Akkadian subjects) is in foreign languages, students planning to take these options should enrol for German I and French I papers, in their first year preferably.

Students who intend to take Latin or Greek are advised that Ancient History papers, at least in the field relevant to their language, will be most useful, especially for those advancing beyond Stage I, since outlines of History are now no longer taught within the language courses.

Students considering enrolling for any subject in the Department are strongly advised to come and see a member of staff during the pre-enrolment period. External students should consult the Department as early in the year as possible.

Note: \*This paper will not be taught during the current *Calendar* year.

†This paper will not be taught during the current *Calendar* year unless sufficient staff is available.

## LATIN

### Latin I

(Four hours per week for papers 09.100 and 09.101. Four hours per week plus tutorial for papers 09.102 and 09.103.)

#### 09.100 Prescribed Texts

Texts or groups or works, will be set; candidates will be given passages to translate, and questions will be asked on points of grammar and syntax and on prosody where relevant, and on the content of the books and their literary and historical background and on relevant Roman institutions.

#### 09.101 Translation and Language

(i) (50%) Translation at sight from Latin. A passage, or passages of Latin prose or verse or both, will be set for Translation from Latin into English.

(ii) (50%) A course on the structure and use of the language. Students will attend a course appropriate to their interest and experience.

Each course will comprise Coursework and a formal examination.

#### 09.102 Introduction to the Latin Language

(Two hours per week.)

This paper introduces students to the vocabulary and grammar of Latin and teaches them to translate

passages of Latin into English. Entry is restricted to those with three years or less Latin at school.

#### 09.103 Introduction to Latin Literature

(Two hours per week.)

This paper introduces students to authors from the classical and silver ages of Latin literature by means of extracts (in Latin) from their works. It cannot be taken without 09.102.

Note: Entry to 09.102 and 09.103 is normally restricted to students with not more than three years experience of Latin at school. Students who have passed 09.102 and 09.103 may, with the consent of the Head of Department, proceed to Latin II, but may prefer to take 09.100 and 09.101 before doing so.

### Latin II

(Five hours per week.)

*Prerequisite:* 09.102, 09.103 or 09.100, 09.101 unless direct entry is approved.

#### 09.200 Prescribed Texts

Texts will be prescribed for intensive study. Coursework assignments may be set. Final examination will require translation, and comment or short essay on any or all of the following: language and content, meaning and background of the texts.

#### 09.201 Latin Literature

Courses in Latin Literature. A topic or theme will be prescribed, with set reading. Coursework assignments may be set. Final examination will require translation, and comment or short essay on the set topic or theme.

#### 09.202 Language

Translation from and into Latin. A course on the structure and use of the language involving any or all of the following: revision of basic grammar; analysis of sentences; composition of sentences; elementary analysis of style; continuous prose composition.

### Latin III

(Five hours per week.)

*Prerequisite:* 09.200, 09.201, 09.202.

#### 09.300 Prescribed Texts

As for Latin II.

#### 09.301 Latin Literature

As for Latin II, but normally a separate course.

#### 09.302 Language and History of the Language

Translation from and into Latin. A course on the structure and use of the language involving any or all of the following: advanced analysis of sentences; advanced composition of sentences; prose composition; history of the language; advanced analysis of style; philology.

#### 09.303 Advanced Language

(One hour per week.)

*Prerequisite:* 09.300, 09.301, 09.302.

The course will be as for 09.401, but a lower standard will be expected.

#### 09.304 Literary Topic

(One hour per week.) (Restricted entry.)

*Corequisite:* 09.300, 09.301, 09.302.

The topic will normally be as for paper 09.402 or part of it, and students who offer this paper will not be able to offer 09.402 at MA and Honours level unless there has been a change of syllabus.

#### 09.305 Literary Topic

(One hour per week.) (Restricted entry.)

*Corequisite:* As for 09.304.

The topic will normally be as for paper 09.403 (or part thereof) and students who offer this paper will not be able to offer that paper at MA and Honours level unless

there has been a change of syllabus.

**09.306 Vulgar Latin or Early Latin**  
(One hour per week.) (Restricted entry.)

*Corequisite:* As for 09.304.

The syllabus will be as for paper 09.404; students who offer this paper will not be able to offer paper 09.404 at MA and Honours level unless there has been a change of syllabus.

**09.308 \*Pax Romana or Empire, Politics and Society in Republican Rome**  
(Two hours per week.)

Papers 12.203 and 12.213 restricted; syllabus as for 12.203 or 12.213.

*Note:* For papers marked *Restricted Entry* (09.304-09.306) permission of the head of Department is required to enrol; permission will normally be granted if there is an Honours candidate wishing to take the equivalent paper.

**Latin for MA and Honours**

Honours in Latin (Six papers).

Normally candidates must offer papers 09.400, one or both of 09.401 or 09.404 and *three or four* others, the selection to be approved by the Head of Department. All intending MA students should consult the Head of Department in the year preceding enrolment, since not all papers will be available every year.

*Prerequisite:* Eight papers in Latin, including 09.300, 301, 302.

**09.400 Unprepared Translation of Latin Prose and Verse**

**09.401 Language**

(One hour per week.)

Any or all of the following: translation into Latin, grammatical, syntactical, linguistic and stylistic analysis of passages of Latin prose and/or verse.

**09.402 Latin Poetry**

(09.304 restricted without syllabus change.)

Two subjects will normally be set, with reference to prescribed texts.

**09.403 Latin Prose Authors**

(09.305 restricted without syllabus change.)

Two subjects will normally be set with reference to prescribed texts.

**09.404 Vulgar Latin or Early Latin**

(09.306 restricted without syllabus change.)

*Either Vulgar Latin*

The phonology, morphology, syntax and vocabulary of Vulgar Latin, as seen in the set texts. Comparison with inscriptional texts will be made where relevant.

A knowledge of the history and literary background and significance of the set texts will also be required.

*Or Early Latin*

The phonology, morphology, syntax and vocabulary of Early Latin as seen in the set texts. Comparison with inscriptional texts will be made where relevant. A knowledge of the sources and characteristics of Plautine comedy will also be required.

**09.405, 09.406 Roman History**

(Two hours per week.)

The topic will be that of the Ancient History Roman Topic for MA. The topic will be assessed by two final examinations, the first involving comment and essays (09.405), the second involving translation and comment on Latin texts (09.406).

**09.407, 09.408 Literary Topic**

(One hour per week.)

The topic will be prescribed. The topic will be

assessed by a final examination consisting of translation, comment and essays (09.407) and a one-paper extended essay or set of essays associated with the topic (09.408).

**Combined Honours (Languages and Literature)**  
See MA Degree Course Regulations.

## GREEK

### Greek I

Papers 10.100, 10.101 are linked. Four lectures and a tutorial per week throughout the year.

**10.100 Prescribed Texts with Grammatical Study**  
Texts will be prescribed for reading; translation of passages will be required in examination, and questions will be set which will require a candidate to show an understanding of the grammatical and syntactical usages in the texts.

**10.101 Prescribed Texts with Grammatical Study**  
A different group of texts from 10.100 may be set.

### Greek II

(Five hours per week.)

*Prerequisites:* 10.100, 10.101 or direct entry.

### 10.200 Prescribed Texts

Texts will be prescribed for intensive study. Coursework assignments may be set. Final examination will require translation, and comment or short essay on any or all of the following: language and content, meaning and background of the texts.

### 10.201 Literature Course

Course in Greek Literature. A topic or theme will be prescribed, with set reading. Coursework assignments may be set. Final examination will require translation, and comment or short essay on the set topic or theme.

### 10.202 Language

Translation from and into Greek. A course on the structure and use of the language involving any or all of the following: revision of basic grammar; analysis of sentences; composition of sentences; elementary analysis of style; continuous prose composition.

### Greek III

(Five hours per week for papers 10.300, 10.301, 10.302; for the remaining papers see under each paper.)

*Prerequisite:* 10.200, 10.201, 10.202.

### 10.300 Prescribed Texts

As for Greek II

### 10.301 Greek Literature

As for Greek II, but normally a separate course.

### 10.302 Language and History of Language

Translation from and into Greek. A course on the structure and use of the language involving any or all of the following: advanced analysis of sentences; advanced composition of sentences; prose composition; history of the language; advanced analysis of style; philology.

### 10.303 Advanced Language

(One hour per week.)

*Prerequisite:* 10.300, 10.301, 10.302.

The course will be for as for 10.401, but a lower standard will be expected.

### 10.304 Greek Poetry

(One hour per week.) (Restricted.)

*Corequisite:* 10.300/301/302.

The topic will normally be for as for 10.402 or part of it, and students who offer this paper will not be able to

offer 10.402 at MA unless there has been a change of syllabus.

### **10.305 Greek Prose Writers**

(One hour per week.) (Restricted.)

*Corequisite:* As for 10.304.

The topic will normally be as for 10.403 or part of it, and students who take this paper will not be able to offer 10.403 at MA unless there has been a change of syllabus.

### **10.308 New Testament Greek or Classical Greek Dialects**

(One hour per week.) (Restricted.)

*Corequisite:* As for 10.304.

The syllabus will normally be as for 10.404 or part of it, and students will not be able to offer this paper at MA unless there has been a change of syllabus.

### **10.309 \*Greece and Persia or Imperial Athens or \*Tyranny**

(Two hours per week.)

*Corequisite:* 10.300/301/302.

Syllabus as prescribed for paper 12.202, 12.212 or 12.222, which are restricted.

*Note:* For papers marked *Restricted Entry* (10.304-10.308) permission of the Head of Department is required to enrol; permission will normally be granted if there is an Honours candidate wishing to take the equivalent paper among 10.402-10.408.

### **Greek for MA and Honours**

#### **Honours in Greek**

(Six papers.)

Normally, candidates must offer papers 10.400, one or both of 10.401, 10.404, and three or four others, the selection to be approved by the Head of Department. All intending MA students should consult the Head of Department in the year preceding enrolment, since not all papers will be available every year.

*Prerequisite:* Eight papers in Greek, including 10.300/301/302.

### **10.400 Unprepared Translation**

Passages of prose and verse will be set for translation into English.

### **10.401 Language**

(One hour per week.)

Any or all of the following: translation into Greek, grammatical, syntactical, linguistic and stylistic analysis of passages of Greek prose and/or verse.

### **10.402 Greek Poetry**

(10.304 restricted without syllabus change.)

Two subjects will normally be set, with reference to prescribed texts.

### **10.403 Greek Prose Authors**

(10.305 restricted without syllabus change.)

Two subjects will normally be set with reference to prescribed texts.

### **10.404 New Testament Greek or Classical Greek Dialects**

(Paper 10.308 restricted unless there has been a change of syllabus.)

An advanced study of one or more Greek dialects with special reference to prescribed texts.

### **10.405, 10.406 Greek History**

(Two hours per week.)

The topic will be that of the Ancient History Greek Topic for MA. The topic will be assessed by two final examinations, the first involving comment and essays (10.405), the second involving translation and comment on Greek texts (10.406).

### **10.407, 10.408 Literary Topic**

(One hour per week.)

The topic will be prescribed. The topic will be assessed by a final examination paper involving translation, comment and essays (10.407), and a one-paper extended essay or set of essays associated with the topic (10.408).

### **Combined Honours (Language and Literature)**

See MA Degree Course Regulations.

## **CLASSICAL STUDIES**

### **Classical Studies I**

#### **73.105 Introduction to Classical Literature in Translation.**

(Two hours per week plus fortnightly tutorial)

The study in translation of a selection of Greek and Roman literary works of enduring cultural significance representing a variety of genres, with reference to their historical, literary and cultural contexts.

## **ANCIENT HISTORY**

### **Ancient History I**

#### **12.100 Near Eastern History**

(Two hours per week, plus fortnightly tutorial.)

This paper is a prerequisite to 12.200, 12.210, 12.220, 12.201, 12.211, 12.221.

An outline history of the ancient civilisations of Egypt, Mesopotamia and Israel from neolithic times to Alexander the Great; the course will include artistic and cultural questions, and the civilisations of Anatolia, Syria and Iran will be considered in less detail.

#### **12.102 Greek History**

(Two hours per week, plus fortnightly tutorial.)

This paper is normally prerequisite to papers 12.202, 12.212, 12.222.

An introduction to Greek History and Civilisation from the Mycenaean Age to the death of Alexander the Great.

#### **12.103 Roman History**

(Two hours per week, plus fortnightly tutorial.)

This paper is normally prerequisite to papers 12.203, 12.213.

An introduction to the History and Civilisation of Rome, with particular reference to the Republic and Early Empire.

### **Ancient History II**

#### **\*12.200 Egypt in Dynasty XVIII**

(Three hours per fortnight.)

*Prerequisite:* 12.100. Restricted 12.320.

This paper is prerequisite to 12.300; one of 12.102, 12.103 is corequisite.

Students planning to advance to MA Egyptian option must take paper 12.210 with this paper.

This course concentrates on the internal organisation and foreign policy of the kings of the 18th dynasty, c.1570-1320 B.C.

#### **\*12.201 The Neo-Assyrian Empire**

(Three hours per fortnight.)

*Prerequisite:* 12.100. Restricted 12.301.

This paper is prerequisite to 12.321; one of 12.102, 12.103 is corequisite.

Students planning to advance to MA in Mesopotamian option must take paper 12.211 with this paper.

This course on the Neo-Assyrian Empire (c.884-612 B.C.) will include a study of the Assyrian State, the aims, methods and historical importance of Assyrian imperialism, and its reflection in art, literature and religion. Special attention will be paid to contemporary documents.

**\*12.202 Greece and Persia**

(Three hours per fortnight; 10.309, 12.332 restricted.)  
*Prerequisite:* 12.102 or Greek II.

This paper is an accepted prerequisite to 12.312, 12.322. Students planning to advance to MA in Greek option should consider taking 10.100, 10.101 with this paper. One of 12.100, 12.103 is corequisite except for students who have passed Greek II. Greece and Persia (c.546-323 B.C.) will involve a study of Herodotus' history and the first Persian War, the Greek counter measures and the organisation of the Athenian Confederacy, Persian interventions in Greek inter-state struggles in the fifth and fourth centuries, and Alexander's Anabasis.

**\*12.203 Pax Romana**

(Three hours per fortnight; 09.308, 12.323 restricted.)  
*Prerequisite:* 12.103 or Latin II.

This paper is an accepted prerequisite to 12.313; students planning to advance to MA in Roman option should consider taking 09.102, 09.103 with this paper. One of 12.100 or 12.102 is corequisite except for students who have passed Latin II.

A study of the Roman Empire during the first two centuries A.D. Special attention will be given to the social and religious history of the period, and there will be extensive use of ancient texts in translation.

**\*12.204 Art and Society in Ancient Greece and Rome**

(Three hours per fortnight.)

*Prerequisite:* 12.102 or 12.103 or Greek II, or Latin II or 73.105 or 19.151.

*Corequisite:* 12.102, 12.103, if proceeding to Stage III Ancient History.

This paper is an accepted prerequisite to 12.312, 12.313, 12.314, 12.322, 12.323, 12.324, 12.332. Students planning to advance to MA in Greek or Roman option should consider taking 09.102, 09.103 or 10.100, 10.101 with this paper.

**12.210 Egyptian Language and Documents**

(Two hours per week.)

*Prerequisite:* 12.100.

This paper is prerequisite to 12.310.

The Egyptian Language, hieroglyphic writing, and selected documents up to Dynasty XVIII.

**12.211 Akkadian Language and Documents**

(Two hours per week.)

*Prerequisite:* 12.100.

This paper is prerequisite to 12.311.

The Akkadian Language, cuneiform writing and selected documents of the Neo-Assyrian Empire.

**12.212 Political Theory and Practice in Imperial Athens**

(Three hours per fortnight; 12.312, 10.309 restricted.)

*Prerequisite, corequisite, etc.,* as for 12.202.

This paper is an accepted prerequisite to 12.322, 12.332. Students planning to advance to MA in Greek option should consider taking 10.100, 10.101 with this paper.

Classical Athens will provide the historical context for a study of the Greek city-state as interpreted by ancient historians, poets, orators and philosophers.

**12.213 Empire, Politics and Society in the Roman Empire**

(Three hours per fortnight; 12.313 restricted.)

*Prerequisite, corequisite, etc.,* as 12.203.

This paper is an accepted prerequisite to 12.323.

Students planning to advance to MA in Roman option should consider taking 09.102 or 09.103 with this paper.

A thematic study of the Middle and Late Republic. The main themes considered are: the debate about Rome's acquisition of an empire; the practical functioning and nature of Republican politics; and analysis of the major groupings in Republican society - slaves, freemen, peasants, aristocrats, etc.

**\*12.214 Historians of Rome**

(Three hours per fortnight; 12.314 restricted)

*Prerequisite, corequisite, etc.,* as for 12.203.

This paper is an accepted prerequisite to 12.313, 12.323. Students planning to advance in MA Roman option should consider taking 09.102, 09.103 with this paper.

A study of the Greek and Latin writers on Roman History; all works will be studied in English. The authors will include Polybius, Livy, Sallust, Caesar, Tacitus, Suetonius.

**12.220 Egypt in Dynasties V-XI**

(Three hours per fortnight; 12.300 restricted.)

*Prerequisite:* 12.100 or 11.100.

This paper is prerequisite to 12.320; one of 12.102, 12.103 is corequisite. Students planning to advance to MA in Egyptian option must take paper 12.210 with this paper.

A study of the decline of Old Kingdom Civilisation, the ferment of disillusionment and heart-searching which followed, and the re-establishment of an ordered government and society in the Middle Kingdom. The course will be based on Egyptian historical and literary documents in English translation.

**12.221 Mesopotamia in the 18th Century B.C.**

(Three hours per fortnight.)

*Prerequisite:* Normally 12.100 or 11.100. Restricted 12.321,

This paper is prerequisite to 12.301; one of 12.102, 12.103 is corequisite.

Students planning to advance to MA in Mesopotamian option must take paper 12.211 with this paper.

Assur, Mari, Babylon: Mesopotamia in the 18th Century B.C. This is a period of immense documentary wealth, with important archives of documents found in several centres and relating to all aspects of life during the period. The most notable political event of the time was the gradual rise of Babylon to the position of imperial mistress of the entire region, under one of its most famous kings, Hammurabi.

**\*12.222 Tyranny**

(Three hours per fortnight; 10.309, 12.322 restricted.)

*Prerequisite:* Normally 12.102 or Greek II; one of 12.100, 11.100, 12.103 is corequisite except for students who have passed Greek II.

This paper is an accepted prerequisite to 12.312,

12.324, 12.332. Students planning to advance to MA in Greek option should consider taking 10.100, 10.101 with this paper.

A study of the causes of the tyrannies in the Greek city-states, the aims and methods of the tyrants and the reasons for their expulsion. The course will consider the 7th-6th century tyrants at the Isthmus of Corinth, in Ionia, and in Sicily, and the connexions between tyranny and imperialism (collaboration and resistance), the tyranny in Athens, and the tyrants in Sicily and elsewhere in the late 5th and following centuries.

### **Ancient History III**

#### **12.300 Egypt in Dynasties V-XI**

(Three hours per fortnight; 12.220 restricted.)

*Prerequisite:* Normally 12.200.

Either this paper or 12.320 is prerequisite to 12.430 and 450. Syllabus as 12.220. A higher standard is expected. Students planning to advance to MA in Egyptian option must take 12.310 with this paper.

#### **\*12.301 The Neo-Assyrian Empire**

(Three hours per fortnight; 12.201 restricted.)

*Prerequisite:* Normally 12.221.

Syllabus as for 12.201. A higher standard is expected. Students planning to advance to MA in Mesopotamian option must take 12.311 with this paper.

#### **12.310 Egyptian Language II**

(Four hours per fortnight.)

*Prerequisite:* 12.210; this paper is prerequisite to 12.440 and 460.

Hieroglyphic writing and a study of more advanced documents of either Dynasty XVIII of dynasties V-XI.

#### **12.311 Akkadian Language II**

(Three hours per fortnight)

*Prerequisite:* 12.211.

A selection of texts of the Old Babylonian period will be read in the original cuneiform. These will include letters from Mari and Babylonia and excerpts from the Hammurabi Law Stele. All materials supplied by the Department.

#### **12.312 Athenian Imperialism**

(Three hours per fortnight; 10.309, 12.212 restricted.)

*Prerequisite:* 12.202 or 12.204 or 12.222 or approved alternative.

Syllabus as 12.212. A higher standard is expected. Students planning to advance to MA in Greek option must take 10.100, 10.101 with this paper.

#### **12.313 Empire, Politics and Society in the Roman Republic**

(Three hours per fortnight; 09.308, 12.213 restricted.)

*Prerequisite:* Normally 12.203 or 12.204 or approved alternative.

Syllabus as for 12.213. A higher standard is expected. Students planning to advance to MA in Roman option must take 09.102, 09.103 with this paper.

#### **\*12.314 Historians of Rome**

(Three hours per fortnight)

*Prerequisite:* 12.103, any Stage II Ancient History paper.

*Restriction:* 12.214

Syllabus as 12.214. A higher standard is expected. Students planning to advance to MA in Roman option must take 09.102, 09.103 with this paper.

#### **\*12.320 Egypt in Dynasty XVIII**

(Three hours per fortnight; 12.200 restricted.)

*Prerequisite:* Normally 12.220.

Either this paper or 12.300 is prerequisite to 12.430 and 450. Syllabus as 12.200. A higher standard is expected. Students planning to advance to MA in Egyptian option must take 12.310 with this paper.

#### **12.321 Mesopotamia in the 18th Century B.C.**

(Three hours per fortnight; 12.221 restricted.)

*Prerequisite:* Normally 12.201.

Syllabus as 12.221. A higher standard is expected. Students planning to advance to MA in Mesopotamian option must take 12.311 with this paper.

#### **\*12.322 Tyranny**

(Three hours per fortnight; 10.309, 12.222 restricted.)

*Prerequisite:* Normally 12.202 or 12.204 or 12.212 or approved alternative.

Syllabus as 12.222. A higher standard is expected. Students planning to advance to MA in Greek option must take 10.100, 10.101 with this paper.

#### **\*12.323 Pax Romana**

(Three hours per fortnight; 09.308, 12.203 restricted.)

*Prerequisite:* Normally 12.204 or 12.213 or approved alternative.

Syllabus as 12.203. A higher standard is expected. Students planning to advance to MA in Roman option must take 09.102, 09.103 with this paper.

#### **12.324 Historians of Greece**

(Three hours per fortnight.)

*Prerequisite:* 12.102, any Stage II Ancient History paper.

A study of the Greek writers on Greek History; all writers will be studied in English. The authors will include Herodotus, Thucydides, Xenophon, Aristotle, *The Old Oligharch*, Polybius, Diodorus Siculus, Arrian, and Plutarch. This paper will be taught in alternate years (from 1987). Students planning to advance to MA in Greek option must take 10.100, 10.101 with this paper.

#### **\*12.332 Greece and Persia**

(Three hours per fortnight; 10.309, 12.202 restricted.)

*Prerequisite:* 12.204 or 12.212 or 12.222 or approved alternative.

Syllabus as 12.202. A higher standard is expected. Students planning to advance to MA in Greek option must take 10.100, 10.101 with this paper.

### **Ancient History MA and Honours**

There will normally be two sets of four papers on historical topics, one paper in each option, alternating year by year. Papers on historical topics will normally carry associated papers in the ancient language relating to that topic. Candidates may choose to do seven papers, which includes a one-paper extended essay, or four papers and a three-paper thesis. Normally candidates will be required to take one paper with an associated paper of ancient language and two other papers without language in their first year, and one paper with an associated language paper and an associated research essay paper in their second, or the alternative three-paper thesis. Those with two language prerequisites for MA will be permitted to take two papers with two associated ancient language papers in first year. One or two papers at Stage III not taken for BA may be taken as substitute for MA papers, but these will not carry associated papers of language.

**\*12.400 The Jews in the Graeco-Roman World**

A study of the political and social developments in Judaea and the Diaspora, together with their cultural and ideological implications, from the Conquest of Alexander the Great to the outbreak of the First Revolt against Rome.

**\*12.420 Associated Documents for Translation and Comment**

*Prerequisite:* 10.100, 10.101.

**12.401 The Sumerians**

This is a study of the people who created the first literate civilisation in Western Asia in the fourth and third Millennia B.C. and were responsible for major achievements in the field of art, architecture, literature and thought.

**12.411 Associated Documents for Translation and Comment**

*Prerequisite:* 12.311.

**\*12.403 Roman Britain**

**\*12.423 Associated Documents for Translation and Comment**

*Prerequisite:* 09.102, 09.103.

**\*12.404 A Topic in the Social History of the Ancient World**

**The Family in Ancient Greece and Rome**

A study of various aspects of family life (eg marriage, parent-child relationships, the position of women) and of the family in various contexts (eg legal, religious, social, economic).

**\*12.424 Associated Documents for Translation and Comment**

**\*12.405 A Topic in the Economic History of the Ancient World**

**\*12.425 Associated Documents for Translation and Comment**

**\*12.406 Political Thought and Practice in the Ancient World**

**\*12.426 Associated Documents for Translation and Comment**

**\*12.407 A Topic in the Intellectual History of the Ancient World**

**\*12.427 Associated Documents for Translation and Comment**

**12.408 The Late Roman Empire**

A study of the Roman Empire in the late 3rd and 4th centuries AD, special attention being given to the emperors Diocletian, Constantine and Julian, and to the significant administrative, social and religious trends of the period.

**12.428 Associated Documents for Translation and Comment**

**\*12.409 Medicine in the Ancient World**

A study of medical knowledge and practitioners in the Near East, Greece and Rome, with special reference to the study of anatomy, the creation of an anatomical nomenclature and the career and social status of the physician.

**\*12.429 Associated Documents for Translation and Comment**

*Prerequisite:* 10.100, 10.101.

**\*12.419 Babylonian and Egyptian Mathematics and Astronomy**

No associated paper of documents is available.

**\*12.421 The Neo Babylonian Period**

The reconstruction of Babylon under Esarhaddon

(681-669), its rise to imperial status under Nabopolassar and Nebuchadnezzar II, and conquest by Cyrus of Persia (539). Social and cultural themes will be included.

**\*12.431 Associated Documents for Translation and Comment**

*Prerequisite:* 12.311

**12.422 Agesilaus of Sparta**

The life and times of Agesilaus of Sparta, 396-360 B.C. A study of Spartan society and its relationship with other Greek States and with Persia in this period, based on the Greek sources (in translation).

**12.432 Associated Documents for Translation and Comment**

*Prerequisite:* 10.100, 10.101.

**12.430 Social and Economic History of the Middle and New Kingdoms**

A wide ranging study of specific facets of ancient Egyptian history in the period stated.

**12.440 Associated Documents for Translation and Comment**

*Prerequisite:* 12.310

**\*12.450 Political History of the Ramesside Period**

An examination of the history of Dynasties 19 and 20.

**\*12.460 Associated Documents for Translation and Comment**

*Prerequisite:* 12.310

**12.601 Thesis**

(3 papers.)

**12.603 Research Essay**

(1 paper.)

The topic may be associated with the history paper and its associated documents taken in the second year of MA.

## BIBLICAL HISTORY AND LITERATURE

### Biblical History and Literature I

#### 11.101 Introduction to the Hebrew Bible

Methods and areas of study that illuminate the background and nature of the Hebrew Bible.

#### 11.113 Introduction to the New Testament

Introducing the critical study of the New Testament

## DEPARTMENT OF ECONOMICS

For Economics prescriptions see Faculty of Commerce.

## DEPARTMENT OF EDUCATION

### Education I

#### 14.100 Schooling, Education & Society

*Corequisite:* 14.101 if planning to enrol in more than one Stage II paper. *Restriction:* 14.102

An examination of issues of race, gender and class in, essentially, a New Zealand context.

#### 14.101 Introduction to Developmental Psychology

*Corequisite:* 14.100 (or with the approval of Head of

Department 04.101, or 79.100) if planning to enrol in more than one Stage II paper. *Restriction:* 14.109.

## **Education II**

### **14.200 Comparative Education**

*Prerequisite:* 14.100 (or with the approval of Head of Department 04.101 or 79.100) and 14.101 or 14.109 if enrolling in more than one paper.

Issues in New Zealand education viewed from a comparative perspective.

### **14.201 History of Education**

*Prerequisite:* As for 14.200.

The origins and early development of the modern mass educational system in the nineteenth century.

### **\*14.202 New Zealand Education**

*Prerequisite:* As for 14.200.

Issues and problems associated with the organisation, administration and practice of education in New Zealand.

### **14.203 Educational Psychology**

*Prerequisite:* As for 14.200.

*Co-requisite:* One other Stage II Education paper.

This course focuses on learning theory, motivation and cognition, evaluation of individual differences and special education.

### **14.204 Measurement and Evaluation in Education**

*Prerequisite:* As for 14.200

Critical insights into the social and political contexts, and the skills required for measurement and evaluation.

### **14.206 The Sociology of Education**

*Prerequisite:* As for 14.200.

An introduction to contemporary sociology of education.

### **14.208 Educational Philosophy**

*Prerequisites:* As for 14.200.

An introduction to contemporary philosophy of education with an emphasis on ethics.

### **\*14.209 Introduction to Methods of Research in Education**

*Prerequisite:* As for 14.200.

An introduction to techniques used in Social Science research.

### **14.210 Introduction to Curriculum Studies**

*Prerequisite:* As for 14.200.

The analysis of existing curricula and proposals for curriculum change.

### **14.211 Child Development: Language Processes in Early Childhood**

*Prerequisite:* As for 14.200.

*Corequisite:* One other Stage II Education paper.

An introduction to the study of language development in infants and children, with particular emphasis on acquisition in home and early childhood education settings.

### **14.212 The State and Indigenous Education in Aotearoa**

*Prerequisite:* As for 14.200.

An examination of the interaction of the State and the Indigenous peoples in the contested area of education and schooling.

## **Education III**

A course of Prescribed practical work, observational visits or special seminars will be associated with each Education III paper. Details of these requirements are available at enrolment. These will normally involve

over the year about twenty-four hours of supervised work in laboratories and elsewhere and additional time for assignments.

## **Education III**

A course of Prescribed practical work, observational visits or special seminars will be associated with each Education III paper. Details of these requirements are available at enrolment. These will normally involve over the year about twenty-four hours of supervised work in laboratories and elsewhere and additional time for assignments.

### **14.300 Educational Philosophy**

*Prerequisite:* Two Education papers at Stage II level if enrolling in more than one Stage III paper.

A study of selected educational philosophies.

### **14.301 Comparative Education**

*Prerequisite:* As for 14.300.

An introduction to comparative theory and methodology through a study of educational issues in New Zealand and other countries.

### **14.302 History of Education**

*Prerequisite:* As for 14.300.

Educational Reform in the twentieth century.

### **14.303 School and Society**

*Prerequisite:* As for 14.300.

A sociological perspective on some aspects of current concern in New Zealand education. These may vary from year to year.

### **14.305 The Guidance Process**

*Prerequisite:* As for 14.300 but including 14.203.

An introduction to the theory and practice of counselling and guidance within New Zealand educational institutions. A course of practical work must be completed concurrently.

### **14.306 Introduction to Counselling in the Community**

*Prerequisite:* As for 14.300.

An examination of the application of basic principles of counselling to the needs of individual children and adults and to couples, families and other groups.

### **14.308 Educational Psychology: A Behavioural Approach**

*Prerequisite:* As for 14.300 but including 14.203 or 32.210

A study of contemporary ideas and research in human learning and instruction. Topics will include the analysis of child and adult behaviour in school, home and residential settings.

### **14.309 Development Psychology**

(First half of the Year)

*Prerequisite:* As for 14.300.

A study of selected aspects of infant and child development including the development of perception, cognition, language and problem solving. Note: In 1991 this paper will be taught in part-time hours and in 1992 in full-time hours.

### **14.310 Psychology of Adolescence**

A critical examination of development in the adolescent period.

*Prerequisite:* As for 14.300.

### **14.311 Special Education**

*Prerequisite:* As for 14.300 but including 14.203.

An examination of the special educational needs of children showing a typical development and of the effectiveness of current special educational strategies.



Note: In 1991 14.311 will be taught in full-time hours and in 1992 in part-time hours.

### **14.313 Methods of Research in Education**

*Prerequisite:* As for 14.300.

An introduction to the varieties of qualitative and quantitative approaches available to educational and social researchers. Students will be able to gain practical experience through completion of a supervised research project.

### **14.316 Early Determinants of Behaviour**

*Prerequisite:* As for 14.300 but including 14.203.

A study of research dealing with the influence on later behaviour of variables operating prior to and shortly after birth.

### **\*14.317 Organisational Effectiveness**

*Prerequisite:* As for 14.300.

A study of structural and interpersonal factors which influence the effectiveness of educational organisations.

Note: This course has special relevance to those with experience or interests in administration of educational social service or voluntary organisations. In 1991 this paper will be taught in part-time hours and in 1992 in full-time hours.

### **14.319 Special Topic: The Reading Process**

*Prerequisite:* As for 14.300.

A study of contemporary ideas and research on the reading process.

### **14.320 Cognition and Motivation in the Classroom**

*Prerequisite:* As for 14.300 but including 14.203.

This course examines psychological theory and research relating to the interaction of cognitive and motivational factors in classroom learning.

### **14.322 Adult Learning and Education**

*Prerequisite:* As for 14.300.

An introductory survey of Adult Education and an overview of adult human development.

### **14.327 Aspects of Science Education**

*Prerequisite:* As for 14.300.

An introduction to children's learning in science, to issues in the philosophy of science relevant to the Science curriculum and to a range of other issues in the contemporary international debate concerning science education at primary and secondary level.

### **14.328 Contemporary Feminist Perspectives in Education**

*Prerequisite:* As for 14.300.

A critical study of feminist theory and research in education, with emphasis on the New Zealand context.

### **14.329 Special Topic: To be Approved by Head of Department**

### **14.330 The Seriously Ill Child**

*Prerequisite:* As for 14.300.

A study of the needs, problems, and development of seriously ill children.

### **†14.331 Computers in Education**

*Prerequisite:* As for 14.300.

A study of the role of computers in primary and secondary education.

### **14.333 Akonga Maori: Nga Take E Pa Ana Ki Nga Akonga Maori**

*Prerequisite:* As for 14.300.

Critical analysis of key issues in Maori Education, incorporating Maori language and cultural perspectives through Maori pedagogy.

### **14.334 Education Policy Studies**

*Prerequisite:* As for 14.300.

An investigation of key areas of educational policy with special emphasis given to issues of race, gender and class. While the major focus is on New Zealand education policy, international cases will be considered as appropriate.

### **14.335 Historical Perspectives on the Family, School and Society**

*Prerequisite:* As for 14.300.

A critical analysis of the changing educative relationship between families and schools in particular societies, with emphasis on class, gender, race and age issues.

### **14.336 Special Topic: Issues in Pacific Island Education**

*Prerequisite:* As for 14.300.

A critical examination of the role of Western education in the change from pre-contact autonomous societies to incorporation into a regional/world political and economic system.

### **Education for MA and Honours**

Four papers and a thesis (14.601) which counts as three papers or, six papers and a dissertation (14.604) which counts as one paper or, in exceptional circumstances a candidate who has commenced a thesis, or a dissertation may complete the MA as seven papers.

### **14.400 Educational Philosophy**

Philosophical issues in education.

### **14.401 Comparative Education**

An examination of issues in New Zealand education in light of comparative theory and method.

### **14.402 Historical Studies in Education**

An examination of issues involved in historical studies and research related to education, including supervised investigation of a selected aspect.

### **14.404 Sociology of Education**

A systematic discussion of the origins, history, scope and methodologies of sociological thinking about education.

### **14.405 Education and Work**

A theoretical and practical examination of selected economic, sociological and psychological aspects of the transition from school to work.

Note: (i) This course has special relevance to careers teachers and vocational guidance and employment officers.

(ii) In 1991 this paper will be taught in part-time hours and in 1992 in full-time hours.

### **14.406 Educational Psychology**

An advanced treatment of the behaviour of normal children with special reference to learning and the conditions which promote it.

### **14.407 Developmental Psychology**

An advanced treatment of research in selected aspects of cognitive and personality development.

### **14.409 Methods of Research in Education**

An advanced treatment of selected aspects of the processes of research.

### **14.410 Principles of Counselling and Consultation**

*Prerequisite:* 14.306 and 14.317 or their equivalent will normally be prerequisites for this course plus approved work experience in guidance and access to an appropriate fieldwork setting.

An advanced examination of principles of counselling and consulting, together with practical experience in selected procedures.

**Note:** In 1991 this paper will be taught in part-time hours and in 1992 in full-time hours.

#### **14.412 Behaviour Analysis in Education**

An examination of the application of behaviour analysis techniques to contemporary problems in education including supervised research and field experience.

#### **14.413 Special Education**

**Prerequisite:** 14.311 will normally be a prerequisite for this course.

An advanced study of special educational provisions for exceptional children, including an intensive analysis of provision for mentally retarded children.

**Note:** In 1991 this paper will be taught in part-time hours and in 1992 in full-time hours.

#### **14.414 Curriculum Development and Evaluation**

A consideration of some issues concerning curriculum design and development, assessment of learning and curriculum evaluation.

#### **14.416 Special Topic: To be Approved by Head of Department**

The topic to be proposed by the student after consultation with staff members and approved by the Head of Department. The topic must be approved not later than 31 December of the year preceding enrolment.

#### **14.417 Special Topic in Adult Education**

A more intensive examination of some of the matters introduced at Stage III papers in Adult Education.

#### **14.418 Marriage and Family Counselling**

**Prerequisite:** 14.306 or its equivalent will normally be a prerequisite for this course.

An advanced examination of counselling principles as applied to stresses arising within marital and family relationships.

**Note:** In 1991 this paper will be taught in full-time hours and in 1992 in part-time hours.

#### **14.419 Early Determinants of Behaviour**

An advanced study of research dealing with the influence on behaviour of variables operating prior to and shortly after birth.

#### **14.420 Special Topic: To be Approved by Head of Department**

Subject to be proposed by a staff member or a student and approved by the Head of Department not later than 31 December of the year preceding enrolment.

#### **\*14.421 Perspectives on Science Education**

A study of concept development in science, the relationship between philosophy of science and science curricula and the factors that influence science curriculum change.

#### **14.422 Education and Development Policy**

An examination of the nature and role of education within the process of economic, political and social development in selected countries.

#### **14.423 Kaupapa Maori: Te Reo Maori I Waenganui I Te Ao Pakeha**

An examination of the social, political and historical implications for Maori language through a critical analysis of the interaction between Maori language and the dominant Pakeha education system.

#### **14.424 Maori Education Policy Development and Practice**

**Prerequisite:** experience in Maori education.

An analysis of Maori education policy development and practice in New Zealand schooling.

#### **14.425 Feminist Issues in Education**

An examination of selected issues in current feminist debates on education.

#### **04.401 A Topic in Maori Literature**

#### **04.402 Maori Ethnicity**

#### **14.601 Thesis**

(Value 3 papers.)

#### **14.604 Dissertation**

(Value 1 paper.)

A candidate presenting a thesis or dissertation shall forward it no later than 1 November in the year in which it is to be examined. A research seminar will be held periodically during the year for those preparing to write MA theses.

A timetable for these seminars will be available at enrolment.

#### **Education for MEd and Honours**

Four papers and a thesis (14.621) which counts as three papers or four papers and a folio of casework (14.626) in the area of guidance and counselling which counts as three papers or six papers and a dissertation (14.624) which shall count as one paper. Papers to be selected from

(a) Any paper in MA schedule for Education

(b) 14.450 Curriculum Design and Development in Science

**Prerequisites:** 14.414, 14.421

A consideration of the major influences on contemporary science curriculum, policy and practice.

#### **14.451 School and Organisational Effectiveness**

An examination of various conceptual, policy, and empirical debates involved in the topic of school and organisational effectiveness. There will be a particular focus on the development of models of effectiveness applicable to New Zealand schools and organisation.

#### **14.452 Theory and Process in Educational Administration**

A critical examination of the role of the educational administrator in New Zealand.

#### **14.453 Cultural and Group Counselling**

A critical examination of the cultural dimensions present in counselling activities.

**Note:** In 1991 this paper will be taught in part-time hours and in 1992 in full-time hours.

(c) Any paper in another subject for MA

Any paper as prescribed in Regulation 6 of the MEd Regulations.

#### **14.621 Thesis**

(Value 3 papers)

#### **14.626 Casework Folio**

(Value 3 papers)

## DEPARTMENT OF ENGLISH

Note: (i) Since the supply of text-books continues to be uncertain, some changes in courses may be unavoidable. Students will be notified of any such changes at the beginning of the academic year. The books mentioned in the appendix are *prescribed* books - i.e. those which students must have. Students should obtain from the department the fuller version of prescriptions and book lists, which include *recommended* books (i.e. additional to those prescribed); and also lists of further prescribed books which are required for those papers not mentioned in the appendix.

All students should possess a good dictionary: *Collins English Dictionary* and the *Concise Oxford* are recommended.

(ii) Attention is directed to the MA prerequisites as set out in the Regulations for that Degree. Students intending to take MA in English should plan their course with these requirements, particularly that of a foreign language, in mind.

### English I

To advance to English II two English I papers must have been passed. Students intending to take 18.200 are advised to take 18.100. All papers have one lecture per week with an additional weekly lecture for half the year. All courses have weekly tutorials.

**18.100 Introduction to Chaucer and Shakespeare**

**18.101 Twentieth Century Literature**

**18.103 New Zealand Literature I**

**18.104 Nineteenth Century Literature**

**18.105 Introduction to English Language**

New Zealand Literature I is also taught on the campus of the Auckland College of Education with the paper number 18.113.

Introduction to English Language is also taught on the campus of the Auckland College of Education with the paper number 18.115.

### English II

To advance to English III three specific English II papers must have been passed. See BA Schedule under English II : Note.

Note: Each paper involves one lecture per week except 18.205, 18.223 and 18.224 which have two hours; tutorials are also given.

**18.200 Mediaeval Literature**

**18.201 Language Literature and Culture**

**18.205 Sociolinguistics**

**18.210 The Age of Shakespeare: Poetry**

**18.213 The Age of Shakespeare: Tragedy**

**18.220 Twentieth Century Fiction**

**18.221 New Zealand Literature II**

**18.222 Modern Poetry: 1900-1945**

**18.223 Phonology**

**18.224 Grammatical Analysis**

**18.250 English Language for Teachers**

### English III

The course consists normally of a minimum of three papers, and a maximum of six papers; students must take one paper from 18.301-18.305, 18.314, 18.315, one from 18.306-18.308 and one other English III paper. See BA Schedule under English III: Qualifications, and also MA prerequisites. Each paper involves one lecture per week (except 18.301 and 18.330 which have two lectures per week), with tutorial work as arranged.

**18.301 Old English: Language, Literature and Society**

**18.302 Middle English Literature**

*Prerequisite:* 18.200.

**\*18.303 The Linguistic Analysis of Literature**

**18.304 New Zealand English**

*Prerequisite:* 18.105 or 18.201.

**18.305 Semantics**

(Linguistics paper 83.312)

**\*18.314 Sixteenth and Seventeenth Century Prose and Poetry**

**18.315 Sixteenth and Seventeenth Century Drama**

**18.306 Prose, Poetry and Drama of the Eighteenth Century**

**18.307 Romantic Literature**

**18.308 Eighteenth Century Novels**

**\*18.310 Shakespeare: Selected Plays**

For 1991: Comedies and Tragicomedies.

**18.320 Victorian Literature**

**18.323 American Literature: Poetry**

**18.325 Special Topic II as Prescribed by the Head of Department: Novels from the Post-Colonial World: 1950-1980**

**18.326 Special Topic III as Prescribed by the Head of Department: Women Writers of the Twentieth Century**

**18.327 Special Topic IV as Prescribed by the Head of Department: Australian Literature**

**18.328 Special Topic V as Prescribed by the Head of Department: Creative Writing**

Entry to this course is restricted. Details for the procedure to be followed for pre-enrolment are available from the Department.

**\*18.329 Special Topic VI as Prescribed by the Head of Department**

For 1991: Canadian Literature

**18.330 Recent Trends in Grammar**

**18.331 Shakespeare on Screen**

Entry to this course is restricted. Information is available from the Department.

Note: 18.301 and 18.302 are normally prerequisites for MA paper 18.403, 18.301 is a prerequisite for MA paper 18.400, 18.302 is a prerequisite for MA paper 18.411 and normally a prerequisite for 18.401, 18.301 is normally a prerequisite for MA paper 18.402, 18.330 is a prerequisite for 18.408, 18.305 is a prerequisite for 18.429.

### English for MA and Honours

Note: Intending MA students who are in doubt about the choice of courses should consult the Head of Department.

#### (1) Single Honours - English

Students will select seven of the papers set out below, their selection of papers to be approved by the Head of the Department. One paper listed under Stage III English, if not already credited for a BA degree, may be offered as a paper for an MA. Not more than three papers may be taken from the period after 1930. With the permission of the Head of Department, a thesis (18.601) may be substituted for two papers or dissertation (18.604) for one paper. The dissertation will normally take the form of a documented essay of about 12,000 words; while the length of the thesis is approximately 25,000 words upon a topic requiring detailed research.

Candidates who present their papers in two years are required to complete the specified coursework before sitting the examination for each paper. Those who present all their papers in one year are, in most cases exempt from coursework but will be given the opportunity to submit it if they desire. All students taking a paper from English III will be required to submit the prescribed coursework for that paper.

**18.400 Old English**

*Prerequisite:* Old English at Stage III level.

**\*18.401 Middle English**

*Prerequisite:* Normally Middle English at Stage III level.

**\*18.402 Norse (Icelandic)**

**Prerequisite:** Normally Old English at Stage III level.

**\*18.403 Introduction to English Philology**

**Prerequisite:** Normally Old English and Middle English at Stage III level.

**\*18.404 Victorian Studies (24.415 History Paper)**

An interdisciplinary paper concerned with selected topics from English literature and British social and cultural history of the 19th Century.

**18.405 Twentieth Century Poetry**

**18.406 Shakespeare: Selected Plays and Poems**

**18.407 Literary Theory**

**†18.408 Advanced Studies in Syntax**

(Linguistics paper 83.405.)

**18.409 Twentieth Century Drama**

**\*18.410 English Linguistics**

(Linguistics paper 83.406)

**18.411 Selected Author or Authors I, to be Prescribed by Head of Department**

For 1991: Chaucer.

**Prerequisite:** Middle English at Stage III level.

**\*18.412 Bibliography and Textual Criticism**

**18.413 Essay Paper**

The course will consist of the supervised writing of shortessays in a field or genre proposed by the student.

**18.414 Selected Author or Authors II, to be Prescribed by the Head of Department**

For 1991: Early Twentieth Century Fiction: Conrad, Woolf and Joyce.

**\*18.415 Nineteenth Century American Prose and Fiction**

**18.416 Modern Literature and the Visual Arts**

(Art History paper 19.411.)

**18.417 New Zealand Literature**

The course will be based mainly on authors of prose and verse writing after 1910.

**18.418 Restoration Literature**

**\*18.419 Special Topic I: To be Prescribed by Head of Department**

For 1991: Literature and Society: 1400-1550.

**18.420 Film Studies**

(Art History paper 19.404.)

This inter-departmental paper - shared by the Departments of English and Art History - will examine film as an art by studying the work of some major film-makers and also the major theories of film criticism.

**18.421 Special Topic II: To be Prescribed by Head of Department**

For 1991: Literature and Thought 1590-1650. A course in which literature is studied in relationship to the history and religion of the time.

**18.422 Literature from the Old and New Commonwealths**

**18.423 Twentieth Century American Prose**

**\*18.424 Selected Author or Authors III**

For 1991: Major Victorian Writers: Dickens.

**†18.425 A Topic in Sociolinguistics**

**18.426 The Sublime 1700-1805**

**18.427 Special Topic III: To be Prescribed by Head of Department**

For 1991: Women and the Medieval Devotional Tradition.

**\*18.428 Special Topic IV: To be Prescribed by Head of Department**

For 1991: Nabokov.

**†18.429 Special Topic V: To be Prescribed by Head of Department** For 1991: Discourse Analysis.

**18.430 Special Topic VI: To be Prescribed by Head of Department**

For 1991: Nineteenth Century Women Novelists.

**18.431 Feminist Literary Theory**

**18.601 Thesis**

(Equivalent of two papers.)

**18.604 Dissertation**

(Equivalent of one paper.)

**(2) Combined Honours - English with Another Language (Languages and Literature)**

Students will select three or four papers (set out above for Single-Honours) as approved by the Heads of Department concerned.

## FILM AND TELEVISION STUDIES

**85.200 Film and Television Studies**

This paper will examine film and television in terms of their cultural and social importance. It covers the history, political significance, and critical reception of the two media.

Entry to the course is restricted. Course details, including details of pre-enrolment are available from the English and Political Studies Departments.

## DEPARTMENT OF GEOGRAPHY

The Schedule to the Course Regulations for the Degree of BA should be consulted for pre and corequisites.

**Note:** \*This paper will not be taught during the current *Calendar* year.  
†This paper will not be taught during the current *Calendar* year unless sufficient staff is available.

### Geography I

Two papers are offered for Geography I. They may be taken separately or together, but students planning to advance in geography should enrol in both. Practical work, tutorials, and a field excursion form an integral part of the courses, and participation in these is required. A list of recommended books for each course is included in the departmental *Student Guide* available from the Geography Department Office.

**20.101 Geography of the Natural Environment**  
(Second half year)

Water in the environment is the unifying theme for a study of processes in physical geography.

**20.102 Society, Space and Place**

(First half year)

Social and economic processes that determine variation, accessibility and inequality in the spatial allocation of resources both within and between nations.

### Asian Geography I

**20.130 Geography of East Asia**

A topical and regional approach to the geography of China and Japan. The unity and diversity of East Asia, environment and cultural development, industrialisation and urbanisation, population problems, and environmental management are emphasised.

### Geography II

Six papers are offered for Geography II. Students planning to advance in geography should enrol for

20.204 (or equivalent), 20.201 and 20.202. Students advancing in other subjects may take papers separately. A list of recommended books for each of the papers is included in the departmental *Student Guide* available from the departmental secretary.

**20.201 Processes in the Natural Environment**  
Environmental processes in biogeography and soils, climatology and geomorphology are considered with energy flow and transformation as the unifying theme.

**20.202 Society, Economy and Environment**  
The location and organisation of economic activities in Western societies and their relationship to other aspects of social organisation. Principles and models that are used in geography to represent and interpret these relationships are considered.

**20.203 Remote Sensing Techniques**  
Photogrammetry, photo interpretation and an introduction to more recent techniques of remote sensing and their application.

**20.204 Statistical Techniques in Geography**  
Elementary statistical methods for the non-mathematical student, including descriptive statistics, the testing of simple statistical relationships, and the use of computer processing.

**20.205 Human Impact in the Environment**  
An examination of humanity as a modifier of the soil, atmosphere, land and other aspects of the natural and cultural world.

**\*20.206 Geographical Perspectives on Developing Countries**

The study of regional processes in Third World countries. The issue of agrarian change, urbanisation, migration and industrialisation are considered in the context of colonial legacies and contemporary political situations. Taught in even numbered years.

**Asian Geography II**

**†20.240 Geography of Malaysia, Singapore and Indonesia**

Political composition and growth, urbanisation, economic structure and regional patterns, and problems of resource use are emphasised. Taught in odd numbered years.

**Geography III**

Each paper will involve at least two hours of lectures, seminars, or laboratory work per week, but students must also attend such additional practical work and fieldwork as may be required. A list of recommended books for each of the papers is included in the departmental *Student Guide* available from the Geography Department Office.

**20.302 Regional Processes and Development**

The interplay between agents and mechanisms shaping the nature and distribution of economic activity on the one hand, and the characteristics of regions on the other.

Attention is given to the features of firms, labour, industries, markets, institutions, the state, cities and territories as they relate to the geography of capitalist production. These topics are discussed in the context of different sectors, systems of government, and nations.

**20.303 Geomorphology and Hydrology**

Geomorphological and hydrological systems with special reference to coasts, slopes and karstic environments. 20.303 includes a residential field trip.

**20.304 Biogeography and Climatology**

Concepts and methods in environmental climatology and biogeography.

**20.305 Population Processes Policies and Techniques**

Components of change in human populations (fertility, mortality, migration), population structure (sex and age, ethnicity, economic activity) and population distribution (urbanisation, segregation, regional development). Techniques of measurement and analysis are introduced and policies which regulate population are considered.

**\*20.306 Geographical Perspectives on Developing Countries**

The study of regional processes in Third World countries. The issue of agrarian change, urbanisation, migration and industrialisation are considered in the context of colonial legacies and contemporary political situations. Taught in even numbered years.

**†20.310 Geography of Malaysia, Singapore and Indonesia**

Population composition and growth, urbanisation, economic structure and regional patterns, and problems of resource use are emphasised. Taught in odd numbered years.

**\*20.312 Special Topic**

**†20.313 Advanced Statistical Techniques in Geography**

An introduction to multivariate statistical methods and their application to model building and systems analysis.

**20.314 Geographic Information Systems and Image Processing**

Principles, techniques and applications of geographic information systems, including computer analysis and presentation of cartographic and remotely sensed data.

**20.315 Research Design and Methods in Human Geography**

A lecture, practical and field course which considers the principles of research design, methods and practice of data collection, sources of published and unpublished data, experience in analytical techniques and the presentation of results. The paper includes a residential field course of at least seven days normally held in the first week of the May study break.

**20.320 Resources and Environmental Management.**

Planning for the effective utilisation of natural resources through understanding the functioning of natural and man-modified ecological systems and the institutional structures determining their use.

**Geography for MA and Honours**

[Four papers and a thesis (20.601)]

A candidate is expected to enrol for and sit the four papers in the first year, present the thesis (which is the equivalent of three papers) in the year next following and submit it for examination by 1 November of that year. Papers shall be selected from 20.400 to 20.445. Further information (including recommended books) is included in the *Graduate Guide* available from the Geography Department Office.

There is an overall limit on the number of Masters students for 1991. Students should consult the Head of Department as soon as possible after the completion

of the Bachelors Degree in order to discuss the graduate programme.

#### †20.400 History and Nature of Geography

##### †20.410 Change and Transition in the Pacific

The patterns and processes of island bio-physical environments, population, economic organisation and resource use.

##### †20.420 Biogeography

Major concepts, theories and methods in studies of plant communities, populations and nutrient cycling.

##### 20.421 Climatology

Topics in environmental climatology and climate impact assessment.

##### 20.422 Geomorphology

An analysis of major ideas in systematic and regional geomorphology, with a focus on the S.W. Pacific and New Zealand.

##### 20.424 Hydrology and Fluvial Geomorphology

Pure and applied aspects of hydrology and fluvial geomorphology, incorporating field and laboratory techniques.

##### 20.430 Land Use Studies

Principles of land use competition and land use planning in rural and urban areas of developed economies.

##### 20.431 Cultural Geography

Cross cultural themes in the study of people - nature relationships.

##### 20.432 Regional Development Studies

Studies of the inter-regional and international relationships between capital, labour and space.

##### 20.434 Population Geography

Analysis and applications of the methods and materials of demography.

##### †20.436 Urban Geography

Emphasis is on the social processes that underline spatial patterns of Western cities.

##### 20.440 Remote Sensing

An advanced study of remote sensing applications involving analysis of a range of recent imagery and data.

##### 20.441 Coastal Studies

Topics in historical coastal geomorphology and coastal management with process as the unifying theme.

##### 20.442 Evaluation in Environmental and Resource Planning

An examination of methods for the evaluation of resource development proposals.

##### 20.443 Digital Mapping Systems

The study of computer assisted cartography with special reference to its role in Geographic Information Systems in New Zealand.

##### \*20.444 Special Topic

##### \*20.445 Special Topic

## GERMAN

More detailed information is contained in the Departmental Handbook and the Handbook of the Faculty of Arts, both of which are available from the University Office. Further information may also be obtained from the Secretary at 10 Grafton Road.

In all courses taught in the Department the candidate's performance during the year, in particular in assignments and class tests, will be taken into consideration when the final result is determined.

Note: \*This paper will not be taught during the current *Calendar* year.

†This paper will not be taught during the current *Calendar* year unless sufficient staff is available.

### German I

Two language acquisition courses are provided, 22.100 and 22.105. Students who have studied German previously must enrol for 22.100. Students without previous knowledge of German must enrol for 22.105, and are strongly advised to take 22.103 concurrently.

Papers 22.100 and 22.101 are corequisites. See BA Schedule.

#### 22.100 Language Acquisition

Written and oral use of German tested in some or all of the following ways: composition, comprehension, conversation, dictation, reading, translation.

#### 22.101 Introduction to German Literature

Literary history and criticism with special reference to modern poetry and short prose.

#### 22.102 Aspects of Modern German Civilisation

This paper is open to all interested students, whether or not they are studying German language and literature. The paper is strongly recommended to students of German at all stages.

A survey of modern German civilisation (i) Aspects of 19th and 20th-century German history and thought; (ii) Literature (studied in translation), music, art and cinema of the period.

#### 22.103 Reading Knowledge of German

The study of German vocabulary and sentence structure; comprehension of general and subject-related texts and translation into English.

This course is designed primarily for students taking 22.105 who intend to advance German in subsequent years. Students who require a Foreign Language Reading qualification in another Department may also enrol for this paper.

#### 22.105 Introductory Language Acquisition

Written and oral use of German designed specifically for students without previous knowledge of the language. Students intending to advance German in subsequent years are strongly recommended to take 22.103 concurrently.

### German II

Papers 22.200, 22.202 and 22.203 are corequisites. See BA Schedule.

#### 22.200 Language Acquisition

Written and oral use of German tested in some or all of the following ways: composition, comprehension, conversation, dictation, reading, translation.

#### 22.202 Genres of 20th Century German Literature

Literary criticism with special reference to drama; aspects of 20th century drama, prose and poetry with reference to the visual arts, including film.

## DEPARTMENT OF GERMANIC LANGUAGES AND LITERATURE

The Department teaches three subjects: German, Scandinavian Studies and Dutch.

### **22.203 German Linguistics and History of the German Language German III**

Students will normally take 22.300, 22.301 and either 22.302 or 22.303 or all four of those papers.

### **22.300 Language Acquisition**

Written and oral use of German tested in some or all of the following ways: composition, comprehension, conversation, dictation, reading, translation.

### **22.301 Mediaeval and Romantic Literature**

### **22.302 18th and 19th Century German Literature**

### **22.303 Post-war German Literature**

### **22.350 Translation in Theory and Practice**

Students will normally be required to have passed 22.300 or achieved a comparable standard of language competence. The paper will also be open to native speakers of German.

### **German for MA and Honours**

Four papers and a thesis (22.601) or six papers and a dissertation (22.603) or seven papers including 22.400. The specific requirements for German are given in MA Schedule (11), and for Languages and Literature including German in MA Schedule (17). All courses need to be approved by the Head of Department.

Students intending to enrol for MA must consult the Head of Department towards the end of the previous year to discuss their choice of papers and to obtain advice on vacation reading.

### **22.400 Language Acquisition: Written and Oral German**

### **\*22.401 Mediaeval Studies with Special Reference to the *Nibelungenlied* and Hartmann von Aue**

### **22.402 Mediaeval Studies with Special Reference to Wolfram von Eschenbach**

### **22.404 Literatur der Goethezeit**

### **\*22.405 The Poetry of Rilke**

### **\*22.407 Selected Works of Brecht**

### **\*22.408 Post-war German Prose**

### **\*22.410 Linguistic Analysis of Contemporary Written German**

### **\*22.411 The *Märchen***

### **22.413 Selected Works of Thomas Mann**

### **\*22.415 German Language Developments, Past and Present**

### **\*22.417 Twentieth Century German Poetry**

### **22.418 An Approved Special Topic in German Language**

### **22.419 An Approved Special Topic in German Literature**

### **22.420 An Approved Special Topic in German Language or Literature**

### **22.421 Literatur und Film**

### **22.422 German Lexicography**

### **22.423 An Approved Special Topic in German Language or Literature**

### **22.424 An Approved Special Topic in German Language or Literature**

### **22.440 An Approved Special Topic in Germanic Languages, Literature, Thought or History**

Faculty of Arts, both of which are available from the University Office. Further information may also be obtained from the Secretary at 10 Grafton Road.

In all courses taught in the Department the candidate's performance during the year, in particular in assignments and class tests, will be taken into consideration when the final result is determined.

Note: \*This paper will not be taught during the current *Calendar* year.

### **Scandinavian Studies I**

Students may enrol without previous knowledge of the subject. Paper 46.101 may be taken on its own, otherwise papers 46.100 and 46.102 must be taken together - see BA Schedule.

### **46.100 and 46.102 Language Acquisition 1 and 2**

Oral and written use of Swedish, tested in some or all of the following ways: composition, comprehension, conversation, dictation, reading, translation from and into Swedish.

These two papers must be taken together.

### **46.101 Aspects of Scandinavian Civilisation**

This paper is open to all interested students, whether or not they are taking 46.100 and 46.102 or advancing Scandinavian Studies. An outline of Scandinavian history, geography and society; selected works of modern Scandinavian literature studied in English translation.

### **Scandinavian Studies II**

A candidate's result will be determined over three papers. Papers 46.200 and either 46.201 and 46.202 or 46.203 and 46.204 are corequisites - see BA Schedule.

### **46.200 Language Acquisition**

Oral and written use of Swedish, tested in some or all of the following ways: composition, comprehension, conversation, dictation, reading, translation from and into Swedish.

### **46.201 Introduction to Scandinavian Languages and Linguistics**

### **46.202 Scandinavian Drama and Film with Special Reference to Ibsen, Strindberg and Ingmar Bergman**

### **\*46.203 Modern Swedish Novels and Short Stories**

### **\*46.204 Swedish Poetry from Mediaeval Ballads to the Present Day.**

### **Scandinavian Studies III**

A candidate's result will be determined over three papers. Papers 46.300 and either 46.301 and 46.302 or 46.303 and 46.304 are corequisites - see BA Schedule.

### **46.300 Language Acquisition**

Advanced oral and written Swedish; comprehension of written Danish and Norwegian ("Bokmaal").

### **46.301 Scandinavian Languages and Linguistics**

### **46.302 Scandinavian Drama and Film with Special Reference to Holberg, Ibsen, Strindberg, Lagerkvist and Ingmar Bergman**

### **\*46.303 Modern Scandinavian Novels and Short Stories**

### **\*46.304 Scandinavian Poetry from Mediaeval Ballads to the Present Day.**

## **DUTCH**

More detailed information is contained in the Departmental Handbook and in the Handbook of the Faculty of Arts, both of which are available from the University Office. Further information may also be

## **SCANDINAVIAN STUDIES**

More detailed information is contained in the Departmental Handbook and the Handbook of the

obtained from the Secretary at 10 Grafton Road. In all courses taught in the Department the candidate's performance during the year, in particular in assignments and class tests, will be taken into consideration when the final result is determined.

Note: †This paper will not be taught during the current *Calendar* year unless sufficient staff is available..

### **Dutch I**

Students may enrol without previous knowledge of the subject. Paper 421.102 may be taken on its own, otherwise papers 421.100, 421.101 and 421.102 must be taken together - see BA Schedule.

### **†421.100 and †421.101 Language Acquisition 1 and 2**

Oral and written use of Dutch, tested in some or all of the following ways: composition, comprehension, conversation, dictation, reading, translation. The two papers must be taken together.

### **†421.102 Aspects of the Civilisation of the Low Countries**

An outline of the history, geography, society and culture of the Low Countries (Netherlands, Belgium) with reference also to Indonesia.

This paper is open to all interested students, whether or not they are studying 421.100 and 421.101.

## **HEBREW**

### **Hebrew I**

#### **23.110 Introduction to Biblical Hebrew**

The basic skills of listening to, speaking, writing and reading of Biblical Hebrew.

## **DEPARTMENT OF HISTORY**

Fuller details concerning the Department's teaching programme and its requirements of students are contained in a Guide which all students must obtain from the Department at 5 Wynyard Street. Students are advised to call at the Department before enrolment to discuss courses and to obtain reading lists and a leaflet entitled *Advice on Books to Buy*. This will list recommended texts for papers for which there are no prescribed texts.

Note: \*This paper will not be taught during the current *Calendar* year.  
†This paper will not be taught during the current *Calendar* year unless sufficient staff is available.

### **History I**

#### **24.100 From Versailles to Pearl Harbor: Issues of Peace and War**

(Second half of year)

The origins of the Second World War in Europe and Asia. The course examines the challenges Germany and Japan presented to the status quo and considers the outcome.

#### **24.101 The Russian Revolution**

(Second half of year)

The origins of the 1917 revolution and the development of the Soviet state and society.

Paper 43.112 Russian Civilisation is complementary to 24.101

#### **24.105 The USA in the 20th Century**

(First half of year)

An introduction to major trends and developments in the history of the United States from 1898 to the present.

### **24.107 Women in New Societies**

(First half of year)

The social, economic and political history of women in the USA, New Zealand and Australia. The paper will begin with America in the colonial period and finish in the 1920's. Special themes will be women's domestic and family role, the changing work of women, the education of women, the women's rights movement and women's participation in social reform movements.

### **†24.109 Special Topic: A topic in Modern European History**

(Second half of year)

#### **24.122 New Zealand and its Peoples: Maori and Pakeha in the Nineteenth Century**

(First half of year)

Te Ao Hurihuri, the world turned around. A history of a Maori world, settled by Europeans: the evolution of a colonial economy, political system, and society.

#### **24.123 New Zealand and its Peoples: Maori, Pakeha and Polynesian in the Twentieth Century**

(Second half of year)

Te Ao Hou, the new world. A history of New Zealand's development in the twentieth century, with particular reference to Maori and Pakeha, the growing relationship with the Polynesian Island communities, the evolution of a modern society, economy and government, and international relations.

#### **24.140 Europe in the Age of Kings and Queens 1450-1700**

(First half of year)

An introduction to the history of late medieval and early modern Europe, with emphasis on the development of European states and changes in habits of thought, social order and life styles.

#### **24.141 Europe in the Age of Revolution 1750-1875**

(Second half of year)

A survey of the economic, social, political and ideological transformation of Europe during the eighteenth and nineteenth centuries, with emphasis on the 'dual revolution' - the French Revolution of 1789 and the British Industrial Revolution.

Note: Papers are taught on a half-year basis, three lectures, one tutorial per week. The following will be in sequence in 1991: 24.105-24.101: 24.107-24.100: 24.122-24.123: 24.140-24.141.

Second half year papers will start in the week beginning 24 June. Should their timetable permit, students may take a single paper, or two or more papers from different sequences.

### **Asian History I**

#### **24.130 China Since the Opium War**

(Second half of year)

The collapse of Imperial China under the impact of foreign imperialism and internal upheavals and the subsequent struggle to rebuild a modern nation.

#### **\*24.132 Nationalism and Revolution in Vietnam, Thailand and Indonesia**

Paper 24.130 will start in the week beginning 24 June.

#### **24.133 The Development of Modern Japan**

(First half of year)

Offering some explanations for the rise of Japan as a major world power, the paper first discusses the feudal order in Tokugawa Japan and the policy of seclusion. The next section analyses the transition to a unified nation state and the opening of Japan to the West. The third section deals with the modernisation of Japan, its expansion into East Asia and the Pacific, the American occupation, and the reconstitution of the political



order after 1945.

Note: Papers 24.133 and 24.130 will be in sequence, with three lectures and one tutorial a week for each.

## History II

### 24.200 Rome and the Barbarians 250-600

(First half of year)

Can we still talk about the 'decline and fall' of the Roman Empire? Does the period witness the collapse of a 'slave economy' and the beginnings of medieval 'feudalism'? Were the 'barbarians' marauders, colonists, or refugees? Were they welcomed into the Mediterranean world by a selfish and skilful aristocratic élite? What was the resulting impact upon Roman institutions, culture and economy?

### 24.201 Medieval English Kinship from Alfred to Henry III

(Second half of year)

Studies in the development of royal power in England from the Anglo-Saxon period until the thirteenth century.

### 24.214 Parliaments, Estates and Revolutions 1500-1660

(Second half of year)

A study of representation and consent in early modern Europe and of the parliamentary assemblies which were the embodiment of these principles. The course falls into two parts: a study of individual assemblies and their varying fortunes, e.g. dramatic rise of the Swedish Riksdag, weak and dependent assemblies in France, Castile and Ireland; the English parliaments; and a comparative study of the rise, decline or eclipse of European assemblies, and particularly of their role in the crises of the mid-seventeenth century.

### 24.215 Seventeenth-Century England:

#### A Social History

(First half of year)

This course attempts to recapture the material, mental and social worlds of seventeenth-century England: social and gender divisions, family life, communities, education and literacy, witchcraft, plague, government and order, religion, and the origins and impact of the English Revolution of 1640-60.

### 24.216 Modern France 1871 to the Present

(First half of year)

A political, social and economic history of France under the Republic emphasising the dynamics of social conflict and the mediating role of the State.

### 24.230 Polynesian and European Exploration of the Pacific

(First half of year)

European exploration of the Pacific and theories on the origin and migrations of Polynesians, including Maori voyages to New Zealand.

### 24.233 Australian Social History 1788-1990

(Second half of year)

A study of Australian society from the time of the British invasion to the present, examining its origins as a penal settlement, the expansion of the white frontier, periods of crisis (such as depression and war), the growth of an urban culture, and the search for a national identity. The course is centred on the themes of class, gender and race.

### 24.234 New Zealand Communities 1840-1940

(Second half of year)

A study of the origins, social structure, cultural and

economic change, politics and government of different types of New Zealand communities. Case studies will be made of certain communities e.g. a Wakefield community, a sheep station, a Maori community, an urban community.

#### †24.235 Special Topic

#### †24.236 Special Topic

### \*24.237 The First 100 Years. An ethnohistory of the colonisation of Mexico and Peru in the sixteenth century, and New Zealand in the nineteenth century.

Note: Papers are taught on a half-year basis, two lectures, one tutorial per week. The following will be the sequence in 1991: 24.200-24.201; 24.215-24.214; 24.230-24.234; 24.216-24.233.

Second half year papers will start in the week beginning 24 June. Should their timetable permit, students may take a single paper, or two or more papers from different sequences.

## Asian History II

### 24.222 China under the Ming and Qing Dynasties

(Second half of year)

The social, political and economic structure of the final period of the Chinese empire, and the practice of imperial government under native and foreign rulers, China's relations with the outside world, and the development of her cultural heritage.

### \*24.223 State and Society in Pre-colonial Island S.E. Asia

### \*24.224 State and Society in Pre-colonial Mainland S.E. Asia

Note: Paper 24.222 will be taught on a half-year basis, two lectures, one tutorial per week, starting in the week beginning 24 June.

## History III

### \*24.301 The Mexican Revolution

### \*24.302 The Reign of Henry VIII

### 24.307 The Origins of the First World War

(First half of year)

The origins of the First World War through discussion of the foreign policies of the main European countries involved, including Italy, and an analysis of international relations from 1870, and particularly from 1890 to 1915.

### 24.315 Pacific History: Culture Contact to about 1900

(First half of year)

An examination of the relations between Pacific Islanders and Europeans (explorers, travellers and missionaries) up to the colonial period.

#### †24.320 Special Topic

(Second half of year)

#### †24.325 Special Topic: A topic in New Zealand and/or Pacific History

### 24.329 Social Welfare in New Zealand from 1840 to the present day

(First half of year)

This paper explores the development of the welfare state in New Zealand from 1840 to the present. It will examine the reasons for the introduction of welfare measures, the form the legislation took, and its impact on society.

### 24.331 Justinian and his Age

(First half of year)

Justinian has a reputation as legal reformer, patron of art, victor over Persians and barbarians. He brought the 'Christian Empire' to a new stage of its development. Yet he antagonised the traditional governing class, drained the treasury, and failed in his military ambitions. Analysis will involve reference to

the fifth-century background and look briefly at the fortunes of Byzantium after Justinian's death. Close attention will be given to the historian Procopius.

**24.333 A History of Medieval Europe from Charlemagne to Philip the Fair**  
(Second half of year)

Designed as a successor to 24.201, this paper will cover approximately the same period (c.800-c.1296) and will deal with the political and cultural history of medieval European States (excluding England).

**24.334 Britain and Russia: a Century of Conflict**  
(Second half of year)

During the nineteenth century one of the major factors in the formulation of British foreign policy was fear of the growth of Russian power. What was British policy in response? To what extent does an examination of Russian foreign policy warrant the nineteenth century British interpretation of it?

**24.336 Popular Culture in Early Modern Europe**  
(Second half of year)

This paper will deal with the attitudes and values of ordinary people in Europe, c.1500-1750; in other words, popular culture in the wider sense of the term. Topics will include supernatural world views, oral culture, literature, sexuality, the law, protest, medicine, festivity, and the relationship between elite culture and popular culture. The emphasis will be on England and France.

**\*24.350 Black-White Relations in Australia 1788-1988**

**24.351 Waitangi: The Treaty, Law and the Tribunal**

(Second half of year)

An examination of the Treaty of Waitangi in its international context - in relation to other territories with indigenous peoples in the U.S., Canada and other British colonies - and in New Zealand history with special reference to the alienation of Maori resources and inquiries into Maori grievances, culminating in the work of the Waitangi Tribunal.

**24.353 State and Society in Twentieth-Century United States**

(Second half of year)

This paper is organised around the general theme of power and liberty in a constitutional democracy. Specific topics include the development in this century of civil liberties and civil rights, the growth of the state, and the expansion of executive power.

**24.370 Comparative History of Labour Relations**  
(First half of year)

This paper will attempt to look at the history of trade unions, strikes, and collective bargaining in a comparative framework in such countries as Britain, France, Sweden, the US, Japan, and New Zealand.

Note: Papers are taught on a half-year basis, one one-hour and one two-hour period per week. The following will be the sequence for 1991: 24.307-24.334; 24.315-24.351; 24.329-24.336; 24.331-24.333; 24.370-24.325. 24.353 will be taught in the second half of year.

Second half-year papers will start in the week beginning 24 June. Should their timetable permit, students may take a single paper or two or more papers from different sequences. It may prove impossible owing to pressure of numbers in certain classes to allow students to enrol for all the papers of their first choice.

**Asian History III**

**24.312 Sino-Japanese Relations since the Meiji Restoration**

(Second half of year)

The relations of the two principal nations of the Far

East, 1868-1945; the breakdown of China's informal overseas empire; the growth of Japan's ambition and capability and the impact of these upon China.

**24.330 British Imperialism in Southeast Asia**  
(First half of year)

A survey of British imperialism in the Southeast Asian context from the late eighteenth century to the years following the Second World War, with an emphasis on selected topics and areas.

**\*24.340 Theravada Buddhism and Islam in Southeast Asian History**

Note: Papers are taught on a half-year basis, one one-hour and one two-hour period per week, in the following sequence: 24.330-24.312. Second half year papers start during the week beginning 24 June.

**History for MA and Honours**

Students must attempt four papers (excluding 24.430 and 24.431 but including 24.410) in their first year and complete their remaining work in their second year. Students in full-time employment or with other demanding responsibilities may (with the permission of the Head of Department) attempt fewer papers in their first year and spread their remaining work over the one or, at most, two years following.

The thesis shall not exceed 50,000 words and two copies must be handed in to the Registrar in accordance with MA Regulation 11 (d). The dissertation shall be between 10,000 and 15,000 words and two copies must be submitted to the Registrar by 1 December in the student's final year.

The Head of Department may permit a student not attempting a thesis to include as one of the six papers required a special study (24.430), involving a research programme prepared in consultation with one or more staff members. In exceptional cases, a second special study (24.431) may be included.

Students are expected to report regularly to their supervisors and to attend a graduate research seminar in their second and (where applicable) third year.

**24.400 Topics in New Zealand History**

Discussion of research and controversy on several broad topics including race, class, gender, locality and nationality.

**\*24.401 The Political Development of the Pacific Islands from about 1870**

**\*24.402 Race and Class in Southern Africa in the 20th Century**

**24.403 Popular Protest in Australia, 1788-1990**

This paper examines the origin, nature and impact of popular protest in Australia, from the Aboriginal resistance to the European invasion to the counter cultural movements of recent times. The course is structured thematically and borrows on European and American models in its attempt to analyse the 'crowd'. A large body of primary sources forms the basis of seminar discussion, encouraging students to develop analytical skills.

**24.404 Kings, Lords and Commons: Tudor Government and Society 1485-1603**

This course involves the extensive use of primary materials. It concentrates on the changing role of parliament; the shifting relationship between king, lords and commons; and parliament's response to a wide variety of political, economic and social problems ranging from religion and witchcraft to treason and inflation.

**\*24.406 Individual and Community in Western**

**Europe 1050-1200****24.407 Indonesia and the Philippines: Colonial Experience and Post-colonial Problems**

This paper examines the similarities and contrasts in the colonial history of Indonesia and the Philippines and discusses some of the problems the two Republics have faced since independence.

**\*24.409 British Social History 1870-1914****24.410 The Historian's Craft: Theories, Methods and Techniques**

The course is designed to achieve two aims: (1) to provide a basic knowledge of the evolution of history as a discipline through a selective study of some of the most influential schools of history in the past; and (2) to establish a sound understanding of some modern trends in history. The latter would involve the examination of ideas and the application of methodologies which have been developed by the French Annales School, by the closer links being forged between history and the social sciences, and by the unique developments which have evolved in the historiography of Asia, Africa and the Pacific.

**24.413 The Origins of the Second World War**

This course is mainly concerned with the origins of the war in Europe and lays particular emphasis upon the relationship between internal and international affairs.

**\*24.420 China's Struggle for Modernity:****The Republican Era****†24.421 Special Topic**

To be prescribed by the Head of Department

**24.422 Topics in Late Roman Religion**

The course is designed to provide opportunity and guidance for seminar work on a variety of issues, pagan as well as Christian and Jewish, over a broad period of time (roughly the first five centuries of the common era).

In 1991 lectures will focus on changing attitudes to cosmic order and individual liberty during the period roughly 250-450 A.D. Pagans will be studied as well as Christians, and social forms as well as ideas.

**\*24.423 Marxist Historians and their Critics****\*24.424 Labouring Life in Nineteenth-Century Britain****24.425 Health, Medicine and Society in New Zealand and Britain, 1840-present day**

Topics to be investigated in this course include the development of the medical and allied professions, hospital and medical services, public health, mental health, Maori health, and women and health.

**\*24.429 Labour and Working Class History: New or Old? An introduction to research in labour and working class history.**

The paper will evaluate the relative merits of the new versus old labour history and compare labour working class movements in such countries as England, France, Germany, Sweden, the United States and New Zealand.

**24.430 Special Study**

A research programme, normally related to one of the papers 24.400 to 24.429, selected in consultation with one or more staff members and approved by the Head of Department.

**24.431 Special Study**

A research programme, normally related to one of the papers 24.400 to 24.429, selected in consultation with

one or more staff members and approved by the Head of Department.

Note: (i) There is no guarantee that all papers listed above will be available in any one year.

(ii) If enrolment for any MA paper other than 24.430 and 24.431 falls below five, students may be asked to transfer to another MA paper, or to pursue study in the field by enrolling in 24.430 or 24.431.

(iii) All students intending to enrol for MA must see the Head of Department before formally enrolling, preferably before the end of the previous year.

## DEPARTMENT OF MANAGEMENT STUDIES AND LABOUR RELATIONS

**Management Studies and Labour Relations I****72.101 Organisation and Management**

Introduction to organisational behaviour, including motivation, interpersonal relations, communication, leadership, and group processes. Organisations as mechanistic, organic, and political systems. Organisations as cultures. Psychic phenomena in organisations. Organisations as instruments of domination. Organisational analysis. Principles of management, including strategy, organising and control. Principles of labour relations, including employment, industrial legislation, trade unions, industrial conflict.

**Management Studies and Labour Relations II****72.204 Organisational Behaviour**

This paper provides a framework for understanding human behaviour in the context of organisations. It explores the interacting effects of the individual and the organisation. The course begins by focussing on the individual and then progressively broadens. It includes perception, learning, motivation and attitudes to work, stress, interpersonal and group communication, conflict, women managers, power, politics, organisational structures, culture and development.

**72.207 Labour Relations**

An introduction to the subject of labour relations with special reference to New Zealand. The objective of the course will be to develop overall understanding of industrial relations theory and practice. The institutional and legal frameworks of labour relations in New Zealand will be discussed with particular reference to the history and organisation of trade unions and employers' associations, the role of government, the legislation relating to employment and to the resolution of industrial disputes, and the procedures for determining pay and conditions of employment in the public and private sectors.

**Management Studies and Labour Relations III****72.303 Advanced Labour Relations**

Issues in Comparative Labour Relations. A number of labour relations systems are studied (including Britain, France, USA, Sweden, Japan, and West Germany) in order to assess the similarities and dissimilarities which exist between systems. Also topics relating to comparative collective bargaining, transnational corporations, industrial democracy, political unionism and supply-side labour relations.

**72.313 Business and Society**

The course examines the relationship between business institutions and the social, cultural and political climate within which they operate, exploring

the effects of business on society and of society on business. The content of the course will include a mix of (a) issues (eg business/government relationships, business and the environment, individual privacy, business ethics) and (b) industry case studies.

### **72.316 Organisational Psychology**

Organisations as psychological environments; functions and meanings of work; work attitudes; introduction to personnel psychology; occupational mental health; stress, quality of working life; groups and social influence at work; intergroup behaviour.

### **†72.317 Women in Organisations**

A study of the economic, social and political environment in which women join and participate in the workforce. Structural and attitudinal barriers limiting women's access to organisational positions. Women in management. Equal employment opportunities and other current issues.

### **72.325 Organisation Theory and Development**

Theories of organisations, including formation of new organisations, organisational change, and organisational death. Traditional and contemporary approaches to organisational structure and design. Organisational development and effectiveness. Organisational inertia and adaptation.

### **72.340 Special Topic**

In 1991: Trade Union Studies.

## **DEPARTMENT OF MATHEMATICS AND STATISTICS**

For prescriptions see Index.

## **DEPARTMENT OF MUSIC**

Note: \*This paper will not be taught during the current *Calendar* year.  
†This paper may not be taught during the current *Calendar* year.

### **Restrictions on entry to Courses:**

1. A student wishing to advance in Music for BA (that is beyond Stage I) who has little evidence of musical background is required to satisfy the Head of Department of Music that an appropriate standard has been reached. For this purpose short interviews will be held in late January of the year for which preparatory application has been made. A limited number of first-year places is available in the Department. Students should refer to the Faculty of Music Prescriptions for details.

### **Music I**

Music I (as prescribed for B.Mus)

28.100, 28.101, 28.103, 28.104, 28.105, 28.113, 28.114

### **Prescriptions for BA**

**28.104 Music and the 20th Century**

(One paper.)

A listening-based approach to music and its various types and forms in the period 1900-1960.

**28.105 Basic Musical Techniques**

(One paper.)

Fundamental written skills in music, and practice in keyboard and aural perception.

### **Music II**

Music II (as prescribed for B.Mus.)

28.201, 28.202, 28.203, \*28.204, 28.207, \*28.208, 28.214, 28.223.

### **Music III**

Music III (as prescribed for BMus).

29.301, †28.302, 28.303, \*28.304, 28.307, \*28.308, 28.314, †28.322, 28.323, †28.324.

### **Music for MA and Honours**

Seven papers are required for MA in Music: four papers and a thesis (which counts as three papers), as prescribed for MMus.

Entry to the course depends on interview by the Board of teaching members of the Music Faculty.

Where necessary, a candidate will be required to satisfy the Head of Department as to his or her proficiency as a performer, or ability to read an approved language other than English, or both.

Note: (1) The availability of these papers will depend on the number of students and their choice of papers.

(2) The specific requirements for choice of papers are given in MA Schedule (22).

## **PACIFIC STUDIES**

There are two papers in Pacific Studies, both at Stage I, which are taught in alternate years by visiting academics from the Pacific, as well as Auckland University staff. A new course on Samoan language, also at Stage I, will start this year. The papers are co-ordinated by the Centre for Pacific Studies. Enquiries about them should be directed to the Director of the Centre.

Pacific Studies papers are accepted as pre or corequisites for various other papers on the Pacific taught in the Departments of Anthropology, Education, Geography, History and Sociology. See the course prescriptions for those departments.

### **79.100 Topics in the Political Economy of the Pacific**

An introduction to the processes of political, economic and social change in the region, with case studies of particular countries.

### **\*79.101 Topics in Pacific Arts**

A survey of selected Pacific languages, oratory and verbal arts, music, dance and traditional history and issues of identity.

### **478.100 Samoan Language for Beginners**

This course will focus on oral Samoan to develop skills in listening, speaking and writing Samoan.

### **\*478.101 Samoan Language for Fluent Speakers**

This course aims to provide fluent speakers with an awareness of the relationship of Samoan language to other Polynesian languages, and be more sensitive to the social situations and speech styles, social factors which effect change in the language; language as an expression of Samoan culture and identity and ways of preserving them within an environment of change.

Note: \*This paper will not be taught during the current *Calendar* year.

## **DEPARTMENT OF PHILOSOPHY**

Fuller details concerning the content of Philosophy papers are contained in a booklet entitled *Department of Philosophy: Course Outlines, 1991*. Free copies are available from the Secretary, Room 7, 1 Alfred Street. This booklet also contains general information about the Department, a guide to prerequisites and choice of

papers, information about coursework and assessment, and a list of the prescribed and recommended texts for each paper. Students are strongly advised to consult this booklet and seek advice concerning their proposed course of study before enrolment.

Prerequisites and restrictions for Philosophy papers are set out in detail in the BA Schedule and should be studied carefully before enrolment. Several Philosophy II papers may be relevant to students majoring in other subjects; students wishing to take these papers without the normal prerequisites are advised to consult the Head of Department. Note that certain Political Studies I papers are accepted as prerequisites for some Philosophy II papers of interest to students majoring in Political Studies. Note that 29.101 is a prerequisite for 29.201, 29.305, 29.306 and for the MA in Philosophy. Students may obtain an exemption from this prerequisite by passing a special examination in Logic to be held immediately before enrolment week. Students interested in sitting this examination should see the Head of Department as soon as possible, preferably before the summer vacation. A pass in this special examination carries no credit towards a degree.

Note: \*This paper will not be taught during the current *Calendar* year.  
†This paper will not be taught during the current *Calendar* year unless sufficient staff is available.

## Philosophy I

Note: Two hours per week for each paper including lectures and tutorials.

### 29.100 Introduction to Metaphysics and Theory of Knowledge

Metaphysics deals with fundamental problems about the nature of the world and human beings (for example, the question of the existence of God, the relationship between mind and body, and the problem of free will and determinism); the Theory of Knowledge studies the limits and justification of human knowledge. The paper includes the study of selected works of Plato and Descartes.

#### 29.101 Introduction to Logic

Logic is the study of argument. This paper develops an understanding of the idea of a valid argument through the study of two logical systems - propositional logic and predicate logic. Common fallacies in reasoning, and the nature of inductive inference are also discussed.

#### 29.102 Ethics

Ethics is the philosophical study of morality. This paper studies several ethical theories (including Kantianism, utilitarianism, and virtue ethics); relates these theories to some practical moral issues (for example, euthanasia, racial and sexual discrimination, and the morality of war); and provides an introduction to fundamental questions about the nature of morality, such as the objectivity or subjectivity of values.

#### \*29.103 Social Philosophy

#### \*29.104 Introduction to Ethics and Social Philosophy

#### Philosophy II

Note: Except where noted otherwise, each paper has one two-hour class per week.

### \*29.200 Philosophy of Mind

### 29.201 Logic II

An introduction to set theory and its importance for logic and philosophy; a study of important classical and non-classical logical systems (e.g., classical propositional logic, multi-valued logics, modal logic).

Note: Three one-hour classes per week throughout the year.

### \*29.202 Philosophy of Language

#### 29.203 Philosophy of Science

A study of scientific method; the distinction between science and non-science; the nature of scientific explanation, prediction, laws and causation; and the status of scientific theories. Some important episodes in the history of science will be discussed.

Note: Three one-hour classes per week, in the second and third THIRD of the year only.

#### 29.204 Greek Philosophy

An introduction to Greek Philosophy up to the time of Aristotle. A survey of the work of pre-Socratic philosophers, with an emphasis on their developing awareness of the importance of argument and explanation. An introduction to Plato's *Republic*, and a detailed examination of his *Phaedrus*. A survey of the basic concepts of Aristotle's philosophy.

#### 29.205 Political Philosophy II

Philosophical problems concerning the relationship amongst the members of society, involving issues of liberty, autonomy and authority. Topics will include a study of contractarian views and their application to the Treaty of Waitangi.

#### \*29.206 History of Philosophy IIA

#### 29.207 Philosophy of Religion

A study of the relationship between reason and faith; is belief in the Judaeo-Christian God reasonable? Topics include: the problem of evil, the meaningfulness of religious language, novel concepts of god, the possibility of immortality, Hume on miracles, and Kierkegaard and William James on faith and reason.

#### 29.208 Metaphysics and Theory of Knowledge II

More advanced study of topics in these two areas, which in 1991 will include problems in theory of knowledge and the philosophy of perception, based on a study of the British empiricists, John Locke and George Berkeley; and a study of contemporary discussion of the problem of free will and determinism.

#### 29.209 Continental Philosophy II

A study of Kant, Hegel (*The Phenomenology of Spirit*) and Schopenhauer.

Note: One two-hour and one one-hour class per week, in the first and second THIRD year only.

#### 29.210 Applied Ethics

Philosophical analysis of contemporary moral problems, such as the morality of nuclear deterrence, abortion, reverse discrimination, pornography and animal rights.

#### \*29.211 History of Philosophy IIB

#### 29.212 Philosophy of the Arts

A range of philosophical questions about the creation of artworks, what kinds of things artworks are, and the conditions for their interpretation, appreciation and evaluation.

#### 29.213 Philosophical Issues in Feminism

A selection of philosophical issues which arise within feminist thinking (for example, the nature of sexual equality; concepts of patriarchy, oppression and

exploitation and their use in feminist analyses of women's social position; the nature of sexual harassment).

Note: Two two-hour classes per week in the second HALF year only.

**\*29.214 Special Topic**

**\*29.215 Special Topic**

**Philosophy III**

Note: (i) Students wishing to advance to MA in Philosophy should note the prerequisites set out in section (23) of the MA Schedule.

(ii) Except where noted otherwise, each paper has one two-hour class per week.

**\*29.300 Theory of Knowledge III**

**\*29.301 Metaphysics III**

**29.302 History of Philosophy (Ancient and Mediaeval)**

A study of mediaeval philosophy (including the work of Abelard, Aquinas, Augustine, Duns Scotus and Ockham) in relation to its ancient roots in Platonism and Aristotelianism.

**29.303 Continental Philosophy III**

A study of Nietzsche and Heidegger

Note: One two-hour and one one-hour class per week in the first and second THIRD year only.

**29.304 Ethics III**

Advanced philosophical study of moral theory (in both normative and meta-ethics), including Aristotelian ethics, moral dilemmas, feminist ethics, objectivity and moral realism.

**29.305 Logic III**

A course in mathematical logic.

Note: Three one-hour classes per week throughout the year.

**29.306 Language, Truth and Meaning**

The relationship between language, thought and reality. Topics include: classical theories of truth, Tarski's semantic conception of truth and Kripke on truth.

**29.307 Topics in Recent Philosophy**

In 1991, topics will include the nature of knowledge and the challenge of relativism, especially from the sociology of knowledge; and contemporary discussion of the mind/body problem.

**\*29.308 Special Topic**

**†29.309 Special Topic**

**29.310 Political Philosophy III**

A study of current ideas about justice, equality, power and rights.

Note: This paper has the same content as Political Studies paper 30.305 and in 1991 will be taught by that Department.

**Philosophy for MA and Honours**

Prerequisites for enrolment for this degree are set out in the MA degree regulations and section (23) of the MA Schedule.

Seven papers, or, with the approval of the Head of Department, four papers and a thesis, are required for this degree. One paper may be chosen from those offered in Philosophy III (29.300 to 29.310) which the student has not previously passed. All other papers are to be selected from 29.400 to 29.420, not all of which are offered in any one year. The selection must be approved by the Head of the Department, who will generally require that the chosen papers fall within at least three of the following areas of Philosophy: (i) Theoretical Philosophy (Metaphysics, Epistemology, etc.); (ii) Practical Philosophy (Ethics, Political Philosophy, etc.); (iii) Logic; and (iv) History of Philosophy. Students intending to enrol for the MA in Philosophy *must* consult the Head of Department

towards the end of the previous year. The choice of papers is to be made from the following list:

**29.400 Ethics**

**29.401 Kant**

**29.402 Wittgenstein**

**29.403 Metaphysics**

**29.404 Philosophy of Language**

**29.405 Philosophical Psychology**

**29.406 Philosophy of Natural Science**

**29.407 Philosophy of Social Science**

**29.408 Philosophy of History**

**29.409 Philosophy of Mathematics**

**29.410 Philosophical Logic**

**29.411 Mathematical Logic**

**29.412 Topics in the History of Philosophy I**

**29.413 Topics in the History of Philosophy II**

**29.414 Topics in the History of Philosophy III**

**29.415 Topics in Modern Philosophy**

**29.416 Modern Continental Philosophy**

**29.417 Aesthetics**

**29.418 Special Topic**

**29.419 Special Topic**

**29.420 Special Topic**

**29.601 Thesis**

Equivalent to three papers.

Note that, under Clause 7 of the MA Degree Regulations, permission may be given for a candidate for the MA to take up to two papers in another subject or subjects related to the candidate's research interests.

## DEPARTMENT OF PHYSICS

### Physics I

**31.101 The Physical Universe**

The paper is descriptive in nature, requires a minimal background in mathematics and physics and will give an overview of the major developments in physics from the times of Aristotle, Galileo and Newton to the developments of quantum physics and relativity in more recent times. For further details consult the BSc schedule.

**31.102 The World of Physics**

This paper seeks to provide an understanding of many of the phenomena of the natural world around us and the physics of many human activities. For further details consult the BSc schedule.

## DEPARTMENT OF POLITICAL STUDIES

Note: \*This paper will not be taught during the current *Calendar* year.

†This paper will not be taught during the current *Calendar* year unless sufficient staff is available.

### Political Studies I

**30.100 American Government: Themes and Practices in a Liberal Democracy**

(Second half of year)

**30.106 Foreign and Defence Policies World Survey**

(First half of year)

**30.107 An Introduction to New Zealand Politics and Government**

**30.109 European Foundations of New Zealand Political Values**

**Political Studies II****\*30.200 Major Figures in Political Thought****30.201 British Politics and Society**

(Second half of Year)

**30.204 A Topic in the Structure of International Relations**

In 1991: New Zealand Foreign Policy.

(First half of year)

**\*30.208 A Topic in European Politics****30.209 Modern Political Ideologies**

(Second half of year)

**30.211 Public Administration: Central and Local**

(First half of year)

**30.212 Australian Politics**

(Second half of year)

**\*30.213 Special Topic**

To be prescribed by Head of Department.

(Second half of year)

**30.214 Democracy in Theory and Practice**

(First half of year)

**30.215 Soviet Communism in Theory and Practice****30.217 South Pacific Foreign Affairs**

(First and second half of year respectively)

**Asian Politics II****\*30.210 Southeast Asian Foreign Policies****†30.216 Politics of Japan**

(Second half of year)

**Political Studies III****30.301 A Topic in the Structure of International Relations and the Formulation of Foreign Policy**

In 1991: United States Foreign Policy Decision-making.

(Second half of year)

**30.302 A Topic in Conflict Resolution**

In 1991: Regulation V. Revolution in Southern Africa.

(Second half of year)

**\*30.304 Political Learning and Political Behaviour**

Social Change, Political Environment and Voting Behaviour in Western Democracies.

**30.305 Studies in Contemporary Political Ideas****30.306 Data Analysis in Political Studies**

(First half of year)

**30.307 Integration and Nationalism in Europe**

Nationalism versus Integration in East and West Europe.

(Second half of year)

**30.309 Explaining Political Action**

In 1991: Media audiences.

(Second half of year)

**30.310 Public Administration: Theory and Process**

(Second half of year)

**\*30.311 Comparative Public Policy****30.312 Green Politics**

Analysis of the Green Parties, the politics of current and emerging ecological issues, and the philosophical basis of a distinctive Green politics.

(First half of year)

**\*30.314 Special Topic****Asian Politics III****†30.313 Politics of China**

(First half of year)

†This paper will not be taught during the current *Calendar* year unless sufficient staff is available.**Political Studies for MA and Honours**

Four papers and a thesis (30.601) which shall count as three papers; or six papers and a research essay (30.603) which shall count as one paper; or seven papers. The papers shall be selected from 30.400 to 30.420 and 30.500 as prescribed for DipLGA. A candidate presenting a thesis must attempt four papers in the first year.

All candidates shall take four papers in their first year, and will be expected to complete the remainder, being three papers, or a thesis, or two papers and a research essay, in the following year. Only in special circumstances and with the approval of the Head of Department will permission be given for a candidate taking seven papers or six papers and a research essay either to present three papers in the first year and the remainder in the following year, or to spread the course over three years by taking either one paper or the research essay in the third year. Other combinations may be approved in special cases under certain conditions.

A candidate presenting a research essay must submit it at the end of the second term in the year of presentation. The research essay must be on a topic approved by the Head of Department and shall not exceed 20,000 words.

The thesis shall not, without express permission of the Head of Department, exceed 60,000 words.

The prerequisites for the MA course are eight papers in the subjects Political Studies and Asian Politics including three Stage III papers.

**†30.400 Ideology and Politics in Asia****\*30.401 A Topic on the Role of Minority Ethnic Groups in Politics****30.402 A Topic on Urban Government and Politics****30.403 Special Topic**

In 1991: The Political Economy of Information.

(First half of year)

**\*30.404 Australian Politics****30.407 Thomas Hobbes and His Times****\*30.408 Special Topic****\*30.409 A Topic on the Politics of Asian Nations****30.410 Special Topic**

In 1991: Public Choice and Liberal Theory.

**\*30.411 A Topic on Political Thought and Practice****30.412 A Topic on American Politics**

In 1991: Issues of the contemporary Presidency and the modern Supreme Court.

**\*30.413 Public Administration****\*30.415 Democratic and Libertarian Socialism****30.416 A Topic in the Comparative Politics of Small Democracies**

In 1991: Scandinavian Models in Comparative Perspective.

**\*30.417 ) To be prescribed by the****\*30.418 ) Head of Department.****30.419 A Topic in New Zealand Politics****30.420 Elections and Voters****DEPARTMENT OF PSYCHOLOGY**

Note: (i) Students taking advanced courses are advised to consult with the lecturers concerned before purchasing books.

(ii) The Schedule attached to the Course Regulations for the Degree of BA should be consulted for pre and corequisites.

\*This paper will not be taught during the current *Calendar* year.

**Psychology I**

Two papers are offered for Psychology I which together provide a general introduction to the psychological study of behaviour.

The papers may be taken separately. However, a pass in 32.108 or 32.118 and 32.109 or 32.119 is necessary for entry to Stage II.

**32.108 Introduction to General Psychology**

Topics covered include: motivation; the emotions; the neurobiological basis of behaviour; social behaviour and social influence; developmental psychology; mental abilities and measurement; personality; psychopathology and its treatments.

Introduction to General Psychology is also taught on the campus of the Auckland College of Education with the paper number 32.118.

**32.109 Introduction to Experimental Psychology**

Topics covered include: learning, sensation and perception; memory and cognition; statistics.

(Laboratory attendance of 2 hours per week is required.)

Introduction to Experimental Psychology is also taught on the campus of the Auckland College of Education with the paper number 32.119.

**Psychology II**

A pass in three Stage II papers in Psychology is necessary for entry to Stage III.

**32.210 Learning**

Concerned with the two major aspects of learning schedule control and stimulus control. Topics include: schedules of reinforcement, law of effect, superstitution, Premack theory, choice and matching, generalisation gradients, transfer tests, transposition, blocking and overshadowing.

**32.220 Human Experimental Psychology**

An introduction to the systematic study of human behaviour, emphasising experimental techniques of evaluating theories, and concentrating on topics in perception.

**32.225 Special Topic**

Enrolment in this paper, which will be available in 1990 and 1991 only and is intended for students who have passed 32.230 but not yet covered Cognitive Neuroscience, requires specific permission of the Head of Department.

**32.230 Brain and Behaviour**

A basic introduction to the structure and function of the brain, with applications to animal and human behaviour.

**32.240 Social and Developmental Psychology**

An introduction to the study of social behaviour and change across the life-span in human behaviour. Half the paper will include such topics as interpersonal processes, nonverbal behaviour, small group processes, attitude and attitude change, the physical environment, social interaction and intergroup relations. The other half of the paper will be devoted to behaviour changes in infancy, adolescence and adulthood. Socioemotional developments will be emphasised.

**Psychology III**

Either a pass in 32.306 and three other Stage III papers in Psychology or in special circumstances and with approval of the Head of Department 32.306 and two

other Stage III papers in Psychology is necessary for entry to MA and Honours in Psychology.

**32.301 The Psychology of Individual Differences**

A study of individual differences and their measurement, and of the construction and use of psychometric tests.

**32.303 Cognitive Science**

Computation-based theories of the mind, including symbol-based and connectionist models. Topics covered include attention, pattern recognition, memory, languages and thinking.

Note: Prior experience with computers is not necessary.

**32.304 Theory and Systems of Personality**

A study of different conceptions of personality with emphasis on their relevance to personal growth, social contexts and psychotherapy.

**†32.305 Physiological Psychology**

An advanced study of the physiological bases of behaviour with emphasis on research methodology.

**32.306 The Design of Psychological Experiments**

A course to help students design and analyse experiments in psychology, including topics in the analysis of variance, multiple regression, and categorical analysis. An introduction to the use of computers in data analysis through the BMDP and SAS statistical packages.

**32.307 The Psychological Analysis of Vision and Hearing**

Aspects of visual perception affecting behaviour in a variety of environments will be discussed. A study of the effects of noise on people and some relations between normal and pathological hearing will also be covered.

**32.308 Research Topic**

A research topic undertaken under the supervision of a staff member and written up for presentation instead of a final paper.

**32.309 Learning**

A discussion of how behaviour is controlled and modified in animals by consequent reinforcers and punishers. Emphasis is on laboratory research using animals, with some human data also considered. The theoretical approach taken is mainly quantitative.

**32.311 Social Psychology**

This course concentrates on social functioning in both intergroup and intragroup settings.

**32.312 Organisational Psychology**

An examination of personnel psychology, and the individual and social psychology of work and the development of group and teams in organisations.

**†32.313 Special Topic in Psychology****32.314 Ergonomics**

An overview of methods of improving human well-being and productivity by optimising person-machine-environment systems

**32.315 Abnormal Psychology**

This course is concerned with the major problems of children and adults that cause people to seek or receive psychological help. Topics include classification and effects of defining and labelling individuals as 'abnormal', models and practice of service delivery (institutions, community mental health, prevention), and research methods.

**32.316 Life-span Developmental Psychology**

Social and cognitive aspects of human development will be considered in depth, with emphases on both



empirical and theoretical approaches.

### **Psychology for MA and Honours**

(Four papers and a thesis 32.601 which is equivalent to three papers.)

Students in consultation with the Head of the Department will select their papers from among the following:

#### **\*32.401 History of Psychology**

An historical account of psychology with special reference to the aspirations and activities of influential psychologists.

#### **\*32.402 Quantitative Psychology**

The quantitative analysis of psychological phenomena.

#### **32.403 Applied Analysis of Human Behaviour**

An examination of general issues in behaviour analysis, of approaches to psychological assessment, and of the application of behavioural techniques to psychological phenomena.

#### **32.404 Sensation and Perception**

An advanced treatment of modern psychophysics and of the psychology of vision and hearing.

#### **†32.406 Physiological Psychology**

A study of current issues in the physiological bases of behaviour.

#### **32.408 Clinical Neuropsychology**

An examination of the relation between the brain and mental functioning with an emphasis on clinical cases of brain damage.

#### **32.409 Abnormal Psychology**

An advanced study of topics within abnormal psychology including particular disorders, and treatment and prevention methods.

#### **\*32.410 Neuropsychology**

An advanced treatment of functional models of the human brain and neurolinguistics.

#### **32.411 Advanced Operant Behaviour**

An advanced study of selected topics in learning at the level of current research.

#### **32.412 Social Psychology**

An examination of selected research topics in social psychology with a special emphasis on the underlying theories.

#### **32.413 Contemporary Issues in Developmental Psychology**

An examination of current research on aspects of socioemotional development.

#### **32.415 Critical Issues in Psychology**

An examination of methodological, metatheoretical and social issues affecting the study and practice of psychology.

#### **\*32.417 Special Topic in Psychology**

Physiological psychology laboratory techniques.

#### **\*32.418 Special Topic in Psychology**

**32.419 The Design of Psychological Experiments**  
A course to help students design and analyse experiments in psychology, including topics in the analysis of variance, multiple regression, and categorical analysis. An introduction to the use of computers in data analysis through the BMDP and SAS statistical packages.

Note: Students who have already passed 32.306 are not eligible to take this paper.

#### **32.420 Research Topic in Psychology**

A research topic undertaken under the supervision of

a staff member and written up for presentation instead of a final paper.

#### **32.421 Theories and Systems of Psychotherapy**

A study of the theoretical bases of various systems of psychotherapy with particular emphasis on problems associated with matching systems to individuals.

#### **32.422 Learning Disabilities**

This course provides training in the theory, identification and treatment of learning disabilities. Both developmental and acquired disabilities are covered.

*Prerequisites:* 32.210 and 32.301

*Corequisite:* 32.403

#### **32.423 Issues in Cognitive Science**

An introduction to cognitive science with a principal focus on cognitive psychology. The course will discuss both fundamental issues concerning the mind-computer analogy, and also highly practical issues concerning the impact and use of information technology in everyday life.

#### **32.424 Mind and Brain**

This course provides an introduction to cognitive neuropsychology. Topics covered will include studies of perception, memory, and language from a neuropsychological perspective.

#### **32.425 Gender Issues in Human Development**

A study of the impact of gender on psychological and social development and functioning, with an emphasis on theories and recent research.

## **DEPARTMENT OF ROMANCE LANGUAGES**

Note: \*This paper will not be taught during the current *Calendar* year.  
†This paper will not be taught during the current *Calendar* year unless sufficient staff is available.

## **FRENCH**

### **French Stage I**

A guide to French Studies at Auckland is available from the Romance Languages Department, Arts I Building.

### **Language Papers**

#### **34.100 Language Acquisition**

Students with a minimum of four years' Secondary School French. Classes are streamed on the basis of a streaming test. Oral and written expression in French, aural and written comprehension of French.

Three hours per week.

#### **\*34.102 Language Comprehension**

Aural and reading comprehension using texts on contemporary issues.

#### **34.104 Language Comprehension in Specific Areas A: Science**

Aural and reading comprehension using general science texts.

#### **†34.106 Language Comprehension in Specific Areas B: \*Social Science, †Art History**

Aural and reading comprehension using texts in areas or disciplines to be specified each year. (A minimum of five candidates per area is required.)

#### **†34.108 Language Comprehension in Music**

Comprehension of written and sung French for music students. For performance students, the listening

comprehension examination will be replaced by performance of songs and arias in French.

### **34.151, 34.152 French for Beginners 1 and 2**

This is a four-skill language course for beginners or near-beginners. These papers must be taken together, except that, with the consent of the Head of Department, a student with a satisfactory knowledge of French may enrol for 34.152 only.

### **Text Paper**

#### **34.109 French History and Civilisation**

History, geography, human geography, and culture; illustrated by literature, art, sociology, etc.

Two hours per week.

### **French Stage II**

#### **34.200 Language Acquisition**

Oral and written expression in French, aural and written comprehension; tested in some or all of the following ways: comprehension, conversation, composition, exposition of an unprepared topic; translation, dictation, reading aloud; with linguistic and stylistic analysis.

#### **34.201 Nineteenth and/or Twentieth Century Literary Texts**

1991: Shorter Fiction.

#### **34.202 Nineteenth and/or Twentieth Century Literary Texts**

1991: Poetry

#### **\*34.203 Nineteenth Century Literary Texts**

#### **34.205 Mediaeval Texts**

#### **\*34.210 Le Français des Métiers**

Written and oral application of the language to tourism, secretariat, the professions.

#### **34.214 Applied Language Studies**

A study of the structure of French with reference to different linguistic models and their relevance for teaching.

#### **\*34.218 Historicity and Variation in French**

Introduction to French linguistics, the history of French, and regional variation in French.

### **French Stage III**

#### **34.300 Language Acquisition**

Oral and written expression in French, aural and written comprehension; tested in some or all of the following ways: comprehension, conversation, composition, exposition of an unprepared topic; translation, dictation, reading aloud; with linguistic and stylistic analysis.

#### **\*34.302 Seventeenth and Eighteenth Century Texts**

#### **†34.306 Mediaeval French Language**

#### **\*34.307 A Literary Topic**

#### **\*34.308 A Topic in Nineteenth and/or Twentieth Century Literature**

#### **34.309 A Topic in Nineteenth and/or Twentieth Century Literature**

1991: Twentieth Century Literature and Society

#### **34.310 Seventeenth, Eighteenth and Nineteenth Century Literary Texts**

1991: Théâtre

#### **34.318 L'Espace Francophone: French in France and Overseas**

#### **\*34.320 Traduction et Interprétation Consécutive du français**

(Enrolment by permission of the Head of Department.)

### **\*34.322 A Linguistic Topic**

### **Foreign Language Reading Examination (French)**

#### **34.500 FLRE in French**

(Without lectures.)

#### **\*34.501 FLRE in French**

(With lectures.)

Note: Students wishing to gain this qualification are advised as follows: If you passed in French at Bursaries or Scholarship levels, you should with some reading in French in your own subject be able to pass in 34.500.

A pass in 34.500 gives a prerequisite qualification but does not count towards a degree.

### **French for MA and Honours**

The requirements are given in section (9) of the MA Schedule, and Languages and Literature including French in section (17) of the MA Schedule. Paper 34.400 is compulsory, and a minimum pass of 50% in this paper is required. All intending MA students should consult staff in the year preceding enrolment.

#### **34.400 Language Acquisition**

Oral and written use of French, tested by: comprehension, conversation, composition, exposition of an unprepared topic, translation, dictation, reading aloud; with linguistic and stylistic analysis.

(Prerequisite: 34.300.)

#### **Pre-Modern Language and Literature:**

#### **34.401 A Special Topic in Old French Language and/or Literature**

1991: Old Picard

#### **\*34.412 A Special Topic in Old French Language and/or Literature**

#### **34.402 A Special Topic in Middle French Language and/or Literature**

#### **\*34.413 A Special Topic in Middle French Language and/or Literature**

#### **Modern Literature (17th to 20th Centuries):**

#### **34.423 A Special Topic**

1991: Nouvelles structures dans le roman du 20e siècle.

#### **\*34.424 A Special Topic**

#### **\*34.425 A Special Topic**

#### **\*34.426 A Special Topic**

#### **\*34.427 An Approved Topic**

#### **French Linguistics:**

#### **\*34.416 A Special Topic**

#### **34.417 Applied Linguistics**

#### **34.419 Creolization of Language: French**

#### **\*34.420 An Approved Topic**

#### **Other Aspects of French Civilisation:**

#### **\*34.410 A Special Topic**

#### **\*34.411 A Special Topic**

#### **\*34.428 A Special Topic**

#### **\*34.429 An Approved Topic**

#### **Research Options:**

#### **34.421 Research Techniques in French Language, Literature or Civilisation**

#### **34.431 Research Techniques in French Language, Literature or Civilisation**

In both 34.421 and 34.431, one aspect will be studied in which an original investigation must be undertaken. Prerequisites may be required by the Head of Department.

#### **34.601 Thesis**

(Equivalent to 3 papers.)

#### **34.603 Research Essay**

(Equivalent to 1 paper)

## ITALIAN

### Italian I

A guide to Italian studies at Auckland is available from the Romance Languages Department, Arts I Building. Students are warmly invited to visit the Italian lecturers before enrolment to discuss courses. It is best to phone to make an appointment.

(Methods of assessment for all Italian papers - coursework, examinations, etc. - are determined at the beginning of the year in consultation with the students for each course.)

### †35.104 Italian Language in Opera and Song

Primarily intended for singers. Comprehension and pronunciation. Study of Italian texts of operatic libretti, madrigals, songs. May be taken by both BA students and students from the Faculty of Music.

### 35.106 and 35.107 Italian Language Studies (i) and (ii)

Open to beginners and more advanced students, these papers must be taken together. Students learn to speak, read and write Italian and in addition, aspects of the history of Italian culture, contemporary life, society, politics and thought will be studied.

### 35.110 Images of Women in 20th Century Italian Literature

A study of the representation of women's experience in works by Italian women and men, using texts translated into English. One two-hour lecture and one tutorial per week. (Separate tutorial for students taking Italian language papers, who will read short texts later in the year in Italian.)

(Second half of year)

### †35.111 A Special Topic Italian II

#### 35.200 Language Acquisition

Developing writing, reading, aural and oral skills at a more advanced level through practice on a wide range of written texts and current audio-visual material. Three hours per week. Weekly assignments. May be combined with any one or more of the following papers for Italian II:

#### 35.204 Italian Fiction and Cinema

Three hours per week. (Second half of year.)

#### 35.209 Major Themes in Italian Renaissance Culture (A)

General topics are covered in English but texts are read in Italian. This paper is for students advancing in Italian.

#### 35.210 Major Themes in Italian Renaissance Culture (B)

This paper is taught entirely in English for students not advancing in Italian and has no Italian language prerequisite or corequisite.

#### \*35.230 Twentieth Century Poetry

Introduction to Poetics and Italian Poetry in the Twentieth Century.

#### 35.231 A Special Topic in Italian Literature

In 1991: Drama and poetry in Italy in the twentieth century.

### Italian III

#### 35.300 Language Acquisition

This paper builds on the language skills acquired in Italian 35.200 focusing on selected topics in more

specialised contexts. Three hours per week. Weekly assignments. May be combined with any one or more of the following papers for Italian III:

#### 35.302 Fourteenth Century Literary Texts: Dante

#### \*35.303 Fourteenth Century Literary Texts:

Boccaccio and Petrarca

#### †35.321 Linguistics: Principles and Methods Applied to the Study of Contemporary Italian

#### 35.322 L'Italiano nel Mondo del Lavoro: Working with Italian

A practical course in translation from Italian to English.

#### 35.331 A Special Topic in Italian Literature or Film

#### 35.332 A Special Topic in Italian Literature

In 1991: Breaking the Frame

#### 35.333 A Special Topic in Italian Literature

Italian for MA and Honours

The specific requirements for Italian are given in MA Schedule (15) and Languages and Literature including Italian in MA Schedule (17). Paper 35.400 is compulsory and a minimum pass of 50% in this paper is required. All intending MA students should consult staff in the year preceding enrolment.

In any given year only a small number of the following papers will be available.

#### 35.400 Language Acquisition: Oral and Written Use of Italian

Tested in some or all of the following ways: translation, composition, conversation, comprehension, reading.

#### 35.402 An Approved Topic in Linguistics

1991: L'italiano nel mondo del Lavoro: Working with Italian.

#### 35.403 Linguistics: Principles and Methods Applied to the Study of Contemporary Italian

#### 35.404 A Special Linguistics Topic

#### 35.405 Thirteenth Century Literature

#### 35.406 The Works of Dante

#### 35.407 The Works of Boccaccio and the Genesis of Italian Prose

#### 35.408 The Italian Theatre of the Renaissance: Teatro Erudito and Commedia dell'Arte

#### 35.411 Verismo, with Special Reference to the Works of Verga

#### 35.412 Pirandello and 20th Century Drama: Futurism, Pirandello, Dario Fo

#### 35.413 A Special Topic in 20th Century Italian Poetry

#### 35.414 A Special Topic in the 20th Century Italian Novel

#### 35.415 Politics and the Novel

#### 35.420 Methodologies of Literary Criticism

#### 35.421 An Approved Topic in Linguistics

#### 35.422 Cinematic Discourse

#### 35.423 An Approved Literary or Cultural Topic

35.424 An Approved Literary or Cultural Topic  
Intending MA students should consult with the Italian staff during their final BA year.

#### 35.601 Thesis

(Equivalent to 3 papers.)

#### 35.603 Research Essay

(Equivalent to 1 paper)

## SPANISH

### Spanish Stage I

#### \*45.101 Selected Texts in Twentieth Century Literature

One lecture a week; compulsory tutorials; two essays.

#### 45.102 Language: Oral, Aural and Reading Comprehension, Translation from Spanish to English

One lecture per week; one oral class; one language laboratory session.

#### 45.103 Contemporary Hispanic Civilisation

One lecture a week; compulsory tutorials; two essays one tutorial paper.

#### 45.104, 45.105 Language Acquisition

Four lectures; one oral class; one language laboratory session; total 6 hours per week.

Language acquisition; oral and written expression in Spanish, aural and written comprehension; tested in some or all of the following ways: comprehension, explanation, conversation, composition, translation, dictation, reading aloud; with linguistic and stylistic analysis.

#### 45.107, 45.108 Language Acquisition (Advanced)

Four lectures, one oral class, one language laboratory session, total six hours per week.

A special advanced course for students who already have a good command of Spanish. Acceptance into the course is on the basis of a preliminary test and permission of the Head of the Section.

### Spanish Stage II

#### 45.200 Language Acquisition

Two lectures; one oral class; one language laboratory with tape.

Language acquisition: oral and written expression in Spanish, aural and written comprehension; tested in some or all of the following ways: Comprehension, explanation, conversation, composition, translation, dictation, reading aloud; with linguistic and stylistic analysis.

#### \*45.201 Golden Age Literary Texts

One lecture weekly; compulsory tutorials; two essays, one tutorial paper.

#### 45.202 Nineteenth and Twentieth Century Literary Texts

One lecture per week, compulsory tutorials; two essays, one tutorial paper.

#### 45.203 Literary Analysis, with Prescribed Texts

One lecture per week, compulsory tutorials; two essays, one tutorial paper.

#### 45.204 Twentieth Century Latin American Texts

One lecture per week, compulsory tutorials, two essays, one tutorial paper.

#### 45.206 Spanish Study Abroad Programme

One lecture per week second and third terms in Auckland; one essay by end of third term. Four hours intensive language course per day and two hours lectures per week for four weeks in Spain; scheduled cultural activities in Spain; written and oral examination in Spain.

#### \*45.207 Modern Hispanic Literature

One lecture and one tutorial per week. Two essays and one tutorial paper.

#### 45.208 Language Acquisition (Advanced)

One lecture; one oral class and one practical language

class. The follow-up course to Spanish 45.107, 45.108 developing and consolidating language skills acquired in the Stage I course.

#### \*45.209 'Practicing Critics' in the Hispanic World

One lecture and one tutorial per week. Two essays and one tutorial paper. This paper provides a study of the intellectual currents in contemporary Hispanic writing. The texts will consist of critical works by well-known creative Hispanic writers.

#### \*45.210 Introduction to Spanish Literature and its Context

One lecture and one tutorial per week. Two essays and one tutorial paper.

This course will seek to generate a core of basic knowledge and critical awareness concerning the history of Spanish literature and its social and cultural context.

### Spanish Stage III

#### 45.300 Language Acquisition

One lecture; one practical language class; one oral class.

Language acquisition; oral and written expression in Spanish, aural and written expression in Spanish, aural and written comprehension; tested in some or all of the following ways: comprehension, explanation, conversation, composition, translation, dictation, reading aloud; with linguistic and stylistic analysis.

#### \*45.301 Mediaeval Literature

One lecture per week; compulsory tutorials; two essays, one tutorial paper.

#### \*45.302 Golden Age Literature

One lecture per week; compulsory tutorials; two essays, one tutorial paper.

#### \*45.303 Nineteenth Century Literary Texts

One lecture per week; compulsory tutorials; two essays; one tutorial paper.

#### \*45.304 Twentieth Century Literary Texts

One lecture per week; compulsory tutorials; two essays, one tutorial paper.

#### 45.305 Twentieth Century Literary Texts

One lecture per week; compulsory tutorials; two essays, one tutorial paper.

#### 45.306 Spanish Study Abroad Programme

One lecture per week second and third terms in Auckland; one essay by end of third term. Four hours intensive language course per day and two hours lectures per week for four weeks in Spain; scheduled cultural activities in Spain; written and oral examination in Spain.

#### 45.307 Modern Hispanic Literature

One lecture and one tutorial per week. Two essays and one tutorial paper.

#### 45.308 Language Acquisition (Advanced)

One lecture; one oral class and one practical/language audio-visual session.

This is the third year advanced stream following on from 45.208.

#### 45.309 Introduction to Professional Translation

Two lectures per week.

#### Spanish for MA and Honours

Four papers including 45.400 and a thesis (45.601) which counts as three papers; or six papers including 45.400 and a research essay (45.603) which counts as one paper.

The requirements are given in Section (29) of the MA Schedule (29); and Languages and Literature including Spanish in section (17) of the MA Schedule. Paper 45.400 is compulsory and a minimum pass of 50% in this paper is required. All intending MA students should consult staff in the year preceding enrolment.

#### **45.400 Language Acquisition**

Oral and written expression in Spanish, aural and written comprehension; tested in some or all of the following ways: comprehension, explanation, conversation, composition, exposition of an unprepared topic, translation, dictation, reading: with linguistic and stylistic analysis.

#### **45.401 A Topic in Mediaeval Literature**

#### **45.402 Golden Age Poetry**

#### **45.403 The Picaresque Novel**

#### **45.404 Major Dramatists of the 17th Century**

#### **45.405 Minor Dramatists of the 17th Century**

#### **45.406 Cervantes**

#### **45.407 The Nineteenth Century Novel**

#### **45.408 The '98 Generation**

#### **45.409 The Contemporary Spanish Novel**

#### **45.410 Twentieth Century Spanish Poetry**

#### **45.411 Twentieth Century Spanish Theatre**

#### **45.412 Twentieth Century Latin American Novel**

#### **45.413 Twentieth Century Latin American Poetry**

#### **45.414 Twentieth Century Latin American Theatre**

#### **45.415 Portuguese Language and a Topic in Twentieth Century Portuguese Literature**

#### **45.416 A Topic in Twentieth Century Brazilian Literature**

#### **45.417 Eighteenth Century Literature**

#### **45.418 Applied Linguistics as Related to Spanish**

#### **45.419 Research Techniques in Language and/or Literature**

#### **45.422 The History of Ideas**

#### **45.423 Linguistic Analysis of Spanish**

#### **45.420 Special Topic in Spanish Literature**

#### **45.421 Special Topic in Latin American Literature**

#### **45.424 Hispanic Women Writers**

#### **45.425 Introduction to Professional Translation**

#### **45.426 A Linguistic Topic**

In 1990: Evolution from Vulgar Latin to the Romance Languages.

#### **45.601 Thesis**

(Equivalent to 3 papers.)

#### **45.603 Research Essay**

(Equivalent to 1 paper)

any other papers in the Department. *Students intending to advance in Russian are strongly advised to take paper 43.112 during either their first or second year of study.*

Note: The readings for papers 43.112 and 43.113 are entirely in English.

#### **43.100 and 43.101 Russian Language Acquisition 1 and 2**

Written and oral use of Russian, tested in some or all of the following ways: comprehension, composition, conversation, dictation, reading, translation from and into Russian.

The two papers must be taken together.

Five hours and one language laboratory session per week; regular computer work and assignments.

#### **\*43.111 Introduction to Serbo-Croatian**

Two hours per week. Tutorials on request. Optional use of the language laboratory.

#### **43.112 Russian Civilisation**

A survey of the political, social, economic, religious, intellectual and artistic forces which historically have helped to shape Gorbachev's Russia.

Two hours per week; two essays.

#### **43.113 The Classics of Russian Literature**

Studies in major examples of Russian prose, fiction and drama.

Two hours and one tutorial per week; two essays.

#### **Russian II**

Papers 43.210, 43.211 and 43.212 are linked papers. Students who have not already taken paper 43.112 are strongly advised to do so alongside their Russian II papers.

#### **43.210 Language Acquisition: Russian**

Written and oral use of Russian tested in some or all of the following ways: translation, composition, comprehension, conversation, dictation, reading.

Three hours and one language laboratory session per week; regular computer work and assignments: Optional library use of the Language Laboratory.

#### **43.211 (i) Introduction to Modern Russian**

Linguistic analysis of modern non-literary texts, with special reference to morphology and word-formation. Two classes per week in the first term.

(ii) **The Russian Lyric in the Nineteenth Century** Studies in 19th Century lyric poetry. Introduced by a series of lectures on literary theory.

Two classes in the second and third terms; one assignment.

#### **43.212 The Russian Short Story in the Nineteenth Century**

Selected short prose works by major Russian writers from Karamzin to Chekhov.

Two classes per week in the first term, one class per week in the second and third terms; two assignments.

#### **Russian III**

Papers 43.310 and any two from 43.311, 43.312 and 43.313 are linked corequisites.

#### **43.310 Language Acquisition: Russian**

Written and oral use of Russian tested in some or all of the following ways: translation, composition, comprehension, conversation, dictation, reading; regular computer work and assignments.

Three hours per week. Optional library use of the Language Laboratory.

#### **43.311 Introduction to Russian and Slavonic Linguistics**

An introduction to the scientific study of language as

## **DEPARTMENT OF RUSSIAN**

Note: \*This paper will not be taught during the current *Calendar* year.  
†This paper will not be taught during the current *Calendar* year unless sufficient staff is available.

### **Russian I**

Students may enrol for Stage I papers without any prior knowledge of the subject areas. The two Russian language papers, 43.100 and 43.101, are linked corequisites and are also prerequisites for all students advancing to Stage II except, with the approval of the Head of Department, those with Bursary-level knowledge of the language; 43.111, 43.112 and 43.113 can be taken independently of each other and of

related to Russian and the group of Slavonic languages; historical explanation of so-called "anomalies" in Modern Russian.

**\*43.312 The Russian Novel in the Nineteenth Century**

Pushkin's *Evgenii Onegin* and one major novel each by Dostoevskii and L. Tolstoy.

One class per week; two assignments.

**43.313 Introduction to Russian Literature of the Twentieth Century**

Representative short literary texts by major Russian writers active since 1905.

One class per week; two assignments.

With the approval of the Head of Department certain papers from Russian MA and Honours may be offered as additional Stage III level papers.

**Russian for MA and Honours**

No student may offer any paper for the MA Degree in which he has already been credited with a pass at Stage III.

The specific requirements for Russian are given in MA Schedule (26); and for Language and Literature including Russian in MA Schedule (17). In both cases paper 43.410 is compulsory.

**43.410 Language Acquisition: Russian**

**43.411 The Structure of Russian**

**\*43.412 The History of Russian From its Origins to 1800**

**\*43.413 The Russian Language in the 19th and 20th Centuries**

**\*43.414 Lexicology and Practical Stylistics of Contemporary Standard Russian**

**\*43.415 A Special Topic in Russian or Slavonic Linguistics**

**\*43.416 A Special Topic in the Russian Language or Russian Linguistics**

**\*43.417 An Approved Special Topic in Slavonic Languages, Literature or Cultures**

**\*43.418 Research Methods in Russian and Slavonic Studies**

**\*43.419 Studies in Early Russian Literature**

**\*43.420 Studies in Eighteenth Century Russian Literature**

**\*43.421 A Special Topic in Russian Poetry**

**\*43.422 A Special Topic in Russian Prose**

**\*43.423 A Special Study of a Russian Writer**

**\*43.424 A Special Topic in Russian Literature or Culture**

**\*43.425 A Further Special Topic**

Intending MA students should consult the Head of Department during their final BA year about the availability of MA papers and the possibility of their presenting a thesis (43.601) in lieu of three papers or a research essay (43.603) in lieu of one paper.

**43.601 Thesis**

**43.603 Research Essay**

## SOCIAL WORK

There is no undergraduate course in this field, but a MA course is offered. This does not provide basic professional training in social work. It is available to give advanced training to practitioners linking degrees or programmes of study in Anthropology, Maori Studies, Economics, English, Education, Geography, History, Philosophy, Political Studies, Psychology, Sociology and other topics to social work. As such it allows for directed or specialist study in areas such as advanced clinical practice, social service management, policy development, historical analysis, Maori and iwi development, health education/primary prevention, habilitation studies and other contemporary areas for social work training.

To enter the course students must have a bachelors degree and recognised social work qualifications and have at least three years' experience in the practice of social work. The co-ordinating committee for the degree may recommend entry to the degree for students who do not comply with the prerequisites but who have equivalents to them. Further details are available from the School of Social Work, Auckland College of Education, the office of the Dean of the Faculty of Arts, or Professor Marshall, Education.

**690.400 Contemporary Social Work: Principles & Practice**

This paper is a required course for all students doing a Master of Arts Degree in Social Work. It is taught by the School of Social Work at the Auckland College of Education. Any research project or thesis undertaken for the degree will also be co-supervised by the School of Social Work.

**690.420 Research Project**

**690.601 Thesis**

**690.611 Thesis**

## DEPARTMENT OF SOCIOLOGY

Note: \*This paper will not be taught during the current *Calendar* year.

†This paper will not be taught during the current *Calendar* year unless sufficient staff is available.

**Sociology I**

**82.100 Issues and Themes in Sociology**

**82.101 New Zealand Society:**

**Structure and Change**

**82.102 A History of Sociological Ideas**

**\*82.103 Debates in Social Policy**

**82.104 An Introduction to Sociological Analysis: Gender, Ethnicity and Class in New Zealand.**

Note: In 1991 82.104 will be taught only on the premises of Manukau Polytechnic

**Sociology II**

**82.200 Sociological Theory and Modern Society**

**82.201 Sociological Method: An Informal Introduction**

**82.202 A Topic in Comparative Sociology**

1991: New Zealand Community Studies.

**82.204 Sociology and Social Problems**

**82.205 Social Stratification**

**82.207 Sociology of the Family**

**\*82.208 Special Topic**

## SAMOAN

See under **PACIFIC STUDIES**.

Papers in Samoan are co-ordinated by the Centre for Pacific Studies.

**82.209 Social Change and Modernisation: An Introduction to the Sociology of Development**

**82.210 Special Topic**

1991: Varieties of Religious Experience.

**82.211 Sociology and Popular Culture**

**82.212 Class, Race and Gender Inequality in Australia and New Zealand**

**Sociology III**

**\*82.300 Industrial Sociology**

**82.301 Political Sociology**

1991: The State in Transition to Socialism.

**82.302 Family and Gender in the Pacific**

**\*82.303 Sociology of Religion**

**\*82.304 Ethnicity and Ethnic Groups**

**82.305 Class and Inequality in Australia and New Zealand**

1991: Class, Race and Gender Inequality.

**\*82.307 Advanced Study in Social Change and Modernisation**

**\*82.308 Law in Society**

**82.309 Special Topic**

1991: Social Policy, Planning and the State.

**82.310 Special Topic**

1991: Applied Social Research

**82.311 Special Topic**

1991: Science, Technology and Industry

**82.312 Sociological Analysis and Method**

**\*82.313 Sociology of a Selected Region**

**82.314 Women/Deviance: The Politics of Naming**

**\*82.315 Sociology of the Arts**

**82.316 Research Paper: Design and Practice**

Students intending to enrol for 82.316 *must* discuss this intention with the Head of Department before Enrolment Week.

**\*82.317 Sociology of the Welfare State**

**82.318 Sociology of the Media**

**82.319 A Topic in Contemporary Social Theory**

1991: Postmodern Social Theory.

Note: Students including three Stage III Sociology papers in their degree must attempt 82.312 as one of them.

**Sociology for MA and Honours**

Four papers and a thesis (82.601) which shall count as three papers, or six papers and a research paper (82.603). The subject of the thesis or research paper must be approved by the Head of Department. An outline is to be submitted to the Head of Department by 31 March of the year for which enrolment for the research paper is accepted. The main text of the research paper should not exceed 10,000 words.

Not fewer than seven papers will be offered from the following list.

**82.400 Advanced Problems in Sociological Theory**

1991: Postmodern Social Theory.

**82.401 Advanced Problems in Sociological Method**

**82.402 Sociology of a Selected Region**

1991: South Asia

**\*82.403 Advanced Topics in Economic Sociology**

**82.404 Advanced Topics in Political Sociology**

1991: The State in Soviet Society.

**\*82.406 Urban Sociology and Ecology**

**82.407 Rural Sociology**

**\*82.408 Complex Organisations**

**\*82.410 Applied Sociology**

**82.412 Special Topic**

1991: Sociology of Health and Health Care.

**\*82.413 Sociology of Law**

**82.414 Special Topic**

1991: Marxism and Sociology.

**82.415 Special Topic**

1991: The State in Third World Development.

**\*82.416 Historical Sociology**

**82.417 Feminist Social Theory**

**82.418 Research Project, Design and Practice**

The course is designed to allow students to work through all phases of a research programme and to make them familiar with intellectual and practical issues in planning, design and implementation of research programmes.

In this paper students define a research problem, complete a literature review, redefine the problem if necessary, design an appropriate research programme, formulate a full funding proposal, carry out and report on a pilot study.

**82.419 Governing Bodies - Modern Sport, Culture and Politics**

Note: All graduate students are expected to attend and contribute to the Staff Graduate Seminars. A programme will be published.

## DIPLOMA COURSE REGULATIONS AND PRESCRIPTIONS

### DIPLOMA IN ARTS DipArts

*The personal course of study of every candidate must be approved by the Senate. Approval will normally be granted for courses which are in accordance with the following Regulations: for general provisions affecting their courses of study students are referred to the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General), and the Examination Regulations.*

#### General Provisions

1. Subject to the Admission Regulations a candidate for the Diploma shall, before enrolment, have qualified for admission to a degree at a University in New Zealand; and have had since so qualifying five years' experience deemed relevant by Senate.
2. The course of study for the Diploma shall consist of at least one year's full-time study or its equivalent. Except with the approval of the Senate, a candidate shall complete the requirements within two years of first enrolling for the Diploma.
3. Candidates will be required to attempt a coherent course of study which shall consist of:
  - (a) four papers at advanced level, including at least two Stage III or Master's papers; and
  - (b) an essay, or special directed study, or project (99.500), the equivalent of one paper, which shall involve work in one subject or inter-disciplinary work involving one subject among others.
4. The course of study for each candidate will require the specific approval of the relevant Heads of Department and the Dean.
5. To be eligible for the award of the Diploma candidates must pass all the components of their course.
6. No candidate shall be credited for this Diploma with any paper passed for another degree or diploma.
7. The Senate may, in such exceptional cases as it thinks fit, approve a personal course of study which does not conform to the foregoing Regulations.
8. These Regulations shall come into force on 1 January 1989.

### DIPLOMA IN BROADCAST COMMUNICATION DipBrC

*The personal course of study of every candidate must be approved by the Senate. Approval will normally be granted for courses which are in accordance with the following Regulations: for general provisions affecting their courses of study students are referred to the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General), and the Examination Regulations.*

#### General Provisions

1. Subject to the Admission Regulations a candidate for the Diploma in Broadcast Communications shall, before enrolment for this Diploma, have been admitted or qualified for admission to the Degree of Master of Arts, or (in exceptional circumstances) such other University Degree as the Senate may approve in the particular case.
2. A candidate for this Diploma shall follow a one year course of full-time study.
3. The course of study for this Diploma shall consist of two parts:

#### Part I

Papers 30.403 and 30.408 as prescribed for MA

#### OR

A candidate who has already been credited with either 30.403 or 30.408 shall substitute paper 18.420 as prescribed for MA or a Research Essay (30.613).

With the permission of the Heads of the Departments of Political Studies and Sociology, a candidate may substitute 82.318 for either 30.403 or 30.408.

#### Part II

Such written and practical work as may be prescribed in Radio and Television Productions and related fields, the whole counting as three papers (30.700).

4. A candidate shall be required to pass each paper of Part I and pass Part II as a whole.
5. The Senate may in such exceptional cases as it thinks fit, approve a personal course of study which does not conform to the foregoing Regulations.
6. These Regulations shall come into force on 1 January 1982.

### PRESCRIPTIONS FOR DipBrC

The purpose of the Diploma is to provide graduate students with a theoretical and practical preparation in broadcasting and communications.

The course is a full-time course extending over one year. Entry to the course will be restricted to six candidates in any one year. Candidates wishing to enrol in the course for the Diploma are required to give

notice of their intention to the Registrar of the University by letter which shall include a curriculum vitae showing academic results and any other qualifications, by 30 November of the previous year. Candidates may be called for interview.

#### Part I

(See Regulation 3 of the Diploma.)

**30.403 The Political Economy of Information**



Global, regional and domestic issues in news flows and communications technology.

**\*30.408 Mass Communications and Mass Beliefs**

**18.420 Film Studies**

**30.613 Research Essay**

The research essay must be on a subject connected with the candidate's previously passed papers 30.403 and 30.408 or, with the permission of the Head of Department of Political Studies, a topic on the structure and organisation of broadcasting. The research essay shall be between 10,000 and 20,000 words and two copies must be submitted to the Registrar not later than the last day of January in the calendar year following the examinations.

**Part II**

**30.700**

(Three papers.)

The course will include the following:

1. Introduction to the technical principles of radio and television broadcasting.

2. Practical experience in preparing and editing audio programmes, each student to present one such programme as a course submission.
3. Introduction to single-camera production techniques.
4. Introduction to multi-camera studio production.
5. Instruction and studio experience in the techniques of interviewing.
6. Post-production techniques, including scriptwriting, editing, graphics and animation.
7. Experience in preparing and editing video programmes, each student to present one such programme as a course submission.
8. An examination of the role of the producer in programme preparation.
9. An understanding of the principles of broadcast programming.
10. Development of critical awareness, including the preparation of individual diaries and reviews to be included as part of each student's course submission.

## DIPLOMA IN DRAMA DipDrama

*The personal course of study of every candidate must be approved by the Senate. Approval will normally be granted for courses which are in accordance with the following Regulations: for general provisions affecting their courses of study students are referred to the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General), and the Examination Regulations.*

**General Provisions**

1. Subject to the Admission Regulations a candidate for the Diploma in Drama shall before his or her enrolment for this Diploma: either (i) have been admitted or qualified for admission to the Degree of Bachelor of Arts having passed in not fewer than three papers in Stage II in English, or a language other than English, or such other subject or subjects as the Senate may approve; or (ii) have been admitted or qualified for admission to some other university degree approved for this purpose by the Senate; or hold or have qualified for an award or qualification in dramatic work approved for this purpose by the Senate; and in any case have had in the opinion of the Senate sufficient experience in the theatre or in the writing or teaching of drama.
2. A candidate for this Diploma shall follow a course of study for a period of one year, but in exceptional circumstances this period may be extended by the Senate.
3. The Course shall consist of such written and practical work as may be prescribed in theatrical, dramatic, and related fields.
4. A candidate shall throughout his or her enrolment for this Diploma carry out such practical work and shall participate in such approved theatrical work or plays as the Lecturer in charge of the Course shall require.
5. These Regulations shall come into force on 1 January 1977.

## PRESCRIPTIONS FOR DipDrama

The Diploma in Drama is directed by the Lecturer in Drama aided by other professional tutors and University lecturers.

The purpose of the Diploma in Drama is to offer a basic training in theatre and playwriting to those wishing to work in schools, the theatre or in the community. It should not be seen as a training course for professional actors.

Candidates wishing to enrol in 1991 in the Course for the Diploma in Drama (75.100) are required to give notice of their intention to the Registrar of the University not later than 10 January 1991.

Candidates who have not previously been enrolled at a New Zealand University must submit their application by 14 December of the preceding year. Details of the procedure to be followed by all applicants are available from the English Department.

Candidates should have a Bachelor of Arts Degree from Auckland or some other university or should hold an award or qualification in dramatic work or have had experience in the theatre or in the teaching of drama. Generally, candidates under 20 years of age are not considered for the course.

Candidates may be called for an interview. All candidates will be required to produce evidence of academic qualifications and a variety of theatrical skills.

The Course is full-time and extends over one year. Permission to take other courses or do other theatre work will be granted only in rare instances.

The Course will include a selection of the following:

- (i) Fundamentals of acting including speech, movement and improvisation.
- (ii) Basic techniques of the theatre, e.g. lighting, design, wardrobe, direction.

- (iii) Television acting and the use of television equipment.
  - (iv) Practical study from selected texts.
  - (v) Selected aspects from the history of the theatre and drama.
  - (vi) Selected aspects from the theory of drama.
  - (vii) Theatre Criticism.
  - (viii) Practical work in production.
  - (ix) Brief exercises in the making of theatre for young people.
  - (x) Exercises in group theatre and playmaking. A list of books required for study will be available from the Department. All student should obtain this.
- †This paper may not be taught during the current Calendar year.

## DIPLOMA IN EDUCATION DipEd

*The personal course of study of every candidate must be approved by the Senate. Approval will normally be granted for courses which are in accordance with the following Regulations: for general provisions affecting their courses of study students are referred to the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General), and the Examination Regulations.*

1. Subject to the Admission Regulations a candidate for the Diploma in Education shall before enrolment for this Diploma:
  - (a) have been admitted or qualified for admission to a degree at a University in New Zealand except as provided in Regulation 2 below or have been awarded or qualified for the award of a University diploma approved by the Senate; and
  - (b) have passed papers 14.100 or 14.102 and 14.101 as prescribed for the Degree of Bachelor of Arts, provided that those papers or either of them may with the permission of the Head of Department be taken concurrently with papers in Part I of the course.
- Note: Approved diplomas at present are the Diplomas in Fine Arts and Music and Diplomas in Home Science and Physical Education of the University of Otago. In special circumstances the Senate may permit a candidate who is the holder of a diploma other than those listed above to undertake the course.
2. Subject to the Admission Regulations a candidate may enrol for the Diploma in Education after having completed at least nineteen papers for the Bachelor of Arts Degree, or the equivalent in another degree, provided that:
  - (a) The proposed course for this Diploma will extend over not fewer than two academic years.
  - (b) The remaining papers for the Bachelor's Degree are taken in the first year of the Diploma course.
  - (c) Should the candidate not pass the remaining paper or papers the Diploma course shall be suspended until they have been passed.
3. The course of study for the Diploma in Education shall consist of two parts:

### Part I

Four papers in Education at Stage II or III as prescribed for the Degree of Bachelor of Arts and not having already been credited to a degree or diploma, of which not more than two are at Stage II.

### Part II

A report of an original investigation (14.500) having the value of two papers, of a topic approved by the Head of the Department of Education.

- (b). A candidate shall be required to pass each paper in Part I and the original investigation in Part II.
4. As to the investigation and report for Part II:
  - (a) the topic shall be submitted to the Head of Department in reasonable time before 31 March of the year in which the report is to be submitted so that it may be approved by that date;
  - (b) the report shall be submitted within three years of the year in which the candidate completes Part I, or within such longer period as the Senate may in special circumstance permit;
  - (c) the report shall be delivered to the Registrar by 1 November, or later date approved by the Head of Department, of the year in which it is submitted.

Note: An abstract is to be submitted with the original investigation. (See Examination Regulation 14.)

5. Every candidate shall present to the Head of Department a certificate from an approved authority confirming that the candidate has been engaged for at least two years in full-time work, in the practice of teaching, or in education work of a related character, such as vocational guidance, child guidance, child welfare, social work or community education, and has shown efficiency therein.
6. The Senate may, in such exceptional cases as it thinks fit, approve a personal course of study which does not conform to the foregoing Regulations.

### Note: Discontinuance

- (a). No enrolments for Part I of the Diploma will be accepted.
- (b). No enrolment for Part II of the Diploma will be accepted after the 1991 academic year, except with the approval of the Senate.
- (c). No reports on original investigation (14.500) will be accepted after 28 February 1995, except with the approval of the Senate.

7. These Regulations shall come into force on 1 January 1977.

## DIPLOMA IN EDUCATIONAL PSYCHOLOGY DipEdPsych

*The personal course of study of every candidate must be approved by the Senate. Approval will normally be granted for courses which are in accordance with the following Regulations: for general provisions affecting their courses of study students are referred to the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General), and the Examination Regulations.*

1. Subject to the Admission Regulations a candidate for the Diploma in Educational Psychology shall before enrolment for this Diploma:
  - (a) have been admitted or have qualified for admission to a Bachelor's Degree; and
  - (b) have passed the following four papers in Education as prescribed for the Master of Arts Degree:
    - 14.407 Developmental Psychology
    - 14.410 Principles and Practice of Counselling
    - 14.412 Behaviour Analysis in Education
    - 14.413 Education of Exceptional Children
 or equivalent papers as approved by the Senate; and
  - (c) have passed 5 papers in Education and 5 papers in Psychology, including, in each subject, at least 3 papers above Stage I as prescribed for the Bachelor of Arts or Science Degree; and
  - (d) the Senate must be satisfied that the candidate is likely to benefit from the training provided by the course for this Diploma.

**Note:** Normally an interview supported by referee's statements, and evidence of training and experience in relevant work such as teaching, youth work, or counselling will be required under 1 (d).

2. A candidate for this Diploma shall follow a course of not less than two years' full-time study nor more than four years' study (whether full or part-time); provided that the latter period may with the permission of the Senate be extended in exceptional circumstances.
3. The course of study for the Diploma shall consist of two Parts:

### Part I

Satisfactory participation in and completion of a full-time professional training course including passing each stage of the on-course assessment requirements (16.100).

**Note:** the professional training courses are designed to follow on from the theory introduced in each of the four Masters papers listed in 1 (b). Course prescriptions may be obtained from the Department.

### Part II

- (a) Satisfactory supervised participation in the work of approved psychological, special educational, and social work services, and in seminars on case work and professional practice (16.200).
- (b) A comprehensive oral examination covering the work of the whole course (16.201).
4. (a). A candidate shall be required to pass each paper or section of each part of the Diploma.  
 (b). A candidate who has not passed a section of Part I may, with the permission of the Head of Department, take that section concurrently with work in Part II, in the second year.  
 (c). A candidate shall not be permitted to resubmit case work and professional practice material (16.200) nor to resit the oral examination (16.201), more than once.
5. A candidate shall be required to have completed a Master's Degree or an equivalent research study before the Diploma may be awarded.
6. (a). The Diploma may be awarded with Honours.  
 (b). A candidate for Honours shall be required, after completing the requirements of Part I and II, to submit a Dissertation (16.604) reporting an advanced study of one of the following types, as approved by the Head of Department:
  - (i) a survey of the literature bearing on a topic relevant to clinical or professional practice; or
  - (ii) an original or replication research study; or
  - (iii) an evaluation of a clinical procedure.
- (c). The Dissertation shall be:
  - (i) submitted within three years of the year in which the candidate completes Part II; and
  - (ii) delivered to the Registrar by 1 November, or later date approved by the Head of Department, of the year in which it is submitted.
- (d). Honours shall be awarded upon the results of the Dissertation but if the Dissertation is not of sufficient standard the Diploma shall be awarded to the candidate without Honours.
7. Under exceptional circumstances the Senate may grant exemption from any of the requirements under Regulations 1, 2, 3, 4 and 5.

## DIPLOMA IN ENGLISH LANGUAGE TEACHING DipELT

*The personal course of study of every candidate must be approved by the Senate. Approval will normally be granted for courses which are in accordance with the following Regulations: for general provisions affecting their courses of study students are referred to the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General), and the Examination Regulations.*

### General Provisions

1. Subject to the Admission Regulations a candidate for the Diploma in English Language Teaching shall before his or her enrolment for this diploma:
  - (a) have been admitted or qualified for admission to a degree at a university in New Zealand or produced evidence to the satisfaction of the Senate of adequate training and/or experience to undertake the proposed course of study for the Diploma, and
  - (b) have had, normally, at least two years' teaching experience.
2. (a) A candidate for the Diploma shall follow a one year course of full-time study or a two year course of part-time study. Candidates who follow a part-time course of study for the Diploma shall take Part 1 in their first year and Part 2 in their second year, as set out below. Full-time students take both parts concurrently in the one year.
  - (b) Bilingual Maori and Pacific Island students who have already passed Maori or Pacific Island language papers may, in exceptional circumstances, apply to have one such paper credited to the Diploma.
3. The course of study for this Diploma shall consist of two parts:

### Part I

#### (a) 18.250 English Language for Teachers

A candidate who has already been credited with 18.250 shall substitute one of the following papers: 18.205/83.202/03.212 Sociolinguistics; 18.304/83.307 New Zealand English; 03.217/83.205 The Languages of the Pacific; 18.201 Language, Literature and Culture.

#### (b) 18.502 Applied Linguistics for Language Learning and Teaching

#### (c) 18.503 The Theory and Practice of Teaching to Speakers of Other Languages (TESOL)

### Part II

#### (d) 04.100 The Structure of Maori Language (or substitute)

#### (e) 04.104 Spoken and Written Maori (or substitute)

(i) A candidate who has already been credited with 04.100 and 04.104 may substitute for those papers:

(i.i) an approved language paper in a language other than English. Strongly recommended are: 04.204 Second Year Maori Language: Structure and Prescribed Texts; 04.205 Second Year Maori Language: Oral and Written Skills; other papers selected from Maori studies subject to the approval of the Heads of Department of Anthropology and English; 478.100 Samoan Language.

(i.ii) language papers from:

Chinese: 48.100 and 48.101 Language Acquisition A and B; Indonesian: 80.100 and 80.101 Modern Spoken Indonesian 1 and 2; Japanese: 81.100 Language Acquisition A and 81.101 Language Acquisition B; Korean: 449.100 and 449.101 Language Acquisition A and B.

(i.iii) papers other than language papers from:

Pacific Studies: 79.100 Topics in the Political Economy of the Pacific; 79.101 Topics in Pacific Arts; Anthropology: 03.200 Ethnography of Island Polynesia; English: 18.304 New Zealand English; 18.205 Sociolinguistics; 18.201 Language, Literature and Culture.

(ii) Students who have not been credited with (d) and (e) may, in exceptional circumstances, substitute for them papers from (i.i) (i.ii) or (i.iii)

#### (f) 18.506 Classroom Observation: Independent Research

4. No candidate may present for this Diploma a paper which is the same or substantially similar in content to any paper already passed for any other degree or diploma.
5. Where a candidate is enrolled in any paper for this diploma that is scheduled for another degree or diploma, he or she shall be required to comply with such of the course regulations as are applicable (including all prerequisites, corequisites and restrictions) unless exempted from these by the Senate.
6. Candidates shall be required to pass each paper of Part I and Part 2.
7. Candidates may, at the discretion of the Senate, be permitted to repeat a paper they have not passed.
8. These Regulations may be varied by the Senate in particular circumstances.
9. This Diploma may be awarded with or without Distinction.
10. These Regulations shall come into force on 1 January 1988.

## PRESCRIPTIONS FOR DipELT

The purpose of the Diploma in English Language Teaching is to provide a specialised course in the theory and practice of teaching English in multi-lingual contexts, with special emphasis on the needs of English language learners in the Auckland, New

Zealand and South Pacific regions. Candidates wishing to enrol in the course for the Diploma in English Language Teaching are required to pre-enrol on the Preparatory Application Form by 30 November of the preceding year. Candidates may be called for interview. Entry to the course will be restricted to

twenty four candidates in any one year. Prescriptions for courses listed in the Regulations for the Diploma (and not prescribed for other degrees) are given below.

### **18.250 English Language for Teachers**

A linguistic analysis of the English language in an educational context. This paper will enable students to describe and account for (a) similarities and differences among a range of spoken and written texts across the curriculum and (b) divergences from appropriate norms in texts produced by both native and non-native learners of English.

### **18.502 Applied Linguistics for Language Learning and Teaching**

Socio-cultural aspects of English Language Teaching in multilingual contexts. Factors influencing second language learning and bilingualism.

### **18.503 Theory and Practice of Teaching English to Speakers of Other Languages (TESOL)**

Language teaching methodology, programme design and evaluation, language development through content areas. Students taking this paper will be required to undertake regular teaching practice throughout the academic year.

### **18.506 Classroom Observation: Independent Research**

Planning and implementing a classroom based research project. Developing and using observation and assessment instruments in a multilingual classroom. Carefully recording, interpreting and evaluating results of a study.

Further papers for the Diploma are described in the General Provisions and prescribed in the Bachelor of Arts Degree Prescriptions.

## **DIPLOMA IN GUIDANCE AND COUNSELLING DipGuid**

*The personal course of study of every candidate must be approved by the Senate. Approval will normally be granted for courses which are in accordance with the following Regulations: for general provisions affecting their courses of study students are referred to the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General), and the Examination Regulations.*

1. Subject to the Admission Regulations a candidate for the Diploma in Guidance and Counselling shall before his or her enrolment for this Diploma:
  - (a) have been awarded or qualified for the award of a degree of a university in New Zealand, or in special cases have been awarded or qualified for the award of a university diploma approved by the Senate; and
  - (b) the Senate must be satisfied that the candidate is likely to benefit from the training provided by the course for this diploma.

**Note:** Normally an interview supported by referee's statements and evidence of training and experience in relevant work such as teaching personnel work or community counselling will be required under 1 (b).

2. The course of study for the Diploma shall consist of two Parts:

### **Part I**

Paper 14.410 and three others selected from the Stage III and MA papers in Education, not already passed for any other degree or diploma; provided that in exceptional circumstances a candidate may substitute for any or all these papers a course or courses of study approved by the Head of Department.

**Note:** Each paper shall require a practicum placement and a course of associated activities approved by the Head of Department.

### **Part II**

Preparation and presentation of a folio of casework, 14.501, counting as two papers; together with satisfactory participation in such seminars and counselling and related activities as the Head of Department may require.

**Note:** Most students will require 1000 hours or more of face to face counselling work and related activities to attain competence in casework.

3. No more than fifteen students chosen on academic and professional criteria shall in any one year be admitted for Part II.
4. The folio of casework required for Part II shall be:
  - (a) submitted within two years of the year in which the candidate completed Part I, or within such longer period as the Senate may in special circumstances permit; and
  - (b) delivered to the Registrar by 1 November, or later date approved by the Head of Department, of the year in which it is submitted.
5. A candidate shall be required to pass each paper of Part I and to pass each part of Part II.
6. The Senate may in such exceptional cases as it thinks fit, approve a personal course of study which does not conform to the foregoing Regulations.
7. These Regulations shall come into force on 1 January 1977.

## **DIPLOMA IN LOCAL GOVERNMENT AND ADMINISTRATION DipLGA**

*The personal course of study of every candidate must be approved by the Senate. Approval will normally be granted for courses which are in accordance with the following Regulations: for general provisions affecting their courses of study students are referred to the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General), and the Examination Regulations.*

### **General Provisions**

1. Subject to the Admission Regulations, a candidate for the Diploma in Local Government and Administration shall before his enrolment have been awarded or qualified for the award of a degree or diploma of this

University, provided that, if not so qualified, a person may with the leave of the Senate be a candidate for the Diploma in Local Government and Administration if before enrolment he:

- (i) holds or has qualified for the award of a professional qualification in Accountancy, Management, or other approved discipline; or
  - (ii) has had not less than five years responsible practical experience in a responsible position in local government or administration.
2. A candidate for the Diploma shall pursue a course of study for a period of not less than one year, provided that for part-time students the course of study shall extend over a period of not less than two years.
  3. Except with the permission of the Senate in exceptional circumstances:
    - (i) the course of study must be completed within four years of the date of first enrolment for the Diploma; and
    - (ii) the Research Essay (Paper 30.623) must be submitted within two years of the date of first enrolment for that paper.
  4. No candidate shall be credited for this Diploma with any paper which he has passed for another degree or diploma.
  5. No candidates shall take papers for Part II unless he has passed or enrolled concurrently in the papers for Part I.

#### Subjects

6. The subjects for examination for the Diploma shall be:

#### Part I

30.500 The Local Government System in New Zealand

30.413 Public Administration, as prescribed for MA.

Note: A candidate who has already been credited with 30.413 may substitute 72.405 Organisational Development as prescribed for MCom.

30.402 Urban Government and Politics, as prescribed for MA

Note: A candidate who has already been credited with 30.402 may substitute 20.436 Urban Geography as prescribed for MA and MSc.

#### Part II

##### Either

Two papers from the following:

25.220 Local Government Law, as prescribed for LLB

25.313 Environmental Law, as prescribed for LLB

25.319 Planning Law, as prescribed for LLB

36.252 Law, Government & Planning, as prescribed for BTP

01.204 Public Sector Accounting, as prescribed for BCom

13.307 Public Expenditure, as prescribed for BA and BCom

72.203 Organisation and Management, as prescribed for BCom

72.207 Labour Relations, as prescribed for BCom

72.303 Advanced Labour Relations, as prescribed for BCom

72.307 Personnel Policy & Practice, as prescribed for BCom

One paper as prescribed for any other degree or diploma of this University and specifically approved by the Head of Department.

or

30.623 Research Essay (which counts as two papers).

Note: An abstract is to be submitted with the Research Essay, see Examinations Regulation 14.

#### Prerequisite for Papers in Part II

7. Candidates should note that, unless a waiver is obtained from the relevant Head of Department, they will be required to comply with the prerequisites stipulated in the *Calendar* for the respective papers in Accountancy, Economics and Management Studies.
8. These Regulations shall come into force on 1 January 1980.

## PRESCRIPTIONS FOR DipLGA

The course for the Diploma in Local Government and Administration may be completed in not less than one year of full-time study or two years of part-time study. Students are required to take available papers from Part I in their first year of study.

Prescriptions for courses listed in the Regulations for the Diploma (and not prescribed for other degrees) are given below.

#### 30.500 The New Zealand Local Government System

The evolution, structure and characteristics of the

system. Reorganisation schemes and functional features. Local politics, elections and public participation.

Note: A candidate who has already been credited with 30.500 may substitute a paper as prescribed for any other degree or diploma of this University and specifically approved by the Head of Department.

#### 30.623 Research Essay

A research essay may be presented in lieu of two papers from Part II of the course. It shall consist of 18,000 to 20,000 words on an approved topic in Local Government Administration or Politics.

## POSTGRADUATE DIPLOMA IN ARTS PGDipArts

*The personal course of study of every candidate must be approved by the Senate. Approval will normally be granted for courses which are in accordance with the following Regulations: for general provisions affecting their courses of study students are referred to the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General), and the Examination Regulations.*

### General Provisions

1. Subject to the Admission Regulations, a candidate for this Diploma shall, before enrolment, have been admitted or qualified for admission to a Master's Degree at a University in New Zealand.
2. The course of study for the Diploma shall consist of at least one years' full-time study or its equivalent. Except with the approval of Senate, a candidate shall complete the requirements within two years of first enrolling for the Diploma.
3. Candidates will be required to attempt a coherent course of study which shall consist of:
  - (a) four papers, at least two papers of which shall be papers currently available for Masters students in the subject of the candidate's Masters Degree or the major part of the candidate's first degree, the remaining papers being Stage III or Master's papers in a cognate subject or subjects;
  - (b) an essay, or special directed study, or research project (99.550), the equivalent of one paper, which shall involve work in the main subject or interdisciplinary work involving that subject and others.
4. The course of study for each candidate will require the specific approval of the relevant Heads of Department and the Dean.
5. To be eligible for the award of the Diploma, which may be awarded with or without Distinction, candidates must pass all the components of their course.
6. No candidate shall be credited for this Diploma with any paper passed for another degree or diploma.
7. The Senate may, in such exceptional cases as it thinks fit, approve a personal course of study which does not conform to the foregoing Regulations.
8. These Regulations shall come into force on 1 January 1989.

## POSTGRADUATE DIPLOMA IN SOCIAL RESEARCH PGDipSocRes

*The personal course of study of every candidate must be approved by the Senate. Approval will normally be granted for courses which are in accordance with the following Regulations: for general provisions affecting their courses of study students are referred to the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General), and the Examination Regulations.*

### General Provisions

1. (a). Subject to the Admission Regulations, a candidate for the diploma in Social Research shall, before enrolment for this Diploma, have been admitted or qualified for admission to the Degree of Master of Arts in one of the subjects listed in paragraph (b) of this Regulation; or, if not so qualified, and provided Senate approves, have completed not fewer than four papers for that Degree in one of those subjects.  
(b). the subjects in which a candidate shall have qualified in terms of paragraph (a) of this Regulation are Anthropology, Maori Studies, Economics, Geography, Sociology, Political Studies, Education, Psychology and History.  
(c). In exceptional circumstances, Senate may approve the enrolment of a candidate who has been admitted or qualified for admission to a degree other than a Master of Arts or who has included in their qualifying degree subjects other than those specified in paragraph (b) of this Regulation.
2. A candidate for this Diploma shall follow a one year course of full-time study, or a two year course of part-time study.
3. The course of study for this Diploma shall consist of two parts.

### Part I

\*82.500 The Uses of Social Research

\*82.501 Issues and Methods in Research I

\*82.502 Issues and Methods in Research II

### Part II

A report on an original social research investigation counting as two papers (82.503).

The report shall be not more than 20,000 words long. Two copies must be submitted to the Registrar not later than the last day of February in the *Calendar* year following the examinations.

4. A candidate shall be required to pass each paper of Part I and pass Part II as a whole.
5. The Senate may in such exceptional cases as it thinks fit approve a personal course of study which does not conform to the foregoing Regulations.
6. These Regulations shall come into force on 1 January 1987.

## **PRESCRIPTIONS FOR PGDipSocRes**

The purpose of the Diploma is to provide graduate students with a preparation in the methodological principles and practice of social research.

The course is a full-time course extending over one year or two years of part-time study. Entry to the course will be restricted to six candidates in any one year. Candidates wishing to enrol in the course for the Diploma are required to give notice of their intention to the Registrar of the University by letter which shall include a curriculum vitae showing academic results and any other qualifications by 15 January each year. Candidates may be called for interview.

### **\*82.500 The Uses of Social Research**

This paper will examine the literature on the roles of social research and social theory in the formulation, monitoring and evaluation of social policy; and the role of social policy concerns in the development of social science knowledge. The paper will apply themes from this literature to the New Zealand context.

### **\*82.501 Issues and Methods in Research I**

### **\*82.502 Issues and Methods in Research II**

These papers will provide an advanced critical education and training in a range of qualitative and quantitative social research methods. These will include social surveys, use of official social data, field observation studies, and documentary studies. Analytical devices specifically intended to assist policy making and evaluating theories also will be reviewed.

### **\*82.503 Supervised Social Research Project (Practicum)**

This exercise will involve an empirical research study within an explicit theoretical and/or policy relevant framework. The exercise will be reported in an essay of up to 20,000 words, written specifically to communicate the findings to appropriate audiences. Where possible the practicum will be carried out, at least in part, in an appropriate policy setting, or as a group research project.



# Faculty of Science

## Contents

|   |     |  |
|---|-----|--|
| <b>Degree Course Regulations</b>                    | 192 | Degree of Bachelor of Science                                |
|   | 194 | Schedule for Bachelor of Science                             |
|   | 209 | Degree of Bachelor of Science (Honours)                      |
|   | 212 | Degree of Bachelor of Optometry                              |
|   | 215 | Degree of Bachelor of Science Education                      |
|   | 218 | Degree of Master of Science                                  |
| <b>Degree Course Prescriptions</b>                  | 222 | Department of Biochemistry                                   |
|   | 223 | Department of Botany   |
|   | 224 | Department of Cellular and Molecular Biology                 |
|   | 225 | Department of Chemistry                                      |
|   | 229 | Department of Computer Science                               |
|   | 231 | Department of Education                                      |
|   | 231 | Environmental Science  |
|   | 231 | Department of Geography                                      |
|   | 233 | Department of Geology  |
|   | 237 | Leigh Laboratory   |
|   | 238 | Department of Mathematics and Statistics                     |
|   | 242 | Medical Science  |
|   | 243 | Department of Optometry                                      |
|   | 244 | Department of Pharmacology and Clinical Pharmacology         |
|   | 245 | Department of Philosophy                                     |
|   | 245 | Department of Physics  |
|   | 249 | Department of Physiology                                     |
|   | 250 | Department of Psychology                                     |
|   | 252 | Tutoring in Science  |
|   | 252 | Department of Zoology  |
| <b>Diploma Course Regulations and Prescriptions</b> | 256 | Diploma in Clinical Psychology                               |
|   | 257 | Diploma in Computer Science                                  |
|   | 257 | Diploma in Mathematics Education                             |
|   | 259 | Diploma in Science   |
|   | 260 | Diploma in Statistics  |
|   | 260 | Postgraduate Diploma in Science                              |
| <b>Certificate Regulations</b>                      | 251 | Certificate in the Principles and Practice of Radiochemistry |

## FACULTY OF SCIENCE

The Faculty of Science consists of fourteen independent Departments covering the full range of mathematical, physical, biological, behavioural and earth sciences. Each Department teaches papers at the undergraduate and graduate levels as well as being involved in research. Students commencing the BSc degree are advised to consult the *Science Handbook* which describes the papers offered and gives advice on planning a course of study. Information on research activities is contained in the *University of Auckland Research Report* which is published each year and lists research publications and thesis topics. In addition each Department issues information on the courses it teaches.

### Bachelor of Science

Over 200 papers grouped under eighteen different subject headings are offered in the BSc Schedule. Students select personal courses of study from among these papers according to their interests and career objectives. There are over 30 Stage I papers each of which provides an introduction to the subject and foundation on which to build further study. The Stage II and III papers progress to a more advanced level, with a greater depth and concentration of subject-matter. The papers differ in their relative sizes and this is indicated by the number of credits awarded for each paper passed. Most of the Science papers involve laboratory or field work which is an integral part of the teaching programme.

The subjects offered in the BSc Schedule are:

Biochemistry  
Botany  
Cellular and Molecular Biology  
Chemistry  
Computer Science  
Education  
Environmental Science  
Geography  
Geology

Mathematics - Applied  
Mathematics - Pure  
Pharmacology  
Philosophy  
Physics  
Physiology  
Psychology  
Tutoring in Science  
Zoology

Students should note that not all subjects are available at Stage I. The BSc Schedule gives a breakdown of each subject's papers and their stages.

The minimum requirements for the BSc Degree can be summarised as follows:

- At least three years' study
  - A total of at least 96 credits
  - At least 36 credits above Stage I
  - At least 12 credits in Stage III Science papers
  - At least four different Science subjects (at least 6 credits in each). Regulation 3 (c) permits exceptions.
- For the purpose of defining Science subjects, Applied Mathematics and Pure Mathematics are separate subjects, but Biology is not a subject (all Biology credits must count as either Botany or Zoology). There are two important constraints which must be borne in mind when planning a BSc course. The first is that all prerequisite and corequisite requirements are met. The best way to plan a BSc course is to select first the major subjects which will be taken to Stage III. Then work backwards to ensure that all the necessary prerequisites are taken in the first two years. The other constraint on selection of papers is the problem of timetable clashes. Students should study carefully the timetable information given in this *Calendar*, noting particularly the parts of the year in which each paper is taught. Some of the larger classes will have several alternative laboratory and lecture streams which may help to avoid clashes. Thus most of the common combinations of Stage I papers can be taken without clashes, but the large number of advanced papers means that many combinations of subjects are impossible for timetable reasons. As a general rule it is not possible to take papers which clash in lecture or laboratory times, unless a special arrangement can be negotiated with the Departments concerned.
- The BSc Regulations include some special provisions which can be of benefit to some students. Thus students who have performed well in Bursary or Scholarship examinations may be permitted to enrol directly in Stage II papers without having passed the prerequisite Stage I papers. Students who have been awarded the NZCS or other technical or nursing qualifications before coming to University may be granted credit towards the BSc (maximum 36 credits). Students who abandon 'Intermediates' for Engineering, Architecture and other courses will normally be permitted to credit passes in Science papers to the BSc Degree.

Although the main object of BSc papers is to teach scientific method and to impart knowledge and appreciation of some of the main scientific disciplines it is also possible to acquire a broad educational experience by suitable choice of papers. BSc students may also take up to 12 credits from papers in other Faculties, giving an opportunity to pursue interests outside of the sciences. To enable students to obtain knowledge of particular use in Commerce, the papers listed in the BSc Appendix may be selected in excess of these 12 credits, although enrolment limitations apply to many.

### Bachelor of Science (Honours)

This course is available only to students of proven ability in Biochemistry, Computer Science, Geology, Applied Geology, Mathematics and Psychology. Students normally change from the BSc course to the BSc(Hons) course at the end of their second or third year at University. The course covers much of the same advanced material as the MSc course, but it is possible to complete BSc(Hons) within four years. BSc(Hons) graduates are permitted to enrol for PhD studies without completing a Master's degree.

**Bachelor of Science Education**

This degree is designed to meet the needs of two groups of students: those who are considering secondary teaching as a career (enrolment for the Diploma in Teaching course at the Auckland College of Education is a corequisite of Part II of BScEd) and those who desire a broad-based science degree that includes detailed considerations of philosophical, socio-economic, historic and moral-ethical issues in Science.

**Bachelor of Optometry**

This is a four-year professional course leading to registration as an Optometrist. The first year consists of eight Science papers at the 100-level. Entry into the second year of the course is strictly limited and selection is made on the basis of performance in the first year. Considerable clinical training is involved particularly in the final year.

**Master of Science**

This is a course of advanced study and an introduction to research, based on the study of one scientific discipline in depth. (The MSc Environmental Science is, however, a joint Degree in Environmental Science and another Science subject.) All of the main Science Departments offer MSc programmes, each consisting of a number of specialist papers plus a thesis on a selected research topic. (In Computer Science and Mathematics the thesis may be replaced by an advanced course of study.) All Departments offer a wide range of MSc research topics and intending students are advised to discuss their proposed course with staff members before completing the BSc Degree.

The prerequisite for the MSc course is a BSc Degree with the required number of Stage III credits as specified for each subject in the MSc Regulations, and an average grade of C+ or better in these Stage III papers.

**Doctor of Philosophy**

The PhD Degree has become accepted as the appropriate qualification for a career in scientific research. The PhD course consists of advanced study and supervised research leading to the presentation of a thesis. The thesis must be an original contribution to knowledge and meet the recognised international standards of scientific research.

**Diploma in Clinical Psychology**

This is a three-year course which is undertaken in conjunction with the Master's Degree in Psychology.

**Diploma in Computer Science**

This is a specialist course concentrating on topics in Computer Science.

**Diploma in Mathematics Education**

This is a course intended for those, not necessarily graduates, who have several years' experience as teachers and wish to broaden their knowledge of both educational theory and mathematics teaching.

**Diploma in Science and Postgraduate Diploma in Science**

These are new diploma programmes, available for the first time from 1991.

**Diploma in Statistics**

This is a specialist postgraduate course involving papers in Statistics, Mathematics and Computer Science together with a project.

**Certificate in the Principles and Practice of Radiochemistry**

A pass in 08.350 or 08.352 will entitle students to receive the Elementary Certificate.

**Combined Science and Commerce Degrees**

Students who wish to study both Science and Commerce are encouraged to take advantage of BSc Regulation 11 and BCom Regulation 13 which provide special concessions for students studying for a Conjoint BSc/BCom or for the double degree BSc BCom. Both programmes take a minimum of 4 years and must be planned very carefully to satisfy the two sets of Degree Regulations and to meet timetable constraints. Intending students, who must be of high quality, must seek advice from the Science and Commerce Deans before enrolling. Students will normally enter the Conjoint programme in their first year, or possibly at the end of the first year; it is seldom possible to complete in 4 years if students enter later.

## DEGREE COURSE REGULATIONS

### THE DEGREE OF BACHELOR OF SCIENCE BSc

*The personal course of study of every candidate must be approved by the Senate. Approval will normally be granted for courses which are in accordance with the following Regulations: for general provisions affecting their courses of study students are referred to the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General) and the Examination Regulations.*

#### General Provisions

1. Except as provided in the Admission Regulations candidates for the Degree of Bachelor of Science shall follow a course of study of not less than three years.
2. (a) The subjects prescribed for this Degree are:
 

|   |  |
|---|--|
| Biochemistry<br>Botany<br>Cellular and Molecular Biology<br>Chemistry<br>Computer Science<br>Education<br>Environmental Science<br>Geography<br>Geology | Mathematics (Applied)<br>Mathematics (Pure)<br>Pharmacology<br>Philosophy<br>Physics<br>Physiology<br>Psychology<br>Tutoring in Science<br>Zoology |
|---|--|
- (b) For the purpose of these Regulations: a 'paper' is a separately assessed segment of work in a subject, and papers are classified as follows:  
 Stage I (xxx. 100 to xxx. 199)  
 Stage II (xxx. 200 to xxx. 299)  
 Stage III (xxx. 300 to xxx. 399)
- (c) 'Credits' are awarded for the successful completion of papers as set out in the Schedule to these Regulations ("the BSc Schedule").
3. A complete course of study for this Degree requires the gaining of a least 96 credits, of which:
  - (a) at least 12 credits must be from Stage III papers in the BSc Schedule;
  - (b) at least 36 credits must be from papers above Stage I; and
  - (c) at least 6 credits must be from papers scheduled for this Degree in each of any FOUR subjects or, if 20 or more credits are included under Regulations 10 and 11, at least 6 credits must be from papers scheduled for this Degree in each of any THREE subjects.
  - (d) Credits obtained from the paper 14.327 (Aspects of Science Education) shall not satisfy the requirement of Regulation 3 (a) above.
4. For the purpose of Regulation 3 (c) credits obtained from one or more papers in Biology shall all count as credits in either Botany or Zoology and may not be apportioned between those two subjects in any way.
5. In relation to the taking of any paper, a candidate shall comply (i) (before enrolment) with all prerequisite requirements and (ii) with all corequisite requirements, as set out in the BSc Schedule. However, the Head of Department may in exceptional circumstances:
  - (a) waive any of those requirements;
  - (b) waive any prerequisite requirement and impose it as a corequisite.
6. A candidate who has not gained at least 24 credits from Stage I papers in the BSc Schedule may not enrol for any papers above Stage I without the prior permission of the Senate.

#### Practical Work Requirements

7. In any paper that includes practical work as well as written work;
  - (a) a candidate must obtain passes in both in order to pass the paper as a whole;
  - (b) a candidate who is awarded a pass in practical work, but who fails the written work may, with the permission of the Head of Department, have the result for the practical work carried forward to a subsequent year.

#### Course Load Restrictions

8. A candidate may not enrol, in any one year, for papers totalling more than 50 credits.

#### Direct Entry to Stage II Papers

9. Notwithstanding anything in Regulations 5 and 6, the Senate may, in exceptional circumstances, permit a suitably qualified candidate to enrol for Stage II papers without having passed the prerequisite Stage I papers. But where such permission is given:
  - (a) a successful candidate shall be credited only with passes in the Stage II papers and not in any of the prerequisite papers;

- (b) a candidate who fails any Stage II paper may be granted a pass in the appropriate Stage I paper if the necessary standard has been attained.

### Credit for Papers in Other Faculties

10. (a). A candidate for this Degree may obtain up to 12 credits from any other papers or subjects which:  
 (i) are taught in any of the Faculties of the University other than the Faculty of Science, and are prescribed for a Bachelor's degree in any of those other Faculties; and  
 (ii) are not the same as, or do not substantially overlap with, any other paper or papers which the candidate wishes to credit to the BSc Degree.

- (b). The credits allowed for the purpose of this Regulation shall be:

|                       |       |  |       |   |         |
|-----------------------|-------|--|-------|---|---------|
| Architecture Property |       |  |       |   |         |
| & Planning            | per   | credit                                     | ..... | 1 | credit  |
| Arts                  | per   | paper                                      | ..... | 5 | credits |
| Commerce              | per   | paper                                      | ..... | 5 | credits |
| Engineering           | paper | 50.002                                     | ..... | 3 | credits |
|                       | per   | any other half-year paper (but not 31.114) | ..... | 4 | credits |
|                       | per   | full-year paper                            | ..... | 6 | credits |
| Fine Arts             | per   | paper                                      | ..... | 5 | credits |
| Law                   | per   | 23 hours of lectures in any subject        | ..... | 2 | credits |
| Medicine &            |       |  |       |   |         |
| Human Biology         | per   | paper                                      | ..... | 6 | credits |
| Music                 | per   | paper                                      | ..... | 5 | credits |

### Commerce Papers

11. A course of study for the BSc Degree may include papers listed in the Appendix to the BSc Schedule, provided that the total credits gained from this Regulation and Regulation 10 shall not exceed 32. Credits are as specified in Regulation 10(b).

Note: Whilst this Regulation is intended to facilitate the Conjoint and double Degree programmes BSc/BCom, it may be used to include some Commerce papers in a BSc.

### Cross-Credits from Other Degree Courses

Note: See Regulation 10 of the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General).

12. Credits obtained under Regulation 10 and 11, from papers which are credited also to the course of study for another degree, shall be counted as cross-credits for the purpose of Regulation 10 of the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General).

### Credits for Papers Abandoned from Other Degree Courses

Note: See Regulation 14 of the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General).

13. For the purposes of these Regulations the word 'papers' in Regulation 14 of the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General) shall be interpreted as meaning:

- papers listed in the BSc Schedule;
- papers equivalent to papers listed in the BSc Schedule as determined by the Senate;
- papers that can be credited towards the BSc Degree under Regulation 10.

### Credit for Other Qualifications

14. (a). A candidate who has gained the New Zealand Certificate in Science or has gained any other recognised technical qualifications of comparable standard, may be credited with such specified papers and/or given such unspecified credits up to a maximum of 36 credits, as the Senate may determine.  
 (b). A candidate who has gained in New Zealand a Diploma in Nursing may be given such unspecified credits up to a maximum of 36 credits as the Senate may determine.  
 (c). A candidate who has successfully completed a course at a Teacher's College under the control of the Auckland Teachers' Colleges Council, or (from 1986) at the Auckland College of Education, may be granted credits towards this Degree as provided by Regulation 11 of the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General).

### Transitional Provisions

15. (a). Except as otherwise provided in this Regulation, the course of study of every candidate shall be governed by these Regulations.  
 (b). A candidate who gained credit in any unit, course or paper under any of the former Regulations for this Degree, shall be credited with such equivalent papers as may be determined by the Senate.  
 (c). For candidates who enrolled for this Degree before 1973 the subject prerequisites, corequisites and restrictions, where not covered by these Regulations, shall be determined by the Head of the Department concerned.

### Exceptions

16. (a). The Senate may, in such cases as it thinks fit, approve a personal course of study which does not conform to the foregoing Regulations.  
 (b). Every application for approval under this Regulation shall be submitted by the candidate in writing to the Registrar.

**Validity**

17. These Regulations shall come into force on 1 January 1983.

**Schedule**

1. This schedule sets out paper numbers, credits, prerequisites, corequisites and restrictions applying to courses of study offered for the Degree of Bachelor of Science.
2. The schedule shall be read with the Regulations for the Degree and with the prescriptions set out elsewhere in the *Calendar*.
3. The heading 'prerequisite' in relation to a paper refers to other papers which must be passed before the candidate may take that paper.
4. The heading 'corequisites' in relation to a paper refers to other papers which must be taken concurrently with that paper or have been passed in a previous year.
5. The heading 'restrictions' in relation to a paper refers to papers which cannot be credited together with that paper.

**SCHEDULE**

| Paper No | Title of Paper                 | Total Lecture Hours Per Paper | Minimum Lab Hours | Credits | Prerequisites  | Corequisites | Restrictions |
|----------|--------------------------------|-------------------------------|-------------------|---------|--|--------------|--------------|
| 66.202   | Molecular Aspects of Cells     | 46                            | 24x3              | 6       | } 6 credits from any Stage I Chemistry paper and 39.101                    |              | 66.201       |
| 66.203   | Central Concepts of Metabolism | 46                            | 24x3              | 6       |  | 66.202       | 66.201       |
| 66.301   | Biochemistry of Macromolecules | 46                            | 12x6              | 6       | } (a) 66.202 and 66.203<br>(b) 12 additional Science credits above Stage I | 66.302       |              |
| 66.302   | Metabolic Interrelationships   | 46                            | 12x6              | 6       |  | 66.301       |              |

**BOTANY**

|        |   |    |      |   |                |  |                            |
|--------|---|----|------|---|----------------|--|----------------------------|
| 39.101 | Central Concepts of Biology   | 46 | 12x3 | 6 |                |  | 39.111                     |
| 06.102 | Form & Function in Plants   | 46 | 12x3 | 6 |                |  | 39.112                     |
| 06.250 | The Biology of New Zealand Vegetation: Ecology Systematics and Conservation | 46 | 12x6 | 6 | 06.102, 39.101 |  | 39.210<br>06.202<br>06.302 |
| 06.251 | The Biology of Plant Cell Growth and Development                            | 46 | 12x6 | 6 | 06.102, 39.101 |  |                            |

| Paper No | Title of Paper  | Total Lecture Hours Per Paper | Minimum Lab Hours | Credits | Prerequisites                            | Corequisites | Restrictions     |
|----------|---|-------------------------------|-------------------|---------|--|--------------|------------------|
| 06.252   | The Biology of Crop Plants: Breeding, Physiology and Protection | 46                            | 12x6              | 6       | 06.102, 39.101                           |              |                  |
| 39.311   | Freshwater Ecology  | 23                            | 6x6               | 3       | 15 credits at Stage II in Bot and/or Zoo |              |                  |
| 39.314   | Conservation Ecology  | 23                            | 6x6               | 3       | As for 39.311                            |              |                  |
| 06.313   | Forest Ecology  | 23                            | 6x6               | 3       | 06.250                                   |              | 39.313           |
| * 06.321 | Plant Physiology  | 23                            | 6x6               | 3       | 6 Stage II Botany credits                |              |                  |
| 06.326   | Pure and Applied Plant Development Biology                      | 46                            | 12x6              | 6       | 6 credits from 06.251 or 06.252          |              | 06.325           |
| 06.334   | Plant and Environmental Microbiology                            | 23                            | 6x6               | 3       |  | 06.252       |                  |
| 06.335   | Plant Pathology   | 23                            | 6x6               | 3       |  | 06.252       | 06.331<br>06.332 |
| † 06.341 | Genetics  | 23                            | 6x6               | 3       |  | 06.252       |                  |
| 06.361   | Plant Biosystematics  | 23                            | 6x6               | 3       |  |              |                  |
| 06.371   | Marine Botany   | 23                            | 6x6               | 3       | 12 Stage II credits in Bot and/or Zoo    |              |                  |

Note: Students normally may not enrol for more than 6 credits in Botany III until they have passed at least 12 credits in Botany II.

## CELLULAR AND MOLECULAR BIOLOGY

|        |                                    |    |      |   |   |        |  |
|--------|------------------------------------|----|------|---|---|--------|--|
| 40.303 | Cellular and Molecular Biology     | 46 | 12x6 | 6 | (1) 08.111 and 08.121<br>(2) 66.202 (3) 12 credits from any papers in Botany, Biology, Zoology or Biochemistry (4) 18 credits from any Stage II or Stage III Science papers |        |  |
| 40.304 | Microbial and Molecular Genetics   | 46 | 12x6 | 6 |   | 40.303 |  |
| 40.305 | Plant and Animal Molecular Biology | 46 | 12x6 | 6 |   | 40.303 |  |

## CHEMISTRY

|        |  |    |      |   |                   |  |                      |
|--------|--|----|------|---|-------------------|--|----------------------|
| 08.111 | Organic and Physical Chemistry                     | 46 | 12x3 | 6 |                   |  |                      |
| 08.121 | Inorganic and Physical Chemistry                   | 46 | 12x3 | 6 |                   |  |                      |
| 08.200 | Perspectives in Chemistry                          | 23 |      | 3 | 08.111 or 08.121  |  |                      |
| 08.210 | Physical Chemistry                                 | 46 | 12x6 | 6 | 08.111 and 08.121 |  |                      |
| 08.220 | Inorganic Chemistry                                | 46 | 12x6 | 6 | As for 08.210     |  |                      |
| 08.230 | Organic Chemistry                                  | 46 | 12x6 | 6 | As for 08.210     |  |                      |
| 08.250 | Radiochemical Techniques for Biological Scientists | 10 | 10x3 | 2 | 08.111 or 08.121  |  | 08.350, 08.352       |
| 08.260 | Analytical Chemistry                               | 23 | 12x3 | 3 | 08.111 and 08.121 |  | 08.210 (before 1989) |

| Paper No | Title of Paper                   | Total Lecture Hours Per Paper | Minimum Lab Hours | Credits | Prerequisites   | Corequisites | Restrictions   |
|----------|----------------------------------|-------------------------------|-------------------|---------|---|--------------|----------------|
| 08.310   | Physical Chemistry               | 23                            | 36                | 3       | 08.210  |              |                |
| 08.311   | Physical Chemistry: Applications | 23                            | 36                | 3       | 08.210  | 08.310       |                |
| 08.320   | Inorganic Chemistry              | 23                            | 36                | 3       | 08.220  |              |                |
| 08.321   | Physical-Inorganic Chemistry     | 23                            | 36                | 3       | 08.220  |              |                |
| 08.330   | Advanced Organic Chemistry (A)   | 23                            | 36                | 3       | 08.230  |              |                |
| 08.331   | Advanced Organic Chemistry (B)   | 23                            | 36                | 3       | 08.230  | 08.330       |                |
| 08.340   | Structural Methods in Chemistry  | 32                            | 20                | 3       | 08.210, 08.230  | 08.220       |                |
| 08.352   | Radiochemistry                   | 16                            | 16x3              | 3       | 08.210 or 08.220 or 08.230 or 08.260                      |              | 08.250, 08.350 |
| 08.360   | Advanced Analytical Chemistry    | 23                            | 12x3              | 3       |   | 08.260       |                |
| 08.370   | Environmental Chemistry          | 23                            | 12x3              | 3       |   | 08.260       |                |
| † 08.390 | Advanced Topics in Chemistry (A) | By Arrangement                |                   | 3       | 08.310, 311, 320, 08.321, 330, 331, 08.340, 350, 351, 352 |              |                |
| † 08.391 | Advanced Topics in Chemistry (B) | By Arrangement                |                   | 3       | As for 08.390   |              |                |

## COMPUTER SCIENCE

|        |                                |    |    |   |  |                                |                        |
|--------|--------------------------------|----|----|---|--|--------------------------------|------------------------|
| 07.100 | Introduction to Computing(a)   | 46 | 60 | 6 |  |                                | 07.101, 07.111, 72.100 |
| 07.105 | Introduction to Computing(b)   | 46 | 40 | 6 |  | 07.100 or (07.111 as a prereq) |                        |
| 07.111 | Computing and Applications     | 46 | 60 | 6 |  |                                | 07.100, 07.101, 72.100 |
| 07.211 | Computer Systems               | 46 | 40 | 4 | 07.100 or 07.111   |                                | 07.210                 |
| 07.221 | Data Structures and Algorithms | 46 | 40 | 4 | 07.100 or 07.111, 07.105                                     |                                | 07.220                 |
| 07.222 | Data Base Management Systems   | 46 | 40 | 4 | 26.120 or 121 or 122   |                                |                        |
| 07.230 | Computing Laboratory           | 23 | 80 | 4 | 07.100 or 07.111, 07.105                                     |                                |                        |
| 26.290 | Numerical Computation          | 46 | 40 | 4 | 07.100 or 07.111, 26.120 or 121 or 122, 26.140 or 141 or 142 |                                | 07.290                 |
| 07.301 | Topic in Computer Science (a)  | 23 |    | 2 | Permission from Head of Department                           |                                |                        |
| 07.302 | Topic in Computer Science (b)  | 23 |    | 2 | Permission from Head of Department                           |                                |                        |
| 07.303 | Topic in Computer Science (c)  | 23 |    | 2 | Permission from Head of Department                           |                                |                        |
| 07.304 | Topic in Computer Science (d)  | 46 |    | 4 | Permission from Head of Department                           |                                |                        |
| 07.305 | Topic in Computer Science (e)  | 46 |    | 4 | Permission from Head of Department                           |                                |                        |



| Paper No   | Title of Paper                                | Total Lecture Hours Per Paper | Minimum Lab Hours | Credits | Prerequisites   | Corequisites | Restrictions            |
|--|---|-------------------------------|-------------------|---------|---|--------------|-------------------------|
| 07.306   | Topic in Computer Science (f)                 | 46                            |                   | 4       | Permission from Head of Department                          |              |                         |
| <b>Note:</b> Even though laboratory hours are not shown explicitly for papers 07.301 to 07.306, they will usually involve a considerable amount of practical work. |   |                               |                   |         |   |              |                         |
| 07.310   | Advanced Computer Organisation                | 46                            | 40                | 4       | 07.210, 230   |              |                         |
| 07.315   | Computer Graphics and Image Processing        | 23                            | 40                | 2       | 07.220, 07.230<br>26.120, 121 or 122                        |              | 07.302<br>(before 1989) |
| 07.330   | Language Implementation                       | 46                            | 40                | 4       | 07.210, 220, 230  |              | 07.305 in 1984          |
| 07.340   | Operating Systems                             | 46                            | 40                | 4       | 07.210, 230   |              |                         |
| †07.342  | Data Communications                           | 46                            |                   | 4       | 07.210, 230   |              | 74.324                  |
| 07.351   | Formal Languages Automata and Computability   | 46                            |                   | 4       | 07.100, 26.220 or 221                                       |              | 07.250, 07.350          |
| 07.352   | Design and Analysis of Algorithms             | 46                            |                   | 4       | 07.220, 07.230  |              | 07.250, 07.350          |
| 07.361   | Functional and Logic Programming              | 23                            | 20                | 2       | 07.220, 07.230  |              | 07.360                  |
| 07.362   | Artificial Intelligence                       | 23                            | 20                | 2       | 07.220, 07.230  | 07.361       | 07.360                  |
| 26.390   | Numerical Analysis                            | 46                            | 40                | 4       | 07.290 or 26.290;<br>26.220 or 221 or 222;<br>26.240 or 241 |              | 07.390                  |
| 26.391   | Optimisation in Operations Research           | 46                            | 12x1              | 4       | 07.100 or suitable computing experience; 26.220 or 221      |              |                         |
| 26.395   | Mathematics Modelling for Operations Research | 46                            | 12x1              | 4       | 07.100 or suitable computing experience; 26.180; 240 or 241 |              |                         |
| 74.324   | Data Communications                           |                               |                   | 4       | 74.220 and 74.221 (or 07.210 and 07.230)                    |              | 07.342                  |

**Note:** In exceptional circumstances and with the permission of Head of Department, some papers offered for MSc in Computer Science may be taken for the BSc Degree. Each such paper shall carry the credit rating shown in the MSc prescriptions.

## EDUCATION

|   |        |                              |    |   |
|---|--------|------------------------------|----|---|
| † | 14.327 | Aspects of Science Education | 46 | 4 |
|---|--------|------------------------------|----|---|

## ENVIRONMENTAL SCIENCE

|        |                       |    |   |  |                  |
|--------|-----------------------|----|---|--|------------------|
| 64.200 | Environmental Science | 46 | 4 | 24 Stage I credits or equivalent from any Faculty including at least 6 credits from papers in the BSc Schedule | 36.262<br>84.200 |
|--------|-----------------------|----|---|--|------------------|

| Paper No         | Title of Paper   | Total Lecture Hours Per Paper | Minimum Lab Hours | Credits | Prerequisites   | Corequisites | Restrictions  |
|------------------|--|-------------------------------|-------------------|---------|---|--------------|---|
| <b>GEOGRAPHY</b> |  |                               |                   |         |   |              |   |
| 20.101           | Geography of the Natural Environment                                       | 35                            | 12x2              | 6       | 20.101 and 20.102   |              | With special permission of the Head of Department (i) a student may enrol in one Stage II paper without fulfilling the prerequisites or (ii) prerequisites may be waived and re-imposed as co-requisites. 20.306          |
| 20.102           | Society, Space and Place   | 35                            | 12x2              | 6       |   |              |   |
| 20.201           | Processes in the Natural Environment                                       | 46                            | 23x1              | 4       |   |              |   |
| 20.202           | Society, Economy and Environment   | 46                            | 23x1              | 4       |   |              |   |
| 20.203           | Remote Sensing Techniques  | 46                            | 23x1              | 4       |   |              |   |
| 20.204           | Statistical Techniques in Geography  | 46                            | 23x1              | 4       |   |              |   |
| 20.205           | Human Impact in the Environment  | 46                            | 23x1              | 4       |   |              |   |
| *                | 20.206 Geographical Perspectives on Developing Countries (even years only) | 46                            |                   | 4       | Three Stage II papers in Geography including 20.204 (or equivalent) and at least one of 20.201 and 20.202 |              | Students including three or more Stage III Geography papers must attempt at least one of 20.302, 20.303, 20.304, 20.305   |
|                  | 20.302 Regional Processes and Development                                  | 46                            | 23x1              | 4       |   |              |   |
|                  | 20.303 Geomorphology and Hydrology   | 46                            | 23x1              | 4       |   |              |   |
|                  | 20.304 Biogeography and Climatology  | 46                            | 23x1              | 4       |   |              |   |
|                  | 20.305 Population Processes Policies and Techniques                        | 46                            | 23x1              | 4       |   |              |   |
|                  | 20.306 Geographical Perspectives on Developing Countries (even years only) | 46                            |                   | 4       |   |              |   |
| †                | 20.310 Geography of Malaysia, Singapore and Indonesia (odd years only)     | 46                            | 23x1              | 4       |   |              |   |
| *                | 20.312 Special Topic   | 46                            | 23x1              | 4       |   |              | 20.206 With special permission of the Head of Department (i) a student may enrol in one or two Stage III papers without fulfilling the prerequisites, or (ii) prerequisites may be waived and re-imposed as co-requisites |
| †                | 20.313 Advanced Statistical Analysis in Geography                          | 46                            | 23x1              | 4       |   |              |   |
|                  | 20.314 Geographic Information Systems and Image Processing                 | 46                            | 20x2              | 4       |   |              |   |
|                  | 20.315 Research Design and Methods in Human Geography                      | 40                            | 20x1              | 4       |   |              |   |
|                  | 20.320 Resources and Environmental Management                              | 46                            | 23x1              | 4       |   |              |   |

| Paper No   | Title of Paper                                    | Total Lecture Hours Per Paper | Minimum Lab Hours | Credits | Prerequisites   | Corequisites             | Restrictions   |
|--|---|-------------------------------|-------------------|---------|---|--------------------------|----------------|
| <b>GEOLOGY</b>   |   |                               |                   |         |   |                          |                |
| 21.110   | Planet Earth                                      | 36                            | 12+               | 6       |   |                          |                |
|  |   |                               | 2 days            |         |   |                          |                |
| 21.111   | Introduction to General and Environmental Geology | 48                            | 12x2              | 6       |   |                          | 21.100         |
| 21.112   | Geological Materials and Methods                  | 24                            | 24x2              | 6       |   | 21.100 or 21.111         | 21.150         |
| 21.200   | Introduction to Field Geology                     |                               | 4+7 days          | 2       | 21.100, 21.150 or 21.112  | 21.211 or 21.212         | 21.201, 21.202 |
| 21.211   | Principles of Structural Geology and Geophysics   | 36                            | 12x3              | 4       | 21.100, 21.150 or 21.112  | 21.200 and               | 21.201         |
| 21.212   | Principles of Historical Geology and Paleontology | 36                            | 12x3              | 4       | 21.100, 21.150 or 21.112  | 21.200                   | 21.202         |
| 21.213   | Principles of Mineralogy                          | 24                            | 12x4              | 4       | 21.100, 21.150 or 21.112  |                          | 21.203         |
| 21.215   | Principles of Petrography                         | 24                            | 12x4              | 4       | 21.100, 21.150 or 21.112  | 21.213, 21.200           | 21.203         |
| 21.281   | Elements of Economic Geology                      | 36                            | 12x2              | 3       | Enrolment requires permission of Head of Department of Geology or Mining Engineering as appropriate                           |                          | 21.304         |
| 21.284   | Exploration and Mining Geology                    | 36                            | 12x2              | 3       | As for 21.281   | 21.281                   |                |
| Note: With special permission of the Head of Department the prerequisites and corequisites may be waived for a student enrolling one Stage II paper. |   |                               |                   |         |   |                          |                |
| 21.300   | Field Methods for Geology                         |                               | 12+10 days        | 2       | 21.200  | 6 Geology III credits    |                |
| 21.303   | Advanced Paleontology                             | 46                            | 23x3              | 6       | either (21.100 and 21.150) or (21.111 and 21.112), or 39.101 and either 06.102 or 38.102                                      | 21.200 or 21.300         |                |
| 21.304   | Minerals & Mineral Deposits                       | 46                            | 23x3              | 6       | 6 Chemistry credits and either 21.203 or (21.213, 21.215)   | 21.300                   | 21.281         |
| 21.305   | Igneous & Metamorphic Petrology                   | 46                            | 23x3              | 6       |   | 21.300                   |                |
| 21.306   | Applied Geophysics                                | 36                            |                   | 3       | either (26.120 or 26.121), (26.140 or 26.141), (31.140 or 141) and (21.200 and 21.211) or 21.201 or 21.100, 21.150 and 31.210 | 31.330 or 31.335         | 21.386         |
| 21.307   | Experimental Geophysics                           |                               | 72+6 days         | 3       | As for 21.306   | 21.306, 31.330           | 21.386, 31.393 |
| 21.310   | Geology of Australasia and the SW Pacific         | 24                            |                   | 3       | At least 8 Geology II credits   | 2 papers from 21.303-318 |                |

| Paper No | Title of Paper                                | Total Lecture Hours Per Paper | Minimum Lab Hours | Credits | Prerequisites   | Corequisites   | Restrictions           |
|----------|---|-------------------------------|-------------------|---------|---|--|------------------------|
| 21.311   | Advanced Structural Geology                   | 24                            | 12x3              | 3       | Either 21.201 or (21.200, 21.211) and 6 credits in Maths or Physics   | 21.300   | 21.301                 |
| 21.312   | Advanced Sedimentology                        | 24                            | 12x3              | 3       | Either (21.201, 21.203) or (21.200, 21.211, 21.213, 21.215)   | 21.300   | 21.302                 |
| 21.318   | Introduction to Engineering Geology           | 24                            | 12x2              | 3       | Either (21.201, 21.203) or (21.200, 21.211, 21.213, 21.215)   | 21.300   | 21.201                 |
| 21.319   | Special Topics in Mineralogy and Geochemistry | 24                            | 12x2              | 3       | 08.210 or 08.220 and 21.203 or 21.213   |  |                        |
| 21.381   | Advanced Mining Geology                       | 24                            | 12                | 3       | 21.281, 21.284<br>Enrolment requires Permission of Head of Department of Geology or Mining Engineering as appropriate |  |                        |
| 21.382   | Applied Coal Geology                          | 24                            | 12x2              | 3       | Enrolment requires permission of Head of Department of Geology or Mining Engineering as appropriate                   | 21.381 or 21.304 of Department of Geology or Mining Engineering as appropriate | 21.306, 21.307, 31.393 |
| 21.386   | Applied Geophysics for Mining                 | 12                            | 24                | 3       |   |  |                        |
| 21.388   | Engineering Geology                           | 36                            | 12                | 3       |   |  |                        |
| 52.231   | Geomechanics I                                | 46                            | 11x3              | 4       | 24 Stage I credits including 21.100 and 150; permission of Head of Department Civil Engineering                       |  |                        |
| 52.331   | Geotechnical Engineering                      | 24                            | 12                | 3       | Enrolment requires permission of Head of Department, Civil Engineering  |  |                        |
| 52.332   | Geomechanics II                               | 36                            | 12                | 3       |   |  |                        |
| 56.101   | Mineral Engineering                           | 46                            |                   | 4       |   |  |                        |
| 56.312   | Evaluation & Mineral Economics                | 46                            | 12                | 4       | Enrolment requires permission of Head of Department, Mining Engineering   |  |                        |
| 56.314   | Rock Mechanics                                | 36                            | 15                | 3       |   |  |                        |

## MATHEMATICS, APPLIED

|        |   |    |      |   |  |                                 |
|--------|---|----|------|---|--|---------------------------------|
| 26.165 | Introduction to Computational Applied Mathematics | 46 | 23x1 | 6 |  | 26.120 or 121;<br>26.140 or 141 |
|--------|---|----|------|---|--|---------------------------------|

| Paper No | Title of Paper                            | Total Lecture Hours Per Paper | Minimum Lab Hours | Credits | Prerequisites   | Corequisites                | Restrictions                    |
|----------|---|-------------------------------|-------------------|---------|---|-----------------------------|---------------------------------|
| 26.175   | Introduction to Mathematical Modelling    | 46                            | 23x1              | 6       |   | 26.140 or 141 or 142 or 241 |                                 |
| 26.180   | Principles of Statistics                  | 46                            | 23x1              | 6       |   | 26.140 or 141 or 142 or 241 | 26.181, 13.102, 26.182, 290.101 |
| 26.181   | Introduction to Probability & Statistics  | 46                            | 23x1              | 6       |   |                             | 26.180, 13.102, 26.182, 290.101 |
| 26.182   | Introduction to Probability & Statistics  | 46                            | 23x1              | 6       |   |                             | 26.180, 26.181, 13.102, 290.101 |
| 26.260   | Differential Equations                    | 35                            | 12x1              | 4       |   | 26.240 or 241 or 330 or 331 |                                 |
| 26.270   | Principles of Mechanics                   | 35                            | 12x1              | 4       | 26.175 or 31.140 or 31.141  | 26.240 or 241               | 26.170                          |
| 26.280   | Statistical Theory                        | 35                            | 12x1              | 4       | 26.180 or with permission of Head of Department, 26.181 or 182                                | 26.260                      |                                 |
| 26.281   | Data Analysis                             | 35                            | 12x1              | 4       | 26.181 or 182 or 180  |                             |                                 |
| 26.290   | Numerical Computation                     | 46                            | 40                | 4       | 07.100 or 26.165; 26.120 or 121 or 122; 26.140 or 141 or 142                                  |                             | 07.290                          |
| 26.293   | Introduction to Operations Research       | 35                            | 12x1              | 4       | Either 26.165 or 6 credits in Pure or Applied Mathematics and one of 07.100, 07.101 or 74.100 |                             | 74.200                          |
| 26.360   | Applied Analysis                          | 46                            | 12x1              | 4       | 26.220 or 221 or 222; 240 or 241; 260   |                             |                                 |
| * 26.362 | Special Topics in Applied Mathematics (a) | 46                            | 12x1              | 4       | Enrolment requires permission from the Head of Department                                     |                             |                                 |
| † 26.363 | Special Topics in Applied Mathematics (b) | 23                            | 12x1              | 2       |   |                             |                                 |
| 26.368   | Mathematical Theory of Control            | 23                            | 12x1              | 2       |   | 26.220 or 221 or 222        |                                 |
| 26.371   | Introduction to Continuum Mechanics       | 46                            | 12x1              | 4       | 26.260  |                             | 54.241                          |
| 26.372   | Analytical Mechanics                      | 23                            | 12x1              | 2       | 26.240 or 241   |                             |                                 |
| 26.375   | Applied Partial Differential Equations    | 23                            | 12x1              | 2       | 26.240 or 241   |                             | 26.363(1984-86)                 |
| 26.376   | Theory of Waves                           | 23                            | 12x1              | 2       | 26.260  | 26.375 or 31.210            |                                 |
| 26.380   | Applied Probability                       | 46                            | 12x1              | 4       | 26.180; 220 or 221 or 222; 240 or 241   |                             |                                 |
| 26.381   | Advanced Statistical Theory               | 46                            | 12x1              | 4       | 26.280; 220 or 221 or 222; 240 or 241   |                             | 13.302                          |
| 26.382   | Design of Surveys and Experiments         | 46                            | 12x1              | 4       | 26.280 or 281   |                             |                                 |
| 26.385   | Advanced Data Analysis                    | 46                            | 23x1              | 4       | 26.281 or 280; approval from Head of Department   |                             |                                 |

| Paper No | Title of Paper                                 | Total Lecture Hours Per Paper | Minimum Lab Hours | Credits | Prerequisites  | Corequisites   | Restrictions |
|----------|--|-------------------------------|-------------------|---------|--|--|--------------|
| 26.390   | Numerical Analysis                             | 46                            | 40                | 4       | 07.290 or 26.290; 26.220 or 221 or 222; 26.240 or 241  |  | 07.390       |
| 26.391   | Optimisation in Operations Research            | 46                            | 12x1              | 4       | 07.100 or 26.165 or suitable computing experience; 26.220 or 221 or 222<br>The special inter-disciplinary nature of this paper may allow alternative prerequisites to those listed |  | 54.251       |
| 26.395   | Mathematical Modelling for Operations Research | 46                            | 12x1              | 4       | 07.100 or 26.165 or suitable computing experience; 26.180; 240 or 241<br>The special inter-disciplinary nature of this paper may allow alternative prerequisites to those listed   |  | 54.351       |
| 26.399   | Applied Mathematics Laboratory                 |                               | 12x3              | 2       | 07.100 or 26.165 or suitable computing experience  | At least two of 26.371, 26.375, 26.382 26.385, 26.391 26.395 |              |

## MATHEMATICS, PURE

|        |                                      |    |      |   |  |  |  |
|--------|--------------------------------------|----|------|---|--|--|--|
| 26.101 | Introduction to Algebra and Calculus | 46 | 23x1 | 6 |  |  | 26.102,122, 142; 13.105; 290.100             |
| 26.102 | Introduction to Algebra and Calculus | 46 | 23x1 | 6 |  |  | See note (i) 26.101, 122 142;13.105; 290.100 |
| 26.120 | Principles of Algebra                | 46 | 12x1 | 6 |  |  | See note (i) 26.121, 122, 221                |
| 26.121 | Introductory Algebra                 | 46 | 12x1 | 6 |  |  | 26.120, 122, 221                             |
| 26.122 | Finite Mathematics                   | 46 | 12x1 | 6 |  |  | 26.120, 121, 221,101, 102; 13.105; 290.100   |
| 26.140 | Principles of Calculus               | 46 | 12x1 | 6 |  |  | 26.141, 142, 241                             |
| 26.141 | Introductory Calculus                | 46 | 12x1 | 6 |  |  | 26.140, 142, 241                             |
| 26.142 | Concepts of Calculus                 | 46 | 12x1 | 6 |  |  | 26.140, 141, 241, 101, 102; 13.105; 290.100  |

Note: (i) Students may not enrol in 26.101 nor 26.102 at the same time as, nor subsequent to passing, any other Pure Mathematics paper. Students scoring 50% or more in any Bursary Mathematics paper are strongly encouraged to enrol in 26.121 or 26.141 rather than 26.101 or 26.102.

| Paper No | Title of Paper                                | Total Lecture Hours Per Paper | Minimum Lab Hours | Credits | Prerequisites   | Corequisites                     | Restrictions                  |
|----------|---|-------------------------------|-------------------|---------|---|----------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| 26.200   | Tutoring in Mathematics                       | 27                            | 29                | 4       | Permission of Head of Department                                |                                  |                               |
| 26.210   | Principles of Mathematics                     | 46                            |                   | 6       | 26.140, 141 or 142; At least one of 26.120, 121 or 122          | other Stage II Mathematics paper | 26.221, 222                   |
| 26.220   | Linear Algebra                                | 46                            | 23x1              | 6       | 26.120  |                                  | 26.120, 121, 122              |
| 26.221   | Algebra (accelerated paper)                   | 58                            | 12x1              | 8       | Enrolment requires permission from Head of Department           |                                  | 220, 222                      |
| 26.222   | Linear Algebra                                | 46                            | 23x1              | 6       | 26.121  |                                  | 26.220, 221                   |
| 26.240   | Calculus                                      | 35                            | 12x1              | 4       | 26.120 or 121; 26.140 or 141                                    |                                  | 26.241                        |
| 26.241   | Calculus & Analysis (accelerated paper)       | 69                            |                   | 8       | Enrolment requires permission from Head of Department           |                                  | 26.140, 141, 142, 240         |
| †        | 26.310 Special Topics in Pure Mathematics (a) | 46                            | 23x1              | 4       | Enrolment requires permission from Head of Department           |                                  |                               |
| †        | 26.311 Special Topics in Pure Mathematics (b) | 23                            | 12x1              | 2       |   |                                  |                               |
| †        | 26.312 Special Topics in Pure Mathematics (c) | 23                            | 12x1              | 2       |   |                                  |                               |
| 26.315   | Formal Logic                                  | 46                            | 12x1              | 4       | 26.120 or 121 and at least one Stage II level Mathematics paper |                                  | 29.305                        |
| 26.320   | Algebraic Structures                          | 46                            | 23x1              | 4       | 26.220 or 221   |                                  | 26.321                        |
| 26.321   | Introduction to Abstract Algebra              | 46                            | 23x1              | 4       | 26.220 or 221 or 222  |                                  | 26.320                        |
| 26.325   | Discrete, and Combinatorial Mathematics       | 46                            | 12x1              | 4       | 26.220 or 221 or 222  | 26.240 or 241                    | 26.310 (1985-1986)            |
| 26.330   | Introductory Analysis                         | 23                            | 12x1              | 2       | 26.240 or 241   |                                  |                               |
| 26.331   | Analysis                                      | 69                            |                   | 6       | 26.240 or 241 and permission from Head of Department            | 26.220 or 221 or 222             | 26.340                        |
| 26.335   | Metric & Normed Spaces                        | 23                            | 12x1              | 2       | 26.240 or 241   | 26.220 or 221 or 222             |                               |
| 26.340   | Multivariable Calculus                        | 46                            | 23x1              | 4       | 26.240 or 241   | 26.220 or 221 or 222             | 26.331                        |
| 26.345   | Techniques of Complex Variables               | 23                            | 12x1              | 2       | 26.240 or 241   |                                  |                               |
| †        | 26.350 Topics in Topology                     | 46                            | 23x1              | 4       | 26.240 or 241 and permission from Head of Department            | 26.220 or 221 or 222             | Taught in even numbered years |
| 26.355   | Geometry                                      | 46                            | 23x1              | 4       | 26.220 or 222   |                                  | Taught in odd numbered years  |

Note: Any number of 400 level papers may be taken with prior permission of the Head of Department. Each such paper shall have the credit value shown in the MSc Prescriptions.

| Paper No            | Title of Paper             | Total Lecture Hours Per Paper | Minimum Lab Hours | Credits | Prerequisites   | Corequisites | Restrictions |
|---------------------|----------------------------|-------------------------------|-------------------|---------|---|--------------|--------------|
| <b>PHARMACOLOGY</b> |                            |                               |                   |         |   |              |              |
| 96.301              | Principles of Pharmacology | 46                            | 23x3              | 6       | 66.202 or 66.203 or 67.201 and 12 or more credits from any Science papers above Stage I |              |              |
| 96.302              | Systematic Pharmacology    | 46                            | 23x3              | 6       | 67.201 and 12 or more credits from any Science papers above Stage I                     |              |              |

**PHILOSOPHY**

|        |                       |    |  |   |   |  |  |
|--------|-----------------------|----|--|---|---|--|--|
| 29.203 | Philosophy of Science | 46 |  | 5 | Two Stage I Philosophy papers or 24 BSc credits |  |  |
|--------|-----------------------|----|--|---|---|--|--|

**PHYSICS**

|        |  |      |      |   |   |        |                     |
|--------|--|------|------|---|---|--------|---------------------|
| 31.101 | The Physical Universe                    | 46   | 23x1 | 6 |   |        | 31.100, 31.140, 141 |
| 31.102 | The World of Physics                     | 46   | 23x1 | 6 |   |        | 31.150, 151         |
| 31.114 | Measurement and Instrumentation          | 23   | 6x3  | 3 |   |        | 31.104              |
| 31.140 | Foundations of Classical Physics         | 46   | 12x3 | 6 |   |        | 31.101, 141         |
| 31.141 | Principles of Classical Physics          | 46   | 12x3 | 6 |   |        | 31.101, 140         |
| 31.150 | Foundations of Modern Physics            | 46   | 12x3 | 6 |   |        | 31.100, 102, 151    |
| 31.151 | Principles of Modern Physics             | 46   | 12x3 | 6 |   |        | 31.100, 102, 150    |
| 31.200 | Topics in Contemporary & Applied Physics | 46   |      | 4 | Any one of 31.101, 102, 140-151   |        |                     |
| 31.206 | Introductory Geophysics                  | 23   |      | 2 | 6 credits from 31.101-151, 6 credits from 26.101-181  |        | 31.203, 230         |
| 31.225 | Classical and Mathematical Physics       | 46   | 15x3 | 6 | } 31.140 or 141 <sup>b</sup><br>26.120 or 121<br>26.140 or 141  |        | 31.210              |
| 31.240 | Electronic Physics                       | 23   | 8x3  | 3 |   |        | 31.245              |
| 31.245 | Electronic and Applied Physics           | 46   | 15x3 | 6 |   |        | 31.220<br>31.240    |
| 31.255 | Quantum and Statistical Physics          | 46   | 15x3 | 6 |   |        | 31.250<br>31.260    |
| 31.270 | Astronomy and Astrophysics               | 23   | 6x1  | 3 | 31.140 or 141 <sup>b</sup><br>31.150 or 151 <sup>b</sup><br>26.120 or 121<br>26.140 or 141<br>31.140 or 141<br>31.150 or 151<br>26.101 or 140<br>or 141 |        |                     |
| 31.297 | Digital Logic Laboratory                 | 12x4 | 2    |   | 31.140 or 141 <sup>b</sup>  | 07.210 |                     |

Note: (i) The superscript b associated with the prerequisites 31.141 and 31.151 denotes that a grade of B- or better is required in these papers.



| Paper No      | Title of Paper   | Total Lecture Hours Per Paper | Minimum Lab Hours | Credits | Prerequisites   | Corequisites  | Restrictions |
|---------------|--|-------------------------------|-------------------|---------|---|---|--------------|
| 31.325        | Advanced Classical Physics                                 | 46                            |                   | 4       | Two of 31.225, 245, 255; 26.240 } or their 26.260 } equivalent            | see note (ii)   |              |
| 31.326        | Laser Physics and Electro Optics                           | 23                            |                   | 2       | 31.245, 26.240 } or their 26.260 } equivalent                             | 31.325 or equivalent see note (ii)  |              |
| 31.330        | Terrestrial Physics  | 23                            |                   | 2       | (a) 31.225 or (b) 21.201, 31.140 or 141, 26.120 or 121, 26.140 or 141     |   | 31.335       |
| 31.335        | Geophysics   | 46                            |                   | 4       | 31.225  |   | 31.330       |
| 31.342        | Semiconductor Devices                                      | 23                            |                   | 2       | 31.240 or 245   |   |              |
| 31.345        | Analogue and Digital Electronics                           | 46                            |                   | 4       | 31.245 26.240 } or their 26.260 } equivalent                              | One of 31.390 -392 see note (ii)  |              |
| 31.355        | Advanced Quantum Physics                                   | 46                            |                   | 4       | 31.255 26.240 } or their 26.260 } equivalent                              |   |              |
| 31.356        | Principles of Experimental Quantum Physics                 | 23                            |                   | 2       | 31.255 26.240 } or their 26.260 } equivalent                              |   |              |
| 31.370        | Astrophysics   | 23                            |                   | 2       | One of 31.225 245, 255  |   |              |
| 31.380-31.389 | Selected Topics  | 23                            |                   | 2       | Prerequisites and/or corequisites as determined by the Head of Department |   |              |
| 31.390        | Experimental Physics A                                     |                               | 12x6              | 3       | One of 31.225 245, 255  | At least two credits from 31.325-31.370 for each one of 31.390, 391, 392 enrolled for | 21.307       |
| 31.391        | Experimental Physics B                                     |                               | 12x6              | 3       |   |   |              |
| 31.392        | Experimental Physics C                                     |                               | 12x6              | 3       |   |   |              |
| 31.393        | Experimental Geophysics (the same paper as Geology 21.307) |                               | 23x3              | 3       | 31.225; (21.100, 21.150)  | 21.306, 31.330  |              |

Note: (ii) Normally a course containing more than six credits from 31.325-356 (including any already credited) will not be approved unless it also contains at least one of 31.390-392 (unless these have already been credited).

## PHYSIOLOGY

|        |   |    |      |   |  |
|--------|---|----|------|---|--|
| 67.201 | Introductory Physiology                 | 46 | 23x3 | 6 | 08.111 or 121 and 6 credits from any paper in Biology or Zoology               |
| 67.301 | Systematic Physiology                   | 46 | 23x3 | 6 | 67.201 and 12 or more credits from any Science papers at Stage II or III level |
| 67.302 | Physiology of Cells & Excitable Tissues | 23 | 12x3 | 3 |  |
| 67.303 | Physiology of the Nervous System        | 23 | 12x3 | 3 |  |

| Paper No          | Title of Paper                                 | Total Lecture Hours Per Paper | Minimum Lab Hours | Credits | Prerequisites   | Corequisites       | Restrictions  |
|-------------------|--|-------------------------------|-------------------|---------|---|--------------------|---|
| <b>PSYCHOLOGY</b> |  |                               |                   |         |   |                    |   |
| 32.108            | Introduction to General Psychology             | 46                            |                   | 6       |   |                    | 32.118  |
| 32.109            | Introduction to Experimental Psychology        | 23                            | 23x2              | 6       |   |                    | 32.119  |
| 32.118            | Introduction to General Psychology             | 46                            |                   | 6       |   |                    | 32.108  |
| 32.119            | Introduction to Experimental Psychology        | 23                            | 23x2              | 6       |   |                    | 32.109  |
| 32.210            | Learning                                       | 23                            | 23x2              | 4       | 32.108 or 32.118, and 32.109 or 32.119  |                    | 32.206  |
| 32.220            | Human Experimental Psychology                  | 23                            | 23x2              | 4       |   |                    | 32.207, 32.211, 32.209, 32.220                        |
| 32.225            | Special Topic                                  |                               |                   | 4       |   |                    |   |
|                   |  |                               |                   |         | 32.108 or 32.118, 32.109 or 32.119, 32.230<br>Enrolment requires permission of Head of Department |                    |   |
| 32.230            | Brain and Behaviour                            | 46                            | 23x1              | 4       | 32.108 or 32.118, and 32.109 or 32.119  |                    | 32.207, 212, 213                                      |
| 32.240            | Social and Developmental Psychology            | 46                            | 23x1              | 4       |   |                    | 32.214, 215   |
| 32.301            | Psychology of Individual Differences           | 23                            | 23x2              | 4       |   |                    |   |
| 32.303            | Cognitive Science                              | 23                            | 23x2              | 4       | 12 credits from 32.210, 220, 225, 230, 240; or from 32.209, 211, 212, 213, 214, 215               |                    |   |
| 32.304            | Theory & Systems of Personality                | 23                            | 23x2              | 4       |   |                    |   |
| †32.305           | Physiological Psychology                       | 23                            | 23x2              | 4       |   |                    |   |
| 32.306            | The Design of Psychological Experiments        | 23                            | 23x2              | 4       |   |                    |   |
| 32.307            | The Psychological Analysis of Vision & Hearing | 23                            | 23x2              | 4       |   |                    |   |
| 32.308            | Research Topic                                 |                               | 23x2              | 4       |   |                    |   |
| 32.309            | Learning                                       | 23                            | 23x2              | 4       |   | Four of 32.301-316 | Enrolment requires approval of the Head of Department |
| 32.311            | Social Psychology                              | 23                            | 23x2              | 4       |   |                    |   |
| 32.312            | Organisational Psychology                      | 23                            | 23x2              | 4       |   |                    | 72.316  |
| † 32.313          | Special Topic in Psychology                    |                               |                   | 4       |   |                    |   |
| 32.314            | Ergonomics                                     | 23                            | 23x2              | 4       |   |                    |   |
| 32.315            | Abnormal Psychology                            | 23                            | 23x2              | 4       |   |                    |   |
| 32.316            | Life-span Developmental Psychology             | 23                            | 23x2              | 4       |   |                    |   |

| Paper No | Title of Paper              | Total Lecture Hours Per Paper | Minimum Lab Hours | Credits | Prerequisites              | Corequisites | Restrictions |
|----------|-----------------------------|-------------------------------|-------------------|---------|----------------------------|--------------|--------------|
| †        | 620.200 Tutoring in Science | 27 (-)                        | 30 (+)            | 4       | 36 Stage I Science Credits |              |              |
|          | (-) Seminars included       | (+) Work in classrooms        |                   |         |                            |              |              |

## ZOOLOGY

|   |  |    |      |   |  |  |                       |
|---|--|----|------|---|--|--|-----------------------|
|   | 39.101 Central Concepts of Biology               | 46 | 12x3 | 6 |  |  | 39.111                |
|   | 38.102 Animal Evolution & Diversity              | 46 | 12x3 | 6 |  |  | 39.112                |
|   | 38.207 Biometry                                  | 23 | 12x3 | 3 |  |  | 39.207, 307           |
|   | 38.250 Behaviour and Ecology                     | 46 | 72   | 6 | 38.102   |  | 38.204, 211           |
|   | 38.251 Marine Biology                            | 46 | 72   | 6 | 39.101<br>38.102                               |  | 38.201, 212<br>38.301 |
|   | 38.252 Experimental Zoology                      | 46 | 12x6 | 6 | 39.101<br>38.102                               |  | 38.202, 209<br>38.302 |
|   | 38.301 Invertebrate Zoology                      | 46 | 12x6 | 6 | 38.202   |  | 38.201, 251           |
| * | 38.303 Biological Timekeeping                    | 23 | 6x6  | 3 | 38.252<br>38.207                               |  | 38.203                |
| * | 38.305 Arthropods in the Terrestrial Environment | 23 | 6x6  | 3 | 12 credits at Stage II level in Zoology        |  | 38.205                |
|   | 38.310 Animal Morphogenesis                      | 23 | 6x6  | 3 | 12 credits at Stage II level in Zoology        |  |                       |
|   | 39.311 Freshwater Ecology                        | 23 | 6x6  | 3 | 15 credits at Stage II level in Bot and/or Zoo |  |                       |
|   | 39.314 Conservation Ecology                      | 23 | 6x6  | 3 | As for 39.311                                  |  |                       |
|   | 38.315 Evolutionary Genetics                     | 23 | 6x6  | 3 | 12 credits at Stage II level in Zoology        |  | 39.315                |
|   | 38.316 Biological Oceanography                   | 23 | 6x6  | 3 | As for 38.315                                  |  | 39.316                |
|   | 38.317 Applied Entomology                        | 23 | 6x6  | 3 | 38.205   |  |                       |
|   | 38.318 Advanced Concepts of Animal Behaviour     | 23 | 36   | 3 | 38.203, 204                                    |  |                       |
| * | 38.319 Ecological Physiology of Marine Animals   | 23 | 6x6  | 3 | 38.209   |  |                       |
|   | 38.320 Marine Ecology and Aquaculture            | 23 | 36   | 3 | 38.211, 38.207                                 |  |                       |

Note: (i) Any candidate majoring in another subject may, with the permission of the Head of Department, take up to two papers in Zoology without fulfilling the prerequisites and corequisites listed in the Schedule.

(ii) Students who have taken Stage II Zoology papers prior to 1991 may enrol in 38.250-252 only where to do so will not involve substantial overlap with previously credited papers. Details of restrictions will be advised by the Head of Department.

**Appendix: Commerce Papers which are allowed under BSc Regulation 11**

| Number and Title of Paper                         | Prerequisites   | Corequisites | Restrictions   | Qualifications       |
|---|---|--------------|----------------|----------------------|
| <b>Accounting</b>                                 |   |              |                |                      |
| 01.102 Financial Accounting                       |   | 01.103       | 01.100         | As for BCom Schedule |
| 01.103 Management Accounting                      |   | 01.102       | 01.101         |                      |
| 01.205 Financial Management                       | 01.100, 01.101;<br>or 01.102, 01.103                                |              |                |                      |
| <b>Economics</b>                                  |   |              |                |                      |
| 13.100 Microeconomics                             |   | 13.101       | 13.103         | As for BCom Schedule |
| 13.101 Macroeconomics                             |   | 13.100       | 13.103         |                      |
| 13.203 Managerial Economics                       | 13.100, 13.101  |              | 13.200         | As for BCom Schedule |
| 13.205 Introduction to Econometrics               | 13.100, 13.101,<br>plus one of 13.102<br>26.180, 26.181, 290.101    |              |                | As for BCom Schedule |
| <b>Management Studies and Labour Relations</b>    |   |              |                |                      |
| 72.101 Organisation and Management                |   |              | 72.203         |                      |
| <b>Management Science and Information Systems</b> |   |              |                |                      |
| 74.200 Operations Management                      | 74.100 and (13.102<br>or 26.181 or 290.101)                         |              |                |                      |
| 74.220 Systems Analysis                           | (i)(01.100 and 01.101)<br>or (01.102 and 01.103),<br>and (ii)74.100 |              |                |                      |
| 74.221 Programming Laboratory                     | As for BCom Schedule  |              | 07.235         |                      |
| 74.222 Data Base Management Systems               | As for BCom Schedule  |              | 07.320, 74.322 |                      |

Note: \*Starred papers will not be taught during the current *Calendar* year.

†Daggered papers will not be taught during the current *Calendar* year unless sufficient staff is available.

## THE DEGREE OF BACHELOR OF SCIENCE (HONOURS) BSc (Hons)

*The personal course of study of every candidate must be approved by the Senate. Approval will normally be granted for courses which are in accordance with the following Regulations: for general provisions affecting their courses of study students are referred to the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General) and the Examination Regulations.*

1. Except as provided in the Admission Regulations a candidate for the Degree of Bachelor of Science with Honours shall follow a course of study of four years.
2. The Degree may be awarded in each of the following Honours Schools: Biochemistry, Computer Science, Geology, Applied Geology, Mathematics and Psychology.
3. Admission to the course of study for the Degree of Bachelor of Science (Honours) shall be at the discretion of the Senate and shall be given at either the end of the second year or third year after matriculation provided that where the proviso to Regulation 11 applies, admission may be granted at the end of the third or fourth year after matriculation.
4. No candidate shall be admitted to an Honours School without the approval of the Head of Department of that School and of the Senate. Such approval shall be granted or withheld upon a consideration of the candidate's performance in the courses of University study already pursued by the candidate and particularly in the papers required as prerequisites to that Honours School.
5. No candidate may be awarded the Degree of Bachelor of Science (Honours) if he has previously been awarded the Degree of Bachelor of Science of this University.
6. In each Honours School a candidate's course of study for the Degree shall comprise:
  - (a) such prerequisites, being papers prescribed for the Degree of Bachelor of Science, and
  - (b) such Honours Parts (being Parts III and IV, or Part IV as the case may be) and
  - (c) such Foreign Language requirements as the Head of the Department within the Honours School may prescribe, and
  - (d) such papers in other subjects as may be required and prescribed in that Honours School under Regulation 16, provided that:
    - (i) except where the Senate in its discretion otherwise permits, the number of prerequisite papers shall be not fewer than 72 credits in a case of entry into an Honours School at the end of the second year after matriculation and not fewer than 96 in a case of entry at the end of the third such year;
    - (ii) in the case of any prerequisite subject and with the approval of the Senate, if the candidate has been permitted to enrol for and has passed at Stage II without having passed at Stage I, Stage II may be substituted for Stage I, and Stage III may then be substituted for Stage II;
    - (iii) in the case of a candidate whose mother tongue is not English the Foreign Language requirements shall be waived.
7. Notwithstanding anything in Regulation 16, a candidate for this Degree may
  - (a) with the permission of the Heads of the Departments concerned and the approval of Senate, substitute one paper in another subject for one paper of the subject in which the Degree is being taken.
  - (b) up to 4 Stage III credits) not already taken for any other degree of diploma.
8. A candidate in any subject for this Degree where practical work is prescribed, must pass besides the written examination, in such practical work as may be prescribed by the Head of the Department.

### Withdrawal and Exclusion from Course

9. A candidate may withdraw from the Honours School and be granted such credits and exemptions for papers for the Degree of Bachelor of Science as the Senate shall determine.
10. A candidate shall be required to pass as a whole each Part of the Honours course of study so that the performance in all papers comprising this Part shall be considered; provided that a candidate who has failed to pass an Honours Part as a whole may in such exceptional circumstances as the Senate approves be credited with a paper or papers of that Part and permitted in a subsequent year to present the paper or papers not so credited, together with (if the Senate permits) a paper or papers of the next succeeding Part. The candidate shall then be required in that year to pass as a whole in all the papers so presented upon the same conditions as those herein prescribed.
11. A candidate shall sit his/her final examinations for the Degree within four years of his/her matriculation, provided that at the discretion of the Senate the period may be extended to five years:
  - (a) where a candidate first enrolled in the subject of his/her Honours School in his/her second year after matriculation, or
  - (b) in any special circumstances.
12. A candidate who, on the results of his/her examination, does not reach the standard required in the Honours School in which he/she is enrolled, shall be excluded by the Senate from the Honours School but he/she may be granted such credits and exemptions for papers for the Degree of Bachelor of Science as the Senate shall determine.

### Classes of Honours

13. The Degree of Bachelor of Science (Honours) may be awarded with First Class or Second Class Honours.

Second Class Honours shall be awarded in either First Division or Second Division. The class of Honours awarded shall be determined primarily on the performance of the candidate in the examinations in his or her final year but account may be taken of his work throughout his or her course of study.

14. The Senate may determine in respect of any candidate who fails to qualify for the Degree that he or she be awarded the Degree of Bachelor of Science or be credited with papers towards that Degree or be credited with the Degree of Bachelor of Science together with appropriate credits towards the Degree of Master of Science.

#### **Transfer to BSc(Hons)**

15. The Senate may, on written application by a candidate for the Degree of Bachelor of Science and without payment of a fee, grant him or her permission to transfer to a course of study under these Regulations and allow him or her to be credited with a pass in such papers as the Senate shall determine.

#### **Requirements of Honours Schools**

16. Subject to the provisos to Regulation 5, the Honours courses of study with subject and papers of examination are as follows:

##### **Biochemistry Prerequisites**

(a) For a candidate seeking admission to the Honours School at the end of the second year after matriculation, a total of 72 credits from papers that may be credited to the BSc Degree providing that these prerequisite papers, together with the papers selected for Part III, will enable the candidate to attain a level equivalent to the prerequisite for entry to Part IV.

(b) For a candidate seeking admission to the Honours School at the end of the third year after matriculation, a total of 96 credits from papers that may be credited to the BSc Degree including 66.301 and 66.302 plus 12 additional Stage III Science credits from Botany, Cellular and Molecular Biology, Chemistry, Pharmacology, Physiology or Zoology.

##### **Biochemistry Honours Part III**

(Not fewer than 24 credits in Stage III papers approved by the Head of Department of Biochemistry). Part III shall consist of:

(a) 66.301 and 66.302 and

(b) at least 12 Stage III credits from Botany, Cellular and Molecular Biology, Chemistry, Pharmacology, Physiology or Zoology.

##### **Biochemistry Honours Part IV**

(Three papers together with practical work and a thesis.)

The student shall follow one year's course of study approved by the Head of Department of Biochemistry and carry out an original investigation on an approved topic. The examination shall consist of three papers prescribed for the Degree of Master of Science (66.401 to 66.403) and a thesis (66.603) embodying the results of the investigation which shall be equivalent to one paper. The thesis shall be delivered to the Registrar at the end of the third term.

Note: Intending students should consult the Head of Department about the research topic immediately after completing the papers for Part III.

##### **Computer Science Prerequisites**

(a) For a candidate seeking admission to the Honours School at the end of the second year after matriculation, a total of 72 credits from papers that may be credited to the BSc Degree provided that these prerequisite papers, together with the papers selected for Part III, will enable the candidate to attain a level equivalent to the prerequisites for entry to Part IV.

(b) For a candidate seeking admission to the Honours School at the end of the third year after matriculation, a total of 96 credits from papers that may be credited to the BSc Degree including at least 20 credits at 300 or 400 level, of which at least 16 shall be from papers in Computer Science.

##### **Computer Science Honours Part III**

(24 credits in papers approved by the Head of Department of Computer Science.)

Part III shall consist of papers approved by the Head of the Department of Computer Science totalling 24 credits and including such papers as will enable attainment of a level equivalent to the prerequisite to entry to Part IV.

##### **Computer Science Honours Part IV**

(24 credits in papers approved by the Head of the Department of Computer Science.)

Part IV shall consist of 24 credits, at least 16 credits of which shall be from Computer Science 07.400 to 07.499. The remaining credits may be selected with the approval of the Heads of the Departments concerned from relevant Masters papers in the subjects Mathematics, Physics (one paper counting as 4 credits) and/or papers prescribed for the degree of Master of Engineering (one paper counting as 2 credits for this Degree.)

##### **Geology Prerequisites**

(a) For a candidate seeking admission to the Honours School at the end of his or her second year after matriculation, Geology papers, totalling 24 credits and 42 credits from other papers in any of the following subjects:

Botany, Chemistry, Geology, Mathematics, Physics, Zoology, or in any other subject approved by the Head of Department.

(b) For a candidate seeking admission to the Honours School at the end of his or her third year after matriculation, structure of course of study as specified for entry at the end of the second year:

24 credits from papers 21.300-21.388.

In special cases, with the approval of the Head of the Department of Geology, papers at an advanced level in any other subjects may be substituted for any of the above, provided that the candidate has gained at least 12 credits from Geology Stage III papers.

### **Geology Honours Part III**

(Geology papers totalling not fewer than 24 credits, together with practical work.)

Part III shall contain papers prescribed as Geology second or third year papers, for a total of not fewer than 24 credits. In special cases, with the approval of the Head of the Department of Geology, advanced papers in other subjects may be substituted for Geology papers, provided that the course of study contains Geology papers totalling at least 12 credits.

### **Geology Honours Part IV**

(Three papers together with practical work and thesis.)

The student shall follow one year's course of study approved by the Head of the Department of Geology and carry out an original investigation on an approved topic.\* The examination shall consist of three papers prescribed for the Degree of Master of Science (21.401 to 21.450 but not 21.484 or 86.404) and a thesis (21.603) embodying the results of the investigation which shall be equivalent to one paper. The thesis shall be delivered to the Registrar at the beginning of the second half of the second term.

\*Note: (i) Intending students should consult the Head of Department about the research topic immediately after completing the papers for Part III.

(ii) The language for the Foreign Language Reading Examination shall be any approved by the Head of the Department of Geology and this examination shall be taken as early as possible.

(iii) An abstract is to be submitted with each copy of the thesis, see Examination Regulation 14.

### **Applied Geology Prerequisites**

(a) For a candidate seeking admission to the Honours School at the end of the second year after matriculation: Geology papers totalling at least 24 credits and at least 18 credits from papers in any of the following subjects:

Chemistry, Computer Science, Geomechanics, Mathematics, Mineral Engineering, Physics or any other subject approved by the Head of the Department of Geology.

(b) For any candidate seeking admission to the Honours School at the end of the third year after matriculation: structure of course of study as specified for entry at end of second year, and at least 24 credits from 21.300, 21.304 to 21.388, 52.331, 52.332, 56.312, 56.314 provided at least 12 credits are from Geology Stage III papers.

In special cases, with the approval of the Head of the Department of Geology, papers at an advanced level in any other subjects may be substituted for any of the above, provided that the candidate has gained at least 12 credits from the Geology Stage III papers.

### **†Applied Geology Honours Part III**

(Not fewer than 24 credits in Stage III papers approved by the Head of the Department of Geology, together with practical work.)

Not fewer than 24 credits from 21.300, 21.304 to 21.388, 52.331, 52.332, 56.312, 56.314, provided at least 12 credits are from Geology Stage III papers.

In special cases, with the approval of the Head of the Department of Geology, papers at an advanced level in any other subjects may be substituted for any of the above provided that the candidate has gained at least 12 credits from Geology III papers.

### **Applied Geology Honours Part IV**

(Three papers together with practical work and thesis.)

The student shall follow one year's course of study approved by the Head of the Department of Geology and carry out an original investigation on an approved topic. The examination shall consist of three papers prescribed for the Degree of Master of Science in Applied Geology and a thesis (21.613) embodying the results of the investigation which shall be equivalent to one paper. The thesis shall be delivered to the Registrar at the beginning of the second half of the second term.

### **Mathematics Prerequisites**

(a) For a candidate seeking admission to the Honours School at the end of his or her second year after matriculation a total of 72 credits from the following subjects:

Mathematics, Chemistry, Computer Science, Physics, or in any other subject approved by the Head of the Department of Mathematics and Statistics provided that prerequisite papers, together with the papers selected for Part III, will enable the candidate to attain a level equivalent to the prerequisite for entry to Part IV.

(b) For a candidate seeking admission to the Honours School at the end of his or her third year after matriculation:

Mathematics 26.220 or 26.221 or 26.222, 26.240 or 26.241, at least one of 26.260, 26.280, 26.281, plus twenty 300 or 400 level credits approved by the Head of the Department of Mathematics and Statistics. Normally at least 16 of those 20 credits shall be from papers in Mathematics but 12 credits in Mathematics may be approved in special cases.

### **Mathematics Honours Part III**

(24 credits in papers approved by the Head of the Department of Mathematics and Statistics.)

Part III shall consist of papers approved by the Head of the Department of Mathematics and Statistics totalling 24 credits and including such Mathematics papers as will enable attainment of a level equivalent to the prerequisites for entry to Part IV.

**Mathematics Honours Part IV**

(20 credits in papers approved by the Head of the Department of Mathematics and Statistics.)

Part IV shall consist of 20 credits, at least 12 credits of which shall be from Mathematics 26.400 to 26.499. The remaining credits may be selected with the approval of the Heads of the Departments concerned from relevant Masters papers in the subjects Computer Science, Physics (one paper counting as 4 credits) and/or papers prescribed for the degree of Master of Engineering (one paper counting as 2 credits for this Degree.)

**Psychology Prerequisites**

(a) For a candidate seeking admission to the Honours School at the end of the second year after matriculation, Psychology papers totalling 24 credits. In addition, candidates must have sufficient credits to enable them to have obtained 96 credits from appropriate papers in subjects prescribed for the BSc Degree by the completion of Part III.

(b) For a candidate seeking admission to the Honours School at the end of the third year after matriculation, a total of 96 credits from the subjects prescribed for the BSc Degree including at least 20 credits at the 300 level, of which at least 16 shall be from papers in Psychology.

**Psychology Honours**

The Psychology Honours Degree shall consist of not fewer than 40 credits in Psychology, including 32.306 and 32.603, the remainder to be selected from papers 32.300 to 32.316 and from papers 32.400 to 32.425 (excluding 32.420), each 400 level paper and the thesis (32.603) carrying 4 credits.

**Psychology Honours Part III**

(Psychology papers totalling not fewer than 16 credits.)

Part III shall consist of 300 level papers in Psychology totalling not less than 16 credits and including 32.306.

**Psychology Honours Part IV**

(Not fewer than 16 credits in Psychology, including practical work and a thesis.)

Part IV shall consist of not fewer than 16 credits in Psychology, including papers selected from 32.400 to 32.425 (excluding 32.420) and a thesis embodying the results of an original investigation (32.603) which shall have the value of 4 credits. Students who have not passed 32.306 are required to take 32.419.

17. The Senate may, in such exceptional cases as it thinks fit, approve a personal course of study which does not conform to the foregoing Regulations.

## THE DEGREE OF BACHELOR OF OPTOMETRY BOptom

*The personal course of study of every candidate must be approved by the Senate. Approval will normally be granted for courses which are in accordance with the following Regulations: for general provisions affecting their courses of study students are referred to the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General) and the Examination Regulations.*

1. Except as provided in the Admission Regulations a candidate for the Degree of Bachelor of Optometry shall follow a course of study of not fewer than four years.
2. In these Regulations:
  - (a) a 'paper' is an independently assessed segment of work in a subject, the successful completion of which results in the award of credits as set out in the Schedule to these Regulations.
  - (b) Papers are classified as Stage I (papers numbered .100-.199), Stage II (.200-.299), Stage III (.300-.399) and Stage IV (.400-.499).
3. A complete course of study requires the gaining of 158 credits.

**Course Load**

4. A candidate may not enrol in any one year for papers totalling more than 50 credits.
  5. In any paper that includes practical work:
    - (a) a candidate must pass independently the practical work and the final examination;
    - (b) a candidate who is awarded a pass in the practical work, but who fails the paper overall may, with the permission of the Head of Department in respect of a paper prefixed 44. and with the permission of the Senate in respect of other papers, have the result of the practical work carried forward to a subsequent year.
- Note:** A candidate requesting this permission should apply to the Head of Department prior to the commencement of the Enrolment period in the year of re-enrolment for the paper.
6. (a). A candidate may not enrol for any paper until he or she has satisfied all the prerequisite and corequisite requirements for that paper, as set out in the BOptom Schedule, or have permission from the Head of the Department of Optometry.
  - (b). A candidate required to repeat any year III subjects may also be required to undertake such additional practical and clinical work as the Head of the Department of Optometry determines.
  - (c). A candidate required to repeat any of the papers 44.425, 44.426, 44.427, 44.431, 44.432 and 44.433 may also be required to complete such additional work and examinations in any or all of those papers as the Head of the Department of Optometry may determine.
  - (d). A candidate shall be required to pass independently the written component and clinical practice component of each of the papers 44.427, 44.431, 44.432 and 44.433.



**Exceptions**

7. (a). The Senate may in such exceptional cases as it thinks fit approve a personal course of study which does not conform to the foregoing Regulations.  
 (b). Every application for approval under this Regulation shall be submitted by the candidate in writing to the Registrar.

**Optional Transition From DipOpt**

8. Any candidate who in or before 1981 enrolled for the Diploma in Optometry but has not completed the requirements for or been awarded that Diploma before 31 December 1987 may either (i) transfer to the course of study for this Degree (in which case he or she shall be credited with such equivalent paper or papers for this Degree as the Senate may determine), or (ii) complete the course of study for the Diploma in Optometry in accordance with the Regulations for that Diploma last published in the University of Auckland *Calendar* for 1981.

**Revocation**

9. The Regulations for the Diploma in Optometry are revoked (subject to Regulation 8 of these present Regulations).  
 10. These Regulations shall come into force on 1 January 1982.

**Schedule**

- (1) This Schedule sets out paper numbers, credits, prerequisites, corequisites and restrictions applying to papers for the Degree of Bachelor of Optometry.  
 (2) The Schedule shall be read with the Regulations for the Degree and with the prescriptions set out elsewhere in the *Calendar*.  
 (3) The heading 'prerequisites' in relation to a paper refers to other papers which must be passed before the candidate may take that paper.  
 (4) The heading 'corequisites' in relation to a paper refers to other papers which must be taken concurrently with that paper or have been passed in a previous year.  
 (5) The heading 'restrictions' in relation to a paper refers to a paper which cannot be taken together with that paper.  
 (6) A candidate may not take a further stage of a paper until he or she satisfies all prerequisite and corequisite requirements for that paper.

**SCHEDULE**

| Subjects   | Paper No | Title of Paper                             | Total Lecture Hours Per Paper | Minimum Lab Hours | Credits | Prerequisites | Corequisites | Restrictions   |
|--|----------|--|-------------------------------|-------------------|---------|---------------|--------------|--|
| <b>YEAR I</b>  |          |  |                               |                   |         |               |              |  |
| <b>Part A A candidate must take all of the following papers:</b> |          |  |                               |                   |         |               |              |  |
| Bio  | 39.101   | Central Concepts of Biology                | 46                            | 12x3              | 6       |               |              | 39.111   |
| Chem   | 08.111   | Organic and Physical Chemistry             | 46                            | 12x3              | 6       |               |              |  |
| Phys   | 31.141   | Principles of Classical Physics            | 46                            | 12x3              | 6       |               |              | 31.101,31.140  |
| Maths  | 26.105   | Algebra and Calculus                       | 46                            | 12x1              | 6       |               |              | 26.101,102,120<br>26.121, 26.122<br>26.140, 26.141<br>26.142 |
| Maths  | 26.181   | Introduction to Probability and Statistics | 46                            | 23x1              | 6       |               |              | 26.180,26.182,<br>13.102                                     |

**Part B A candidate must take three of the following papers:**

|              |        |                                  |    |      |   |  |  |                         |
|--------------|--------|----------------------------------|----|------|---|--|--|-------------------------|
| Chem         | 08.121 | Inorganic and Physical Chemistry | 46 | 12x3 | 6 |  |  |                         |
| Comp Science | 07.100 | Introduction to Computing (a)    | 46 | 60   | 6 |  |  | 07.101,72.100<br>74.100 |

| Subjects     | Paper No | Title of Paper                          | Total Lecture Hours Per Paper | Minimum Lab Hours | Credits | Prerequisites | Corequisites | Restrictions    |
|--------------|----------|---|-------------------------------|-------------------|---------|---------------|--------------|-----------------|
| Comp Science | 07.111   | Computing and Applications              | 46                            | 60                | 6       |               |              | 07.100, 72.100  |
| Comp Science | 07.105   | Introduction to Computing (b)           | 46                            | 40                | 6       |               | 07.100       | 74.100          |
| Phys         | 31.151   | Principles of Modern Physics            | 46                            | 12x3              | 6       |               |              | 31.100, 102.150 |
| Psych        | 32.108   | Introduction to General Psychology      | 46                            |                   | 6       |               |              |                 |
| Psych        | 32.109   | Introduction to Experimental Psychology | 23                            | 23x2              | 6       |               |              |                 |
| Zoo          | 38.102   | Animal Evolution and Diversity          | 46                            | 12x3              |         |               |              | 39.112          |

Note: (a) For Phys 31.141 a candidate may substitute 31.140;  
(b) For Phys 31.151 a candidate may substitute 31.150.

## YEAR II

|         |        |                                    |    |      |   |                                      |                |                |
|---------|--------|------------------------------------|----|------|---|--------------------------------------|----------------|----------------|
| Biochem | 66.204 | General and Ocular Biochemistry    | 46 | 10x3 | 6 | 39.101                               |                | 66.201, 66.202 |
| Optom   | 44.200 | Physical Optics                    | 12 | 12x2 | 3 | 31.140 or 31.141 or 31.150 or 31.151 | 44.201         | 66.203         |
| Optom   | 44.201 | Geometrical Optics                 | 12 | 12x2 | 3 | 31.140 or 31.141 or 31.150 or 31.151 | 44.200         |                |
| Optom   | 44.203 | Anatomy of the Visual System       | 23 | 12x3 | 4 | 39.101                               | 44.205         |                |
| Optom   | 44.205 | Ocular Physiology                  | 23 | 12x2 | 4 | 39.101                               | 44.203, 66.204 | 67.201         |
| Optom   | 44.210 | Physiological Optics               | 46 | 23x3 | 8 | 39.101                               | 44.200, 44.201 | 44.203, 44.205 |
| Optom   | 44.230 | Introduction to Clinical Optometry | 23 | 23x2 | 4 |                                      | 44.200, 201    | 203, 210       |
| Physiol | 67.201 | Introductory Physiology            | 46 | 23x3 | 6 | 39.101                               |                |                |

## YEAR III

|       |        |                       |    |      |   |                |        |  |
|-------|--------|-----------------------|----|------|---|----------------|--------|--|
| Optom | 44.305 | Ocular Pharmacology   | 12 | 6x2  | 2 | 44.203, 44.205 |        |  |
| Optom | 44.306 | Applied Optics        | 23 | 23x2 | 4 | 44.210, 66.204 |        |  |
| Optom | 44.310 | Physiological Optics  | 23 | 12x3 | 4 | 67.201         |        |  |
| Optom | 44.312 | Contact Lens Practice | 23 | 12x2 | 3 | 44.200, 44.201 | 44.330 |  |
| Optom | 44.313 | Environmental Vision  | 23 | 12x2 | 4 | 44.203, 44.205 |        |  |
| Optom | 44.314 | General Pathology     | 23 |      | 2 | 44.210         | 44.315 |  |
| Optom | 44.315 | Ocular Pathology      | 23 | 23x1 | 3 | 44.203, 44.205 | 44.330 |  |

| Subjects | Paper No | Title of Paper       | Total Lecture Hours Per Paper | Minimum Lab Hours | Credits | Prerequisites                  | Corequisites   | Restrictions |
|----------|----------|----------------------|-------------------------------|-------------------|---------|--------------------------------|----------------|--------------|
| Optom    | 44.316   | Ophthalmic Optics    | 23                            | 12x2              | 3       | 44.200, 44.201, 44.210         | 44.312         |              |
| Optom    | 44.321   | General Microbiology | 12                            | 4x3               | 2       | 66.204, 67.201, 08.111, 08.121 |                |              |
| Optom    | 44.330   | Clinical Optometry   | 46                            | 30x6              | 6       | 44.203, 44.205, 44.210         | 44.310, 44.316 |              |

## YEAR IV

|       |        |                            |    |      |   |  |  |  |
|-------|--------|----------------------------|----|------|---|--|--|--|
| Optom | 44.415 | Community Health Optometry | 23 |      | 4 | 24 Year III Credits  |  |  |
| Optom | 44.421 | Project                    |    |      | 4 | 29 Year III Credits  |  |  |
| Optom | 44.425 | General Clinical Practice  | 12 | 33x9 | 8 | A grade of at least C in each of 44.312, 44.315, 44.330, and 21 other Year III credits |  |  |
| Optom | 44.426 | Clinical Optometry I       | 24 |      | 2 | As for 44.425  |  |  |
| Optom | 44.427 | Clinical Optometry II      | 12 | 12x3 | 3 | As for 44.425  |  |  |
| Optom | 44.431 | Contact Lens Practice      | 12 | 33x3 | 6 | As for 44.415  |  |  |
| Optom | 44.432 | Low Vision Practice        | 12 | 33x3 | 6 | As for 44.415  |  |  |
| Optom | 44.433 | Binocular Vision Practice  | 12 | 33x3 | 6 | As for 44.415  |  |  |

## †THE DEGREE OF BACHELOR OF SCIENCE EDUCATION BScEd

*The personal course of study of every candidate must be approved by the Senate. Approval will normally be granted for courses which are in accordance with the following Regulations: for general provisions affecting their courses of study students are referred to the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General) and the Examination Regulations.*

### General Provisions

- Except as provided in the Admission Regulations candidates for the Degree of Bachelor of Science Education shall follow a course of study of not less than four years.
- (a) For the purpose of these Regulations, a 'paper' is a separately assessed segment of work in a subject, and papers are classified as follows:  
 Stage I (xxx.100 to xxx.199)  
 Stage II (xxx.200 to xxx.299)  
 Stage III (xxx.300 to xxx.399) etc  
 (b) 'Credits' are awarded for the successful completion of papers as set out in the Schedule to these Regulations ('the BScEd Schedule').
- A complete course of study for this Degree requires the successful completion of Part I and Part II as detailed below.

### PART I

- In Part I a candidate's course of study for the degree shall comprise:
  - Not fewer than 66 credits in papers prescribed for the Degree of Bachelor of Science including
    - At least 12 Stage II credits in either Chemistry or Physics *and*
    - At least 6 Stage I credits in each of the following subjects: Biology; Chemistry; Applied Mathematics or Pure Mathematics; Physics *and*
  - Environmental Science 64.200 plus *either* Chemistry 08.200 (for those taking Physics under Regulation 4(a)(i)) or Physics 31.200 (for those taking Chemistry under Regulation 4(a)(i)).

† This course will not be taught in 1991 unless sufficient staff is available.

**PART II**

5. After admission to Part II the candidate shall follow a course of study of at least two years which shall comprise:
  - (a) at least 12 Stage III credits from papers in the BSc Schedule (not being papers already credited under Regulation 4)
  - (b) the five papers specifically prescribed in the schedule for BScEd Part II
  - (c) the Diploma in Teaching of the Auckland Colleges of Education
  - (d) Credits obtained from the paper 14.327 (Aspects of Science Education) shall not satisfy the requirement of Regulation 5(a) above.
6. Admission to Part II of the course of study for the Degree of Bachelor of Science Education shall be at the discretion of Senate after completion of Part I and on the recommendation of the Board of Studies.
7. The Board of Studies for Part II of the Degree of Bachelor of Science Education shall comprise: Dean of the Faculty of Science, or nominee; an elected member of the Faculty of Science; Dean of Science and Engineering of the Auckland Technical Institute, or nominee; Head of the Department of Education, or nominee.
8. In relation to the taking of any paper, a candidate shall comply
  - (i) (before enrolment) with all prerequisite requirements and
  - (ii) with all the corequisite requirements, as set out in the BSc Schedule or the BScEd Schedule. However, the Head of Department in the case of the BSc Schedule or the Board of Studies in the case of the BScEd Schedule, may in exceptional circumstances:
    - (a) waive any of those requirements;
    - (b) waive any prerequisite requirement and impose it as a corequisite.
9. A candidate who has not gained at least 24 credits from Stage I papers in the BScSchedule may not enrol for any papers above Stage I without the prior permission of the Senate.

**Practical Work Requirements**

10. In any paper that includes practical work as well as written work;
  - (a) a candidate must obtain passes in both in order to pass the paper as a whole;
  - (b) a candidate who is awarded a pass in practical work, but who fails the written work may, with the permission of the Head of Department, have the result for the practical work carried forward to a subsequent year.

**Course Load Restrictions**

11. A candidate may not enrol, in any one year, for papers totalling more than 50 credits.

**Credit for Papers in Other Faculties**

12. (a). A candidate for Part I of this Degree may obtain up to 12 credits from any other papers or subjects which:
  - (i) are taught in any of the Faculties of the University other than the Faculty of Science, and are prescribed for a Bachelor's degree in any of those other Faculties; and
  - (ii) are not the same as, or do not substantially overlap with, any other paper or papers which the candidate wishes to credit to the BScEd degree.
- (b). The credits allowed for the purpose of this Regulation shall be:

|                                     |   |           |
|-------------------------------------|---|-----------|
| Architecture, Property and Planning | per credit                              | 1 credit  |
| Arts                                | per paper                               | 5 credits |
| Commerce                            | per paper                               | 5 credits |
| Engineering                         | per half-year paper                     | 4 credits |
|                                     | per full-year paper                     | 6 credits |
| Fine Arts                           | per paper                               | 5 credits |
| Law                                 | per 23 hours of lectures in any subject | 2 credits |
| Medicine & Human Biology            | per paper                               | 6 credits |
| Music                               | per paper                               | 5 credits |

**Cross-Credits from Other Degree Courses**

Note: See Regulation 10 of the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General)

13. Credits obtained under Regulation 12 from papers which are credited also to the course of study for another degree, shall be counted as cross-credits for the purpose of Regulation 10 of the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General).
14. For the purposes of these Regulations the word 'papers' in Regulation 14 of the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General) shall be interpreted as meaning:
  - (a) papers listed in the BSc Schedule or the BScEd Schedule
  - (b) papers equivalent to papers listed in the BSc Schedule or the BScEd Schedule as determined by the Senate;
  - (c) papers that can be credited towards the BScEd Degree under Regulation 12

**Credit for Other Qualifications**

15. A candidate who has gained the New Zealand Certificate of Science or has gained any other recognised technical qualifications of comparable standard, may be credited with such specified papers and/or given such unspecified credits up to a maximum of 36 credits, as the Senate may determine.

Note: A candidate who has successfully completed a course at an Auckland Teachers' College may be granted credits towards this Degree as provided

by Regulation 11 of the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General).

### Transitional Provisions

16. (a) Except as otherwise provided in this Regulation, the course of study of every candidate shall be governed by these Regulations.  
 (b) A candidate who gained credit in any unit, course or paper under any of the former Regulations for the BSc Degree, shall be credited with such equivalent papers as may be determined by the Senate.

### Exceptions

17. (a) The Senate may, in such exceptional cases as it thinks fit, approve a personal course of study which does not conform to the foregoing Regulations.  
 (b) Every application for approval under this Regulation shall be submitted by the candidate in writing to the Registrar.

### Validity

18. These Regulations shall come into force on 1 January 1991.

### Schedule

- This schedule sets out paper numbers, credits, prerequisites, corequisites and restrictions applying to courses of study offered for the Degree of Bachelor of Science Education.
- The schedule shall be read with the Regulations for the Degree and with the prescriptions set out elsewhere in the Calendar.
- The heading 'prerequisite' in relation to a paper refers to other papers which must be passed before the candidate may take that paper.
- The heading 'corequisites' in relation to a paper refers to other papers which must be taken concurrently with that paper or have been passed in a previous year.
- The heading 'restrictions' in relation to a paper refers to papers which cannot be credited together with that paper.

## SCHEDULE

### PART I

As in the BSc Schedule pages 189-203 EXCLUDING the Appendix (page 203)

### PART II

| Paper No | Title of Paper                                   | Credits | Prerequisites   | Corequisites                       | Restrictions |
|----------|--|---------|-----------------|------------------------------------|--------------|
| † 14.270 | Issues in STSE Education                         | 4       | BScEd<br>PART I | Diploma<br>in<br>Teaching<br>(ACE) |              |
| 14.327   | Aspects of Science Education                     | 4       |                 |                                    |              |
| 621.220  | Science Technology & Industry                    | 4       |                 |                                    |              |
| 621.300  | Current Advances in Science                      | 4       |                 |                                    |              |
| 634.260  | Teaching and Learning<br>in Science & Technology | 4       |                 |                                    |              |

## PRESCRIPTIONS FOR BScEd

### 14.270 Issues in STSE Education

This paper examines the complex interactions between science, technology, society and the environment, provides a critical awareness of some of the major issues confronting human society, and considers ways in which an ecologically-oriented science and technology education can be implemented in primary and secondary schools. Major topics, for which students will be expected to develop a bank of resource materials for school use, may include: health; land, water and mineral resources; food and agriculture; energy resources and consumption; industry and technology; biotechnology; information technology; ethics and social responsibility in science and technology.

### 14.327 Aspects of Science Education

An introduction to children's learning in science, to issues in the philosophy of science relevant to the science curriculum and to a range of other issues in the contemporary international debate concerning science education at primary and secondary level.

### 621.220 Science, Technology and Industry

This paper provides an introduction to the use of science and technology in commerce and industry. It involves (i) a study of some of the processes that underpin industrial operations in New Zealand and overseas, and (ii) experience of a range of laboratory skills, instrumentation techniques and computer applications through a laboratory-based component focusing of 'real life' problems and simulated industrial processes. Industrial visits and a short period of work experience may be included.

**621.300 Current Advances in Science**

This paper provides some understanding and awareness of current priorities and interests in scientific research. In addition to specific topics such as gene technology, the course includes several interdisciplinary modules, such as fractal and chaotic processes, global change, hazards, and modern instrumental techniques. The precise content of the paper will vary from year to year in order to reflect current research developments.

**634.260 Teaching and Learning in Science and Technology**

This paper involves a study of some of the key concepts and theories in science, and the teaching and learning issues they raise at primary, secondary and tertiary level. Of particular concern is the relationship between the content and context of learning and the teaching/learning methods employed. The paper provides opportunities for field-based investigations and individual research projects in science and technology education.

**THE DEGREE OF MASTER OF SCIENCE MSc**

*The personal course of study of every candidate must be approved by the Senate. Approval will normally be granted for courses which are in accordance with the following Regulations: for general provisions affecting their courses of study students are referred to the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General) and the Examination Regulations.*

**Prerequisites**

1. (a). Subject to the Admission Regulations, a candidate for the Degree of Master of Science, before enrolment for the Degree:
  - (i) shall (subject to Regulation 2) have been admitted (or have qualified for admission to) any of the following qualifying degrees:  
Bachelor of Science (Honours); or  
Bachelor of Science; or  
Bachelor of Optometry; or  
shall have attained any other qualification approved by the Senate as equivalent to a qualifying degree; and
  - (ii) shall (subject to Regulation 3) have fulfilled the further prerequisites in the Schedule to these Regulations.
- (b). For the purpose of these Regulations, candidates for this Degree are classified according to their qualifying Degree (or equivalent qualification) and are referred to accordingly as:  
'BSc(Hons) candidates for this Degree'  
'BSc candidates for this Degree'  
'BOptom candidates for this Degree'.
- (c). For the purpose of these Regulations Medical Science will be treated as a subject offered for this Degree. For this subject the role of the Head of Department in these Regulations will be taken by the Chairman of the Committee for the MSc in Medical Science.

**Schedule**

The further prerequisites are (subject to Regulation 3):

- (a) For BSc(Hons) candidates for this Degree:  
a pass in the final BSc(Hons) year in the subject offered for this Degree.
- (b) For BOptom candidates for this Degree:  
a pass, with an average grade of C+ or better, in the Year IV of the course for the Degree of Bachelor of Optometry.
- (c) For BSc candidates for this Degree:  
a pass, with an average grade of C+ or better in all Stage III BSc papers, in appropriate prerequisite subjects, as follows:
 

|                                       |   |
|---------------------------------------|---|
| <b>Applied Geology</b>                | 24 Stage III credits including at least 12 from Geology.  |
| <b>Biochemistry</b>                   | Biochemistry 66.301 and 66.302.   |
| <b>Botany</b>                         | 24 Stage III credits, including at least 12 Stage III credits in Botany and/or Biology (prefix 39.) papers.   |
| <b>Cellular and Molecular Biology</b> | Cellular and Molecular Biology 40.303 and at least 6 credits from Cellular and Molecular Biology 40.304 and 40.305.   |
| <b>Chemistry</b>                      | 08.210, 08.220, 08.230 and 18 Stage III credits, including at least 12 Stage III credits from Chemistry.  |
| <b>Computer Science</b>               | At least 20 credits at 300 or 400 level, of which at least 16 shall be from papers in Computer Science.   |
| <b>Environmental Science</b>          | 18 Stage III credits including at least 12 Stage III credits from the following subjects: Biochemistry, Botany, Cellular and Molecular Biology, Chemistry, Geography, Geology, Pharmacology, Physics, Physiology and Zoology. |

|                        |  |
|------------------------|--|
| <b>Geography</b>       | At least 16 Stage III credits, including at least 12 Stage III credits from Geography.   |
| <b>Geology</b>         | 24 Stage III credits, including at least 12 Stage III credits from Geology, and up to 12 Stage III credits from other papers approved by the Head of Department.   |
| <b>Mathematics</b>     | Mathematics 26.220 or 26.221 or 26.222, 26.240 or 26.241, at least one of 26.260, 26.280, 26.281, plus twenty 300 or 400 level credits approved by the Head of the Department of Mathematics and Statistics. Normally at least 16 of those 20 credits shall be from papers in Mathematics, but 12 credits in Mathematics may be approved in special cases. |
| <b>Medical Science</b> | 18 Stage III credits including at least 12 from the following subjects: Biochemistry, Cellular and Molecular Biology, Pharmacology, Physiology, Psychology, Zoology and such prerequisites as may be required for specific papers.   |
| <b>Pharmacology</b>    | Pharmacology 96.301 and 96.302; one of Biochemistry 66.301 or Cellular and Molecular Biology 40.303 or Physiology 67.301; and an additional 6 Stage III credits from Biochemistry, Cellular and Molecular Biology, Chemistry, Computer Science, Mathematics, Physiology, Psychology or Zoology.  |
| <b>Physics</b>         | At least 12 credits from Physics 31.325-389; at least 6 credits from the laboratory papers Physics 31.390-393; and at least 4 other credits from Stage III papers in Physics or Mathematics.   |
| <b>Physiology</b>      | 18 Stage III credits including Physiology 67.301, 67.302 and 67.303, and at least 6 Stage III credits from Biochemistry, Cellular and Molecular Biology, Psychology, Zoology, or other papers approved by the Head of Department.  |
| <b>Psychology</b>      | 20 Stage III credits, including 32.306 and 12 other Stage III credits in Psychology.   |
| <b>Zoology</b>         | 18 Stage III credits, including at least 12 Stage III credits from Zoology and/or Biology.   |

#### **Enrolment with Incomplete BSc**

2. With the approval of the Head of Department, a candidate may enrol for this Degree after having gained at least 90 credits for the Degree of Bachelor of Science, but on the following conditions:
  - (a) the candidate's course for this Degree extends over two academic years;
  - (b) the candidate has fulfilled the prerequisites in the Schedule to Regulation 1 or been exempted from them;
  - (c) the remaining paper or papers for the Degree of Bachelor of Science are taken in the first year of the course for this Degree;
  - (d) if any remaining paper for the Degree of Bachelor of Science is not passed in the first year of the Master of Science course, the Master's course shall be suspended until that paper is passed.

#### **Variation of or Exemption from Prerequisites**

3. In any special case recommended by the Head of Department, the Senate may at its discretion:
  - (a) vary in any way; or
  - (b) exempt the candidate wholly or partly from the appropriate prerequisites in the Schedule to Regulation 1; and may accept a lower average grade than C+ in the prerequisites in paragraphs (b) and (c) of that Schedule.

#### **General Provisions**

4. Papers shall be taken in either the first or the second year or spread over two years according to the requirements of the Department.
5. (a). A candidate for this Degree may, where appropriate, with the permission of the Heads of Departments concerned and with the approval of the Senate, substitute for papers in the subject in which the Degree is being taken papers of equivalent rating in an allied subject or subjects, provided that the total rating of the substituted papers does not exceed one third of the paper component of the Degree.  
 (b). In special cases recommended by the Heads of Departments concerned and approved by the Senate, a candidate may take an approved selection of papers from two subjects leading to a Master of Science Degree in both subjects jointly.  
 (c). The combination of papers taken for the subject Medical Science must be approved by the Chairman of the Committee for the MSc in Medical Science. Papers offered in more than one aspect of Medical Science may be approved.  
 (d). The combination of papers taken for the subject Environmental Science must be approved by the Director of Environmental Science of the Faculty of Science.
6. Every candidate for this Degree shall be required to pass the prescribed papers and to present a thesis where that is prescribed by Regulation 10: except that a thesis only may, with the permission of the Senate, on the recommendation of the Head of Department, be presented.:
  - (a) by a BSc(Hons) candidate eligible for this Degree;
  - (b) in the subject Applied Geology by a candidate who has received (or is to receive) the Diploma in Geothermal Energy Technology, having passed papers 86.100 and 86.102; on condition (in either case) that the candidate fulfils any special requirements set by the Head of Department.

### Thesis Requirements

7. Where a thesis is required the following conditions shall apply:
  - (a) The Senate shall appoint a supervisor for the candidate upon the recommendation of the Head of Department.
  - (b) The thesis shall embody the results obtained by the candidate in an investigation in some branch of the subject.
  - (c) In the case of a thesis requiring laboratory work, that work shall be carried out within the University; but the Senate may permit a candidate to carry out the work in an approved institute outside the University for such limited period or periods as may be necessary.
  - (d) The candidate shall submit the thesis to the Registrar by the date prescribed in Regulation 9.
  - (e) In the subject Computer Science, candidates are required to present a seminar on the thesis and/or submit to an oral examination on the thesis, up to three weeks after submission of the thesis. The Head of Department may waive all or part of this requirement.

**Note:** An abstract is to be submitted with each copy of the thesis, see Examination Regulation 15.

### Honours

8. (a). There shall be two classes of Honours: First Class Honours and Second Class Honours. Second Class Honours shall be awarded in two divisions, First Division and Second Division.
- (b). Candidates who have completed the full requirements for this Degree in accordance with Regulation 10 are eligible for the award of Honours, except that a BSc(Hons) candidate for this Degree may not be awarded Honours in the Master's Degree in the same subject.
- (c). The Degree may be awarded with Distinction to any:
  - (i) BSc(Hons) candidate for this Degree; or
  - (ii) any candidate who has taken this Degree under exception (b) to Regulation 6; where the candidate has achieved a standard equivalent to First Class Honours.
- (d). Honours shall not be awarded in a particular subject to any candidate who enrolled for and failed to qualify for admission to the Degree of Bachelor of Science (Honours) in that subject. Such a candidate may be awarded the Degree with Distinction if a standard equivalent to First Class Honours has been achieved.
- (e). Honours shall be awarded if a candidate obtains a sufficient standard in the papers and thesis; but (subject to Regulation 9) a candidate who qualified for an aegrotat or compassionate pass may retain eligibility for Honours by applying:
  - (i) for an aegrotat or compassionate pass in one paper (or two papers for a course involving five or more papers), or
  - (ii) to resit all the papers affected, or
  - (iii) for a pass or passes under (i) and to resit the remaining papers affected under (ii).

**Note:** In order to be eligible for Honours or a Degree with Distinction the candidate must complete all requirements for the Degree within the time limit specified in Regulation 9.

### Time Limits

9. (a). The requirements for this Degree in Regulation 10 shall be completed:
  - (i) in the subjects Geography and Mathematics by 1 November of the second year of enrolment;
  - (ii) in every other subject, within 24 months of the candidate's first enrolment.
- (b). Notwithstanding the requirements of Regulation 9 (a), a candidate with other demanding responsibilities may fulfil the requirements for this Degree within 36 months of first enrolment for the Degree, with eligibility for Honours or Distinction, the individual course of study being determined at or before first enrolment by the Senate on the recommendation of the Head of Department.
- (c). In respect of all candidates the Senate may in a special case, on the recommendation of the Head of Department, grant the candidate:
  - (i) a time extension of three months, with continued eligibility for Honours or Distinction;
  - (ii) a further time extension of nine months, the candidate being no longer eligible for Honours or Distinction.
- (d). In exceptional circumstances the Senate may, on such written or other evidence as it requires, at its discretion grant a reasonable extension of time to a candidate for medical or compassionate or other compelling reasons. The extension may be granted:
  - (i) whether or not there has been any extension under paragraph (c) of this Regulation; and
  - (ii) with or without continued eligibility for Honours or Distinction.
- (e). A candidate taking this Degree by thesis only shall submit the thesis within 18 months of first enrolment; but the time may be extended under paragraphs (c) and (d) of this Regulation.

### List of Subjects

10. The subjects of examination and relative requirements as to theses for this Degree, together with the prescription numbers relative to each examination paper, are as follows:

#### Applied Geology

Three papers and a thesis 21.611 which shall count as three papers; Foreign Language Reading Examination. One paper only from any three of the following five groups 21.408; (21.471 to 21.478); 21.484; 86.404; and any one approved paper listed in the ME Schedule. The chosen foreign language must be approved by the Head of Department of Geology; with the approval of the Head of Department the Foreign Language Reading requirement may be waived in the case of a student whose mother tongue is not English.



|                                       |  |
|---------------------------------------|--|
| <b>Biochemistry</b>                   | Three papers and a thesis 66.601 which shall count as three papers (papers 66.401 to 66.403).  |
| <b>Botany</b>                         | Three papers and a thesis 06.601 which shall count as three papers (papers 06.402 to 06.460).  |
| <b>Cellular and Molecular Biology</b> | Three papers and a thesis 40.601 which shall count as three papers (papers 40.401, 40.402, 40.403).  |
| <b>Chemistry</b>                      | Five papers and a thesis 08.601 which shall count as four papers (08.450 plus four papers from 08.410-08.431).   |
| <b>Computer Science</b>               | Papers totalling 24 credits and a thesis 07.601 which shall count as 24 credits or papers totalling 24 credits and an advanced course of study 07.605 which shall count as 24 credits. Normally the papers will be selected from Computer Science 07.400 to 07.499. This selection of papers must be approved by the Head of Department of Computer Science.   |
| <b>Environmental Science</b>          | Four papers and a thesis 64.601 which shall count as four papers. The papers are:<br>(i) Environmental Science 64.401 and<br>(ii) two 400 level papers in one subject selected from Biochemistry, Botany, Cellular and Molecular Biology, Geography, Geology, Pharmacology, Physiology, Zoology, or in the case of Chemistry or Physics, 3 papers which in determining the overall result will be treated as the equivalent of 2 papers in the other subjects and<br>(iii) one Stage III or Master's 400 level paper in an approved subject not specified under (ii) above, or 64.402. |
| <b>Geography</b>                      | Four papers and a thesis 20.601 which shall count as three papers (four papers from 20.400 to 20.445).   |
| <b>Geology</b>                        | Three papers and a thesis 21.601 which shall count as three papers; Foreign Language Reading Examination (three papers from 21.401 to 21.450 and 86.404, the chosen foreign language must be approved by the Head of Department of Geology; with the approval of the Head of Department the Foreign Language Reading Requirements may be waived in the case of a student whose mother tongue is not English).  |
| <b>Mathematics</b>                    | Papers totalling 20 credits and a thesis 26.601 which will count as 16 credits, or papers totalling 20 credits and an advanced course of study 26.605 which will count as 16 credits. The selection of papers is to be made with the approval of the Head of Department of Mathematics and Statistics from Mathematics 26.400 to 26.499. Up to four of the twenty credits may be replaced by four Stage III credits from papers in Mathematics not already taken for any other Degree or Diploma.  |
| <b>Medical Science</b>                | Three papers and a thesis 89.601 which shall count as three papers. The combination of papers selected from Biochemistry 66.401-403, Cellular and Molecular Biology 40.403, Physiology 67.401-405, Psychology 32.406, 410, 416, 419, Pharmacology 96.404-407 or Medical Science 89.401-406 must be approved by the Chairman of the Committee for the MSc in Medical Science.   |
| <b>Optometry</b>                      | Three papers and a thesis 44.601 which shall count as three papers (two papers from 44.551 to 44.554, plus a third paper from another subject for this Degree approved by the Heads of Departments concerned).   |
| <b>Pharmacology</b>                   | Three papers and a thesis 96.621 which shall count as three papers (three papers from 96.404 to 96.407). A Master's paper in Biochemistry, Cellular and Molecular Biology, Medical Science or Physiology may be substituted for one of the papers 96.404 to 96.407 with the approval of the Head of Department concerned or, in the case of a Medical Science paper, with the approval of the Chairperson of the Committee for the MSc in Medical Science.   |
| <b>Physics</b>                        | Five papers and a thesis 31.611 which shall count as five papers (five papers from 31.401-31.499).   |
| <b>Physiology</b>                     | Three papers and a thesis 67.621 which shall count as three papers (three papers from 67.401 to 67.405).   |
| <b>Psychology</b>                     | Four papers and a thesis 32.601 which shall count as three papers (four papers from 32.401 to 32.425).   |
| <b>Zoology</b>                        | Three papers and a thesis 38.601 which shall count as three papers (38.400 and two papers from 38.401 to 38.412).  |

**Exceptions**

11. In exceptional cases the Senate may approve a personal course of study which does not conform to the foregoing Regulations.
12. These Regulations shall come into force on 1 January 1985.

## DEGREE COURSE PRESCRIPTIONS

### DEPARTMENT OF BIOCHEMISTRY

#### Stage II

*Prerequisites:* See BSc Schedule. Entry to Biochemistry II is limited.

#### 66.202 Molecular Aspects of Cells

(One paper and practical work.)

An introduction to molecular structures of biochemical importance and their relationships to cellular structure and function. Topics include biochemical thermodynamics; amino acids; carbohydrates and polysaccharides; lipids, nucleic acids, purification of proteins; protein structure; enzymes; cell membranes and transport; mitochondria and chloroplasts; specialised cell functions.

The course is a prerequisite for those advancing to papers 66.301, 66.302, BSc(Hons) and the MSc Degree in Biochemistry. Passes are required in both the written paper and in practical work (BSc Regulation 7).

*Lectures:* Students will attend two lectures a week. Two tests will be held during the year.

*Laboratories:* Students are required to attend practical classes totalling 72 hours. Performance in practical work will contribute 20% of the final grade for the course. Students should wear a laboratory coat and covered footwear in the laboratory.

*Prerequisites:* 6 credits from any Stage I Chemistry course and Biology, 39.101.

#### 66.203 Central Concepts of Metabolism

(One paper and practical work)

An introduction to metabolism with particular emphasis on regulation and control - highlighting regulatory enzymes, covalent modification and amplification; energy-yielding pathways; comparative metabolism of animal, bacterial and plant cells; hormones; elementary immunochimistry, control of protein synthesis, biochemistry of vision.

The course is a prerequisite for those proceeding to papers 66.301, 66.302, BSc(Hons) and the MSc Degree in Biochemistry. Passes are required in both the written paper and practical work (BSc Regulation 7).

*Lectures:* Students will attend two lectures a week. Two tests will be held during the year.

*Laboratories:* Students are required to attend practical classes totalling 72 hours. Performance in practical work will contribute to 20% of the final grade for the course. Students should wear laboratory coats and covered footwear in the laboratory.

*Prerequisites:* (6 credits from any Stage I Chemistry course and Biology 39.101.)

#### Stage III

*Prerequisites:* See BSc Schedule.

#### 66.301 Biochemistry of Macromolecules

(One paper and practical work.)

Topics introduced in papers 66.202 and 66.203 are treated in greater depth, emphasis is placed upon the biochemistry of macromolecules with particular

reference to structure and its elucidation using contemporary methods of protein, glycoprotein and nucleic acid sequencing, high-field NMR and other forms of spectroscopy and mass spectrometry. Practical work is concerned with the theory and practice of analytical procedures used by biochemists.

#### 66.302 Metabolic Interrelationships

(One paper and practical work.)

This course examines recent advances in biochemistry such as mechanisms of communication in plants, the molecular biology of growth factors, aspects of hormone action, microbial biochemistry.

*Laboratories:* Students are required to attend practical classes of not less than six hours a week. Performance in laboratory work will contribute to the final grade for the course. Students should wear a laboratory coat and covered footwear during practical classes.

Entry to Biochemistry III may have to be restricted if the number of applicants exceeds the number of laboratory places. Candidates who lack one or more of the prerequisites listed in the BSc Schedule are also permitted to make preliminary application. Competence in mathematics up to University Entrance level is assumed.

#### Biochemistry for BSc (Hons)

Three papers and a thesis (66.603)

66.401, 66.402, 66.403

See comments below for the MSc course prescription but note that the prerequisites and the weighting of the thesis for the BSc Honours programme differ from those for MSc.

#### Biochemistry for MSc

Three papers and a thesis (66.601)

66.401, 66.402, 66.403

The general study of biochemistry at an advanced level with a specific focus on recent developments in biochemistry and molecular biology. Considerable emphasis is placed upon directed reading, tutorials and seminars in each paper.

Candidates for the Master's Degree should consult the Head of the Department as soon as possible after the completion of the Bachelor's Degree, in order to select a thesis topic and to obtain advice on vacation reading. The course will be of a minimum duration of one year; the student should normally expect to complete his or her thesis during the following year.

Students from other Universities must have taken Biochemistry to an advanced undergraduate level (e.g. Biochemistry Advanced as offered at Otago University).

#### Research in Biochemistry

Research facilities are available for PhD students and post-doctoral workers in various areas of biochemistry and intending applicants should consult the Head of Department in the first instance.

## DEPARTMENT OF BOTANY

### Stage I

The first year course for students in Botany, Zoology or Biology consists of three 6 credit papers, Biology 101 (Paper 39.101), Botany 102 (Paper 06.102) and Zoology 102 (Paper 38.102).

### 39.101 Central Concepts in Biology

Biochemical concepts common to animals, micro-organisms and plants; the biochemistry of macromolecules, especially nucleic acids and proteins; enzyme action and catalysis; cellular energetics; genetic principles and mechanisms; cellular differentiation; histogenesis and pattern formation; fundamental processes of ecosystems; population and community dynamics; developmental biology. - This course may be taken as part of the Stage I requirement in either Botany or Zoology, but may not receive credit in both.

### 06.102 Form and Function in Plants

An introductory course including the study of major plant groups. Topics covered include major features of NZ flora and vegetation; cytological and anatomical architecture and their relation to photosynthesis, respiration, translocation and transpiration; the regulation of growth and reproduction. The course will include a number of small group discussions and one or two field trips which students will be expected to attend.

### Stage II

The course consists of three papers, 06.250, 06.251 and 06.252, together with practical work including field trips.

### 06.250 The Biology of New Zealand Vegetation: Ecology, Systematics and Conservation

Recent ideas on the origins and history of the New Zealand flora. Principles of systematics and taxonomy with reference to indigenous gymnosperms, angiosperms, bryophytes and lichens. The roles of these groups of plants in different ecosystems. Basic principles of community ecology and plant demography with emphasis on forest tree populations in podocarp, kauri and beach forests. The course includes aspects of plant physiological ecology, palynology and biogeography. The conservation of rare species and natural areas is also discussed.

Laboratory work includes an introduction to the main characteristics of the plant groups discussed in lectures. Experimental studies in the field and glasshouse are also conducted. The field course includes quantitative assessment techniques and an individual project.

### 06.251 The Biology of Plant Cell Growth and Development

A study of the structures and functions of plant cells with an emphasis given to development and differentiation. Ultrastructure and anatomy will be related, wherever possible, to the chemistry, biochemistry and biophysics of the cell. Methods of studying plant cells using light and electron microscopy. The use of NMR techniques to study *in vivo* metabolism. Principles and uses of plant tissue

cultures. Techniques of cell fractionation. Cell division and expansion. Polarity and cell development. Water relations of single cells. Differentiation of xylem and phloem. Principles of cell-cell recognition.

### 06.252 The Biology of Crop Plants: Breeding, Physiology and Protection

Characteristics and unique properties of crop plants. Basic genetical principles relevant to plant breeding, including linkage and mapping; continuous variation and polygenic control; selection; breeding systems and population structure. Aims and strategies in crop improvement. *In vitro* techniques in plant breeding. Physiology of growth and development. Seed dormancy and germination. The structure and functions of roots. Shoot growth and leaf production. Modification of form to optimise crop yield. Induction and control of flowering. Fruit development and physiology. An introduction to pests and diseases of crop plants; symptoms; disease cycles; epidemiology; disease assessment and forecasting. Principles of crop protection and of cultural, chemical, breeding and biological control strategies. Integrated pest and disease management.

### Stage III

The course consists of a selection of papers from Biology 311, 314 and Botany 313 to 371 together with practical work, including field trips.

### 39.311 Freshwater Ecology

Animal and plant freshwater communities, particularly of lakes and rivers; the physical and chemical environment; physiography of rivers and lakes; hydrology; pollution. Part of the course will consist of a weekend field course and four one-day field trips normally held in the first week of May vacation (see below for dates).

### 06.313 Forest Ecology

Sampling, with reference to forest communities; ordination and classification. Community theory and concepts of stability and diversity. Animal-plant interactions particularly with respect to New Zealand. Forest dynamics and the study of both temporal and spatial change. A compulsory residential field class is held during enrolment week (see below for dates). Interpretation of the field data will take place during some laboratory times.

### 39.314 Conservation Ecology

The application of ecological principals to the management of natural and modified ecosystems: water, forests, fisheries and wildlife. Planning for land and resource management and protection.

### 06.326 Pure and Applied Plant Development Biology

The significance of plant development to biotechnology will be stressed in relation to a range of topics including fruit ripening and storage, flower longevity and the role of plant cell walls (fibre) in nutrition. Specific topics include: the role of plant growth regulators, receptor sites and secondary messengers; the structure, biosynthesis and function of plant cell walls; positional controls in plant development, adventitious root formation and propagation, senescence and abscission, tissue culture, leaf development in native plants, monoecy.

Molecular, morphological and physiological approaches will be used to provide an integrated study of plant development. Students will design and conduct research projects under supervision of staff.

**06.334 Plant and Environmental Microbiology**  
Classification, structure and differentiation of microorganisms. Prokaryotes versus Eukaryotes. Microbial physiology and metabolism; heterotrophy and autotrophy. Aspects of microbial ecology; role in nutrient cycling and decomposition, etc. Microorganisms and the environment; effects of temperature and light. Beneficial and harmful microbial interactions; microbe-microbe and plant-microbe symbioses, disease, pollution and food spoilage. Exploitation of micro-organisms by humans; biological control, etc.

Laboratory classes will cover some of the main techniques used in the study of microorganisms.

#### **06.335 Plant Pathology**

The study of plant pathogenic fungi, bacteria and viruses. Aspects of disease development; pathogen transmission/spread and control.

Interactions between hosts and pathogens at the cellular level. Mechanisms of pathogenesis and host plant resistance.

Laboratory classes will cover techniques for the diagnosis, isolation, culture and identification/characterisation of plant pathogenic organisms.

#### **†06.341 Plant Genetics**

Plant cytogenetics to include chromosome structure and genome organisation; chromosome behaviour in normal cell division and in structural and numerical mutants; B (supernumerary) chromosomes; sex chromosomes; chromosome evolution.

#### **06.361 Plant Biosystematics**

Classical and experimental approaches to the study of taxonomic relationships in metaphytes including cytological, chemical and numerical techniques as well as field and herbarium methods and a knowledge of plant nomenclature rules. Phylogenetic and phenetic systems of classification; analysis of variation; speciation processes. Students should expect to attend a field course at Waipoua in the August vacation (see below for dates).

#### **06.371 Marine Botany**

Marine plants and communities; the sea as an environment for plant growth; photosynthesis and productivity in the sea; reproduction and life histories of marine plants; the utilisation and cultivation of seaweeds and microalgae. The practical work includes a residential three-day class at the Leigh Laboratory during the August vacation (see below for dates).

#### **Laboratory Work.**

The practical work will be assessed separately and the marks included in the marks schedule of the University. A pass in both the written examination and in the practical work is necessary for credit to be awarded for a paper (BSc Regulation 7).

#### **Field Courses in Botany/Biology, 1991**

|                |                            |
|----------------|----------------------------|
| <b>06.250:</b> | 19-24 May                  |
| <b>06.313:</b> | 26 February - 2 March      |
| <b>06.361:</b> | 26-30 August               |
| <b>06.371:</b> | 19-21 August               |
| <b>39.311:</b> | 27, 28 April and 13-16 May |

### **Botany for MSc**

This course takes from fifteen months to two years and requires full-time attendance. It comprises three papers selected from 06.402 to 06.460 inclusive, together with a thesis (06.601) which is equivalent to three papers.

Students intending to read for MSc should consult the Head of Department as soon as possible after the completion of the Bachelor's Degree, in order to select a thesis topic and to have sufficient time to establish that appropriate facilities will be available for the research programme.

#### **06.402 Selected Topics in Botany**

A specialist course of study into aspects of current research.

#### **†06.410 Plant Ecology**

Selected topics in plant demography. Forest community concepts. Field techniques and computer analysis. Historical plant ecology.

#### **06.412 Conservation Biology**

The theory and application of conservation for the management of New Zealand's biota. Seminars will include topics such as the philosophical and practical basis for conservation, methodologies for description and analysis of communities at risk and their likely demographic and genetic consequences for small populations.

#### **06.420 Plant Physiology and Biochemistry**

In depth consideration of selected topics.

#### **06.430 Plant Pathology**

In depth consideration of selected topics.

#### **06.450 Developmental Botany, Pure and Applied**

A study of contemporary research into aspects of the anatomy, ultrastructure and physiology of plant development.

#### **†06.460 Plant Systematics and Genetics**

In depth consideration of selected topics in plant classification and cytogenetics.

(See also MSc Regulation 4.)

#### **Postgraduate Research: MSc Thesis and PhD**

Facilities are available for MSc and PhD research in a wide range of topics in Botany and Biology.

## **DEPARTMENT OF CELLULAR AND MOLECULAR BIOLOGY**

### **Stage III**

*Prerequisites:* See BSc Schedule.

#### **40.303 Cellular and Molecular Biology**

*Lectures:* Optical and electron microscopical methods used in the study of cell structure. The fine structure of cellular organelles and components in relation to their function. The structure, biosynthesis and function of nucleic acids and proteins. The Genetic Code. Genetic regulatory mechanisms in bacteria and eukaryotes. The mammalian cell cycle and control of growth of mammalian cells by hormones and other agents. An introduction to recombinant DNA technology.

*Laboratories:* The laboratory course will cover basic methods used to fix and examine biological material by light and electron microscopy. Experiments will also be performed with proteins and nucleic acids to

illustrate their properties and the techniques used to investigate the structure and function of these materials.

#### 40.304 Microbial and Molecular Genetics

**Lectures:** The units of mutation, function and recombination in bacteria and bacterial viruses. The transmission and recombination of genetic material in bacterial viruses, bacteria and diploid microorganisms. Eukaryotic somatic cell genetics.

**Laboratories:** The laboratory course will cover basic methods used in bacteriology and microbiology as an introduction to experiments in microbial genetics. Experiments will be performed to illustrate methods of transmission of genetic information in microorganisms and the experimental application of such techniques to the resolution of problems of gene order and organisation of chromosomes.

#### 40.305 Plant and Animal Molecular Biology

**Lectures:** The culture of animal cells *in vitro*. Immunity, the structure and synthesis of antibodies, and the cellular basis of the immune response. The molecular biology of viruses infecting animal cells. The molecular basis for the malignant transformation of cells. The molecular assembly of cellular structures. The nuclear, mitochondrial, and chloroplast genomes of plant cells. Plant cells and tissue culture techniques. Plasmid and virus vectors for gene transfer in plants and animals and their application in agriculture and horticulture.

**Laboratories:** An introduction to the culture of animal cells. Techniques used for studying anti-bodies and the cells involved in the immune response. An introduction to plant cell culture, including the isolation of protoplasts. Techniques for the isolation of plant organelles and nucleic acids and aspects of plant transformation using *Agrobacterium* plasmid vectors.

#### Cellular and Molecular Biology for MSc and Honours

Three papers and a thesis (40.601).

#### 40.401 Cellular and Molecular Biology

#### 40.402 Microbial and Molecular Genetics

#### 40.403 Plant and Animal Molecular Biology

The material for Cellular and Molecular Biology 40.303, 304 and 305 considered in greater depth, with knowledge of some of the current original literature. The course will be based on selected topics in Membrane Biology, Molecular Biology, Microbial and Molecular Genetics, Immunology, Virology, Gene Transfer and Gene Expression in Plants and Animals.

**Prerequisites:** For Auckland students, at least 12 credits from Cellular and Molecular Biology 303, 304 or 305 (or Cell Biology 301 and 302 prior to 1979). Students from other universities or colleges must have taken some suitable subject to an advanced undergraduate level (e.g. Biochemistry Advanced II or Microbiology Advanced II as offered at Otago University). For students from other universities the MSc Degree may involve taking part of the course work for Cellular and Molecular Biology Stage III. Although not a prerequisite, it is strongly suggested that intending Master's students should have taken a Radiochemistry course such as 08.352 or 08.250.

Students are reminded of the requirement of a grade of a least C+ in all Stages III subjects for BSc that are prerequisite for MSc [see Regulation 1 (c)].

**Thesis:** The preparation of a thesis (40.601) is a most important feature of the work and a large part of the student's time should be devoted to this aspect of the course. The topic of research for the thesis can be in virology, electron microscopy, membrane biology, immunology, molecular genetics, molecular biology or plant molecular genetics.

#### Research in Cellular and Molecular Biology

Facilities are available for research by PhD and post-doctoral students in the fields of virology, molecular genetics, electron microscopy, membrane biology, molecular biology and plant molecular genetics. An outline of courses appropriate to students intending to advance to research in Cellular and Molecular Biology may be found in the Science Handbook and in departmental publications.

Intending students should consult the Head of the Department as early as possible.

**Note:** An MSc in Cellular and Molecular Biology is not a prerequisite for PhD registration.

## DEPARTMENT OF CHEMISTRY

The courses in Chemistry for the BSc Degree under these Regulations are progressive; although prerequisites have not been prescribed more restrictively than necessary, students should bear in mind that familiarity with relevant material from earlier courses is assumed in the later ones.

#### First Year Courses

**08.111 (6 credits) Organic and Physical Chemistry** Structure, properties and spectra of organic compounds, acid-base equilibria, kinetics, systematic organic chemistry.

**Lectures:** Students will attend two lectures a week for the whole year and twelve 3 hour laboratory sessions throughout the year. No students may enter the laboratory unless wearing an approved form of eye protection. A pass in both theory and practical is necessary. Coursework comprises tests and the practical. The final grade is assessed from tests 24%, practical 20%, final examination 56%; or practical 20%, final examination 80%; whichever is to the student's advantage.

**08.121 (6 credits) Inorganic and Physical Chemistry**

Atomic structure, the molecular structure and reactions of selected elements and their compounds, chemical bonding, energetics, equilibria and electrochemistry.

**Lectures:** Students will attend two lectures a week for the whole year and twelve 3-hour laboratory sessions throughout the year. No student may enter the laboratory unless wearing an approved form of eye protection. A pass in both theory and practical is necessary. Coursework comprises tests and the practical. The final grade is assessed from tests 24%, practical 20%, final examination 56% or practical 20%, final examination 80%; whichever is to the student's advantage.

#### Supplementary Chemistry

This course is designed to assist students who do not

have a strong background of chemistry. It will revise the basic principles of chemistry and provide background for the laboratory and lecture courses in 08.111 and 08.121. No enrolment is required, and no credit is given towards the BSc. The course begins straight after enrolment, on Tuesday, Wednesday and Thursday, 26-28 February, starting at 9.00 am each day. During the teaching year Supplementary Chemistry is held at 8.00 am on Wednesday each week, covering the theory for the following week's laboratory assignment.

#### **Advanced Courses**

Familiarity with the relevant material in the first year courses will be assumed.

#### **08.200 (3 credits) Perspectives in Chemistry**

This paper provides an introduction to a variety of topics in chemistry of contemporary interests such as applied organic chemistry, bioinorganic chemistry, and the study of new materials. The paper is descriptive in nature and will make use of demonstrations, slides and films.

Approximately two to three lectures will be devoted to each topic and students will be given assignments related to the topics. The course runs throughout the year and the paper is examined by continuous assessment.

*Prerequisite:* 08.111 or 08.121.

#### **08.210 (6 credits) Physical Chemistry**

(One three hour paper and practical work.)

This course covers concepts and methods of modern physical chemistry, with applications to materials, processes and instrumentation. Topics will include spectroscopy (including reference to lasers and FTIR), electrochemistry (including reference to new battery technology), polymers (including reference to plastics and biopolymers) and surface chemistry (including reference to synthetic fuel catalysis). The course will provide experience with scientific applications of computers.

*Lectures:* Students will attend two lectures a week. One test will be held outside lecture hours.

*Laboratories:* Students will attend practical classes of not less than 72 hours by doing six hours per week for half the year. No student may enter the laboratory unless wearing an approved form of eye protection. A pass both in the written paper and in the practical course is necessary.

The final grade is assessed from a test/problems (20%), practical (33%) and final examination (47%); or practical (33%) and a final examination (67%); whichever is to the student's advantage.

*Prerequisite:* 08.111 and 08.121.

#### **08.220 (6 credits) Inorganic, Structural and Theoretical Chemistry**

(One three hour paper and practical work.)

The course provides an introduction to chemical bonding, and to the chemistry of the solid state. Aspects of the chemistry of transition metal and main group elements are treated at greater depth. An introduction to kinetic studies of inorganic systems is also included.

*Lectures:* Students will attend two lectures a week. One test will be held outside lecture hours.

*Laboratories:* Students will attend practical classes of

not less than 72 hours by doing six hours per week for half the year. No students may enter the laboratory unless wearing an approved form of eye protection. A pass both in the written paper and in the practical course is necessary.

The final grade is assessed as for 08.210.

*Prerequisite:* 08.111 and 08.121.

#### **08.230 (6 credits) Organic Chemistry** (One three-hour paper and practical work.)

The course is based on the prescribed text and covers the structure and reactions of carbon compounds, classified by functional groups. An introduction to the chemistry of molecules of biological importance is included.

*Lectures:* Students will attend two lectures a week. One test will be held outside lecture hours.

*Laboratories:* Students will attend practical classes of not less than 72 hours by doing six hours per week for half the year. No student may enter the laboratory unless wearing an approved form of eye protection. A pass both in the written paper and in the practical course is necessary.

The final grade is assessed from the best 3 of 4 tests (20%), practical (33%) and final examination (47%).

*Prerequisite:* 08.111 and 08.121.

Entry to Chemistry 08.230 is limited to 135 students.

#### **08.250 (2 credits) Radiochemical Techniques for Biological Scientists**

This service course is designed to meet the needs of biological scientists, health workers and natural scientists who anticipate working with tracer quantities of radio-isotopes. It is not to be regarded as a training course for chemists. Students who expect to major in chemistry should generally enrol in 08.352 to gain experience in the principles and practice of radiochemistry. Principles of radioactive decay, quenching and self adsorption, instrumental measurement of activity and dose, pulse height analysis, scintillation counting of gamma and beta nuclides, homogeneous and heterogeneous counting, radio-autography, radiological safety, waste disposal. Ten lectures and ten three-hour laboratory sessions. One test (1.5 hours) will be held outside lecture hours. No student may enter the laboratory unless wearing an approved form of eye protection.

The final grade is assessed from a test (50% and practical (50%).

*Prerequisite:* 08.111 or 08.121.

*Restrictions:* 08.350 or 08.352.

#### **08.260 (3 credits) Analytical Chemistry**

This course provides an introduction to analytical chemistry and students who intend to enrol for the advanced analytical chemistry 08.360 paper should take 08.260 as a prerequisite. It includes both non-instrumental and instrumental techniques and is a useful service course for natural scientists.

*Lectures:* Students will attend two 1-hour lectures per week during quarters 1 and 2. Two tests (1 x 1-hour and 1 x 1.5 hours) will be held outside lecture hours. The final grade is assessed from tests 50%, practical 40%, problem paper and assignments 10%.

*Laboratories:* Students will attend twelve 3-hour laboratory sessions, normally 3 hours per week, during quarters 1 and 2. No student may enter the

laboratory unless wearing an approved form of eye protection and satisfactory foot protection. A pass in the practical course is necessary for obtaining the credits.

*Prerequisites:* 08.111 and 08.121.

**08.310 (3 credits) Physical Chemistry**  
(One two-hour paper and practical work.)

This course covers the theory and experimental techniques of spectroscopy (prediction of the spectrum, laser Raman spectroscopy), dynamic electrochemistry (fuel cells and corrosion) and molecular thermodynamics.

*Lectures:* One lecture per week throughout the year. One test will be held outside lecture hours.

*Laboratories:* Students will attend practical classes of not less than 6 hours per week in any one quarter of the teaching year. No student may enter the laboratory unless wearing an approved form of eye protection. A pass both in the written paper and in the practical course is necessary.

The final grade is assessed from a test/problems (20%), practical (33%) and a final examination (47%); or practical (33%) and a final examination (67%); whichever is to the student's advantage.

*Prerequisite:* 08.210.

**08.311 (3 credits) Physical Chemistry:**

**Applications**

(One two-hour paper and practical work.)

The course imparts current awareness in topics of national or strategic importance in applied Physical Chemistry. These topics may include subjects such as advanced polymer chemistry, photochemistry, surface chemistry, solid state chemistry including superconductivity, etc. The list of topics for the year will be displayed in the Chemistry Department in January.

*Lectures:* One lecture per week throughout the year. One test will be held outside lecture hours.

*Laboratories:* Students will attend practical classes of not less than 6 hours per week in any one quarter of the teaching year. No student may enter the laboratory unless wearing an approved form of eye protection. A pass both in the written paper and in the practical course is necessary.

The final grade is assessed as for 08.310.

*Prerequisite:* 08.210.

*Corequisite:* 08.310.

**08.320 (3 credits) Inorganic Chemistry**

(One two-hour paper and practical work.)

The course will cover the organometallic chemistry of both transition metals and main group metals.

*Lectures:* Students will attend a total of 23 lectures during the year. One test will be held outside lecture hours.

*Laboratories:* Students will attend practical classes of not less than 36 hours during the year. No student may enter the laboratory unless wearing an approved form of eye protection.

A pass both in the written paper and in the practical course is necessary.

The final grade is assessed as for 08.310.

*Prerequisite for 08.320:* 08.220.

**08.321 (3 credits) Physical-Inorganic Chemistry**

(One two-hour paper and practical work.)

The course includes aspects of inorganic spectroscopy, quantum, and bioinorganic co-ordination chemistry.

*Lectures:* Students will attend a total of 23 lectures during the year. One test will be held outside lecture hours.

*Laboratories:* Students will attend practical classes of not less than 36 hours during the year. No student may enter the laboratory unless wearing an approved form of eye protection.

A pass both in the written paper and in the practical course is necessary.

The final grade is assessed as for 08.310.

*Prerequisite:* 08.220.

**08.330 (3 credits) Advanced Organic Chemistry A**  
(One two-hour paper and practical work.)

This course covers heterocyclic and applied and industrial organic chemistry along with topics in synthetic organic chemistry such as carbon-carbon bond formation and applications of organoborane and organosilicon chemistry.

*Lectures:* Students will attend one lecture per week during the year. Two tests will be held outside lecture hours.

*Laboratories:* Students will attend practical classes of not less than 36 hours during the year. This will normally be done in quarters 1 or 2 during the first half of the year. No student may enter the laboratory unless wearing an approved form of eye protection. A pass both in the written paper and in the practical course is necessary.

The final grade is assessed from test/problems (20%), practical (33%) and final examination (47%); or practical (33%) and a final examination (67%); whichever is to the student's advantage.

*Prerequisite:* 08.230.

**08.331 (3 credits) Advanced Organic Chemistry B**  
(One two-hour paper and practical work.)

This course deals with topics such as stereochemistry, the study of reaction mechanisms, radicals, pericyclic reactions, photochemistry and reactions of carbonyl compounds.

*Lectures:* Students will attend one lecture per week during the year. Two tests will be held outside lecture hours.

*Laboratories:* Students will attend practical classes of not less than 36 hours during the year. This will normally be done in quarters 3 or 4 during the second half of the year. No student may enter the laboratory unless wearing an approved form of eye protection. A pass both in the written paper and in the practical course is necessary.

The final grade is assessed as for 08.330.

*Prerequisite:* 08.230.

*Corequisite:* 08.330.

**08.340 (3 credits) Structural Methods in Chemistry**

(One two-hour paper and practical work.)

This course deals with physical methods of determining chemical structures. Background theory

is described for mass spectrometry, nuclear magnetic resonance, infrared and Raman spectroscopy, and X-ray structural analysis. Practical applications in inorganic, organic and organometallic chemistry are included. The course will consist of 32 lectures and 20 hours to be devoted to practical work and laboratory assignments. One test will be held outside lecture hours.

A pass both in the written paper and in the practical course is necessary.

The final grade is assessed from a test (19%), practical (25%) and a final examination (56%); or practical (25%) and final examination (75%); whichever is to the student's advantage.

*Prerequisite:* 08.210 and 08.230.

*Corequisites:* 08.220.

### **08.352 (3 credits) Radiochemistry**

The course is designed to meet the needs of chemists or biologists who anticipate working with tracer quantities of radioisotopes. Counting methods and counting statistics, handling radioactive substances, source preparation, radiological safety, three channel beta scintillation spectrometry, gamma spectroscopy, neutron activation, radioisotope generators and application of the principles and practice of radiochemistry to environmental, biological and chemical problems.

Sixteen lectures and sixteen three-hour laboratory sessions. Two tests will be held outside lecture hours. No student may enter the laboratory unless wearing an approved form of eye protection.

The final grade will be assessed from tests (50%) and practical (50%).

*Restrictions:* 08.250, 08.350.

### **08.360 (3 credits) Advanced Analytical Chemistry** (One two-hour paper and practical work.)

The course will cover instrumental methods of analysis. It will consist of 23 lectures and 36 hours laboratory work. One test will be held outside lecture hours. No student may enter the laboratory unless wearing an approved form of eye protection.

A pass both in the written paper and in the practical course is necessary.

The final grade is assessed from a test (20%), practical (33%) and a final examination (47%); or practical (33%) and a final examination (67%); whichever is to the student's advantage.

*Corequisites:* 08.260.

### **08.370 (3 credits) Environmental Chemistry**

(One two-hour paper and practical work.)

The course covers aspects of the chemistry of the atmosphere, natural waters, and the land surface. A section on hazards associated with chemicals and their handling is also included.

*Lectures:* Students will attend one lecture a week. One test will be held outside lecture hours.

*Laboratories:* Students will attend practical classes, totalling 36 hours, at times to be arranged. No student may enter the laboratory unless wearing an approved form of eye protection.

A pass both in the written paper and in the practical course is necessary.

The final grade is assessed as for 08.360.

*Corequisite:* 08.260

Entry to Chemistry 08.370 is limited to 30 students.

### **†08.390 (3 credits) Advanced Topics in Chemistry**

### **†08.391 (3 credits) Advanced Topics in Chemistry** **Chemistry for MSc and Honours**

Candidates must take 08.450 plus four papers selected from 08.410-08.431. The assessment of a student's overall attainment in the Degree will be made on the basis that each of the five papers has a weight of one, and the thesis 08.601 has a weight of four.

Students intending to read for MSc and Honours should consult the Head of the Department as soon as possible after the completion of the Bachelor's Degree, regarding allocation of a thesis topic and to ensure availability of laboratory facilities. The course is normally of one year's duration, but the thesis may, with the approval of the Head of the Department, be completed during the second year. [See clause 2 (d) of the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General).]

An overall prerequisite for the course is that students have completed 08.210, 08.220 and 08.230 and 18 Stage III credits including at least 12 Stage III credits from Chemistry.

### **08.410 Physical Chemistry A**

(One three-hour paper.)

This course will include topics in applied physical chemistry.

*Lectures:* Students will attend 30 lectures during the year.

### **08.411 Physical Chemistry B**

(One three-hour paper.)

This course will include aspects of molecular spectroscopy and structure.

*Lectures:* Students will attend 30 lectures during the year.

### **08.420 Inorganic Chemistry**

(One three-hour paper.)

This course will cover topics in organo-transition metal chemistry, co-ordination chemistry, and structural chemistry.

*Lectures:* Students will attend 30 lectures during the year.

### **08.421 Physical Inorganic Chemistry**

(One three-hour paper.)

This course will cover some aspects of physical methods in inorganic chemistry.

*Lectures:* Students will attend 30 lectures during the year.

### **08.430 Organic Chemistry: Reactions and Synthesis**

(One three-hour paper.)

This is a course in which the principles of organic chemistry are applied to organic synthesis.

*Lectures:* Students will attend 30 lectures during the year.

### **08.431 Organic Chemistry: Physical Organic and Mechanistic**

(One three-hour paper.)

This course will cover aspects of the investigation of organic reactions including physical-organic chemistry.

*Lectures:* Students will attend 30 lectures during the year.

### **08.450 Special Topics in Chemistry**

(One three-hour paper.)

Students must choose three topics in specialised areas



of chemistry from a selection to be offered.

**Lectures:** Students will attend 10 lectures in each topic selected.

In addition to attending prescribed lectures, students will be required to prepare and discuss a number of selected topics of special interest.

### PhD in Chemistry

Thesis 08.602 and oral examination. Facilities are available for postgraduate research on a wide variety of topics in all branches of Chemistry. Further information is available from the Head of Department. The PhD course usually takes between two and three years of full-time study and research.

## DEPARTMENT OF COMPUTER SCIENCE

### Stage I Courses

#### 07.100 (6 credits) Introduction to Computing (a)

This paper, taught in the first half year, introduces computers and computer programming, developing skills in a particular high-level language (Pascal) in the use of application packages, and also introduces students to machine-level concepts and the role of computers and computer professionals in society. This course is intended for students who may wish to advance in Computer Science.

#### 07.105 (6 credits) Introduction to Computing (b)

This paper, taught in the second half year, has 07.100 as a corequisite or 07.101 as a prerequisite. The paper extends the programming skills of 07.100 with an introduction to software engineering, the systematic design of software systems. The paper also introduces the area of data structures and data representation, the study of ways of efficiently organising and manipulating collections of data needed for representing real and abstract objects.

#### 07.111(6 credits) Computing and Applications

This paper is a service paper for those who have no knowledge of computers or programming, but who will find such knowledge useful in their other courses, such as the social, biological and physical sciences. The topics covered in this course are the same as those covered in 07.100 but with more of an emphasis on using existing applications for solving problems and somewhat less of an emphasis on programming. In addition, the paper is a full year paper and hence concepts are introduced at a somewhat slower rate than in 07.100. Students who pass this paper may be permitted to take 07.105 and/or 07.210 in the following year.

### Stage II Courses

#### 07.211 (4 credits) Computer Systems

This paper explores how computer systems work, both hardware and software. The architecture of one particular computer, and its assembly language, is studied in some depth. The paper also introduces computer input/output, including data communications, the functional architecture of computers, and the function and architecture of system software. This paper replaces the previous 07.210.

#### 07.221 (4 credits) Data Structures and Algorithms

In this paper the topic of data structures introduced in 07.105 is discussed both in more detail and at a more

abstract level. The concept of an abstract data type is introduced as a way of abstracting from specific implementations of data structures. Data structures, such as graphs and sets, which are of a more complex nature than those studied in 07.105, are examined. In addition, the paper focuses on the design and analysis of algorithms. We consider the problem of designing an algorithm, ensuring that the algorithm correctly performs the intended task, and deciding whether it performs that task efficiently. This paper replaces the previous 07.220

#### 07.222 (4 credits) Data Base Management Systems

(This paper is identical to 74.222 offered by the Department of Management Science and Information Systems). An introduction to the basic concepts and techniques of managing data in an organisation. Topics include data models (hierarchical, network and relational), and the functions provided by common commercial data base management software environments.

#### 07.230 (4 credits) Computing Laboratory

This paper provides extensive practical programming experience. It covers the development and maintenance of large programs and includes experiments dealing with program performance.

#### 26.290 (4 credits) Numerical Computation

See Department of Mathematics & Statistics.

### Stage III Courses

#### 07.301 (2 credits) Topic in Computer Science (a)

#### 07.302 (2 credits) Topic in Computer Science (b)

#### 07.303 (2 credits) Topic in Computer Science (c)

#### 07.304 (4 credits) Topic in Computer Science (d)

#### 07.305 (4 credits) Topic in Computer Science (e)

#### 07.306 (4 credits) Topic in Computer Science (f)

One or more of these topics papers may be taught in any particular year. The actual contents of such courses and the requirements that must be met before departmental approval to enrol in them is given, will be announced prior to enrolment. Enrolment is subject to the approval of the Head of Department.

#### 07.310 (4 credits) Advanced Computer Organisation

A continuation from 07.210 in describing the organisation of modern computer systems. Topics include microprogramming, virtual storage, high-level language support, advanced machine structures, and several case studies.

#### 07.315 (2 credits) Computer Graphics and Image Processing

This course covers the fundamentals of computer graphics, and gives a brief introduction to the field of image processing. Topics include: uses of computer graphics; graphics hardware; the GKS system; graphics programming; 2D and 3D display algorithms; high quality image rendering; an introduction to image processing.

#### 07.330 (4 credits) Language Implementation

The compilation and interpretation of computer languages. Lexical analysis. Top down and bottom up parsing. Error recovery. Symbol table analysis. Translation of control structures. Virtual machine models. In-line, threaded, and interpreted code. Linking. The comparison of implementation

techniques necessary for various computer languages.

#### **07.340 (4 credits) Operating Systems**

What is an operating system? Operating system principles: concurrent processes, processor management, memory management, disk management, other peripherals, security. Interacting with people: system implementation and job control languages.

#### **†07.342 (4 credits) Data Communications**

An introduction to data communications technology and network techniques, including the Open System Interconnection model, local area networks, wide area networks, packet switching and network security.

#### **07.351 (4 credits) Formal Languages, Automata and Computability**

Mathematical preliminaries: graphs, trees, semi-groups. Grammars. Finite state automata and regular languages. Push-down automata and context-free languages. Turing machines and computability.

#### **07.352 (4 credits) Design and Analysis of Algorithms**

A study of aspects of problem solving and algorithm design, including the following topics: algorithm efficiency, order analysis, profiling, design levels, fine tuning, abstract data types, program verification, invariants, recursion, parallel algorithms, and decidability.

#### **07.361 (2 credits) Functional and Logic Programming**

This paper, taught in the first half year, has two aims. The first is to provide a practical introduction to programming in logic and functional programming languages. The second aim is to describe the theoretical background from which these languages have been developed. In the case of logic programming this is first order predicate calculus, and for functional programming, lambda calculus.

#### **07.362 (2 credits) Artificial Intelligence**

This paper, taught in the second half year, provides an introduction to Artificial Intelligence (AI). AI is concerned with the construction of computer systems that are able to carry out tasks that are thought to require "intelligence". The paper introduces the basic concepts of AI. There will be some practical experience with existing AI systems.

#### **26.390 (4 credits) Numerical analysis**

See Department of Mathematics and Statistics.

#### **26.391 (4 credits) Optimisation in Operations Research**

See Department of Mathematics and Statistics.

#### **26.395 (4 credits) Mathematics Modelling for Operations Research**

See Department of Mathematics and Statistics.

#### **74.324 (4 credits) Data Communications**

See Prescriptions Department of Management Science and Information Systems, Faculty of Commerce.

#### **BSc (Honours) in Computer Science**

The Regulations covering the BSc(Hons) in Computer Science are included in the general regulations for the Degree. This course is designed to allow students of high ability to complete an Honours degree in four years and thus be eligible to proceed directly to a PhD

degree and be eligible for the award of postgraduate scholarships. Students who obtain the BSc(Hons) will be permitted to advance to an MSc by presenting a thesis or by pursuing an approved advanced course of study.

#### **Courses for MSc and Honours**

Candidates for this Degree select papers totalling 24 credits approved by the Head of the Computer Science Department. Normally these papers are selected from the list that follows.

In addition they write a thesis (07.601) or take an advanced course of study (07.605), either of which counts as 24 credits. Not all 400 level papers will be offered each year but those that are, together with their prescriptions, will be announced prior to enrolment.

| <i>Paper Number</i>                                      | <i>Credits</i> |
|--|----------------|
| <b>07.401 Advanced Topic in Computer Science (a)</b>     | 1              |
| <b>07.402 Advanced Topic in Computer Science (b)</b>     | 1              |
| <b>07.403 Advanced Topic in Computer Science (c)</b>     | 1              |
| <b>07.404 Advanced Topic in Computer Science (d)</b>     | 1              |
| <b>07.405 Advanced Topic in Computer Science (e)</b>     | 2              |
| <b>07.406 Advanced Topic in Computer Science (f)</b>     | 2              |
| <b>07.407 Advanced Topic in Computer Science (g)</b>     | 2              |
| <b>07.408 Advanced Topic in Computer Science (h)</b>     | 4              |
| <b>07.409 Advanced Topic in Computer Science (i)</b>     | 4              |
| <b>07.410 Computer Architecture</b>                      | 4              |
| <b>07.411 Topic in Computer Architecture</b>             | 4              |
| <b>07.415 Computer Graphics</b>                          | 4              |
| <b>07.420 Database Management Systems</b>                | 4              |
| <b>07.430 Theory of Compilers</b>                        | 4              |
| <b>07.431 Compiler Construction</b>                      | 4              |
| <b>07.432 Language Design and Definition</b>             | 4              |
| <b>07.433 Comparison of Languages</b>                    | 4              |
| <b>07.434 Software Engineering</b>                       | 4              |
| <b>07.440 Advanced Operating Systems</b>                 | 4              |
| <b>07.441 Topic in Operating Systems</b>                 | 4              |
| <b>07.442 Data Communications and Networks</b>           | 4              |
| <b>07.443 Topic in Data Communications</b>               | 4              |
| <b>07.450 Theoretical Computer Science</b>               | 4              |
| <b>07.451 Computational Complexity</b>                   | 4              |
| <b>07.452 Advanced Design and Analysis of Algorithms</b> | 4              |
| <b>07.460 Artificial Intelligence</b>                    | 4              |
| <b>07.461 Computational Logic</b>                        | 4              |
| <b>07.470 Computer Applications (a)</b>                  | 2              |
| <b>07.471 Computer Applications (b)</b>                  | 2              |
| <b>07.472 Computer Applications (c)</b>                  | 4              |
| <b>07.473 Robotics and Real-Time Control</b>             | 4              |
| <b>07.480 Seminar in Computer Science</b>                | 2              |
| <b>07.481 Project in Computer Science (a)</b>            | 2              |
| <b>07.482 Project in Computer Science (b)</b>            | 2              |

**Credits**

- 07.483 Project in Computer Science (c)** 4  
**53.332 Custom Integrated Electronic Design** 4

As prescribed for the Degree of Bachelor of Engineering. Enrolment requires the permission of the Head of Department of Computer Science and the Head of Department of Electrical and Electronic Engineering.

**Diploma in Computer Science**

See under Diploma Regulations and Prescriptions.

**Postgraduate Research: MSc Thesis and PhD**

Facilities are available for MSc and PhD research in a range of topics in Computer Science. Further information is available from the Head of Department. The PhD course usually takes between two and three years of full-time study and research.

**DEPARTMENT OF EDUCATION****Education Stage III****†14.327 (4 credits) Aspects of Science Education**

An introduction to children's learning in science, to issues in the philosophy of science relevant to the science curriculum and to a range of other issues in the contemporary international debate concerning science education at primary and secondary level.

Note: Credits obtained from this paper do not count as Stage III Science credits in terms of the BSc Regulation 3(c).

**ENVIRONMENTAL SCIENCE****BSc Stage II**

An interdisciplinary paper is offered at Stage II

**64.200 Environmental Science**

**Prerequisites:** 24 Stage I credits or the equivalent from any Faculty, including at least six credits from papers in the BSc Schedule.

An introduction to local, regional and global environmental issues, especially those related to pollution and resource utilization. The paper will include consideration of the relevant scientific information, social concerns and management options.

**MSc**

The MSc in Environmental Science is a joint Degree in Environmental Science and another Science subject. It is co-ordinated by the Director of Environmental Science and contributed to by a number of Departments. Students who intend to take the course must consult as early as possible the Director of Environmental Science who will advise on a suitable paper combination for the Degree. A Preparatory Application Form must be submitted by October 31 in the year preceding intended entry to the programme. The course consists of four papers and a thesis 64.601 which shall count as four papers. In the case of a joint degree with Chemistry or Physics three papers will be taken under MSc Regulation 10 Environmental Science (ii) but treated as the equivalent of two papers in the other subjects. The papers are Environmental Science 64.401 plus a selection from Stage III and Masters 400-level papers in Science and other approved subjects. Students will also be required to attend the Environmental Science seminars. The combination of papers must be

approved by the Director of Environmental Science in consultation with the Heads of Departments concerned. The papers and thesis will normally be completed in two years of study.

**64.401 Environmental Science**

The principles and procedures of Environmental Science through an examination of the concepts, theories and methods of Science as they relate to both natural and managed environments. Topics include scientific methods, systems theory and its applications, environmental monitoring and modelling, analytical techniques, policy and management issues and environmental impact assessment procedures. The course will include both field and laboratory work and a comprehensive case study. Attendance at Environmental Science seminars (normally held weekly) is a required part of this paper. (Available only to students enrolled for an MSc in Environmental Science.)

**64.402 Special Topic in Environmental Science**

Lectures, laboratory and field work as prescribed by the Director of Environmental Science in consultation with collaborating departments.

**DEPARTMENT OF GEOGRAPHY**

The Schedule to the Course Regulations for the Degree of BSc should be consulted for the pre and corequisites.

Note: \*This paper will not be taught during the current *Calendar* year.  
 †This paper will not be taught during the current *Calendar* year unless sufficient staff is available.

**Geography I**

Two papers are offered for Geography I. They may be taken separately or together, but students planning to advance in geography should enrol in both. Practical work, tutorials, and a field excursion form an integral part of the courses, and participation in these is required. A list of recommended books for each course is included in the departmental *Student Guide* available from the Geography Department Office.

**20.101 Geography of the Natural Environment**  
(Second half year)

Water in the environment is the unifying theme for a study of processes in physical geography.

**20.102 Society, Space and Place**

(First half year)

Social and economic processes that determine variation, accessibility and inequality in the spatial allocation of resources both within and between nations.

**Geography II**

Six papers are offered for Geography II. Students planning to advance in geography should enrol for 20.204 (or equivalent), 20.201 and 20.202. Students advancing in other subjects may take papers separately. A list of recommended books for each of the papers is included in the departmental *Student Guide* available from the departmental secretary.

**20.201 Processes in the Natural Environment**

Environmental processes in biogeography and soils, climatology and geomorphology are considered with energy flow and transformation as the unifying theme.

**20.202 Society, Economy and Environment**

The location and organisation of economic activities in Western societies and their relationship to other aspects of social organisation. Principles and models that are used in geography to represent and interpret these relationships are considered.

**20.203 Remote Sensing Techniques**

Photogrammetry, photo interpretation and an introduction to more recent techniques of remote sensing and their application.

**20.204 Statistical Techniques in Geography**

Elementary statistical methods for the non-mathematical student, including descriptive statistics, the testing of simple statistical relationships, and the use of computer processing.

**20.205 Human Impact in the Environment**

An examination of humanity as a modifier of the soil, atmosphere, land and other aspects of the natural and cultural world.

**\*20.206 Geographical Perspectives on Developing Countries**

The study of regional processes in Third World countries. The issue of agrarian change, urbanisation, migration and industrialisation are considered in the context of colonial legacies and contemporary political situations. Taught in even numbered years. **Geography III**

Each paper will involve at least two hours of lectures, seminars, or laboratory work per week, but students must also attend such additional practical work and fieldwork as may be required. A list of recommended books for each of the papers is included in the departmental *Student Guide* available from the Geography Department Office.

**20.302 Regional Processes and Development**

The interplay between agents and mechanisms shaping the nature and distribution of economic activity on the one hand, and the characteristics of regions on the other.

Attention is given to the features of firms, labour, industries, markets, institutions, the state, cities and territories as they relate to the geography of capitalist production. These topics are discussed in the context of different sectors, systems of government, and nations.

**20.303 Geomorphology and Hydrology**

Geomorphological and hydrological systems with special reference to coasts, slopes and karstic environments. 20.303 includes a residential field trip.

**20.304 Biogeography and Climatology**

Concepts and methods in environmental climatology and biogeography.

**20.305 Population Processes Policies and Techniques**

Components of change in human populations (fertility, mortality, migration), population structure (sex and age, ethnicity, economic activity) and population distribution (urbanisation, segregation, regional development). Techniques of measurement and analysis are introduced and policies which regulate population are considered.

**\*20.306 Geographical Perspectives on Developing Countries**

The study of regional processes in Third World countries. The issue of agrarian change, urbanisation, migration and industrialisation are considered in the context of colonial legacies and contemporary political situations. Taught in even numbered years.

**†20.310 Geography of Malaysia, Singapore and Indonesia**

Population composition and growth, urbanisation, economic structure and regional patterns, and problems of resource use are emphasised. Taught in odd numbered years.

**\*20.312 Special Topic****†20.313 Advanced Statistical Analysis in Geography**

An introduction to multivariate statistical methods and their application to model building and systems analysis.

**20.314 Geographic Information Systems and Image Processing**

Principles, techniques and applications of geographic information systems, including computer analysis and presentation of cartographic and remotely sensed data.

**20.315 Research Design and Methods in Human Geography**

A lecture, practical and field course which considers the principles of research design, methods and practice of data collection, sources of published and unpublished data, experience in analytical techniques and the presentation of results. The paper includes a residential field course of at least seven days normally held in the first week of the May study break.

**20.320 Resources and Environmental Management.**

Planning for the effective utilisation of natural resources through understanding the functioning of natural and man-modified ecological systems and the institutional structures determining their use.

**Geography for MSc and Honours**

[Four papers and a thesis (20.601)]

A candidate is expected to enrol for and sit the four papers in the first year, present the thesis (which is the equivalent of three papers) in the year next following and submit it for examination by 1 November of that year. Papers shall be selected from 20.400 to 20.445. Further information (including recommended books) is included in the *Graduate Guide* available from the Geography Department Office.

There is an overall limit on the number of Masters students for 1991. Students should consult the Head of Department as soon as possible after the completion of the Bachelors Degree in order to discuss the graduate programme.

**\*20.400 History and Nature of Geography****†20.410 Change and Transition in the Pacific**

The patterns and processes of island bio-physical environments, population, economic organisation and resource use.

**†20.420 Biogeography**

Major concepts, theories and methods in studies of plant communities, populations and nutrient cycling.

**20.421 Climatology**

Topics in environmental climatology, and climate impact assessment.

**20.422 Geomorphology**

An analysis of major ideas in systematic and regional geomorphology, with a focus on the S.W. Pacific and New Zealand.

**20.424 Hydrology and Fluvial Geomorphology**

Pure and applied aspects of hydrology and fluvial geomorphology, incorporating field and laboratory techniques.

**20.430 Land Use Studies**

Principles of land use competition and land use planning in rural and urban areas of developed economies.

**20.431 Cultural Geography**

Cross cultural themes in the study of people - nature relationships.

**20.432 Regional Development Studies**

Studies of the inter-regional and international relationships between capital, labour and space.

**20.434 Population Geography**

Analysis and applications of the methods and materials of demography.

**20.436 Urban Geography**

Emphasis is on the social processes that underline spatial patterns of Western cities.

**20.440 Remote Sensing**

An advanced study of remote sensing applications involving analysis of a range of recent imagery and data.

**20.441 Coastal Studies**

Topics in historical coastal geomorphology and coastal management with process as the unifying theme.

**20.442 Evaluation in Environmental and Resource Planning**

An examination of methods for the evaluation of resource development proposals.

**20.443 Digital Mapping Systems**

The study of computer assisted cartography with special reference to its role in Geographic Information Systems in New Zealand.

**\*20.444 Special Topic****\*20.445 Special Topic**

weekends during term time.

**Laboratory/Tutorial Classes:** Each student will be required to do exercises and essays and attend two one-day laboratory/tutorial classes to be in weekends.

**21.111 Introduction to General and Environmental Geology**

(Restriction: 21.100)

48 hours, 24 hours laboratories. 6 credits.

Basic geological concepts, earth materials, earth as a planet, structure and evolution of the lithosphere, oceans and atmosphere, origin and evolution of life. Geological hazards, earth resources. Geological evolution of New Zealand.

**Field Classes:** Each student will be required to attend two field classes, arranged usually on weekends during term time.

**Practical Work:** One two-hour practical class must be attended each week. A pass in both the practical course and the written paper is necessary.

**21.112 Geological Materials and Methods**

(Prerequisites: 21.100 or 21.111.)

(Restrictions: 21.150)

24 lectures, 48 hours laboratories. 6 credits.

Earth materials and structure - rocks, minerals and rock-forming and deforming processes. Paleontology and stratigraphy. New Zealand Geology.

**Field Classes:** Each student will be required to attend two field classes, arranged usually on weekends during term time.

**Practical Work:** Two two-hour practical classes must be attended each week. A pass in both the practical course and the written paper is necessary.

**Stage II**

Entry to each course is limited. Students who intend to enrol should make pre-enrolment application to the Registrar by the prescribed date.

**Field Classes** are a compulsory part of each paper and students must be prepared to pay a large part of the cost.

Attention is drawn to the inclusion in the BSc Schedule of 52.231 Geomechanics I as a Stage II course relevant to those students with an interest in mining or engineering geology.

The following seven courses are offered:

**21.200 Introduction to Field Geology**

(Prerequisites: 21.100 and 21.150 or 21.112.

**Corequisite:** 21.211 or 21.212. **Restrictions:** 21.201)

Seven days field work, 4 laboratory hours; 2 credits. Introduction to the techniques of geological mapping. Each student will be required to produce a geological map and a report on their field mapping exercise.

**21.211 Principles of Structural Geology and Geophysics**

(Prerequisites: 21.100 plus 21.150 or 21.112.

**Corequisites:** 21.200. **Restrictions:** 21.201)

Three lectures and 3 laboratory hours per week, first half year. 4 credits.

Elements and mechanical principles of structural geology. Introduction to applied geophysics and solid earth geophysics.

**Field Classes:** One day excursions may be arranged during this course.

**Practical Work:** A pass in both the practical course and the written paper is necessary.

---

**DEPARTMENT OF GEOLOGY****Stage I**

Three 6 credit papers are offered for Geology I. All three papers may be taken and papers 21.110 and 21.111 may be taken separately. Students intending to advance to Geology Stage II must take papers 21.111 and 21.112

**21.100 Planet Earth**

36 lectures, 24 hours practical and field exercises held in weekends. 6 credits.

Earth as an evolving planetary body. Philosophy of earth sciences, fossils and evolution, natural hazards and earth resources.

**Field Classes:** Each student will be required to attend two one-day field classes arranged usually on

**21.212 Principles of Historical Geology and Paleontology**

(Prerequisites: 21.100 and 21.150 or 21.112. Corequisites: 21.200. Restrictions: 21.202.)

Three lectures and 3 laboratory hours per week; second half year. 4 credits.

Stratigraphic principles and practice, the code of nomenclature, definitions and application. Introductory paleontology: systematics, evolution, functional morphology; paleoecology.

**Field Classes:** One day excursions may be arranged throughout the year.

**Practical Work:** A pass in both the practical course and the written paper is necessary.

**21.213 Principles of Mineralogy**

(Prerequisites: 21.100 and 21.150 or 21.112. Restrictions: 21.203.)

Two lectures and 4 laboratory hours per week; first half year. 4 credits.

Crystal morphology. Principles of optical microscopy. Principles of crystal chemistry. Systematic and determinative mineralogy.

**Field Classes:** One day excursions may be arranged during this course.

**Practical Work:** A pass in both the practical course and the written paper is necessary.

**21.215 Principles of Petrography**

(Prerequisites: 21.100 and 21.150 or 21.112. Corequisites: 21.200, 21.213. Restrictions: 21.203.)

Two lectures and 4 laboratory hours per week; second half year. 4 credits.

The major rock-forming minerals. Introduction to igneous, metamorphic and sedimentary petrography.

**Field Classes:** An excursion of up to 4 days may be arranged during this course. Attendance is compulsory and students must be prepared to pay a large part of the cost of the trip.

**Practical Work:** A pass in both the practical course and the written paper is necessary.

**21.281 Elements of Economic Geology**

(Restriction: 21.304)

Three lectures and two laboratory hours per week; first half year. 3 credits.

Fossil fuels. Industrial minerals. Metallic deposits.

**Field Work:** Each student will be required to do at least one day of field work.

**Note:** Enrolment requires permission of Head of Geology Department for science students or Head of Department of Mining Engineering for engineering students.

**21.284 Exploration and Mining Geology**

Three lectures and two laboratory hours per week; second half year. 3 credits.

Methods in applied structural and engineering geology in the mine environment. Methods in exploration and evaluation of ore deposits.

**Field Work:** Each student will be required to do at least one day of field work.

**Note:** Enrolment requires permission of Head of Geology Department for science students or Head of Department of Mining Engineering for engineering students.

**Stage III**

Entry to each course is limited. Students who intend to enrol should make pre-enrolment application to the Registrar by the prescribed date; students are advised to consult before pre-enrolment.

Attention is drawn to the inclusion in the BSc Schedule of 52.331 Geotechnical Engineering, 52.332 Geomechanics II, 56.312 Evaluation and Mineral Economics and 56.314 Rock Mechanics as Stage III courses relevant to those students with an interest in engineering or mining geology.

**Field Classes:** Field classes are a compulsory part of each paper and may be held anywhere in New Zealand. Students must be prepared to pay a large part of the cost of field excursions.

The following fifteen courses are offered:

**21.300 Field Methods for Geology**

(Prerequisites: 21.200. Corequisites: 6 Geology III credits. Restrictions: this course may not be taken by any student who, prior to 1990, has completed the requirements for the compulsory Stage III Field Class in Geological Mapping.)

At least 10 days field work and 12 laboratory hours. 2 credits.

Photogrammetry, photogeology. A field report and map of a selected area.

**Note:** This course must be taken by all Geology students taking Geology III papers (excluding 21.306) totalling 6 credits or more. Under special circumstances the Head of Department may permit a student to take 21.200 rather than 21.300.

**21.303 Advanced Paleontology**

(Prerequisites: either (21.100 and 21.150) or (21.111 and 21.112) or 39.101 and either 06.102 or 38.102. Corequisite: 21.200 or 21.300.)

Forty-six hours lectures, 69 hours laboratories, 6 credits. Advanced treatment of some major invertebrate groups (including Foraminiferida, Brachiopoda, Mollusca, Coelenterata) covering their morphology, origin, evolution, paleoecology and geological history. Paleoeccologic principles and practice, paleoecology of other groups of organisms.

**Field Classes:** A total of about five days of field work will be arranged throughout the year anywhere in New Zealand; attendance is compulsory and students must be prepared to pay a large part of the cost of these excursions.

**Practical Work:** A pass in both the practical course and the written paper is necessary.

**Note:** Since the prerequisites for this course are first-year courses it is possible to take 21.303 as a second year course; students who intend to major in Geology must obtain the permission of the Head of Department to take 21.303 in their second year.

**21.304 Minerals and Mineral Deposits**

(Prerequisites: Six chemistry credits and either 21.203 or (21.200, 21.213, 21.215). Corequisite: 21.300. Restrictions: 21.281.)

Two lectures and three laboratory hours per week, 6 credits. Mineral deposits in sedimentary, igneous and metamorphic environments and their genesis; industrial minerals; coal, gas and petroleum deposits. Applied mineralogy. Introduction to hydrogeology.

**Field Classes:** A total of about five days will be spent in the field throughout the year. Attendance at these classes is compulsory and students must be prepared to pay a large part of the cost of these excursions which may be held anywhere in New Zealand.

**Practical Work:** A pass in both the practical course and the written paper is necessary.

**21.305 Igneous and Metamorphic Petrology**

(Prerequisites: Six chemistry credits and either 21.203 or (21.200, 21.213, 21.215). Corequisites: 21.300.)

Forty-six hours lectures, 69 hours laboratories, 6 credits. Petrography, chemistry, petrogenesis and regional settings of igneous and metamorphic rocks.  
**Field Classes:** A total of about five days will be spent in the field throughout the year. Attendance is compulsory and students must be prepared to pay a large part of the cost of these trips which may be held anywhere in New Zealand.

**Practical Work:** A pass in both the practical course and the written paper is necessary.

### **21.306 Applied Geophysics**

(Prerequisites: either (26.120 or 26.121); (26.140 or 26.141); (31.140 or 141); and [(21.200 and 21.211). 21.201] or 21.100, 21.150 and 31.210. Corequisites: 31.330 or 31.335. Restriction: 21.386.)

Thirty-six lectures, 3 credits. A lecture course covering physical principles, equipment and techniques used in investigating the physical composition of the earth's crust and in mineral exploration. Standard numerical and graphical interpretation methods are discussed, and are used to interpret gravity, magnetic, seismic and DC-resistivity measurements to derive realistic geological gross structures and structures of mineral deposits.

### **21.307 Experimental Geophysics (Joint Laboratory Course with Physics Department)**

(Prerequisites: as for 21.306. Corequisites: 21.306, 31.330 or 31.335. Restrictions: 21.386, 31.393.)

Seventy-two hours laboratories, 3 credits. This is a laboratory course associated with 21.306. Use and calibration of geophysical instrumentation, experiments to illustrate basic principles, analysis and interpretation of field data involving both Geology and Geophysics. This course is identical with course Physics 31.393, and those students who satisfy the prerequisites: 31.210 and 31.290 and one other paper from 31.200-31.250 should enrol in 31.393.

**Field Classes:** A total of about five days of field work will be held throughout the year anywhere in New Zealand. Students must be prepared to pay a large part of the cost of these excursions which are compulsory.

### **21.310 Geology of Australasia and the South West Pacific**

(Prerequisites: at least 8 Geology Stage II credits. Corequisites: any two Geology III papers selected from 21.303-21.318.)

Twenty-four hours lectures; second half year. 3 credits.

Geological evolution of Australasia, the islands of the S.W. Pacific and the Pacific and Tasman ocean crust. Students will be required to do a considerable amount of reading and prepare assignments and seminars outside designated course hours.

**Field Classes:** A total of about five days will be spent in the field throughout the year.

### **21.311 Advanced Structural Geology**

(Prerequisites: either 21.201 or (21.200, 21.211) and 6 credits in Maths or Physics. Corequisites: 21.300. Restrictions: 21.301.)

Two lectures and 3 laboratory hours per week; first half year. 3 credits.

Principles of structural analysis; fault patterns; strain analysis; regional metamorphic structure.

**Field Classes:** Two one-day field excursions.

**Practical Work:** A pass in both the practical course and the written paper is necessary.

### **21.312 Advanced Sedimentology**

(Prerequisites: either (21.201, 21.203) or (21.200, 21.211, 21.213, 21.215). Restriction: 21.302.)

Two lectures and 3 laboratory hours per week; second half year. 3 credits.

Modern sedimentary processes, sedimentary facies models; basin analysis, tectonics and sedimentation. Advanced sedimentary petrography.

**Field Classes:** A total of about five days of field work will be arranged throughout the year anywhere in New Zealand; attendance is compulsory and students must be prepared to pay a large part of the cost of these excursions.

**Practical Work:** A pass in both the practical course and the written paper is necessary.

### **21.318 Introduction to Engineering Geology**

(Prerequisites: either (21.201, 21.203) or (21.200, 21.211, 21.213, 21.215). Corequisites: 21.300. Restriction: 21.201)

Two lectures and 2 laboratory hours per week; first half year. 3 credits.

Introduction to engineering geology. Characterisation of rock, soil and defects. Slope movement. Surface and subsurface engineering geological investigations.

**Field Classes:** Two one-day field excursions.

**Practical Work:** A pass in both the practical course and the written paper is necessary.

### **21.319 Special Topics in Mineralogy and Geochemistry**

(Prerequisites: 08.210 or 08.220, and 21.203 or 21.213.)

Two lectures and 2 laboratory hours per week; second half year. 3 credits.

Abundance and distribution of elements and element partitioning including kinetic and thermodynamic aspects. Chemical aspects of aqueous systems. Crystallography and crystal chemistry.

**Practical Work:** A pass in both the practical course and the written paper is necessary.

### **21.381 Advanced Mining Geology**

(Prerequisites: 21.281, 21.284)

Two lectures and one laboratory hour per week; first half year. 3 credits.

The role of geology in mining. Case histories.

**Field Work:** Each student will be required to do at least one day of field work.

**Note:** Enrolment requires permission of Head of Geology Department for science students or Head of Department of Mining Engineering for engineering students. Science students are advised to enrol concurrently in 52.332 and 56.314.

### **\*21.382 Applied Coal Geology**

(Corequisites: 21.381 or 21.304.)

Two lectures and 2 laboratory hours per week; second half year. 3 credits.

Coal geology. Coal exploration and mining.

**Field Work:** Each student will be required to do at least one day of field work.

**Note:** Enrolment requires permission of Head of Geology Department for science students or Head of Mining Engineering for engineering students.

**\*21.386 Applied Geophysics for Mining**

(Corequisites: 21.381. Restrictions: 21.306 and 21.307.)

Three hours per week; second half year. 3 credits.  
Equipment and techniques used in mine development and investigation of mineral deposits.

**Field Work:** Each student will be required to attend a field camp and prepare a report on a geophysical project.

**Note:** Enrolment requires permission of Head of Geology Department for science students or Head of Department or Mining Engineering for engineering students.

**21.388 Engineering Geology**

(Corequisites: 21.318.)

Three lectures and one laboratory hour per week; second half year. 3 credits.

Geological principles applied to engineering problems.

**Field Work:** Each student will be required to do at least two days of field work.

**Note:** Enrolment requires permission of Head of Geology Department for science students or Head of Department of Civil Engineering for engineering students.

**52.231 Geomechanics I****52.331 Geotechnical Engineering****53.332 Geomechanics II****56.101 Mineral Engineering****56.312 Evaluation and Mineral Economics****56.314 Rock Mechanics****BSc(Hons) Part IV in Geology**

(Three papers and a thesis 21.603.)

The Regulations which cover the BSc(Hons) course are listed elsewhere. Students enrolled for BSc(Hons) Part IV in Geology undertake course work as for first-year MSc students and will select three of the following papers prescribed for the MSc Degree (21.401 to 21.450 but not 86.100 or 86.102). In addition, they must complete a research project by the beginning of the second half of the academic year, and the marks allotted for the project report count as equivalent to one paper. Students who wish to be considered for enrolment should consult the Head of Department prior to enrolment or at any time during the preceding year. Students who have been admitted to Part IV should consult the Geology staff about textbooks and particularly about fourth-year research projects at the end of their Stage III year.

Students are reminded of the Foreign Language Reading requirement for admission to the Degree of BSc(Hons). Candidates must show proficiency in a language approved by the Head of Department.

**BSc(Hons) Part IV in Applied Geology**

[Three papers and a thesis (21.613).]

Students enrolled for BSc(Hons) Part IV in Applied Geology undertake course work as for MSc students and will select three papers from the four groups of papers specified by the Schedule for MSc in Applied Geology. In addition they must complete a thesis by the beginning of the second half of the academic year, the thesis being equivalent to one paper. Students who have been admitted to part IV should consult the Geology staff about textbooks and particularly about fourth-year research projects at the end of their Stage III year.

Students are reminded of the Foreign Language

Reading requirement for admission to the Degree of BSc(Hons). Candidates must show proficiency in a language approved by the Head of Department.

**MSc and Honours in Geology**

[Three papers and a thesis (21.601)]

The MSc in Geology consists of three written papers to be selected from 21.401 to 21.450 and 86.104 together with a thesis which, for examination assessment, counts as three written papers.

The course requires full-time attendance. Under normal circumstances the thesis shall be submitted by 1 November of the second year of enrolment. In exceptional circumstances the Head of Department may approve a later date of submission but not exceeding the two year total time limit for the MSc course.

Students are reminded of the Foreign Language Reading requirement for admission to the Degree of MSc or MSc(Hons). Students must show proficiency in a language approved by the Head of Department.

**21.401 Tectonics and Structural Geology**

Advanced topics on principles of deformation in roads - Regional structure and tectonics of selected areas of the earth.

**21.402 Sediments and Sedimentary Processes**

Sedimentary processes and products in both ancient and modern settings. Identification and interpretation of sedimentary environments; the provenance and subsequent diagenetic history of terrigenous and carbonate sediments.

**21.403 Stratigraphy and Paleontology**

Principles and practice in stratigraphy and correlation, the fossil record and its interpretation, the historical geology of New Zealand.

**21.404 Advanced Studies in Mineral Deposits**

Advanced studies of selected types of mineral deposits with respect to their physicochemical conditions of formation and subsequent modification.

**21.405 Genesis of Igneous and Metamorphic Rocks**

Studies in the petrology of igneous and metamorphic rocks covering geological settings, volcanology, PT environments, petrochemistry and mineral assemblages with emphasis on recent developments in the theoretical, experimental and observational fields.

**21.406 Advanced Applied Geophysics**

The theory and practice of the interpretation of geophysical measurements. Topics covered are: potential field theory, quantitative interpretation of gravitational and magnetic anomalies (two and three-dimensional bodies), DC and AC resistivity measurements, seismic wave transmission, refraction and reflection studies. Practical work: The year's practical work will be assessed by means of exercises to be completed during the lecture course and two essays and discussion of a seminar topic.

**Note:** This course is the same as 31.433 and is given jointly by the Geology and Physics Departments. Previous enrolment in 31.330 or 335, 21.306 and 21.307 is desirable.

**21.408 Advanced Engineering Geology**

Application of geology to engineering practice with emphasis on the geological, physical and structural variants in rock masses and soil masses. Aspects of ground investigation methods, aggregates, relevant clay mineralogy, groundwater, sediments and soils, excavation methods, stability of slopes, foundation



requirements and relationship to soil mechanics and rock mechanics.

#### **21.409 Mineral Chemistry and Geochemistry**

The abundance and distribution of the elements. Special topics in the chemistry of minerals, rocks and fluids.

#### **21.450 Special Topics in Geology**

To be prescribed by Head of Department.

#### **21.484 Economic and Mining Geology**

The exploitation and exploration of mineral deposits and other economically important earth materials.

#### **86.404 Geothermal Exploration Technology**

Geology of thermal areas. Hydrothermal alteration of reservoir rocks. Mapping and analyses of geothermal discharges. Geochemistry of thermal fluids. Geophysical exploration of prospects. Drillhole logging. Instrumentation.

*Note:* (a) Students seeking enrolment in this course must have passed 21.304 or 21.305 or 21.306; in addition, a pass in either 08.210 or 08.220 is desirable.

(b) This course includes a compulsory field trip, normally held in mid-term break to Wairakei and Wellington and of five days' duration, but timing, location, and duration may be altered from year to year.

#### **MSc and Honours in Applied Geology**

[Three papers and a thesis (21.611)]

*Prerequisites:* A BSc with 24 Stage III credits, including at least 12 which must be from Geology.

The MSc in Applied Geology requires full-time attendance. The degree consists of three written papers together with a thesis which, for examination assessment, counts as three written papers. Under normal circumstances the thesis shall be submitted by 1 November of the second year of enrolment. In exceptional circumstances the Head of Department may approve a later date of submission but not exceeding the two years' total time limit for the MSc course. The individual course of study of each student must be approved by the Head of the Department of Geology. The student shall select three papers from the following five groups: 21.408; (21.471-21.478); 21.484; 86.404; and any approved paper listed in the ME Schedule. Students are reminded of the Foreign Language Reading requirement; the chosen foreign language must be approved by the Head of the Department of Geology; with the permission of the Head of the Department the Foreign Language Reading requirement may be waived in the case of a student whose mother tongue is not English.

The papers taken for the MSc in Applied Geology must be selected from three of the following:

#### **21.408 Advanced Engineering Geology**

As in Schedule for MSc and Honours in Geology.

#### **21.484 Economic and Mining Geology**

As in Schedule for MSc and Honours in Geology.

#### **Any One Approved Paper Listed in the ME Schedule**

Enrolment requires permission of the Head of Department concerned.

#### **(21.471-21.478) Special Topic Papers**

Only one paper may be selected from this group.

#### **21.471 Special Topic in Applied Geology**

*Either* any two papers selected from courses offered in the 3rd Professional Year of BE and/or Stage III BSc papers which have not already been taken or any approved paper from the MSc Schedule. Enrolment

requires permission of the Head of Department concerned.

#### **21.473 Special Topic in Mineral Processing**

Any two papers selected from courses offered in the 3rd Professional Year of BE (Mineral Processing Engineering). Enrolment requires permission of the Head of Department concerned.

#### **21.474 Special Topic in Mining Geology**

Any two papers selected from courses offered in the 3rd Professional Year of BE (Mining Engineering). enrolment requires permission of the Head of Department concerned.

#### **21.478 Special Topic in Engineering Geology**

Any two papers selected from courses offered in the 3rd Professional Year of BE (Civil). Enrolment requires permission of Head of Department concerned.

#### **86.404 Geothermal Exploration Technology**

As prescribed for MSc and Honours in Geology.

*Note:* This paper when taken for MSc in Applied Geology has a corequisite 86.401 (as prescribed for ME).

#### **PhD in Geology**

Thesis (21.602) and an oral examination.

Facilities are available for research by PhD candidate in many branches of Geology: geochemistry, petrology, volcanology, mineralogy, structural geology, palaeontology and stratigraphy, sedimentology, marine geology, geophysics, engineering and mining geology. Students intending to work for this Degree should have reached a satisfactory level of attainment in BSc(Hons) or MSc. Students working for this Degree who have not already shown proficiency in a foreign language will be required to pass the Foreign Language Reading Examination in a language approved by the Head of Department.

## **LEIGH LABORATORY**

The University's Marine Laboratory provides research facilities for staff and postgraduate students in any branch of marine science. Present work is centered on the ecology, reproductive biology and taxonomy of shore and shallow water organisms, algal and fish physiology, physical & biological oceanography, and some aspects of applied fisheries. The laboratory also provides facilities for laboratory and field exercises for advanced undergraduate courses (BSc and MSc courses), primarily in conjunction with Botany, Environmental Science, Geography and Zoology.

The area in the immediate vicinity of the Laboratory is a Marine Reserve, and permission is required to collect specimens. However, there are examples of most types of marine habitats within 10km of the Laboratory, from where samples can be readily collected. There are a number of small boats for work in and around the Reserve, and a 4m inflatable craft for work slightly further afield. The Laboratory's research vessel, R.V. Proteus, is equipped with diving compressor, winch, radar and accommodation for 6, and is used for offshore work. Facilities for diving are available at the Laboratory, including scuba tanks, air

compressor, and some other equipment. Constantly running seawater is pumped through several tankrooms both indoors and outdoors, and a small climate station is maintained. In addition to general laboratory and office space, there are specialised areas for culturing unicellular algae, computing, photography, chemical analyses and a small library. The Laboratory is situated in Goat Island Bay on the east coast, 100km by road north of Auckland. There is on-site bunkroom accommodation for up to 36 students, and 2 self-contained visitors' cottages. A large kitchen and dining room complex is available to all workers. The Laboratory is managed by a University committee under the chairmanship of Assoc. Prof. B.A. Foster. Inquiries concerning use of the facilities at Leigh should be directed to the Scientist-in-Charge, Dr T.A.V. Rees, R.D.5 Warkworth. (Phone 4226-111, or Auckland 793-534.)

## DEPARTMENT OF MATHEMATICS AND STATISTICS

### Basic Skills

A course covering basic skills in mathematics is offered by the Student Learning Unit. It is designed for students who have not studied mathematics for some years or those whose background in mathematics is weak. It meets each week during the first term for a lecture or tutorial session; ongoing assistance is available throughout the year if required. Students can obtain notes with numerous worked examples as well as access to computers with further examples. Register for this non-credit course with the Student Learning Unit (above the BNZ).

### Stage I Courses

#### 26.101 (6 credits) Introduction to Algebra and Calculus

This paper is intended for those students with an inadequate mathematics background who wish either to advance in mathematics or to take only one mathematics paper. It will focus mainly on algebraic concepts but also include trigonometry and a brief introduction to calculus. Students scoring 50 or more in any Bursary mathematics paper are strongly encouraged to enrol in 26.121 or 26.141 rather than 26.101. It should be noted that students enrolling in 26.101 must expect to take 4 years to complete Stage III mathematics.

Introduction to Algebra and Calculus is also taught on the campus of the Auckland College of Education with the paper number 26.102.

#### 26.120 (6 credits) Principles of Algebra

#### 26.121 (6 credits) Introductory Algebra

#### 26.122 (6 credits) Finite Mathematics

These are alternative courses and only one of them may be selected by any student. Students intending to advance in Mathematics or Engineering will take Maths 120 or 121. Students with a strong entrance background should enrol in Maths 120 and students with a weak background in Maths 121. However, well prepared students are encouraged to enrol in Maths 221. Maths 122 is appropriate for commerce and law students and for arts and social science students not

intending to major in Mathematics. However, as this is a first course in Mathematics, better prepared students are encouraged to take Maths 120 or 121 instead.

Syllabus for Maths 120 and 121: integers and induction; complex numbers; linear equations and matrices; vectors and geometry of 2 and 3 dimensions, polynomials; brief introduction to abstract algebra.

Syllabus for Maths 122: a selection of topics from logic, sets, principles of counting, vectors and matrices, linear equations, probability and Markov chains, linear programming, the theory of games, number systems.

#### 26.140 (6 credits) Principles of Calculus

#### 26.141 (6 credits) Introductory Calculus

#### 26.142 (6 credits) Concepts of Calculus

These are alternative courses and only one of them may be selected by any student. Students intending to advance in Mathematics or Engineering will take Maths 140 or 141 which are to be considered as equivalent for prerequisite purposes. Students with a strong entrance background should enrol in Maths 140 and students with a weak background in Maths 141. However, well prepared students are encouraged to enrol in Maths 241. Maths 142 is appropriate for commerce and law students and for arts and social science students not intending to major in Mathematics.

Limits, continuity; derivatives and integrals; differential calculus of polynomials and rational functions; antiderivatives and integrals of polynomials; logarithmic, exponential and circular functions; calculus in Euclidean geometry; applications.

#### 26.165 (6 credits) Introduction to Computational Applied Mathematics

A computer-oriented course in which the computer will be used as a tool to simulate and/or numerically solve problems from a wide area of applied mathematics. Topics covered will include scientific computation, Monte Carlo simulation techniques, symbolic and numerical computation packages.

#### 26.175 (6 credits) Introduction to Mathematical Modelling

Construction of mathematical models and solutions to problems with elementary examples from geometry, mechanics, population dynamics, conflict models, etc. Solution procedures will require methods of algebra, geometry, calculus and elementary differential equations.

#### 26.180 (6 credits) Principles of Statistics

Graphical and numerical summaries of data, probability axioms, random variables, probability distributions, expected values, discrete bivariate distributions, sampling distributions, small and large sample inference, nonparametric methods, straight line regression.

This paper is a prerequisite for 26.280 and the more theoretical Stage III papers in the subject. However, students without adequate Bursary marks are advised to enrol in 26.181. Further information is available from the Department.

#### 26.181 (6 credits) Introduction to Probability and Statistics

The syllabus is similar to that of 26.180 but with less

emphasis on mathematical proofs and more emphasis on statistical techniques and their applications. There are follow-up Stage II and III courses. Students who do very well in 26.181 and have the necessary pure mathematics background may be permitted by the Head of Department to enrol in 26.280.

One stream of 26.181 is taught on the campus of the Auckland College of Education with the paper number 26.182.

### Stage II Courses

In accordance with Regulation 5 of the BSc Regulations and Regulation 7 of the BA Regulations, the Head of Department may waive the prerequisites listed in the Schedule in particular cases. This applies particularly to students who, instead of having passed the formal prerequisite, have passed a related paper with a good grade. The papers to which this applies are 122 instead of 120 or 121, 121 instead of 120, 142 instead of 140 or 141 and 181 or 182 instead of 180.

### 26.200 (4 credits) Tutoring in Mathematics

A predominantly practical course in which selected students learn mathematics tutoring skills in a first year university Mathematics classroom situation. Five weeks of lectures are given prior to the commencement of the practical component. Normally, students in this course will have passed at least 36 Stage I credits including at least 12 in Mathematics, and concurrent enrolment in at least one other Stage II Mathematics paper will be required.

### 26.210 (6 credits) Principles of Mathematics

The course consists of a wide selection of topics from various branches of Mathematics. Further information about the course may be obtained from the Administrative Secretary of the Department of Mathematics and Statistics.

### 26.220 (6 credits) Linear Algebra

### 26.222 (6 credits) Linear Algebra

These are alternative papers, with 26.220 being available for those who have passed 26.120 and 26.222 for those who have passed 26.121.

Matrices, vector spaces, linear mappings, determinants, eigenvalues and eigenvectors, non-singular reduction of quadratic forms. Sylvester's law of inertia, inner products, orthogonal reduction of real quadratic forms.

### 26.221 (8 credits) Algebra (Accelerated Course)

A selection of topics from Maths 120 and Maths 220 taught as a unified course. Well prepared students are encouraged to seek permission to enrol in this course rather than in Maths 120.

### 26.240 (4 credits) Calculus

Algebra and geometry of vectors in three dimensional space; calculus of vector valued functions, curves, functions of several variables, partial derivatives, chain rule, maxima and minima, div, grad and curl; multiple integrals; least upper bounds; sequence and series, introduction to power series.

Note: Students who intend to advance to Stage III and have obtained a grade of B- or better in papers 26.140 or 26.141 are encouraged to enrol concurrently in paper 26.330.

### 26.241 (8 credits) Calculus and Analysis (Accelerated Course)

A selection of topics from Maths 140 and Maths 240 taught as a unified course. Well prepared students are encouraged to seek permission to enrol in this course

rather than in Maths 140.

### 26.260 (4 credits) Differential Equations

Methods for the solution of ordinary differential equations, including variation of parameters, Laplace transform methods, and power series solutions; elementary Fourier series and boundary value problems.

### 26.270 (4 credits) Principles of Mechanics

Principles of Newtonian mechanics, particle motion, projectile and planetary orbits. Simple harmonic motion and oscillations. Dynamics of systems of particles. Rigid body mechanics. Motion relative to a rotating reference frame.

### 26.280 (4 credits) Statistical Theory

Discrete and continuous distributions, multivariate distributions, moment generating functions, sampling theory for the normal distribution, theory of estimation, hypothesis testing, linear regression.

### 26.281 (4 credits) Data Analysis

Exploratory data analysis, introduction to analysis of variance and experimental design, industrial applications of statistics, regression techniques, contingency tables, goodness of fit, and non-parametric methods.

The emphasis is on data analysis using a program called STATCALC. Macintosh computers are provided in the departmental computing laboratory.

### 26.290 (4 credits) Numerical Computation

Introduction to the numerical algorithms fundamental to scientific computer work. Interpolation and approximation, numerical differentiation and integration, solution of nonlinear equations, linear systems of equations.

### 26.293 (4 credits) Introduction to Operations Research

This course will emphasise the relationship between business and industrial applications and their associated Operations Research models. Computer package software will be used to solve practical problems. Topics such as linear programming, transportation and assignment models, network algorithms, queues, Markov chains, inventory models, and simulation will be considered.

### Stage III Courses

In accordance with Regulation 5 of the BSc Regulations and Regulation 7 of the BA Regulations, the Head of Department may waive the prerequisites listed in the Schedule in particular cases. This applies particularly to students wishing to enrol in paper 26.330 concurrently with paper 26.240.

### †26.310 (4 credits) Special Topic in Pure Mathematics (a)

### †26.311 (2 credits) Special Topics in Pure Mathematics (b)

### †26.312 (2 credits) Special Topics in Pure Mathematics (c)

Enrolment in each of these papers requires permission from the Head of Department. If offered, further information may be obtained from the Administrative Secretary of the Department of Mathematics and Statistics.

### 26.315 (4 credits) Formal Logic

Formal systems, proof-theoretic and model theoretic approaches to classical and modal sentential logic,

introduction to first-order logic.

**26.320 (4 credits) Algebraic Structures**

**26.321 (4 credits) Introduction to Abstract Algebra**

Groups, rings, unique factorisation domains, fields. The object of these courses is to give a basic introduction to modern algebra, exclusive of linear algebra. They are alternative courses, and only one of them may be selected by any student. Both courses are acceptable and suitable as a prerequisite for Maths 420, and the Mathematics and Statistics Department reserves the right to direct which of these courses a particular student shall take.

**26.325 (4 credits) Discrete and Combinatorial Mathematics**

A selection of topics involving enumeration, graph theory, designs and codes, with applications.

**26.330 (2 credits) Introductory Analysis**

Students with good grades in 26.140 may with the permission of the Head of Department enrol in 26.330 concurrently with 26.340.

Elements of set theory, the real number system, sequences and series of functions, uniform convergence, Riemann integration.

**26.331 (6 credits) Analysis (Accelerated Course)**

A unified paper covering analytic and topological concepts needed for multivariable calculus. Differential and integral calculus of vector-valued functions of several variables with applications. Differential forms and Stokes' theorem. Enrolment in this paper requires permission from the Head of Department of Mathematics and Statistics and permission is normally given to students who have completed 26.241 successfully or who have achieved a high grade in 26.240.

**26.335 (2 credits) Metric and Normed Spaces**

Metric and normed linear spaces with particular reference to non-dimensional Euclidean space and  $C(a,b)$ , compactness, connectedness, completeness and their applications.

**26.340 (4 credits) Multivariable Calculus**

Differential and integral calculus of vector-valued functions of several variables and applications.

**26.345 (2 credits) Techniques of Complex Variables**

Analytical functions, power series, calculation of integrals by residues.

**†26.350 (4 credits) Topics in Topology**

A selection of topics chosen from topology or differential geometry. Enrolment in this paper requires permission from the Head of Department.

**26.355 (4 credits) Geometry**

A selection of topics chosen from axiom systems, affine geometry, Euclidean and non-Euclidean geometry, projective geometry, inversive geometry, convexity.

**26.360 (4 credits) Applied Analysis**

Differential equations, the special functions of applied mathematics, orthogonal polynomials, Fourier series, boundary value problems.

**\*26.362 (4 credits) Special Topics in Applied Mathematics (a)**

Enrolment in this course requires permission from the

Head of the Department. If this paper is offered further information may be obtained from the Administrative Secretary of the Department of Mathematics and Statistics.

**†26.363 (2 credits) Special Topics in Applied Mathematics (b)**

Enrolment in this course requires permission of the Head of Department. If this paper is offered, further information may be obtained from the Administrative Secretary, Department of Mathematics and Statistics.

**26.368 (2 credits) Mathematical Theory of Control**

Dynamical systems, time domain and frequency domain analysis, the exponential matrix, transfer functions, discrete-time systems. Linear control systems, feedback, stability, Nyquist and Liapunov theory.

**26.371 (4 credits) Introduction to Continuum Mechanics**

Vector and tensor. Analysis of stress and strain. Constitutive relations and field equations. Introduction to fluid mechanics and linear elasticity theory.

**26.372 (2 credits) Analytical Mechanics**

Idea of the calculus of variations, Lagrange's equations for mechanical systems. Application to rigid body dynamics and vibrations.

**26.375 (2 credits) Applied Partial Differential Equations**

Mathematical and physical classification of partial differential equations into hyperbolic (propagation processes), parabolic (diffusion processes) and elliptic ('steady state' processes). Modelling with partial differential equations, illustrations of solution procedures using both analytical and numerical techniques.

**26.376 (2 credits) Theory of Waves**

Paper presents a unified treatment of wave phenomenon. Oscillations and waves, Fourier analysis, linear and nonlinear waves, dispersion. Application to sound, water and electro-magnetic wave motions.

**26.380 (4 credits) Applied Probability**

Introduction to stochastic processes, generating functions, recurrent event theory. Markov chains including applications to random walks and discrete branching processes. Poisson processes, birth and death processes including applications to queuing processes, miscellaneous topics.

**26.381 (4 credits) Advanced Statistical Theory**

Limit theorems, statistical inference, likelihood methods; theory of linear, logistic and log-linear models; multiple linear regression and analysis of variance. This course provides a theoretical background to 26.385.

**26.382 (4 credits) Design of Surveys and Experiments**

Survey methods including stratified, multistage and cluster sampling; experimental designs including incomplete block, latin square, split plot, factorial and fractional designs. Design of clinical trials.

**26.385 (4 credits) Advanced Data Analysis**

Techniques of multiple regression and analysis of variance; principles of experimentation; multi-way

contingency tables and log-linear models; time series methods and multivariate methods. This is a methods course, and statistical computer packages such as SAS are taught and used.

#### **26.390 (4 credits) Numerical Analysis**

Analysis of methods of numerical interpolation, differentiation and quadrature. Numerical methods for differential equations.

#### **26.391 (4 credits) Optimisation in Operations Research**

Linear programming; Simplex and revised Simplex methods; duality and the dual Simplex method; post optimal analysis; decomposition and column generation, integer programming; cutting planes and branch and bound; dynamic programming; network analysis, transportation and flow problems.

#### **26.395 (4 credits) Mathematical Modelling for Operations Research**

Introduction to deterministic and stochastic models in such areas as queuing theory, inventory control, reliability, decision processes, scheduling, digital computer simulation, Monte Carlo methods.

#### **26.399 (2 credits) Applied Mathematics Laboratory**

Definition, analysis and solution of practical problems associated with applied mathematics courses in mechanics, statistics and operations research. Emphasis will be placed on preparation of initial problem specifications, implementation of algorithms, and computer programs and presentation of results. Students shall select three appropriate topics from those offered taking into account the applied mathematics papers in which they are enrolled.

#### **Courses for MA, MSc and Honours**

The prerequisites for the MA and MSc Degrees are: Mathematics 26.220 or 26.221 or 26.222, 26.240 or 26.241, at least one of 26.260, 26.280, 26.281, plus twenty 300 or 400 level credits approved by the Head of Department of Mathematics and Statistics. Normally at least 16 of these credits shall be from papers in Mathematics but 12 credits in Mathematics may be approved in special cases.

The student shall select papers, approved by the Head of the Department of Mathematics and Statistics from 26.400 to 26.499 with a total credit value of 20 credits, together with a thesis (26.601) or an advanced course of study (26.605), which will count as 16 credits. Up to four of the 20 credits may be replaced by four Stage III credits from Mathematics papers not already taken for any other degree or diploma.

Prospective Master's students should consult the Administrative Secretary of the Department of Mathematics and Statistics for further details, preferably when they enrol for their 300 level papers. Not all 400 level papers listed will be offered each year. The list of papers to be offered and their prescriptions will be determined each year by the Head of the Department of Mathematics and Statistics. The number of credits for each paper is given after the title. A candidate must normally complete his or her thesis or advanced course of study not later than twenty-four months after his or her first enrolment for this Degree.

#### **26.401 Topic in Pure Mathematics A (2)**

#### **26.402 Topic in Pure Mathematics B (2)**

#### **26.403 Special Topic in Pure Mathematics (4)**

#### **26.404 Advanced Topic in Pure Mathematics (4)**

#### **26.410 Introduction to Mathematical Logic (2)**

#### **26.411 Topic in Mathematical Logic (2)**

#### **26.412 Recursive Functions (2)**

#### **26.413 Set Theory (2)**

#### **26.414 Automated Reasoning (2)**

#### **26.415 Automata Theory (2)**

#### **26.416 Combinatorics (2)**

#### **26.417 Graph Theory (2)**

#### **26.418 Lattice Theory (2)**

#### **26.419 Universal Algebra (2)**

#### **26.420 Field Theory and Galois Theory (2)**

#### **26.421 Rings, Modules and Categories (2)**

#### **26.422 Number Theory (2)**

#### **26.423 Commutative Algebra (2)**

#### **26.424 Algebraic Geometry (2)**

#### **26.425 Group Theory (2)**

#### **26.426 Applied Linear Algebra (2)**

#### **26.427 Topic in Algebra (2)**

#### **26.428 Special Topic in Algebra (4)**

#### **26.429 Advanced Topic in Algebra (4)**

#### **26.430 Measure and Integration A (2)**

#### **26.431 Measure and Integration B (2)**

#### **26.432 Functional Analysis (2)**

#### **26.433 Banach Algebras (2)**

#### **26.434 Applied Functional Analysis (2)**

#### **26.435 Lie Groups and Lie Algebras (2)**

#### **26.436 Analysis on Manifolds (2)**

#### **26.437 Operator Theory (2)**

#### **26.438 Approximation Theory (2)**

#### **26.439 Topological Vector Spaces (2)**

#### **26.440 Complex Analysis A (2)**

#### **26.441 Complex Analysis B (2)**

#### **26.442 Applied Complex Analysis (2)**

#### **26.443 Riemann Surfaces (2)**

#### **26.444 Summability Methods (2)**

#### **26.445 Quasiconformal Analysis (2)**

#### **26.446 Topics in Analysis A (2)**

#### **26.447 Topics in Analysis B (2)**

#### **26.448 Special Topics in Analysis (4)**

#### **26.449 Advanced Topics in Analysis (4)**

#### **26.450 Topology (2)**

#### **26.451 Algebraic Topology (2)**

#### **26.452 Differential Topology (2)**

#### **26.453 Uniform Spaces (2)**

#### **26.454 Differential Geometry (2)**

#### **26.455 Linear Geometry (2)**

#### **26.456 Topics in Geometry (2)**

#### **26.457 Topics in Topology (2)**

#### **26.458 Special Topic in Geometry or Topology (4)**

#### **26.459 Advanced Topics in Geometry or Topology (4)**

#### **26.460 Ordinary Differential Equations A (4)**

#### **26.461 Ordinary Differential Equations B (2)**

- 26.462 Partial Differential Equations (4)
- 26.463 Topics in Differential Equations (2)
- 26.464 Calculus of Variations (2)
- 26.465 Fourier Analysis (2)
- 26.466 Global Analysis (2)
- 26.467 Asymptotic Methods (2)
- 26.468 Topics in Applied Mathematics (2)
- 26.469 Special Topics in Applied Mathematics (4)
- 26.470 Topics in Mechanics A (2)
- 26.471 Topics in Mechanics B (2)
- 26.472 Fluid Mechanics (4)
- 26.473 Quantum Mechanics (4)
- 26.474 Special Topic in Mechanics (4)
- 26.475 Advanced Topic in Mechanics (4)
- 26.480 Probability Theory A (2)
- 26.481 Probability Theory B (2)
- 26.482 Experimental Design (2)
- 26.483 Multivariate Analysis (2)
- 26.484 Stochastic Processes A (2)
- 26.485 Stochastic Processes B (2)
- 26.486 Topic in Probability and Statistics A (2)
- 26.487 Topic in Probability and Statistics B (2)
- 26.488 Statistical Methods (4)
- 26.489 Data Analysis (4)
- 26.490 Topic in Probability and Statistics C (2)
- 26.491 Generalised Linear Models (2)
- 26.492 Numerical Solution of Ordinary Differential Equations (4)
- 26.493 Numerical Solution of Partial Differential Equations (4)
- 26.494 Nonlinear Optimisation (2)
- 26.495 Mathematical Software (4)
- 26.496 Topics in Numerical Analysis (4)
- 26.499 Data Analysis (2)

The number of credits for each paper is given in brackets.

#### **BSc (Honours) in Mathematics**

Prerequisites for Part IV of the BSc(Hons) Degree are the same as for an MA or MSc Degree in Mathematics. Normally only students of proven ability (B+ or above) may be considered for entry at either Part III or Part IV level.

The courses available at Part III level are such as will allow a candidate to satisfy the prerequisites for Part IV. The requirements for Part IV are given in BSc(Hons) Regulation 16 but some leeway for other papers is provided by Regulation 7.

Students who obtain the BSc(Hons) will be permitted to complete the MSc by presenting a thesis or completing an advanced course of study as approved by the Head of the Department of Mathematics and Statistics.

#### **Diploma in Mathematics Education**

See under Diploma Regulations and Prescriptions.

#### **Diploma in Statistics**

See under Diploma Regulations and Prescriptions.

## **MEDICAL SCIENCE**

The MSc in Medical Science is taught by several Departments in the School of Medicine. Students who

intend to take the course should consult as early as possible (preferably by 1 December of the preceding year) the Dean of Science, Chairman of the Committee for the MSc in Medical Science, who acts as the Head of Department for the purpose of the MSc Regulations. The course consists of three papers and a thesis 89.601 which counts as three papers. The papers are selected from: the four papers in Medical Science 89.401-404, Biochemistry 66.401-403, Cellular and Molecular Biology 40.403, Physiology 67.401-406, Psychology 32.406, 410, 416, 419 and Pharmacology 96.404-407.

#### **89.401 Neuroanatomy**

An introduction to experimental techniques. The organisation of the mammalian nervous system with particular emphasis on the cellular, chemical and connective anatomy of the sensory and motor systems.

#### **89.402 Immunobiology**

An intensive analysis of the ontogeny of cells that comprise the immune system, the genes and hormones that regulate differentiation and the processes underlying lymphocyte recognition. Emphasis is given to the molecular mechanisms regulating immunity.

#### **89.403 Experimental Pathology**

An introduction to the experimental method used to study normal and abnormal cells and tissues. Histological, histochemical, ultrastructural and biochemical approaches to cell and tissue injury.

#### **89.404 Cancer Biology**

The biological and molecular basis of cancer development and tumor growth and metastasis. Principles of radiobiology and cytotoxic therapy of cancer, with the emphasis on molecular mechanisms.

#### **89.405 Biology of Mammalian Growth**

This paper will review the biochemistry and physiology of prenatal and postnatal mammalian growth with a particular emphasis on the role of genetic, endocrine, paracrine and nutritional influences. The paper will include emphasis on growth in ruminant species, the control of carcass growth, fibre growth and lactation, as well as the regulation of growth in monogastric species (eg man). The paper will be taught within the Department of Paediatrics; it will include 20 lectures/active student participation in seminars, and each student will prepare two essays.

#### **89.406 Perinatal Physiology**

This paper is taught by the Department of Paediatrics. Historical introduction, methodology of fetal investigation, fetal oxygenation, placental physiology, fetal cardiovascular physiology, ontogenesis of sleep, neural physiology of the fetus or respiratory control, maturation of the lung, maturation of the neuroendocrine axis, control of parturition, uterine function, fetal renal function and fluid balance, fetal metabolism and the regulation of fetal growth; the neonatal adaptation, ontogenesis of thermoregulation.

The paper is taught in lectures plus student seminars and practicals.

## DEPARTMENT OF OPTOMETRY

### Optometry

#### Year I

#### Chemistry

08.111 Organic and Physical Chemistry

08.121 Inorganic and Physical Chemistry

#### Computer Science:

07.100 Introduction to Computing (a)

07.105 Introduction to Computing (b)

07.111 Computing and Applications

#### Mathematics:

26.105 Algebra and Calculus

An introduction to algebra and calculus. Topics include complex numbers, linear equations and matrices, polynomials, differential and integral calculus.

26.181 Introduction to Probability and Statistics

#### Physics

31.141 Principles of Classical Physics

31.151 Principles of Modern Physics

#### Psychology

32.108 Introduction to General Psychology

32.109 Introduction to Experimental Psychology

#### Biology

39.101 Central Concepts of Biology

#### Zoology

38.102 Animal Evolution and Diversity

All papers except 26.105 as prescribed for the Degree of Bachelor of Science.

Note: For 31.140 a candidate may substitute 31.141. For 31.150 a candidate may substitute 31.151.

#### Year II

#### 44.200 Physical Optics

Image quality assessment, resolution of optical instruments, the optical transfer function. Interference and interferometers. Diffraction. Thin film optics. Polarisation. Sources and detectors. Coherent optical processes, holography. Fibre optics.

#### 44.201 Geometrical Optics

Refraction at plane and spherical surfaces, limitations of Gaussian optics, thick lenses, cardinal points, equivalent and vertex powers, paraxial theory of optical instruments, stops. Magnification. Optical materials.

#### 44.203 Anatomy of the Visual System

Gross anatomy, histology and embryology of the human eye, orbit and central visual pathways. The associated vascular and neural systems. Comparative anatomy.

#### 44.205 Ocular Physiology

The vascular supply to the eye. Formation and circulation of aqueous humour, intraocular pressure. Chemistry and metabolism of the cornea, corneal permeability, turgescence and the maintenance of transparency. Structure of the crystalline lens.

#### 44.210 Physiological Optics

Optics of the eye, schematic eyes, accommodation, spectacle and relative spectacle magnification. Luminous efficiency, light and dark adaption, increment thresholds. Stiles Crawford effect, temporal and spatial induction, critical fusion frequency, entoptic phenomena, visual acuity,

trivariance of vision, chromaticity, theories of colour vision and colours discrimination. Classification of eye movements, local signs, corresponding points, diplopia, afferent and efferent control mechanisms, rotary movements, nystagmus, conjugate movements, vergence and stereopsis, Panum's areas, fixation disparity.

#### 44.230 Introduction to Clinical Optometry

The history and philosophy of optometry as a health care profession, optometric organisations, optometric instrumentation, introduction to clinical practice.

#### Physiology

#### 67.201 Introductory Physiology

All papers are prescribed for the Degree of Bachelor of Science.

#### Biochemistry

#### 66.204 General and Ocular Biochemistry

#### Year III

#### 44.305 Ocular Pharmacology

General principles of drug actions on organ systems and the central and peripheral nervous systems. Characteristics of drugs producing miosis, mydriasis, cycloplegia, accommodative spasm and anaesthesia of ocular surfaces.

#### 44.306 Applied Optics

Optical design, meridional and paraxial ray tracing, aberrations of single surfaces, lens systems, the design of optical instruments, optical tolerances, and the assessment of optical performance. Luminous transmittance, Colorimetry, the CIE colorimetric systems.

#### 44.310 Physiological Optics

Refractive anomalies of the eye, changes in refraction with age, aetiology of refractive errors, presbyopia. Fusion and stereopsis in the human visual system. Recent advances in visual physiology.

#### 44.312 Contact Lens Practice

Contact lens design and principles of fitting. Disinfection procedures, patient instruction. Signs and symptoms of ill-fitting contact lenses and lens modification procedures.

#### 44.313 Environmental Vision

Visual ergonomics in land transport, aviation and industry. The elements of illuminating engineering, photometric concepts and computational methods. Lamp, types, principles and applications, atmospheric optics. Principles of industrial safety, incidence of eye injuries, eye protection programmes, visual screening.

#### 44.314 General Pathology

An introduction to general pathology including mechanisms of disease, infection, inflammation, repair, immunological processes, cardiovascular disease, neo-plasms, processes of ageing.

#### 44.315 Ocular Pathology

A study of the pathology and clinical manifestations of diseases of the eye, orbit, lacrimal apparatus and visual pathways. Symptomatic disturbances of vision, headache. Eye signs of general disease.

#### 44.316 Ophthalmic Optics

Cylindrical and spherocylindrical lenses, toric lenses, simple and accurate transpositions. Ophthalmic prisms. Multi-focal lens design. Ophthalmic materials, absorptive lenses. Aspheric lenses. Design of low vision aids. Optical dispensing, frame

description and measurement, lens marking, cutting and edging, grooving and drilling. Prescription verification, lens manufacture, surfacing, facial measurement, frame selection and adjustment.

#### **44.321 General Microbiology**

The properties of bacteria, viruses, chlamydiae, fungi and protozoa affecting the eye. Introduction to microbiological techniques, antimicrobial chemotherapy, disinfection of optometrical equipment and pharmaceuticals.

#### **44.330 Clinical Optometry**

The optometric examination, objective and subjective refractive techniques. Assessment of ocular health, oculomotor balance, visual fields and colour vision. Clinical problem solving and patient management. Binocular vision anomalies, heterophoria fusion, heterotropia.

#### **Year IV**

#### **44.415 Community Health Optometry**

Organisation of health services in New Zealand, health planning and administration, health manpower requirements. The delivery of health care, role of government statutory and voluntary agencies. Role of optometry in the team approach to health care. Optometric needs of particular groups.

#### **44.421 Project**

An investigation into some aspect of optometry or visual science.

#### **44.425 General Clinical Practice**

Examination of patients in the Optometry Clinic under the supervision of staff. Instruction in the routine optometric examination and in the diagnosis and management of disorders of the visual system.

#### **44.426 Clinical Optometry I**

Principles of the optometric examination, anomalies of the visual system, special examination techniques, communication skills, case analysis.

#### **44.427 Clinical Optometry II**

A series of seminars and clinical sessions on ocular abnormalities and diseases of the eye and the associated visual disorders. Ocular signs of systemic disease, referral procedures.

#### **44.431 Contact Lens Practice**

Contact lens fitting procedure. Aftercare and the ocular response to contact lenses. Lens care and maintenance.

#### **44.432 Low Vision Practice**

Ocular and vision problems of the elderly. Epidemiology, aetiology, signs and symptoms of low vision. Optometric examination and management of the low vision patient, interdisciplinary rehabilitation resources, counselling and referral.

#### **44.433 Binocular Vision Practice**

Detection, measurement and classification of latent and manifest disorders of binocular vision. Visual training. Clinical aspects of aniseikonia.

#### **Optometry for MSc**

(Two papers selected from 44.551 to 44.554 and one from another subject approved by the Head of Department and a thesis 44.601 which shall count as three papers.) This course normally requires fifteen months to two years and necessitates full-time attendance to achieve Honours. Students who propose to undertake the MSc Degree should consult the Head

of Department towards the end of the year prior to enrolment.

#### **44.551 Physiological Optics**

A review of selected areas of physiological optics.

#### **44.552 Determinants of Visual Optics**

Environmental, genetic and geographical factors in the aetiology of human refractive error. The stimulus to accommodation, dark focus, mechanisms of accommodation, and presbyopia.

#### **44.553 Advanced Analysis of Visual Functions**

Assessment of visual function, contrast sensitivity functions; effects of defocus and intra-ocular scatter. Vision at low luminance levels.

#### **44.554 Special Topic**

The study of selected fields of Optometry at an advanced level with detailed study of one particular field. The topic will be prescribed by the Head of Department.

---

## **DEPARTMENT OF PHARMACOLOGY AND CLINICAL PHARMACOLOGY**

### **Stage III Courses**

#### **96.301 Principles of Pharmacology**

(One paper and practical work.)

An introductory course on the principles of pharmacology. Topics are passage of drugs across membranes; drug distribution, metabolism and elimination; pharmacokinetics; mechanism of drug action; drug toxicity; drug development and evaluation.

*Lectures:* Students will attend two lectures a week.

*Laboratories:* Students are required to attend practical classes of not less than three hours a week. Performance in laboratory work will contribute to the final grade of the course.

*Prerequisites:* 66.202 or 66.203 or 67.201 and 12 or more credits from Science papers above Stage I.

A maximum number will be determined by the available accommodation.

#### **96.302 Systematic Pharmacology**

(One paper and practical work.)

This course examines specific aspects of pharmacology, particular emphasis being placed on mechanism of action, and the modification of function by drugs. The actions of drugs on excitable membranes, membrane bound enzymes, intermediate messengers will be considered. The modification by drugs of peripheral and central neurotransmission, and cardiovascular, bronchial, renal, gastrointestinal and endocrinal function will be reviewed. Practical work complements the lecture course.

*Lectures:* Students will attend two lectures a week.

*Laboratories:* Students are required to attend practical classes of not less than three hours a week. Performance in laboratory work will contribute to the final grade for the course.

*Prerequisites:* 67.201 and 12 or more credits from any Science papers above Stage I.



A maximum number will be determined by the available accommodation.

### **Pharmacology for MSc and Honours**

(Three papers and a thesis (96.621) which shall count as three papers.) Three papers to be selected from 96.404 to 96.407. A Master's paper from Biochemistry, Cellular and Molecular Biology, Medical Science or Physiology may be substituted for one of the papers in Pharmacology with the approval of the Head of the Department concerned, or for the MSc in Medical Science, of the chairperson of the committee for the MSc in Medical Science. Students who propose to undertake the MSc Degree should consult the Head of Department as early as possible and preferably before the end of the academic year preceding the year of enrolment for the Degree. In consultation with the Head of the Department, students will select three papers among those listed below and an appropriate thesis topic. Not all of the papers listed will be offered each year and a sufficient number of enrolments will be required in each case. The student should normally expect to complete his or her thesis during the second year.

#### **96.404 Drug Disposition and Action**

Absorption, distribution, metabolism and excretion of drugs. Sites and mechanisms of drug action. Analysis of these processes.

#### **96.405 Transmitter and Brain Pharmacology**

Mechanism of action of drugs on the central nervous system. Drugs used to treat neurological and psychiatric disorders. Chemical neuroanatomy of diseased and normal brain.

#### **96.406 Cardiovascular Pharmacology**

Mechanism of action of drugs on cardiovascular system. Drugs used to treat hypertension, cardiac arrhythmias, angina pectoris and heart failure. Drugs affecting blood coagulation.

#### **96.407 Special Topics**

The study of selected fields of pharmacology at an advanced level with detailed study of one particular field. Possible topics include toxicology and anaesthetics. The topic will be prescribed by the Head of the Department.

Facilities are available for MSc and PhD research in a number of topics in Pharmacology. Further information is available from the Head of Department.

## **DEPARTMENT OF PHILOSOPHY**

### **Stage II Course**

#### **29.203 (5 credits) Philosophy of Science**

This course is available for second and third year BSc students. It provides an introduction to the logic, methodology, ontology and epistemology of science, and other problem areas where philosophy intersects with foundational issues in the special sciences. No prior acquaintance with philosophy will be presupposed. However, students will be required to master some elementary logic. Full details of the course, including texts, can be found in the booklet *Department of Philosophy: Course Outlines* available from the Departmental Secretary, Room 7, 1 Alfred Street.

## **DEPARTMENT OF PHYSICS**

### **Stage I Courses**

#### **31.101-114 and 28.113**

These papers present aspects of pure and applied physics of interest to students in other subjects or to students who wish to study physics for cultural rather than vocational reasons. They do not normally allow advancement in physics except to the Stage II papers 31.200-206 as shown in the BSc Schedule.

The papers 31.101 and 102 are of general interest. They emphasise concepts and assume a background familiarity with physics and mathematics equivalent to a Sixth Form Certificate level. The papers 31.104 and 28.113 are specialised papers as indicated below.

#### **31.101 (6 credits) The Physical Universe**

Two lectures and a one hour practical/tutorial session per week for the whole year. Available for both BSc and BA students.

The course is descriptive in nature and requires a minimal background in mathematics and physics. It will give an overview of the main developments in physics since the time of Galileo, how the evolution of the subject from the classical to the modern period has given rise to philosophical problems and what are the current unanswered problems in our understanding of the universe. Among the topics to be covered are the forces of nature and attempts to unify them, the ideas of quantum mechanics and relativity and the development of classical physics from Aristotle to Newton. Demonstration experiments will be a feature of the course. Student work will emphasize essays and tutorial discussions.

#### **31.102 (6 credits) The World of Physics**

Two lectures per week and a one-hour practical/tutorial session for the whole year. Available for both BSc and BA students. The course seeks to provide an understanding of many of the phenomena of the natural world around us and the physics of many human activities. Some of the themes will be the physics of our environment, the physics of sports and music, physics in medicine, light and lasers, the laws of motion and a study of the physics of the solar system and satellite orbits.

#### **31.114 (3 credits) Measurement and Instrumentation**

Two lectures per week for half a year and six three-hour laboratory sessions. Instruments depending on many different physical principals are now used widely by scientists and engineers. The paper will discuss some of the features which are common to all measurement processes. (For example errors and their treatment, statistical treatment of data transducers, signal processing and display systems.) It will then discuss a selection of instruments and explain the basic physical processes upon which they depend. A discussion of analogue, digital and computer controlled instrumentation.

#### **28.113 Acoustics (Paper in Faculty of Music)**

This paper is offered as part of the course for the Degree of Bachelor of Music but is available to science students under BSc Regulation 10. Topics covered include the fundamental principles of

oscillations and wave propagation; stationary waves; resonance; loudness; pitch; tone quality; intervals and scales; the principles of operation of stringed, woodwind, brass and other instruments; the electronic production and reproduction of sound; and the acoustics of rooms.

### **31.140, 141 and 150, 151**

These papers provide for general advancement to Stage II papers in physics as well as entry to engineering and various other disciplines.

The papers 31.140 and 31.150 form a combination intended for students who expect to major in physics or advance in engineering. They are calculus-based in their presentation and are appropriate for students entering university with a background achievement in physics and mathematics equivalent to an A Bursary or Entrance Scholarship standard. They allow advancement to the core Stage II physics papers 31.225, 245 and 255 as well as to the optional papers. The papers 31.141 and 31.151 are intended for students wishing to advance in physics, engineering, other sciences, mathematics or various other disciplines such as architecture, dentistry, medicine (Otago), optometry, surveying, etc. They are similar in content to the 31.140 and 31.150 papers but will be presented with minimal calculus and correspondingly assessed at a lower level of difficulty. They are strongly recommended for students entering with the equivalent of B Bursary or HSC or SFC achievement in physics and mathematics. These papers allow advancement to the optional physics papers at Stage II (31.200, 206, 240, 270) but normally a pass at a B-grade or better will be required to qualify for entry to the core papers.

*Note:* For comparative purposes, students taking either set of papers to satisfy intermediate requirements for entry to a professional school have their grades normalised to a standard scale.

### **31.140 (6 credits) Foundations of Classical Physics**

Two lectures per week for the whole year and twelve three-hour laboratory sessions. Mechanics, wave-motion, sound and light, electromagnetism. (Entrance Scholarship, A Bursary or equivalent standard assumed.)

### **31.141 (6 credits) Principles of Classical Physics**

Two lectures per week for the whole year and twelve three-hour laboratory sessions. Mechanics, wave-motion, sound and light, electromagnetism. (B Bursary, HSC or equivalent standard assumed.)

### **31.150 (6 credits) Foundations of Modern Physics**

Two lectures per week for the whole year and twelve three-hour laboratory sessions. Thermal physics, radiation, relativity and quantum physics. (Entrance Scholarship, A Bursary or equivalent standard assumed.)

### **31.151 (6 credits) Principles of Modern Physics**

Two lectures per week for the whole year and twelve three-hour laboratory sessions. Thermal physics, radiation, relativity and quantum physics. (B Bursary, HSC or equivalent standard assumed.)

### **Stage II Lecture Courses**

#### **Direct Entry**

Students who have gained an Entrance Scholarship with outstanding marks in both physics and mathematics may be granted direct entry to Stage II papers in physics. Enquiries should be made to the Head of Department.

### **Non-Advancing Papers**

The papers 31.200-206 do not lead on to any other papers in physics at Stage III and have minimal Stage I prerequisites. These papers present aspects of pure and applied physics of interest to students in other subjects, but may also be taken by students advancing in physics.

### **31.200 (4 credits) Topics in Contemporary and Applied Physics**

This paper provides an introduction to a variety of topics in physics of contemporary interest, such as space physics, astrophysics, geophysics and biophysics. It also discusses the basic physics involved in a variety of general topics such as music, photography and microscopy. The paper is descriptive in nature and makes extensive use of demonstrations, slides, films and closed circuit TV. One two-hour lecture per week is devoted to each topic, with a different lecturer each week. The course runs throughout the year. This paper is examined by continuous assessment. The prerequisite is any one of the 6-credit Stage I physics papers, or physicochemistry for Human Biology.

### **31.206 (2 credits) Introductory Geophysics**

This paper introduces students to a broad range of topics in geophysics and is intended primarily for non-physics students with interests in geophysics and marine science. The coverage will include basic physical phenomena and processes relating to the Earth as a planet in the solar system, the atmosphere, the oceans and the solid Earth. The level of presentation is appropriate both for advancing physics students and for students in other disciplines.

### **Advancing Papers**

The papers 31.225, 31.245 and 31.255 are the core Stage II physics papers. Students intending to major in physics should take at least two of the core papers including 31.225 and should note the mathematics prerequisites for Stage III physics papers. Students intending to enrol for MSc in Physics are advised to take all three core papers.

The core papers and 31.240 have two lectures per week and laboratory work. Tutorials are held in alternate weeks. Laboratory work will contribute to the final grade and it is necessary to pass both the laboratory course and the written paper.

### **31.225 (6 credits) Classical and Mathematical Physics**

This paper discusses Macroscopic Physics and considers the fundamentals of mechanics, oscillations, waves and electromagnetism with applications to a wide variety of physical systems. Applications will be drawn from gravitation, relativity, astrophysics, electrostatics, optics and acoustics. The course will also include an introduction to computer modelling and analysis of physical systems.

### **31.240 (3 credits) Electronic Physics**

This paper provides a fundamental understanding of basic electronic circuits and systems. It covers electric circuit theory, semiconductor devices, circuit applications and principles of electronic design and instrumentation. The lectures comprise the first half of 31.245.

**31.245 (6 credits) Electronic and Applied Physics**

This paper provides a fundamental understanding of electronic, optical and electromagnetic systems. It covers circuit theory, semiconductor theory, circuit applications, principles of electronic design and instrumentation, fibre optics, lenses, waveguides, dielectrics and magnetism.

**31.255 (6 credits) Quantum and Statistical Physics**

This paper discusses Microscopic Physics. The aim is to introduce students to the concepts of quantum physics and statistical physics with applications to atoms, molecules, solids (including semiconductors), nuclei and particles. Topics will include the Schrödinger equation, the Maxwell Boltzmann distribution and Fermi-Dirac and Bose-Einstein quantum statistics.

**31.270 (3 credits) Astronomy and Astrophysics (Optional Paper)**

Techniques of optical and radio astronomy; determination of properties of the solar system and of stars such as distance, radius and mass; Hertzsprung-Russell diagram; equations of stellar structure, energy production and transport; introduction to stellar evolution, galactic structure and cosmology.

Note: The Department operates a teaching observatory within the building which is made available to students.

**31.297 (2 credits) Digital Logic Laboratory**

This laboratory paper is particularly designed for Computer Science students with an interest in computer hardware. Physics 31.140 or 31.141 are designated prerequisites and Computer Science 07.210 is a corequisite in the course.

The course occupies two two-hour periods each week for half the year, and is examined on the basis of continuous assessment.

**Stage III Lecture Courses****31.325-370**

The prerequisites for these papers are listed in the BSc Schedule. Students are recommended to enrol concurrently in Mathematics at Stage III level, the papers 26.340, 26.345, 26.360 and 26.375 being the most relevant. In addition paper 26.220 or equivalent is of benefit to students enrolling for 31.355.

Some papers in Computer Science such as 07.100, 07.101, 07.105, 07.210 and 07.340 are also likely to be of benefit to Physics students.

Laboratory work selected from papers 31.390-392 is corequisite for a course containing more than six credits from papers 31.325-370.

Students intending to undertake graduate studies in Physics should ensure that they satisfy the MSc prerequisites listed under the MSc Regulations.

**31.325 (4 credits) Advanced Classical Physics**

This paper deals with Electromagnetism and Statistical Mechanics and contains material important to all further studies in Physics. Topics covered include the development of Maxwell's Equations in differential form, and this application to electrostatics, magnetic fields, the EM wave equation and EM wave propagation. In the latter half of the course, the topics are the statistical basis of thermodynamics, entropy, temperature, partition function, classical and quantum gases, radiation, Bose condensation and superfluidity.

**31.326 (2 credits) Laser Physics and Electro Optics**

This paper is concerned with modern advances in lasers and optics with emphasis on their applications.

Topics covered include: common laser systems, resonator theory, propagation of laser beams, dispersion, opto electronic devices, nonlinear optics, fibre optics, optical transmission systems, optical instruments and systems. The course is of value to students with interests in electrical engineering, electro optics and research in any experimental area of Physics. 31.325 is a corequisite for Physics students, but other equivalent corequisites can be substituted by electrical engineering students.

**31.330 (2 credits) Terrestrial Physics**

A general introduction to the physics of the solid Earth, including aspects of the gravitational field, the rotation and figure of the Earth, seismology and the internal structure of the Earth, the Earth's internal heat, the geomagnetic field, paleomagnetism and geodynamics.

This 2 credit option is a special arrangement for applied geophysics students and has the majority of the lectures given in common with 31.335. Geology 21.306 (Applied Geophysics) is a corequisite.

Note: Physics 31.330 is a corequisite for Geology 21.306 and Geology 21.307/31.393 (Experimental Geophysics).

**31.335 (4 credits) Geophysics**

This 46 lecture course includes a general introduction to the physics of the solid Earth, including aspects of the gravitational field, the rotation and figure of the Earth, seismology and the internal structure of the Earth, the Earth's internal heat, the geomagnetic field, paleomagnetism and geodynamics. The physics of the ocean and atmosphere are treated by application of fluid mechanics to the relevant dynamical phenomena. Other topics include driven flow, circulation of the atmosphere and ocean, atmospheric electricity, radiation balance and optical phenomena. A five-day field trip to the Leigh Laboratory during the first week of the May break is a compulsory part of the coursework for this paper.

**31.342 (2 credits) Semiconductor Devices**

This paper is concerned with understanding the electrical behaviour of semiconductor devices. It contains material relating to the physics of semiconductor junctions, device fabrication and integration, electrical characteristics of discrete and integrated devices, circuit models and device applications.

Although the paper is general in nature, and is designed to follow 31.240 and 31.245, students will benefit from concurrent enrolment in 31.345.

Note: Students in this paper are encouraged to enrol concurrently in 31.390, 391 or 392.

**31.345 (4 credits) Analogue and Digital Electronics**

This paper is relevant to the needs of students intending to undertake experimental work in any area of Physics. Topics discussed include time and complex frequency domain analysis methods applied to electrical and physical systems, Laplace transform methods, Nyquist and Bode plots, poles and zeros, feedback, phase locked loops, oscillators, modulation and noise. A systematic introduction to modern digital techniques is given, covering pulse generation, shaping and cable transmission, active and passive

switching circuits, combinational and sequential logic systems.

Note: Students enrolling in this paper will benefit substantially by also enrolling in 31.390, 391 or 392.

### **31.355 (4 credits) Advanced Quantum Physics**

This paper deals with the postulates of non-relativistic quantum mechanics and their application in atomic, molecular, solid-state, nuclear and particle physics. The study of these topics will be developed using the three-dimensional Schrödinger equation and will include the quantisation of angular momentum and systems in which like particles interact.

Note: Students in this paper will benefit greatly by enrolling also in 31.390 or 31.391 or 31.392.

### **31.356 (2 credits) Principles of Experimental Quantum Physics**

This 23 lecture course covers many topics of interest in experimental quantum physics. These are applicable to fields such as Medical Physics, Optical Communication, Radiochemistry, etc. Some of the topics discussed are: the interaction of charged particles, neutrons and electromagnetic radiation with matter, the detection of particles and photons. In addition the course covers the apparatus of experimental quantum physics; particle accelerators, vacuum systems, ion and atomic beam sources, lasers.

Note: Students in this paper are encouraged to enrol concurrently in 31.390, 31.391 or 31.392.

### **†31.370 (2 credits) Astrophysics**

This paper builds upon the second year course 31.270 and includes the following topics: stellar variability and basic stellar pulsation theory; radial velocity curves; close binary star systems and accretion processes; pulsars and gravitational radiation; white dwarfs and neutron stars; properties and detection of black holes; Newtonian cosmology and research topics of current interest.

Note: The Department operates a teaching observatory within the building which is made available to students.

### **31.380-389 (each 2 credits) Selected Topics**

Subject to the approval of the Head of Department students may select not more than two topics from those offered at MSc level in Physics. Any necessary prerequisites or corequisites will be as determined by the Head of Department.

These papers will be examined in a fashion appropriate to Stage III as part of the Selected Topics 380-389.

From time to time special lecture courses in Physics may be offered to students in particular areas of specialisation. These papers will be announced prior to the enrolment period in the year in which they are given.

### **Stage III Laboratory Courses**

### **31.390, 391, 392 (each 3 credits) Experimental Physics A, B, C**

Three general laboratory papers are available at Stage III level in Physics, and students may enrol for one or more of these in the same or subsequent years. Each paper normally occupies two three-hour laboratory periods for half the year, but laboratory times are flexible depending on the allocation of experiments in the Advanced Laboratory and 31.392 may be spread over the whole year, at the discretion of the course organiser. Each paper will contain a representative selection of experiments from different branches of

physics, but will in addition contain experiments selected as far as is practicable to suit the particular interests of students. Experiments are available in general physics, atomic and nuclear physics, electronic physics and pure and applied geophysics. In view of the value to be derived towards an understanding of experimental physics, it is expected that all students taking any of the 390-series laboratory courses will offer themselves for a period of Stage I laboratory demonstrating.

Prerequisites for enrolment in 31.390, 391 or 392 are passes in *two* of the papers 31.210 to 31.270 and in 31.290 (if taken before 1990) or one of the papers 31.225, 245 or 255 (special prerequisites apply for 31.393 - see below). Corequisites for all four laboratory papers are concurrent enrolment (or passes) totalling at least two credits from 31.325-356 for each one of 31.390-393.

At least *two* of the papers 390 to 393 are required as a prerequisite to Masters in Physics.

### **31.393 (3 credits) Experimental Geophysics**

This is a joint paper offered by the Geology and Physics Departments and is the same as 21.307. For further information on this paper students should consult the entry under 21.307 Experimental Geophysics.

### **Physics for MSc and Honours**

#### **MSc Lecture Courses**

The lecture papers given at the Honours level are of two types. The three core papers are of 33 lectures each and are given annually in terms one and two. Students must take at least two of these papers. In addition, the department offers elective papers (of 23 lecture duration) during the first half of the year which are, in general, given biennially with at least four given in each year. Students must select 5 papers (normally two core and three elective papers). The thesis counts as five papers. Core papers must be sat in the first year of enrolment. Students will be assisted in their selection of papers at enrolment but should feel free to discuss their proposed course of study, including an area of interest for thesis work, with lecturing staff before the end of the Stage III year.

There are no specific prerequisites for the individual lecture papers, but it is strongly recommended that students should have taken the appropriate corresponding Stage III paper. Concurrent enrolment in suitable Masters papers may be advised. Enrolment for COP in a supporting paper may also be recommended.

#### **Core Papers**

These papers are given annually.

### **31.401 Transform Methods and Signal Processing**

Topics will include: convolution, continuous and discrete Fourier transforms, Laplace transforms, z transforms and Hilbert transforms. Modulation and detection of signals in the presence of noise, signal analysis by analogue and digital processes, digital filtering, phased detectors and optical signal processing methods.

### **31.402 Classical Physics**

Topics will include: advanced electromagnetic theory, co-variant formulation of electrodynamics, Liénard Wiechert potentials, radiation from moving

charges and special relativity theory. Principles of generalised classical mechanics, continuum mechanics, Lagrange's equation, Hamilton's principle, conservation theory and symmetries.

#### 31.403 Quantum Mechanics

Topics will include: A review of the general formalism of quantum theory, making use of Dirac notation, scattering theory, time-dependent perturbation theory, relativistic quantum mechanics and spin, quantum theory of radiation and introductory quantum field theory, rotations and other symmetry operations. Applications are taken from atomic, nuclear and particle physics.

#### Elective Papers

These papers are normally offered in alternate years, but may be given more often.

##### 31.413 Statistical Mechanics

##### 31.414 Relativity

##### 31.426 Laser Physics and Electro-optics

##### 31.431 Wave Propagation

##### 31.432 Atmospheric Physics

##### 31.434 Applied Geophysics I

##### 31.435 Applied Geophysics II

##### 31.443 Integrated Electronics

##### 31.453 Nuclear Physics

##### 31.454 Elementary Particle Physics

##### 31.455 Quantum Optics

##### 31.481-499 Selected Topics

Note: 31.434 and 31.435 can only be taken as a combination, as together they are equivalent to 21.406. (These papers are given jointly by the Physics and Geology Departments.)

With the approval of the Senate and on the recommendation of the Head of Department a candidate may select one Stage III Physics paper not previously taken and enrol for it as one of the Selected Topics 31.481-31.499. In such a case additional course work may be required, and a special examination will be sat. Alternatively, or additionally, under MSc Regulation 5 (a), a Masters paper in an allied subject may be taken as an elective. With the approval of the Head of Department, a core paper may be substituted for an elective paper.

#### 31.611 Thesis

An experimental or theoretical thesis is required, and will count as five papers. Students are given advice concerning theses early in the first year of MSc enrolment and are expected to familiarise themselves with research in progress in the Department during the first half-year. Staff will be ready to discuss possible thesis topics with students during this period, with a view to final choice of topic being made prior to the end of the second term. The choice of thesis topic is subject to the approval of the Head of Department, who will consider the availability of staff and facilities over the Department as a whole.

Bound theses must be submitted within 24 months of first enrolment for the MSc Degree. Extensions of time under MSc Regulation 9 (b) will not normally be recommended and will require justification by the candidate's supervisor on grounds of special circumstances only.

The Department is prepared to meet the cost of an additional copy of the thesis for the Departmental Thesis Library and students are asked to provide such a copy with author, year and degree on the spine.

#### Research in Physics

Facilities are available for postgraduate and postdoctoral research in Physics in a wide variety of fields. Further information is available from the Departmental Office.

The PhD Degree in Physics normally requires about two and a half to three years full-time work. Part-time study is possible after the initial two years.

MSc students making satisfactory progress can, with the approval of the Head of Department, transfer to the PhD Degree in their second year. Initial direct enrolment for the degree of PhD is only possible in special cases.

## DEPARTMENT OF PHYSIOLOGY

### Stage II

#### 67.201 Introductory Physiology

(One paper and practical work.)

An introductory course on cellular and organ physiology and relevant processes, particularly in mammalian systems. Topics are muscle, nervous system, motor control and sensory function; cardiovascular and respiratory systems and blood, with their exchange and transport functions; endocrine and reproductive systems, with humoral control of cell metabolism; alimentary system, digestion and absorption; kidney function; body fluids. This paper is complementary to paper 38.252 offered by the Zoology Department.

**Lectures:** Two lectures a week.

**Laboratories:** Students are required to attend practical classes of not less than three hours per week. Performance in laboratory work will contribute to the final grade for the course.

**Prerequisites:** 08.111 or 08.121: 6 credits from any course in Biology or Zoology.

### Stage III

#### 67.301 Systematic Physiology

(One paper and practical work.)

This course examines specific aspects of physiology which demonstrate the interaction of function from the level of cell to that of the whole organism. Visceral regulatory mechanisms, regulation of body fluids, cardiovascular control, control of body temperature, and the determinants of oxygen supply and demand are considered in depth. Special emphasis is placed on mammalian systems. Practical work complements the lecture course and provides training in a wide range of the techniques used in physiology.

**Lectures:** Two lectures a week.

**Laboratories:** Students are required to attend practical classes of not less than three hours per week. Performance in laboratory work will contribute to the final grade for the course.

**Prerequisites:** 67.201 and 12 or more credits from any science course, at the Stage II or III level.

#### 67.302 Physiology of Cells and Excitable Tissues

(One paper and practical work.)

This half-year course examines the physiology of excitable tissues with particular emphasis on the nature of the fundamental processes involved. The bio-physical basis for membrane potentials; the nature of voltage and time dependent ion-selective membrane channels; synaptic transmission; the regulation of contractile processes; and functional differences between skeletal, cardiac and smooth

muscle will be studied in detail. The approach is quantitative and special emphasis is placed on mammalian systems. Laboratory work complements the lecture courses and introduces students to the principal physiological techniques of investigation in this field.

**Lectures:** Two lectures a week.

**Laboratories:** Students are required to attend practical classes of not less than 3 hours per week. Performance in laboratory work will contribute to the final grade for the course.

**Prerequisites:** Physiology 67.201 and 12 or more credits from any science course at the Stage II or III level.

### **67.303 Physiology of the Nervous System**

(One paper and practical work.)

This half year course examines the role of the nervous system and general pattern of its functional organisation. The physiology of the processing of sensory information, of motor outputs and their control, the integrative functions of the central nervous system, central neural mechanisms of homeostasis and aspects of the development of the nervous system are studied in detail. Special emphasis is placed on mammalian and human systems. Laboratory work complements the lecture course and introduces students to a range of neurophysiological techniques.

**Lectures:** Two lectures a week.

**Laboratories:** Students are required to attend practical classes of not less than 3 hours per week. Performance in laboratory work will contribute to the final grade for the course.

**Prerequisites:** Physiology 67.201 and 12 or more credits from science courses at Stage II or III level.

### **Physiology for MSc and Honours**

(Three papers and a Thesis (67.621) which shall count as three papers.)

Students who propose to undertake the MSc Degree should consult the Head of Department as early as possible and preferably before the end of the academic year preceding the year of enrolment for the Degree. In consultation with the Head of Department, students will select three papers from among those listed below and an appropriate thesis topic. Not all the papers listed may be offered each year and a sufficient number of enrolments will be required in each case. With the approval of the Senate, a Master's paper in another subject may be substituted for one of the papers in Physiology.

#### **67.401 Mechanisms of Physiological Control**

Studies of physiological regulatory mechanisms.

#### **67.402 Applications of Systems Analysis in Physiology**

An introduction to systems analysis and control theory, and their application to physiological systems.

#### **67.403 Neurophysiology**

Central processing of sensory information. Organisation and integration of motor pathways in the brain involved in respiratory and cardiovascular control. Cellular mechanisms of synaptic function and memory.

#### **67.405 Methods in Physiology**

An outline of the theory and practice of data acquisition and analysis in physiology. Principles of experimental design, instrumentation, statistics and

computation are considered with respect to specific experiments.

## **DEPARTMENT OF PSYCHOLOGY**

**Note:** On text books: Students taking advanced courses are advised to consult with the lecturers concerned before purchasing books.

**On courses:** The Schedule attached to the Course Regulations for the Degree of BSc should be consulted for pre and corequisites.

\* This paper will not be taught during the current *Calendar* year.

† This paper will not be taught during the current *Calendar* year unless sufficient staff is available.

### **Stage I Courses**

Two papers are offered for Psychology I which together provide a general introduction to the psychological study of behaviour.

The papers may be taken separately. However, a pass in 32.108 or 32.118, and 32.109 or 32.119 is necessary for entry to Stage II.

#### **32.108 Introduction to General Psychology**

Topics covered include: motivation; the emotions; the neurobiological basis of behaviour; social behaviour and social influence; developmental psychology; mental abilities and measurement; personality; psychopathology and its treatments.

Introduction to General Psychology is also taught on the campus of Auckland College of Education with the paper number 32.118.

#### **32.109 Introduction to Experimental Psychology**

Topics covered include: learning, sensation and perception; memory and cognition; statistics.

(Laboratory attendance of 2 hours per week is required.)

Introduction to Experimental Psychology is also taught on the campus of Auckland College of Education with the paper number 32.119.

### **Stage II Courses**

A pass in 12 Stage II credits in Psychology is necessary for entry to Stage III.

#### **32.210 Learning**

Concerned with the two major aspects of learning, schedule control and stimulus control. Topics include: schedules of reinforcement, law of effect, superstition, Premack theory, choice and matching, generalisation gradients, transfer tests, transposition, blocking and overshadowing.

#### **32.220 Human Experimental Psychology**

An introduction to the systematic study of human behaviour, emphasising experimental techniques of evaluating theories, and concentrating on topics in perception.

#### **32.225 Special Topic**

Enrolment in this paper, which will be available in 1990 and 1991 only and is intended for students who have passed 32.230 but not yet covered Cognitive Neuroscience, requires specific permission of the Head of Department.

#### **32.230 Brain and Behaviour**

A basic introduction to the structure and function of the brain, with applications to animal and human behaviour.

#### **32.240 Social and Developmental Psychology**

An introduction to the study of social behaviour and change across the lifespan in human behaviour. Half the paper will include such topics as interpersonal

processes, nonverbal behaviour, small group processes, attitude and attitude change, the physical environment, social interaction and intergroup relations. The other half of the paper will be devoted to behaviour changes in infancy, adolescence and adulthood. Socioemotional developments will be emphasised.

### **Stage III Courses**

A pass in 20 Stage III credits, including 32.306 and 12 other Stage III credits from Psychology is necessary for entry to MSc and Honours in Psychology.

#### **32.301 The Psychology of Individual Differences**

A study of individual differences of their measurement, and of the construction and use of psychometric tests.

#### **32.303 Cognitive Science**

Computation-based theories of the mind, including symbol-based and connectionist models. Topics covered include attention, pattern recognition, memory, language and thinking.

*Note:* Prior experience with computers is not necessary.

#### **32.304 Theory and Systems of Personality**

A study of different conceptions of personality with emphasis on their relevance to personal growth, social contexts, and psychotherapy.

#### **†32.305 Physiological Psychology**

An advanced study of the physiological bases of behaviour with emphasis on research methodology.

#### **32.306 The Design of Psychological Experiments**

A course to help students design and analyse experiments in psychology, including topics in the analysis of variance, multiple regression and categorical analysis. An introduction to the use of computers in data analysis through the BMDP and SAS statistical packages.

#### **32.307 The Psychological Analysis of Vision and Hearing**

Aspects of visual perception affecting behaviours in a variety of environments will be discussed. A study of the effects of noise on people and some relations between normal and pathological hearing will also be covered.

#### **32.308 Research Topic**

A research topic undertaken under the supervision of a staff member and written up for presentation instead of a final paper.

#### **32.309 Learning**

A discussion of how behaviour is controlled and modified in animals by consequent reinforcers and punishers. Emphasis is on laboratory research using animals, with some human data also considered. The theoretical approach taken is mainly quantitative.

#### **32.311 Social Psychology**

This course concentrates on social functioning in both intergroup and intragroup settings.

#### **32.312 Organisational Psychology**

An examination of personnel psychology, and the individual and social psychology of work and the development of groups and teams in organisations.

#### **†32.313 Special Topic in Psychology**

#### **32.314 Ergonomics**

An overview of methods of improving human well-being and productivity by optimising person-

machine-environment systems.

#### **32.315 Abnormal Psychology**

This course is concerned with the major problems of children and adults that cause people to seek or receive psychological help. Topics include classification and effects of defining and labelling individuals as 'abnormal', models and practice of service delivery (institutions, community mental health, prevention), and research methods.

#### **32.316 Lifespan Developmental Psychology**

Social and cognitive aspects of human development will be considered in depth, with emphases on both empirical and theoretical approaches.

#### **BSc(Hons) in Psychology**

The Regulations which cover the BSc(Hons) course are listed elsewhere. This course in Psychology is designed to enable students of high ability to complete an Honours degree in four years. Students gaining a good class of BSc(Hons) would be eligible to proceed directly to a PhD degree. Students enrolled for BSc(Hons) in Psychology take not less than 40 credits in Psychology, of which not less than 16 credits must be from Stage III papers and not less than 16 credits must be from Stage IV papers, and which must include paper 32.306 and a thesis 32.603 (worth 4 credits). In addition, students entering the Honours School at the end of the third year after matriculation must take 32.419 in Part IV if they have not passed 32.306. Students who wish to be considered for enrolment should consult the Head of Department of Psychology prior to pre-enrolment or at any time during the preceding year.

#### **Courses for MSc and Honours**

(Four papers and a thesis 32.601 which is equivalent to three papers.)

Students in consultation with the Head of the Department will select their papers from among the following:

#### **\*32.401 History of Psychology**

An historical account of psychology with special reference to the aspirations and activities of influential psychologists.

#### **\*32.402 Quantitative Psychology**

The quantitative analysis of psychological phenomena

#### **32.403 Applied Analysis of Human Behaviour**

An examination of general issues in behaviour analysis, of approaches to psychological assessment, and of the application of behavioural techniques to psychological phenomena.

#### **32.404 Sensation and Perception**

An advanced treatment of modern psychophysics and of the psychology of vision and hearing.

#### **32.406 Physiological Psychology**

A study of current issues in the physiological bases of behaviour.

#### **32.408 Clinical Neuropsychology**

An examination of the relation between the brain and mental functioning with an emphasis on clinical cases of brain damage.

#### **32.409 Abnormal Psychology**

An advanced study of topics within abnormal

psychology including particular disorders, and treatment and prevention methods.

**\*32.410 Neuropsychology**

An advanced treatment of functional models of the human brain and neurolinguistics.

**32.411 Advanced Operant Behaviour**

An advanced study of selected topics in learning at the level of current research.

**32.412 Social Psychology**

An examination of selected research topics in social psychology with a special emphasis on the underlying theories.

**32.413 Contemporary Issues in Developmental Psychology**

An examination of current research on aspects of socioemotional development.

**32.415 Critical Issues in Psychology**

An examination of methodological, metatheoretical and social issues affecting the study and practice of psychology.

**†32.417 Special Topic in Psychology**

Physiological psychology laboratory techniques.

**\*32.418 Special Topic in Psychology**

**32.419 The Design of Psychological Experiments**

A course to help students design and analyse experiments in psychology, including topics in the analysis of variance, multiple regression and categorical analysis. An introduction to the use of computers in data analysis through the BMDP and SAS statistical packages.

Note: Students who have already passed 32.306 are not eligible to take this paper.

**32.420 Research Topic in Psychology**

A research topic undertaken under the supervision of a staff member and written up for presentation instead of a final paper.

**32.421 Theories and Systems of Psychotherapy**

A study of the theoretical bases of various systems of psychotherapy with particular emphasis on problems associated with matching systems to individuals.

**32.422 Learning Disabilities**

This paper provides training in the theory, identification and treatment of learning disabilities. Both developmental and acquired disabilities are covered.

*Prerequisites:* 32.210 and 32.301

*Corequisite:* 32.403

**32.423 Issues in Cognitive Science**

An introduction to cognitive science with a principal focus on cognitive psychology. The paper will discuss both fundamental issues concerning the mind-computer analogy, and also highly practical issues concerning the impact and use of information technology in everyday life.

**32.424 Mind and Brain**

This paper provides an introduction to cognitive neuropsychology. Topics covered will include studies of perception, memory and language from a neuropsychological perspective.

**32.425 Gender Issues in Human Development**

A study of the impact of gender on psychological and social development and functioning, with an emphasis on theories and recent research.

## TUTORING IN SCIENCE

Responsibility for the administration of this paper lies with a committee consisting of the following: the Dean of Science or nominee, two elected members of the Faculty of Science, the Head of the Department of Education or nominee, the Higher Education Research Officer.

**†620.200 Tutoring in Science (4 credits)**

A predominantly practical course in which students learn science tutoring skills in a secondary classroom situation. Five weeks of lectures are given prior to the commencement of the practical component.

## DEPARTMENT OF ZOOLOGY

### Stage I

The first year course for students in Botany, Zoology or Biology comprises three 6-credit papers, Biology 101 (paper 39.101), Botany 102 (paper 06.102) and Zoology 102 (paper 38.102).

**39.101 Central Concepts of Biology**

Biochemical concepts common to animals, micro-organisms and plants; the biochemistry of macromolecules, especially nucleic acids and proteins; enzyme action and catalysis; cellular energetics; genetic principles and mechanisms; cellular differentiation; Histogenesis and pattern formation; fundamental processes of ecosystems; population and community dynamics. This course may be taken as part of the Stage I requirement in either Botany or Zoology, but may not receive credit in both.

**38.102 Animal Evolution and Diversity**

Introductory Zoology: A survey of relationships form and function within the Animal Kingdom, including aspects of development, phylogenetic groupings, elements of anatomy and physiology and their interactions in both vertebrate and invertebrate animals. The course runs in the latter half of the year.

**Biology for Otago Medical Intermediate**

Students are accommodated within existing courses 39.101 and 38.102.

**Advanced Courses**

**38.207 Biometry**

Most branches of biology now require an understanding of the basic principles of statistics: the design and analysis of experiments and field studies. The emphasis is on understanding how the techniques work, computers are used to do the actual calculations. The course is explicitly aimed at non-mathematical students.

**38.250 Behaviour and Ecology**

Patterns and processes in the behaviour and ecology of animals. Learning, communication, and patterns of social and sexual behaviour will be discussed in an evolutionary and practical context. Population patterns and community relationships will be outlined for a wide range of habitats. Principles of population ecology, population genetics, reserve design, and social behaviour are combined as a basis for conservation biology. Where possible New Zealand examples are used as illustration. Practical work will be largely off-campus and will include day field trips.



**38.251 Marine Biology**

The classification, structure and functioning of marine organisms with emphasis on invertebrates, and the occurrence of these within coastal marine communities. The course includes formal laboratories dealing with the morphology, development and lifestyles of representative members of selected phyla, using local examples. In addition, a five-day field course at Whangarei Heads is held during the May or August Study Break, when the patterns of occupancy of invertebrates and algae of rocky and sandy shores will be studied in detail. The course is designed to provide an awareness of the detailed complexity of inshore marine organisms and habitats, as a basis for advanced courses in marine ecology, and as a data base for conservation values for the coastline.

**38.252 Experimental Zoology**

The functional organisation of animals with particular emphasis on morphological, physiological and behavioural adaptations to their environments. Sensory and central mechanisms involved in spatial orientation will be discussed within a control systems framework. The practical course emphasizes lower vertebrate morphology and physiological principles using, wherever possible, invertebrate models. It further provides an introduction to methods and instrumentation of value to experimental biologists.

**38.301 Invertebrate Zoology (for 1991 only)**

The classification structure and functioning of the invertebrates. A wide range of phyla will be considered; less emphasis will be given to land arthropods.

**\*38.303 Biological Timekeeping**

The description, significance and mechanisms of control of temporal patterns of change in behaviour and physiology of organisms covering the tidal, daily and annual time scales. Evidence for the existence of biological clocks and their chemical and physical nature will be examined, together with the ways in which they are synchronised with the environment. The significance of biological timing in human physiology, insect life cycles and the marine environment will be emphasized. The course will develop ideas on the philosophy of modelling timing systems and the computer simulation of biological clocks.

Practical work will consist of formal laboratories covering methods of data collection, analysis of rhythms and the development of models of timing systems. There will also be opportunity for students to perform tests of the internal clock hypothesis on a variety of organisms, and to analyse the patterns of change of environmental factors in the field as they relate to biological timekeeping.

**\*38.305 Arthropods in the Terrestrial Environment**

Evolution and classification of terrestrial arthropods. Adaptations to terrestrial life as well as adaptations to particular habitats, eg forest floors, deserts, mountains, freshwaters. Biology of the fauna associated with New Zealand's native and exotic forests, grasslands, horticulture, agriculture and stored products and the sampling methods used to study these animals. Arthropods as pollinators, parasitoids and vectors. As terrestrial arthropods

constitute close to 75% of all known animal species a thorough understanding of this important group is recommended for all biologists.

**38.310 Animal Morphogenesis**

Aspects of the cellular structure, cellular recognition, behaviour and biochemistry as these relate to developmental processes. Practical work involves the use of both scanning and transmission electron microscopes, acquaintance with electrophoretic and cell culture techniques as well as grafting experiments designed to illustrate general aspects of animal morphogenesis.

**39.311 Freshwater Ecology**

Animal and plant freshwater communities, particularly of lakes and rivers; the physical and chemical environment; physiography of rivers and lakes; hydrology; pollution. Part of the course will consist of a weekend field course in late April and four one-day field trips normally held in the first week of the May vacation (see below for dates).

**39.314 Conservation Ecology**

The application of ecological principles to the management of natural and modified ecosystems: water, forests, fisheries and wildlife. Planning for land and resource management and protection.

**38.315 Evolutionary Genetics**

In this course we review the roles which genes play in the development of biological form. In particular, the interactions between allelic and non-allelic genes, and the importance of the position of alleles in relation to chromosome structure are investigated. The persistence of forms are considered during a review of the current state of studies in population genetics. Particular attention is paid to the problems of speciation, and to aspects of applied biology. Finally we critically examine recent genetical advances and challenges to contemporary neo-Darwinian theory.

**38.316 Biological Oceanography**

Characteristics of marine environments and communities away from the shores. Global ocean patterns and processes. Phytoplankton and primary production. Zooplankton and secondary production. Interrelationships and population biology of plankton, nekton, benthos and fisheries. New Zealand marine science research and knowledge. Practical work includes a residential 5-day class at the Leigh Marine Laboratory, involving sampling and analytical exercises, during the mid-term break (see below for dates).

**38.317 Applied Entomology**

The principles and practice of applied entomology, especially of modern control methods, with reference to New Zealand and South Pacific pest problems. Medical entomology. Practical work includes laboratory study and field work.

**38.318 Advanced Concepts of Animal Behaviour**

The evolution of cultural transmission of behaviour from one generation to the next. Decision making by individual animals, including optimality models of behaviour, foraging, antipredation and spacing behaviour. The philosophy of science as it applies to whole animal behaviour, and cover the development of quantitative models of biological control systems involved in temporal and spatial orientation.

**Practical Requirements:** There are no formal laboratory times for practical work, but students will carry out a project during one of the field courses held in the May vacation, or at times to be arranged during the course.

**\*38.319 Ecological Physiology of Marine Animals**

A consideration of environmental determinants of strategies in osmoregulation, metabolism, neural organisation and reproduction in various groups of marine animals. The emphasis will be on aquatic animals.

Practical work includes a four day class at the Leigh Marine Laboratory in May and one all-day class in the Department, involving acute and acclimatory responses of organisms to environmental factors.

**38.320 Marine Ecology and Aquaculture**

Patterns and processes in the ecology of benthic marine organisms, including invertebrates and demersal fishes. Emphasis is placed upon the quantitative description of patterns in distribution and abundance and experimental techniques used to elucidate the causative processes. The conservation and management of shallow marine systems. The application of ecological principles to the culture of benthic marine organisms is considered. Practical work includes obligatory 4 day field course at Leigh Marine Laboratory during enrolment week (see below for dates).

**Laboratory Work**

One practical class each week for first year courses and two classes each week for advanced courses is the minimum requirement. The practical work will be assessed separately and the marks will be included in the marks schedule of the University. A pass both in the written examination and in the practical work is necessary. (BSc Regulation 7.)

All research students are required to lodge a deposit of \$50 with the Department of Zoology before being granted access to keys in the Department.

**Field Courses in Botany/Biology/Zoology, 1991**

06.250 19-24 May

06.313 26 Feb - 2 Mar

06.361 26-30 August

06.371 19-21 August

39.311 27,28 April and 13-16 May

38.251 13-18 May or 26-31 August

38.316 8-12 July

38.318 21-24 May

38.320 22-26 Feb

**Zoology for MSc and Honours**

Students must enrol for and attend paper 38.400 and two other papers selected from the range 38.401 to 38.412. They must also enrol for a thesis (38.601) which is equivalent to three papers. Not all the papers listed will necessarily be offered each year and a sufficient number of enrolments will be required in each case. At present the department requires a minimum of four enrolments in each paper.

The Zoology MSc course normally requires from fifteen months to two years and is a full time course. It is expected that all papers will be examined at the end of the first year of MSc enrolment. Where a paper is not available in that year it may be taken during the second year at the discretion of the Head of Department. With the approval of the Head of

Department, a Masters paper of equivalent weighting in another subject may be substituted for one of the optional Zoology papers.

All students who propose to undertake the MSc Degree should consult the Head of Department towards the end of the previous year. Thesis work, where approved can begin in the vacation before enrolment.

**38.400 Current Topics in Zoology**

A series of seminars with a cross-disciplinary emphasis which examines controversial aspects of behaviour, evolution, development, ecology and physiology, all within a zoological context.

**†38.401 Evolution**

The basic structure and logical framework of modern evolutionary theories; the ruling paradigm of neo-Darwinism, the nature of species, developmental biology and epigenetics; ways of looking at biology, eg, functionalism versus structuralism.

**†38.403 Chronobiology**

The study of biological clocks: their adaptive significance, location, chemical nature and mathematical models.

**†38.404 Behavioural Ecology and Sociobiology**

Selected topics on the evolution of sociality in animals, including humans.

**†38.405 Entomology and Pest Management**

(a) The functional anatomy and reproductive and life history strategies that make insects so varied and abundant.

(b) Modern views of pest management leading up to a review of integrated strategies.

**†38.406 Antarctic and Southern Oceans Ecosystem and Environment**

The tectonics and paleoclimatology of southern continents, present day ocean circulations and biogeography. Biology of Antarctica and Southern Ocean ecosystems.

**†38.407 Community Ecology**

A series of seminars leading to an understanding of community dynamics as exemplified by succession and island biogeography.

**†38.408 Marine Ecology**

Part of the course is given to a personal reading of recent work on the causes of patterns of abundance, the rest is a formal presentation of selected topics on the study of the pelagos and benthos, separately, and the whole sea as a working system.

**†38.409 Zoophysiology**

Selected topics in comparative physiology.

**†38.410 Morphogenesis**

Recent work on membrane structure, cell adhesion and recognition is considered and related to the overall biochemical and genetical control of morphogenetic systems, particularly to cell positioning and the formation of pattern during development.

**†38.411 Special Topic Prescribed by the Head of Department.**

For 1991: Aquaculture, Biology and Management. Case studies of fish, invertebrate and algal aquaculture industries in New Zealand, assessment of aquaculture opportunities worldwide, review of general environmental and biological problems important to

aquaculture and its management, eg maintenance of water quality, control of parasites, development of hatchery technology. It is intended to use field exercises in support of seminars.

#### **†38.412 Conservation Biology**

The theory and application of conservation for the management of New Zealand's biota. Seminars will include topics such as the philosophical and practical basis for conservation, methodologies for descriptions and analysis of communities at risk and their likely demographic and genetic consequences for small populations.

#### **Postgraduate Research: MSc Thesis and PhD**

Staff and facilities are available for Masters and PhD research in many areas of zoology, environmental biology and the interaction of plants and animals. Although much research is field orientated, of animals in natural and experimental situations, excellent facilities are also available for physiological and

ultrastructural studies.

Research by staff covers such diverse interests as marine ecology, especially of the inshore communities; the behavioural ecology of both terrestrial and aquatic animals, with emphasis on sociality and communication; entomology and pest management; the physiology of nervous and respiratory systems; chronobiology, morphogenesis, ultrastructure and cellular and organ functions.

There runs through all studies the related themes of evolutionary change and adaptation and of systematics and population dynamics. Encouragement is given to an experimental approach based soundly on statistical techniques.

Much of the marine research is done at the Leigh Marine Laboratory; studies of native birds and lizards occur through the Hauraki Gulf Islands.

#### **The McGregor Museum**

The museum is open daily from 10 am until 5 pm.

## DIPLOMA COURSE REGULATIONS AND PRESCRIPTIONS

### DIPLOMA IN CLINICAL PSYCHOLOGY DipClinPsych

*The personal course of study of every candidate must be approved by the Senate. Approval will normally be granted for courses which are in accordance with the following Regulations: for general provisions affecting their courses of study students are referred to the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General), and the Examination Regulations.*

#### General Provisions

1. Subject to the Admission Regulations, a candidate for the Diploma in Clinical Psychology shall at least have satisfied the prerequisites for admission to a Master's Degree in Psychology of this University.
2. Admission to the course of study for the Diploma shall be at the discretion of the Senate on consideration of a recommendation from the Head of the Department of Psychology.
3. A candidate for the Diploma shall follow a course of study of not less than three years by taking courses 32.500 and 32.501 as prescribed for this Diploma, and EITHER
  - (a) concurrently follow a course of study for a Master's Degree in Psychology which shall include papers 32.408 and 32.409 and a thesis 32.601;
  - OR
  - (b) if all or part of the Master's Degree has already been completed, concurrently take those requirements specified in 3 (a) that have not already been completed. If the candidate had already taken a Master's Degree without a thesis, paper 32.420 (Research Topic in Psychology) may be substituted for the thesis.

#### Course Content and Examinations

4. The course of study for the Diploma shall consist of two Parts:
 

**Part I 32.500 (two years)**  
This course comprises seminars in the practice of Psychology, as well as supervised clinical work with clients at the Department of Psychology Clinic and with patients at approved health and mental health institutions, for a minimum of 12 hours per week in the first year and 20 hours per week in the second year. Evaluation will be by internal assessment, and candidates must gain a pass in each year of the course.

**Part II 32.501 (one year)**  
Part II includes a practical component and a final examination, and a candidate must obtain passes in both in order to pass 32.501.  
The practical component comprises supervised clinical work of not less than 1500 hours in an approved mental health setting, and other on-course requirements as described in Regulation 6.  
The final examination comprises written case reports, the assessment of one or more clients, and an oral examination.
5. No candidate shall be permitted to proceed to Part II before completing Part I to the satisfaction of the Head of the Department of Psychology.
6. A candidate shall carry out to the satisfaction of the Head of the Department of Psychology such seminar, clinical, and practical work as may be required.
7. Where a candidate passes the practical component of Part II, but fails the final examination in November, in exceptional circumstances the Head of Department may permit the candidate to sit a Special Examination in the following February. This Special Examination may include one or more of the following: further written case studies; an assessment of a client; an oral examination.
8. A candidate shall be deemed to have completed the requirements for the Diploma upon gaining a pass in courses 32.500 and 32.501 and upon completing the requirements of the Master's Degree.
9. On the recommendation of the Head of Department, and at the discretion of the Senate, a candidate who fails any year of the course may be declined permission to enrol in the course as a whole.
10. These Regulations shall come into force on 1 January 1988.

### PRESCRIPTIONS FOR DipClinPsych DIPLOMA IN CLINICAL PSYCHOLOGY

The course of study for this Diploma is designed to prepare the candidate for professional competence as a clinical psychologist, and to qualify the candidate for registration as a psychologist under the Registration of Psychologists Act.

The minimum duration of the course is three years. No more than eight candidates may be admitted to the course for the first time in any one year. Candidates wishing to enrol should make application to the Programme Co-ordinator before 31 October preceding their first enrolment for the course. Application forms are available from the Department of Psychology.

Candidates wishing to take Part II in the following year should consult the Head of Department at the end of their second year in Part I of this course.

## DIPLOMA IN COMPUTER SCIENCE DipCompSci

*The personal course of study of every candidate must be approved by the Senate. Approval will normally be granted for courses which are in accordance with the following Regulations: for general provisions affecting their courses of study students are referred to the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General), and the Examination Regulations.*

1. Subject to the Admission Regulations, a candidate for the Diploma in Computer Science shall before enrolment for this Diploma:
  - (a) have been admitted or have qualified for admission to a Bachelor's Degree, or hold a professional qualification in Computer Science, or have attained an equivalent level of practical experience in the Computing Profession;
  - (b) have attained, to the Head of Department's approval, a level of technical competence in Computer Science equivalent to the prerequisites for 300 level Computer Science papers.
2. A candidate permitted by the Senate to enrol for the Diploma without having fulfilled all the prerequisite requirements may be required by the Senate to include all or any of the unfulfilled prerequisites as additional papers.
3. A candidate shall complete a coherent course of study approved by the Head of Department of Computer Science subject to the conditions that:
  - (a) the course of study shall comprise papers having a total credit value of at least 24 credits normally selected from papers at 300- level or higher in Computer Science and relevant papers offered by other Departments. For students without a substantial background in Computer Science some 200- level papers may be approved.
  - (b) at least 16 credits of the course shall be at 300- level or higher. At least 12 credits at 300- level or higher must be from Computer Science papers.
4. No candidate may present for this Diploma a paper which is the same or substantially similar in content to any paper the candidate has already passed for any other degree or diploma.
5. These Regulations come into force on 1 January 1986.

## PRESCRIPTIONS FOR DipCompSci DIPLOMA IN COMPUTER SCIENCE

This course of study is designed for graduates in fields other than Computer Science, or candidates with equivalent status, to pursue their specialised interest in developments in the Computer field. The course of study is tailored to fit individual student needs and is made up of papers having a total credit value of 24 credits selected from 200, 300, 400 and 500- level papers in Computer Science, and relevant papers offered by other departments. The course will normally include a Diploma Project of either 4 or 8 credits. Candidates may complete their course in one full year's study or accumulate credits on a part-time basis. Details are available from the Department of Computer Science and the Diploma Course Regulations in this *Calendar* should be consulted.

### 07.501 Diploma Project in Computer Science (a) (4 credits)

A project on a practical aspect of Computer Science relevant to the candidate's interests.

### 07.502 Diploma Project in Computer Science (b) (8 credits)

A project on a practical aspect of Computer Science relevant to the candidate's interests.

## DIPLOMA IN MATHEMATICS EDUCATION DipMathsEd

*The personal course of study of every candidate must be approved by the Senate. Approval will normally be granted for courses which are in accordance with the following Regulations: for general provisions affecting their courses of study students are referred to the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General), and the Examination Regulations.*

### General Provisions

1. Subject to the Admission Regulations, a candidate for the Diploma in Mathematics Education shall before enrolment for this Diploma:
  - (a) have been admitted or have qualified for admission to a Bachelor's Degree, or hold an equivalent professional qualification in teaching, or have attained a high level of practical experience in the teaching profession;
  - (b) be currently teaching or have had three years of teaching experience;
  - (c) have attained a level of competence, to the satisfaction of the Dean of Science, sufficient to enable him or her to perform satisfactorily in each paper chosen for this Diploma.

Note: An interview will normally be required under 1 (c).

2. A candidate shall be required to pursue a course of study consisting of two parts. Each part must be passed separately before a candidate qualifies for admission to this Diploma.

**Part 1:** Five papers selected with the approval of the Dean of Science from the following:

- (a) Papers taught by the Auckland College of Education.

- 625.501 Mathematics in early childhood (ages 0 to 5)
- 625.502 Mathematics in the first three years of school (ages 5 to 8)
- 625.503 Mathematics in Standard 2 to Form 1 (ages 8 to 11)
- 625.504 Mathematics in Form 1 to Form 4 (ages 11 to 14)
- 625.505 Mathematics in Form 4 to Form 6 (ages 14 to 16)
- 625.506 Mathematics in Form 7 and Tertiary Education
- 625.507 Investigative methods of teaching
- 625.508 Bilingual Mathematics

(b) Mathematical content papers.

Any paper approved by the Head of the Department of Mathematics & Statistics, listed in the BSc Schedule, or the Schedule for MSc in Mathematics. The weighting for each such paper is:

Six credits at Stage I are equivalent to one paper.

Four credits at any other Stage are equivalent to one paper.

In addition, the following papers are available for the Diploma:

- 26.512 Independent learning course in Mathematics
- 26.522 School pupil projects in Mathematics
- 26.532 Mathematics for problem solving in Primary School Mathematics
- 26.533 Mathematics for problem solving in Secondary School Mathematics

(c) Education theory papers.

Any paper, approved by the Head of the Department of Education, listed in the BA Schedule. In addition, the following half-papers are available:

- 14.510 History of Mathematics (half paper)
- 14.511 Philosophy of Mathematics (half paper)
- 14.514 Cultural Context of Mathematics Education (half paper)
- 14.515 Assessment and evaluation in Mathematics (half paper)
- 14.516 Mathematics in the curriculum (half paper)
- 14.517 Children's development of Mathematical concepts (half paper)

**Part II:** 14.520 Investigation in Mathematics Education (two papers).

- (i) The investigation shall relate directly to some aspect of the practice of Mathematics Education from a topic developed from papers taken in Part I.
- (ii) The topic must be approved by the Dean of Science through the Head of the Department of Education.
- (iii) Must be supervised by a course lecturer approved by the Head of the Department of Education.

**Note:** Where necessary, candidates may be directed to undertake appropriate preparation in research methodology.

3. A candidate must pass at least four papers from Part I before commencing Part II. Part I may be undertaken either full-time in one year, or part-time for such period as the Dean of Science may permit. The project will normally be submitted within one year of its commencement, although in exceptional circumstances, projects lasting over more than one year may be approved.
4. The candidate may not take a paper if the material has been covered in obtaining a previous qualification.
5. These Regulations shall come into force on 1 January 1989.
6. A candidate who has been enrolled for the Diploma of Mathematical Education under the Regulations holding in 1988 may complete that Diploma, up to 31 January 1992, under those Regulations or with such substitutions as the Dean of Science may permit.

## **PRESCRIPTIONS FOR DipMathsEd**

### **DIPLOMA IN MATHEMATICS EDUCATION**

This Diploma is administered by a committee, consisting of the Dean of Science, the Heads of the Departments of Education and Mathematics & Statistics (or their nominees), and two representatives from the Auckland College of Education. In the first instance, candidates should apply to the Head of the Department of Education. A DipMathsEd is appropriate for teachers from Early Childhood to Tertiary. It is flexible enough to allow candidates to concentrate on Education or Mathematics. Each candidate's course must be approved by the administering committee, which will take into account the candidate's background.

Papers for Part I are divided into three schedules, and candidates will normally take one to three papers from each schedule.

Candidates may study for one year fulltime to complete these papers, but, if studying part-time, will typically take two or three papers per year and embark on the project in their third or fourth year. The investigation will typically be completed in the year after completion of the Part I papers, during the candidate's normal employment.

#### **(a) Papers Taught by the Auckland College of Education**

The prerequisite for any paper in this schedule is that the candidate can demonstrate mastery of the mathematical content at the relevant level.

- 625.501 Mathematics in Early Childhood (Ages 0 to 5)
- 625.502 Mathematics in the First Three Years of School (Ages 5 to 8)
- 625.503 Mathematics in Standard 2 to Form 1 (Ages 8 to 11)
- 625.504 Mathematics in Form 1 to Form 4 (Ages 11 to 14)

**625.505 Mathematics in Form 4 to Form 6 (Ages 14 to 16)****625.506 Mathematics in Form 7 and Tertiary Education****625.507 Investigative Methods of Teaching****625.508 Bilingual Mathematics**

These are classroom-oriented papers. All papers incorporate examination of the syllabus, including the rationale and relevance of the content, critical inspection of teaching materials, issues in Mathematics Education such as equity, diagnostic and interactive teaching, use of technology in Mathematics Education, testing and evaluation in the classroom, children with special needs, emphasis on practical classroom tasks and reflective behaviour.

**(b) Mathematical Content Papers**

The papers chosen from the BSc Schedule will normally be in the subjects Pure Mathematics, Applied Mathematics or Computer Science.

**26.512 Independent Learning Course in Mathematics**

Students who need to increase their mathematical skills will be required to take this paper.

**26.522 School Pupil Projects in Mathematics**

This course concentrates on the seventh form Project in mathematics.

**26.532 Mathematics for Problem Solving in Primary School Mathematics**

This course is intended to give Primary School teachers a firm understanding of the mathematical concepts introduced at this level.

**26.533 Mathematics for Problem Solving in Secondary School Mathematics**

This course is intended to give Secondary School teachers a firm understanding of the mathematical concepts introduced at this level.

**(c) Education Theory Papers**

The papers chosen from the BA Schedule will normally be in the Department of Education.

**14.510 History of Mathematics (half paper)**

Studies of topics in the historical development of mathematics, which facilitate understanding of modern mathematics.

**14.511 Philosophy of Mathematics (half paper)**

An introduction to philosophical problems surrounding pure mathematics, its application and foundations.

**14.514 Cultural Context of Mathematics Education (half paper)**

This paper deals with the social context in which mathematical skills are both learned and used, primarily outside school.

**14.515 Assessment and Evaluation in Mathematics (half paper)**

A consideration of (1) the purposes and methods of assessment in school mathematics and (2) the principles and procedures of mathematics curriculum evaluation.

**14.516 Mathematics in the Curriculum (half paper)**

Introduction to the principles underpinning the design of mathematics curricula together with a consideration of the role of mathematics within the primary and secondary school curriculum.

**14.517 Children's Development of Mathematical Concepts (half paper)**

Research relating to the mathematical concepts of average, advanced and slow learning children will be examined with a view to its implications for teachers.

## DIPLOMA IN SCIENCE DipSci

*The personal course of study of every candidate must be approved by the Senate. Approval will normally be granted for courses which are in accordance with the following Regulations: for general provisions affecting their courses of study students are referred to the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General), and the Examination Regulations.*

1. Subject to the Admission Regulations, a candidate for this Diploma shall before enrolment have been admitted or have qualified for admission to the Degree of Bachelor of Science or shall have attained a qualification approved by the Senate as equivalent to that qualifying degree.
2. The course of study for this Diploma shall consist of at least one year's full-time study or its equivalent. Unless otherwise approved by the Senate, a candidate shall complete the requirements within two years of first enrolling for the Diploma.
3. A candidate will be required to follow a coherent course of study which shall consist of at least 24 credits above Stage I, of which at least 16 must be at 300-level or higher. Unless otherwise recommended by the relevant Head(s) of Department(s) and approved by the Senate a candidate must substitute a Research Project (99.525) for 6 of the 300-level credits.
4. The course of study for each candidate will require the specific approval of the relevant Head(s) of Department and the Dean of Science.
5. No candidate shall be credited for this Diploma with any paper which is the same or substantially similar in content to any paper already passed for any other degree or diploma.
6. The Senate may, in such exceptional cases as it thinks fit, approve a personal course of study which does not conform to the foregoing Regulations.
7. These Regulations shall come into force on 1 January 1991.

## DIPLOMA IN STATISTICS DipStats

*The personal course of study of every candidate must be approved by the Senate. Approval will normally be granted for courses which are in accordance with the following Regulations: for general provisions affecting their courses of study students are referred to the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General), and the Examination Regulations.*

1. Subject to the Admission Regulations, a candidate for the Diploma in Statistics shall before enrolment for this Diploma have been admitted or have qualified for admission to a Bachelor's Degree or have satisfied Regulation 2 for the Degree of Master or Arts or Regulation 2 for the Degree of Master of Science and shall:
  - (a) have passed in the following Mathematics courses (as prescribed for the Degree of BSc):
    - (i) papers 26.220 or 221 or 222 and 240 or 241 and (ii) paper 26.280 or 26.281, or such other paper as may be approved by the Head of the Statistics Unit; or
    - (b) have reached an equivalent level of attainment to the approval of the Senate.
2. A candidate for this Diploma shall follow a course of study for one year full-time or two years part-time or for such longer periods (either full or part-time) as the Senate on the recommendation of the Head of the Department of Mathematics and Statistics may require or permit.
3. (a). A candidate shall complete a course of study approved by the Head of the Department of Mathematics and Statistics on the recommendation of the Head of the Statistics Unit, consisting of papers having a total credit value of 20 credits selected from 200, 300, 400 or 500 level papers in Mathematics and Statistics and papers related to statistics and operations research above Stage I level in other subjects; together with a project, 26.580, which counts as four credits. At least 12 of the 20 credits must be selected from papers in probability or statistics offered by the Department of Mathematics and Statistics. No more than eight credits at the 200 level can be credited to the Diploma.
  - (b). A candidate who has no knowledge of computing shall be required to attend an appropriate course in computer programming.
4. A candidate shall deliver the project required in Regulation 3 (a) to the Registrar by not later than 1 November in the year following the year of first enrolment, or by such later date as the Senate may in exceptional circumstances permit.
5. No candidate may present for this Diploma a paper which is the same or substantially similar in content to any paper he has already passed for any other degree or diploma.
6. These Regulations shall come into force on 1 January 1974.

## PRESCRIPTIONS FOR DipStats

### DIPLOMA IN STATISTICS

This Diploma is available to students who have completed or almost completed a Bachelor's Degree, and have obtained passes in Mathematics papers 26.220 and 26.240, or their equivalents; and have a satisfactory background in Statistics (eg, a pass in 26.280 or 26.281). The course of study is tailored to fit individual student needs and is made up of papers having a total credit value of 20 credits selected from 200, 300, 400 or 500 level papers in Mathematics and Statistics and statistically oriented papers above Stage I level in other subjects; together with a project, 26.580. Candidates may complete the course of one year's full-time study or else spend two or more years on a part-time basis. Details are available from the Department of Mathematics and Statistics and the Diploma Course Regulations in this *Calendar* should be consulted. The 500 level papers are listed below together with their credit values:

**28.580 Project in Statistics (4)**

**26.581 Topics in Statistics (2)**

**26.582 Special Topics in Statistics (4)**

**26.583 Further Topics in Statistics (4)**

## POSTGRADUATE DIPLOMA IN SCIENCE PGDipSci

*The personal course of study of every candidate must be approved by the Senate. Approval will normally be granted for courses which are in accordance with the following Regulations: for general provisions affecting their courses of study students are referred to the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General), and the Examination Regulations.*

1. Subject to the Admission Regulations, a candidate for this Diploma shall before enrolment have been admitted or have qualified for admission to either the Degree of Bachelor of Science (Honours), of the degree of Bachelor of Science or another comparable qualification approved by the Senate.
2. The course of study for this Diploma shall consist of at least one year's full-time study or its equivalent. Unless otherwise approved by the Senate, a candidate shall complete the requirements within two years of first enrolling for the Diploma.
3. A candidate will be required to follow a coherent course of study, recommended by the relevant Head(s) of Department and approved by the Senate, which shall consist of either (a) at least four papers at 400-level or



higher or (b) at least three papers at 400-level or higher and a research project (99.575) which is equivalent to one paper or (c) a programme equivalent to that required for Part IV of the Degree of Bachelor of Science (Honours).

4. Upon the recommendation of the relevant Heads of Department, and with the approval of the Dean of Science, Masters level papers in another Faculty may be substituted for 50% of the course.
  5. The course of study for each candidate will require the specific approval of the relevant Head(s) of Department and the Dean of Science.
  6. No candidate shall be credited for this Diploma with any paper which is the same or substantially similar in content to any paper already passed for any other degree or diploma.
  7. At the Senate's discretion this Diploma may be awarded with Distinction.
  8. The Senate may, in such exceptional cases as it thinks fit, approve a personal course of study which does not conform to the foregoing Regulations.
  7. These Regulations shall come into force on 1 January 1991.
- 

## CERTIFICATE REGULATIONS

---

### CERTIFICATE IN THE PRINCIPLES AND PRACTICE OF RADIOCHEMISTRY

#### **08.350 Elementary Certificate in the Principles and Practice of Radiochemistry**

The course for this Certificate involves ten lectures and ten laboratory classes each of three hours' duration. The course will run concurrently with the first ten lectures and laboratory sessions of 08.352, or by arrangement.

*Examinations:* Candidates will be assessed on their practical work together with a written test.

*Prerequisites:* 08.210 or 08.220 or 08.230 or 08.260 but students having need of radiochemical techniques may be admitted to the Certificate Course without having passed the prerequisite upon obtaining the approval of the Head of the Chemistry Department. A knowledge of Physics to Bursary level will be assumed.

# Faculty of Commerce

## Contents

---

|                                  |     |   |
|----------------------------------|-----|---|
| <b>Degree Course Regulations</b> | 263 | Degree of Bachelor of Commerce              |
|                                  | 266 | Schedule for Bachelor of Commerce           |
|                                  | 272 | Degree of Master of Commerce                |
|                                  | 274 | Degree of Master of Business Administration |
|                                  | 276 | Degree of Master of Taxation Studies        |

---

|                                    |     |  |
|------------------------------------|-----|--|
| <b>Degree Course Prescriptions</b> | 277 | Quantitative Studies                                     |
|                                    | 277 | Department of Accounting and Finance                     |
|                                    | 278 | Department of Commercial Law                             |
|                                    | 279 | Department of Computer Science                           |
|                                    | 279 | Department of Economics                                  |
|                                    | 280 | Department of Management Science and Information Systems |
|                                    | 281 | Department of Management Studies and Labour Relations    |
|                                    | 282 | Department of Marketing and International Business       |
|                                    | 283 | Department of Mathematics and Statistics                 |
|                                    | 283 | Master of Business Administration                        |
|                                    | 283 | Master of Taxation Studies                               |
|                                    | 284 | NZ Society of Accountants Professional Examinations      |

---

|   |     |                     |
|---|-----|---------------------|
| <b>Diploma Course Regulations and Prescriptions</b> | 284 | Diploma in Business |
|   | 286 | Diploma in Commerce |

## DEGREE COURSE REGULATIONS

### THE DEGREE OF BACHELOR OF COMMERCE BCom

*The personal course of study of every candidate must be approved by the Senate. Approval will normally be granted for courses which are in accordance with the following Regulations: for general provisions affecting their courses of study students are referred to the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General), and the Examination Regulations.*

#### Admission

1. (a). Admission to a course of study in Commerce shall be at the discretion of the Senate. Application for admission shall be made to the Registrar in writing before the dates set out in the pre-enrolment regulations.
- (b). Admission shall be granted or withheld upon a consideration of the past performance of the applicant at school and in university and public examinations, and upon an interview where this is required.

#### Minimum Time for Degree

2. Subject to the Admission Ad Eundem Statum Regulations, a candidate for the Degree of Bachelor of Commerce shall follow a course of study of not fewer than three years.

#### Definition of a Paper

3. In these Regulations a paper means an examinable part of one year's work in a subject. Papers are classified in three Stages I, II, III, prescribed for this Degree in the Schedule to these Regulations.

#### Course Content

4. Every candidate's course of study for this Degree:
  - (a) shall comply with the requirements specified below for Part I and Part II;
  - (b) shall comply with the requirements specified in the Schedule to these Regulations.

#### Part I

5. Except where provided elsewhere in these Regulations, for Part I a candidate shall be required:

(a) to pass in two papers selected with the approval of the Senate from:

Quantitative Analysis A 290.100, Quantitative Analysis B 290.101

Mathematics, Applied 26.180, 26.181

Mathematics, Pure 26.101, 26.120, 26.121, 26.122, 26.140, 26.141, 26.142

One of Management Science and Information Systems 74.100, Computer Science 07.100 or 07.111

(b) to pass the following papers:

Accounting and Finance 01.100, 01.101;

Commercial Law 02.100 or 02.204;

Economics 13.100, 13.101;

Management Studies and Labour Relations 72.101.

#### Order of Presenting Course

(c) before taking any other paper for Part I of this Degree, to pass or enrol concurrently in the papers in paragraph (a) of this Regulation;

(d) to pass or enrol concurrently in the papers in paragraph (b) of this regulation before taking any further papers for this degree: provided that

(i) a candidate who has passed or enrolled concurrently in a least four of the papers required by paragraph (b) of this Regulation may enrol in one or two other papers for Part II of this degree;

(2) the Senate may waive the requirements of paragraph (c) or paragraph (d) of this Regulation for a candidate:

(i) who has been admitted or qualified for admission to a degree of this University; or

(ii) enrolled under Regulation 13(1) of these Regulations, conjointly for this Degree and the Degree of Bachelor of Arts or the Degree of Bachelor of Science; or

(iii) enrolled under Regulation 12(1) of these Regulations conjointly for this Degree and the Degree of Bachelor of Laws.

#### Part II

6. (a). Except as provided elsewhere in these Regulations, for Part II a candidate shall be required to pass no fewer than thirteen papers at any stage, including no fewer than three Stage III papers selected from the subjects Accounting, Economics, Management Science and Information Systems, Management Studies and Labour Relations, and Marketing and International Business, provided that one of the Stage III papers may be a Stage III paper in Commercial Law selected with the approval of Senate.

(b). A candidate may include as one, two, three or four papers for this Degree one, two, three or four papers not already passed for this Degree from any subject prescribed for any other degree of this University; provided that (i) for Science papers to be available for credit under this clause each such Science paper must carry a minimum of four credits in the Schedule to the Regulations for the Degree of BSc, and (ii) for the purpose of this Regulation, Science papers carrying lesser credit may be aggregated with other Science papers from the same stage of the same subject.

#### Maximum Course Load

7. Except with the permission of the Senate no candidate shall take in any one year more than eight papers for this Degree.

**Direct Entry**

8. (a). Notwithstanding anything in Regulations 4, 5 and 6 of these Regulations a candidate may with the leave of the Senate take Stage II papers of any subject to which this Regulation applies without having passed Stage I. A candidate who passes a Stage II paper in a subject shall not be credited with any prerequisite Stage I paper of that subject. If the examiner certifies that the candidate though failing a Stage II paper attained the standard of a pass in a Stage I paper the candidate shall be credited with a pass in a Stage I paper of that subject.
- (b). This Regulation applies to the following subjects:  
Accounting  
Economics  
Mathematics.

**Credits**

9. (1). (a) A candidate who has passed for another degree of this University two Stage II level papers in Pure Mathematics or equivalent and has passed two papers 13.200 and 13.201 of Economics shall be credited with papers 13.100 and 13.101 of Economics.
- (b) A candidate who, for the Degree of Bachelor of Engineering, has passed Engineering Mathematics I and Engineering Mathematics II shall be credited with two unspecified papers in Stage II Mathematics. Provided that the total credits granted to a candidate under paragraphs (a) and (b) of this clause of this Regulation and Regulation 11 of the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General) shall not exceed eight.
- (2). A candidate who, for the Degree of Bachelor of Engineering, has been exempted from the Intermediate Examination shall be exempted without credit from the two papers required by Regulation 5 (a).
10. A candidate for this Degree who abandoned another course of study and passed in a paper listed in the Schedule to these Regulations without receiving credit for that paper for any degree or diploma, may be credited with that paper for this Degree.

**Concessions**

11. (1). (a) A candidate for BCom, BCom/BA, BCom/BSc or BCom/LLB who has gained a University Bursary or Entrance Scholarship may be permitted by the Senate to substitute one or more papers for one or more of the Stage I papers in Accounting, Economics, Applied Mathematics and Pure Mathematics prescribed for Part I in Regulation 5 (a).
- (b) Each Part I paper for which substitution is permitted must relate to a subject or subjects of the University Bursaries Examination or the Entrance Scholarship Examination in which he or she attained a standard of achievement approved by the Senate.
- (2). Notwithstanding anything elsewhere in these Regulations a candidate who has completed the Professional Examination in Accountancy may be admitted by the Senate to the course for this Degree with credit for Accounting 01.100, 01.101, 01.200, 01.202, Commercial Law 02.100, 02.200, and two papers as required by Regulation 5 (a).
- (3). Notwithstanding anything elsewhere in these Regulations a candidate who has passed with merit in at least six subjects of the Professional Examination in Accountancy, may be admitted by the Senate to the course for this Degree with credit for up to six papers as determined by the Senate.
- (4). Notwithstanding anything elsewhere in these Regulations a candidate who has qualified with merit for the New Zealand Certificate of Commerce may be admitted by the Senate to the course for this degree with credit for Accounting 01.100, 01.101, Commercial Law 02.100 and two other unspecified papers.
- (5). Notwithstanding anything elsewhere in these Regulations a candidate who has qualified at a standard acceptable to the Senate for the National Certificate in Business may be admitted by the Senate to the course for this Degree with credit for up to seven 100 level papers as determined by the Senate.
- (6). Notwithstanding anything elsewhere in these Regulations a candidate who has qualified for the Diploma in Business and Industrial Administration may be admitted by the Senate to the course for this Degree with credit for Accounting 01.100, 01.101, Commercial Law 02.100, Management Science and Information Systems 74.100, Management Studies and Labour Relations 72.101, Marketing and International Business 71.200 and one other unspecified paper.

**BCom/LLB, BCom/LLB(Hons)**

12. (1). With the permission of Senate a candidate may be admitted to a conjoint course of study for this Degree and the Degree of Bachelor of Laws or Bachelor of Laws (Honours) (in this Regulation called 'a conjoint course').
- (2). A candidate taking a conjoint course shall obtain the permission of Senate to re-enrol for it in each year after admission to the conjoint course.
- (3). A candidate who has taken a conjoint course and who:
- (a) for this Degree or for the Degree of Bachelor of Laws or Bachelor of Laws (Honours), has passed the following papers:
- two papers selected with the approval of the Senate from:  
Quantitative Analysis A 290.100, Quantitative Analysis B 290.101,  
Mathematics, Applied, 26.180, 26.181  
Mathematics, Pure, 26.101, 26.120, 26.121, 26.122, 26.140, 26.141, 26.142  
One of Management Science and Informations Systems 74.100, Computer Science, 07.100, or 07.111
  - Accounting and Finance 01.100, 01.101;
  - Economics 13.100, 13.101;
  - Management Studies and Labour Relations 72.101;

- (b) for the Degree of Bachelor of Laws or Bachelor of Laws (Honours) has passed:
- (v) Legal System, 25.103;
  - (vi) Law of Contract, 25.105;
  - (vii) Commercial Law, 25.204 ;
  - (viii) Company Law and Partnership, 25.208;
  - (ix) two or more papers having in aggregate at least four hours of instruction per week selected with the approval of Senate from Intellectual Property, 25.209;
  - Industrial Law, 25.212;
  - Income Tax, 25.221;
  - Competition Law, 25.228;
  - Company Finance, 25.309;
  - Creditors Remedies, 25.312;
  - International Trade, 25.315;
  - Other papers related to the study of Commerce as prescribed for the Degree of Bachelor of Laws or of Bachelor of Laws (Honours);
  - Other papers in Stage III Commercial Law as prescribed for this Degree;
- (c) for this Degree has in addition passed no fewer than eight Stage II or Stage III papers selected from those specifically listed in the Schedule in the subjects Accounting and Finance, Computer Science, Economics, Management Science and Information Systems, Management Studies and Labour Relations, Marketing and International Business and Mathematics and Statistics, including no fewer than three Stage III papers from the subjects Accounting and Finance, Economics, Management Science and Information Systems, Management Studies and Labour Relations and Marketing and International Business;
- (d) has completed the requirements for either the Degree of Bachelor of Laws or of Bachelor of Laws (Honours), shall be deemed to have satisfied the requirements for this Degree.
- (4). The papers so credited to this Degree under this Regulation shall be admitted as cross-credits, exemptions, or additional cross-credits as the case may be.

#### **BCom/BA, BCom/BSc**

13. (1). With the permission of Senate a candidate whose academic record is of a sufficiently high standard may be admitted to the conjoint course for this Degree and the Degree either of BA or BSc (in this Regulation called a 'conjoint course').
- (2). A candidate taking a conjoint course shall obtain the permission of Senate to re-enrol for it in each year after admission to the conjoint course.
- (3). A candidate who has taken a conjoint course and who:
- (a) for Part I of this Degree has passed the eight papers prescribed in Regulation 5;
  - (b) for Part II of this Degree has passed no fewer than eight Stage II or Stage III papers selected from those specifically listed in the Schedule, in the subjects Accounting and Finance, Commercial Law, Economics, Management Science and Information Systems, Management Studies and Labour Relations, and Marketing and International Business including no fewer than three Stage III papers selected from the subjects Accounting and Finance, Economics, Management Science and Information Systems, Management Studies and Labour Relations, and Marketing and International Business, provided that one of the Stage III papers may be a Stage III paper in Commercial Law selected with the approval of Senate;
  - (c) has completed the requirements for either the Degree of Bachelor of Arts or the Degree of Bachelor of Science, shall be deemed to have satisfied the requirements for this Degree.
  - (4). The papers so credited to this Degree under this Regulation shall be admitted as cross-credits, exemptions, or additional cross-credits as the case may be.

#### **Elective Papers**

14. Except as provided in Regulation 6 (b), a candidate wishing to take for this Degree any unit, course or paper which is also prescribed for any other degree, shall comply with such of the Regulations for each of those degrees as apply to that unit, course or paper.

#### **Restrictions**

15. No candidate shall take a subject, unit or paper the same as or substantially equivalent to any other subject, unit or paper, and obtain credit for both for this Degree.

#### **Savings and Transitional Provisions**

16. (1). Except as otherwise provided in this Regulation the course of study of every candidate shall be governed by these Regulations.
- (2). A candidate who passed under any of the former Regulations for this Degree in any unit of which the papers are also papers under these Regulations shall be credited with passes in those papers under these Regulations provided that the Senate is satisfied that the prescription in any such paper is at least the equivalent of that prescribed under these Regulations.
- (3). The Senate may, in such exceptional cases as it thinks fit, approve a personal course of study which does not conform to the foregoing Regulations.
17. These Regulations shall come into force on 1 January, 1990.

#### **Schedule**

1. This Schedule sets out paper numbers, prerequisites, corequisites, restrictions and other conditions applying

- to papers for the Degree of Bachelor of Commerce.
- The Schedule shall be read with the Regulations for the Degree and with the prescriptions set out elsewhere in the *Calendar*.
  - The heading 'prerequisites' in relation to a paper refers to other papers which must be passed before the candidate may take that paper.
  - The heading 'corequisites' in relation to a paper refers to other papers which must be taken concurrently with that paper or have been passed in a previous year.
  - The heading 'restrictions' in relation to a paper refers to a paper which cannot be taken in addition to that paper.
  - A candidate may not take a further stage of a subject until he satisfies all prerequisite and corequisite requirements for that stage of the subject.
  - Where a prerequisite has been waived by the Head of Department and reimposed as a corequisite, the paper or papers as to which the corequisite is imposed may not be credited as a pass for the candidate's course of study unless or until that corequisite has been passed.

### SCHEDULE

| Title of Paper  | Prerequisites                     | Corequisites | Restrictions  | Qualifications  |
|---|-----------------------------------|--------------|---|---|
| <b>QUANTITATIVE STUDIES</b>                                     |                                   |              |   |   |
| 290.100 Quantitative Analysis A                                 |                                   |              | 13.105 and all<br>Stage I Pure<br>Mathematics<br>Papers |   |
| 290.101 Quantitative Analysis B                                 |                                   |              | 13.102, 26.180,<br>26.181, 26.182                       |   |
| <b>ACCOUNTING AND FINANCE</b>                                   |                                   |              |   |   |
| <b>Accounting and Finance - Stage I</b>                         |                                   |              |   |   |
| 01.100 Accounting (a)   |                                   | 01.101       | 01.102  |   |
| 01.101 Accounting (b)   |                                   | 01.100       | 01.103  |   |
| <b>Accounting and Finance - Stage II</b>                        |                                   |              |   |   |
| 01.200 Financial Accounting                                     | 01.100                            |              |   | The Head of Department may waive the pre-requisites for candidates with sufficient knowledge (including candidates with a good pass as in 01.102 & 01.103 prescribed for BA, etc) |
| 01.201 Accounting for Special Entities                          | 01.100                            |              |   |   |
| 01.202 Cost & Management Accounting                             | 01.101 or 01.102, 01.103          |              |   |   |
| 01.203 Accounting Information Systems                           | 01.101; 74.100 or 07.100          |              |   |   |
| † 01.204 Accounting & Financial Management Issues in Government | 01.100, 01.101                    |              |   |   |
| 01.205 Financial Management                                     | 01.100, 01.101; or 01.102, 01.103 |              |   |   |
| 01.206 Introduction to Investments                              | 01.100, 01.101                    | 01.200       | 01.303  |   |
| <b>Accounting and Finance - Stage III</b>                       |                                   |              |   |   |
| 01.300 Financial Accounting                                     | 01.200                            |              |   | For 1991 and no subsequent year, students may enrol in 01.301 and 01.203 concurrently.  |
| 01.301 Auditing   | 01.200, 01.203                    |              |   |   |
| 01.302 Cost & Management Accounting                             |                                   |              |   |   |
| 01.306 Advanced Financial Management                            | 01.205                            |              |   |   |
| 01.307 Modern Investment Theory & Management                    | 01.206                            |              | 01.303  |   |
| 01.308 Risk & Insurance   | 01.206                            |              | 01.303  |   |
| 01.314 Special Topic in Accounting                              |                                   |              |   |   |
| 01.315 Special Topic in Finance                                 |                                   |              |   |   |

| Title of Paper                      |   | Prerequisites  | Corequisites                            | Restrictions              | Qualifications  |
|-------------------------------------|---|--|---|---------------------------|---|
| <b>COMMERCIAL LAW</b>               |   |  |   |                           |   |
| <b>Commercial Law - Stage I</b>     |   |  |   |                           |   |
| 02.100                              | Introduction to Law                         |  |   | 25.103                    |   |
| <b>Commercial Law - Stage II</b>    |   |  |   |                           |   |
| 02.200                              | Contracts and Restitution                   | 02.100   |   |                           | A pass in 25.103 and a concurrent enrolment in 02.204 will serve as a substitute for 02.100 as a prerequisite for Stage II Commercial Law |
| 02.201                              | Credit & Security,                          | 02.100   | 02.200                                  |                           |   |
| 02.202                              | Law of Business Organisations               | 02.100   | 02.200                                  | 02.300                    |   |
| 02.203                              | Labour Law                                  | 02.100   |   |                           |   |
| 02.204                              | Legal Environment of Business               | 25.103   |   | 02.100                    |   |
| 02.205                              | Law of Marketing and Information Technology | 02.100   |   | 02.304                    |   |
| <b>Commercial Law - Stage III</b>   |   |  |   |                           |   |
| 02.301                              | Taxation and Estate Planning                | 02.202   |   |                           |   |
| † 02.303                            | Corporate Rescue and Insolvency             | 02.202, 01.200   |   |                           |   |
| 02.305                              | Investment Law                              | 02.201 or 02.202   |   |                           |   |
| * 02.306                            | Competition Law                             | 02.202   |   |                           |   |
| † 02.307                            | International Trade Law                     | 02.200 or 02.201   |   |                           |   |
| 02.308                              | Banking Law                                 | 02.201   |   |                           |   |
| 02.320                              | Special Topic in Commercial Law             |  |   |                           |   |
| 02.321                              | Special Topic in Commercial Law             |  |   |                           |   |
| <b>COMPUTER SCIENCE</b>             |   |  |   |                           |   |
| <b>Computer Science - Stage I</b>   |   |  |   |                           |   |
| 07.100                              | Introduction to Computing(a)                |  |   | 07.101, 07.111<br>72.100  |   |
| 07.105                              | Introduction to Computing(b)                |  | 07.100 or<br>(07.111 as a prerequisite) |                           |   |
| 07.111                              | Elements of Computing                       |  |   | 07.100,<br>07.101, 72.100 |   |
| <b>Computer Science - Stage II</b>  |   |  |   |                           |   |
| 07.211                              | Computer Systems                            | 07.100 or 07.111   |   | 07.210                    |   |
| 07.221                              | Data Structure and Algorithms               | 07.100 (or 07.111) and<br>07.105 and 26.120 (or 26.121<br>or 26.122) |   | 07.220                    |   |
| 07.230                              | Computer Applications                       | 07.100 (or 07.111) and 07.105  |   |                           |   |
| <b>Computer Science - Stage III</b> |   |  |   |                           |   |
| 07.301                              | Topic in Computer Science (a)               | Permission from<br>Head of Department                                |   |                           | 07.301, 07.302 and 07.303 are 2 credit papers and must be aggregated to 4 credits before they can be credited as one paper for BCom.      |
| 07.302                              | Topic in Computer Science (b)               | Permission from<br>Head of Department                                |   |                           |   |
| 07.303                              | Topic in Computer Science (c)               | Permission from<br>Head of Department                                |   |                           |   |
| 07.304                              | Topic in Computer Science (d)               | Permission from<br>Head of Department                                |   |                           |   |
| 07.305                              | Topic in Computer Science (e)               | Permission from<br>Head of Department                                |   |                           |   |
| 07.306                              | Topic in Computer Science (f)               | Permission from<br>Head of Department                                |   |                           |   |
| 07.310                              | Advanced Computer Organisation              | 07.210, 07.230   |   |                           |   |
| 07.315                              | Computer Graphics & Image Processing        | 07.220, 07.230;<br>26.120, 121 or 122                                |   | 07.302<br>(before 1989)   |   |
| 07.330                              | Language Implementation                     | 07.210, 07.220,<br>07.230  |   | 07.305 in 1984            |   |

| Title of Paper   | Prerequisites               | Corequisites | Restrictions      | Qualifications  |
|--|-----------------------------|--------------|-------------------|---|
| 07.340 Operating Systems                                 | 07.210, 07.230              |              |                   |   |
| 07.351 Formal Languages<br>Automata and<br>Computability | 07.100, 26.220<br>or 26.221 |              | 07.250,<br>07.350 |   |
| 07.352 Design and Analysis of<br>Algorithms              | 07.220,<br>07.230           |              | 07.250,<br>07.350 |   |
| 07.361 Functional and Logic<br>Programming               | 07.220, 07.230              |              | 07.360            |   |
| 07.362 Introduction to Artificial<br>Intelligence        | 07.220, 07.230              | 07.361       | 07.360            | 07.361 and 07.362<br>are 2 credit papers<br>and must be<br>aggregated to<br>4 credits before they<br>can be credited as<br>one paper for BCom |

## ECONOMICS

### Economics - Stage I

|                       |  |        |        |  |
|-----------------------|--|--------|--------|--|
| 13.100 Microeconomics |  | 13.101 | 13.103 | The corequisite for<br>13.101 is unlikely to<br>be waived. |
| 13.101 Macroeconomics |  | 13.100 | 13.103 |  |

**Note:** Students advancing in economic theory and econometrics require an adequate mathematical background and are advised to take both of the Quantitative Studies papers (290.100 and 290.101) or equivalent papers in mathematics: (26.120 or 26.121) and (26.140 or 26.141) and (26.180 or 26.181). It is likely that for 1992 the Stage II papers 13.200, 13.201 and 13.205 will require these mathematics papers as pre-requisites.

### Economics Stage II

|  |   |  |        |   |
|--|---|--|--------|---|
| 13.200 Microeconomics                                | 13.100 and 13.101   |  | 13.203 |   |
| 13.201 Macroeconomics                                | 13.100 and 13.101   |  |        |   |
| 13.203 Managerial Economics                          | 13.100 and 13.101   |  | 13.200 |   |
| * 13.204 New Zealand<br>Public Economics             | 13.100 and 13.101   |  |        | Students who passed<br>13.103 and 13.104<br>with at least a B-<br>average prior to 1987<br>can proceed to any<br>Economics II papers<br>other than 13.205, for<br>which a statistical<br>prerequisite is also<br>needed |
| 13.205 Introduction to<br>Econometrics               | 13.100 and 13.101,<br>plus one of 290.101,<br>13.102, 26.180 or<br>26.181 |  |        |   |
| 13.210 Industrialisation and<br>Economic Development | 13.100 and 13.101   |  |        |   |
| 13.211 The International<br>Economy since 1870       | 13.100 and 13.101   |  | 17.201 |   |
| * 13.213 Economic History<br>of USA 1776-1940        | 13.100 and 13.101   |  |        |   |
| * 13.214 The New Zealand<br>Economy                  | 13.100 and 13.101   |  |        |   |

### Economics - Stage III

**Note:** Students taking papers 13.300, 13.301, 13.302, or 13.305 should have previously passed at least one paper in pure mathematics, and are strongly advised to have taken 13.205 also.

|  |   |  |  |  |
|--|---|--|--|--|
| 13.300 Theory of Value                                 | 13.200  |  |  |  |
| 13.301 Macroeconomic Theory<br>and Policy              | 13.200 and 13.201                                       |  |  |  |
| 13.302 Econometrics                                    | 13.200 or 13.201<br>and (13.205 or<br>26.280 or 26.281) |  |  |  |
| 13.304 International Trade                             | 13.200  |  |  |  |
| 13.305 Financial Economics                             | 13.200  |  |  |  |
| 13.306 Classical, Marxist and<br>Modern Economic Ideas | 13.200 or 13.201  |  |  |  |
| 13.307 Public Expenditure                              | 13.200  |  |  |  |
| * 13.308 Economics of Labour                           | 13.200 or 13.201  |  |  | With the permission<br>of the Head of Depart<br>ment students may<br>take 13.205 as a co-<br>requisite for 13.309.<br>Enrolment in Special |
| 13.309 International Finance                           | 13.200, 13.201<br>and 13.205                            |  |  |  |
| 13.310 Economic History of<br>Australia & NZ           | 13.200 or 13.201  |  |  |  |
| † 13.311 Special Topic                                 |   |  |  |  |



| Title of Paper  | Prerequisites   | Corequisites | Restrictions | Qualifications                                    |
|---|---|--------------|--------------|---|
| * 13.312 Special Topic  |   |              |              | Topic papers requires Head of Department approval |
| 13.313 Management and Enterprise in the British Economy (1750-1939) | 13.200 or 13.201  |              |              |   |
| 13.314 Law and Economics  | 13.200 plus 02.100 (or 25.104 and 25.105) or approval of Head of Department |              |              |   |

### MANAGEMENT SCIENCE AND INFORMATION SYSTEMS

#### Management Science and Information Systems - Stage I

##### 74.100 Business Computing

07.101, 72.100

Note: For transfer students only 07.101 is acceptable as a Part I BCom paper.

#### Management Science and Information Systems - Stage II

##### 26.293 Introduction to Operations Research

Either 26.165, or 6 credits in Pure or Applied Mathematics and one of 07.100, 07.101 or 74.100

74.200

The Head of Department may accept 07.100 or 07.111 as substitute for 74.100 for students with a good pass in 07.100 or 07.111

##### 74.200 Operations Management

74.100 and (290.101 or 13.102 or 26.181)

##### 74.220 Systems Analysis

(i) (01.100 and 01.101) or (01.102 and 01.103), and (ii) 74.100

##### 74.221 Programming Laboratory

74.100

07.235

##### 74.222 Data Base Management Systems

74.100

07.320, 74.322

#### Management Science and Information Systems - Stage III

Note: Students advancing in Management Science and Information Systems must have their choice of Stage III papers approved by the Head of Department. Students wishing to specialise in Information Systems will normally be expected to include 74.320, 74.321, and 74.323 in their course of study.

##### 74.300 Advanced Operations Management

74.200

##### 74.301 Project in Operations Management

74.200

74.300

##### 74.320 Systems Design

74.220 and 74.221 and 74.222

##### 74.321 Systems Project

74.220 and 74.221 and 74.222

74.320 and 74.323

##### 74.323 Management of Information Systems

74.220 and 74.221 and 74.222

##### 74.324 Data Communications

(74.220 and 74.221) or (07.210 and 07.230)

07.342

##### 74.325 Special Topic: Expert Systems

Recommended papers related to 74.325 are 07.361 or 07.362. Enrolment in Special Topic papers is subject to approval of the Head of Department.

##### \* 74.326 Special Topic

##### \* 74.327 Special Topic

##### \* 74.328 Special Topic

| Title of Paper  | Prerequisites                               | Corequisites | Restrictions | Qualifications |
|---|---|--------------|--------------|----------------|
| <b>MANAGEMENT STUDIES AND LABOUR RELATIONS</b>              |   |              |              |                |
| Management Studies and Labour Relations - Stage I           |   |              |              |                |
| 72.101 Organisation and Management                          |   |              | 72.203       |                |
| Management Studies and Labour Relations - Stage II          |   |              |              |                |
| 72.204 Organisational Behaviour                             | 72.101                                      |              |              |                |
| 72.207 Labour Relations                                     | 72.101 or permission of Head of Department  |              |              |                |
| Management Studies and Labour Relations - Stage III         |   |              |              |                |
| 24.370 Comparative History of Labour Relations              | 72.207                                      |              |              |                |
| 72.303 Comparative Labour Relations                         | 72.207                                      |              |              |                |
| * 72.305 Interpersonal and Group Relations                  | 72.203 or 72.204                            |              |              |                |
| * 72.307 Personnel Policy and Practice                      | 72.207 (and 72.303 or 72.204)               |              |              |                |
| 72.311 Entrepreneurial Behaviour and New Venture Management | 72.203; or 72.101 and two Stage II papers   |              |              |                |
| 72.313 Business and Society                                 | Subject to permission of Head of Department |              |              |                |
| 72.314 Organisational Communication                         | 72.204                                      |              |              |                |
| 72.316 Organisational Psychology                            | 72.203 or 72.204                            |              | 32.312       |                |
| † 72.317 Women in Organisations                             | Subject to permission of Head of Department |              |              |                |
| 72.325 Organisation Theory & Development                    | 72.203 or 72.204                            |              |              |                |
| 72.326 Management Theory and Practice                       | 72.204                                      |              | 72.203       |                |
| 72.340 Special Topic  | Subject to permission of Head of Department |              |              |                |

## MARKETING AND INTERNATIONAL BUSINESS

### Marketing and International Business - Stage II

|                               |                |
|-------------------------------|----------------|
| 71.200 Marketing Management   | 13.100, 13.101 |
| 71.201 International Business | 13.100, 13.101 |

### Marketing and International Business - Stage III

|   |  |                  |
|---|--|------------------|
| 71.300 Marketing Strategy                       | 71.200, 71.201, and (72.101 or 72.203)                                       | 71.302<br>74.200 |
| 71.301 Consumer Behaviour                       | 71.200, 71.201, and (72.101 or 72.203)                                       |                  |
| 71.302 Marketing Research                       | 71.200 and 71.201, and (72.101 or 72.203), and (290.101 or 13.102 or 26.181) |                  |
| 71.304 Marketing Practice                       | 71.200, 71.201 and (72.101 or 72.203)  |                  |
| 71.310 Stakeholder Analysis and Business Ethics | 72.203; or (72.101 and any two Stage II papers)                              |                  |

| Title of Paper                                 | Prerequisites | Corequisites | Restrictions | Qualifications  |
|--|---------------|--------------|--------------|---|
| †71.311 Special Topic<br>†71.312 Special Topic |               |              |              | Enrolment in Special Topic papers is subject to approval of the Head of Department. |

**MATHEMATICS**

|   |  |   |                                       |  |
|---|--|---|---------------------------------------|--|
| Mathematics, Applied - Stage I<br>26.180 Principles of Statistics |  | 26.140 or<br>26.141 or<br>26.142 or<br>26.241                 | 26.181<br>26.182<br>13.102<br>290.101 | No candidate may be credited with more than one of 26.180, 26.181, 26.182 and 13.102, and 290.101. |
| 26.181 Introduction to Probability and Statistics                 |  |   | 26.180<br>26.182<br>13.102<br>290.101 |  |
| 26.182 Introduction to Probability and Statistics                 |  |   | 26.180<br>26.181<br>13.102<br>290.101 |  |
| Mathematics, Applied - Stage II<br>26.280 Statistical Theory      | 26.180 or with approval of Head of Department, 26.181 or 26.182                                | 26.240 or 26.241  |                                       |  |
| 26.281 Data Analysis  | 26.181, 26.182 or 26.180   |   |                                       |  |
| 26.293 Introduction to Operations Research                        | Either 26.165, or 6 credits in Pure or Applied Mathematics and one of 07.100, 07.101 or 74.100 |   | 74.200                                | Refer Management Science and Information Systems Stage II schedule.                                |
| Mathematics, Applied - Stage III<br>26.380 Applied Probability    | 26.180, 26.220 or 26.221 or 26.222, 26.240 or 26.241   |   |                                       |  |
| 26.381 Advanced Statistical Theory                                | 26.280, 26.220 or 26.221 or 26.222, 26.240 or 26.241   |   |                                       |  |
| 26.382 Design of Surveys & Experiments                            | 26.280 or 26.281   |   |                                       |  |
| 26.385 Advanced Data Analysis                                     | 26.281 or 26.280 or approval of Head of Department   |   |                                       |  |
| 26.391 Optimization in Operations Research                        | 07.100 or equivalent 26.220 or 26.221 or 26.222  |   | 54.251                                |  |
| 26.395 Mathematical Modelling for Operations Research             | 07.100 or equivalent 26.180, 26.240 or 26.241, or permission of Head of Department             |   | 54.351                                |  |
| 26.399 Applied Mathematics Laboratory                             | 07.100 or suitable computing experience  | At least two of 26.371, 26.375, 26.382, 26.385 26.391, 26.395 |                                       |  |

**Mathematics, Pure - Stage I**

Note: Streaming for papers 26.120, 26.121, 26.140, 26.141 will be based on student's preparation. Students with an A Bursary are encouraged to enrol in papers 26.120, 26.140 and students with a qualification of B Bursary of less, 26.121, 26.141 or 26.122, 26.142.

|   |                   |                                     |
|---|-------------------|-------------------------------------|
| 26.101 Introduction to Algebra and Calculus | 26.102,<br>26.122 | Students may not enrol in 26.101 or |
|---|-------------------|-------------------------------------|

| Title of Paper   | Prerequisites | Corequisites | Restrictions  | Qualifications  |
|--|---------------|--------------|---|---|
|  |               |              | 26.142<br>13.105<br>290.100   | 26.102 at the same time as, nor subsequent to passing, any other Pure Mathematics paper.  |
| 26.102 Introduction to Algebra and Calculus  |               |              | 26.101<br>26.122<br>26.142<br>13.105<br>290.100   | Students scoring 50% or more in any Bursary Mathematics paper are strongly encouraged to enrol in 26.121 or 26.141 rather than 26.101 or 26.102 |
| 26.120 Principles of Algebra   |               |              | 26.121, 26.122, 26.221, 290.100   |   |
| 26.121 Introductory Alegbra  |               |              | 26.120, 26.122, 26.221, 290.100   |   |
| 26.122 Finite Mathematics  |               |              | 26.101, 26.120, 26.121, 26.221, 13.105, 290.100   |   |
| 26.140 Principles of Calculus  |               |              | 26.141, 26.142, 26.241, 290.100   |   |
| 26.141 Introductory Calculus   |               |              | 26.140, 26.142, 26.241, 290.100   |   |
| 26.142 Concepts of Calculus  |               |              | 26.101, 26.140, 26.141, 26.241, 13.105, 290.100   |   |
| Mathematics, Pure - Stage II<br>One or two papers from courses as prescribed for BSc.                |               |              | At the discretion of the Head of Department of Mathematics and Statistics.  |   |
| Mathematics, Pure - Stage III<br>One, two or three papers from courses as prescribed for BSc.        |               |              | At the discretion of the Head of Department of Mathematics and Statistics.  |   |
| <b>ELECTIVE PAPERS - any Stage</b>   |               |              |   |   |
| One, two, three or four papers as prescribed for any other degree not already taken for this Degree. |               |              | The Head of Department of the subject concerned may require the candidate to pass in a paper or course as prescribed for any other Degree |   |
| Note: * This paper will not be taught in the current <i>Calendar</i> year                            |               |              |   |   |

## THE DEGREE OF MASTER OF COMMERCE MCom

*The personal course of study of every candidate must be approved by the Senate. Approval will normally be granted for courses which are in accordance with the following Regulations: for general provisions affecting their courses of study students are referred to the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General), and the Examination Regulations. Students not qualified to enrol for MCom by reason of Clause 1 (a) of these Regulations may be permitted to enrol for MPhil.*

### General Provisions

- Subject to the Admission Regulations, a candidate for the Degree of Master of Commerce shall before the candidate's enrolment for this Degree:
  - have been admitted or qualified for admission to the Degree of Bachelor of Commerce, and
  - (i) have fulfilled the prerequisites for the candidate's subject as shown in the Schedule to these Regulations, and  
(ii) have obtained a grade of C+ or better on average in the Stage III paper in the subject which the candidate proposes to take for this Degree,

provided that, in special circumstances where the Head of Department so recommends, the Senate may accept an average grade of less than C+ or waive such prerequisites as it thinks fit.

2. Subject to the Admission Regulations, a candidate may, after having completed at least nineteen papers for the Bachelor of Commerce Degree, enrol for this Degree, upon the following conditions:
  - (a) that the candidate
    - (i) proposes for this Degree a course to extend over not fewer than two academic years;
    - (ii) has obtained grades averaging B- or above in the advanced papers for the Bachelor of Commerce Degree of the subject proposed for this Degree;
    - (iii) satisfies the conditions in Regulation 1(b) of these Regulations, or is exempt from them;
    - (iv) enrolls for the remaining paper or papers for the Bachelor of Commerce degree in the first year of the candidate's course for this Degree; and
  - (b) that no such remaining paper shall be prerequisite for this Degree; and
  - (c) that, should the candidate not pass each such remaining paper in the first year of his or her course for this Degree, that course shall be suspended until that paper is passed.
3. A candidate shall be required to fulfil the requirements of and pass the examination in one of the subjects prescribed in the Schedule.
4. Notwithstanding anything in Regulation 3, a candidate for this Degree may with the permission of the Senate take:
  - (i) one Stage III or one Master's paper or (ii) one Stage III and one Master's paper, or (iii) two Master's papers, in a subject other than the one being taken for the Degree, if each such paper is related to the candidate's research interests. Each such paper shall substitute for and be equivalent to one paper in the Master's course of the subject in which the Degree is being taken.
5. No candidate shall take for this Degree any paper the same as or substantially equivalent to any other paper the candidate has passed or is taking and obtain credit for both for this Degree.
6. A candidate shall not take for this Degree a subject in which the candidate has already passed for the Degree of Master of Arts or the Degree of Master of Philosophy.
7. Subject to Regulation 9(d) a candidate shall complete the requirements for this Degree within twenty four months of the date of first enrolment for the Degree. However, a candidate with other demanding responsibilities may fulfill the requirements for this Degree within thirty six months of first enrolment for the Degree, with eligibility for Honours, the individual course of study being determined at or before first enrolment by the Senate on the recommendation of the Head of Department.

#### Honours

8. (a). There shall be two classes of Honours: First Class Honours and Second Class Honours. Second Class Honours shall be awarded in two divisions, First Division and Second Division.
- (b). Honours shall not be awarded if the papers in the first year in which a candidate sits an examination for the Degree are unsatisfactory or if the thesis at its first presentation is unsatisfactory, provided, however, that a candidate whose performance at a written examination has been seriously impaired by illness or exceptional circumstances beyond the candidate's control (certified as under the Aegrotat Pass or Compassionate Pass provisions of the Examination Regulations) may elect, instead of applying for an aegrotat or compassionate pass, to present himself or herself at a subsequent written examination and still be eligible for the award of Honours, subject to the provisions of Regulation 7 above, and to Regulation 9 and 10 of the Examination Regulations.

#### Thesis

9. (a). A thesis shall embody the results obtained by the candidate in an investigation in some branch of the subject.
- (b). A thesis may be presented in the first year of enrolment for this Degree only with the approval of the Head of Department concerned.
- (c). A candidate may enrol for a thesis in any year subsequent to the first year of enrolment for this Degree only if the candidate obtains an average grade of at least B- in the papers sat in the first year (provided a thesis is not a compulsory requirement for the candidate's subject).
- (d). A candidate shall present the thesis not later than twenty-four months after the date of first enrolment for this Degree, provided that this period may be extended by the Head of Department concerned for not more than one year and in exceptional circumstances for longer by the Senate.
- (e). If the examiner with the concurrence of the Assessor so recommends, a thesis which is not considered satisfactory shall be returned to the candidate, who may be permitted to revise it and to represent it subject to Regulation 9 (d) above by a later date specified by the Head of Department.

**Note:** An abstract is to be submitted with each copy of the thesis, see Examination Regulation 15.

#### Personal Course of Study

10. The personal course of study of a candidate shall require the approval of the appropriate Head of Department.
11. The Senate may in such exceptional cases as it thinks fit approve a personal course of study which does not conform to the foregoing Regulations.
12. These Regulations shall come into force on 1 January, 1975.

## SCHEDULE

### (1) Accounting and Finance

**Prerequisites:** Eight papers in the subject Accounting and Finance including three Stage III papers.

**Requirements:** Four papers and a thesis (01.601) which shall count as two papers; or five papers and a research essay (01.603) which shall count as one paper.

The papers shall be selected from 01.400 to 01.426.

### **(2) Commercial Law**

**Prerequisites:** Two stage III Commercial Law papers and one other Stage III paper in Commerce approved by the Head of the Department of Commercial Law.

**Requirements:** Six papers; or five papers and a research essay (02.603) which shall count as one paper; or four papers and a thesis (02.601) which shall count as two papers.

The papers shall be selected from 02.400 to 02.413.

### **(3) Economics**

**Prerequisites:** Eight papers in the subject Economics including three Stage III papers.

**Requirements:** Six papers; or four papers and a thesis (13.601) which shall count as two papers; or five papers and a research essay (13.603) which shall count as one paper.

The papers shall be selected from 13.400 to 13.419.

### **(4) Management Science and Information Systems**

**Prerequisites:** Three Stage III Management Science and Information Systems papers.

**Requirements:** Four papers and a thesis (74.601) which shall count as two papers; or five papers and a research essay (74.603) which shall count as one paper.

All candidates must enrol in paper 71.403 (Research Methods in Marketing) in the first year of enrolment. The remaining papers shall be selected from 74.400 to 74.422.

### **(5) Management Studies and Labour Relations**

**Prerequisites:** Three Stage III Management Studies and Labour Relations papers.

**Requirements:** Four papers and a thesis (72.601) which shall count as two papers; or five papers and a research essay (72.603) which shall count as one paper.

All candidates must enrol in paper 72.410 (Research Methods) in the first year of enrolment. The remaining papers shall be selected from 72.400 to 72.422.

### **(6) Marketing and International Business**

**Prerequisites:** Three Stage III Marketing and International Business papers.

**Requirements:** Four papers and a thesis (71.601) which shall count as two papers; or five papers and a research essay (71.603) which shall count as one paper.

All candidates must enrol for 71.403 (Research Methods in Marketing) in the first year of enrolment. The remaining papers shall be selected from 71.400 to 71.402 and 71.409 to 71.413.

## **THE DEGREE OF MASTER OF BUSINESS ADMINISTRATION MBA**

*The personal course of study of every candidate must be approved by the Senate. Approval will normally be granted for courses which are in accordance with the following Regulations: for general provisions affecting their courses of study students are referred to the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General) and the Examination Regulations. Every intending new candidate must apply to the Registrar for permission to enrol in the course not later than 15 October or such other date as the Senate may determine, of the year preceding that in which the candidate proposes to enrol. An intending candidate who seeks admission on the basis of a professional qualification must apply for admission in accordance with the requirements of the Admission Regulations.*

### **General Provisions**

1. A candidate for the Degree of Master of Business Administration shall be admitted to either the Executive Course or the Management Course.
2. Subject to the Admission Regulations a candidate taking the Management Course for the Degree of Master of Business Administration shall before enrolment for this Degree:
  - (a) have been admitted or qualified for admission to a Bachelor's Degree and have had not less than two years of relevant employment experience, or
  - (b) hold an approved professional qualification in Accounting, Engineering or other approved discipline, and have had not less than five years of relevant employment experience, or
  - (c) perform outstandingly on such tests of academic aptitude as the Senate may prescribe, and have not less than eight years of relevant employment experience.
3. Subject to the Admission Regulations a candidate taking the Executive Course for the Degree of Master of Business Administration shall before enrolment for this Degree:
  - (a) have been admitted or qualified for admission to a Bachelor's Degree or hold an approved professional qualification in Accounting, Engineering or other approved discipline or perform outstandingly in such tests of academic aptitude as may be prescribed by the Senate, and
  - (b) have had not less than eight years of relevant employment experience, and
  - (c) occupy a senior position in a private or public sector organisation, or be the owner or part-owner of a substantial business and be occupied full-time in its management.
4. Admission to the course of study shall be at the discretion of the Senate.

5. A candidate may be required by the Senate to undertake a transitional course of study.

#### **Course Requirements**

6. A candidate for the Degree of Master of Business Administration shall be required to:
- follow a course of study of duration equivalent to not less than two academic years, and
  - pass the examination for either the Executive Course or the Management Course, and
  - perform laboratory and practical work to the satisfaction of the Senate.

#### **Management Course**

7. A candidate admitted to the Management Course shall be required to pass in each of eighteen papers and to complete not less than fifteen days of skill development work as prescribed by the Senate.

70.425 Accounting

70.426 Financial Management

70.430 Organisation and Management

70.431 Human Resource Management

70.433 Marketing Management

70.434 Business Environment

70.442 Strategic Management

70.450 Microeconomics

70.451 Macroeconomics

70.455 Quantitative Methods

70.456 Operations Management

70.460 Legal Studies

70.573 Management of Information Systems

plus five elective papers selected with the approval of the Senate from one of the following groups:

(a) Financial Management

70.530 Financial Accounting

70.531 Theory of Corporate Finance

70.532 Investment Analysis

70.533 Risk and Insurance

70.534 Case Studies in Finance

70.535 Management of Financial Institutions

70.536 Investment Administration

70.537 Property Finance and Investments

70.538 International Finance

70.539 Business Taxation

70.540 Project in Finance

(b) Human Resource Management

70.521 Labour Law

70.523 Equity Issues in Employment

70.541 Labour Relations

70.542 Personnel Policy and Practice

70.543 Organisational Development

70.544 Training and Development

70.545 Special Topic in Human Resource Management

70.550 Project in Human Resource Management

(c) Marketing Management

70.551 Strategic Marketing

70.552 Buyer Behaviour

70.553 New Ventures

70.554 Special Topic

70.556 Special Topic in Marketing

70.558 International Business Management

70.559 Special Topic in International Business

70.560 Project in Marketing

70.561 Marketing Research

70.562 Advertising and Communications Management

70.563 Special Topic

70.564 Special Topic

**Note:** One elective paper may be selected from a second group.

#### **Executive Course**

8. A candidate admitted to the Executive Course shall be required to pass in each of fifteen papers and a project worth three papers and to complete not less than twenty-five days of skill development work as prescribed by the Senate.

- 70.425 Accounting
- 70.426 Financial Management
- 70.430 Organisation and Management
- 70.431 Human Resource Management
- 70.433 Marketing Management
- 70.434 Business Environment
- 70.440 Management Project (value 3 papers)
- 70.442 Strategic Management
- 70.443 International Business
- 70.447 Advanced Business Strategy
- 70.450 Microeconomics
- 70.451 Macroeconomics
- 70.455 Quantitative Methods
- 70.456 Operations Management
- 70.460 Legal Studies
- 70.573 Management of Information Systems

#### Credits

9. With the approval of Senate a candidate admitted to the Management Course of study for this Degree who has been awarded or completed the requirements for the award of a diploma offered in or after 1989 by the Graduate School of Business may be credited with up to three papers for this Degree.

#### Transitional Provisions

10. (a). A candidate who has passed 70.400, 70.401 and 70.420 under the regulations for this Degree in force prior to 1989 shall be credited with passes in 70.425, 70.450, 70.451, 70.430, 70.433, 70.456 and 70.460.  
 (b). A candidate who has passed 70.410, 70.411 and 70.421 under the regulations for this Degree in force prior to 1989 shall be credited with passes in 70.426, 70.431, 70.434, 70.442, 70.455 and 70.573.  
 (c). With the approval of Senate a candidate admitted to the course of study for this Degree who has been awarded or completed the requirements for the award of a Diploma in Business and Industrial Administration or a Diploma in Business (Executive Management) may be credited with up to twelve papers for this Degree.
11. These Regulations shall come into force on 1 January, 1989.

## THE DEGREE OF MASTER OF TAXATION STUDIES MTaxS

*The personal course of study of every candidate must be approved by the Senate. Approval will normally be granted for courses which are in accordance with the following Regulations: for general provisions affecting their courses of study students are referred to the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General), and the Examination Regulations.*

#### General Provisions

1. Subject to the Admission Regulations a candidate for the Degree of Master of Taxation Studies shall, before enrolment for this Degree:
  - (a) have been admitted or qualified for admission to:
    - (i) the Degree of Bachelor of Commerce, or
    - (ii) the Degree of Bachelor of Laws, or
    - (iii) such other degree as the Senate may approve in a particular case, and
  - (b) be otherwise entitled to proceed to the Degree of:
    - (i) Master of Commerce, or
    - (ii) Master of Laws, or
    - (iii) Master of Jurisprudence, and
  - (c) have obtained a pass in:
    - (i) 02.301 Taxation and Estate Planning, or
    - (ii) 25.221 Income Tax.
2. A candidate for this Degree shall follow a course of study for not less than one year.
3. No candidate may present for this Degree a paper which is the same or substantially equivalent to any paper the candidate has passed for another degree or diploma.
4. Admission to the course of study for the Master of Taxation Studies shall be at the discretion of the Senate.
5. Subject to regulation 7 a candidate shall complete the requirements for this Degree within twenty-four months of the date of first enrolment for this Degree.

#### Course Content

6. The course of study of each candidate shall consist of:
  - (a) Four of the following papers:
    - 01.480 The Impact of Taxation on Financial Reporting and Control
    - 01.481 Special Topic in Taxation Accounting
    - 02.480 The Tax Base - Definition and Manipulation
    - 02.481 Investment Structures and Taxation



- 02.482 Indirect and Asset Based Taxation
- 02.483 Current Developments in Taxation
- 02.484 International Taxation
- 02.485 Special Topic in Taxation Law
- 02.486 Special Topic in Taxation Law
- 13.480 Contemporary Issues in Fiscal Policy

and one of the following:

- (b) 01.614 Dissertation in Taxation Accounting (value two papers)
  - 02.614 Dissertation in Taxation Law (value two papers)
  - 13.614 Dissertation in the Economics of Taxation (value of two papers).
7. A candidate shall present the dissertation not later than twenty-four months after the date of first enrolment for this Degree, provided that this period may be extended by the Head of Department concerned for not more than one year and in exceptional circumstances for longer by the Senate.
8. The Senate may in exceptional cases approve a personal course of study which does not conform to these Regulations.

#### Honours

9. This Degree may be awarded with or without Honours.
10. There shall be two classes of Honours: First Class Honours and Second Class Honours. Second Class Honours shall be awarded in two divisions, First Division and Second Division.

#### Transitional

11. A candidate may with the consent of the Senate be permitted to transfer to this Degree from any other masters degree for which the candidate was enrolled at the time these Regulations came into force and be credited with such papers as the Senate shall deem appropriate.

#### Commencement

12. These Regulations shall come into force on 1 January, 1989.

## DEGREE COURSE PRESCRIPTIONS

### QUANTITATIVE STUDIES

#### 290.100 Quantitative Analysis A

Algebra and calculus and their application in business and economics: sets; real numbers; integers; matrices; linear algebra including linear functions, equations and inequalities, linear programming; non-linear algebra including non-linear functions, equations and inequalities; limits and continuity; differential calculus of univariate and multivariate functions; integral calculus of univariate functions.

#### 290.101 Quantitative Analysis B

Probability and statistics and their application in business and economics: probability axioms: random variable; expected value and variance; probability distribution; Markov processes; decision theory; sampling; descriptive statistics; statistical inference applied to small and large samples; analysis of frequencies; analysis of variance; correlation and regression; time series analysis; use of statistical computer packages.

### DEPARTMENT OF ACCOUNTING AND FINANCE

#### Accounting and Finance I

##### 01.100 Accounting (a)

Basic financial accounting method including an introduction to external reporting.

##### 01.101 Accounting (b)

Introduction to management accounting and the design and operation of business information systems.

##### 01.102 Financial Accounting

Financial statement analysis using accounting information.

##### 01.103 Management Accounting

Budgeting and cost accounting for business planning control and capital expansion.

### Accounting and Finance II

##### 01.200 Financial Accounting

External financial reporting by companies: the presentation of financial statements and techniques for their analysis; the conceptual and regulatory considerations and financial statement impact of accounting policy choice; the theory and practice of accounting for corporate combinations.

##### 01.201 Accounting for Special Entities

Trust accounting; farm accounting and other selected topics.

##### 01.202 Cost and Management Accounting

Budgetary and standard cost control systems, internal control and divisional performance appraisal.

##### 01.203 Accounting Information Systems

Accounting systems for information and control, computerised accounting systems, computer tools for accountants.

##### †01.204 Accounting and Financial Management Issues in Government

Central, regional and local government accounting and finance including the accounts of government trading corporations and other statutory bodies.

**01.205 Financial Management**

Introduction to finance within the firm. Concepts of value, risk and required rates of return. Capital budgeting, capital structure and dividend decisions.

**01.206 Introduction to Investments**

An introduction to a broad range of investments and how those investments are valued. The principles of portfolio construction and evaluation.

**Accounting and Finance III****01.300 Financial Accounting**

Contemporary issues in financial accounting theory and practice.

**01.301 Auditing****01.302 Cost and Management Accounting**

The relationship between cost and management accounting and manufacturing and marketing strategy.

**01.306 Advanced Financial Management**

Advanced study of contemporary issues in financial management. Topics covered include capital structure, agency theory, dividend policy, complexities in capital budgeting and international issues. Case study applications.

**01.307 Modern Investment Theory and Management**

Security analysis, portfolio construction and administration. Valuation of equity investments. Regulation of capital markets. The evaluation of portfolio performance.

**01.308 Risk and Insurance**

Risk and insurance as theoretical concepts, and as problems and opportunities facing firms and individuals. The use of financial securities to manage risk.

**01.314 Special Topic in Accounting****01.315 Special Topic in Finance****Accounting and Finance for MCom and Honours****01.400 Accounting Theory****01.401 Contemporary Financial Accounting Issues****01.402 Management Accounting****01.403 Contemporary Price Level Accounting Issues****01.404 History of Accounting Thought****01.405 Accounting Information Systems****01.406 Behavioural Accounting****01.408 Auditing****01.410 Evaluation of Accounting Information****01.411 Contemporary Issues in Accounting for the Primary Industry****01.412 Research Methods in Accounting****01.413 Management Decision Making and Control in the Government Sector****01.414 International Accounting****01.415 Contemporary Management Accounting Issues****01.416 Modern Corporate Finance****01.425 Special Topic****01.426 Special Topic****01.601 Thesis****01.603 Research Essay**

**Note:** There is no guarantee that all these papers will be available to students during the current *Calendar* year. Students intending to read for the MCom degree should consult the staff towards the end of the previous year about preliminary vacation reading.

**DEPARTMENT OF COMMERCIAL LAW****Commercial Law I****02.100 Introduction to Law**

An introduction to the New Zealand legal system and fundamental legal concepts relevant to commerce and industry.

**Commercial Law II****02.200 Contracts and Restitution**

The law of contract and the principles of "unjust enrichment" in a business context.

**02.201 Credit and Security**

Legal methods of raising and securing finance including chattel mortgages, agreements for hire purchase and sale of goods, suretyship, insurance and negotiable instruments.

**02.202 Law of Business Organisation**

The law relating to business organisations, with special emphasis on companies, partnerships, trading trusts, agency relationships and state-owned enterprises.

**02.203 Labour Law**

The law relating to employment and labour relations.

**02.204 Legal Environment of Business**

Introduction to trusts, equity, property, comparative view of business structures. A detailed examination of fiduciary obligations, business torts and legal remedies.

**02.205 Law of Marketing and Information Technology**

The law concerning the marketing of goods and services and the protection of technological innovation with special emphasis on fair trading, intellectual property, trade secrets, consumer protection and the law as it affects communications and information technology.

**Commercial Law III****02.301 Taxation and Estate Planning**

The law and practice of income tax, Goods and Services Tax, estate and gift duties and estate planning.

**†02.303 Corporate Rescue and Insolvency**

Bankruptcy, schemes of Arrangement, Receivership and Liquidation.

**02.305 Investment Law**

The law relating to corporate finance and investment; offshore borrowing; takeovers and mergers, public floats, first and second board listing, futures trading and unlawful investment practices.

**\*02.306 Competition Law**

A study of the law relating to competition as it affects mergers, monopolies, restrictive trade practices together with an introduction to the economics of competition.

**†02.307 International Trade Law**

A study of the law relating to the export of goods from New Zealand.

**02.308 Banking Law**

A study of the law relating to domestic banking and the finance of international trade.

**02.320 Special Topic in Commercial Law****02.321 Special Topic in Commercial Law****Commercial Law for MCom and Honours****02.400 Special Topic in Commercial Law****02.401 Special Topic in Commercial Law****02.402 Professional Responsibility and the Courts****02.403 Legal Structures in International Business****02.404 Computer Law****02.405 Competition Law and Policy****02.406 Transnational Litigation and Arbitration****02.407 Advanced Banking Law****02.408 Law of International Finance****02.409 Special Topic****02.410 Business Law in East Asia and Japan****02.411 Special Topic****02.412 Special Topic****02.413 Special Topic****02.601 Thesis****02.603 Research Essay**

**Note:** There is no guarantee that all these papers will be available to students during the current *Calendar* year. Students intending to read for MCom should consult the staff towards the end of the previous year about preliminary vocational reading.

---

## DEPARTMENT OF COMPUTER SCIENCE

For Prescriptions see under BSc.

---

## DEPARTMENT OF ECONOMICS

**Economics I**

Students wishing to advance beyond Stage I in Economics are strongly recommended to take 290.101 and at least one paper in pure mathematics. For 1990 paper 26.181 is an acceptable alternative to 290.101.

**Note:** Knowledge of Mathematics up to 6th form level will be assumed in Stage I Economics.

**13.100 Microeconomics**

Introduction to the economic behaviour of individuals and firms. Output and price determination in the various types of market. Market structures, income distribution and public policies. Theories and selected applications will be presented.

**13.101 Macroeconomics**

The economic activity of the nation at large and its interrelationships with the rest of the world. Included are the measurement of economic activity, determination of aggregate income, money, banking and prices, government macroeconomic policy and international trade.

**Economics II****13.200 Microeconomics**

Analysis of the economic behaviour of individuals, firms and industries. Introduction to the economics of uncertainty and of general equilibrium.

**13.201 Macroeconomics**

A more advanced study of the determination and interaction of basic macroeconomic variables including output, employment, money supply and price level.

**13.203 Managerial Economics**

A survey of the use of techniques of microeconomics and operations analysis to solve problems in business and resource management.

**\*13.204 New Zealand Public Economics**

The theory of the public sector and public sector issues in New Zealand. Efficiency and equity aspects of government spending and taxation. Special topics of current interest; such as tax and benefit reform are also covered.

**13.205 Introduction to Econometrics**

An introduction to model building and research methods in economics. Emphasis on use and interpretation of single equation regression techniques in testing both micro and macroeconomic hypotheses.

**13.210 Industrialisation and Economic Development**

Use of historical methods to analyse the industrialisation process in Europe and Pacific Rim countries.

**13.211 The International Economy Since 1870**

The development of the institutional framework of trade and international monetary arrangements at the principal trading nations.

**\*13.213 Economic History of USA 1776-1940****\*13.214 The New Zealand Economy****Economics III**

Students intending to take any Economics III papers are advised to consult in the Department before enrolment for advice on available papers, prerequisites and reading guides.

**13.300 Theory of Value**

An advanced course in microeconomics covering theories of value and distribution from classical and neoclassical perspectives. Includes an introduction to the philosophical foundations of economic knowledge and environmental economics.

**13.301 Macroeconomic Theory and Policy**

Output, employment and price level theory, experience and policy. The theoretical perspective is predominantly transaction constrained.

**13.302 Econometrics**

Economic models and their estimation, testing and uses for policy and prediction.

**13.304 International Trade**

Theory and policy in the international economy.

**13.305 Financial Economics**

Microeconomic theory of production extended to cover topics relating to finance including time, uncertainty, taxation, and legal entities such as companies. Economic aspects of financial intermediaries, insurance and other areas.

**13.306 Classical, Marxist & Modern Economic Ideas**

An introduction to the history of economic ideas and to comparative economics.

**13.307 Public Expenditure**

Efficiency criteria for the public sector. Welfare economics, social policy and public sector spending decisions.

**\*13.308 Economics of Labour****13.309 International Finance****13.310 Economic History of Australia and New Zealand****†13.311 Special Topic**

To be prescribed by the Head of Department.

**\*13.312 Special Topic**

To be prescribed by the Head of Department.

**13.313 Management and Enterprise in the British Economy 1750-1939****13.314 Law and Economics**

Economic theory will be used to analyse rules and legal structures and their implications for economic behaviour.

**Economics for MA, MCom, MPhil and Honours**

**Note:** Except by permission of the Head of the Department no candidate shall take Economics for MA, MCom, etc., unless he/she has passed either 13.300 or 13.301.

Candidates proposing to take paper 13.402 should consult the lecturer in charge or the Head of Department regarding Mathematical papers to be taken in the Bachelor's Degree course. Students intending to take any postgraduate economics should consult in the Department before the end of the previous year for advice on availability of papers, prerequisites and reading guides.

**\*13.400 Growth and Fluctuations****13.401 Monetary Theory****13.402 Econometrics****\*13.404 Development and Planning****13.405 Public Economics****13.406 The History of Economic Thought****\*13.407 Comparative Economics: Primitive, Peasant, Industrial and Socialist Economies****\*13.408 Urban Economics****13.410 Special Topic - Growth of the Corporate Economy****†13.411 Economics of Population Change****13.412 Economic Forecasting****13.413 Special Topic: Energy, Resource and Environmental Economics****†13.414 Special Topic: Industrial Economics****13.415 Special Topic: International Economics****13.416 Special Topic: Public Policy****†13.417 Special Topic: Development of the Chinese Economy****†13.418 Special Topic: The International Business Cycle.****13.419 Special Topic: Topics in Microeconomics****13.601 Thesis****13.603 Research Essay**

**Note:** There is no guarantee that all these papers will be available to students during the current *Calendar* year.

**DEPARTMENT OF MANAGEMENT SCIENCE AND INFORMATION SYSTEMS****Management Science and Information Systems I****74.100 Business Computing**

The concepts, issues and importance of information systems are emphasized. This course covers types of information systems, their components, their development, and operations. It includes practical experience in a laboratory environment using personal computers.

**Management Science and Information Systems II****26.293 Introduction to Operations Research**

This course emphasises the relationship between business and industrial applications and their associated Operations Research models. Computer package software is used to solve practical problems. Topics include linear programming, transportation and assignment models, network algorithms, queues, Markov chains, inventory models and simulation.

**74.200 Operations Management**

Quantitative methods to improve productivity and competitiveness of manufacturing and service organisations: forecasting and linear programming, planning and control of production and inventories, MRP and master scheduling, project management and statistical quality control.

**74.220 Systems Analysis**

Methods of developing user requirements specifications for computer-based systems.

**74.221 Programming Laboratory**

Practice and experimentation in the use of a major business programming language.

**74.222 Data Base Management Systems**

Determination of information needs and patterns of data flow within a data base environment.

**Management Science and Information Systems III****74.300 Advanced Operations Management**

Advanced inventory and distribution systems, Material Requirements Planning and Master Production Scheduling, modern manufacturing technologies (JIT, FMS, CIM), quality and productivity management, facilities layout and design of production lines.

**74.301 Project in Operations Management**

Application of POM techniques to operations problems in a real setting.

**74.320 Systems Design**

Concepts and practices of computer software architectures with applications to the design of business systems.

**74.321 Systems Project**

Systems analysis, design, and development techniques are combined to solve a specific information systems problem. A team of students will usually work on a problem within a business or organisation outside the University.

**74.323 Management of Information Systems**

Planning, designing and implementing of computer-

ised information systems from a managerial point of view, in both PC and mainframe computer environments, with special reference to New Zealand.

#### **74.324 Data Communications**

An introduction to data communication technology: equipment, software, systems, services. The design methods and management of data communication networks. Managerial aspects of data communication problems in New Zealand conditions.

#### **74.325 Special Topic: Expert Systems**

Potential and limitations of commercial expert systems. Development of advisor systems. Commercial expert system shells.

#### **†74.326 Special Topic:**

#### **\*74.327 Special Topic**

#### **\*74.328 Special Topic**

### **Management Science and Information Systems for MCom and Honours**

#### **74.400 Operations Management**

#### **74.401 Operations Research**

#### **74.402 Mathematical Programming**

#### **74.405 Management Information Systems Concepts**

#### **74.411 Special Topic**

#### **74.412 Special Topic**

#### **74.419 Special Topic**

#### **74.420 Special Topic**

#### **74.421 Special Topic**

#### **74.422 Special Topic**

#### **74.601 Thesis**

#### **74.603 Research Essay**

Note: There is no guarantee that all these papers will be available to students during the current *Calendar* year.

## **DEPARTMENT OF MANAGEMENT STUDIES AND LABOUR RELATIONS**

### **Management Studies and Labour Relations I**

#### **72.101 Organisation and Management**

Organisation theory; organisational behaviour; principles of management and labour relations.

### **Management Studies and Labour Relations II**

#### **72.204 Organisational Behaviour**

A framework for understanding human behaviour in the context of organisations, focussing on the individual (personality, motivation, leadership); groups (communication, group dynamics, conflict management, power and politics) and the impact organisational structure, culture and change have on behaviour.

#### **72.207 Labour Relations**

Introduction to subject of labour relations with special reference to New Zealand. Institutional and legal frame works. History and organisation of trade unions and employers' associations. Role of government. Legislation relating to employment and to resolution of industrial disputes. Procedures for determining pay

and conditions of employment in the public and private sectors.

### **Management Studies and Labour Relations III**

#### **72.303 Comparative Labour Relations**

Issues in Comparative Labour Relations. A number of labour relations systems are studied (including Britain, France, USA, Sweden, Japan and West Germany) in order to assess the similarities and dissimilarities which exist between systems. Also topics relating to comparative collective bargaining, transnational corporations, industrial democracy, political unionism and supply-side labour relations.

#### **\*72.305 Interpersonal and Group Relations**

Management and behavioural science research concepts and techniques with an applied bias. Topics include: teamwork, interpersonal communications, leadership and decision-making processes in organisations.

#### **\*72.307 Personnel Policy and Practice**

Strategic significance of personnel issues. Matching of organisational needs for human resources with the career aspirations of individuals. Human resource planning, job analysis and design, recruitment and selection. Employment contracts, induction and socialisation. Training, development and performance appraisal. Management of remuneration. Terminations.

#### **72.311 Entrepreneurial Behaviour and New Venture Management**

What does it take to launch a new high growth venture? Are entrepreneurs people with innate talent, or can they be taught? How do they plan? What do they do? Who backs them? What are their achievements? This paper is about entrepreneurs, and culminates in a plan for a high growth venture.

#### **72.313 Business and Society**

The course examines the relationship between business institutions and the social, cultural and political climate within which they operate, assessing the effects of business on society and of society on business.

#### **72.314 Organisational Communication**

Study and training in the practices of communication in business organisations.

#### **72.316 Organisational Psychology**

Psychological aspects of how organisations affect people, and how people affect organisations. Topics include: functions and meaning of work, work attitudes, introduction to personnel psychology, occupational mental health, stress, quality of working life, group interactions and social influence at work, intergroup behaviour including gender and culture issues.

#### **72.317 Women in Organisations**

The economic, social, and political environment in which women join and participate in the workforce; structural and attitudinal barriers to women's access to organisational positions; women in trade unions, management, and the professions; equal employment opportunities, sexual harassment, pay equity, and other current issues.

**72.325 Organisation Theory and Development**

Theories of organisations, including formation of new organisations, organisational change, and organisational failure. Traditional and contemporary approaches to organisational structure and design. Organisational development and effectiveness. Power, politics and systems of control in organisations.

**72.326 Management Theory and Practice**

Ideological, historical and other forces shaping modern management; theories underlying modern management practice; techniques of planning, organising, decision making, leadership, and control; managing change, conflict, and creativity; managerial work and careers; interactional developments in management.

**72.340 Special Topic**

In 1991: Trade Union Studies

**24.370 Comparative History of Labour Relations**

A detailed historical account of the origins of industrial relations (IR) systems in Sweden, France, UK, USA, Japan, and NZ; topics include: industrialisation and IR in historical perspective, historical patterns of industrial conflict, and theories of history and IR.

**Management Studies and Labour Relations for MCom and Honours****72.405 Organisation Development****72.407 Empirical Study in Labour Relations or Management****72.410 Research Methods****72.411 Special Topic****72.412 Special Topic**

In 1991: Business and Culture

**72.413 Special Topic****72.414 Special Topic**

To be prescribed by the Head of Department.

**72.415 Special Topic**

In 1991: Management of Professionals

**72.416 Special Topic**

In 1991: Contemporary Themes of Women and Organisations.

**72.420 Contemporary Themes in Labour Relations****72.421 Advanced Organisation Theory and Behaviour****72.422 Comparative Labour Relations****72.601 Thesis****72.603 Research Essay**

**Note:** There is no guarantee that all these papers will be available to students during the current *Calendar* year.

**DEPARTMENT OF MARKETING AND INTERNATIONAL BUSINESS****Marketing and International Business II****71.200 Marketing Management**

Study of the principles of marketing management within the framework of the strategic management model. Identification of market opportunities, buyer behaviour, marketing research, segmentation and targeting, and planning the tactical elements of the marketing mix. Examination of relationships between marketing and other business functions.

**71.201 International Business**

An investigation of the environment within which international companies work; upon this framework is developed an understanding of the rationale and methods of international business. The course places an emphasis upon the formulation of marketing strategies and the particular problems and opportunities of New Zealand companies operating internationally.

**Marketing and International Business III****71.300 Marketing Strategy**

The capstone course in marketing management, aimed at providing students with the knowledge and skills required by an effective marketing executive assistant. The course utilises the strategic management framework and emphasises experiential learning in marketing measurement and appraisal, preparation of strategies and plans, and analysis of market performance. Students are encouraged to develop further skills for continuing appraisal of marketing theory and techniques. A major practical project is included.

**71.301 Consumer Behaviour**

Examination of the behaviour of the consumer through several buyer behavioural models. The following concepts are covered; group influences, including social stratification, reference groups and the family; individual influences, including information processing, learning, attitudes and personality; persuasive communication and its effect on attitudes; decision processes, including problem recognition, search evaluation and post-purchase experience; current research in consumer behaviour. Study of the implications for the practice of marketing management.

**71.302 Marketing Research**

The course examines the principles of marketing research and their application to marketing problems. The course will cover research problem definition, research design, data collection, data analysis and reporting.

**71.304 Marketing Practice**

Study of marketing practice and management in selected fields of application drawn from: industrial marketing, channel management, international marketing, primary products marketing, advertising and promotions management, marketing services, and retail marketing.

**71.310 Stakeholder Analysis and Business Ethics**

Examination of the ethical foundations of strategic management practice. The philosophy and practice of business ethics is considered in the context of the ethical relationships between any type of organisation and its stakeholders.

**†71.311 Special Topic**

To be prescribed by the Head of Department.

**†71.312 Special Topic**

To be prescribed by the Head of Department.

**Marketing and International Business for MCom and Honours****71.400 Advanced Marketing****71.401 Advanced Buyer Behaviour****†71.402 Advanced Information Study Technology in Marketing**

- 71.403 Research Methods in Marketing
- 71.409 Special Topic
- 71.410 Futures Research
- 71.411 Special Topic
- 71.412 Special Topic
- 71.413 Special Topic
- 71.601 Thesis
- 71.603 Research Essay

**Note:** There is no guarantee that all these papers will be available to students during the current *Calendar* year.

## DEPARTMENT OF MATHEMATICS AND STATISTICS

For Prescriptions see Index.

## GRADUATE SCHOOL OF BUSINESS

### Business Administration for MBA

- 70.425 Accounting
- 70.426 Financial Management
- 70.430 Organisation and Management
- 70.431 Human Resource Management
- 70.433 Marketing Management
- 70.434 Business Environment
- 70.440 Management Project (value 3 papers)
- 70.442 Strategic Management
- 70.443 International Business
- 70.447 Advanced Business Strategy
- 70.450 Microeconomics
- 70.451 Macroeconomics
- 70.455 Quantitative Methods
- 70.456 Operations Management
- 70.460 Legal Studies
- 70.573 Management of Information Systems
- Financial Management
- 70.530 Financial Accounting
- 70.531 Theory of Corporate Finance
- 70.532 Investment Analysis
- 70.533 Risk and Insurance
- 70.534 Case Studies in Finance
- 70.535 Management of Financial Institutions
- 70.536 Investment Administration
- 70.537 Property Finance and Investments
- 70.538 International Finance
- 70.539 Business Taxation
- 70.540 Project in Finance
- Human Resource Management
- 70.521 Labour Law
- 70.523 Equity Issues in Employment
- 70.541 Labour Relations
- 70.542 Personnel Policy and Practice
- 70.543 Organisational Development
- 70.544 Training and Development
- 70.545 Special Topic in Human Resource Management
- 70.550 Project in Human Resource Management
- Marketing Management
- 70.551 Strategic Marketing
- 70.552 Buyer Behaviour
- 70.553 New Ventures
- 70.554 Special Topic
- 70.556 Special Topic in Marketing

- 70.558 International Business Management
- 70.559 Special Topic in International Business
- 70.560 Project in Marketing
- 70.561 Marketing Research
- 70.562 Advertising and Communications Management
- 70.563 Special Topic
- 70.564 Special Topic

**Note:** There is no guarantee that all these papers will be available to students during the current *Calendar* year.

## MASTER OF TAXATION STUDIES

### 01.480 The Impact of Taxation on Financial Reporting and Control

This course examines the interaction between accounting and taxation concepts of income and studies the different objectives underlying their measurement together with the associated financial reporting problems. Because taxes are an important form of wealth transfer, it is necessary to review the political and institutional environment while at the same time highlighting the two-way exchange between taxation and financial reporting. Some empirical studies documenting the accounting-taxation interface are looked at. Finally, the course examines the role of taxation in the firm's investment, financing and dividend decisions.

### 01.481 Special Topic in Taxation Accounting

To be prescribed by the Head of the Department of Accounting and Finance.

### 02.480 The Tax Base - Definition and Manipulation

The nature of income, its timing and recognition, its distinction from capital and methods of calculation. Deductions and rebates. The limited role of capital in the existing tax base and the likelihood of its expansion. Tax minimisation in the courts. Statutory responses to tax avoidance. The Commissioner's discretions and appeal and review mechanisms.

### 02.481 Investment Structures and Taxation

The impact of business structures on tax liabilities of business organisations and their members. Trusts, partnerships, joint ventures, groups of companies are considered but the primary focus is on the allocation of the tax burden between companies, shareholders and other investors.

### 02.482 Indirect and Asset Based Taxation

Existing transactional and property taxes such as the Goods and Services Tax and Land Tax. A comparative study of overseas experience with wealth and capital gains taxes and their possible application to New Zealand.

### 02.483 Current Developments in Taxation

Selected in-depth studies of recent or imminent changes in the tax laws. The topics chosen will vary from year to year. Only those areas capable of rigorous academic analysis will be chosen for examination.

### 02.484 International Taxation

Tests of residence for individuals and corporations. The wider tax base for off-shore income of New Zealand residents. Income derived by overseas residents from New Zealand activities. The Double Tax Treaty System. Selecting the country of residence. Anti-avoidance measures directed at transnational activity. The use of tax havens. As well as New

Zealand taxation law the course also examines the municipal revenue law of some of our trading partners.

#### **02.485 Special Topic in Taxation Law**

To be prescribed by the Head of the Department of Commercial Law.

#### **02.486 Special Topic in Taxation Law**

To be prescribed by the Head of the Department of Commercial Law.

#### **13.480 Contemporary Issues in Fiscal Policy**

Desirable characteristics of a tax system. Equity, neutrality, simplicity, public acceptance. Administrative efficiency, responsiveness to economic changes, optimum levels for revenue needs. The use of taxation to meet welfare and social goals. The machinery of tax reform.

## **THE PROFESSIONAL EXAMINATIONS FOR MEMBERSHIP OF THE NEW ZEALAND SOCIETY OF ACCOUNTANTS**

Exemptions from the New Zealand Society of Accountants' examinations are granted to students who have passed certain degree subjects. Currently it is possible to get complete exemption from all examination requirements of the Society, apart from the Society's uniform qualifying examination, provided certain specified papers are taken for the BCom Degree. Full details are available from the Department of Accounting and Finance. Students should note that exemptions from the New Zealand Society of Accountants' Professional Examinations can be authorised by the Society only. Those with queries should write directly to the Education Officer, New Zealand Society of Accountants, P.O. Box 11342, Wellington.

Exemptions from examinations of the Cost and Management Accounting Division of the New Zealand Society of Accountants are also granted to students who have passed certain degree subjects. Full details are available from the Department of Accounting and Finance.

## **DIPLOMA COURSE REGULATIONS AND PRESCRIPTIONS**

### **DIPLOMA IN BUSINESS DipBus**

*The personal course of study of every candidate must be approved by the Senate. Approval will normally be granted for courses which are in accordance with the following Regulations: for general provisions affecting their course of study students are referred to the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General), and the Examination Regulations. Every intending new candidate must apply to the Registrar for permission to enrol in the course not later than the date prescribed by the Senate for the year preceding that in which the applicant proposes to enrol.*

#### **General Provisions**

1. Subject to the Admission Regulations, a candidate for the Diploma in Business shall before enrolment for this Diploma:
  - (a) have been admitted or qualified for admission to a Bachelor's degree, and have had not less than two years of relevant employment experience, or
  - (b) hold an approved professional qualification in Accounting, Engineering, Science or other approved discipline and have had not less than two years of relevant employment experience, or
  - (c) have had not less than five years of relevant employment experience.
2. Admission to the course of study shall be at the discretion of the Senate.
3. A candidate may be required by the Senate to undertake a transitional course of study.

#### **Course Requirements**

4. A candidate for the Diploma in Business shall be required to:
  - (a) follow a course of study of duration equivalent to not less than one academic year, and
  - (b) pass the examinations for one of the following subjects:
    - Finance
    - Information Systems
    - Marketing
    - Personnel Management and Employee Relations, and
    - (c) perform laboratory and practical work to the satisfaction of the Senate.
5. The course in each subject for this Diploma is:

#### **Finance**

The candidate shall be required to pass in each of six papers.

70.426 Financial Management

70.532 Investment Analysis

Plus four papers selected with the approval of the Senate from:

70.530 Financial Accounting



70.531 Theory of Corporate Finance  
 70.533 Risk and Insurance  
 70.534 Case Studies in Finance  
 70.535 Management of Financial Institutions  
 70.536 Investment Administration  
 70.537 Property Finance and Investments  
 70.538 International Finance  
 70.539 Business Taxation

One paper as prescribed for another subject for this Diploma.

#### **Information Systems**

The candidate shall be required to pass in each of six papers.

70.570 Programming Languages  
 70.571 Systems Analysis and Design  
 70.572 Data Base Management  
 70.575 Data Communications

Plus two papers selected with the approval of the Senate from:

70.574 Information Systems Project  
 70.576 Advanced Management Information Systems  
 70.577 Strategic Information systems

One paper as prescribed for another subject for this Diploma

#### **Marketing**

The candidate shall be required to pass in each of six papers.

70.433 Marketing Management  
 70.551 Strategic Marketing

Plus four papers selected with the approval of the Senate from:

70.552 Buyer Behaviour  
 70.553 New Ventures  
 70.554 Special Topic  
 70.556 Special Topic in Marketing  
 70.558 International Business Management  
 70.559 Special Topic in International Business  
 70.561 Marketing Research  
 70.562 Advertising and Communications Management  
 70.563 Special Topic  
 70.564 Special Topic  
 70.565 Special Topic  
 70.566 Special Topic

One or two papers as prescribed for another subject for this Diploma.

#### **Personnel Management and Employee Relations**

The candidate shall be required to pass in each of six papers.

70.541 Labour Relations  
 70.542 Personnel Policy and Practice  
 70.546 Organisational Behaviour

Plus one project selected with the approval of Senate from:

70.549 Personnel Management Project  
 70.522 Labour Relations Project

Plus two papers selected with the approval of the Senate from:

70.521 Labour Law  
 70.523 Equity Issues in Employment  
 70.543 Organisational Development  
 70.544 Training and Development  
 70.545 Special Topic in Human Resource Management  
 70.547 Advanced Labour Relations  
 70.548 Special Topic in Organisational and Business Psychology

6. These Regulations shall come into force on 1 January, 1989.

## **GRADUATE SCHOOL OF BUSINESS**

### **PRESCRIPTIONS FOR DipBus**

70.426 Financial Management  
 70.433 Marketing Management  
 70.521 Labour Law  
 70.522 Labour Relations Project  
 70.523 Equity Issues in Employment

70.530 Financial Accounting  
 70.531 Theory of Corporate Finance  
 70.532 Investment Analysis  
 70.533 Risk and Insurance  
 70.534 Case Studies in Finance  
 70.535 Management of Financial Institutions  
 70.536 Investment Administration

70.537 Property Finance and Investments  
 70.538 International Finance  
 70.539 Business Taxation  
 70.541 Labour Relations  
 70.542 Personnel Policy and Practice  
 70.543 Organisational Development  
 70.544 Training and Development  
 70.545 Special Topic in Human Resource Management  
 70.546 Organisational Behaviour  
 70.547 Advanced Labour Relations  
 70.548 Special Topic in Organisational and Business Psychology  
 70.549 Personnel Management Project  
 70.551 Strategic Marketing  
 70.552 Buyer Behaviour  
 70.553 New Ventures  
 70.554 Special Topic  
 70.556 Special Topic in Marketing

70.558 International Business Management  
 70.559 Special Topic in International Business  
 70.561 Marketing Research  
 70.562 Advertising and Communications Management  
 70.563 Special Topic  
 70.564 Special Topic  
 70.565 Special Topic  
 70.566 Special Topic  
 70.570 Programming Languages  
 70.571 Systems Analysis and Design  
 70.572 Data Base Management  
 70.574 Information Systems Project  
 70.575 Data Communications  
 70.576 Advanced Management Information Systems  
 70.577 Strategic Information Systems

Note: There is no guarantee that all these papers will be available to students during the current *Calendar* year.

## DIPLOMA IN COMMERCE DipCom

*The personal course of study of every candidate must be approved by the Senate. Approval will normally be granted for courses which are in accordance with the following Regulations: for general provisions affecting their course of study students are referred to the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General), and the Examination Regulations. Every intending new candidate must apply to the Registrar for permission to enrol in the Course not later than the date prescribed by Senate for the year in which the applicant proposes to enrol.*

### General Provisions

- Subject to the Admission Regulations, a candidate for the Diploma in Commerce shall before enrolment for this Diploma:
  - have been admitted or qualified for admission to the Degree of Bachelor of Commerce or such other university degree as the Senate may approve in a particular case, or
  - hold or have qualified for the award of a professional qualification in Commerce approved by the Senate.
- Subject to the Admission Regulations a candidate may enrol for the Diploma in Commerce after having completed at least nineteen papers for the Bachelor of Commerce Degree, or the equivalent in such other degree as may be approved by Senate in a particular case, provided that:
  - the proposed course for this Diploma will extend over not fewer than two academic years;
  - the remaining papers of the Bachelor's Degree are taken in the first year of the Diploma course;
  - should the candidate not pass the remaining paper or papers for the degree in the first year of enrolment for the Diploma, the Diploma course shall be suspended until the candidate has passed the remaining paper or papers for the Degree.

3. Admission to the course of study for the Diploma in Commerce shall be at the discretion of the Senate

### Course Regulations

- A candidate for the Diploma in Commerce shall be required to:
  - follow a course of study of not less than one year, and
  - pass the examinations in not less than six papers selected with approval of Senate from 200, 300 and 400 level papers in Accounting, Commercial Law, Economics, Management Science and Information Systems, Management Studies and Labour Relations, and Marketing and International Business. At least three papers at 300 or 400 level shall be selected from one, or with the permission of the Senate more than one, of the subjects Accounting, Commercial Law, Economics, Management Science and Information Systems, Management Studies and Labour Relations, Marketing and International Business. No more than two of the papers selected shall be at 200 level.
- No candidate may present for this Diploma a paper which is the same or substantially equivalent in content to any paper the candidate has passed for another degree or diploma.
- No candidate shall be credited for this Diploma with any paper passed for another degree or diploma.
- These Regulations shall come into force on 1 January, 1988.

## SCHOOL OF COMMERCE

### PRESCRIPTIONS FOR DipCom

See the prescriptions for the BCom and MCom courses. The DipCom is designed as a two-year part-time course, or as a one-year full-time course.

# Faculty of Law

## Contents

|   |     |   |
|---|-----|---|
| <b>Degree Course Regulations</b>                    | 288 | Degree of Bachelor of Laws                                |
|   | 291 | Degree of Bachelor of Laws (Honours)                      |
|   | 293 | Professional Legal Studies Course                         |
|   | 293 | Degree of Master of Laws                                  |
|   | 294 | Degree of Master of Jurisprudence                         |
| <b>Degree Course Prescriptions</b>                  | 295 | Degree of Bachelor of Laws and Bachelor of Laws (Honours) |
|   | 298 | Law and Practice in N.Z. Examinations                     |
|   | 298 | Degree of Bachelor of Laws (Honours)                      |
|   | 299 | Professional Legal Studies Course                         |
|   | 299 | Degree of Master of Laws and Master of Jurisprudence      |
| <b>Diploma Course Regulations and Prescriptions</b> | 301 | Diploma in Criminology                                    |
|   | 301 | Postgraduate Diploma in Legal Studies                     |

## DEGREE COURSE REGULATIONS

### THE DEGREE OF BACHELOR OF LAWS LLB

*The personal course of study of every candidate must be approved by the Senate. Approval will normally be granted for courses which are in accordance with the following Regulations: for general provisions affecting their courses of study students are referred to the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General), and the Examination Regulations.*

#### General Provisions

1. Subject to the Admission Regulations, a candidate for the Degree of Bachelor of Laws shall be required to:
  - (a) pursue a course of study for a period of not less than four years;
  - (b) pass an Intermediate Examination and three Law Examinations;
  - (c) carry out work and undergo experience in the detailed application of law and in relation to the provision of legal services, to the satisfaction of the Faculty of Law ("the Faculty").

#### Examinations

2. (1). A candidate shall be required to pass as a whole each Law Examination, so that the candidate's performance in all subjects of the examination shall be taken into consideration: provided that:
  - (a) A candidate who has failed to pass any Law Examination as a whole may at the discretion of the Senate be credited with a subject or subjects of that examination and permitted in a subsequent year to present the subject or subjects not so credited together with a subject or subjects of the next succeeding Law Examination.
  - (b) A candidate who has passed the Intermediate Examination may at the discretion of the Senate be permitted to present part only of the First Law Examination, presenting the remaining part in a subsequent year together (if the candidate so wishes) with a subject or subjects of the next succeeding examination.
  - (c) A candidate who is undertaking the Degree or any part of the Degree part-time or in conjunction with any other degree shall be required to pass an examination consisting of such work, less than the full examination, as the Senate may in its discretion determine, and present the remaining part of the examination in a subsequent year, together (if the candidate so wishes) with a subject or subjects of the next succeeding examination.
- (2). A candidate to whom any of the foregoing provisions apply shall be required to pass as a whole an examination consisting of the subjects taken in any year, so that performance in all subjects taken in that year shall be considered.
- (3). A candidate who has failed only one subject of a Law Examination may be required by the Senate to pass in the following February a special examination in that subject to be credited with a pass in the examination as a whole.
- (4). Subject to Regulation 5, no candidate shall enrol for the First Law Examination or any part of it without first passing the whole of the Intermediate Examination.

#### Subjects

3. The examinations and subjects for this Degree are:

##### Intermediate Examination

25.103 The Legal System - and subjects prescribed or accepted for the Degree of Bachelor of Arts ("the BA Degree") or Bachelor of Science ("the BSc Degree"), as follows:

- (a) Two arts papers (at any stage or stages) being:
  - (i) any two language papers in any one subject (including English) listed in the Schedule to the Regulations for the BA Degree; or
  - (ii) any two papers in Philosophy and
  - (b) not fewer than:
    - (i) Four art papers (at any stage or stages); or
    - (ii) Twenty-four science credits; or
    - (iii) An equivalent combination of one, two or three arts papers (at any stage or stages) with 18, 12 or 6 science credits respectively.

For the purpose of the requirement of two language papers:

- (i) Where only one language paper is available in a relevant subject, a candidate may, with the approval of the Senate, take that paper together with *either* a language paper in another subject *or* (instead of another language paper) an approved non-language arts paper.
- (ii) "language paper" includes a literature paper.
- (iii) One may be a literature paper in Classical Studies if the other is a Latin or Greek paper.

**Note:** The relevant subjects listed in the Schedule to the Regulations for the BA Degree are: Chinese, Indonesian, Russian, French, Italian, Scandinavian Studies, German, Japanese, Spanish, Greek, Latin, Hebrew, Maori Studies.

**First Law Examination**

- 25.101 Criminal Law  
25.104 The Laws of Torts

- 25.105 The Law of Contract  
25.106 Public Law

**Second Law Examination**

- 25.201 Law of Property  
Together with selected subjects from:

- 25.218 Legal History  
25.225 Law and Society  
25.204 Commercial Law  
25.205 Administrative Law  
25.207 Advanced Criminal Law  
25.208 Company Law and Partnership  
25.209 Intellectual Property  
25.210 Criminology  
25.211 Family Law  
25.212 Industrial Law  
25.213 International Institutions  
25.214 International Law  
25.220 Local Government law  
25.221 Income Tax

- 25.202 Equity

- 25.226 Legal Theory  
25.222 Roman Law  
25.223 Women and the Law  
25.224 Pacific Legal Studies  
25.228 Competition Law  
25.229 Advanced Contract  
25.230 Advanced Tort  
25.231 Problems in Civil Obligations  
25.232 Legislation  
25.233 Succession & Matrimonial Property  
25.234 Welfare Law  
25.235 Community Law Project  
25.236, 25.237, 25.238, 25.239, 25.240 Special Topics approved by the Dean of the Faculty of Law ("the Dean").

**Third Law Examination**

One or more of:

- 25.218 Legal History  
25.225 Law and Society  
(but this requirement is deemed complied with if at least one of 25.218, 25.225 and 25.226 has been taken as part of the Second Law Examination).

Together with selected subjects from:

- 25.301 Advanced Administrative Law  
25.302 Advanced Commercial law  
25.303 Advanced Constitutional Law  
25.304 Advanced Criminology  
25.305 Advanced Family Law  
25.306 Advanced Industrial Law  
25.307 Advanced International Law  
25.308 Civil Procedure  
25.309 Company Finance  
25.311 Conflict of Laws  
25.312 Creditors' Remedies  
25.313 Environmental Law  
25.314 Evidence  
25.315 International Trade  
25.316 Law Reform  
25.319 Planning Law  
25.320 Restitution  
25.321 Supervised Research

- 25.226 Legal Theory  
25.310 Comparative Law

- 25.322 Vendor and Purchaser  
25.323 Estate and Tax Planning  
25.324 Air and Space Law  
25.325 Maori Land Law  
25.326 Insurance Law  
25.328 Advocacy  
25.329 Advanced Agency & Partnership  
25.330 Legal Ethics  
25.331 Remedies  
25.332 Consumer Law  
25.333 Negotiation, Mediation and Dispute Resolution  
25.334 Advanced Legal Philosophy  
25.335 Advanced Law and Society  
25.336 Natural Resources Law  
25.337, 25.338, 25.339, 25.340 Special Topics approved by the Dean of the Faculty of Law

and any one or more optional subjects prescribed for the Second Law Examination.

**Note:** In any academic year, any optional subject for the Second or Third Law Examinations may be withdrawn if there are insufficient staff to teach it or too few enrolments to warrant its being taught.

**Intermediate Credits**

4. In respect of the arts papers and science credits for the Intermediate Examination a candidate shall be required to comply with all relevant Regulations for the BA Degree or the BSc Degree as the case may be (including regulations and requirements relating to corequisites, prerequisites, restrictions, combinations of subjects and practical work).

**Exemptions**

5. (1). A candidate who has been credited for the BA Degree or the BSc Degree with any papers or credits required for the Intermediate Examination shall be credited with them for the purposes of this Degree also.  
(2). A candidate who is a graduate of any University in New Zealand shall be exempted from passing the Intermediate Examination but shall be required to pass 25.103 The Legal System as part of the First Law Examination and shall pursue a course of study for this Degree for a period of not less than three years.  
(3). In granting admission ad eundem statum to a candidate from an overseas University in one or more subjects of the Degree the Senate may require that the candidate shall pass an examination in the law and

practice in New Zealand, covering such matters as may from time to time be prescribed by the Senate. The examination shall be at a time and place fixed by the Vice-Chancellor at a fee to be determined by the University from time to time.

#### 6. Maximum courses

- (a) Except with the permission of the Senate -
- (i) A candidate enrolled for the First Law Examination as a whole or the Second Law Examination as a whole may not take any extra subject or subjects;
- (ii) A candidate enrolled for the Third Law Examination as a whole may not take more than one extra subject.
- (b) Except with the permission of the Senate -
- (i) A candidate enrolled for any parts of the First and Second Law Examinations may not take more than five subjects;
- (ii) A candidate enrolled for any parts of the First, Second and Third Law Examinations, or of the First and Third Law Examinations, may not take more than five subjects, except that he or she may take either one or two extra subjects if that would complete the course for this degree;
- (iii) A candidate who has passed the First Law Examination and is enrolled for any parts of the Second and Third Law Examinations may not take more than six subjects, except that he or she may take one extra subject if that would complete the course for this degree.
- (c) In this regulation - "subject" means a subject prescribed or permitted for the First, Second or Third Law Examination; "extra subject" means a subject beyond the requirements of a particular Law Examination or beyond the specified maximum number of subjects, as the case may be.

#### Practical Courses

7. No candidate shall be admitted to this Degree unless the Registrar has received from the Dean a certificate that the candidate has complied with the requirements of Regulation 1 (c).

**Note:** Legal Practice: A student completing his or her First Law Examination is required to enrol for 25.406 Legal Practice I, his or her Second Law Examination 25.407 Legal Practice II and his or her Third Law Examination 25.408 Legal Practice III.

#### Course Requirements

8. Every candidate shall be required:
  - (a) To undertake in both the candidate's Second and Third Law Examinations a course of study comprising sufficient law subjects to amount to a full-time course of about 13 hours of instruction per week. The Faculty of Law shall from time to time determine the composition of a full-time course for these purposes.
  - (b) To undertake and satisfy in any subject such tutorial, practical, writing, attendance or test requirements as the Faculty determines from time to time. A candidate who fails to comply with these requirements may be barred from sitting the final examination.

**Note:** The Handbook of the Faculty of Law will state the advanced subjects, the prerequisites if any, and the weight of each subject within a full-time course of study and the writing and other requirements of the Faculty of Law.

#### Courses in Other Faculties

9. (1). In lieu of optional law subjects (totalling not more than one-fifth of the content of the Second and Third Law Examination combined) a candidate may take such papers at Stage II or above offered by other Faculties and related to the candidate's Law studies as are approved by the Dean of the Faculty of Law. Before enrolling in the papers the candidate shall obtain the permission of the Head of the Department in which they are being taken and of the Dean of the Faculty of Law; but the Faculty of Law may in special cases apply this provision to a candidate who has previously taken papers in another Faculty which would have qualified under this Regulation if prior approval had been obtained.
- (2). Any paper taken by a candidate under this Regulation may be credited only to this Degree.

**Note:** Approval of papers to form part of the candidate's Third Law Examination will ordinarily be confined to those at Stage III or above.

#### Research Paper

10. A candidate for this Degree may with prior approval of the Dean elect to submit a research paper in lieu of examination in a subject of the Third Law Examination, if the teacher in the subject has certified that the research paper is related to that subject.

#### BCom/LLB

11. (1). A candidate shall be credited with any subject named in the left hand column of the schedule to this paragraph of this Regulation if he or she has (i) passed for the Degree of Bachelor of Commerce the paper or papers named opposite that subject in the right hand column of the schedule, and (ii) otherwise completed the requirements for that Degree.

##### Schedule

Company Law and Partnership 25.208

Industrial Law 25.212

Revenue Law 25.221 or Income Tax 25.221

Company Law and Partnership 02.300

Industrial Law 02.302

Taxation and Estate Planning 02.301

- (2). Credits under this Regulation shall be additional to any permitted to a candidate under the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General).

#### Commencement

12. (1). These Regulations shall apply to all students taking the Degree of Bachelor of Laws from 1 January, 1988.
- (2). Subject to (3) and (4) hereof passes obtained by a candidate before 1 January, 1988 in any of the subjects prescribed in the 1987 Degree regulations shall be credited as passes in the corresponding subjects in the Regulations for this Degree.

(3). Passes obtained by a candidate before 1 January, 1988 in any of the subjects prescribed in the 1987 Degree Regulations for which there is no direct equivalent in the Regulations for this Degree, including the Introductory courses in Commercial Law, Family Law, and Company Law and Partnership, shall be credited as passes in optional subjects of the same weighting under the Regulations for this Degree.

(4). No candidate may credit passes in both an Introductory course in Commercial Law, Family Law or Company Law and the full course in the same subject under the Regulations for this Degree or in both a subject prescribed under the 1987 Regulations and a subject prescribed under the Regulations for this Degree if, in the opinion of the Dean, the subject matter of the former forms a substantial proportion of the subject matter of the latter.

(5). A candidate who before 1 January, 1988 passed Land Law but not before 1 January, 1989 Commercial Law or Introduction to Commercial Law shall be required to pass 25.204 Commercial Law under the Regulations for this Degree and a candidate who before 1 January, 1988 passed Commercial Law or Introduction to Commercial Law but not Land Law shall be required to pass 25.201 The Law of Property under the Regulations for this Degree.

(6). A candidate who before 1 January, 1988 passed the Intermediate Examination and who has not passed Legal System, shall be required to pass 25.103 The Legal System as part of the First Law Examination in the Regulations for this Degree.

(7). A pass in 1988 in the subject 25.102 Constitutional Law as prescribed in the 1987 Regulations shall be credited as a pass in 25.106 Public Law under the Regulations for this Degree and passes in 1988 in the subjects 25.203 Introduction to Commercial Law, 25.215 Introduction to Company Law and Partnership, 25.216 Introduction to Family Law, 25.225 Law and Society, 25.226 Legal Analysis and 25.227 Legal Theory as prescribed in the 1987 Regulations shall be credited as passes in optional subjects of the same weighting under the Regulations for this Degree.

(8). A candidate who before 1 January, 1988 passed not fewer than two subjects in the First Law Examination will not be required to pass any one of 25.218 Legal History, 25.225 Law and Society, 25.226 Legal Theory and 25.310 Comparative Law under the Regulations for this Degree.

(9). Regulation 11 of the Regulations for this Degree as published in the 1987 *Calendar* shall (notwithstanding that it has been revoked) apply to any candidate who, before 1 January, 1988, (i) passed Finance Law 02.201 or an 'approved commerce paper' within the meaning of paragraph (2) of that Regulation and (ii) otherwise complied with the requirements of that Regulation.

(10). For the purposes of this Regulation, a pass shall include a Conceded Pass or a pass in a February Special examination.

(11). A candidate who began his or her Law course before 1973 shall be entitled to the benefit of any transitional provisions then applicable.

(12). Where the course of any candidate is not specifically covered by the above provisions and in other cases where there is doubt concerning the course of any candidate such course shall be settled by the Dean.

## THE DEGREE OF BACHELOR OF LAWS (HONOURS) LLB (Hons)

*The personal course of study of every candidate must be approved by the Senate. Approval will normally be granted for courses which are in accordance with the following Regulations: for general provisions affecting their course of study students are referred to the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General), and the Examination Regulations.*

### General Provisions

1. Subject to the Admission Regulations, a candidate for the Degree of Bachelor of Laws (Honours) shall be required to:
  - (a) pursue a course of study for a period of not less than four years;
  - (b) (i) pass an Intermediate Examination and three Law Examinations; and  
(ii) carry out work and undergo experience in the detailed application of law and in relation to the provision of legal services, to the satisfaction of the Faculty of Law ("the Faculty"); in all respects as prescribed in the Regulations for the Degree of Bachelor of Laws ("the LLB Degree"), excepting Regulation 10 (as to the substitution of a research paper in lieu of an examination in the Third Law Examination); and
  - (c) present the additional work prescribed in Regulation 2; and
  - (d) maintain a superior standard of work throughout the course, as prescribed in Regulation 6.

### Additional Work

2. In addition to the foregoing requirements, every candidate shall during his or her course undertake the following work:
  - (a) Two additional subjects from those listed in Regulation 3, carrying out to the satisfaction of the Faculty such written or other work as may be prescribed by the Dean in connection with those subjects.
  - (b) The submission, not later than twelve months after completing the Third Law Examination, of a dissertation (25.604) embodying the results of research undertaken under the direct supervision of a

University teacher in the Faculty. The Senate may in its discretion extend the time for the submission of the dissertation.

**Note:** An abstract is to be submitted with the dissertation. See Examination Regulation 15.

### Subjects

3. The additional subjects provided for in Regulation 2 shall be:

|        |   |        |  |
|--------|---|--------|--|
| 25.341 | Admiralty Law                                   | 25.368 | Marine Insurance Law   |
| 25.342 | Air and Space Law                               | 25.369 | Medico-Legal Problems  |
| 25.343 | Aspects of Industrial Law                       | 25.370 | Military Law   |
| 25.344 | Business Regulation                             | 25.371 | Penology   |
| 25.345 | Causes of Crime                                 | 25.372 | Problems in Choice of Law  |
| 25.346 | Civil Rights                                    | 25.373 | Problems in Contract and Tort  |
| 25.347 | Commercial Letters of Credit                    | 25.374 | Problems in Criminal Law   |
| 25.348 | Consumer Law                                    | 25.375 | Problems in Equity   |
| 25.349 | Copyright and Patent Law                        | 25.376 | Problems in Legal Philosophy   |
| 25.350 | Corporation Finance                             | 25.377 | Professional Responsibility  |
| 25.351 | Economic Regulation                             | 25.378 | Registration of Title to Land  |
| 25.352 | Environmental Law                               | 25.379 | Remedies against the Government  |
| 25.353 | Estate Planning                                 | 25.380 | Securities Law   |
| 25.354 | Insurance (other than Marine Insurance)<br>Law  | 25.381 | Selected Topics in Comparative Law   |
| 25.355 | International Business and Finance, Law of      | 25.382 | Shipping Law   |
| 25.356 | Law and Social Problems                         | 25.383 | Social Control of Land   |
| 25.357 | Law of Banking                                  | 25.384 | State and Local Taxation   |
| 25.358 | Law of Landlord and Tenant                      | 25.385 | The Law Relating to Damages  |
| 25.359 | Law Reform                                      | 25.386 | The Legal Process  |
| 25.360 | Law Relating to Computers                       | 25.387 | Trial Practice   |
| 25.361 | Legal Accounting                                | 25.388 | United Nations Law and Problems of<br>World Order  |
| 25.362 | Legal Aspects of Race Relations                 | 25.389 | Pacific Legal Studies  |
| 25.363 | Legal Education                                 | 25.390 | Women and the Law  |
| 25.364 | Legal History                                   | 25.391 | Restitution  |
| 25.365 | Legal problems of the European<br>Common Market | 25.392 | Advanced studies in a selected topic as<br>prescribed by the Dean of the Faculty of<br>Law |
| 25.366 | Local Government Law                            | -399   |  |
| 25.367 | Maori Land Law                                  | 25.604 | Dissertation   |

**Note:** In any academic year, any additional subject may be withdrawn if there are insufficient staff to teach it or too few enrolments to warrant its being taught.

### Maximum courses

4. Regulation 6 of the LLB Regulations (prescribing maximum courses) shall apply to a candidate's course for this Degree: but nothing in that Regulation shall apply to the additional work that a candidate is required to undertake for this Degree; except that, where a candidate proposes to enrol for both the additional Honours subjects required under Regulations 2 and 3 in the same year, one of those subjects shall count as an extra subject for the purpose of Regulation 6 of the LLB Regulations.

### Research Paper

5. Any candidate may with the approval of the Dean elect to present a research paper in lieu of an examination in a subject of the Third Law Examination or a subject listed in Regulation 3. On condition that the teacher certifies that the research paper is related to that subject.

### Standards

6. This Degree shall be awarded to candidates who have fulfilled the requirements of these Regulations and whose work throughout the course has been in the opinion of the Faculty of a sufficiently high standard. There shall be two classes of Honours: First Class Honours and Second Class Honours. Second Class Honours shall be awarded in either First Division or Second Division.

### Transfer to LLB (Hons)

7. The Senate may, on written application by a candidate who has completed only the First Law Examination and, in special circumstances any other candidate, and without payment of a fee, permit the candidate to transfer to a course under these Regulations; for which the candidate may then be credited with the subjects already passed for the LLB.

### Transfer to LLB

8. A candidate whose work does not in the opinion of the Faculty satisfy the standard prescribed in Regulation 6 or who at any stage elects to withdraw from this Degree, shall be entitled to have credited to the LLB Degree without payment of a fee those subjects (being subjects for the LLB Degree) in which the candidate has passed or been credited with a pass.

### Commencement

9. These Regulations shall apply to all candidates taking the Degree of Bachelor of Laws (Honours) from January 1973, but any candidate who began his or her law course before that date or before 1967 shall be entitled to the credits prescribed in Regulation 12 of the Regulations for the Degree of Bachelor of Laws.



## PROFESSIONAL LEGAL STUDIES COURSE

A candidate seeking admission as a barrister and solicitor of the High Court of New Zealand must satisfy the requirements of the Professional Examinations in Law Regulations 1987.

The Regulations are printed in the University Grants Committee Handbook. Details are available on request from the Director of the Institute of Professional Legal Studies or the Dean of the Faculty of Law.

## THE DEGREE OF MASTER OF LAWS LLM

*The personal course of study of every candidate must be approved by the Senate. Approval will normally be granted for courses which are in accordance with the following Regulations: for general provisions affecting their courses of study students are referred to the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General), and the Examination Regulations.*

1. Subject to the Admission Regulations, a candidate for the Degree of Master of Laws shall before enrolment for this Degree have been admitted or qualified for admission to the Degree of Bachelor of Laws and also:
  - (i) have attained an average grade of B or higher in the candidate's course of study for the Degree of Bachelor of Laws, or
  - (ii) have otherwise shown to the satisfaction of the Faculty of Law capacity to undertake advanced study and research in the subjects proposed to be taken for this Degree.
2. No person shall be admitted to this Degree who has been admitted to the Degree of Master of Jurisprudence.
3. (1). Every candidate for this Degree shall:

### EITHER:

- (a) Pass the examination in six of the papers prescribed in Regulation 4 of these Regulations:
  - (i) in one year in the case of a full-time student, or
  - (ii) in not more than two successive years in the case of a student who is not full-time.

### OR:

- (b) (i) in one year pass the examination in three of the papers so prescribed, and
- (ii) present a thesis (25.601) under the conditions prescribed in Regulation 5.
- (2) For the purpose of this Regulation a candidate is not a full-time student if he or she:
  - (a) is in employment (including self-employment) for more than 20 hours in each week of the academic year throughout the two years of the work for this Degree, and
  - (b) furnishes such evidence, of being and of intending to continue so employed, as the Dean of the Faculty of Law ("the Dean") may from time to time reasonably require.
4. The subjects of examination for the Degree are such of the following as are from time to time offered:
 

|   |  |
|---|--|
| 25.501, 25.502 Administrative Law<br>25.503, 25.504 Commercial Law<br>25.505, 25.506 Comparative Law<br>25.507, 25.508 Constitutional Law<br>25.509, 25.510 Conflict of Laws<br>25.511, 25.512 Creditors' Remedies<br>25.513, 25.514 Criminal Law<br>25.515, 25.516 Criminology<br>25.517, 25.518 Environmental Law<br>25.519, 25.520 Equity<br>25.521, 25.522 Family Law<br>25.523, 25.524 Industrial Law<br>25.525, 25.526 International Law<br>25.527, 25.528 Jurisprudence<br>25.529, 25.530 Land Law<br>25.531, 25.532 Law and Society<br>25.533, 25.534 Law of Banking and<br>Exchange Control<br>25.535, 25.536 Law of Bodies Corporate<br>and Unincorporate<br>25.537, 25.538 Law of Contract<br>25.539, 25.540 Law of Evidence<br>25.541, 25.542 Law of Taxation and<br>Estate Planning<br>25.543, 25.544 Law of Torts<br>25.545, 25.546 Law Reform<br>25.547, 25.548 Local Government Law | 25.549, 25.550 Pacific Legal Studies<br>25.551, 25.552 Planning Law<br>25.553, 25.554 Restitution<br>25.555, 25.556 Sales and Sales Financing<br>25.557, 25.558 Shipping Law<br>25.559, 25.560 Transport Law<br>25.561, 25.562 Air and Space Law<br>25.563, 25.564 Special Topics prescribed<br>by the Dean of Law<br>25.565, 25.566 Special Topics prescribed<br>by the Dean of Law<br>25.567, 25.568 Civil Rights<br>25.569, 25.570 Special Topics prescribed<br>by the Dean of Law<br>25.571, 25.572 Welfare Law<br>25.573, 25.574 Insurance Law<br>25.575, 25.576 New Zealand Legal History<br>25.577, 25.578 Special Topics prescribed<br>by the Dean of Law<br>25.579, 25.580 Special Topics prescribed<br>by the Dean of Law<br>25.581, 25.582 Special Topics prescribed<br>by the Dean of Law<br>25.583, 25.584 Partnership<br>25.585, 25.586 Maori Land Law<br>25.587, 25.588 International Trade |
|---|--|

One or two papers:

- (i) prescribed for the Degree of MCom, and (ii) taught in the Department of Commercial Law in the School of Commerce, which in the opinion of the Dean of the Faculty of Law is not substantially similar to any paper offered and taught in that Faculty under this Regulation.

Note: Subjects that are offered in the current *Calendar* year will be by arrangement with the Dean.

**Thesis**

5. When a candidate elects to present a thesis (25.601) the following conditions shall apply:
- The thesis shall be of the value of three papers, and shall consist of an original contribution to the history, philosophy, exposition, or criticism of the law, prepared under the supervision of a University teacher, upon a subject approved by the Dean.
  - A candidate may submit the thesis in the year in which the examination is taken or in a subsequent year.
  - The candidate shall deliver the thesis to the Registrar by 1 November of the year in which it is presented or at a subsequent date arranged with the supervising teacher.
  - At the discretion of the Dean the candidate may be required to attend, within four weeks of the date on which the thesis was submitted, an oral examination on the subject of the thesis. For this purpose either two or three examiners shall be appointed by the Dean.
  - Where a candidate submits a thesis which is of insufficient standard on first submission, the Senate may in exceptional circumstances, when recommended by the examiners, permit the candidate to rewrite the thesis and submit it again by a specified date.
  - The thesis shall be presented within three years of the year in which the examination is first taken but this period may in special cases be extended by the Senate.

**Note:** An abstract is to be submitted with each copy of the thesis; see Examination Regulation 15.

**Honours**

6. (1). This Degree may be awarded with or without Honours.  
 (2). A candidate who is required to re-sit a written examination or to re-submit the thesis shall not be eligible for an award with Honours.

**Transitional**

7. These Regulations shall apply to all candidates for the Degree of Master of Laws; except that any candidate for the Degree who first enrolled for it before 1982 shall complete the course under the Regulation last published in the 1981 *Calendar*.

**Note:** Students proposing to enrol for a Master's Degree are expected to discuss their enrolment with the Dean not later than the December preceding their enrolment.

## THE DEGREE OF MASTER OF JURISPRUDENCE MJur

*The personal course of study of every candidate must be approved by the Senate. Approval will normally be granted for courses which are in accordance with the following Regulations: for general provisions affecting their courses of study students are referred to the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General), and the Examination Regulations.*

**General Provisions**

1. Subject to the Admission Regulations a candidate for the Degree of Master of Jurisprudence shall before enrolment for this Degree have been admitted or qualified to the Degree of Bachelor of Laws (Honours).  
 2. No person shall be admitted to this Degree who has been admitted to the Degree of Master of Laws.

**Course Content**

3. (a). Every candidate for this Degree shall either:  
 (i) in one year pass the examinations in four papers in the subjects prescribed in Regulation 4 of these Regulations, or  
 (ii) submit a thesis (25.611) under the conditions prescribed in Regulation 5.  
 (b). The choice of subjects to be taken by each candidate proceeding under Regulation 3 (a) (i)  
 (i) shall be subject to the approval of the Dean of the Faculty of Law ("the Dean"), and  
 (ii) shall not include any subject with which the candidate has been credited for the Degree of Master of Commerce.
4. The subjects of examination for the Degree are such of the following as are from time to time offered:
- |                |                           |                |                             |
|----------------|---------------------------|----------------|-----------------------------|
| 25.501, 25.502 | Administrative Law        | 25.535, 25.536 | Law of Bodies Corporate and |
| 25.503, 25.504 | Commercial Law            |                | Unincorporate               |
| 25.505, 25.506 | Comparative Law           | 25.537, 25.538 | Law of Contract             |
| 25.507, 25.508 | Constitutional Law        | 25.539, 25.540 | Law of Evidence             |
| 25.509, 25.510 | Conflict of Laws          | 25.541, 25.542 | Law of Taxation and         |
| 25.511, 25.512 | Creditors' Remedies       |                | Estate Planning             |
| 25.513, 25.514 | Criminal Law              | 25.543, 25.544 | Law of Torts                |
| 25.515, 25.516 | Criminology               | 25.545, 25.546 | Law Reform                  |
| 25.517, 25.518 | Environmental Law         | 25.547, 25.548 | Local Government Law        |
| 25.519, 25.520 | Equity                    | 25.549, 25.550 | Pacific Legal Studies       |
| 25.521, 25.522 | Family Law                | 25.551, 25.552 | Planning Law                |
| 25.523, 25.524 | Industrial Law            | 25.553, 25.554 | Restitution                 |
| 25.525, 25.526 | International Law         | 25.555, 25.556 | Sales and Sales Financing   |
| 25.527, 25.528 | Jurisprudence             | 25.557, 25.558 | Shipping Law                |
| 25.529, 25.530 | Land Law                  | 25.559, 25.560 | Transport Law               |
| 25.531, 25.532 | Law and Society           | 25.561, 25.562 | Air and Space Law           |
| 25.533, 25.534 | Law of Banking & Exchange | 25.563, 25.564 | Special Topics prescribed   |
|                | Control                   |                | by the Dean of Law          |

|                |  |                |  |
|----------------|--|----------------|--|
| 25.565, 25.566 | Special Topics prescribed by the Dean of Law | 25.577, 25.578 | Special Topics prescribed by the Dean of Law |
| 25.567, 25.568 | Civil Rights                                 | 25.579, 25.580 | Special Topics prescribed by the Dean of Law |
| 25.569, 25.570 | Special Topics prescribed by the Dean of Law | 25.581, 25.582 | Special Topics prescribed by the Dean of Law |
| 25.571, 25.572 | Welfare Law                                  | 25.583, 25.584 | Partnership                                  |
| 25.573, 25.574 | Insurance Law                                | 25.585, 25.586 | Maori Land Law                               |
| 25.575, 25.576 | New Zealand Legal History                    | 25.587, 25.588 | International Trade                          |

one paper

- (i) prescribed for the Degree of MCom, and (ii) taught in the Department of Commercial Law in the School of Commerce, which in the opinion of the Dean of the Faculty of Law is not substantially similar to any paper offered and taught in that Faculty under this Regulation.

**Note:** Subjects that are offered in the current *Calendar* year will be by arrangement with the Dean.

### Thesis

5. When a candidate elects to present a thesis (25.611) the following conditions shall apply:
- The thesis shall consist of an original contribution to the history, philosophy, exposition or criticism of the law, prepared under the supervision of a University teacher; upon a subject approved by the Dean.
  - The candidate shall deliver the thesis to the Registrar by 1 November of the year in which it is presented, or at a subsequent date arranged with the supervising teacher.
  - At the discretion of the Dean the candidate may be required, within four weeks of the date on which the thesis was submitted, to attend an oral examination on the subject of the thesis. For this purpose either two or three examiners shall be appointed by the Dean.
  - Where a candidate submits a thesis which is of insufficient standard on first submission, the Senate may in exceptional circumstances when recommended by the examiners, permit the candidate to rewrite the thesis and submit it again by a specified date.
  - The thesis shall be submitted not later than three years after the candidate's enrolment for the Degree, but this period may in special cases be extended by the Senate.

**Note:** An abstract is to be submitted with each copy of the thesis; see Examination Regulation 15.

### Distinction

6. (1). This Degree may be awarded with or without Distinction.  
 (2). A candidate who is required to re-sit a written examination or to re-submit the thesis shall not be eligible for an award with Distinction.

**Note:** Students proposing to enrol for a Master's Degree are expected to discuss their enrolment with the Dean not later than the December preceding their enrolment.

## DEGREE COURSE PRESCRIPTIONS

### PRESCRIPTIONS FOR LLB AND FOR LLB (Hons)

#### Law Intermediate Examination

##### 25.103 The Legal System

An introduction to: theories of the nature, functions and origins of law and legal systems; the New Zealand legal system, including its sources of law, the nature of its courts and selected other legal institutions, and its operation in historical and contemporary New Zealand; Maori concepts of law and justice and their relationship to the New Zealand legal system; legal reasoning including both statutory interpretation and case-law reasoning.

#### First Law Examination

##### 25.101 Criminal Law

The general principles of criminal liability. Selected indictable and summary offences chargeable under New Zealand Law. An introduction to the procedure upon indictment and to summary procedure (excluding the law of evidence).

##### 25.104 The Law of Torts

General principles of civil liability. The law as to the various kinds of torts. The law relating to compensation for personal injury by accident in New Zealand.

##### 25.105 The Law of Contract

The general principles of the law relating to agreements. Selected topics in the law of contract. An introduction to the law of agency.

##### 25.106 Public Law

The principles and workings of the constitution, the institutions of government, the exercise of public power and relations between the citizens and the state. Controls on the exercise of public power, including an introduction to judicial review.

##### 25.406 Legal Practice I

#### Second Law Examination

##### 25.201 Law of Property

An introduction to the law relating to property in land, goods and other tangible and intangible assets.

##### 25.202 Equity

The general principles of equity.

##### 25.204 Commercial Law

An introduction to the law relating to the sale of goods, hire purchase, personal property, secured transactions, credit contracts, consumer protection and negotiable instruments.

##### 25.205 Administrative Law

The general principles of administrative law. Subordinate legislation. Discretionary powers of Ministers,

officials and local bodies. Administrative tribunals and their functions. Controls over the exercise of legislative, judicial and other powers.

#### **25.207 Advanced Criminal Law**

Selected advanced problems in criminal law and criminal procedure.

#### **25.208 Company Law and Partnership**

An introduction to the principles of company law and the law of partnership. Rights and liabilities of those who form, operate and deal with companies, and partnerships.

#### **25.209 Intellectual Property**

Studies in the content and impact of copyright, patents, trademarks, and unfair competition in New Zealand and elsewhere.

#### **25.210 Criminology**

An introduction to the theory of criminology. Selected studies in crime and its causes, law enforcement, the administration of criminal justice, and the nature and purpose of the penal system.

#### **25.211 Family Law**

The law relating to cohabitation and marriage. The establishment of parenthood and the legal incidents of the relationship between parent and child. Adoption.

#### **25.212 Industrial Law**

Selected studies in the relationship of employer and employee; the rights, responsibilities and organisation of trade unions; the determination of industrial disputes relating to wages, conditions and rights; and the legality of industrial action.

#### **25.213 International Institutions**

The principles of international law as they relate to the structure and functioning of international institutions. The role of international institutions in the settlement of international disputes, particularly the role of the International Court of Justice. Selected projects relating to specific international institutions.

#### **25.214 International Law**

An introduction to the law of nations. Selected topics in the adjudication and settlement of international disputes, the law of war, peace and neutrality, and the law of international institutions.

#### **25.218 Legal History**

An introduction to the history of present-day legal rules and institutions. Selected topics in English and New Zealand legal history.

#### **25.220 Local Government Law**

An introduction to the law governing the structure, powers and territorial definition of local government units. Selected studies in legal problems of local government and its relationship with central government.

#### **25.221 Income Tax**

The principles of the law relating to income tax.

#### **25.222 Roman Law**

Outline of Roman private law according to Justinian and Gaius. Sources and historical development of Roman Law. The law of actions; the law of property; obligations; family and succession. Translation of substantial portions of the Latin text shall not be required.

#### **25.223 Women and the Law**

A study of the law as it defines women's role in society

with particular emphasis on the use of the law to eliminate discrimination.

#### **25.224 Pacific Legal Studies**

Selected aspects of customary, private, public and international law of Pacific States and territories with particular regard to Fiji, Western Samoa, the Cook Islands, Niue, Tokelau Islands, New Zealand and Papua New Guinea.

#### **25.225 Law and Society**

A study of relationships between theories of law and justice and social conditions, with particular reference to empirical studies of law internationally and domestically.

#### **25.226 Legal Theory**

A study of major theoretical perspectives on the nature, values and functions of law, including a study of justice; the structure of legal ideas and the nature of legal reasoning from common law and comparative perspectives.

#### **25.228 Competition Law**

A study of the principles of competition law.

#### **25.229 Advanced Contract**

Advanced studies in the law of contract.

#### **25.230 Advanced Tort**

Advanced studies in the law of tort.

#### **25.231 Problems in Civil Obligations**

Actions which may be brought in either contract or tort. Civil rights and obligations having features similar to those of contract or tort, other than those associated with the law of restitution.

#### **25.232 Legislation**

The making and application of primary and subordinate legislation; legislative drafting and statutory interpretation. Selected topics from the history, evaluation, codification and judicial review of legislation.

#### **25.233 Succession and Matrimonial Property**

An introduction to the laws of wills and succession, testamentary promises and the administration of estates. Matrimonial and family property.

#### **25.234 Welfare Law**

A study of the law relating to income maintenance, physical and mental handicap, housing and homelessness, access to legal and related services.

#### **25.235 Community Law Project**

Participation in and report on a project involving law in a community context, and evaluation of the issues arising therefrom.

#### **25.236, 25.237, 25.238, 25.239, 25.240 Special Topics**

To be prescribed by the Dean of the Faculty of Law.

#### **25.407 Legal Practice II**

Note: Some of these courses will be taught for the full-year and others will not. Students should refer to the current Law School Handbook to find out the size of courses they propose to take in any particular year, since this may vary from time to time.

### **Third Law Examination**

#### **25.301 Advanced Administrative Law**

Advanced problems in selected areas of Administrative Law.

#### **25.302 Advanced Commercial Law**

Advanced studies in selected areas of Commercial Law.

**25.303 Advanced Constitutional Law**

Advanced problems in selected areas of Constitutional Law.

**25.304 Advanced Criminology**

Advanced problems in the causes of crime, the administration of criminal justice, and the punishment and treatment of the offender. Selected studies in criminological methods and research.

**25.305 Advanced Family Law**

Advanced problems in selected areas of Family Law.

**25.306 Advanced Industrial Law**

Advanced studies in selected areas of Industrial Law.

**25.307 Advanced International Law**

Advanced studies in selected areas of the law of nations.

**25.308 Civil Procedure**

Advanced studies in procedure in civil actions and other proceedings, with reference to the evolution of the present form of civil action, pleadings, discovery and other pre-trial devices; joinder of parties; jurisdiction (including equitable jurisdiction), appellate procedure.

**25.309 Company Finance**

Problems in company finance law, including the raising of share and debt capital by companies.

**25.310 Comparative Law**

A study of selected systems of law with particular reference to the development of civil law on the Continent of Europe.

**25.311 Conflict of Laws**

Selected studies in the law governing transactions with elements outside New Zealand Courts, fundamental concepts of conflict of laws, and the validity and enforcement of foreign judgements.

**25.312 Creditors' Remedies**

Legal problems arising where a debtor is in financial difficulties. Selected studies in the rights of unsecured creditors in bankruptcy and company liquidation; other methods of enforcing judgements.

**25.313 Environmental Law**

An analysis and criticism of the existing legal framework relating to the use and protection of the physical environment. Courts, agencies and Parliament as institutions for dealing with environmental problems. A study of specific environmental problems such as air and water pollution, agricultural chemicals, marine pollution. International aspects of environmental problems.

**25.314 Evidence**

The general principles of the law of evidence in civil and criminal cases. A critical evaluation of forensic law in New Zealand, including a comparison with systems of trial in other countries.

**25.315 International Trade**

The law relating to international business transactions.

**25.316 Law Reform**

A study of the institutions responsible for law reform and the methods by which reform is achieved. A selection of legal rules and institutions which have been, or may be, the subject of reform.

**25.319 Planning Law**

An introduction to the law relating to town and country planning. Selected studies in urban and rural planning

problems, and processes and decisions of planning authorities, and the function of courts in planning matters.

**25.320 Restitution**

A study of the concept of unjust enrichment and its diverse practical applications.

**25.321 Supervised Research****25.322 Vendor and Purchaser**

Advanced problems in the sale of land. Selected case studies examining the legal and taxation consequences of the agreement for sale and purchase and the conveyance of land, and the function and responsibility of the lawyer acting in such transactions.

**25.323 Estate and Tax Planning**

The principles of the law relating to estate and gift duties, estate planning and tax planning.

**25.324 Air and Space Law**

The principles of international and municipal law regulating airspace and outer space, aircraft, spacecraft, persons on board such craft and the rights and obligations of operators and users of aircraft and spacecraft, taking into consideration the economic and technical problems involved and aspects of national and international policies.

**25.325 Maori Land Law**

Legal problems of Maori land holding. Occupation and use.

**25.326 Insurance Law**

The principles of the law relating to insurance.

**25.328 Advocacy**

The preparation and presentation of cases; the theory and practice of advocacy.

**25.329 Advanced Agency and Partnership**

Advanced studies in the law of agency and partnership.

**25.330 Legal Ethics**

An examination of the ethical duties of legal practitioners towards their clients, the Courts and other tribunals, other practitioners, and members of the public.

**25.331 Remedies**

Advanced study of civil remedies; and their historical and philosophical backgrounds. Discretionary relief in Equity and under statutes.

**25.332 Consumer Law**

The law relating to consumer protection. Consumer-remedies.

**25.333 Negotiation, Mediation and Dispute Resolution**

Studies in the theory and practice of negotiation, mediation and dispute resolution.

**25.334 Advanced Legal Philosophy**

Advanced studies in the philosophy of law.

**25.335 Advanced Law and Society**

Advanced studies in the relationship between selected legal theories and social conditions.

**25.336 Natural Resources Law**

A study of the law relating to the management and exploitation of natural resources.

**25.337, 25.338, 25.339, 25.340 Special Topics**

To be prescribed by the Dean of the Faculty of Law. Any one or more optional courses prescribed for the Second Law Examination.

**25.408 Legal Practice III**

Note: Students should consult the current Law School Handbook to find out the size of these courses, and any prerequisites for taking them since these may vary from time to time.

**PRESCRIPTIONS FOR LAW AND PRACTICE IN NEW ZEALAND**

The prescriptions for the Examination in the law and practice in New Zealand may be obtained from the Dean of the Faculty. Written notice of a candidate's wish to take the Examination should be given to the Registrar with payment of the prescribed fee.

**PRESCRIPTIONS FOR LLB (Hons)****For the Subjects Listed in Regulation 3****25.341 Admiralty Law**

Admiralty jurisdiction, extent of territorial waters, sources of maritime law, nature of maritime liens, bills of lading and charter parties, aspects of conflicts of laws in admiralty, rules established by international law in admiralty cases.

**25.342 Air and Space Law**

Same prescription as for 25.324 (LLB).

**25.343 Aspects of Industrial Law**

Analysis of selected problems in industrial law and industrial relations.

**25.344 Business Regulation**

Government regulation of business, analysis of scope of control, its purposes and dangers, the common law and statutory regulations of trade and industry, restraint of trade and monopoly, restrictive trade practices.

**25.345 Causes of Crime**

The significance of primary and secondary criminogenic factors.

**25.346 Civil Rights**

A comparative study of recognised human rights and existing legal safeguards. Aspects include protection of minority rights, speech and assembly, police practices, race relations.

**25.347 Commercial Letters of Credit**

The law and practice relating to commercial letters of credit.

**25.348 Consumer Law**

A study of legislative and judicial attempts to protect the consumer.

**25.349 Copyright and Patent Law**

Common law, statutory and international rules governing copyright and patents.

**25.350 Corporation Finance**

Problems of corporate finance, including the rules governing raising capital and loans, rights to dividend and distribution of assets, amendment of corporate instruments, re-organisation, holding and subsidiary companies.

**25.351 Economic Regulation**

Legal problems encountered in regulating economic behaviour and alternative techniques for resolving them; anti-trust and labour problems.

**25.352 Environmental Law**

An analysis and criticism of the existing legal framework relating to the use and protection of the physical

environment. Courts, agencies and Parliament as institutions for dealing with environmental problems. A study of specific environmental problems such as air and water pollution, chemicals, marine pollution. International aspects of environmental problems.

**25.353 Estate Planning**

An analysis of the factors which deserve consideration in planning for the future management and disposition of income and capital.

**25.354 Insurance (other than Marine Insurance) Law**

The law governing insurance other than marine insurance.

**25.355 Law of International Business and Finance**

A study of problems of commercial law, administrative law and international law arising from international trade, business and finance, including New Zealand's relationship with the European Economic Community.

**25.356 Law and Social Problems**

Selected aspects of the interrelation between legal evolution and social change, interaction of legislation and social change, the role of law in the modern state.

**25.357 Law of Banking**

The law relating to banking, with particular reference to the relationship of banker and customer and the banker's duty to third parties.

**25.358 Law of Landlord and Tenant**

The law of landlord and tenant, including statutory tenancies and fair rents legislation.

**25.359 Law Reform**

Methods of law reform with particular reference to New Zealand.

Note: Students may be required to prepare research papers for Law Reform Committees.

**25.360 Law Relating to Computers**

An introduction to selected topics related to computers, including a brief introduction to elementary programme preparation, computerisation of statute and case law, protection of software, labour relations affected by computers and databank privacy.

**25.361 Legal Accounting**

A critical examination of generally accepted accounting principles, an introduction to corporate financial problems, accounting problems of a law office.

**25.362 Legal Aspects of Race Relations**

Investigation of legal efforts to combat discrimination, and an inquiry into the validity of law in this field.

**25.363 Legal Education**

The objectives, methods and development of legal education and the functions and obligations of the law teacher.

**25.364 Legal History**

The effect on law of social, economic and constitutional change, with particular reference to England and New Zealand.

**25.365 Legal Problems of the European Common Market**

The objectives, structures and functions and relationships of the European Economic Community and other European regional arrangements.

**25.366 Local Government Law**

The law developed and applied in local government,

construction and operation of statutory powers of local and public authorities, bylaws, financing, contractual and tortious liability.

#### **25.367 Maori Land Law**

Legal problems of Maori land holding. Occupation and use.

#### **25.368 Marine Insurance Law**

The law governing marine insurance.

#### **25.369 Medico-Legal Problems**

A study of the relationship between law and medicine, preparation and presentation of medical proof in litigation, expert medical testimony.

#### **25.370 Military Law**

Aspects of military law, the relation of civil to military jurisdiction, court martial procedure.

#### **25.371 Penology**

An analysis of theory and practice in regard to the punishment and treatment of the offender.

#### **25.372 Problems in Choice of Law**

The application of choice of law methods to specific situations, the feasibility of developing choice of law rules and principles consistent with predictability and uniformity.

#### **25.373 Problems in Contract and Tort**

Analysis of selected problems arising in the law of contract and the law of tort.

#### **25.374 Problems in Criminal Law**

Analysis of selected problems in criminal law.

#### **25.375 Problems in Equity**

Problems relating to the equitable jurisdiction of the courts, with particular reference to the law of trusts.

#### **25.376 Problems in Legal Philosophy**

Selected jurisprudential problems of definition of law; the concept of justice, relation of law and morality, the function of legal analysis.

#### **25.377 Professional Responsibility**

The role of the legal profession in modern society, the obligations of a barrister and solicitor, conflict of interest, defending the unpopular client or cause.

#### **25.378 Registration of Title to Land**

Legal problems of the Torrens system of title registration.

#### **25.379 Remedies Against the Government**

Liability of the Crown in tort and contract, procedure for enforcing rights against the Crown.

#### **25.380 Securities Law**

The law governing securities over personal and industrial property.

#### **25.381 Selected Topics in Comparative Law**

Analysis of selected topics from foreign law systems, including civil and Soviet law.

#### **25.382 Shipping Law**

Legal principles governing ownership of ships, limitation of liability of shippers, charter-parties and freightment, collision, salvage, towage, carriage of goods by sea.

#### **25.383 Social Control of Land**

The purposes and effect of legislation controlling the use of land, housing improvement schemes, town and country planning, government and local body powers.

#### **25.384 State and Local Taxation**

Analysis of property, sales, personal and corporate

income taxes, tax policy and administration, local body taxation.

#### **25.385 The Law Relating to Damages**

The principles governing damages in contract and in tort.

#### **25.386 The Legal Process**

The function of the courts, counsel, legislature, administrative agencies and officials in decision-making.

#### **25.387 Trial Practice**

Advocacy, procedural and substantive law in trial proceedings, pre-trial preparation, proof.

#### **25.388 United Nations Law and Problems of World Order**

The basic constitutional problems of the United Nations, regulation of the use of force, definition of aggression, punishment of crimes against the peace, disarmament, control of atomic energy, regulation of the use of outer space, an international police force.

#### **25.389 Pacific Legal Studies**

Selected aspects of customary, private, public and international law of Pacific states and territories with particular regard to Fiji, Western Samoa, the Cook Islands, Niue, Tokelau Islands, New Zealand and Papua New Guinea.

#### **25.390 Women and the Law**

A study of the law as it defines women's role in society with particular emphasis on the use of the law to eliminate discrimination.

#### **25.391 Restitution**

Same prescription as for 25.320 (LLB).

#### **25.392-25.399 Advanced Studies in a selected topic as prescribed by the Dean of the Faculty of Law**

#### **25.604 Dissertation**

---

### **PRESCRIPTIONS FOR ADDITIONAL SUBJECTS FOR CANDIDATES SEEKING ADMISSION AS BARRISTERS AND SOLICITORS OF THE HIGH COURT OF NEW ZEALAND**

A candidate for admission as a barrister and solicitor of the High Court of New Zealand must have completed the requirements of the LLB or LLB (Hons) Degree, achieved passes in certain compulsory degree subjects, and successfully undertaken the Professional Legal Studies Course. Details of the content of the Professional course are available on request from the Director of the Institute of Professional Legal Studies or the Dean of the Faculty of Law.

---

### **PRESCRIPTIONS FOR LLM AND MJur**

#### **25.501, 25.502 Administrative Law**

The general principles of administrative law with special reference to New Zealand.

#### **25.561, 25.562 Air and Space Law**

Advanced studies in the principles of international and municipal law regulating airspace and outer space, aircraft, spacecraft, persons on board such craft and the rights and obligations of operators and users of aircraft and spacecraft, taking into consideration the

economic and technical problems involved and aspects of national and international policies.

**25.503, 25.504 Commercial Law**

Advanced studies in the law relating to the distribution and financing of goods and services, including security devices and the rights of creditors and third persons.

**25.505, 25.506 Comparative Law**

Advanced studies in selected systems of law.

**25.507, 25.508 Constitutional Law**

Advanced studies in constitutional and local body law.

**25.509, 25.510 Conflict of Laws**

The nature of private international law. Fundamental conceptions; classification; renvoi; domicile; public policy. The principles of private international law relating to: (a) persons; (b) contracts; (c) torts; (d) property; (e) procedure and evidence.

**25.511, 25.512 Creditors' Remedies**

Legal problems arising where a debtor is in financial difficulties. Advanced studies in the rights of unsecured creditors in bankruptcy and company liquidation; other methods of enforcing judgments.

**25.513, 25.514 Criminal Law**

The history and principles of criminal law, comprising selected topics on substantive and adjective criminal law, evidence in criminal cases, the actiology of crime and the purposes and methods of punishment.

**25.515, 25.516 Criminology**

The nature and extent of crime in our society. Selected studies of the causes of crime: results, underlying assumptions and limitations. Political aspects of the criminal law. The interactionist approach. Selected criminological problems.

The criminal justice system. Objectives of the system. The role of the police. A critical analysis of penal measures. Sentencing. Evaluating the effectiveness of penal sanctions. Selected penological problems.

**25.517, 25.518 Environmental Law**

An examination of the law relating to pollution and other environmental problems with an emphasis on comparative studies. An exploration of various institutional arrangements for managing the environment. The concept of environmental impact reporting.

**25.519, 25.520 Equity**

The history and principles of equity.

**25.521, 25.522 Family Law**

Advanced studies in the law relating to husband and wife, parent and child and family relationships generally.

**25.523, 25.524 Industrial Law**

Selected and comparative studies in Industrial Law.

**25.525, 25.526 International Law**

The principles of the law of nations in peace and war including the status and relations *inter se* of the members of the Commonwealth of Nations and the Republic of Ireland and questions of nationality.

**25.527, 25.528 Jurisprudence**

Theories concerning the origin and development of law. The history of legal theory. Modern schools of thought concerning the nature and purpose of law. Sources of law. Analysis of legal conceptions.

**25.529, 25.530 Land Law**

The history and principles of land law.

**25.531, 25.532 Law and Society**

Advanced studies in the interrelation between legal evolution and social change, interaction of legislation and social change, and the role of law in the modern state.

**25.533, 25.534 Law of Banking and Exchange Control**

The law and practice relating to banking and exchange control regulations, with special reference to New Zealand.

**25.535, 25.536 The Law of Bodies Corporate and Unincorporate**

The principles of the law as to corporations and unincorporated bodies with special reference to registered companies.

**25.537, 25.538 The Law of Contract**

The history and principles of the law of contract, including the law as to the sale of goods, negotiable instruments, and all other special classes of contracts.

**25.539, 25.540 The Law of Evidence**

The principles of the law of evidence in civil and criminal cases.

**25.541, 25.542 Law of Taxation and Estate Planning**

Advanced studies in the law relating to taxation and gift, death and conveyance duties.

Advanced studies in the principles and practice of estate planning.

**25.543, 25.544 The Law of Torts**

The history and principles of civil liability with special reference to the law of torts.

**25.545, 25.546 Law Reform**

A study of the institutions responsible for law reform and the methods by which reform is achieved. A selection of legal rules and institutions which have been, or may be, the subject of reform.

**25.547, 25.548 Local Government Law**

Selected studies of the history, structure, powers and practice of local government units and related aspects.

**25.549, 25.550 Pacific Legal Studies**

Selected aspects of customary, private, public and international law of Pacific states and territories with particular regard to Fiji, Western Samoa, the Cook Islands, Niue, Tokelau Islands, New Zealand and Papua New Guinea.

**25.551, 25.552 Planning Law**

Selected studies of land use regulation law, planning structure, practice and theory.

**25.553, 25.554 Restitution**

Advanced problems focusing on situations and available remedies where benefits have been wrongfully or unfairly acquired.

**25.555, 25.556 Sales and Sales Financing**

Advanced studies in the law of sales and the financing of domestic sales in New Zealand.

**25.557, 25.558 Shipping Law**

Advanced studies in the principles of carriage of goods by sea, including containerisation.

**25.559, 25.560 Transport Law**

Advanced studies in the history, exposition and comparison of selected topics of the law of transport, including land, sea and air transport, including rules of international law and of municipal law.



**25.563, 25.564 Special Topic**  
To be prescribed by the Dean of the Faculty of Law.

**25.565, 25.566 Special Topic**  
To be prescribed by the Dean of the Faculty of Law.

**25.567, 25.568 Civil Rights**

**25.569, 25.570 Special Topic**  
To be prescribed by the Dean of the Faculty of Law.

**25.571, 25.572 Welfare Law**

**25.573, 25.574 Insurance Law**

**25.575, 25.576 New Zealand Legal History**

**25.577, 25.578 Taxation**

**25.579, 25.580 Special Topic**  
To be prescribed by the Dean of the Faculty of Law.

**25.581, 25.582 Special Topic**  
To be prescribed by the Dean of the Faculty of Law.

**25.583, 25.584 Partnership**

**25.585, 25.586 Maori Land Law**

**25.587, 25.588 International Trade**

## DIPLOMA COURSE REGULATIONS AND PRESCRIPTIONS

### DIPLOMA IN CRIMINOLOGY DipCrim

The Diploma in Criminology has been discontinued. In special circumstances arrangements will be made by the Department of Law to enable students already enrolled for the Diploma to complete it under the Regulations published in the 1987 Calendar at pp 291-292.

### POSTGRADUATE DIPLOMA IN LEGAL STUDIES PGDipLS

*The personal course of study of every candidate must be approved by the Senate. Approval will normally be granted for courses which are in accordance with the following Regulations: for general provisions affecting their courses of study students are referred to the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General), and the Examination Regulations.*

1. Subject to the Admission Regulations, a candidate for the Postgraduate Diploma in Legal Studies shall, before enrolment, have been admitted to or be qualified for admission to the Degree of Bachelor of Laws or the Degree of Bachelor of Laws (Honours).
2. A candidate for the Diploma shall follow a course of instruction of not less than one year.
3. (1). Every candidate for the Diploma, either within one year in the case of a full-time student, or within not more than three successive years in the case of a student who is not full-time, shall:
  - (a) Fulfil the requirements of the project referred to in Regulation 4.
  - (b) Pass the examination in and fulfil any other requirements of each of four or more papers:
    - (i) which, if taken concurrently, would involve an aggregate of ten hours of instruction per week; and
    - (ii) which include papers listed in Regulation 5 in number sufficient when added to the project referred to in Regulation 4 to constitute at least one third of the candidate's course for this Postgraduate Diploma; and
    - (iii) of which the remainder are made up of papers offered from time to time for the Second or Third Law Examination of the Degree of Bachelor of Laws; and
    - (iv) of which none are, or are substantially similar to, papers already credited to the candidate's Bachelor's Degree.
  - (2). For the purposes of this Regulation a candidate is not a full-time student if he or she:
    - (a) is in employment (including self-employment) for more than 20 hours in each week of the academic year throughout the three years of the work for this Postgraduate Diploma, and
    - (b) furnishes such evidence of being and intending to continue so employed, as the Dean of the Faculty of Law (hereinafter referred to as "the Dean") may from time to time reasonably require.
4. Every candidate shall, during his or her course, complete to the satisfaction of the Faculty of Law (hereinafter referred to as "the Faculty") a substantial exercise (carrying a weighting of three hours of instruction per week) in the detailed application of law upon the terms as to content, supervision and reporting prescribed therefor by the Dean of the Faculty of Law.

**Note:** A candidate wishing to comply with this requirement should enrol for 25.451 Legal Project.

5. The papers for which provision is made in Regulation 3 shall be:
 

|   |  |
|---|--|
| <p>25.452 Advanced Studies in Criminal Law</p> <p>25.453 Studies in Planning Law</p> <p>25.454 Advanced Studies in Administrative Law</p> <p>25.455 Advanced Studies in Family Law</p> <p>25.456 Advanced Studies in International Law</p> <p>25.457 Studies in Company Finance</p> <p>25.458 Studies in Comparative Law</p> <p>25.459 Studies in the Conflict of Laws</p> <p>25.460 Studies in Creditors' Remedies</p> <p>25.461 Studies in Restitution</p> <p>25.462 Studies in the Law of Vendor and Purchaser</p> <p>25.463 Studies in Estate and Tax Planning</p> <p>25.464 Studies in Air and Space Law</p> | <p>25.465 Studies in Maori Land Law</p> <p>25.466 Studies in Intellectual Property</p> <p>25.467 Advanced Studies in Legal Philosophy</p> <p>25.468 Advanced Studies in Law and Society</p> <p>25.469 Advanced Studies in Constitutional Law</p> <p>25.470 Advanced Studies in Criminology</p> <p>25.471 Advanced Studies in Industrial Law</p> <p>25.472 Advanced Studies in Contract</p> <p>25.473 Advanced Studies in Tort</p> <p>25.474 Studies in Civil Obligations</p> <p>25.475 Special topics approved by the</p> <p>25.480 Dean of the Faculty of Law</p> |
|---|--|
6. A candidate who, being a full-time student, has failed within one year or, being a part-time student, has failed

within three successive years, to complete the requirements of the Postgraduate Diploma may in exceptional circumstances be permitted by the Faculty to complete those requirements in a subsequent year.

7. A candidate for this Postgraduate Diploma may, with the prior approval of the Dean, elect to submit a Research Paper in lieu of examination in any one of the papers chosen for the Postgraduate Diploma if the teacher in the subject has certified that the Research Paper is related to that subject.
8. A candidate who has passed papers for a Certificate of Proficiency which meet the requirements of Regulation 3 may, subject to the approval of the Dean, credit those papers to the Postgraduate Diploma.

Note: Refer Enrolment and Course Regulations (General), Regulation 14.

9. These Regulations shall come into force on 1 January, 1988.

## **PRESCRIPTIONS FOR PGDipLS**

### **25.452 Advanced Studies in Criminal Law**

Selected advanced problems in criminal law and criminal procedure.

### **25.453 Studies in Planning Law**

An introduction to the law relating to town and country planning. Selected studies in urban and rural planning problems, and processes and decisions of planning authorities, and the function of courts in planning matters.

### **25.454 Advanced Studies in Administrative Law**

Advanced problems in selected areas of Administrative Law.

### **25.455 Advanced Studies in Family Law**

Advanced problems in selected areas of Family Law.

### **25.456 Advanced Studies in International Law**

Advanced studies in selected areas of the law of nations.

### **25.457 Studies in Company Finance**

Problems in company finance law, including the raising of share and debt capital by companies.

### **25.458 Studies in Comparative Law**

A study of selected systems of law with particular reference to the development of civil law on the Continent of Europe.

### **25.459 Studies in the Conflict of Laws**

Selected studies in the law governing transactions with elements outside New Zealand Courts, fundamental concepts of conflict of laws, and the validity and enforcement of foreign judgments.

### **25.460 Studies in Creditors' Remedies**

Legal problems arising where a debtor is in financial difficulties. Selected studies in the rights of unsecured creditors in bankruptcy and company liquidation; other methods of enforcing judgments.

### **25.461 Studies in Restitution**

A study in the concept of unjust enrichment and its diverse practical applications.

### **25.462 Studies in the Law of Vendor and Purchaser**

Advanced problems in the sale of land. Selected case studies examining the legal and taxation consequences of the agreement for sale and purchase and the conveyance of land, and the function and responsibility of the lawyer acting in such transactions.

### **25.463 Studies in Estate and Tax Planning**

The principles of the law relating to estate and gift duties, estate planning and tax planning.

### **25.464 Studies in Air and Space Law**

The principles of international and municipal law regulating air space and outer space, aircraft spacecraft, persons on board such craft and the rights and obligations of operators and users of aircraft and spacecraft, taking into consideration the economic and technical problems involved and aspects of national and international policies.

### **25.465 Studies in Maori Land Law**

Legal problems of Maori land holding. Occupation and use.

### **25.466 Studies in Intellectual Property**

Studies in the content and impact of copyright, patents, trademarks, and unfair competition in New Zealand and elsewhere.

### **25.467 Advanced Studies in Legal Philosophy**

Advanced studies in the philosophy of Law.

### **25.468 Advanced Studies in Law and Society**

Advanced studies in the relationship between selected legal theories and social conditions.

### **25.469 Advanced Studies in Constitutional Law**

Advanced problems in selected areas of Constitutional Law.

### **25.470 Advanced Studies in Criminology**

Advanced problems in the causes of crime, the administration of criminal justice, and the punishment and treatment of the offender. Selected studies in criminological methods and research.

### **25.471 Advanced Studies in Industrial Law**

Advanced studies in selected areas of Industrial Law.

### **25.472 Advanced Studies in Contract**

Advanced studies in the law of contract.

### **25.473 Advanced Studies in Tort**

Advanced studies in the law of tort.

### **25.474 Studies in Civil Obligations**

Actions which may be brought in either contract or tort. Civil rights and obligations having features similar to those of contract or tort, other than those associated with the law of restitution.

### **25.475-25.480 Special Topics**

To be prescribed by the Dean of the Faculty of Law.

# Faculty of Music

## Contents

|   |     |  |
|---|-----|--|
| <b>Degree Course Regulations</b>                                | 304 | Degree of Bachelor of Music                            |
|   | 306 | Degree of Bachelor of Music (Performance)              |
|   | 309 | Degree of Bachelor of Music (Performance) with Honours |
|   | 310 | Degree of Master of Music                              |
|   | 312 | Degree of Doctor of Music                              |
| <b>Degree Course Prescriptions</b>                              | 313 | Degree of Bachelor of Music                            |
|   | 314 | Degree of Bachelor of Music (Performance)              |
|   | 315 | Degree of Bachelor of Music (Performance) with Honours |
|   | 315 | Degree of Master of Music                              |
| <b>Diploma Course Regulations and Prescriptions</b>             | 315 | Diploma in Music                                       |
|   | 317 | Diploma in Music with Honours                          |
| <b>Course of Instruction in a Single Instrument Regulations</b> | 318 | Course of Instruction in a Single Instrument           |

## FACULTY OF MUSIC

Undergraduate courses offered within the Faculty comprise a General Music Degree, a Performance Degree and a Diploma in Performance.

### **Bachelor of Music (BMus)**

This is a 3-year course which includes a broad study of all the main areas of music, but does not include courses in performance. After a common first-year course, students can follow a variety of options which allow for some degree of specialisation, in either composition, musicology or general skill subjects.

### **Bachelor of Music (Performance) (BMus (Perf))**

A 4-year course, of which half is devoted to performance. Students can select from various academic papers to make up their degree to the required total of 28 papers.

### **Diploma in Music (DipMus)**

The course for the Diploma extends over 3 years. Performance papers take up a little over half the course requirement, and entry to the course may be made on the basis of special merit in performance.

In addition to these courses within the Faculty of Music, courses include up to 11 papers as a major subject for BA, and there are four papers in music - 28.104 Music in the 20th Century, 28.105 Basic Musical Techniques, 28.113 Acoustics and 28.114 Introduction to Ethnomusicology - which are offered on a non-advancing basis.

### **Postgraduate Degrees**

Graduates holding the Degree of BMus (Perf) may on application, be accepted for a further year of study leading to the Degree of BMus (Perf) (Hons). Similarly, DipMus students may, in approved cases, enrol for the one year course for DipMus (Hons).

### **Two-Year Postgraduate Courses in Music**

Following the Degree of BMus or BMus (Performance) students may be accepted for the Degree of Master of Music (MMus) which can be taken in the area of composition, or performance, or musicology. Students who are BA graduates may elect to follow a course in musicology for a Master of Arts (MA) or a course in either composition or performance for the Degree of Master of Philosophy (MPhil).

Details of other postgraduate degrees (DMus and PhD) appear in the appropriate sections of this *Calendar*.

## DEGREE COURSE REGULATIONS

### THE DEGREE OF BACHELOR OF MUSIC BMus

*The personal course of study of every candidate must be approved by the Senate. Approval will normally be granted for courses which are in accordance with the following Regulations: for general provisions affecting their courses of study students are referred to the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General), and the Examination Regulations.*

#### **General Provisions**

1. Subject to the Admission Regulations, a candidate for the Degree of Bachelor of Music shall:
  - (a) before enrolling for this Degree satisfy the Head of the Department of Music that a suitable standard in music has been attained, and
  - (b) follow a course of study of not less than three years.

#### **Course Entrance**

2. A candidate for entrance to the course of study for the Degree shall give notice in writing on the prescribed form to be received by the Registrar not later than 15 December of the year immediately preceding that in which the candidate wishes to enrol. Refer also to pre-enrolment instructions in the *Calendar*.

#### **Course Requirements**

3. The course of study for the Degree shall consist of twenty-one papers selected from those listed in the Schedule to these Regulations. Papers are classified in three stages, I, II and III.
4. Every course of study shall include:
  - (a) at least four papers in Music at Stage I level
  - (b) no more than eleven papers in Music at Stage II level
  - (c) at least three papers in Music at Stage III level
  - (d) at least two and not more than four papers (not being papers in Music) from those prescribed for the Degree of Bachelor of Arts (whether Group A or Group B of the Schedule to the Regulations for that Degree).
5. Except with the permission of the Senate no candidate shall take in any one year more than nine papers for this Degree.
6. A candidate shall participate in approved choral or instrumental work within the University throughout enrolment for this Degree, to the satisfaction of the Head of the Department of Music.
7. The Senate may on the recommendation of the Head of the Department grant a credit of two unspecified Music papers at Stage I level towards this Degree to any student who has passed the examination in Performance 28.120 for the Degree of Bachelor of Music (Performance) or Diploma in Music with a grade of C-, or a credit of two unspecified Music papers at Stage II level towards this Degree to any student who

has passed the examination in Performance 28.220 for the Degree of Bachelor of Music (Performance) or Diploma in Music with a grade of C-.

Note: See Regulations 4 and 6 of the Regulations for the Degree of Bachelor of Music (Performance) and Regulation 6 of the Regulations for the Diploma in Music.

8. A candidate wishing to be enrolled in any subject which is also a subject of examination for the Degree of Bachelor of Arts shall comply with such of the course regulations for that Degree relating to prerequisites, combinations of subjects, and practical work, as are applicable to that subject, save where the Senate in individual cases allows otherwise.
9. The Senate may, in such exceptional cases as it thinks fit, approve a personal course of study which does not conform to the foregoing Regulations.

#### Application of Regulations and Transitional Provisions

10. (a) Except as otherwise provided in this Regulation, the course of study of every candidate shall be governed by these Regulations.  
(b) A candidate who gained credit in any unit or units or was entitled to exemptions under any of the former Regulations for this Degree shall be credited with such equivalent paper or papers as the Senate may determine.  
(c) For candidates who enrolled for this Degree before 1976 the subject prerequisites, corequisites, and restrictions, where not covered by these Regulations, shall be determined by the Head of the Department of Music.
11. These Regulations shall come into force on 1 January, 1987.

#### Schedule

1. This Schedule sets out paper numbers, subjects, prerequisites, corequisites, restrictions, and other conditions applying to courses of study for the Degree of Bachelor of Music.
2. This Schedule shall be read with the Regulations for the Degree and with the prescriptions set out elsewhere in the *Calendar*.
3. The heading 'prerequisites' in relation to a paper refers to other papers which must be passed before the candidate may take that paper.
4. The heading 'corequisites' in relation to a paper refers to other papers which must be taken concurrently with that paper or have been passed in a previous year.
5. The heading 'restrictions' in relation to a paper refers to a paper which cannot be taken in addition to that paper.
6. Except as provided elsewhere in these Regulations or in this Schedule, a candidate may not enrol for any paper until all prerequisite and corequisite requirements and other requirements listed in the Schedule are satisfied. The papers prescribed for this Degree are:

|                 | Title of Paper                           | Prerequisites   | Corequisites              | Restrictions | Qualifications  |
|-----------------|--|---|---------------------------|--------------|---|
| <b>MUSIC</b>    |  |   |                           |              |   |
| <b>Music I</b>  |  |   |                           |              |   |
| 28.100          | Harmony and Counterpoint                 |   | 28.101, 28.103            | 28.122       | A candidate must pass papers 28.100, 28.101 and 28.103 with an overall grade of at least C+ before proceeding to Music II |
| 28.101          | Musicianship and Materials of Music      |   | 28.100, 28.103            |              |   |
| 28.103          | Music in Society                         |   | 28.100, 28.101            |              |   |
| 28.110          | Composition                              |   |                           |              |   |
| *28.112         | Keyboard Skills                          |   | 28.100, 28.101            |              |   |
| 28.113          | Acoustics                                |   | 28.103                    |              |   |
| 28.114          | Introduction to Ethnomusicology          |   |                           | 03.103       |   |
| <b>Music II</b> |  |   |                           |              |   |
| 28.201          | Musicianship, Materials and Analysis     |   | 28.202; one of 28.203-208 | 28.209       |   |
| 28.202          | Harmony and Counterpoint                 | 28.100, 28.101<br>28.103 with an overall grade of at least C+ | 28.201                    |              |   |
| 28.203          | The Middle Ages and Early Renaissance ** |   |                           |              |   |
| *28.204         | The Late Renaissance and Baroque Era††   |   |                           | 28.205       |   |
| 28.207          | The Classic-Romantic Era**               |   |                           | 28.206       |   |
| *28.208         | The Twentieth Century††                  |   |                           |              |   |

|           | Title of Paper                           | Prerequisites                     | Corequisites                                 | Restrictions | Qualifications |
|-----------|--|-----------------------------------|--|--------------|----------------|
| MUSIC     |  |                                   |  |              |                |
| 28.210    | Composition<br>(counts as two papers)    | 28.110; as for 28.201             | 28.201                                       | 03.209       |                |
| †28.212   | Keyboard Skills                          | 28.112; as for 28.201             |  |              |                |
| 28.214    | Ethnomusicology                          | 28.114; as for 28.201             |  |              |                |
| 28.215    | Orchestration                            | As for 28.201                     | 28.110                                       |              |                |
| 28.216    | Electronic Music                         |                                   |  |              |                |
| 28.218    | Conducting                               |                                   |  |              |                |
| 28.223    | Musicology                               |                                   |  |              |                |
| Music III |  |                                   |  |              |                |
| 28.301    | Analysis                                 | 28.201, 28.202; one of 28.203-208 | One of 28.303-308; one other Stage III paper | 28.309       |                |
| †28.302   | Adv. Harmony and Counterpoint            |                                   |  |              |                |
| 28.303    | The Middle Ages & Early Renaissance**    |                                   |  |              |                |
| *28.304   | The Late Renaissance and Baroque Era††   |                                   |  |              |                |
| 28.307    | The Classic-Romantic Era**               |                                   |  |              |                |
| *28.308   | The Twentieth Century††                  |                                   |  |              |                |
| 28.310    | Composition (counts as 3 papers)         | 28.210; as for 28.301             | 28.301<br>28.215                             | 03.318       |                |
| 28.314    | Ethnomusicology                          | 28.214; as for 28.301             |  |              |                |
| 28.316    | Studies in Contemporary Electronic Music | 28.216; as for 28.301             | 28.301                                       |              |                |
| †28.318   | Conducting                               | 28.218; as for 28.301             |  |              |                |
| †28.322   | Special Topic                            |                                   |  |              |                |
| 28.323    | Musicology                               | 28.223; as for 28.301             |  |              |                |
| †28.324   | Special Topic                            |                                   |  |              |                |

**Note:**\* This paper will not be taught during the current *Calendar* year.† This paper may not be taught during the current *Calendar* year.

\*\* Taught in odd-numbered years.

†† Taught in even-numbered years.

## THE DEGREE OF BACHELOR OF MUSIC (PERFORMANCE)

### BMus (Perf)

*The personal course of study of every candidate must be approved by the Senate. Approval will normally be granted for courses which are in accordance with the following Regulations: for general provisions affecting their courses of study students are referred to the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General), and the Examination Regulations.*

**General Provisions**

- Subject to the Admission Regulations, a candidate for the Degree of Bachelor of Music (Performance) shall:
  - before enrolling for this Degree satisfy the Head of the Department of Music that a suitable standard in music, including performance, has been attained, and
  - follow a course of full-time study of not less than four years, and
  - follow a course of study continuously except where and in so far as the Head of the Department permits otherwise.

**Course Entrance**

2. A candidate for entrance to the course of study for this Degree shall give notice in writing on the prescribed form to the Registrar not later than 30 June immediately preceding the year in which the candidate wishes to enrol.

**Course Requirements**

3. The course of study for the Degree shall consist of twenty-eight papers selected from those listed in the Schedule to these Regulations. Papers are classified in four stages - I, II, III and IV. With the approval of the Head of the Department of Music, a candidate may take one or two papers as prescribed for BA in lieu of one or two of the Music papers. Approval will not be granted in the first year of the candidate's course of study for this Degree save in special cases.
4. For performance 28.120, 28.220, 28.320 and 28.420, a candidate shall:
  - (a) carry out performance work (including the giving of class demonstrations), and
  - (b) attend all classes in individual training and such classes in ensemble training, including orchestral rehearsals, as may be required, and
  - (c) pass a Performance examination, with a grade of C or better in the case of 28.120 and 28.220, in any one of the following subjects:
 

|           |              |              |             |             |
|-----------|--------------|--------------|-------------|-------------|
| †Flute    | †French Horn | Violin       | Piano       | †Recorder   |
| †Oboe     | †Trumpet     | Viola        | Harpsichord | †Percussion |
| †Clarinet | †Trombone    | Cello        | Organ       | †Harp       |
| †Bassoon  | †Tuba        | †Double Bass | Singing     | †Guitar     |

Note: (i)† This instrument may not be taught during the current *Calendar* year.

(ii) A candidate who passes the subject Performance 28.120 with a grade of C- and is therefore not eligible to proceed with the course of study for BMus (Performance) may in respect of that pass apply for a credit of two unspecified Stage I Music papers towards the course of study for the Degree of BMus. A candidate who passes the subject 28.220 with a grade C- and is therefore not eligible to proceed with the course of study for BMus (Performance) may in respect of that pass apply for a credit of two unspecified Stage II Music papers towards the course of study for the Degree of BMus. See Regulation 8 of the Regulations for that Degree.

- (d) A candidate presenting Singing for this Degree shall attend such language courses and do such language work as the Head of the Department may require.
- (e) Organ students will also receive tuition in harpsichord. A student studying the harpsichord may elect to include studies in the classical organ, its technique and repertoire, as part of the course.
5. Except with the permission of the Senate no candidate shall take in any one year more than nine papers for this Degree.
6. Except as provided in the Regulations for the Degree, a candidate shall comply with all the prerequisite and corequisite requirements and all restrictions and other conditions, set out in this Schedule.

Note: See note to Regulation 4 of these Regulations.

7. It shall be a condition of a candidate's being permitted to pursue or continue this course of study that he or she:
  - (a) shall not undertake any musical work, including musical competitions and examinations, outside the course without the consent of the Head of the Department of Music, and
  - (b) shall participate in approved choral or instrumental work within the University throughout enrolment for this Degree, to the satisfaction of the Head of the Department of Music.
  - (c) Shall not enrol for any other course of study without the leave of the Head of the Department of Music.
8. (a) Except as otherwise provided in this Regulation, the course of study of every candidate shall be governed by these Regulations.
- (b) The Senate may in such exceptional cases as it thinks fit approve a personal course of study which does not conform to the foregoing Regulations.
- (c) A candidate who gained credit in any unit or units of a Professional Examination under any of the Regulations for the Degree of Bachelor of Music (Executant) shall be credited with such equivalent paper or papers as the Senate may determine.
9. These Regulations shall come into force on 1 January 1976.

**Schedule**

1. This Schedule sets out paper numbers, subjects, prerequisites, corequisites, restrictions, and other conditions applying to the course of study for the Degree of Bachelor of Music (Performance).
  2. This Schedule shall be read with the Regulations for the Degree and with the prescriptions set out elsewhere in the *Calendar*.
  3. The heading 'prerequisites' in relation to a paper refers to other papers which must be passed before the candidate may take that paper.
  4. The heading 'corequisites' in relation to a paper refers to other papers which must be taken concurrently with that paper or have been passed in a previous year.
  5. The heading 'restrictions' in relation to a paper refers to a paper which cannot be taken in addition to that paper.
  6. Except as provided elsewhere in these Regulations or in this Schedule, a candidate may not enrol for any paper until all prerequisite and corequisite requirements and other requirements listed in the Schedule are satisfied.
- The papers prescribed for this Degree are:

| Title of Paper   |  | Prerequisites                                 | Corequisites                      | Restrictions   | Qualifications  |
|--|--|---|-----------------------------------|----------------|---|
| MUSIC  |  |   |                                   |                |   |
| Note: The number enrolling in certain papers is restricted. Candidates should consult <i>Calendar</i> Prescriptions for BMus, paragraph 2. |  |   |                                   |                |   |
| Stage I  |  |   |                                   |                |   |
| 28.120   | Performance (counts as three papers)     |   | 28.100, 28.101<br>28.103          |                | A pass of at least C in paper 28.120 and an overall pass of at least C+ in papers 28.100, 28.101 & 28.103 must be achieved before advancing to Stage II |
| 28.100   | Harmony and Counterpoint                 | }   | 28.120                            | 28.122         |   |
| 28.101   | Musicianship and Materials of Music      |   |                                   |                |   |
| 28.103   | Music in Society                         |   |                                   |                |   |
| †28.112  | Keyboard Skills (a)                      |   |                                   |                |   |
| Additional papers as listed in the Schedule for the Degree of Bachelor of Music  |  |   |                                   |                |   |
| Stage II   |  |   |                                   |                |   |
| 28.220   | Performance (counts as three papers)     | A pass of at least C in 28.120; as for 28.201 | 28.201, 28.202; one of 28.203-208 |                |   |
| 28.201   | Musicianship, Materials and Analysis     | }   | 28.220                            | 28.209         |   |
| 28.202   | Harmony and Counterpoint                 |   |                                   |                |   |
| 28.203   | The Middle Ages and Early Renaissance ** |   |                                   |                |   |
| *28.204  | The Late Renaissance & Baroque Era††     |   |                                   | 28.205         |   |
| 28.207   | The Classic-Romantic Era**               |   |                                   | 28.206         |   |
| *28.208  | The Twentieth Century ††                 |   |                                   |                |   |
| †28.212  | Keyboard Skills (a)                      | 28.112; as for 28.201                         |                                   |                |   |
| Additional papers as listed in the Schedule for the Degree of Bachelor of Music  |  |   |                                   |                |   |
| Stage III  |  |   |                                   |                |   |
| 28.320   | Performance (counts as four papers)      | A pass of at least C in 28.220; as for 28.301 | 28.301                            |                |   |
| 28.301   | Analysis                                 | }   | 28.320                            | 28.309         |   |
| 28.303   | The Middle Ages and Early Renaissance**  |   |                                   |                |   |
| *28.304  | The Late Renaissance and Baroque Era††   |   |                                   | 28.204, 28.205 |   |
| 28.307   | The Classic-Romantic Era**               |   |                                   | 28.206, 28.207 |   |
| *28.308  | The Twentieth Century††                  |   |                                   | 28.208         |   |
| Additional papers as listed in the Schedule for the Degree of Bachelor of Music.   |  |   |                                   |                |   |
| Stage IV   |  |   |                                   |                |   |
| 28.420   | Performance (counts as four papers)      | 28.301, 28.320                                | one of 28.303-308                 |                |   |
| Additional papers as listed in the Schedule for the Degree of Bachelor of Music.   |  |   |                                   |                |   |

**Notes:**

(a) Students studying Keyboard instruments must enrol in 28.112 in their first year, and in 28.212 in the second.

\*\* Taught in odd-numbered years.

†† Taught in even-numbered years.

\* Will not be taught in the current *Calendar* year.† May not be taught in the current *Calendar* year.



## THE DEGREE OF BACHELOR OF MUSIC (PERFORMANCE) WITH HONOURS BMus (Perf) (Hons)

*The personal course of study of every candidate must be approved by the Senate. Approval will normally be granted for courses which are in accordance with the following Regulations: for general provisions affecting their courses of study students are referred to the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General), and the Examination Regulations.*

### General Provisions

- Subject to the Admission Regulations, a candidate for the Degree of Bachelor of Music (Performance) with Honours shall before enrolling for this Degree:
  - have been admitted or qualified for admission to the Degree of Bachelor of Music (Performance)
  - (i) have obtained a grade higher than C- in each compulsory paper in Music at Stage II and Stage III levels provided that in special circumstances where the Head of the Department so recommends the Senate may accept a C- pass in any paper or papers, and
  - (ii) have obtained a grade of B- or higher in Performance at Stage IV, 28.420, and
  - have been accepted by a Music Department Selection Committee for study for the Degree of Bachelor of Music (Performance) with Honours, at an interview held in the November prior to first enrolment for the Degree of Bachelor of Music (Performance) with Honours.
- Subject to the Admission Regulations, a candidate may enrol for this Degree having completed at least 24 papers including at least three at advanced level for the Bachelor of Music (Performance) Degree, provided that
  - the proposed course for the Degree of Bachelor of Music (Performance) with Honours is a full-time course and will extend over a period of not less than two academic years.
  - Grades averaging B- or above in the Stage III level papers for the Bachelor of Music (Performance) Degree have been obtained.
  - He or she enrolls in not more than one paper in the first year of the course for the Degree of Bachelor of Music (Performance).
  - The requirements of Regulations 1(b) and (c) above are satisfied.
  - Should he or she not pass the remaining paper or papers in the first year of the Bachelor of Music (Performance) course, the Honours course shall be suspended until the remaining paper or papers have been passed.
- Subject to the Admission Regulations, a candidate for the Degree of Bachelor of Music (Performance) with Honours shall follow a course of full-time study of not less than one year.

### Course Requirements

- The course of study for this Degree shall consist of 28.525 Performance (which shall count as five papers) and any one of the papers 28.400-402, 28.404-407, 28.409-411, 28.414-416, 28.419, 28.421-423, 28.604 as prescribed for the Degree of Master of Music.
- For Performance 28.525 a candidate shall:
  - carry out performance work (including the giving of class demonstrations),
  - attend all classes in individual training and such classes in ensemble training, including orchestral rehearsals, as may be required.
  - Pass a performance examination in any one of the following subjects:
 

|           |              |              |             |             |
|-----------|--------------|--------------|-------------|-------------|
| †Flute    | †French Horn | Violin       | Piano       | †Recorder   |
| †Oboe     | †Trumpet     | Viola        | Harpsichord | †Percussion |
| †Clarinet | †Trombone    | Cello        | Organ       | †Harp       |
| †Bassoon  | †Tuba        | †Double Bass | Singing     | †Guitar     |
  - Organ students will also receive tuition in harpsichord. A student studying harpsichord may elect to include studies in classical organ, its techniques and repertoire, as part of the course.
  - A candidate presenting Singing for this Degree shall attend such language courses and do such language work as the Head of the Department of Music may require.
- It shall be a condition of a candidate's being permitted to pursue or continue this Course of study that he or she:
  - Shall not undertake any musical work, including musical competitions and examinations, outside the course without the consent of the Head of the Department of Music.
  - Shall not enrol for any other Course of study without the leave of the Head of the Department of Music.
- The Degree of Bachelor of Music (Performance) with Honours shall be awarded to candidates who have fulfilled these Regulations and whose work throughout the course has been in the opinion of the Faculty of Music of a sufficiently high standard.
- The Senate may in such exceptional cases as it thinks fit, approve a personal course of study which does not conform to the foregoing Regulations.
- These Regulations shall come into force on 1 January 1980.

## THE DEGREE OF MASTER OF MUSIC MMus

*The personal course of study of every candidate must be approved by the Senate. Approval will normally be granted for courses which are in accordance with the following Regulations: for general provisions affecting their courses of study students are referred to the enrolment and Course Regulations (General), and the Examination Regulations.*

### General Provisions

1. Subject to the Admission Regulations, a candidate for the Degree of Master of Music shall before enrolling for this Degree:
  - (a) have been admitted or qualified for admission either to the Degree of Bachelor of Music or to the Degree of Bachelor of Music (Performance), and
  - (b) (i) have obtained a grade higher than C- in each compulsory paper in Music at Stage II and Stage III levels provided that in special circumstances where the Head of the Department so recommends the Senate may accept a C- pass in any paper or papers, and
  - (ii) if taking Performance for this Degree, have obtained a grade of B- or better in Performance at Stage IV, 28.420.
  - (c) Have been accepted by a Music Department Selection Committee for study for the Degree of Master of Music, at an interview held in the November prior to first enrolment for the Degree of Master of Music.
2. Subject to the Admission Regulations, a candidate may enrol for this Degree having completed at least 20 papers including at least three papers at advanced level for the Bachelor of Music Degree or having completed at least 26 papers including at least three papers at advanced level for the Bachelor of Music (Performance) Degree, provided that:
  - (a) the proposed course for the Degree of Master of Music is a full-time course and will extend over a period of not less than two academic years;
  - (b) he or she has obtained grades averaging B- or above in the Stage III level papers for the Bachelor of Music Degree or, in the case of a student taking Performance for a Masters Degree, grades averaging B- or above in the Stage III level papers for the Bachelor of Music (Performance) Degree;
  - (c) he or she enrolls for the paper or papers in the first year of the course for the Degree of Master of Music;
  - (d) he or she satisfies the requirements in Regulations 1(b) and (c) above;
  - (e) should he or she not pass the remaining paper or papers in the first year of the Master of Music course, the Masters course shall be suspended until he or she has passed the remaining paper or papers.
3. No candidate shall be accepted for enrolment in subject (2) Performance for this Degree if the candidate has previously been awarded the Degree of Bachelor of Music (Performance) with Honours in this University.
4. A candidate for this Degree shall pursue a course of study of not less than two years.

### Course Content

5. A candidate shall be required to fulfil the requirements and pass the examination in one of the subjects prescribed in the Schedule.
6. (a) A candidate for this Degree may with the approval of the Head of the Department of Music take one paper not previously taken from those listed under Music III of the Schedule to the Regulations for the Degree of Bachelor of Music.
- (b) A candidate for this Degree may with the permission of the Senate take one Stage III or one Masters paper in a subject other than Music, if such paper is related to the candidate's research or professional interests. Such paper shall substitute for and be equivalent to one paper in the Degree of Master of Music.
7. A candidate for this Degree shall not substitute a paper or papers for any paper or papers for which the candidate has already been examined for this Degree, nor, excepting as provided in Regulation 13, shall the candidate re-sit a paper for this Degree.

### Composition

8. When a Composition is required, the following conditions apply:
  - (a) The Composition shall be prepared under the supervision of a University teacher.
  - (b) A candidate may present the Composition in the year in which he or she takes the papers or, subject to the provisions of paragraph (c) of this Regulation, in a subsequent year.
  - (c) A candidate shall present the Composition within three years of the year in which he or she takes the papers, provided that the time may be extended in exceptional cases by the Senate.
  - (d) A candidate shall submit the Composition together with a certificate from the supervisor stating that the work was carried out by the candidate under supervision to the Registrar by 1 November in the year in which it is to be presented, or at a subsequent date if so arranged with the Head of the Department.
  - (e) If the examiner with the concurrence of the assessor so recommends, a Composition which is not satisfactory shall be returned to the candidate, who may be permitted to revise it and to resubmit it by a later date to be specified by the examiner.

### Performance

9. When a Recital is required, the following conditions apply:
  - (a) A candidate shall present a concert Recital of approximately one hour's duration, the programme to be approved by the Head of the Department. The candidate shall submit the proposed programme to the Head of the Department for approval not later than the end of the first term.

- (b) The Recital shall be restricted to ONE of the following.
  - (i) an approved orchestral instrument
  - (ii) the pianoforte
  - (iii) the organ and/or harpsichord
  - (iv) any other instrument approved by the Head of the Department
  - (v) singing.
- (c) A candidate may present the Recital in the year in which he or she takes the papers or, subject to the provisions of paragraph (d) of this Regulation, in a subsequent year.
- (d) A candidate shall present the Recital within three years of the year in which he or she takes the papers, provided that the time may be extended in exceptional cases by the Senate.
- (e) A candidate shall be present for the Recital on a date to be specified by the Head of the Department.
- (f) If the Recital is not satisfactory and if the examiner with the concurrence of the assessor so recommends, the candidate may be permitted to present a further Recital at a later date to be specified by the examiner.

### **Thesis**

10. When a Thesis is required, the following conditions shall apply:

- (a) The Thesis shall embody the results obtained by the candidate in an investigation relating to some branch of Music.
- (b) A candidate may present the Thesis in the year in which he or she takes the papers or, subject to the provisions of paragraph (c) of this Regulation, in a subsequent year.
- (c) A candidate shall present the Thesis within three years of the year in which he or she takes the papers, provided that the time may be extended in exceptional cases by the Senate.
- (d) A candidate shall submit the Thesis to the Registrar by 1 November of the year in which it is to be presented or at a subsequent date if so arranged with the Head of the Department.
- (e) If the Examiner with the concurrence of the Assessor so recommends, a Thesis which is not satisfactory shall be returned to the candidate, who may be permitted to revise it and to resubmit it by a later date to be specified by the Examiner.

**Note:** An abstract is to be submitted with each copy of the Thesis, see Examination Regulation 15.

### **Honours**

- 11. (a) There shall be two classes of Honours: First Class Honours and Second Class Honours. Second Class Honours shall be awarded in two divisions, First Division and Second Division.
- (b) Honours shall not be awarded if the papers in the first year in which the candidate sits an examination for the Degree are unsatisfactory or if the Composition or Performance or Thesis at its first presentation is unsatisfactory; provided, however, that a candidate whose performance at a written examination has been seriously impaired by illness or injury or exceptional circumstances beyond his or her control (certified under the aegrotat or compassionate pass provisions of the Examination Regulations) may elect, instead of applying for an aegrotat or compassionate pass, to take a subsequent written examination so that he or she shall be eligible for the award of Honours subject to the provisions of sub-clause (c) of this Regulation.
- (c) A candidate shall be eligible for the award of Honours only if he or she completes the requirements for Honours within three years of the first enrolment for this Degree, provided that this period may in exceptional cases be extended by the Senate.

### **Special Provision**

- 12. The Senate may in such special circumstances as it thinks fit approve a personal course of study which does not conform to the foregoing Regulations.

### **Schedule**

#### **(1) Composition**

**Prerequisites:** 28.301, at least one of 28.303-308, 28.310.

**Requirements:** Four papers and a Composition (28.610) which shall count as three papers.

The papers shall be selected from 28.400, 28.401, 28.402, 28.406, 28.409, 28.410, 28.415, 28.416 and 28.604.

All candidates must enrol for 28.410 (Composition) and one of 28.409, 28.415 and 28.416 in their first year of enrolment.

#### **(2) Performance**

**Prerequisites:** 28.301, at least one of 28.303-308, 28.420.

**Requirements:** Four papers and a Recital (28.620) which shall count as three papers.

The papers shall be selected from 28.400, 28.401, 28.402, 28.406, 28.409, 28.419, 28.520 and 28.604.

All candidates must enrol for 28.520 (Performance) and one of 28.409 and 28.419 in their first year of enrolment.

#### **(3) Musicology**

**Prerequisites:** 28.301, at least one of 28.303-308, at least one of 28.314 and 28.323. Candidates will normally be required to satisfy the Head of Department of their ability to read an approved language other than English.

**Requirements:** Four papers and a Thesis (28.601) which shall count as three papers.

The papers shall be selected from 28.400, 28.401, 28.402, 28.406, 28.409, 28.414, 28.419 and 28.423.

All candidates must enrol for 28.423 (Seminar in Musicology), and one of 28.402, 28.406, 28.409 and 28.414 in their first year of enrolment.

## THE DEGREE OF DOCTOR OF MUSIC DMus

1. Except as provided in the Admission Regulations, a candidate for the Degree of Doctor of Music shall hold the Degree of Master of Music of the University of Auckland or Bachelor of Music of the University of New Zealand.
2. The Degree of Doctor of Music shall be awarded for distinction in musical composition.
3. A candidate for the Degree of Doctor of Music shall apply to the Head of the Department of Music for registration as such, showing that he or she has:
  - (a) the requisite preliminary qualification set out in Regulation 1; and
  - (b) adequate training and ability to pursue a course of advanced study in musical composition.
4. (a) The Senate having received a recommendation from the Head of Department shall determine whether the candidate may be registered and the date and conditions of registration.
  - (b) A recommendation shall include:
    - (i) the proposed date of registration
    - (ii) the name of a supervisor or supervisors from members of the academic staff
    - (iii) satisfactory evidence of the candidate's training and ability to pursue the proposed course of study.
5. Having been registered as a candidate for the Degree, the candidate shall pursue a full-time course of advanced study in Composition at the University to the satisfaction of the Head of Department of Music and the Supervisor or Supervisors, for a period of at least two calendar years from the date of registration.
6. Having completed the initial two years of full-time study, a candidate may apply to the Senate for permission to continue as a part-time candidate.
7. The Supervisor shall submit to the Senate, through the Head of Department, a brief report on the progress of the candidate at the end of each year. A candidate's registration may be terminated by the Senate if an unfavorable report is received.
8. Having complied with the conditions of the foregoing Regulations, a candidate shall, within five years from the date of registration (or such further time as the Senate may permit), apply to the Registrar to be examined for the Degree.
9. (a) A candidate shall submit for examination original and substantial work, consisting of not more than three pieces, each of which may be within any of the following classes:
  - (i) orchestral work
  - (ii) opera
  - (iii) work using vocal keyboard or ensemble resources
  - (iv) presentation of Music Theatre
  - (v) electronic music.
 (b) Electronic resources may be included in work within classes (i), (ii), (iii) or (iv) in paragraph (a) of this Regulation.
10. No work shall be considered for the Degree if the work, or a major part of it, has previously formed the basis of an award of any degree or diploma in this or any other University.
11. The application to be examined shall be in writing and (accompanied by the fees prescribed in the Fees Regulations) shall be lodged with the Registrar together with:
  - (a) three copies of the work or works to be examined
  - (b) a statutory declaration which shall:
    - (i) state the extent to which the work is the candidate's own, and (in the case of a conjoint work) identify as clearly as possible which parts are the candidate's own; and
    - (ii) state what portion (if any) of the work submitted has been previously presented for a degree or diploma of the University of Auckland or any other University; and
    - (iii) declare that the work in substantially its present form has not been previously accepted for the award of a degree or diploma in this or any other University and is not being concurrently submitted for a degree or diploma in any other University.
12. (a) After having accepted the candidate's application to be examined, the Senate shall, upon the recommendation of the Head of Department, appoint as Examiners:
  - (i) the Supervisor or Supervisors
  - (ii) one person who shall be a member of staff of another University within New Zealand, and
  - (iii) one person who shall be resident outside New Zealand.
 (b) The Senate may, on the recommendation of the Head of Department, appoint a further Examiner and in exceptional circumstances two further Examiners.
13. (a) A copy of the work shall be submitted to each examiner who shall:
  - (i) report independently to the Senate on the quality of the work;
  - (ii) recommend to the Senate whether or not the Degree should be awarded.
 (b) Where the recommendation is that the Degree should not be awarded, the Examiner may recommend that the candidate be permitted to resubmit the work at a later date. A resubmission shall be accompanied by a further full examination fee.
14. A candidate who has held the qualifying degree for not less than five years may, in exceptional circumstances, be permitted by the Senate to proceed direct (without complying with Regulations 3 to 8) to examination as prescribed in Regulations 9, 10 and 11.

15. (a) In the case of a candidate who qualifies for examination under the conditions of Regulation 14, the Senate shall, as soon as possible after the application has been lodged, appoint a Moderator who shall:
    - (i) consider the work and submit through the Registrar a preliminary report, which shall indicate whether, in his or her opinion, the examination should proceed or whether the candidate should be advised to withdraw the application; and
    - (ii) state the names of not fewer than two persons recommended as suitable Examiners.
  - (b) If the Moderator recommends that the candidate should be advised to withdraw the application, the candidate shall be notified of the recommendation by the Registrar and in any such case the candidate may:
    - (i) withdraw the application, being then entitled to a refund of one half of the fees paid under the provisions of Regulation 11 of these Regulations; or
    - (ii) elect to proceed with examination.
  16. In the case of a candidate who qualifies for examination under the conditions of Regulation 14 above, and for whom the examination is to proceed:
    - (a) without being restricted in choice to the persons recommended under Regulation 15 (a) (ii), the Senate shall appoint two independent External Examiners of whom at least one shall be resident outside of New Zealand, and may at its discretion appoint an additional Examiner who may be a member of the teaching staff of the University of Auckland.
    - (b) The contents of the Moderator's report shall not be communicated to the Examiners.
    - (c) the examination shall proceed as prescribed under Regulation 13.
  17. Where only two Examiners have been appointed and their recommendations are conflicting, the Moderator or (in the case of examination under Regulations 12 and 13) the Head of Department shall submit to the Senate the name of a further person qualified to act as an Examiner; and the Senate shall then appoint the person so named or some other suitable person to be an additional Examiner to furnish an independent report in accordance with the provisions of Regulation 13, which shall be considered by the Senate together with the other reports.
- Revocation**
18. (a) The course of every candidate shall be governed by these Regulations.
    - (ii) The Regulations governing the Degree of Doctor of Music last published in the *University of Auckland Calendar* for 1985 are revoked.
    - (iii) These Regulations shall come into force on 1 January 1986.

## DEGREE COURSE PRESCRIPTIONS

### PRESCRIPTIONS FOR BMus

#### Restrictions on Entry to Courses

1. Before enrolling for this Degree, a candidate who has little evidence of musical background is required to satisfy the Head of Department of Music that an appropriate standard has been reached. For this purpose short interviews will be held in late January of the year for which preparatory application has been made.
2. A maximum of 60 first-year places will be available in the School of Music. Of this number a maximum of 35 places will be offered to Performance students, the remainder being available for BMus and BA (intending to advance in Music). Restriction will be based on previous Music Examinations and/or interview.
3. For the following papers, restrictions will be based on results in Stage I Music papers, and evidence of basic skills in the subject:

| Number | Title of Paper   | Limit |
|--------|------------------|-------|
| 28.210 | Composition      | 12    |
| 28.215 | Orchestration    | 20    |
| 28.216 | Electronic Music | 20    |
| 28.218 | Conducting       | 20    |

4. For the following paper, restriction will be based on results in Stage II Music papers, and evidence of basic skills in the subject:

| Number | Title of Paper | Limit |
|--------|----------------|-------|
| 28.310 | Composition    | 8     |
| 28.318 | Conducting     | 5     |

#### 28.100 Harmony and Counterpoint

Renaissance polyphony in 2 and 3 parts, and 17th-Century hymnody and simple 4-part chorales. As this is all vocal music, sight-singing skills are also taught.

#### 28.101 Musicianship and Materials of Music

The development of musical response by means of aural perception and keyboard skills in conjunction with a study of the elements of music.

#### 28.103 Music in Society

A survey of various aspects of Western music, setting them in the context of social and cultural change. General themes are illustrated by specific case studies, and by reference to non-Western music cultures.

#### 28.110 Composition

Creativity and craftsmanship in free composition are studied with some analysis of significant 20th-Century works and exercises in important 20th-Century techniques.

#### † 28.112 Keyboard Skills

Playing at sight from vocal and instrumental scores and from figured basses; harmonisation of melodies.

#### 28.113 Acoustics

The fundamental principles of oscillations and wave propagation; stationary waves; resonance; loudness; pitch; tone quality; intervals and scales; the principles of operation of stringed, woodwind, brass and other instruments; and the acoustics of rooms.

#### 28.114 Introduction to Ethnomusicology

Historical development of ethnomusicology; music in world society; music as human behaviour; elementary

structural analysis; introduction to music styles from selected areas.

### **28.201 Musicianship, Materials and Analysis**

The study and analysis of melodic, harmonic, rhythmic, structural and other compositional elements, through the examination of a wide range of music from plainsong and early polyphony to the present. Continuing training in musicianship.

### **28.202 Harmony and Counterpoint**

Exercises and analysis of harmonic and contrapuntal techniques based on 18th & early 19th Century practices.

### **History of Musical Style**

A survey of music in the periods as shown. Work includes the examination of specific aspects and examples, set within the historical and cultural context.

### **28.203 The Middle Ages and Early Renaissance\*\***

### **\*28.204 The Late Renaissance and Baroque Era††**

### **28.207 The Classic Romantic Era\*\***

### **\*28.208 The Twentieth Century**

### **28.210 Composition**

(Counts as two papers)

The composition of works for a wide variety of media in conjunction with analyses of short pieces. Expansion of technique and realisation of performances.

### **†28.212 Keyboard Skills**

For pianists, the course will include playing at sight from vocal scores, including the C Clef, and orchestral scores; the realisation of figured basses; the harmonisation of melodies; transposition; improvisation. For organists and harpsichordists, these studies centre on the realisation of all aspects of basso continuo.

### **28.214 Ethnomusicology - Folk and Traditional Music of the Western Continents**

English Folksong; African Music south of the Sahara; American Indian and Latin American Music.

### **28.215 Orchestration**

Technical aspects of writing for orchestral instruments and problems of scoring. Emphasis throughout the course is on practical examples and use of performers within the group wherever possible. Study of scoring with particular emphasis on classical and small orchestra.

### **28.216 Electronic Music**

A study of the major works in this medium composed during the last forty years. Introduction to studio techniques; tape music and different methods of sound synthesis.

### **28.218 Conducting**

Practical work in elementary conducting, repertoire, and choral direction, including a study of rehearsal techniques.

### **28.223 Musicology**

The aims and scope of musicological research. Topics include bibliography, specific areas of debate in the subject, and historical projects in selected areas.

### **28.301 Analysis**

The study and analysis at advanced level of melodic, harmonic, rhythmic, structural and other compositional elements through the examination of a wide range of music from plainsong and early polyphony to the present.

### **†28.302 Advanced Harmony and Counterpoint**

Exercises and analysis of harmonic and contrapuntal techniques based on nineteenth and early Twentieth Century practices.

### **28.303-308 History of Musical Style**

As for papers 28.203-208 respectively, but taken and examined at Stage III level.

### **28.310 Composition**

(Counts as three papers)

Continuing study of composition with emphasis on structure and composing for varied resources. Study of major 20th-Century composers and their methods.

### **28.314 Ethnomusicology - Music of Oceania**

Maori music and music styles of Polynesia, Melanesia and Micronesia and Aboriginal Australia.

### **28.316 Studies in Contemporary Electronic Music**

Advanced studio techniques; methods of analog synthesis, FM synthesis, sampling, use of microcomputers for data storage, MIDI and synchronisation. Aesthetics of electronic music, study of selected examples from past and contemporary sources, especially NZ studios.

### **†28.318 Conducting**

The basic elements of baton technique; rehearsal planning and management, practical work with recordings and with choral and instrumental groups.

### **†28.322 Special Topic**

To be announced

### **28.323 Musicology**

Continuation of work begun in 28.223. Work with primary sources, and related bibliographical and reference tools, editing, individual research projects.

### **†28.324 Special Topic**

In 1991: Wagner and Wagnerism

#### **Note:**

\* This paper will not be taught during the current *Calendar* year.

† This paper may not be taught during the current *Calendar* year

\*\* Taught in odd-numbered years.

†† Taught in even-numbered years.

## **PRESCRIPTIONS FOR BMus (Performance)**

### **Restriction on Entry to Courses**

A candidate before enrolment for this Degree is required to satisfy the Head of the Department of Music that he or she has attained a suitable standard in music including performance at an interview to be held during the August/September break preceding the year of enrolment.

Application to the Registrar must be made on the prescribed form and forwarded to the Secretary, Music Department, by 30 June (for entry to the course in the following year).

The prescriptions for papers for the Degree of Bachelor of Music (Performance) shall be the same as those for the corresponding subjects for the Degree of Bachelor of Music, and as follows:

#### **Performance**

See section 4 (a), (b) and (c) of the Regulations for the Degree of Bachelor of Music (Performance).

**Performance 28.120** counts as 3 papers

**Performance 28.220** counts as 3 papers

**Performance 28.320** counts as 4 papers

### Performance 28.420 counts as 4 papers

A candidate presenting Singing shall attend such language courses and do such language work as the Head of the Department of Music may require. The prescribed papers should be taken in the first, second and third years, respectively, of a student's Performance course, and enrolment should be for Certificate of Proficiency (COP).

Organ students will also receive tuition in harpsichord. A student studying the harpsichord may elect to include studies in the classical organ, its technique and repertoire, as part of the course.

## PRESRIPTIONS FOR BMus (Performance) (Hons)

### 28.525 Performance

(Five Papers)

Preparation for and presentation of a public performance of a well-balanced recital programme.

## PRESRIPTIONS FOR MMus Restriction on Entry to Course

1. Interview by Board of teaching members of Music Faculty; and
2. Performance where applicable.

Note: The availability of these papers will depend on the number of students and their choice.

### 28.400 Special Topic

Candidates will have opportunity to deal with aspects of music not covered by other papers.

### 28.401 Special Topic

Candidates will have opportunity to deal with aspects of music not covered by other papers.

### 28.402 Approaches to Music Aesthetics

A general outline of music aesthetics, including attitudes towards music in some non-Western societies, and a survey of major writings on music aesthetics from Classical times to the Twentieth Century.

### 28.406 Studies in Music Notation

Detailed study of mensural notation of the Fourteenth to Sixteenth Centuries, lute and keyboard tablatures. Basic problems of notation, transcription and editing.

### 28.409 Advanced Analysis

The extension of analytical techniques to more complex works, and the study of analytical theories with particular attention to those of Schenker.

### 28.410 Composition

Composing for a wide variety of media, voices, instruments, electronic tape.

### 28.414 Ethnomusicology

Field method, transcription and analysis; study of

selected scholars.

Note: 28.314 Ethnomusicology is a prerequisite for this paper.

### 28.415 Advanced Orchestration

Orchestration and instrumentation in the 20th-century, including contemporary instrumental and vocal techniques.

Note: 28.215 Orchestration is a prerequisite for this paper.

### 28.416 Electronic Music

Personal composition using electro-acoustic resources with or without conventional instruments and voices. Detailed study of recent developments in electro-acoustic music especially new analogue and computer-generated pieces.

Note: 28.216 Studies in Electronic Music is a prerequisite for this paper.

### 28.419 Studies in Performance Practice

Selected topics for discussion and investigation from the field of Performance Practice. The study of source materials; individual projects; performance of music from the area(s) studied.

### 28.423 Seminar in Musicology

Musicology method; bibliographical studies; selected problems for discussion and investigation.

Note: 28.323 Musicology is a prerequisite for this paper.

### 28.520 Performance

Performance work as under the Regulations for the Degree of Bachelor of Music (Performance) with Honours.

### 28.601 Thesis

(See also under Degree Regulations, MMus)

(Three papers)

An investigation into some branch or area of music, under the guidance of a supervisor and embodying some elements of research.

### 28.604 Dissertation

(One paper)

Investigation of an approved topic.

### 28.610 Composition

(See also under Degree Regulations, MMus)

(Three papers)

The preparation and presentation of one or more original compositions, under the guidance of a supervisor.

### 28.620 Recital

(See also under Degree Regulations, MMus)

(Three papers)

The preparation for and presentation of a public performance of a well balanced recital programme.

Note: The availability of these papers will depend on numbers of students and their choice.

## DIPLOMA COURSE REGULATIONS AND PRESCRIPTIONS

### DIPLOMA IN MUSIC DipMus

*The personal course of study of every candidate must be approved by the Senate. Approval will normally be granted for courses which are in accordance with the following Regulations: for general provisions affecting their courses of study students are referred to the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General), and the Examination Regulations. An intending candidate who has not been granted the University Entrance qualification by the Universities Entrance Board must apply for admission in accordance with the requirements of the Admission Regulations.*

### General Provisions

1. Subject to the Admission Regulations, a candidate for the Diploma in Music shall:
  - (a) before enrolling for the Diploma satisfy the Head of the Department of Music that a suitable standard in music including performance has been attained;
  - (b) follow a course of full-time study of not less than three years, and
  - (c) follow a course of study continuously, except where and in so far as the Head of the Department permits otherwise.

### Course Entrance

2. A candidate for entrance to the course of study for this Diploma shall give notice in writing on the prescribed form to the Registrar not later than 30 June immediately preceding the year in which the candidate wishes to enrol.

### Course Requirements

3. The course of study for the Diploma shall consist of not fewer than eighteen papers selected from those listed in the Schedule to these Regulations. Papers are listed in three stages - I, II and III.
4. Except with the permission of the Senate no candidate shall take in any one year more than eight papers for this Diploma.
5. A candidate with previous knowledge in Aural Training or Harmony may be required by the Head of the Department of Music to begin the course by taking subjects in Group B of the Schedule. If the candidate passes 28.100 Harmony and Counterpoint and 28.101 Musicianship and Materials of Music, he or she will be credited with a pass in each paper accordingly, and shall continue the course as outlined in Group B of the Schedule. If the candidate fails either of papers 28.100 and 28.101 (but not both) and is certified by the examiner to have attained the standard of a pass in 28.105, the candidate shall have a credit as for 28.105 and shall continue the course as outlined in Group A of the Schedule.
6. For Performance 28.120, 28.220, 28.325 a candidate shall:
  - (a) carry out Performance work (including the giving of class demonstrations), and
  - (b) attend all classes in individual training and such classes in ensemble training, including orchestral rehearsals, as may be required, and
  - (c) pass a Performance examination, with a grade of C or better in the case of 28.120 and 28.220, in any one of the following subjects:

|           |              |              |             |             |
|-----------|--------------|--------------|-------------|-------------|
| †Flute    | †French Horn | Violin       | Piano       | †Recorder   |
| †Oboe     | †Trumpet     | Viola        | Harpsichord | †Percussion |
| †Clarinet | †Trombone    | Cello        | Organ       | †Harp       |
| †Bassoon  | †Tuba        | †Double Bass | Singing     | †Guitar     |

Note: † this instrument may not be taught during the current *Calendar* year.

A candidate who passes the subject Performance 28.120 with a grade of C- and is therefore not eligible to proceed with the course of study for DipMus may in respect of that pass apply for a credit of two unspecified Stage I Music papers towards the course of study for the Degree of BMus if eligible for enrolment for that Degree. A candidate who passes the subject Performance 28.220 with a grade of C- and is therefore not eligible to proceed with the course of study for DipMus may in respect of that pass apply for a credit of two unspecified Stage II Music papers towards the course of study for the Degree of BMus if eligible for enrolment for that Degree.

See Regulation 8 of the Regulations for that Degree.

- (d) if presenting Singing for this Diploma attend such language courses and do such language work as the Head of the Department of Music may require;
- (e) Organ students will also receive tuition in harpsichord. A student studying harpsichord may elect to include studies in classical organ, its technique and repertoire, as part of the course.
7. A candidate who (having been a candidate for this Diploma) has been granted credit towards the Degree of BMus under Regulation 8 of the Regulations for that Degree shall not at any later time re-enrol for this Diploma.
8. It shall be a condition of a candidate's being permitted to pursue or continue this Course of study that he or she:
  - (a) shall not undertake any musical work, including musical competitions and examinations, outside the course without the consent of the Head of the Department of Music.
  - (b) shall participate in approved choral or instrumental work within the University throughout enrolment for this Diploma, to the satisfaction of the Head of the Department of Music; and
  - (c) shall not enrol for any other Course of study without the leave of the Head of the Department of Music.
9. (a) Except as otherwise provided the Course of study of every candidate shall be governed by these Regulations.
- (b) A candidate who has gained a credit for any subject under any former Regulations under the Diploma in Music shall be credited with such equivalent paper or papers as the Senate may determine.
10. The Senate may in such exceptional cases as it thinks fit, approve a personal course of study which does not conform to the foregoing Regulations.
11. These Regulations shall come into force on 1 January, 1976.

### Schedule

1. This Schedule shall be read with the Regulations for the Diploma and with the Prescriptions set out elsewhere in the *Calendar*.
2. Except as provided elsewhere in these Regulations or in this Schedule, a candidate may not enrol in any paper unless the prerequisite and corequisite requirements as listed in the Schedule for the Degree of Bachelor of Music (Performance) are satisfied.



### 3. The papers prescribed for this Diploma are:

#### STAGE I

##### Group A

- 28.103 Music in Society
- 28.105 Basic Musical Techniques
- 28.120 Performance (counts as 3 papers)
- 1 Stage I paper from selection list below

#### STAGE II

##### Group A

- 28.100 Harmony and Counterpoint
- 28.101 Musicianship and Materials of Music
- 28.220 Performance (counts as 3 papers)
- 1 paper from selection list below

#### STAGE III

##### Group A

- 28.201 Musicianship, Materials and Analysis
- 28.325 Performance (counts as 4 papers)
- 1 paper from selection list below

#### SELECTION LIST

- 28.110 Composition
- †28.112 Keyboard Skills
- 28.113 Acoustics
- 28.114 Introduction to Ethnomusicology
- 28.202 Harmony and Counterpoint
- 28.203 History of Musical Style papers,
- 208 as available for BMus

##### Group B

- 28.100 Harmony and Counterpoint
- 28.101 Musicianship and Materials of Music
- 28.103 Music in Society
- 28.120 Performance (counts as 3 papers)

##### Group B

- 28.201 Musicianship, Materials and Analysis
- 28.220 Performance (counts as 3 papers)
- 2 papers from selection list below

##### Group B

- 28.325 Performance (counts as 4 papers)
- 2 papers from selection list below

- †28.212 Keyboard Skills
- 28.214 Ethnomusicology
- 28.215 Orchestration
- 28.216 Electronic Music
- 28.218 Conducting
- 28.223 Musicology
- 28.301 Analysis
- †28.302 Advanced Harmony and Counterpoint
- 28.314 Ethnomusicology
- 28.316 Studies in Contemporary Electronic Music
- †28.318 Conducting
- 28.323 Musicology
- †28.324 Special Topic as available for BMus
- \*22.104 German for Singers
- †34.108 Language Comprehension in Music
- †35.104 Italian Language in Opera and Song

#### Note:

- (i) Students studying keyboard instruments must include 28.112 and 28.212 in their selection.
- (ii) Students studying singing must include two of these papers in their selection.
- (iii) \*This paper will not be taught during the current *Calendar* year.

† This paper may not be taught during the current *Calendar* year.

## PREScriptions FOR DipMus

### Restrictions on Entry to Courses

A candidate before enrolment for this Diploma is required to satisfy the Head of the Department of Music that he or she has attained a suitable standard in music including performance at interview to be held during the August/September study break preceding the year of enrolment.

Application to the Registrar must be made on the prescribed form and forwarded to the Secretary, Music

Department, by 30 June (for entry to the course in the following year).

The prescriptions for papers for the Diploma in Music shall be the same as those for the corresponding subjects for the Degree of Bachelor of Music (Performance), and in the case of Basic Musical Techniques (28.105) as prescribed for the Degree of Bachelor of Arts, and as follows:

#### Performance

See Regulation 6 of the Regulations for the Diploma in Music.

## DIPLOMA IN MUSIC WITH HONOURS DipMus(Hons)

*The personal course of study of every candidate must be approved by the Senate. Approval will normally be granted for courses which are in accordance with the following Regulations: for general provisions affecting their courses of study students are referred to the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General), and the Examination Regulations.*

### General Provisions

1. Subject to the Admission Regulations, a candidate for the Diploma in Music with Honours shall:
  - (a) before enrolling for this Diploma
    - (i) have been awarded or qualified for the award of the Diploma in Music, and
    - (ii) have obtained a grade of B- or higher in Performance at Stage III, 28.325, and

(iii) satisfy the Senate that in the work presented for the Diploma in Music he or she has attained a high standard, and

(b) follow a course of full-time study of not less than one year.

### Course Requirements

2. The course of full-time study for this Diploma shall consist of:
  - 28.425 Performance (which shall count as four papers)
  - and any two of the papers listed in the selection list for the Diploma in Music but not previously taken.
3. For Performance 28.425 a candidate shall:
  - (a) carry out performance work (including the giving of class demonstrations), and
  - (b) attend all classes in individual training and such classes in ensemble training, including orchestral rehearsals, as may be required, and
  - (c) pass a performance examination in any one of the following subjects:
 

|           |              |              |            |             |
|-----------|--------------|--------------|------------|-------------|
| †Flute    | †French Horn | Violin       | Piano      | †Recorder   |
| †Oboe     | †Trumpet     | Viola        | Harpichord | †Percussion |
| †Clarinet | †Trombone    | Cello        | Organ      | †Harp       |
| †Bassoon  | †Tuba        | †Double Bass | Singing    | †Guitar     |
  - (d) Organ students will also receive tuition in Harpsichord. A student studying Harpsichord may elect to include studies in Classical Organ, its technique and repertoire, as part of the course.
  - (e) A candidate presenting Singing for this Diploma shall attend such language courses and do such language work as the Head of the Department of Music may require.
4. It shall be a condition of a candidate's being permitted to pursue or continue this course of study that he or she:
  - (a) shall not undertake any musical work, including musical competitions and examinations, outside the course without the consent of the Head of the Department of Music, and
  - (b) shall not enrol for any other course without the leave of the Head of the Department of Music.
5. A candidate shall be required to pass the course of study as a whole so that performance in both Performance IV and the papers shall be considered.
6. Except as otherwise provided in these Regulations the course of study of every candidate shall be governed by these Regulations.
7. The Senate may in such exceptional cases as it thinks fit, approve a personal course of study which does not conform to the foregoing Regulations.
8. These Regulations shall come into force on 1 January, 1976.

Note: \*This paper will not be taught during the current *Calendar* year.

†This paper may not be taught during the current *Calendar* year.

## PREScriptions FOR DipMus(Hons)

### 28.425 Performance

(Four papers)

Preparation for and presentation of a public performance of a well-balanced recital programme.

## REGulations FOR COURSE OF INSTRUCTION IN A SINGLE INSTRUMENT

*Admission to a Course of Instruction in a single instrument with a full-time member of the staff may be granted subject to the approval of the Head of the Department of Music. Students enrolled for a Course of Instruction in a single subject must comply with the following Regulations:*

### Enrolment

1. Enrolment shall be for a period of not less than one term and enrolment must be completed during the enrolling period immediately before the commencement of the first term.

### Payment of Fees.

2. Tuition fees prescribed under the Fees Regulations must be paid at enrolment.

### Refund of Fees

3. Should a student wish to discontinue the Course the following refund may be made where the fee for two or three terms has been paid at enrolment:
  - (i) One-third refund in the case of the fee for two terms and two-thirds refund in the case of the fee for three terms provided written notice of withdrawal is received by the Registrar before the commencement of the second term;
  - (ii) One-third refund in the case of the fee for three terms provided written notice of withdrawal is received by the Registrar before the commencement of the third term.

### Unsatisfactory Work

4. The notice of all students is drawn to Regulations 8 and 9 (i) of the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General).

### Declaration to Obey Statutes and Regulations

5. The Admission Regulations shall not apply to candidates enrolling for these courses but every student enrolling for a course must sign the following declaration:

"I do solemnly promise that I will faithfully obey the Statutes and the Regulations of the University of Auckland so far as they apply to me."

**Prescriptions**

6. Each course shall be under the direction of the Head of the Department of Music and shall consist of the following:
  - (i) Weekly individual lessons of one half-hour's duration for a term of ten weeks or of one hour's duration fortnightly for five weeks, provided that arrangements may be made for one hour weekly lessons to be taken with a proportionate increase of fees.
  - (ii) Tests of ability and where appropriate ensemble playing, including orchestral rehearsals, as may be required by the Head of the Department of Music.
7. It shall be a condition of a candidate's being permitted to pursue or continue this course that he or she shall not undertake any musical work, including music competitions and examinations, outside the course without the consent of the Head of the Department of Music.
8. Instruction is offered in various subjects as determined by the Head of Department. The subjects normally include: Violin, Viola, Cello, Piano, Organ, Harpsichord and Singing.

# Faculty of Architecture Property and Planning

## Contents

---

### *Department of Architecture*

---

|                                  |     |  |
|----------------------------------|-----|--|
| <b>Degree Course Regulations</b> | 321 | Degree of Bachelor of Architecture         |
|                                  | 326 | Degree of Master of Architecture           |
|                                  | 327 | Joint Special Examination of NZIA and AERB |

|                                    |     |                                    |
|------------------------------------|-----|------------------------------------|
| <b>Degree Course Prescriptions</b> | 329 | Degree of Bachelor of Architecture |
|                                    | 333 | Degree of Master of Architecture   |

---

### *Department of Property*

---

|                                  |     |   |
|----------------------------------|-----|---|
| <b>Degree Course Regulations</b> | 334 | Degree of Bachelor of Property Administration |
|                                  | 337 | Degree of Master of Property Administration   |

|                                    |     |   |
|------------------------------------|-----|---|
| <b>Degree Course Prescriptions</b> | 338 | Degree of Bachelor of Property Administration |
|                                    | 339 | Degree of Master of Property Administration   |

---

### *Department of Planning*

---

|                                  |     |                                |
|----------------------------------|-----|--------------------------------|
| <b>Degree Course Regulations</b> | 340 | Degree of Bachelor of Planning |
|                                  | 343 | Degree of Master of Planning   |

|                                    |     |                                |
|------------------------------------|-----|--------------------------------|
| <b>Degree Course Prescriptions</b> | 344 | Degree of Bachelor of Planning |
|                                    | 345 | Degree of Master of Planning   |

---

## FACULTY OF ARCHITECTURE PROPERTY AND PLANNING

Three Professional degrees are offered within the Faculty.

### **Bachelor of Architecture (BArch)**

The degree of Bachelor of Architecture is recognised by the New Zealand Institute of Architects and the Architects Education & Registration Board for professional membership and registration. It is also recommended for recognition by the Commonwealth Association of Architects to all member institutes in the Commonwealth. The course comprises an Intermediate of six varied papers and a folder of drawings, from which students are selected for entry to the first of four professional years, for which a new structure was introduced in 1989. Students select credits from five subject areas - design; construction and technology; history, theory and criticism; practice and management; drawing and related skills - with a wide range of advanced electives in the later years.

### **Bachelor of Property Administration (BPA)**

The degree of Bachelor of Property Administration is recognised by the New Zealand Institute of Valuers, the Valuers Registration Board, the Property Management Institute, the Real Estate Institute of New Zealand and the Commonwealth Association of Surveying & Land Economy. The course has an Intermediate and two professional years, and provides a synthesis of studies concerned with the use, management, valuation, development, financing, marketing, acquisition and transfer of primarily urban land and buildings, and with the economic, legal, sociological and technological factors which affect the ownership of the proprietary interests involved.

### **Bachelor of Planning (BPlan)**

The degree of Bachelor of Planning is recognised by the New Zealand Planning Institute. The course has a one-year Intermediate of seven papers; followed by three professional years of studies in which the principal continuing components are Studio (practical work) and the Environmental Planning lecture series. Graduates with qualifications in approved subject areas may complete the BPlan degree in two years.

### **Master of Architecture (MArch)**

The degree of Master of Architecture involves the equivalent of seven papers, and includes a major project (worth two papers), or a thesis (worth four papers), or both. A range of papers is available in each of the five subject areas of BArch. The degree requires at least one and not more than three years, and may be taken full or part time. BArch is prerequisite.

### **Master of Property Administration (MPA)**

The degree of Master of Property Administration consists of four papers in advanced aspects of property administration (two may be Masters papers in a related department) and a thesis. It may be completed in one year of full-time study, or in up to four years part-time. The prerequisite is BPA with grades averaging B-, or DipVal or DipUrbVal subject to special conditions.

### **Master of Planning (MPlan)**

The degree of Master of Planning, for which BPlan is prerequisite, consists of five papers in advanced planning or planning-related subjects and a research essay, or four papers and a thesis. The course may be taken part-time over three years.

---

## DEGREE COURSE REGULATIONS

---

### DEPARTMENT OF ARCHITECTURE

### THE DEGREE OF BACHELOR OF ARCHITECTURE BArch

*The personal course of study of every candidate must be approved by the Senate. Approval will normally be granted for courses which are in accordance with the following regulations: for general provisions affecting their courses of study students are referred to the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General), and the Examination Regulations.*

#### **General Provisions**

1. (a). Subject to the Admission Regulations and except as otherwise provided in these Regulations, candidates for the Degree of Bachelor of Architecture shall
  - (i) follow a course of study of not less than five years
  - (ii) pass an Intermediate Examination and four Architecture Examinations.
- (b). Except with the permission of the Senate no candidate for this Degree shall enrol in any one year for more than 42 credits.

#### **Examinations**

2. (a). Candidates shall be required to pass as a whole the Intermediate Examination and each Architecture Examination so that their performance in all papers of the Examination shall be considered; but
  - (i) where candidates fail to pass an Architecture Examination as a whole they may at the discretion of the Senate be credited with a paper or papers of that Examination, and be permitted in a subsequent year to present the paper or papers not so credited, together with a paper or papers of the next succeeding Architecture Examination.
- (b). Candidates whose course in any year consists of more or fewer papers than a full Examination or whose

course is taken from more than one Examination shall have their performance in all papers taken in that year considered as a whole.

### Honours

3. The Degree of Bachelor of Architecture may be awarded with or without Honours according to the standard of the candidate's work in the best 48 credits taken after the completion of the First and Second Architecture Examinations as specified in Regulation 7(b). The 48 credits shall include at least 12 credits drawn from Design 4, Research Reports or Thesis.

### Concessions

4. The Senate may exempt a candidate from the Intermediate Examination
  - (a). who has reached a standard satisfactory to the Senate in the University Bursaries Examinations, provided that one of the subjects is Mathematics with Calculus, Mathematics with Statistics, or Physics; or
  - (b). who has been admitted or has qualified for admission to a degree or, on the special recommendation of the Head of the Department of Architecture, a diploma, in any Faculty of this University; or
  - (c). who has by examination qualified with outstanding merit for the New Zealand Certificate in Building, or the New Zealand Certificate in Quantity Surveying, or the New Zealand Certificate in Engineering (Civil Option), and who has completed the practical requirements for the award of such Certificate.

**Note:** A candidate seeking admission to the First Architecture Examination under the provisions of this clause is advised to submit with the required application form, the folder of work in prescribed form in Regulation 6 (a).

5. (a). Where a candidate
  - (i) has been awarded or has qualified for the award of the Degree of Bachelor of Engineering (Civil) with a record in that Degree of sufficiently high standard in the opinion of the Head of the Department of Architecture; or
  - (ii) has by examination qualified with outstanding merit for the New Zealand Certificate in Draughting (Architecture) and has completed the practical requirements for the Certificate, the Senate may exempt that candidate from the Intermediate Examination and up to a total of 36 credits from the First and Second Architecture Examinations.
- (b). Where a candidate
  - (i) has qualified by examination for the New Zealand Certificate in Draughting (Architecture) but without outstanding merit and has completed the practical requirements for it; and
  - (ii) has completed the Intermediate Examination with results sufficient to secure a place in the First Architecture Examination, the Senate may exempt that candidate from up to a total of 36 credits from the First and Second Architecture Examinations.

### Intermediate

6. (a). The Intermediate Examination shall comprise:
  - a folder of work in prescribed form; and
  - two papers or 12 credits in a subject (or with the approval of the Head of the Department of Architecture, two related subjects) from each of the Groups A, B and C listed in the Schedule to this Regulation of subjects prescribed for the degree of BA or BSc as the case may be: provided that
- (i) in the case of any or each of the subjects in the Schedule a candidate may substitute for that subject an equivalent subject passed at another New Zealand University;
- (ii) a candidate who, in the Universities Bursaries Examination, has obtained a 'B' Grade or better and has gained not less than 50 marks in one of the subjects Mathematics with Calculus, Mathematics with Statistics, or Physics, may choose instead of a subject from Group A an additional subject from Group B or Group C;
- (iii) in exceptional circumstances and on the recommendation of the Dean of the Faculty of Architecture, Property and Planning, the Senate may permit a candidate to choose the three subjects from those appearing in the Schedule to this Regulation without restriction as to Groups, save that one shall be chosen from Group A unless the foregoing proviso (ii) applies;
- (iv) subjects available in more than one group may be offered in either but not in both.
- (b). In respect of each subject chosen from the Schedule to this Regulation, a candidate shall be required to comply with such of the course regulations for the Degree of Bachelor of Arts or Bachelor of Science as are applicable (including all requirements as to practical work and all prerequisites, corequisites and restrictions).

**Note:** (i) The folder of work and results in the subjects from the schedule shall be taken into account in any selection that may be required because of a restriction in the number of places available.

### Schedule

#### Group A

Mathematics/Computer Science  
Physics

#### Group B

Anthropology  
Botany/Biology/Zoology

#### Group C

Ancient History/Classical Studies/  
Biblical History & Literature  
Anthropology/Maori Studies  
Art History  
Asian Geography/History/Politics  
Economics  
Education

**GROUP B cont'd**

Chemistry  
Economics  
Geology  
Geography  
Mathematics/Computer Science  
Philosophy  
Physics  
Psychology  
Sociology

**GROUP C cont'd**

English  
Geography/Asian Geography  
History/Asian History  
Any Language  
Music  
Philosophy  
Political Studies/Asian Politics  
Psychology  
Sociology

7. (a). For each Architecture Examination a candidate shall pass 36 credits from the subjects set out in the Schedule to Regulation 9.  
(b). For the First and Second Architecture Examinations a candidate shall pass 72 credits including at least  
24 credits from the Design Group of the Schedule  
17 credits from the Construction and Technology Group of the Schedule  
15 credits from the History, Theory & Criticism Group of the Schedule  
6 credits from the Drawing & Related Skills Group of the Schedule  
(c). To complete the Degree a candidate shall pass 144 credits including at least:  
12 credits from Design 4A, 4B, 4C, 4E and research reports, or a 12 credit thesis  
2 credits at 300 level from the Construction and Technology Group of the Schedule  
8 credits from the Practice & Management Group of the Schedule including Practice & Law.  
(d). The Senate may permit a candidate to take a subject or subjects as defined in the regulations for a degree or diploma in any Faculty, in lieu of a subject or subjects set out in the Schedule to Regulation 9, up to an equivalent of 10 credits for this degree, and credits will be awarded for a pass in such subjects in accordance with the following:

| Faculty         | Segment of Study      | Equivalent credits for this degree |
|-----------------|-----------------------|------------------------------------|
| Arts & Commerce | Paper                 | 5 credits                          |
| Engineering     | Subject               | 3 credits                          |
| Law             | Instruction hour/week | 2 credits                          |
| Science         | Credit                | 1 credit                           |

8. A candidate may not take a subject unless he or she has passed or been exempted the prerequisite subject for that subject as provided in Regulation 9, and the Schedule to it; provided that:  
(a) where the prerequisite subject and the advanced subject are taught consecutively in one year, the candidate may enrol for both, but may not take the advanced subject if a pass is not gained in the prerequisite subject; and  
(b) where the candidate has been exempted from one or more of the subjects of the course for this Degree under Regulations 4 or 5 or the Ad Eundem Statum Regulations, the Senate may at its discretion exempt the candidate from the requirements of this Regulation.

**Schedule**

9. (a). This Schedule sets out paper numbers, titles of papers, credits, prerequisites, and corequisites applying to papers offered for the Degree of Bachelor of Architecture within the five Groups.  
(b). The Schedule shall be read with the other Regulations for the Degree and with the prescriptions set out elsewhere in the *Calendar*.  
(c). The heading 'prerequisites' in relation to a paper refers to other papers or combinations of papers which must be passed before the candidate may take that paper.  
(d). The heading 'corequisites' in relation to a paper refers to other papers which must be taken concurrently with that paper or have been passed in a previous year.  
(e). Elective Studies (3 credits), Research Reports (6 credits) and Thesis (12 credits) are each based on an approved advanced topic in the group shown.

| Paper Number        | Title of Paper | Credits | Prerequisites    | Corequisites |
|---------------------|----------------|---------|------------------|--------------|
| <b>DESIGN GROUP</b> |                |         |                  |              |
| 115.100             | Design 1A      | 6       |                  |              |
| 115.101             | Design 1B      | 6       |                  | 115.100      |
| 115.104             | Design 1E      | 3       |                  | 115.100      |
| 115.200             | Design 2A      | 6       | 12cr in Design 1 |              |
| 115.202             | Design 2C      | 3       |                  | 115.200      |
| 115.203             | Design 2D      | 3       |                  | 115.200      |
| 115.204             | Design 2E      | 3       |                  | 115.200      |
| 115.300             | Design 3A      | 6       | 12cr in Design 2 |              |
| 115.302             | Design 3C      | 3       |                  | 115.300      |
| 115.303             | Design 3D      | 3       |                  | 115.300      |
| 115.304             | Design 3E      | 3       |                  | 115.300      |
| 115.400             | Design 4A      | 6       | 12cr in Design 3 |              |
| 115.401             | Design 4B      | 6       |                  | 115.400      |

| Paper Number               | Title of Paper | Credits | Prerequisites    | Corequisites |
|----------------------------|----------------|---------|------------------|--------------|
| <b>DESIGN GROUP Cont'd</b> |                |         |                  |              |
| 115.402                    | Design 4C      | 3       |                  | 115.400      |
| 115.404                    | Design 4E      | 3       |                  | 115.400      |
| 115.409                    | Thesis         | 12      | 12cr in Design 3 |              |

Note: (i) Some elective programmes in Design 3 will have nominated prerequisite papers, to be notified each year by the Head of the Department  
(ii) In Design papers above A = term 1, B = term 2, C = first half of term 2, D = second half of term 2, E = term 3.

### CONSTRUCTION & TECHNOLOGY GROUP

|   |          |  |    |                        |                    |
|---|----------|--|----|------------------------|--------------------|
|   | 115.110  | Construction & Structure 1               | 5  |                        | 115.111            |
|   | 115.111  | Environment & Services                   | 5  |                        | 115.110            |
|   | 115.210  | Construction & Structure 2               | 5  |                        | 115.110            |
|   | 115.211  | Sound                                    | 2  | 115.111                |                    |
|   | 115.212  | Lighting                                 | 2  | 115.111                |                    |
|   | 115.213  | Thermal Environment                      | 2  | 115.111                |                    |
|   | 115.214  | Services                                 | 2  | 115.111                |                    |
|   | 115.215  | Ergonomics                               | 1  |                        | one of 115.211-214 |
|   | 115.310  | Multistorey Construction                 | 3  | 115.210                |                    |
|   | 115.311  | Advanced Structure                       | 3  | 115.210                |                    |
|   | 115.312  | Advanced Services                        | 2  | 115.214                |                    |
|   | 115.314  | Acoustics                                | 3  |                        | 115.211            |
| * | 115.315  | Noise Control                            | 3  |                        | 115.211            |
|   | 115.316  | Advanced Lighting                        | 3  | 115.212                |                    |
|   | 115.317  | Energy Efficient Design<br>- Residential | 3  | 115.213                |                    |
|   | 115.318  | Energy Efficient Design<br>- Commercial  | 3  | 115.213                |                    |
| * | 115.319  | Audio Systems Design                     | 1  |                        | 115.211            |
|   | 115.320  | Timber Technology                        | 2  | 115.210                |                    |
| * | 115.322  | Alternative Technologies                 | 2  | 115.210 and<br>115.111 |                    |
| * | 115.323  | Lighting Project                         | 2  | 115.212                |                    |
|   | 115.324  | Multistorey<br>Construction Project      | 2  |                        | 115.310            |
|   | 115.325  | Energy Efficient Design<br>Project       | 2  |                        | 115.317 or 115.318 |
|   | 115.326  | The NZ House<br>Construction Project     | 2  | 115.210                |                    |
|   | 115.327- | Special topics, content                  | 2  | to be<br>determined    |                    |
|   | 115.329  | to be determined                         |    | by approval            |                    |
|   | 115.410- | Elective Studies                         | 3  |                        |                    |
|   | 115.413  |  |    |                        |                    |
|   | 115.414  | Advanced Energy Studies<br>- Residential | 3  | 115.317                |                    |
|   | 115.415  | Advanced Energy Studies<br>- Commercial  | 3  | 115.318                |                    |
|   | 115.416  | Advanced Multistorey<br>Construction     | 3  | 115.310                |                    |
|   | 115.420- | Research Reports                         | 6  | 12cr in Design 3       |                    |
|   | 115.421  |  |    |                        |                    |
|   | 115.429  | Thesis                                   | 12 | 12cr in Design 3       |                    |

### HISTORY, THEORY & CRITICISM GROUP

|   |         |   |   |  |         |
|---|---------|---|---|--|---------|
|   | 115.130 | History of Architecture                 | 6 |  | 115.131 |
|   | 115.131 | Introduction to<br>Architectural Theory | 3 |  | 115.130 |
|   | 115.132 | Oceanic Architecture                    | 2 |  | 115.130 |
| * | 115.133 | Egyptian Architecture                   | 2 |  | 115.130 |
| * | 115.134 | Byzantine Architecture                  | 2 |  | 115.130 |
|   | 115.135 | Renaissance & Baroque<br>Architecture   | 2 |  | 115.130 |
|   | 115.136 | Modern Italian<br>Architecture          | 2 |  | 115.130 |
|   | 115.137 | Built Form & Culture                    | 2 |  | 115.130 |
| * | 115.138 | Design Procedures                       | 2 |  | 115.131 |
|   | 115.139 | The House                               | 2 |  | 115.131 |



| Paper Number  | Title of Paper                                    | Credits | Prerequisites                | Corequisites |
|---|---|---------|------------------------------|--------------|
| <b>HISTORY, THEORY &amp; CRITICISM GROUP Cont'd</b> |   |         |                              |              |
| 115.140   | Architectural Interpretation                      | 2       |                              | 115.131      |
| * 115.141   | Ancient & Medieval Architecture                   | 2       |                              | 115.130      |
| 115.230   | Urban Design 1                                    | 2       | 115.131                      |              |
| 115.231   | Architectural Psychology                          | 2       | 115.131                      |              |
| 115.232   | Composition, Scale & Proportion                   | 2       | 115.131                      |              |
| * 115.233   | Politics in Architecture                          | 2       | 115.131                      | 115.137      |
| * 115.234   | Organic Architecture                              | 2       | 115.131                      |              |
| 115.235   | Introduction to Building Conservation             | 2       | 115.131                      |              |
| 115.236   | Contemporary Dutch Architecture                   | 2       | 115.131                      |              |
| † 115.237   | Introduction to Landscape                         | 2       | 115.131                      |              |
| 115.238   | Vernacular Architecture                           | 1       | 115.131                      |              |
| * 115.239   | Women and Architecture                            | 2       | 115.131                      |              |
| 115.245-  | Special topics in architectural history or theory | 2       | to be determined             |              |
| 115.259   | Representation in Architecture                    | 2       |                              | 115.300      |
| * 115.330   | Architectural Discourse & Criticism               | 2       |                              | 115.300      |
| 115.331   | Designing for Institutions                        | 2       | 115.138                      | 115.300      |
| * 115.332   | Beginnings of Modern Architecture                 | 2       |                              | 115.300      |
| * 115.333   | Architectural Semiotics                           | 2       |                              | 115.300      |
| * 115.334   | Design & Building Performance                     | 2       |                              | 115.300      |
| * 115.335   | New Zealand Architecture                          | 2       |                              | 115.300      |
| 115.336   | Introduction to Community Architecture            | 2       | 115.233                      | 115.300      |
| 115.337   | Urban Design 2                                    | 2       | 115.230                      | 115.300      |
| * 115.338   | Communications in Design                          | 2       |                              | 115.300      |
| * 115.339   | Special topics in architectural history or theory | 2       | to be determined             |              |
| 115.345-  | Elective Studies                                  | 3       | by approval                  |              |
| 115.359   |   |         |                              |              |
| 115.430-  |   |         |                              |              |
| 115.433   |   |         |                              |              |
| 115.440-  | Research Reports                                  | 6       | 12cr in Design 3             |              |
| 115.441   |   |         |                              |              |
| 115.459   | Thesis  | 12      | 12cr in Design 3             |              |
| <b>PRACTICE &amp; MANAGEMENT GROUP</b>              |   |         |                              |              |
| 115.260   | NZ Building Industry                              | 1       | 115.110                      |              |
| 115.360   | Contract Documentation                            | 3       | 115.210                      |              |
| † 115.361   | Building Economics                                | 3       | 115.210                      |              |
| † 115.362   | Commercial Practice & Management                  | 2       |                              | 115.360      |
| 115.363   | Cost Control                                      | 2       |                              | 115.360      |
| 115.364   | Construction Management                           | 2       |                              | 115.360      |
| 115.365   | Town Planning                                     | 2       |                              | 115.360      |
| 115.460   | Practice & Law                                    | 5       | 115.360 and 12cr in Design 3 |              |
| 115.370-  | Special topics, content to be determined          | 2       | to be determined             |              |
| 115.379   |   |         | by approval                  |              |
| 115.461-  | Elective Studies                                  | 3       |                              |              |
| 115.462   |   |         |                              |              |
| 115.470-  | Research Reports                                  | 6       | 12cr in Design 3             |              |
| 115.471   |   |         |                              |              |
| 115.479   | Thesis  | 12      | 12cr in Design 3             |              |
| <b>DRAWING &amp; RELATED SKILLS GROUP</b>           |   |         |                              |              |
| 115.180   | Architectural Drawing 1                           | 3       |                              |              |
| 115.181   | Freehand Drawing 1                                | 2       |                              |              |
| 115.182   | Introduction to Computing                         | 2       |                              | 115.180      |

| Paper Number                                     | Title of Paper                  | Credits | Prerequisites         | Corequisites |
|--|---------------------------------|---------|-----------------------|--------------|
| <b>DRAWING &amp; RELATED SKILLS GROUP Cont'd</b> |                                 |         |                       |              |
| 115.183  | Computer Graphics               | 2       |                       | 115.182      |
| 115.280  | Architectural Drawing 2         | 3       | 115.180 or<br>115.181 |              |
| 115.281  | Freehand Drawing 2              | 2       | 115.180 or<br>115.181 |              |
| * 115.282  | Life Drawing                    | 2       | 115.180 or<br>115.181 |              |
| 115.283  | Computer Graphics Drawing       | 2       | 115.183               |              |
| 115.284  | Audiovisual Techniques          | 2       | 115.180 or<br>115.181 |              |
| 115.380  | Architectural Drawing 3         | 3       | 115.280               |              |
| 115.381  | Human Figure in<br>Architecture | 2       | 115.280               |              |
| 115.382  | Measured Drawing                | 2       | 115.280               |              |
| 115.390-   | Special topics, content         | 2       | to be                 |              |
| 115.399  | to be determined                |         | determined            |              |
| 115.480-   | Elective Studies                | 3       | by approval           |              |
| 115.481  |                                 |         |                       |              |
| 115.490-   | Research Reports                | 6       | 12cr in Design 3      |              |
| 115.491  |                                 |         |                       |              |
| 115.499  | Thesis                          | 12      | 12cr in Design 3      |              |

Note: Consult the Department for details of Special Topics offered in 1991.

#### Transitional

10. (a). Except as otherwise provided in this Regulation, the course of study of every candidate shall be governed by these Regulations.  
 (b). A candidate who gained credits in any subject or paper under any of the former Regulations for this Degree shall be credited with such equivalent papers and credits as may be determined by the Senate.

#### Exceptions

11. The Senate may, in such cases as it thinks fit, approve a personal course of study which does not conform to the foregoing Regulations.

## THE DEGREE OF MASTER OF ARCHITECTURE MArch

*The personal course of study of every candidate must be approved by the Senate: Approval will normally be granted for courses which are in accordance with the following regulations: for general provisions affecting their courses of study students are referred to the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General), and the Examination Regulations.*

1. Subject to the Admission Regulations, a candidate for the Degree of Master of Architecture shall before enrolment for this Degree have been admitted or qualified for admission to the Degree of Bachelor of Architecture.

Note: A candidate who has been awarded the Diploma in Architecture and has approved professional experience shall be eligible to enrol for this degree.

2. Every candidate for this Degree shall:

- follow a course of study of not less than one year, and
- (i) pass in each of five papers (including at least three from one of the Groups - Construction & Technology; History, Theory & Criticism; Practice & Management; or Drawing & Related Skills - below) and a related Major Project which shall count as two papers; or
- (ii) pass in each of three papers (including at least two from one of the Groups - Construction & Technology; History, Theory & Criticism; Practice & Management; or Drawing & Related Skills - below) and a related Thesis which shall count as four papers; or
- (iii) pass in one paper from the Groups Construction & Technology; History, Theory & Criticism; Practice & Management; or Drawing & Related Skills below, and a Major Project which shall count as two papers, and a related Thesis which shall count as four papers.

#### Papers

3. The following conditions shall apply to the choice of papers:  
 (a) Every candidate shall choose papers in consultation with the Head of Department from those listed in clause (b) of this Regulation: provided that no paper that has been credited to another degree shall be taken for this Degree

- (b) The papers for this Degree are such of the following as are from time to time offered:

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| (i) <b>Design Group</b>                | <b>Construction &amp; Technology Group</b> |
| 115.500 Project                        | 115.510 Construction                       |
| 115.501 Major Project (value 2 papers) | 115.511 Structure                          |
|  | 115.512 Acoustics                          |

**Construction & Technology Group (Cont'd)**

- 115.513 Noise Control
- 115.514 Lighting
- 115.515 Energy Efficient Design
- 115.516 Building Services
- 115.517 Environmental Aerodynamics
- 115.518 Computer Applications (a)
- 115.520 Elective
- 115.521 Elective

**History, Theory & Criticism Group**

- 115.530 Building Conservation
- 115.531 NZ Architecture
- 115.532 Community Architecture
- 115.533 Architectural Criticism
- 115.534 Urban Design
- 115.535 Oceanic Architecture
- 115.536 Contemporary Architectural Theory
- 115.537 Design & Building Evaluation
- 115.540 Elective
- 115.541 Elective

**Practice & Management Group**

- 115.560 Documentation
- 115.561 Building Economics
- 115.562 Project Management
- 115.563 Practice Management
- 115.564 Construction Management
- 115.565 Marketing Architectural Services
- 115.566 Quality Control
- 115.567 Computer Applications (b)
- 115.570 Elective
- 115.571 Elective

**Drawing & Related Skills Group**

- 115.580 Architectural Drawing
- 115.581 Computer Graphics
- 115.582 Communication
- 115.590 Elective
- 115.591 Elective

**Note:** Not all of the above papers will be available in a given year, and one or two from

- (ii) Those papers offered at Third or Fourth Architecture Examination level for the BArch degree, provided that any paper of less than 5 credits shall be supplemented by a 3-credit Elective Study in a topic relevant to the paper, to a total of not less than 5 credits; and
- (iii) Those offered in any other Department at the final-year undergraduate level or the Master's level provided:
  - (a) that prerequisites and timetabling requirements can be met, and
  - (b) that the syllabus is not the same as or substantially overlapping with any paper prescribed for this Degree, and
  - (c) that the paper has a weight not less than that of an Architecture Master's paper.

**Thesis**

- 4. The following conditions apply to the thesis (115.601):
  - (a) The thesis shall be of the value of four papers, and shall embody the results obtained by the candidate in an investigation in a subject approved by the Head of Department.
  - (b) A candidate shall present the thesis in the year in which the last papers are taken, or in a subsequent year within three years of the year in which the candidate was first enrolled; but this period may in exceptional circumstances be extended by the Senate.
  - (c) The candidate shall deliver the thesis to the Registrar by 1 November of the year in which it is presented or at a later date with the permission of the Head of Department.

**Note:** An abstract is to be submitted with each copy of the thesis, see Examination Regulation 15.

**Classes of Pass**

- 5. The Degree of Master of Architecture may, on the recommendation of the Senate, be awarded with Distinction.

**Transitional**

- 6. Candidates enrolled in or before 1990 under the MArch Regulations in the 1989 Calendar may complete under those Regulations, or may transfer to these Regulations with such credits as the Senate may determine.
- 7. These Regulations shall come into force on 1 January 1991.

---

**JOINT NZIA/AERB SPECIAL EXAMINATION**

**Note:** These regulations are made by the Council of the New Zealand Institute of Architects (NZIA) and the Architects Education and Registration Board (AERB) for the purpose of prescribing the form and conduct of the Joint NZIA/AERB Special Examination which is administered by a Special Examination Committee representing both the NZIA and the AERB. The completion of the requirements of the Joint Special Examination is recognised by the AERB as a qualification for registration (see The Architects Act, Section 16). Persons who have completed the Joint Special Examination and who wish to become registered under the Architects Act 1963 are required to make separate application for registration to the AERB and are required to attend the Board's professional interview.

The completion of the requirements of the Joint Special Examination is recognised by the NZIA for corporate unclassified Membership. Registration is a prerequisite for corporate membership as an Associate of the NZIA.

- 1. Persons who fulfil the conditions set out in Clause 2 or Clause 3 below may apply to the Joint Special Examination Committee for admission to this Examination. Applications must be made on the official application form.
- 2. The Committee will consider applications from persons who:
  - (a) hold an overseas qualification acceptable in the country in which it was obtained as being of professional standard in architecture and in the opinion of the Committee of comparable standard to a recognised certificate granted in New Zealand (Architects Act 1963 Sec 16(1)(c)(i);

- (b) provide documentary evidence of the qualification obtained, including where possible details of the course prescriptions and grades obtained;
  - (c) are New Zealand citizens or hold valid residence or work visas and provide substantiating documentary evidence thereof;
  - (d) provide details of their experience and examples of their work, together with suitable corroborative evidence. The extent of the applicant's personal involvement in the preparation of the examples provided shall be certified by statutory declaration;
  - (e) provide a recently written article, thesis or review in English, the sole work of the applicant, on an architectural or related topic, as an indication of the candidate's ability to study or analyse a topic and write clearly upon it;
  - (f) provide any further information that may be requested by the Committee.
3. The Committee will consider applications from candidates who:
    - (a) by their work have demonstrated a level of achievement worthy of an architect;
    - (b) are not less than 35 years of age and have not less than 10 years' suitable architectural experience in New Zealand;
    - (c) provide details of their experience and examples of their work, together with suitable corroborative evidence. The extent of the applicant's personal involvement in the preparation of the examples provided shall be certified by statutory declaration;
    - (d) provide a written article, thesis or review, the sole work of the applicant, on an architectural or related topic, as an indication of the candidate's ability to study or analyse a topic and write clearly upon it;
    - (e) provide evidence of age;
    - (f) provide current statements from at least three registered architects attesting to the applicant's experience, achievements and suitability for the profession;
    - (g) provide any further information that may be requested by the Committee.
  4. A fee shall be paid by the applicant to the NZIA upon making formal application to the Examination, as follows:
    - (a) for candidates under Clause 2, \$100.00 + \$12.50 GST = \$112.50;
    - (b) for candidates under Clause 3, \$300.00 + \$37.50 GST = \$337.50.
 This fee is not refundable.
  5. Each applicant shall be interviewed by the Committee or by a sub-committee comprising at least two members thereof.
  6. Following the interview, the Committee shall, at its discretion, admit applicants to the Examination or refuse admission.
  7. On admitting a candidate to the Examination, the Committee:
    - (i) shall require the candidate to pass a written examination in professional practice as set out in Clause 8, provided that where the Committee is satisfied that the candidate has passed an acceptable written examination in professional practice the candidate may be exempted from this requirement; and
    - (ii) may at its discretion require the candidate to pass any other subject or subjects prescribed for a recognised qualification in architecture in New Zealand; and
    - (iii) shall require of the candidate such period of approved practical experience (up to 140 weeks from the date of application) as it sees fit.
  8. The following examinations are recognised by the Committee for the purpose of Clause 7(i):
    - (i) 115 460 Practice and Law, as conducted for the BArch degree of the University of Auckland (may be taken extramurally by candidates outside Auckland); or
    - (ii) ARCH 204 Communication and Management and ARCH 361 Professional Practice, as conducted for the BArch degree of the Victoria University of Wellington.
  9. On passing the required subjects and satisfying the Committee that any period of required practical experience has been satisfactorily completed, the candidate shall be entitled to a Certificate stating that he/she has completed the requirements of the Joint Special Examination.
  10. On refusing an applicant admission to the Examination, the Committee shall provide reasons for its decision in writing. The Committee will consider a further application after not less than three years from the date of the previous application.
  11. Application forms for admission to the Examination may be obtained from the Secretary, Joint NZIA/AERB Special Examination Committee, P O Box 2516, Auckland, to whom all applications shall be sent; or from the Executive Director, NZIA, P O Box 438, Wellington.
  12. These regulations shall apply to all applicants who apply for admission after 30 June 1990.

## DEGREE COURSE PRESCRIPTIONS

### PRESCRIPTIONS FOR BArch

The prescriptions for the subjects named in the preceding Regulations for BArch are listed below.

Note: \* This paper will not be taught during the current *Calendar* year.  
† This paper will not be taught during the current *Calendar* year unless sufficient staff is available.

#### Architecture Intermediate

##### Folder of Work

A paper detailing requirements for the folder of work may be obtained from the Administrative Assistant, Department of Architecture.

#### Architecture Examinations

##### Design Group

##### 115.100 Design 1A to

##### 115.404 Design 4E

(refer to Schedule to Regulation 9)

Introductory and advanced study and practice in architectural design in the studios and laboratories, with related lectures and seminars. The scope includes the development of architectural skill and understanding and the co-ordination of the subject matter of papers in the other four Groups.

Alternative programmes will be offered in each paper in each year. Each student will take at least one programme to developed design stage at both Design 2 and Design 3 levels.

##### 115.409 Thesis

#### Construction & Technology Group

##### 115.110 Construction & Structure 1

A study of the principles and applications of building construction, materials study and structure in the New Zealand industry involved in small-scaled buildings.

##### 115.111 Environment & Services

Human perception and response to the thermal environment, lighting and sound. Introduction to psychophysics. Climate and energy considerations in buildings. Thermal performance, ventilation and condensation. Daylighting and artificial lighting design. Noise control and acoustical design. Domestic-scale building services.

##### 115.210 Construction & Structure 2

A development of the study of the principles and applications of building construction, materials study and structure to a full range of building types.

##### 115.211 Sound

A consolidation of the material previewed in Environment & Services concerning acoustics and noise control. The origins, behaviour, description and measurement of sound, and the elements of noise control, room acoustics and the hearing process, together with an introduction to the design of music rooms.

##### 115.212 Lighting

A detailed study of light, light sources and luminaires; and of the interaction of people with light. The course includes both natural light and artificial light, their characteristics and their distribution within buildings; the perception of light and colour and people's responses to them; the quantitative description of light and lighting, ergonomics, photometrics and

codes of practice.

##### 115.213 Thermal Environment

A study of the thermal response of the building fabric in steady-state and fluctuating conditions as applied to both residential and commercial-type buildings. Assignment techniques for the design of high-comfort environments.

##### 115.214 Services

The principles and design considerations for environmental and utility services for commercial and industrial buildings. Integration of services into building fabric. Energy considerations.

##### 115.215 Ergonomics

The limitations and capacities of people as affecting the design of buildings, equipment and the environment. The influence of Anatomy, Physiology, and Psychology as it affects design, in order to make the best possible use of human resources.

##### 115.310 Multistorey Construction

A detailed study of multistorey construction techniques and constraints, both on-site and off-site. Legislative impact along with acceptable risk considerations. Quality control and long term maintenance philosophies, all as determinants of architectural form.

##### 115.311 Advanced Structure

Mathematical modelling of structure by computer. Laboratory testing of structural systems. Study of structural design codes. Extension of Strucctographic analysis. Survey of "State of the Art" structural systems given by practising consultants.

##### 115.312 Advanced Services

Advanced studies of the principles and design considerations for environmental and utility services with special reference to tall buildings. Studies of the servicing requirements and design approaches for specialised buildings (e.g., hotels, hospitals) and atrium buildings. Maintenance, replacement and energy considerations.

##### 115.314 Acoustics

Advanced studies in room acoustics and acoustical design of communications spaces. Control of reverberation, electronic assistance of reverberation, psychophysics of audience preference and objective measurements in rooms, acoustical models, mathematical models of rooms.

##### \*115.315 Noise Control

Noise control by planning, isolation and enclosure. Assessment of community noise and application of the local noise nuisance standards and legislation. Evaluation of noise by statistical measures and the instrumentation for this. Materials for noise control, their performance specification, and theory of vibrating systems. Noise control in buildings and plant machinery, application of vibration isolation techniques. Recent developments in reactive barriers and active noise control. Design and calculation work by computer will be encouraged.

##### 115.316 Advanced Lighting

The design of artificial and natural lighting of building interiors. Artificial lighting of building exteriors, landscape and sports grounds. Alternative calculation

procedures. Considerations of glare, contrast and visibility. Photometrics and colorimetry. Modelling and computer techniques. Lighting for display and drama. Case studies of lighting for particular building types.

#### **115.317 Energy Efficient Design - Residential**

A detailed study of energy efficient techniques and their integration into the design process to produce high comfort environmentally connected residential buildings. Design and calculation by computer will be encouraged.

#### **115.318 Energy Efficient Design - Commercial**

A detailed study of available techniques, including computer methods, for assessing the energy efficiency factors involved in the design of commercial-type buildings in New Zealand. Aspects of daylighting, atria, worker efficiency and energy management along with economic assessment techniques.

#### **\*115.319 Audio Systems Design**

Sound reinforcement and P/A system design, covering a design method for mating a sound system with existing architecture. Required site measurements and system evaluation and how to specify the required equipment. Recent trends in direct sound designing and audience coverage.

#### **115.320 Timber Technology**

Rationalisation of timber performance in structure, and discussion of engineering use including historical, current and predicted techniques.

#### **\*115.322 Alternative Technology**

The use of ambient energy (solar, wind) in building design. Aerogenerators. Alternative energy sources. Alternative services systems. Alternative materials and earthquake design. Pneumatic structures. A study of traditional environmental systems and their application to Western architecture.

#### **\*115.323 Lighting Project**

An individual project in lighting design involving the detailed development of a significant space in a Design Studio programme, or the study of a particular type of architectural setting through model studies, real (visited or published) examples and otherwise. There will be an introductory series of lecture/laboratory sessions.

#### **115.324 Multi-Storey Construction - Project**

A personal investigation of an aspect of the construction of multi-storey buildings leading to a scale model presentation.

#### **115.325 Energy Efficient Design - Project**

A detailed personal investigation of an aspect of energy efficient design - either residential or commercial, leading to a scale model presentation.

#### **115.326 The NZ House Construction Project**

A personal investigation of an aspect of the construction of the New Zealand House - either historical or present day, leading to a scale model presentation.

#### **115.327 - 115.329 Special Topics**

2-credit papers which may be taught in any year, the content and requirements of each to be determined by the Head of the Department of Architecture.

#### **115.410 - 115.413 Elective Studies**

3-credit studies or projects as extensions of 300-level papers in the Construction and Technology Group, or with the approval of Senate based on some other

agreed topic in that Group.

#### **115.414 Advanced Energy Studies - Residential**

Advanced studies of active and passive techniques and the properties of available materials and construction methods to achieve energy efficient design approaches. Marketing, legislative and economic assessments.

#### **115.415 Advanced Energy Studies - Commercial**

Advanced studies of design and management techniques for producing energy efficient environmentally connected commercial-type buildings. Marketing, legislative and economic assessments.

#### **115.416 Advanced Multi-Storey Construction**

Advanced studies of the design implications of available materials, construction techniques, quality performance and economic considerations on the construction of multi-storey buildings.

#### **115.420 - 115.421 Research Reports**

6-credit reports based on research on an approved topic in Construction and Technology.

#### **115.429 Thesis**

### **History, Theory & Criticism Group**

#### **115.130 History of Architecture**

An introduction to the history of Western architecture. Architecture in New Zealand. The origins and development of modern architecture, and contemporary manifestations.

#### **115.131 Introduction to Architectural Theory**

An introduction to the main aspects of the architectural discipline, its derivations, purposes, processes, products and philosophical directions; a prospectus and basis for advancing theory papers.

#### **115.132 Oceanic Architecture**

An introduction to the indigenous architecture of the Pacific. A study of the architecture of New Zealand Maori and a selection of Pacific Islands in depth. The particular Pacific Islands selected will vary from year to year.

#### **\*115.133 Egyptian Architecture**

An introduction to Ancient Egyptian Architecture from the Old Kingdom (3200 BC) to the New Kingdom (1085 BC) with selected case studies.

#### **\*115.134 Byzantine Architecture**

An introduction to Byzantine Architecture from 4th - 15th centuries with selected urban case studies including Constantinople.

#### **115.135 Renaissance & Baroque Architecture**

An examination of the principal architects, works and theories from the period 1400-1700.

#### **115.136 Modern Italian Architecture**

A survey of Italian Architecture from 1900 to the present day.

#### **115.137 Built Form & Culture**

This is a study of the relationship between various cultures and their architecture. Specifically it is concerned with settlement patterns, dwellings and other buildings and relates these to various aspects of the cultures.

#### **\*115.138 Design Procedures**

This course establishes the idea of 'design process', examines the nature of that process, and reviews a variety of procedures which support the decision making process.

### **115.139 The House**

An outline in Western history of the house and its development in plan, form and elements with particular reference to the changing events, lifestyles and ideas in society.

### **115.140 Architectural Interpretation**

Studies and interpretations of selected, worldwide examples of architectural and urban form, considering their identity and signification as expressive systems in relation to context, style and epoch as well as contemporary theory and criticism.

### **\*115.141 Ancient & Medieval Architecture**

An examination of Western architecture together with relevant theory and criticism, from the Ancient World to the Renaissance.

### **115.230 Urban Design 1**

Concepts of urban design, the history of theory, urban form, elements of urbanism, public space, selected case studies.

### **115.231 Architectural Psychology**

Physical, social and cultural aspects of people's interaction with the natural and built environment. Environmental perception and cognition. Individual and group spatial behaviour. Research findings and methods of relevance to architectural theory.

### **115.232 Composition, Scale & Proportion**

Syntactic and semantic relationships found in architectural compositions of plan and elements with reference to their organisation, scale and proportion.

### **\*115.233 Politics in Architecture**

An outline of the political factors which affect and determine architectural form. The course will cover historical as well as current political processes and models at the international, national, regional and local levels. It will also explore the means by which political factors can themselves be influenced by planning and design considerations.

### **\*115.234 Organic Architecture**

This course traces that strand of 20th Century architecture to which the term 'organic' has been applied. It examines possible meanings of the term and characteristics of an 'organic architecture'. Selected contemporary examples from Northern European countries are studied.

### **115.235 Introduction to Building Conservation**

An introduction to theory, legislation and technology concerning building conservation. Assessment will be based largely on practical conservation planning.

### **115.236 Contemporary Dutch Architecture**

The course focuses on the recent work of a number of key figures in contemporary Dutch architecture, with emphasis on the contributions of Herman Hertzberger and Aldo van Eyck. Aspects of Dutch culture, social life, and architecture in the 20th Century are introduced in support of this focus.

### **+115.237 Introduction to Landscape**

Introduction to natural landscape, ecology, landscape design, to provide a basis for formulating individual philosophy and direction in designing in a wider context.

### **115.238 Vernacular Architecture**

A study of vernacular architecture and its special relationship to time and place, climate and materials, traditions and building processes as well as to other

forms of architecture.

### **\*115.239 Women & Architecture**

An introduction to theoretical positions and an examination of selected architectural works relevant to studies of women and architecture.

### **115.245 - 115.259 Special Topics**

2-credit papers which may be taught in any year, the content and requirements of each to be determined by the Head of the Department of Architecture.

### **\*115.330 Representation in Architecture**

An examination of representational modes in architectural discourse and historical works examined in relation to contemporary theories. This course will be largely concerned with the role of metaphors such as those of construction, shelter, body, primal geometry, cosmology, history and identity.

### **115.331 Architectural Discourse & Criticism**

An examination of architectural writing on criticism relative to contemporary theoretical positions.

### **115.332 Designing for Institutions**

This course has two syllabus components. The first examines the special nature of design tasks which institutional settings present, and reviews a variety of strategies and procedures for managing the design decision making process in these settings. The second analyses a number of contemporary buildings that represent significant contributions in the field of institutional and public architecture.

### **\*115.333 Beginnings of Modern Architecture**

An examination of selected architectural works, writings and philosophies that contributed to the development of modern architecture.

### **\*115.334 Architectural Semiotics**

A review of the evolution of semiotic and related theory, its influence on recent architectural theorists and critics and on contemporary architects and their work.

### **\*115.335 Design & Building Performance**

Studies and assessment of the performance of the designed environment, based on its people-environment interactions and seeking to assemble a comprehensive theory of its function. Techniques and applications of performance measurement and appraisal including post-occupancy research and pre-design briefing.

### **\*115.336 New Zealand Architecture**

Studies in architecture in New Zealand with reference to historical influences and particular developments.

### **115.337 Introduction to Community Architecture**

A course intended to introduce the student to the wide diversity of processes and skills which comprise the discipline of community architecture. The origins of the discipline will be outlined, together with its growth and development, including current examples. Communication and group facilitation techniques will be analysed and tested in the context of a typical community design process.

### **\*115.338 Urban Design 2**

Advanced urban studies. Contemporary theory, historical research, development strategies and guidelines.

### **\*115.339 Communications in Design**

The application of communications theory to design practice and education. Notions of the inter-

communication processes will be analysed, as will the concept of the 'hidden curriculum'. The deep structure of communication processes will be studied in terms of their impact on design with respect to both intra-personal communication and inter-personal communication, using a wide variety of communications media.

#### **115.345 - 115.359 Special Topics**

2-credit papers which may be taught in any year, the content and requirements of each to be determined by the Head of the Department of Architecture.

#### **115.430 - 115.433 Elective Studies**

3-credit studies or projects as extensions of 300-level papers in the History, Theory and Criticism Group, or with the approval of Senate based on some other agreed topic in that Group.

#### **115.440 - 115.441 Research Reports**

6-credit reports based on research on an approved topic in History, Theory and Criticism.

#### **115.459 Thesis**

### **Practice & Management Group**

#### **115.260 New Zealand Building Industry**

The architectural profession and the building industry in New Zealand. Historical background and controlling legislation.

#### **115.360 Contract Documentation**

Preparation of documentation at all stages of architectural services; briefs, feasibility studies, reports, working drawings, certification; developments in this area. Principles and practice involved in the preparation of specifications, interpretation; performance specifications. Computer assistance in documentation.

#### **\*115.361 Building Economics**

Microeconomics as parameters in building decisions. Urban building economics. Building efficiency. Energy considerations in design, materials and services. Buildings as investments.

#### **\*115.362 Commercial Practice and Management**

A general appreciation of the principles and practice of accounting and commercial practice relevant to the practice of architecture. Management theory organisation; administration, production, distribution and control aspects; economic, financial and investment theories and techniques.

#### **115.363 Cost Control**

Cost planning and control in relation to the design team and design process. Economic feasibility. Cost in use studies. The quantity surveyor. Pricing.

#### **115.364 Construction Management**

Introduction to quantitative techniques in management of construction projects.

#### **115.365 Town Planning**

The evolution of modern town planning theory and practice. The planning process. Contemporary town planning in New Zealand.

#### **115.460 Practice & Law**

The appointment, authority, duties, responsibilities and liabilities of the architect. Control administration. Financing of building projects. Relationships with clients and related professions. Aspects of law as they affect the practice of architecture, building, land and related property.

### **115.370 - 115.379 Special Topics**

2-credit papers which may be taught in any year, the content and requirements of each to be determined by the Head of the Department of Architecture.

### **115.461 - 115.462 Elective Studies**

3-credit studies or projects as extensions of 300-level or 400-level papers in the Practice and Management Group, or with the approval of Senate based on some other agreed topic in that Group.

### **115.470 - 115.471 Research Reports**

6-credit reports based on research on an approved topic in Practice and Management.

### **115.479 Thesis**

### **Drawing and Related Skills Group**

#### **115.180 Architectural Drawing 1**

Introduction to the practice and analysis of architectural drawing. Freehand and instrumental drawing. Conventional projections and basic descriptive geometry.

#### **115.181 Freehand Drawing 1**

Freehand drawing techniques, sketching, basic perspective, the use of various media.

#### **115.182 Introduction to Computing**

An introductory survey of the current state of computing in architecture. Use of available software to produce textual and graphical documents. No prior knowledge or experience of computing is expected.

#### **115.183 Computer Graphics**

Applications in technical drafting (CAD), 3-dimensional modelling techniques, and rendering.

#### **115.280 Architectural Drawing 2**

Relationship between architectural form and its graphical representations. Analytical and critical value of drawing. Representation and rendering techniques related to studio drawing.

#### **115.281 Freehand Drawing 2**

Advanced techniques in freehand drawing, two-and three-point perspective.

#### **\*115.282 Life Drawing**

Analysis and understanding of proportion, structure, scale and how the human figure relates to architectural space and form.

#### **115.283 Computer Graphics Drawing**

Extended exposure to CAD and advanced drawing techniques. Introduction to management and utilization of computers in practice. Review of practices in Auckland.

#### **115.284 Audiovisual Techniques**

Co-ordination of skills and techniques in photography, multiple image projection, video, cinematography, audio and other media.

#### **115.380 Architectural Drawing 3**

Theories and practical exercises in architectural drawing. The value and purpose of drawing in its relationship to the design process and understanding architecture. Contemporary presentation techniques relating to drawing architecture.

#### **115.381 Human Figure in Architecture**

A drawn study of the structure and detail of the human figure and its relationships to architecture.

#### **115.382 Measured Drawing**

Measure, record and draw existing New Zealand



architecture of historical and cultural significance.

#### **115.390 - 115.399**

2-credit papers which may be taught in any year, the content and requirements of each to be determined by the Head of the Department of Architecture.

#### **115.480 - 115.481 Elective Studies**

3-credit studies or projects as extensions of 300-level papers in the Drawing and Related Skills Group, or with the approval of Senate based on some other agreed topic in that Group.

#### **115.490 - 115.491 Research Reports**

6-credit reports based on research on an approved topic in Drawing & Related Skills.

#### **115.499 Thesis**

## **PRESCRIPTIONS FOR March**

### **Design Group**

#### **115.500 Project**

##### **115.501 Major Project (Value two papers)**

An advanced project on which the candidate is required to submit a report. The project may be a design study, a technological or historical investigation, an experimental or theoretical research project, the development of a new design procedure, the development of a computer package.

### **Construction & Technology Group**

#### **115.510 Construction**

Advanced studies in methods of construction, materials used and services included, with reference to issues such as long term maintenance, energy management.

#### **115.511 Structure**

Advanced studies in structural design and the behaviour of buildings and building components under stress.

#### **115.512 Acoustics**

Advanced studies in selected aspects of room acoustics, including reverberation control, electronic assistance, design principles theory, measurement, physical and mathematical models.

#### **115.513 Noise Control**

Advanced studies in aspects of noise control. Measurement and evaluation of noise. Control theory and techniques.

#### **115.514 Lighting**

Selected aspects of natural and artificial lighting of building interiors, artificial lighting of building exteriors, landscapes.

#### **115.515 Energy Efficient Design**

Advanced studies in available techniques for the efficient use of passive and active energy in selected building types.

#### **115.516 Building Services**

Advanced studies in the provision, installation and control of all forms of building services.

#### **115.517 Environmental Aerodynamics**

Aspects of the effects and modification of air movement in and around buildings.

#### **115.518 Computer Applications (a)**

Applications of computer technology to problems in

building construction and technology.

#### **115.520 Elective**

An advanced paper on a topic in building construction and technology to be determined each year by the Head of the Department of Architecture.

#### **115.521 Elective**

An advanced paper on a topic in building construction and technology to be determined each year by the Head of the Department of Architecture.

### **History, Theory & Criticism Group**

#### **115.530 Building Conservation**

Advanced studies in the theory, legislation and technology of building conservation.

#### **115.531 NZ Architecture**

Selected aspects of the history of architecture in New Zealand with reference to particular developments and influences.

#### **115.532 Community Architecture**

Advanced studies in the processes of community architecture, including communication and group facilitation techniques, in the context of specific community design opportunities.

#### **115.533 Architectural Criticism**

Advanced studies of architectural writing on criticism relative to contemporary theoretical positions.

#### **115.534 Urban Design**

An advanced paper on the history, theory and development guidelines in relation to urbanism and urban forms.

#### **115.535 Oceanic Architecture**

Selected aspects of the indigenous architecture of the New Zealand Maori, the Pacific Islands and Asian Pacific Rim countries.

#### **115.536 Contemporary Architectural theory**

Advanced studies in contemporary architectural theory from writings, design, and built work.

#### **115.537 Design and Building Evaluation**

Extended studies in observing, measuring and assessing the performance of designed environments. Development of theory and techniques including post-occupancy research and pre-design briefing.

#### **115.540 Elective**

An advanced paper on a topic in the history or theory of architecture to be determined each year by the Head of the Department of Architecture.

#### **115.541 Elective**

An advanced paper on a topic in the history or theory of architecture to be determined each year by the Head of the Department of Architecture.

### **Practice & Management Group**

#### **115.560 Documentation**

Advanced studies in communication and documentation at all stages in architectural practice, from briefing to certification.

#### **115.561 Building Economics**

Advanced studies in the application of economics to decisions as to what, whether and how to build. Energy and investment considerations.

#### **115.562 Project Management**

Advanced studies in the management of building projects, from economic feasibility through the engagement and briefing of consultants, the design

and construction process, letting and leasing.

#### **115.563 Practice Management**

Advanced studies in the principles and practice of managing an office engaged in the practice of architecture. Management, accounting, control systems.

#### **115.564 Construction Management**

Advanced studies in the management of the construction process. Quantitative and other techniques in management.

#### **115.565 Marketing Architectural Services**

Studies in marketing research and marketing strategies in relation to the provision of architectural services.

#### **115.566 Quality Control**

The specification and management of quality. Policies, objectives, process control, inspection, costs and economics. Systems and their auditing.

#### **115.567 Computer Applications (b)**

Applications of computer technology to problems in architectural practice and management.

#### **115.570 Elective**

An advanced paper on a topic in architectural practice, economics, management, to be determined each year by the Head of the Department of Architecture.

#### **115.571 Elective**

An advanced paper on a topic in architectural practice,

economics, management, to be determined each year by the Head of the Department of Architecture.

#### **Drawing & Related Skills Group**

#### **115.580 Architectural Drawing**

Advanced studies in architectural drawing. Studies of contemporary presentation techniques and historical precedents.

#### **115.581 Computer Graphics**

Advanced applications of CAD and computer graphics techniques.

#### **115.582 Communication**

Advanced studies in communication: verbal, written, graphic, photographic, cinematography, video, multiple image projection, audio-visual, computer-aided and other media.

#### **115.590 Elective**

An advanced paper on a topic in drawing, audio-visual techniques or computer graphics, to be determined each year by the Head of the Department of Architecture.

#### **115.591 Elective**

An advanced paper on a topic in drawing, audio-visual techniques or computer graphics, to be determined each year by the Head of the Department of Architecture.

## **DEGREE COURSE REGULATIONS**

### **DEPARTMENT OF PROPERTY THE DEGREE OF BACHELOR OF PROPERTY ADMINISTRATION BPA**

*The general course of study of every candidate must be approved by the Senate. Approval will normally be granted for courses which are in accordance with the following regulations: for General provisions affecting their course of study students are referred to the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General), and the Examination Regulations.*

#### **General Provisions**

1. (a). Subject to the Admission Regulations, and except as elsewhere provided in these Regulations, a candidate for the Degree of Bachelor of Property Administration shall:
  - (i) pursue a course of study for a period of not less than three years; and
  - (ii) pass an Intermediate Examination and two Property Administration Examinations.
- (b). Except with the permission of the Senate no candidate for this Degree shall take in any one year Property Administration Examination subjects worth more than 42 credits.

#### **Examinations**

2. (1). A candidate shall be required to pass as a whole the Intermediate Examination and each Property Administration Examination so that performance in all subjects of the Examination shall be considered; but
  - (a). A candidate who fails to pass an Examination (whether Intermediate or Property Administration) as a whole may at the discretion of Senate be
    - (i) credited with a subject or subjects of that Examination, and
    - (ii) permitted in a subsequent year to present the subject or subjects not so credited, together with a subject or subjects of the First or Second Property Administration Examination as the case may be.
  - (b). A candidate who is studying for this Degree part-time or in conjunction with any other degree, may be required to pass an examination consisting of such work, less than the full Examination, as the Senate may in its discretion determine and to present the remaining subjects of the full Examination in a subsequent year, together with a subject or subjects of the next succeeding Examination.
  - (c). A candidate to whom either of the foregoing paragraphs (a) and (b) applies shall be required to pass as a whole an Examination consisting of the subjects taken in any year, so that the candidate's performance in all subjects taken in that year shall be considered.
- (2). No candidate may enrol for any paper of the First Property Administration Examination without having passed at least six papers for the Intermediate Examination.

#### **Intermediate Examination**

3. (1). The subjects of the Intermediate Examination shall be:

| Subject   | Paper No.                             |
|---|---------------------------------------|
| Introduction to Property  | 37.100                                |
| Economics (two papers)  | 13.100 and 13.101                     |
| Geography   | 20.101 or 20.102                      |
| Sociology   | 82.101                                |
| a paper in statistics   | 26.181 or 26.182 or 26.180 or 13.102  |
| One elective paper from   |                                       |
| Accounting  | 01.102 or 01.103 or 18.113            |
| Commercial Law  | 02.100                                |
| English   | 18.101 or 18.103 or 18.113            |
| Geography   | 20.101 or 20.102 (if not taken above) |
| Geology   | 21.110 or 21.111                      |
| History   | 24.122 or 24.123                      |
| Political Studies   | 30.107 or 30.109                      |
| (2). (a). A candidate at another New Zealand University may substitute for any or each of the above papers an approved equivalent paper available at that University. |                                       |
| (b). Where a subject equivalent to the subject 37.100 is not available the candidate  |                                       |
| (i) shall take an additional elective paper in the Intermediate Examination; and  |                                       |
| (ii) shall, if admitted to the First Property Administration Examination, take 37.100 as a required paper in Part B of that Examination.                              |                                       |

Note: See note to Regulation 6.

### First Property Administration Examination

4. The First Property Administration Examination shall comprise

#### Part A

| Paper No. | Subject                           | Credits |
|-----------|-----------------------------------|---------|
| 37.200    | Valuation Method 1                | 4       |
| 37.210    | Principles of Land Administration | 3       |
| 37.202    | Property Law I                    | 3       |
| 37.203    | Residential Construction          | 4       |
| 37.204    | Financial Appraisal               | 4       |
| 37.205    | Land Use Planning                 | 3       |
| 37.209    | Building Economics                | 3       |
| 37.206    | Building Technology               | 3       |

#### Part B

Two papers - (a). from those in the following Schedule except that one may be a paper not previously passed from those listed in Regulation 3 (1); and  
(b). of which at least one shall be a paper at 200 level or higher.

### Schedule to Regulation 4 Part B

| Department                                    | Paper No. | Subject   |
|---|-----------|---|
| Anthropology                                  | 03.102    | Introduction to Maori Society<br>(also offered as Maori Studies 04.101)               |
|   | 03.304    | Social History of Maori<br>Land Legislation<br>(also offered as Maori Studies 04.308) |
|   | 03.331    | Archeological Resource Management   |
|   |           |   |
| Economics                                     | 13.200    | Microeconomics  |
|   | 13.201    | Macroeconomics  |
|   | 13.203    | Managerial Economics  |
|   | 13.205    | Introduction to Econometrics  |
|   | 13.210    | Industrialisation and Economic<br>Development   |
|   | 13.307    | Public Expenditure  |
| Geography                                     | 20.101    | Geography of the Natural Environment  |
|   | 20.102    | Society, Space and Place  |
|   | 20.201    | Processes in the Natural Environment  |
|   | 20.202    | Society, Economy and Environment  |
|   | 20.302    | Regional Processes and Development  |
|   | 20.305    | Population Processes, Policies and Techniques   |
|   | 20.314    | Geographic Information Systems and<br>Image Processing                                |
|   | 20.320    | Resources & Environmental Management  |
| Management Science and<br>Information Systems | 74.100    | Business Computing  |
|   | 74.200    | Operations Management   |

| Department                              | Paper No.                  | Subject   |
|---|----------------------------|---|
| Management Studies and Labour Relations | 72.101                     | Organisation and Management   |
| Planning                                | 36.251<br>36.351           | Environmental Planning 1<br>Environmental Planning 2  |
| Political Studies                       | 30.211<br>30.310<br>30.402 | Public Administration: Central & Local<br>Public Administration: Theory & Process<br>Topic on Urban Government & Politics |
| Sociology                               | 82.202<br>82.309           | New Zealand Community Studies<br>Social Policy, Planning and the State  |

Or other papers approved by the Head of the Department as relevant to this Degree.

## Second Property Administration Examination

5. The Second Property Administration Examination shall comprise

### Part A

| Paper No. | Subject                  | Credits | Prerequisite         | Corequisite |
|-----------|--------------------------|---------|----------------------|-------------|
| 37.300    | Valuation Method 2       | 4       | 37.200               |             |
| 37.310    | Advanced Land Admin.     | 4       | 37.210               |             |
| 37.302    | Property Law 2           | 3       | 37.202               |             |
| 37.303    | Commercial Construction  | 4       | 37.206               |             |
| 37.304    | Advanced Financial Appr. | 2       | 37.200 and<br>37.204 |             |
| 37.305    | Urban Land Economics     | 4       | 37.209               |             |
| 37.306    | Building Contracts       | 2       | 37.203               |             |
| 37.325    | Property Finance         | 2       | 37.210 and<br>37.204 |             |
| 37.312    | Research Project         | 8       | 1st PA Exam          | 2nd PA Exam |

Note: Paper 37.312 shall always be taken during the last year of a student's course of study for this Degree.

### Part B

Two papers from those in the Schedule to Part B of Regulation 4 (not already taken) of which

(a) one shall be at 300 level or higher

(b) the other shall be at 200 level; but in place of this paper one Special Topic of 2 credits may be substituted.

### Schedule of Special Topics

| Paper No. | Subject                                      | Credits | Prerequisite         | Corequisite          |
|-----------|--|---------|----------------------|----------------------|
| 37.321    | Development Process                          | 2       | 37.210               | 37.310               |
| 37.322    | Real Estate Markets                          | 2       | 37.210               | 37.305               |
| 37.323    | Introduction to Rural Valuation & Management | 2       | 37.200 and<br>37.210 | 37.300 and<br>37.310 |
| 37.324    | Development Management                       | 2       | 37.210               | 37.310               |
| 37.326    | Land Subdivision                             | 2       | 37.210               | 37.310               |
| 37.327-   | Special topics approved by                   |         |                      |                      |
| 37.329    | Head of Department each                      | 2       |                      |                      |

Note: Subjects listed in the Schedule of Special Topics in Part B of the Second Property Administration Examination will be taught only if sufficient staff are available and if enrolments are adequate to warrant teaching the subject.

### Prerequisites and Restrictions

6. A candidate shall comply with the prerequisites and restrictions relating to any paper taken for Part B of the First or of the Second Property Administration Examination; except so far as the Head of Department concerned may otherwise permit.

Note: Candidates should before the beginning of the Intermediate year ascertain what prerequisites and restrictions may be applicable under this Regulation.

### Substitutions

7. (1). A candidate for this Degree who has been credited for another degree with any paper prescribed for the First or the Second Property Administration Examination (including any paper substantially the same) - shall substitute for each paper so credited such additional paper or papers (in Part B of that Examination) as the Head of Department may approve and as may be equivalent to it in credits.

(2). For the purpose of this Regulation

(a). A paper in the Faculty of Arts or Commerce at 100 level shall count for 5 credits; above 100 level, 4 credits;

- (b). Science credits shall count for the same number of credits for this Degree; and
- (c). The credits for any paper taken in any other Faculty shall be determined by the Head of Department.

**Exemption**

8. Subject to the Admission Regulations, a candidate who being a graduate of any New Zealand University has passed at least three papers (at least two of which shall not be elective papers) meeting the requirements of Regulation 3 shall
  - (a) be exempted from the Intermediate Examination except for Paper 37.100;
  - (b) take Paper 37.100 as a required paper in Part B of the First Property Administration Examination; and
  - (c) pursue a course of study of not less than two years.
9. These Regulations shall come into force on 1 January 1984.

## THE DEGREE OF MASTER OF PROPERTY ADMINISTRATION MPA

*The personal course of study of every candidate must be approved by the Senate. Approval will normally be granted for courses which are in accordance with the following regulations: for general provisions affecting their courses of study students are referred to the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General), and the Examination Regulations.*

**General Provisions**

1. Subject to the Admission Regulations, a candidate for the Degree of Master of Property Administration shall before enrolment for this Degree:
  - (a) have been admitted or qualified for admission to the Degree of Bachelor of Property Administration and have:
    - (i) attained an average grade of B- or higher in the course of study of that Degree; or
    - (ii) had at least two years' relevant postgraduate experience in the field of study for this Degree; or
    - (iii) otherwise shown to the satisfaction of the Head of Department capacity to undertake advanced study and research in the subjects proposed to be taken for this Degree; or
  - (b) have been awarded the Diploma in Valuation with Honours and have completed two papers at 200 level or higher from those available for Part B of the First or Second Property Administration Examination; or
  - (c) have been awarded the Diploma in Valuation at a standard acceptable to the Head of Department, have had at least two years' relevant postgraduate experience in the field of study for this Degree, and have completed two papers at 200 level or higher and two papers at 300 level from those available for Part B of the First or Second Property Administration Examination.
- (2) Where the Head of Department so recommends, the Senate may approve the enrolment for this Degree of a candidate who has (with or without Honours) completed the Diploma in Valuation or in exceptional circumstances the Diploma in Urban Valuation; and who has, through other university study, through relevant practical experience, or otherwise, shown capacity to undertake advanced study and research in the subjects proposed to be taken for this Degree.

**Course Content**

2. Every candidate for this Degree shall
  - (a) in one year take the examinations in four of the papers prescribed in Regulation 3 of these Regulations, except that a candidate who provides evidence of being engaged in full-time employment may be permitted by the Head of Department to present two papers in the first year and two in the second year; and
  - (b) present a thesis (37.601) under the conditions prescribed in Regulation 4.

**Papers**

3. The papers for this Degree are such of the following as are from time to time offered:

|        |                                   |
|--------|-----------------------------------|
| 37.401 | Building Construction             |
| 37.402 | Land Administration               |
| 37.403 | Property Law                      |
| 37.404 | Urban Land and Building Economics |
| 37.405 | Valuation                         |
| 37.406 | Appraisal                         |
| 37.407 | Real Estate Financing             |
| 37.408 | Property Marketing                |
| 37.409 | Building Restoration              |
| 37.410 | Construction Management           |

and not more than two from

- (i) the following papers (indicative list)

|           |        |                              |
|-----------|--------|------------------------------|
| Economics | 13.404 | Development and Planning     |
|           | 13.408 | Urban Economics              |
| Geography | 20.430 | Land Use Studies             |
|           | 20.432 | Regional Development Studies |
|           | 20.436 | Urban Geography              |
| MS&LR     | 72.405 | Organisation Development     |

|                   |        |   |
|-------------------|--------|---|
| MS&LR             | 72.406 | Entrepreneurial Behaviour and Small Business Management |
| Political Studies | 30.402 | A Topic on Urban Government and Politics                |
|                   | 30.413 | Public Administration                                   |
| Sociology         | 82.403 | Advanced Topics in Economic Sociology                   |
|                   | 82.404 | Advanced Topics in Political Sociology                  |
|                   | 82.406 | Urban Sociology and Ecology                             |

or

(ii) any other 400 level papers (from any department) approved by the Head of the Department.

**Thesis**

4. (a). The thesis shall be of the value of three papers, and shall embody the results obtained by the candidate in an investigation relating to some aspect of Property Administration.
- (b). A candidate shall present the thesis in the year in which the last papers are taken, or in a subsequent year within three years of the year in which the candidate was first enrolled; but this period may in exceptional circumstances be extended by the Senate.
- (c). The candidate shall deliver the thesis to the Registrar by 1 November of the year in which it is presented or at a later date with the permission of the Head of Department.
- (d). Where a candidate submits a thesis which is of inadequate standard on first submission, the Senate may on the recommendation of the examiners permit the candidate to revise it and resubmit it at a later date specified by the examiners.

**Honours**

5. (a). There shall be two classes of Honours: First Class Honours and Second Class Honours. Second Class Honours shall be awarded in two divisions, First Division and Second Division.
- (b). Where (i) on first examination, a candidate fails a paper; or
- (ii) on first submission, a candidate's thesis is of inadequate standard, Honours shall not be awarded, but a candidate whose performance at a written examination has been seriously impaired by illness or injury or exceptional circumstances (certified as under the aegrotat or compassionate pass provisions of the Examination Regulations) may elect, instead of applying for an aegrotat or compassionate pass, to take a subsequent written examination so as to be still eligible for the award of Honours subject to the provisions of paragraph (c) of this Regulation.
- (c). A candidate shall be eligible for the award of Honours only if the requirements for Honours are completed within three years of the candidate's first enrolment for this Degree, but this period may in exceptional circumstances be extended by the Senate.
6. These Regulations shall come into force on 1 January 1986.

**DEGREE COURSE PRESCRIPTIONS****PRESCRIPTIONS FOR BPA**

Prescriptions for the subjects named in the preceding Regulations for BPA are given below:

**37.100 Introduction to Property**

The nature of property interests and their role in society. The profession of the land. Professionalism and report writing. Urbanisation. Land economics and market forces. Concept of value.

**37.200 Valuation Method 1**

Valuation methodologies and processes in relation to land and improvements. Valuation of income producing properties. The effect of the legal estate on values.

**37.210 Principles of Land Administration**

Property Management principles and techniques. The stewardship of all descriptions of real property. The national estate. The urban/rural fringe. Maori perceptions. Property consultancy. The development process.

**37.202 Property Law 1**

The legal system; central and local government. The law relating to real property. Legal personality.

**37.203 Residential Construction**

The house building industry. Dwelling site considerations. Design, construction and materials. Domestic building services, maintenance and repairs. Defects in existing structures. Drainage and

sanitation.

**37.204 Financial Appraisal**

An introduction to business structures and procedures. Accounting principles. Company reports. Principles of taxation.

**37.205 Land Use Planning**

Planning practice in New Zealand. An examination of planning techniques, the statutory planning process and the effect of planning on property rights and values. An evaluation of selected current planning issues.

**37.209 Building Economics**

Microeconomic criteria for development and investment decisions. The mathematics of the time value of money in property, project and finance evaluations. Interest tables, DCF, inflation.

**37.206 Building Technology**

Principles of environmental control. Buildings and climate. Human comfort in buildings. Principles of structure. Structural steel. Reinforced concrete. Prestressed concrete.

**37.300 Valuation Method 2**

Investment yields and returns. Ground leases and leasehold interests. Rental valuation and lease analysis. Specialist properties. Computer applications. Compulsory acquisition, compensation and other statutory valuations.

**37.310 Advanced Land Administration**

Advanced studies in property and building management. Landlord and tenant. The social responsibilities of ownership control. The professional management office. Computer applications. Feasibility studies. Marketing.

**37.302 Property Law 2**

The law of contracts. Real property sale and purchase. Leases. Mortgages. Agency and commissions. Arbitrations. Professional liability.

**37.303 Commercial Construction**

The construction of large and high rise buildings. Building, earthquake and health regulations. Building services and service contracts. Programmed and remedial maintenance.

**37.304 Advanced Financial Appraisal**

Business structures. Taxation of property and property ownership. Valuation of going concerns.

**37.305 Urban Land Economics**

The economics of urbanisation. Theories of urban structure. The urban land market. Role of the financial institutions. Economic aspects of urban valuation.

**37.306 Building Contracts**

Contract processes, procedures and documentation. Specifications. Quantities, measuring, prices and estimates. Working drawings.

**37.312 Research Project**

The topic for research must be approved by the Head of the School. The essay (or equivalent written work) must embody the results of an individual investigation into a property-related field, urban or rural, and must be the sole work of the student. The essay, which will count as one paper, must be of the order of 5,000 words (or equivalent) in length and must be submitted in the style and form required.

**37.321 Development Process**

Advanced studies in property development and land subdivision. The professional interface. Feasibility studies. Finance. Project management and coordination.

**37.322 Real Estate Markets**

An exploration of the urban and rural property market and sub-markets. Price and value. Financial performance indices. Real estate cycles.

**37.323 Introduction to Rural Valuation & Management**

The rural environment. Management and valuation of farms, forests, small holdings. Horticulture, viticulture, aquaculture. Factors affecting primary production and rural industries.

**37.324 Development Management**

Concept evaluation. The professional team. Contract management and programming. Investment imperatives and cash flow control. Project control group procedures.

**37.325 Property Finance**

The national and international money market. The financial intermediaries. Source of finance for property construction, development and investment and for tourist facilities. Economic factors and government policies.

**37.326 Land Subdivision**

The land subdivision planning and development processes. Structure, scheme, survey, deposit and title plans. Residential communities. Commercial and industrial estates. Marketing.

**PREScriptions FOR MPA**

The prescriptions for the subjects named in the preceding Regulations for MPA are listed as follows:

**37.401 Building Construction**

Advanced studies in methods of construction, materials used, and services included with reference to issues such as long term maintenance, energy management.

**37.402 Land Administration**

Advanced studies in land economy and property management from national, regional and local viewpoints, including traditional and alternative land tenure systems and philosophies.

**37.403 Property Law**

Selected aspects of the law relating to property ownership, contractual relationships, leasing, development agreements and marketing contracts.

**37.404 Urban Land and Building Economics**

Advanced studies in the economic systems of the built environment.

**37.405 Valuation**

Advanced valuation techniques including investment appraisal, computerised valuation methods and overseas alternatives used in commercial and financial studies.

**37.406 Appraisal**

The study of the role of advanced analytical techniques in valuation, development and property management.

**37.407 Real Estate Financing**

Directed readings on advanced real estate financing techniques. Consideration of legal and taxation implications. The role of joint ventures.

**37.408 Property Marketing**

Marketing principles and methods. The presentation of real estate proposals for sale, lease, development, investment, consultancy. Market research. Professional services in the integrated firm.

**37.409 Building Restoration**

Studies of recent New Zealand and overseas examples in terms of marketability, economics, controls and tenant perceptions. Specific guidelines for particular project types will be developed.

**37.410 Construction Management**

A critical assessment of local project management experiences in terms of timing, framework and professional skills involved. Future directions, along with present deficiencies, will be discussed.

## DEGREE COURSE REGULATIONS

### DEPARTMENT OF PLANNING

### THE DEGREE OF BACHELOR OF PLANNING BPlan

*The personal course of study of every candidate must be approved by the Senate. Approval will normally be granted for courses which are in accordance with the following regulations: for general provisions affecting their courses of study students are referred to the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General), and the Examination Regulations.*

#### General Provisions

1. (a). Subject to the Admission Regulations, a candidate for the Degree of Bachelor of Planning shall:
  - (i) pursue a course of study for a period of not less than four years;
  - (ii) pass an Intermediate Examination and three Professional Examinations.
- (b). Except with the permission of the Senate no candidate for this Degree shall take in any one year more than 44 credits or their equivalent under Regulation 8(c).

#### Examinations

2. (a). A candidate shall be required to pass as a whole the Intermediate Examination and each Professional Examination so that the candidate's performance in all papers of the Examination shall be considered; but
  - (i) where a candidate fails to pass a Professional Examination as a whole the candidate may at the discretion of the Senate be credited with a paper or papers of that Examination, and be permitted in a subsequent year to present the paper or papers not so credited, together with a paper or papers of the Second, or Third Professional Examination as the case may be;
  - (ii) a candidate who has not passed or been exempted from the Intermediate Examination but has passed 6 papers of that Examination (including all of the papers required by subparagraphs (i), (ii) and (iii) of paragraph (a) of Regulation 3) may enrol for a paper or papers of the First Professional Examination as well as the remaining paper of the Intermediate Examination.
- (b). A candidate whose course in any year consists of more or less papers than a full Examination or whose course is taken from more than one Examination shall have his or her performance in all papers taken in that year considered as a whole.

#### Intermediate Examination

3. (a). Subject to paragraph (b) of this Regulation, the Intermediate Examination shall consist of seven papers comprising:
  - (i) One paper from: Mathematics 26.101, 26.102, 26.180, 26.181 and 26.182
  - (ii) Geography 20.101 and 20.102
  - (iii) Economics 13.100 and 13.101
  - (iv) Two other papers as listed for the Degree of Bachelor of Arts, or the equivalent from any subjects prescribed for any other degree; but subject in any case to the approval of the Head of the Department.
- (b). (i) A candidate who has gained not less than 50 marks in a University Bursaries Examination paper in mathematics which includes statistics may take an additional paper under subparagraph (iv) of paragraph (a) of this Regulation instead of the paper required under subparagraph (i) of that paragraph.
- (ii) The Head of the Department may in exceptional circumstances approve the substitution for any of the papers listed in subparagraphs (i) to (iv) of paragraph (a) of this Regulation of any other paper or equivalent credits from any subjects prescribed for any other degree.
- (c). A candidate may, with the approval of the Senate, be exempted from the requirements of the Intermediate Examination in any of the following cases:
  - (i) Subject to Regulation 7 of these Regulations, where the candidate is a graduate of any university;
  - (ii) where the candidate has passed the First Professional Examination for Bachelor of Architecture, Bachelor of Engineering or Bachelor of Property Administration, or the First Law Examination for Bachelor of Laws or Bachelor of Laws (Honours); or the first professional year for a similar degree of another New Zealand university;
  - (iii) where the candidate has qualified with outstanding merit for the New Zealand Certificate in Draughting (Town and Country Planning) or the New Zealand Certificate in Town Planning;
  - (iv) where the candidate holds a professional qualification in Architecture, Engineering, Surveying or Town Planning, or has been awarded or qualified for the award of a Diploma in Architecture or Surveying or Valuation: but any candidate so exempted under any of the foregoing subparagraphs (i) to (iv) of this paragraph may be required to take up to 6 additional credits as part of each of the First and Second Professional Examinations, if the Head of Department determines that the candidate has inadequate background in areas covered by the Intermediate Examination.



**First Professional Examination**

4. The First Professional Examination shall consist of:

| The First Professional Examination shall consist of: |   |         |                |
|--|---|---------|----------------|
| Paper No.  | Title of Paper  | Credits | Restrictions   |
| <b>PART A</b>  |   |         |                |
| 36.250   | Studio I  | 5       |                |
| 36.251   | Environmental Planning I  | 4       |                |
| 36.252   | Law, Government & Planning                                      | 4       |                |
| <b>PART B</b>  |   |         |                |
| 36.262   | Environmental Studies   | 4       | 64,200, 84,200 |
| 13.203   | Managerial Economics  | 5       |                |
| and two papers from the following:                   |   |         |                |
| 20.202   | Geographical Perspectives on Urban-Industrial Societies         | 5       |                |
| 30.211   | Public Administration: Central and Local                        | 5       |                |
| 82.202   | A Topic in Comparative Sociology: New Zealand Community Studies | 5       |                |

**PART C**

Not less than four credits from any of the papers prescribed for or Special Topics available in the First Architecture Examination for the Degree of Bachelor of Architecture.

**Second Professional Examination**

5. The Second Professional Examination shall consist of:

| Paper No.     | Title of Paper                             | Credits |
|---------------|--|---------|
| <b>PART A</b> |  |         |
| 36.350        | Studio II                                  | 9       |
| 36.351        | Environmental Planning II                  | 4       |
| 36.352        | Planning Law and Controls                  | 4       |
| 36.353        | Planning and Design                        | 4       |
| 36.354        | Quantitative Planning Techniques           | 1       |
| 36.355        | Public Utilities                           | 1       |
| 36.356        | Traffic Engineering and Transport Planning | 1       |
| <b>PART B</b> |  |         |
| 36.361        | Community Participation Project            | 2       |
| 36.362        | Field Project                              | 1       |
| 36.363        | Presentation for Planners                  | 1       |
| 36.364        | Graphics for Planners                      | 1       |
| 36.365        | Planning Case Studies                      | 1       |

**PART C**

Not less than 6 credits from the following:

- (i) Papers prescribed for or Special Topics available in the First and Second Architecture Examinations for the Degree of Bachelor of Architecture and any of the Special Topics listed in Part B of the Second Property Administration Examination.
- (ii) Papers in other Faculties (if available):  
 Anthropology/Maori Studies: 03.102 and 04.101  
 Engineering: 52.151, 52.271, 52.391 and 55.231  
 Law: 25.313  
 Management Studies: 72.203 and 72.205  
 Land Labour Relations
- (iii) Special Topics approved by the Head of the Department:

| Paper No        | Title of Paper                             | Credits |
|-----------------|--|---------|
| † 36.370        | Special Topic<br>Energy Issues in Planning | 1       |
| 36.375 - 36.378 | Special Topic                              | 1       |
| 36.379 - 36.382 | Special Topic                              | 2       |
| 36.383 - 36.385 | Special Topic                              | 3       |
| 36.386 - 36.387 | Special Topic                              | 4       |
| 36.388          | Special Topic                              | 5       |

In exceptional circumstances the Head of the Department may allow a candidate to substitute for any of the papers prescribed for Parts A and B of this Examination a paper or papers taken from paragraphs (i) or (ii) of Part C.

**Third Professional Examination**

6. The Third Professional Examination shall consist of:

| Paper No.     | Title of Paper                       | Credits | Restrictions |
|---------------|--------------------------------------|---------|--------------|
| <b>PART A</b> |                                      |         |              |
| 36.450        | Studio III                           | 12      |              |
| 36.451        | Environmental Planning III           | 4       |              |
| 36.452        | Planning Organisation and Management | 4       |              |
| 36.458        | Planning Theory Review               | 1       |              |

**PART B**

Not less than 15 credits from the following:

|  |                                |   |
|--|--------------------------------|---|
| 36.453   | Research Study                 | 4 |
| 36.454   | Major Project                  | 2 |
| 36.455   | Minor Project                  | 1 |
| 36.456   | Urban Planning                 | 2 |
| 36.457   | Maori Planning Issues          | 2 |
| 36.459   | Housing                        | 2 |
| 36.460   | Recreation & Reserves Planning | 2 |
| 36.461   | Pacific Development Issues     | 1 |
| 36.462   | Future Studies                 | 1 |
| Special Topics approved by the Head of Department: |                                |   |
| 36.470   | Special Topic                  | 1 |
| 36.471   | Special Topic                  | 1 |
| † 36.472   | Development Planning Theory    | 1 |
|  | Special Topic                  |   |
|  | Planning for Tourism           |   |
| 36.473 - 36.478                                    | Special Topics                 | 1 |
| 36.479 - 36.482                                    | Special Topic                  | 2 |
| 36.480   | Special Topic                  | 2 |
| 36.481   | Special Topic                  | 2 |
| 36.483 to 36.485                                   | Special Topic                  | 3 |
| 36.486 & 36.487                                    | Special Topic                  | 4 |
| 36.488   | Special Topic                  | 5 |

In exceptional circumstances the Head of Department may allow a candidate to substitute up to 6 credits from a paper prescribed for any other degree or diploma for the equivalent credits from the Special Topics listed above.

**Graduate Entry**

7. (1). Subject to the Admission Regulations, a candidate to whom this Regulation applies may complete this Degree by:
- substituting for the First and Second Professional Examination a Graduate Professional Examination which shall consist of Part A from each of the First and Second Professional Examinations; and
  - completing the Third Professional Examination: but the candidate may, where the Head of Department determines that he or she has inadequate background in the areas covered by the Intermediate Examination or by Part B of the First or Part B of the Second Professional Examination, be required to take up to 8 credits from appropriate papers in those areas in each of the Graduate and Third Professional Examinations.
- (2). This Regulation applies:
- to a candidate who has been admitted (or has qualified for admission) to:
  - any of the Degrees of Bachelor of Architecture, Bachelor of Laws or Bachelor of Property Administration; or
  - the Degree of Bachelor of Engineering, where taken in Civil Engineering; or
  - the Degree of Bachelor of Arts, or Bachelor of Science, or Bachelor of Commerce; he or she having complied with the Stage III requirements of that Degree by passing papers in Anthropology, Biology, Botany, Economics, Geography, Geology, History, Management Studies, Maori Studies, Political Studies, Sociology or Zoology; and
  - to a candidate who has been:
  - admitted (or has qualified for admission) to a degree of any other University, *either* in any of the disciplines Architecture, Civil Engineering, Law, Property Administration or Surveying *or* having a sufficient content of advanced work in the subjects set out in paragraph (2) (a) (iii) of this Regulation; and (ii) approved by the Senate for the purpose of this Regulation.

**Restrictions, Requirements and Substitutions**

8. (a). In any case where Regulation 4 (j) of the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General) applies, the candidate may be required to take in substitution for the disallowed paper or subject such paper or papers or credits of equivalent value prescribed for any degree as the Head of the Department determines.

(b). A candidate enrolled in a paper presented for another degree shall comply with the relevant parts of the regulations for that degree, including those relating to pre-enrolment, corequisites, prerequisites, restrictions, combinations of subjects and practical work.

(c). For subjects taken in other Faculties, credits shall be awarded for passes in accordance with the following:

| Faculty     | Equiv. Credits for this Degree          |
|-------------|---|
| Arts        | For each paper 5                        |
| Commerce    | For each paper 5                        |
| Engineering | For each half-year subject 4            |
|             | For each full-year subject 6            |
| Law         | For each hour of instruction per week 2 |
| Science     | For each credit 1                       |

9. These Regulations shall come into force on 1 January 1986.

Note: † This paper may not be taught in the current Calendar Year.

## THE DEGREE OF MASTER OF PLANNING MPlan

*The personal course of study of every candidate must be approved by the Senate. Approval will normally be granted for courses which are in accordance with the following regulations: for general provisions affecting their courses of study students are referred to the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General), and the Examination Regulations.*

### General Provisions

- Subject to the Admission Regulations, a candidate for the Degree of Master of Planning shall before enrolment:
  - have been admitted or qualified for admission to the Degree of Bachelor of Planning, and
  - have obtained, in the opinion of the Head of the Department, a sufficiently high standard in Part A of the Third Professional Examination, with no paper graded lower than C.
- Except as provided elsewhere in these Regulations a candidate shall take all papers required for this Degree in the same year. A candidate who is engaged in full-time employment, or with other demanding responsibilities, may be permitted by the Head of the Department to present three or four papers in the first year, or in special circumstances two papers in the first year; and shall present all papers within three years of first enrolment for the Degree.
- No candidate shall take for this Degree any paper that is the same or substantially equivalent to any other paper being taken or already passed and obtain credit for both for this Degree.

### Course Content

- Every candidate for the Degree of Master of Planning shall be required to pass in five papers and a research essay (36.603) which shall count as one paper; or four papers and a thesis (36.601) which shall count as two papers. At least two papers and the thesis or three papers and the research essay shall be chosen from Part A; not more than two papers can be chosen from Part B.

#### PART A

- 36.500 Planning Theory
- 36.501 Planning Techniques
- 36.502 Planning Law and Administration
- 36.503-512 Special Topics approved by the Head of Department of Planning
- 36.601 Thesis
- 36.603 Research Essay

#### PART B

- 52.491 Public Health Engineering Seminar (as prescribed for the Degree of ME)
- 52.473 Transportation Planning (as prescribed for the Degree of ME)
- 20.436 Urban Geography (as prescribed for the subject Geography for the Degree of MA)
- 30.402 A topic on Urban Government and Politics (as prescribed for the subject Political Studies for the Degree of MA)
- 82.406 Urban Sociology and Ecology (as prescribed for the subject Sociology for the Degree of MA)
- 25.383 Social Control of Land (as prescribed for the Degree of LLB (Hons).
- 15.503 Design Theory (as prescribed for the Degree of MArch) provided that the Head of the Department of Planning approves the relevance of paper 15.503 to the subject of investigation for the thesis before a candidate may enrol in that paper.

### Thesis

- Where a thesis (36.601) is required the following conditions shall apply:
  - The thesis shall embody the results obtained by the candidate in an investigation in some branch of Planning.
  - A candidate shall present the thesis in the final year in which the papers are taken or within the next three years, provided that the time may be extended in exceptional cases by the Senate.
  - If the Examiner with the concurrence of the Assessor so recommends, a thesis which is not considered satisfactory shall be returned to the candidate, who may be permitted to revise it and to resubmit it by a later

date to be specified by the Examiner.

**Note:** An abstract is to be submitted with each copy of the thesis, see Examination Regulation 15.

### Honours

6. (a). There shall be two classes of Honours: First Class Honours and Second Class Honours. Second Class Honours shall be awarded in two divisions, First Division and Second Division.  
 (b). Honours shall not be awarded if the papers in the first year in which a candidate takes an examination for the Degree are unsatisfactory or if the thesis at its first presentation is unsatisfactory; provided that a candidate whose performance at a written examination has been seriously impaired by illness or injury or exceptional circumstances beyond his or her control (certified as under the aegrotat or compassionate pass provisions of the Examination Regulations) may elect, instead of applying for an aegrotat or compassionate pass, to take a subsequent written examination so as to be still eligible for the award of Honours, subject to the provision of paragraph (c) of this Regulation.  
 (c). A candidate shall be eligible for the award of Honours only if the requirements for Honours are completed within three years of his first enrolment for this Degree.
7. These Regulations shall come into force on 1 January 1988.

## DEGREE COURSE PRESCRIPTIONS

### PRESCRIPTIONS FOR BPlan

#### First Professional Examination

##### PART A

##### 36.250 Studio (5 Credits)

The development of problem solving, perception and presentation skills as necessary to deal with practical planning and urban design projects.

##### 36.251 Environmental Planning I (4 Credits)

A descriptive history of settlement patterns in selected countries; British colonial settlement and the Wakefield influence; the evolution of planning thought; public policy and environmental change; ecosystem-settlement interactions. Planning processes; paradigms of planning; the role of knowledge in planning; cybernetics and systems; aspects of process, procedural and substantive theory; distinguishing planning and design process.

##### 36.252 Law, Government & Planning (4 Credits)

Introduction to law-government; law-government and planning; law related to town and country planning; property rights in land.

##### PART B

##### 13.214 The N.Z. Economy 13.200 Microeconomics 13.201 Macroeconomics

Established Courses taught by the Department of Economics

##### 20.202 Geographical Perspectives in Urban-Industrial Societies (5 Credits)

This course will comprise elements of an existing course taught by the Department of Geography.

##### 30.211 Public Administration: Central and Local (5 Credits)

This course will comprise elements of an existing course taught by the Department of Political Studies.

##### 36.262 Environmental Studies (4 Credits)

Introduction to global environmental problems of population, resources and pollution, with local illustrations through tutorials and field trips.

##### 82.202 A Topic in Comparative Sociology: New Zealand, Community Studies (5 Credits)

This course will comprise elements of an existing course taught by the Department of Sociology.

#### Second Professional Examination

##### PART A

##### 36.350 Studio (9 Credits)

Practical planning and urban design projects relating course material to real world contexts. The further development of problem solving, perception, and presentation skills as necessary.

##### 36.351 Environmental Planning II (4 Credits)

Comparative planning systems; externalities and social costs; the concept of public amenity value; policies and strategies; social indicators. Land use classification, coding and sorting systems; land use survey. The nature of, and comparative approaches to, regional planning; definitions of regions and regional planning functions in New Zealand; issues in regional development. Trends in rural activity and their physical and social implications; rural information systems. Urban activities and their physical, economic and social implications. Legislative concepts of resources and their utilisation and conservation; maintenance of the environment.

##### 36.352 Planning Law and Controls (4 Credits)

The Town and Country Planning Act 1977, the National Development Act 1979, the Public Works Act 1981, the Local Government Act 1974, Part XXI, and related case law. Land use regulation: bylaws; zoning; and use and bulk and location controls; performance standards; the evolution of such controls in New Zealand.

##### 36.353 Planning and Design (4 Credits)

Design theory and design method. Design skills and design practice. Design movements. Modernism, Post Modernism, Deconstruction and 57 other varieties. Designers, their work and their thought processes. Fashion, style, habit, and timeless design. Vernacular design. Creative and interactive processes. Urban design theory and urban design method. Urban design skills and urban design practice. Urban design movements. Metabolism, Collage, Theatre and 57 other varieties. The sources of timeless urban form. The creative possibilities of the planning process. Participation in current design and urban design issues.

**36.354 Quantitative Planning Techniques****(1 Credit)**

Statistical methods for planners. Measurement and survey data analyses; computer applications for capturing and processing planning data including packages for statistical analysis modelling and graphical display.

**36.355 Public Utilities (1 Credit)**

The role of public utility services in urban development: alternative designs and costs; public health engineering; refuse: sources control and disposal.

**36.356 Traffic Engineering & Transport Planning (1 Credit)**

Relationships between land use and traffic; principles of traffic engineering; design for parking and vehicle movement; public and private transport systems; transportation planning; the Urban Transport Act 1980. Communications planning.

**PART B****36.361 Community Participation Project (2 Credits)**

Applied project in response to a community-based request or identified need for planning assistance.

**36.362 Field Project (1 Credit)**

Field assignment on a selected planning issue; on-site investigations and reports.

**36.363 Presentation for Planners (1 Credit)**

Verbal, written and graphic communication skills, with emphasis on the role of the media.

**36.364 Graphics for Planners (1 Credit)**

Graphics and visual communications. The design and presentation of planning documents. Desk Top publishing.

**36.365 Planning Case Studies (1 Credit)**

Topical issues in urban, rural and regional planning.

**Third Professional Examination****PART A****36.450 Studio (12 Credits)**

Practical studies in the interpretation of course material and the application of skills to a selection of planning problems and the presentation of proposals for their solution.

**36.451 Environmental Planning III (4 Credits)**

Issues of gender. The spatial structure of society and environmental planning. Current environmental planning issues. Topics from the field of environmental ethics, resource management, and economics. Policy analysis and planning applied to social issues such as health care planning.

**36.452 Planning Organisation & Management (4 Credits)**

Organisation and management of planning personnel; administrative procedures and public relations in planning; corporate planning structures. Principles and techniques; the New Zealand land information system. The nature of professions; professionalism and planning; dilemmas for professional planners; accountability; professional ethics; conflicts of interest; disclosure of information; the development of professional skills.

**36.458 Planning Theory Review (1 Credit)**

Emerging and alternative views about the nature scope and purpose of environmental planning. Theoretical

approaches to be grounded in case studies.

**PART B****36.453 Research Study (4 Credits)**

A study embodying the results of an original investigation in the field of environmental planning.

**36.454 Major Project (2 Credits)**

A supervised study developing in detail a particular aspect of environmental planning covered in prescribed courses for the Third Professional Examination.

**36.455 Minor Project (1 Credit)**

A supervised study reporting on an aspect of environmental planning covered in prescribed courses for the Third Professional Examination.

**36.456 Urban Planning (2 Credits)**

Principles of urban planning; alternative city forms; energy issues and urban form. Planning for urban components; employment, transport, trade, precincts and neighbourhoods.

**36.457 Maori Planning Issues (2 Credits)**

Traditional land and social concepts in Aotearoa; the 19th century land wars; the Waitangi Tribunal; the Maori Land Court; contemporary Maori Land Issues; the Maori Affairs Act; district and regional planning scheme provisions for Maori interests.

**36.459 Housing (2 Credits)**

Housing issues; central and local government housing policies; housing finance.

**36.460 Recreation & Reserves Planning (1 Credit)**

Trends in leisure and recreation; assessment of community needs; open space systems; national regional and local reserves; management techniques; provisions for protection and public access; reserves legislation and alternative legal structures.

**36.461 Pacific Development Issues (1 Credit)**

Planning issues in developing countries; studies, with particular emphasis on development projects and their consequences in the South West Pacific.

**36.462 Future Studies (1 Credit)**

Utopian thought and ideal communities; views of the future and alternative societal directions; alternative future scenarios for New Zealand.

---

**PREScriptions FOR MPlan**

The prescriptions of the subjects named in the preceding Regulations for MPlan are given below:

**36.500 Planning Theory**

National, regional and metropolitan planning. National resources and policies for development. Theoretical studies to be grounded in Case Studies.

**36.501 Planning Techniques**

Evolution of planning techniques. Special land use and development controls. Methods of assessing and testing planning proposals. Studies of technique from case studies.

**36.502 Planning Law and Administration**

Evolution of statutory planning. Methods of land use regulation. Public participation in planning. Development and functions of local government and other planning agencies. Planning administration to be grounded in case studies.

**Special Topics**

Approved by the Head of the Department of Planning.

**36.503**                      **36.508****36.504**                      **36.509****36.505**                      **36.510****36.506**                      **36.511****36.507**                      **36.512****36.601 Thesis****36.603 Research Essay****52.491 Public Health Engineering**

As prescribed for the Degree of ME.

**52.473 Transportation Planning**

As prescribed for the Degree of ME.

**20.436 Urban Geography**

As prescribed for the subject Geography for the Degree of MA.

**30.402 A Topic on Urban Government and Politics**

As prescribed for the subject Political Studies for the Degree of MA.

**82.406 Urban Sociology and Ecology**

As prescribed for the subject Sociology for the Degree of MA.

**25.383 Social Control of Land**

As prescribed for the Degree of LLB (Hons).

**15.503 Design Theory**

As prescribed for the Degree of MArch, provided that the Head of the Department of Planning must approve the relevance of paper 15.503 to the subject of investigation for the thesis before a candidate may enrol in that paper.

# Faculty of Engineering

## *Contents*

|   |     |   |
|---|-----|---|
| <b>Degree Course Regulations</b>                    | 348 | Degree of Bachelor of Engineering           |
|   | 354 | Degree of Master of Engineering             |
| <b>Degree Course Prescriptions</b>                  | 357 | Degree of Bachelor of Engineering           |
|   | 368 | Degree of Master of Engineering             |
| <b>Diploma Course Regulations and Prescriptions</b> | 372 | Diploma in Geothermal Energy Technology     |
|   | 373 | Diploma in Pulp and Paper Technology        |
| <b>Certificate Regulations</b>                      | 374 | Certificate in Geothermal Energy Technology |

## DEGREE COURSE REGULATIONS

### THE DEGREE OF BACHELOR OF ENGINEERING BE

*The personal course of study of every candidate must be approved by the Senate. Approval will normally be granted for courses which are in accordance with the following Regulations: for general provisions affecting their course of study students are referred to the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General), and the Examination Regulations.*

#### General Provisions

1. (a). Subject to the Admission Regulations and except as otherwise provided in these Regulations, a candidate for the Degree of Bachelor of Engineering shall be required to:
  - (i) pursue a course of study of not less than four years, and
  - (ii) pass the four Examinations, and
  - (iii) perform Practical Work to the satisfaction of the Faculty of Engineering, and
  - (iv) perform Laboratory and Field Work to the satisfaction of the Faculty of Engineering.
 (b). Except as otherwise provided in this paragraph, a candidate shall be required to pass as a whole each of the four Examinations (including an Examination under Regulation 4); so that the candidate's performance in all subjects of the Examination shall be taken into consideration. A candidate who has failed to pass any Examination as a whole may, at the discretion of the Senate, be credited with a paper or papers forming part of the Examination; and may in a subsequent year take the remaining papers of that Examination together (subject to Regulation 8) with such papers of the succeeding Examination, if any, as the Senate may permit. The candidate shall then be required to pass a composite Examination under the same conditions as those in this paragraph.

#### Honours

2. The Degree of Bachelor of Engineering may be awarded with or without Honours according to the standard of the candidate's work. There shall be two classes of Honours: First Class Honours and Second Class Honours. Second Class Honours shall be awarded in either First Division or Second Division.

#### Concessions

3. The Senate may exempt from the First Examination a candidate:
  - (i) who has reached a satisfactory standard in the Universities Bursaries Examination if the subjects the candidate has taken include Chemistry, Physics, Mathematics with Calculus and Mathematics with Statistics; or
  - (ii) who has reached an exceptional standard in the Universities Bursaries Examination if the subjects the candidate has taken include three of the subjects Chemistry, Physics, Mathematics with Calculus and Mathematics with Statistics; or
  - (iii) who has passed for the Degree of Bachelor of Science not less than 42 credits or its equivalent in any other course of study and attained a satisfactory standard.
4. A candidate for this Degree who:
  - (i) has qualified for the award of the Degree of Bachelor of Science; or
  - (ii) has completed within two years the examination requirements for the award of the Degree of Bachelor of Science; or
  - (iii) was permitted to enrol for Stage II or Stage III papers in a subject without first presenting that subject at Stage I and who, if the Stage I papers not taken were included, would have qualified within two years for the Degree of Bachelor of Science;
 shall be required to pursue a course of study for a period of not less than two years in such papers for the degree as the Senate may prescribe and to pass Examinations in each year in the papers so prescribed for that year, and the following provisions shall apply:
  - (a). All papers of the Fourth Examination shall be included in the candidate's course of study but none such in the first year;
  - (b). the candidate shall be exempt from the papers of the First Examination and from such other papers of the degree as are not prescribed under this Regulation.

**Note:** Candidates who have taken papers in the Physical Sciences and obtained good grades can normally expect to complete the BE Degree in two years.

5. (a). A candidate who has by examination qualified with outstanding merit for the New Zealand Certificate in Engineering, and who has completed the practical requirements for the award of that Certificate, may be exempted by the Senate from the First and Second Examinations or from such papers of those examinations as the Senate thinks fit.
- (b). A candidate who has by examination qualified with outstanding merit for the New Zealand Certificate in Science (Metallurgy) or (Chemistry), and who has completed the practical requirements for the award of that Certificate, may for the Courses in Chemical and Materials Engineering and Metallurgical and Materials Engineering be exempted by the Senate from the First and Second Examinations or from such papers of those examinations as the Senate thinks fit.
- (c). A candidate who has by examination qualified with outstanding merit for the New Zealand Certificate in Science (Physics) in the Applied Electronics option, and who has completed the practical requirements for the award of that Certificate, may for the Course in Electrical and Electronic Engineering be exempted from the First and Second Examinations or from such papers of those examinations as the Senate thinks fit.



**Practical Work**

6. A candidate shall not be admitted to the Degree unless the Registrar has received from the Dean of the Faculty of Engineering a certificate that the candidate has complied with the requirements of the Faculty as to Practical Work.

**Laboratory and Field Work**

7. A candidate shall not be admitted to the Degree unless the Registrar has received from the Dean of the Faculty of Engineering a certificate that the candidate has complied with the requirements of the Faculty as to Laboratory and Field Work.

**Prerequisites**

8. No candidate may enrol  
 (a) for any paper of the Third Examination without having completed the whole of the First Examination;  
 (b) for any paper of the Fourth Examination without having completed the whole of the Second Examination.

**Elective Papers**

9. (a). The First Examination and the Fourth Examination shall include elective papers where specified in Regulation 12.  
 (b). A candidate's choice of elective papers shall require approval by the Senate.  
 (c). An elective paper chosen from another degree course shall be of an appropriate weight and academic level. The syllabus for it shall not be the same as or substantially overlap that of any other paper in the candidate's course.

*Note:* (i) Approval of a candidate's choice of elective papers will generally depend on the compatibility of the chosen papers with the candidate's personal aptitudes and interests, their mutual compatibility and the coherence of the proposed course as a whole. There should be no timetable conflict in the proposed course.

(ii) An elective paper in the Fourth Examination of this Degree course will be considered equivalent to one Stage II or Stage III paper from the BA or BCom schedules or to 3 credits from Stage II or Stage III papers of the BSc schedule or to 4 credits from subjects of the Third or Fourth Professional Examinations of the BArch Degree course.

(iii) An elective paper in the First Examination of this Degree course will be considered equivalent to one Stage I paper from the BA or BCom schedules or to 6 credits from Stage I papers of the BSc schedule.

**Approval of Courses**

10. (a). The personal course of study of every candidate shall require the approval of the Senate.  
 (b). The Senate may delegate to the Faculty the power to approve personal courses of study and also the discretionary powers conferred in Regulations 3, 4, 5 and 9 of these Regulations.  
 (c). The Senate may in such special circumstances as it thinks fit approve a personal course of study which does not conform to these Regulations.

**Professional Courses**

11. The candidate shall follow one of the following professional courses:

Chemical and Materials Engineering  
 Civil Engineering  
 Electrical and Electronic Engineering  
 Engineering Science  
 Mechanical Engineering  
 Metallurgical and Materials Engineering  
 Mineral Process Engineering  
 Mining Engineering

**Papers**

12. The papers for this Degree are:

**Arrangement:****First half year papers****Full year papers****Second half year papers****First Examination**

08.121 Chemistry  
 26.140 Mathematics, or  
 26.141 Mathematics  
 31.140 Physics, or  
 31.141 Physics  
 50.001 Engineering Mechanics  
 and Design  
 Two approved papers from another  
 University course or courses

50.002 Introduction to Computing  
 for Engineers

31.114 Physics

**Other Examinations****Chemical and Materials Engineering****Second Examination**

50.111 Engineering Design  
 51.115 Fluid Mechanics  
 54.111 Engineering  
 Mathematics I

51.116 Process Thermodynamics I

51.121 Materials I

55.101 Mechanics of Solids I

*Third Examination*51.215 Chemical Reactor  
Engineering

51.221 Materials II

51.232 Process Analysis and  
Synthesis54.211 Engineering  
Mathematics II51.213 Heat and Mass Transfer  
Operations

51.243 Applied Organic Chemistry

*Fourth Examination*

51.322 Materials IIIA

51.335 Equipment and Process  
Design51.361 Project in Chemical and  
Materials Engineering

50.201 General Studies II

51.311 Process Control

**Civil Engineering***Second Examination*

50.111 Engineering Design

52.141 Structures I

54.111 Engineering  
Mathematics 1

51.121 Materials I

52.121 Fluid Mechanics I

52.131 Introductory Geology for  
Engineers*Third Examination*52.211 Properties of Materials and  
Design

52.221 Fluid Mechanics II

52.231 Geomechanics I

52.241 Structures II

52.271 Traffic and Highway  
Engineering54.211 Engineering  
Mathematics II*Fourth Examination*52.381 Civil Engineering  
Administration

50.201 General Studies II

52.321 Engineering Hydrology

52.331 Geotechnical Engineering

52.361 Civil Engineering Design I

52.391 Public Health Engineering

50.101 General Studies I

51.117 Process Thermodynamics II

51.141 Applied Chemistry

51.214 Separation Processes

53.111 Electrical Engineering IG

51.314 Particulate Technology

55.231 Industrial Administration

50.101 General Studies I

52.111 Mechanics of Materials

52.151 Surveying

*Three elective papers from the list below:*

21.388 Engineering Geology

52.301 Special Topic in Civil  
Engineering52.311 Mechanics & Properties  
of Materials

52.322 Fluid Mechanics III

52.323 Water Resources  
Engineering

52.332 Geomechanics II

52.341 Structures III

52.362 Civil Engineering Design II

52.371 Traffic Systems Design

52.382 Management Techniques

52.383 Accounting for Engineers

52.392 Water Quality Engineering

52.393 Maritime Engineering

**Electrical and Electronic Engineering***Second Examination*

- 53.121 Networks
- 53.181 Digital Electronics & Computing Systems
- 54.111 Engineering Mathematics I

- 50.112 Graphics
- 51.121 Materials I
- 53.141 Engineering Electromagnetics

*Third Examination*

- 53.204 Electrical Engineering Design
- 54.211 Engineering Mathematics II

- 51.222 Electrical Engineering Materials
- 53.222 Networks & Signals
- 53.232 Analogue Electronics
- 53.241 Power Apparatus and Systems

*Fourth Examination*

- 53.301 Project in Electrical Engineering

- 50.201 General Studies II
- Three elective papers from the list below:

- 53.304 Special Topic in Electrical & Electronic Engineering A
  - 53.313 Analytical Techniques in Electrical Engineering
  - 53.322 Signal Processing
  - 53.342 Power Systems
  - 53.352 Communication Systems
  - 53.363 Radio Systems
  - 53.382 Software Engineering
- An approved paper from another University course

**Engineering Science***Second Examination*

- 50.111 Engineering Design
- 54.112 Engineering Mathematics IS

- 51.121 Materials I
- 55.101 Mechanics of Solids I
- 55.121 Applied Mechanics

*Third Examination*

- 54.221 Computational Techniques I
- 54.241 Continuum Mechanics I
- 54.251 Operations Research I
- 54.291 Engineering Science Design

- 54.212 Engineering Mathematics IISA

- 53.312 Electrical Engineering for Civil Engineers
  - 54.314 Engineering Analysis B
- An approved paper from another University course.

- 50.101 General Studies I
- 53.132 Linear Electronics
- 55.102 Mechanical Engineering IE

- 53.251 Transmission Lines & Fields
- 53.271 Control Systems
- 53.281 Microcomputer Engineering
- 55.231 Industrial Administration

- Four elective papers from the list below:

- 53.305 Special Topic in Electrical & Electronic Engineering B
  - 53.321 Applied Network Synthesis
  - 53.332 Custom Integrated Electronic Design
  - 53.343 Advanced Power System Topics
  - 53.353 Digital Communications
  - 53.362 Microwave & Optical Engineering
  - 53.371 Advanced Control Engineering
  - 53.383 Computer Systems
  - 53.390 Power Semiconductor Applications
  - 55.333 Engineering Economics
- An approved paper from another University course

- 50.101 General Studies I
- 53.111 Electrical Engineering IG
- 55.113 Thermo Fluid Dynamics I

- 54.213 Engineering Mathematics IISB

55.224 Vibrations and Control

55.241 Mechanics of Solids II

*Fourth Examination*54.304 Project in Engineering  
Science

54.341 Continuum Mechanics II

54.351 Operations Research II

50.201 General Studies II

*Two elective papers from the list below:*54.301 Special Topic in Engineering  
Science A

54.312 Engineering Mathematics IIISA

54.321 Computer Techniques II

53.211 Electrical Engineering IIS

55.231 Industrial Administration

*Two elective papers from the list  
below:*54.302 Special Topic in  
Engineering Science B54.315 Engineering Mathematics  
IIISB

54.343 Mechanics of Structures

54.352 Stochastic Methods in  
Operations Research

54.361 Control Theory

*One or two approved papers from  
other University courses.*

**Note:** In addition to the papers listed for the Engineering Science Third Professional Examination, candidates are required to attend the Engineering Science Laboratory (three hours per week or equivalent), carry out assignments and submit reports, to a required standard.

**Mechanical Engineering***Second Examination*

50.111 Engineering Design

54.111 Engineering  
Mathematics I

51.121 Materials I

55.101 Mechanics of Solids I

55.121 Applied Mechanics

*Third Examination*54.211 Engineering  
Mathematics II55.261 Mechanical Engineering  
Design I

55.213 Thermo Fluid Dynamics II

55.223 Dynamics &amp; Control

55.241 Mechanics of Solids II

*Fourth Examination*55.301 Project in Mechanical  
Engineering55.361 Mechanical Engineering  
Design II

50.201 General Studies II

*Two elective papers from the list below:*

55.311 Applied Fluid Mechanics

54.313 Engineering Analysis A

55.321 Control Engineering

55.322 Mechanical Vibrations

55.331 Industrial Engineering

55.342 Strength of Materials

55.351 Heat and Mass Transfer

*One or two approved papers from  
other University courses*

50.101 General Studies I

53.111 Electrical Engineering IG

55.113 Thermo Fluid Dynamics I

55.231 Industrial Administration

55.251 Heat Transfer

55.271 Production Technology

*Three elective papers from the list  
below:*55.303 Special Topic in  
Mechanical Engineering

53.311 Applied Electricity

55.312 Applied Aerodynamics

55.323 Microprocessors in  
Mechanical Control  
Systems

55.324 Acoustics

55.333 Engineering Economics

55.334 Manufacturing Technology

55.352 Applied Thermodynamics

*One or two approved papers  
from other University courses***Metallurgical and Materials Engineering***Second Examination*

50.111 Engineering Design

51.115 Fluid Mechanics

54.111 Engineering  
Mathematics I

51.116 Process Thermodynamics I

51.121 Materials I

50.101 General Studies I

51.117 Process Thermodynamics II

**55.101 Mechanics of Solids I***Third Examination***51.213 Heat and Mass Transfer Operations****55.241 Mechanics of Solids II***Fourth Examination***50.201 General Studies II****51.311 Process Control****51.323 Materials IIIB****51.325 Solid State Materials****Mineral Process Engineering***Second Examination***51.121 Materials I****52.131 Introductory Geology for Engineers****55.101 Mechanics of Solids I***Third Examination***21.281 Elements of Economic Geology****51.213 Heat and Mass Transfer Operations****56.203 Mineral Processing Technology***Fourth Examination***50.201 General Studies II****51.311 Process Control****56.301 Mineral Processing IIA****Mining Engineering***Second Examination***51.121 Materials I****52.131 Introductory Geology for Engineers****55.101 Mechanics of Solids I***Third Examination***51.221 Materials II****51.225 Physical Metallurgy****51.251 Chemical Materials****54.211 Engineering Mathematics II****51.334 Materials Engineering Design****51.362 Project in Metallurgical & Materials Engineering****50.111 Engineering Design****54.111 Engineering Mathematics I****56.101 Mineral Engineering****54.211 Engineering Mathematics II****56.201 Mineral Processing I****51.251 Chemical Materials****56.303 Mineral Process and Plant Design****56.304 Project in Mineral Process Engineering****50.111 Engineering Design****54.111 Engineering Mathematics I****56.101 Mineral Engineering****52.231 Geomechanics I****54.211 Engineering Mathematics II****56.214 Unit Operations in Mining****51.141 Applied Chemistry****53.111 Electrical Engineering IG****55.271 Production Technology****51.324 Materials Engineering****51.326 Non-metallic Materials****55.231 Industrial Administration****50.101 General Studies I****55.113 Thermo Fluid Dynamics I****56.111 Geology for Mining****21.284 Exploration and Mining Geology****51.141 Applied Chemistry****53.111 Electrical Engineering IG****55.231 Industrial Administration****56.302 Mineral Processing IIB****56.318 Bulk Materials Handling****50.101 General Studies I****55.113 Thermo Fluid Dynamics I****56.111 Geology for Mining**

- 21.281 Elements of Economic Geology
- 56.203 Mineral Processing Technology
- 56.212 Mine Environment and Ventilation

#### Fourth Examination

- 21.381 Advanced Mining Geology
- 50.201 General Studies II
- 56.314 Rock Mechanics
- 56.317 Mine Production Engineering

- 56.312 Evaluation and Mineral Economics
- 56.313 Mine Design
- 56.315 Project in Mining Engineering

- 21.284 Exploration and Mining Geology
- 53.111 Electrical Engineering IG
- 56.231 Mine Surveying

- 55.231 Industrial Administration
- 56.318 Bulk Materials Handling
- One elective paper from the list below:
- 21.382 Applied Coal Geology
- 21.386 Applied Geophysics for Mining
- 21.388 Engineering Geology
- 52.332 Geomechanics II
- 52.383 Accounting for Engineers
- 55.333 Engineering Economics
- 56.316 Environmental Planning for Mining
- An approved paper from another University course

#### Savings and Transitional Provisions

13. These Regulations shall govern the course of every candidate; but any candidate whose course was begun under the Regulations set forth in the *University of Auckland Calendar* for 1990 shall be credited for the purpose of these present Regulations with such papers as the Senate may determine.
14. These Regulations shall come into force on 1 January 1991.

## THE DEGREE OF MASTER OF ENGINEERING ME

*The personal course of study of every candidate must be approved by the Senate. Approval will normally be granted for courses which are in accordance with the following Regulations: for general provisions affecting their courses of study students are referred to the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General), and the Examination Regulations.*

#### General Provisions

1. Subject to the Admission Regulations, a candidate for the Degree of Master of Engineering shall:
  - (a) before enrolment for this Degree have been admitted or qualified for admission to the Degree of Bachelor of Engineering; and
  - (b) follow a course of study of not less than one year.
2. Every candidate for this Degree shall:
  - (a) pass in each of eight papers where those papers do not include Project D; or
  - (b) pass in Project D and six other papers; or
  - (c) (i) pass in each of three papers, and
  - (ii) pass in respect of a thesis (which shall count as equivalent to five papers).

#### Papers

3. The following conditions shall apply to the choice of papers:
  - (a) Every candidate shall choose papers in consultation with the Head of his or her Department from those listed in clause (b) of this Regulation; provided that no paper that has been credited to another degree shall be taken for this Degree.
  - (b) The papers of examination for the Degree are:
    - (i) 50.401 Project A
    - 50.411 Project B
    - 50.421 Project C
    - 50.431 Project D (value 2 papers)

**Note:** Not all of the following papers will be available in a given year.

- 51.411 Advanced Process Control
- 51.412 Chemical Engineering Seminar
- 51.413 Studies in Chemical Engineering
- 51.414 Biochemical Engineering Seminar
- 51.415 Advanced Chemical Engineering

51.421 Advanced Materials  
 51.422 Materials Seminar  
 51.423 Studies in Materials Engineering  
 52.401 Special Seminar in Civil Engineering A  
 52.402 Special Seminar in Civil Engineering B  
 52.411 Mechanics and Properties of Materials Seminar  
 52.421 Fluid Mechanics Seminar  
 52.422 Advanced Fluid Mechanics  
 52.423 Coastal Engineering  
 52.424 Advanced Water Resources  
 52.431 Earthquake Engineering  
 52.432 Geomechanics Seminar  
 52.433 Applied Geomechanics  
 52.434 Earth Structures  
 52.441 Structural Dynamics  
 52.442 Structures Seminar  
 52.443 Structural Analysis  
 52.444 Space Structures  
 52.451 Environmental Law  
 52.461 Structural Design  
 52.471 Traffic Engineering  
 52.472 Transportation Engineering Seminar  
 52.473 Transportation Planning  
 52.474 Transportation Systems Analysis  
 52.475 Highway Operations and Evaluation  
 52.481 Project Management A  
 52.482 Case Studies in Project Management  
 52.483 Project Management B  
 52.491 Public Health Engineering Seminar  
 53.401 Studies in Electrical and Electronic Engineering A  
 53.402 Studies in Electrical and Electronic Engineering B  
 53.403 Studies in Electrical and Electronic Engineering C  
 53.432 Electronic Circuits and Systems  
 53.441 Heavy Current Electronics  
 53.451 Digital Signal Processing  
 53.452 VHF and UHF Radio Communication  
 53.461 Electromagnetic Theory  
 53.471 Advanced Control Systems  
 53.482 Advanced Microprocessor Techniques  
 54.401 Studies in Engineering Science  
 54.411 Studies in Engineering Mathematics  
 54.421 Finite Element Methods  
 54.422 Nonlinear Optimisation  
 54.441 Studies in Continuum Mechanics A  
 54.442 Studies in Continuum Mechanics B  
 54.451 Studies in Operations Research A  
 54.452 Studies in Operations Research B  
 54.453 Advanced Systems Analysis  
 54.454 Random Processes  
 54.461 Studies in Control Theory  
 54.481 Geothermal Modelling  
 54.491 Bio-Engineering  
 55.401 Studies in Mechanical Engineering  
 55.411 Fluid Dynamics  
 55.412 Aerodynamics  
 55.413 Wind Engineering  
 55.422 Mechanical Control Systems  
 55.434 Computer Integrated Manufacturing and Robotics  
 55.441 Mechanics of Materials  
 55.442 Vibrations  
 55.452 Reciprocating Internal Combustion Engines  
 55.461 Computer Graphics and Computer Aided Design  
 55.471 Production Technology  
 55.472 Metal Forming  
 55.491 Heat Transfer Analysis

- 55.492 Convective Heat Transfer
- 55.493 Geothermal Heat and Mass Transfer
- 56.401 Advanced Mineral Processing
- 56.402 Seminar in Mineral Processing
- 56.403 Advanced Flotation
- 56.404 Magnetic and Electrical Separation
- 56.405 Industrial Minerals
- 56.411 Advanced Mining Engineering
- 56.412 Seminar in Mining Engineering
- 56.413 Advanced Mine Ventilation
- 56.414 Advanced Geostatistics and Resource Evaluation
- 56.415 Advanced Rock Mechanics
- 56.416 Tunneling and Quarrying Engineering
- 86.401 Geothermal Systems and Technology
- 86.402 Geothermal Production Technology
- 86.403 Geothermal Energy Utilisation

- (ii) Those papers approved by the Head of Department from any of those offered at Fourth Year level for the BE Degree.
- (iii) Subject to the permission of the Heads of Departments concerned, one or two papers chosen from those offered in any other Faculty at the final-year undergraduate level or the Master's level provided:
  - (a) that prerequisites and timetabling requirements can be met, and
  - (b) that the syllabus is not the same as or substantially overlapping with any paper prescribed for this Degree, and
  - (c) that the paper has a weight not less than that of an Engineering paper.

#### **Project Work**

- 4. No candidate shall take:
  - (i) Project A, B, C or D if he or she submits a thesis for this Degree;
  - (ii) more than one of the Projects A, B or C, if Project D is also taken.
- (b) A candidate who takes Project D must submit the project report not later than twelve months after enrolment for this project provided that the Senate may, in exceptional circumstances, extend this period.
- (c) A candidate who takes Project A, B or C must submit the project not later than the last day of lectures of the half-year in which the project is taken. An extension of time may, in exceptional circumstances, be approved by the Senate.

#### **Thesis**

- 5. The following conditions apply to the thesis (50.601):
  - (a) The thesis shall embody the results obtained by the candidate in an investigation in a subject approved by the Head of the Department.
  - (b) The investigation shall be carried out personally by the candidate at the University under the direct supervision of a member of the academic staff; provided that:
    - (i) laboratory work may be carried out in an approved institution outside the University for such limited period or periods as may be determined from time to time by the Senate;
    - (ii) field work may be carried out at such places and for such periods as the Senate may determine.
  - (c) (i) The supervisor shall be the principal examiner.
  - (ii) The Senate acting on the advice of the Head of the Department shall appoint either an external assessor or a second internal examiner.
  - (d) At the discretion of the Head of the Department the candidate may be required to attend an oral examination on the subject of the thesis, which shall take place within four weeks of the date on which the thesis was submitted, or within such longer period as the Senate may in special circumstances approve.
  - (e) If the supervisor with the consent of the assessor or second examiner as the case may be so recommends, a thesis which is not considered satisfactory shall be returned to the candidate, who may be permitted to revise it and to submit it again at a later date to be specified by the supervisor.
  - (f) A candidate shall present the thesis not later than 18 months, or if he or she is a part-time candidate not later than 36 months, after the first enrolment for this Degree, provided that the Senate may, in exceptional circumstances, extend this period.

**Note:** An abstract is to be submitted with each copy of the thesis, see Examination Regulation 15.

#### **Classes of Pass**

- 6. The Degree of Master of Engineering may, on the recommendation of the Senate, be awarded with Distinction.
- 7. These Regulations shall come into force on 1 January, 1972.



## RESEARCH IN ENGINEERING

Facilities are available for research by PhD students and postdoctoral fellows in each of the Departments of Engineering in a wide range of topics.

Attention is drawn to the fact that the Honours Degree qualifying a PhD student for registration need not necessarily be one in Engineering. Graduates with a good Honours Degree in Physics, Chemistry, or Mathematics, for example, could be considered for registration in Engineering.

## DEGREE COURSE PRESCRIPTIONS

### PRESCRIPTIONS FOR BE

#### 08.121 Chemistry

21.203

21.281

21.284

21.381

21.386

21.388

26.140 Mathematics

26.141 Mathematics

31.114 Physics

31.140 Physics

31.141 Physics

Geology papers  
for Mining  
and Civil  
Engineering

See Degree  
Course  
Prescriptions  
for BSc

#### 50.001 Engineering Mechanics and Design

(Three lectures per week, first half-year. One lecture and two design office hours per week, second half-year)

Concepts of statics, dynamics, equilibrium. Free body concepts, frameworks, velocity and acceleration in planar mechanisms, equations of motion, motion of particles in 2 and 3 dimensions, rigid bodies, rotation. Work and Energy. Use of vectors to illustrate force equilibrium, kinematics of simple mechanisms. Views, sections, developments. Elements of Design - stress, deformation. Materials selection. Allowable loads, factors of safety. Design exercises.

This paper will also include three general lectures on Engineering.

#### 50.002 Introduction to Computing for Engineers

(One lecture and two laboratory hours per week. First half-year)

Introduction to computer programming, keyboard use including word processing, the Pascal language, algorithms and structured program design, applications to engineering systems.

#### 50.101 General Studies I

(Three lectures and one tutorial per week. Second half-year)

A course that considers aspects of human development; origins, societies, politics, human nature, and creativity.

#### 50.111 Engineering Design

(One lecture and one three-hour drawing office class per week)

The elements of engineering draughting and graphics. Introduction to the application of mechanics to the design of mechanical and structural components.

#### 50.112 Graphics

(One lecture and one three-hour drawing office class per week. First half-year)

The elements of engineering draughting and graphics and an illustrative design application.

#### 50.201 General Studies II

(Three lectures and one tutorial per week. First half-year)

A course that gives some insights into the problems of contemporary society. Economic, ecological, social and resource constraints affecting the work of the engineer are examined as is the impact of technology and engineering on the environment and the future of society.

#### 51.115 Fluid Mechanics

(Two lectures and one shared tutorial per week, first half-year. Three lectures and one tutorial per fortnight, second half-year)

Fluid properties and definitions. Hydrostatics and stability of floating bodies. Fluid flow, energy and continuity relationships. Viscosity. Compressible flow. Force and momentum relationship. Flow-measurement. Dimensional analysis and similarity. Introduction to turbomachinery. Incompressible Newtonian flow; turbulent flow; pumping and piping networks. Non-Newtonian fluid flow. Multiphase flow.

#### 51.116 Process Thermodynamics I

(Two lectures and one shared tutorial per week. First half-year)

The first law of thermodynamics. Material balances with and without chemical reactions and with re-cycle. Energy balances in reacting and non-reacting systems. Simultaneous mass and energy balances.

#### 51.117 Process Thermodynamics II

(Five lectures and three tutorials per fortnight. Second half-year)

The second law of thermodynamics. Classical chemical thermodynamics including the concept of chemical potential, fugacity and activity; their applications to reacting systems. Thermodynamics of power and refrigeration cycles, and flow processes.

#### 51.121 Materials I

(Three lectures and one tutorial per week. First half-year)

Mechanical properties and testing of engineering materials; atomic and structural aspects; deformation and strengthening mechanisms; annealing; working processes; temperature dependent properties of materials; microstructures; solidification and phase equilibria; heat treatment; non-destructive testing; corrosion; non-metallic materials including polymers, wood, ceramics and concrete.

#### 51.141 Applied Chemistry

(Three lectures per week. Second half-year)

Molecular structure including the structure of atoms, bonding and motion of molecules, forces between molecules. Applied physical chemistry including the

physical chemistry of interfaces, solid surfaces and adsorption. Surface and colloid chemistry, surfactants, micelles, stability or emulsions, flocculation, froth flotation and wetting. Kinetics and reaction mechanisms. Heterogeneous catalysts, physico-chemical methods of analysis, UV, IR, AA and NMR spectroscopy. An accompanying laboratory programme must be completed satisfactorily.

#### **51.213 Heat and Mass Transfer Operations**

(Three lectures and one tutorial per week. First half-year)

Heat transfer via steady-state conduction, convection and radiation. Conduction through simple shapes and composite materials. Forces and natural convection. Dimensionless correlation of heat transfer processes with flow processes. Film and overall heat transfer coefficients. Heat transfer with phase change. Film and dropwise condensation. Nucleate and Film boiling of liquids. Heat transfer to particulate solids. Radiation emission. Absorption, reflection and transmission. Radiation exchange in systems of simple geometry. Heat exchanger thermal design. Mass transfer via equimolar diffusion, diffusion through a stagnant gas. Interphase mass transfer theory; mass transfer coefficient, overall coefficient, transfer units.

#### **51.214 Separation Processes**

(Three lectures and one tutorial per week. Second half-year)

General principles of continuous processes. Equilibrium stages, stagewise analysis and cascades. Differential contact processes applied to packed tower. Characteristics of packed columns and stagewise contact processes; pressure drops, flooding and loading. Studies in depth of selected separation processes such as absorption, adsorption, crystallisation, ion exchange. Simple batch and continuous distillation processes. Liquid-liquid and solid-liquid extraction. Evaporation including evaporator types, sizing and performance. Drying mechanisms, drying equipment and the application of drying curves. An accompanying laboratory programme must be completed satisfactorily.

#### **51.215 Chemical Reactor Engineering**

(Two lectures and one third tutorial per week)

A review of thermodynamics; thermodynamics of solutions; various stability zone diagrams. The constraints thermodynamics and kinetics place on reactions, the effect of temperature and pressure on equilibria and rates. Batch, continuous stirred tank and plug flow reactors as they apply to homogeneous reactions. Adiabatic, isothermal and varying temperature conditions. Recycle in reactor engineering. Limitations of idealised models and the use of the residence time analysis. Heterogeneous reactions and catalysis. Reactor engineering for biological systems and applications of biochemical engineering to selected process industries. Electrochemical reactor engineering.

#### **51.221 Materials II**

(Two lectures and one tutorial per week)

Kinetics of metallurgical reactions; diffusion, point defects, nucleation and growth, annealing. Imperfections and plastic flow and dislocation theory. Mechanical behaviour of materials; X-ray diffraction. Corrosion and oxidation degradation of materials.

#### **51.222 Electrical Engineering Materials**

(Three lectures and one tutorial per week. First half-year)

Free electron theory; zone theory; electron conduction in metals and alloy. Theory of semiconductors. Semiconducting materials. Superconductivity. Electron emission. Dielectric processes. Magnetic processes. Optical processes. Thermo-electricity.

#### **51.225 Physical Metallurgy**

(Two lectures and one tutorial per week)

A treatment of modern metallographic methods including optical and electron optical techniques such as TEM and SEM: Interpretation of images, macro and micro structures, quantitative metallography, fractography. Modern analytical techniques such as spark emission, EDAX, Auger, SIMS, etc. X-ray diffraction theory and applications. Crystallography. Phase diagrams. Thermodynamics of crystals. Defects in crystals, shear deformations and work hardening. Solid state transformations; diffusion, kinetics, precipitation, eutectoid reactions, shear transformations, effect of alloying. Thermo-mechanical treatments. Commercial heat treatments. Creep mechanisms. Wear.

#### **51.232 Process Analysis and Synthesis**

(One lecture and one tutorial, one drawing office per week)

Flow sheets and line diagrams, standard symbols and conversions. Presentation of information via mass and energy flow sheets. Numerical methods for material and energy balancing including degrees of freedom analysis. Use of charts. The process industries: raw materials and resources, recovery and recycle. Energy sources, conversion and conservation. Products and choice of process routes. Strategies for process synthesis: heuristics morphological analysis, functional analysis. The generation and screening of alternatives Case studies in process analysis and synthesis. Elementary profitability calculations. Introduction to process modelling and simulation. Use of computer-aided-process-design packages for process material and energy balancing, flow-sheet development and economics.

#### **51.243 Applied Organic Chemistry**

(Three lectures per week. First half-year)

Organic reaction mechanisms; nucleophilic and electrophilic reagents and reactions, types of reaction, substitution, elimination and rearrangement. Petrochemistry and selected organic synthesis based on natural gas, as building blocks. Characteristics of important organic unit processes. Introductory biochemistry. Carbohydrates, proteins and enzymes. Structure and classification of micro-organisms; growth; metabolism and nutrition. Biochemical processes and the kinetics of enzyme catalysed reactions.

#### **51.251 Chemical Materials**

(Two lectures and one tutorial per week)

Thermodynamics and its application to equilibrium involving multi-component solutions such as polymers solutions, liquid metals and slags. Use of diagrams to represent zones of stability or likely reaction. Surface excess properties; phase equilibria and phase diagrams. Fuels and combustion. Aspects of hydrometallurgy. Kinetics of interphase transfer in

metallurgical systems with examples associated with selected extractive metallurgical processes. Aspects of reactor design. Electrochemical engineering applied to extractive processes.

#### **51.311 Process Control**

(Three lectures per week. First half-year)  
Dynamic modelling of linear open-loop systems; transfer functions; Linear closed-loop systems; analysis and control; control theory; stability analysis using root-locus and frequency response methods. controller tuning; industrial application with simple and complex control systems.

#### **51.314 Particulate Technology**

(Four lectures per week. Second half-year)  
A course on particulate technology, including characterisation of particles; fluid dynamics; analysis of separation processes; separation mechanisms; size reduction; particle size measurement; sedimentation; fluidisation; conveying; filtration; packed beds; solid/solid separations; gas cleaning; agglomeration; storage; atomisation; mixing.

#### **51.322 Materials IIIA**

(Three lectures per week, first half-year. Two lectures per week, second half-year)  
Deformation processing. Solidification and casting. Joining. Metallurgical properties of engineering alloys. Surface properties of materials; treatment of metal surfaces. The structure, physical properties and mechanical properties of polymers. Plastics in chemical engineering plant. Properties of ceramic materials.

#### **51.323 Materials IIIB**

(Three lectures per week. First half-year)  
Deformation processing; forging, rolling, drawing, extrusion, etc. Defects. Solidification and casting; theory and application. Joining: Adhesive, soldering, brazing, welding methods. N.D.T. Metallurgical properties of engineering alloys: steels, cast irons, alloy steels, tool steels, stainless, nickel alloys, aluminium alloys, copper alloys, zinc and other alloys. Selection and specification of materials.

#### **51.324 Materials Engineering**

(Three lectures per week. Second half-year)  
Advanced aspects of mechanical behaviour including fracture mechanics. Failure analysis. Advanced topics in primary and secondary materials processing. Further topics on materials joining. Surface properties of materials and treatment processes. Advanced structure and properties of metals and alloys including process treatment.

#### **51.325 Solid State Materials**

(Three lectures per week. First half-year)  
A course dealing with the theory of metals and non metals. Conduction in metals, alloys and semiconductor materials. Superconductivity. Dielectric processes and materials. Magnetic processes.

#### **51.326 Non Metallic Materials Engineering**

(Four lectures per week. Second half-year)  
The structure, physical properties and mechanical properties of polymers. Temperature dependence and transition from rubbery to glassy states. Analysis and identification of polymers. Degradation and stabilisation of polymer systems. Fabrication processes. Polymers in engineering. Ceramics: Ternary phase

diagrams, raw materials, properties of clay-water systems, structure, microstructure, mechanical and thermal properties, glasses, concrete, bricks. Composites. Carbon and carbon technology.

#### **51.334 Materials Engineering Design**

(One lecture, one drawing office hour, first half-year. One lecture, two drawing office hours, second half-year)

Design of a process route for the fabrication of a metallurgical or materials product or the refining of metals and materials. Detailed consideration will be given to particular items of plant within the process route.

#### **51.335 Equipment and Process Design**

(Three lectures and one tutorial per week, first half-year. One lecture and five tutorials per week, second half-year).

Materials for construction of equipment. Role and uses of codes and standards. Principles and design consideration of multicomponent distillation. Design of pressure vessel and selected process equipment. Use of CAD packages. Plant layout. Utilities and environmental considerations. Safety and loss prevention. Hazard analysis. Waste disposal and pollution control. Briefing professional teams during construction. Plant start-up and shut-down. Economics of processing.

A single design project undertaken by students working in groups.

#### **51.361 Project in Chemical and Material Engineering**

A student is required to submit a report on project work carried out on a topic assigned by the Head of Department of Chemical and Materials Engineering. The work shall be supervised by a member of the staff.

#### **51.362 Project in Metallurgical & Materials Engineering**

A student is required to submit a report on project work carried out on a topic assigned by the Head of Department of Chemical and Material Engineering. The work shall be supervised by a member of the staff.

#### **52.111 Mechanics of Materials**

(Three lectures and one shared tutorial per week. Second half-year)

Stress, strain and stress/strain relationships; application of these concepts to simple structural members. Properties of civil engineering materials.

#### **52.121 Fluid Mechanics I**

(Two lectures and one shared tutorial per week. First half-year)

Fluid properties and definitions. Hydrostatics and stability of floating bodies. Fluid flow, energy and continuity relationships. Viscosity. Compressible flow. Force and momentum relationship. Flow measurement. Dimensional analysis and similarity. Introduction to turbomachinery.

#### **52.131 Introductory Geology for Engineers**

(Three lectures per week and 15 hours laboratory. First half-year)

Principles of physical and structural geology. Elementary stratigraphy. Applied geomorphology. Geologic surveying and mapping. Elementary seismology; microzoning and seismotectonic hazard evaluation. Engineering properties, description and

identification of geologic materials. Geology of water supply and the general applications of geology to engineering.

#### **52.141 Structures I**

(Two lectures and one shared tutorial per week)

Analysis of determinate structures; approximate analysis of indeterminate structures; plastic analysis of framed structures; appreciation of structural systems.

#### **52.151 Surveying**

(Two lectures and one shared tutorial per week. Second half-year)

Introduction to land surveying theory and practice for Civil Engineers. Principles of typical surveying equipment and of its operation and application.

#### **52.211 Properties of Materials and Design**

(Three lectures and two hours drawing office per week)

The analysis and design of components of civil engineering structures. Further properties of civil engineering materials.

#### **52.221 Fluid Mechanics II**

(Two lectures and one shared tutorial per week)

Laminar and turbulent flow. Flows in pipelines, velocity distribution and resistance, compressible flow. Pipe networks, unsteady flows in pipelines. Water hammer. Open channel flow, energy and momentum concepts. Uniform flow and flow resistance. Spatially varied flow. Channel structures and transitions. Turbomachinery, pumps, turbines, cavitation.

#### **52.231 Geomechanics I**

(Two lectures and one shared tutorial per week)

Nature and classification of soils. Physical properties of soils and rocks: density, permeability, stress-strain relationships, strength. Fluid flow in soils. Consolidation theory. States of stress in earth masses. Settlement analysis. Stability problems: bearing capacity, slope stability, earth pressures on retaining structures.

#### **52.241 Structures II**

(Two lectures and one shared tutorial per week)

Analysis of indeterminate structures by force and displacement methods. Moment distribution and moment area methods for framed structures. Analysis of frames subject to dynamic loads.

#### **52.271 Traffic and Highway Engineering**

(Two lectures and one shared tutorial per week)

Basic elements of intersection and highway capacity. Signal control design. Introduction to theoretical analysis of traffic flow and network modelling. Urban network planning. Parking design. Driver characteristics and road safety. Highway location, geometrics and alignment design. Earthwork volumes. Setting out works. Pavement design. Roading materials. Construction techniques.

#### **52.301 Special Topic in Civil Engineering**

(Three lectures and one tutorial per week. Second half-year)

A course on a topic in Civil Engineering to be determined each year by the Head of Department of Civil Engineering.

#### **52.311 Mechanics and Properties of Materials**

(Three lectures and one tutorial per week. Second half-year)

A selection of topics from the following:

Elasticity and plasticity; experimental methods; beams, plates and shell theory; stability of structural sections, analysis of joints; shear walls and deep beams; civil engineering materials; further material on traditional materials as well as information on modern advances.

#### **52.321 Engineering Hydrology**

(Two lectures and one tutorial per week. First half-year)

Introduction to hydrology, precipitation, interception, evaporation, transpiration, infiltration, run-off. Hydrographs. Storage. Flood estimation and routing. Loose boundary hydraulics.

#### **52.322 Fluid Mechanics III**

(Three lectures and one tutorial per week. Second half-year)

Solution of fluid flow problems in two and three dimensions. Flow in porous media and groundwater. engineering. Irrigation and drainage. Diffusion processes and the transport of pollutants. Calculation of floods and waves in rivers and channels.

#### **52.323 Water Resources Engineering**

(Three lectures and one tutorial per week. Second half-year)

A selection from the following: Introduction to synthetic hydrology. Reservoir capacity and yield analysis. Flood control and design of flood control structures; spillways, gates and outlet structures. Hydro-electric engineering. Urban drainage. Water resources systems engineering. River engineering and river control. Loose boundary hydraulics. Bridge hydraulics.

#### **52.331 Geotechnical Engineering**

(Two lectures and one tutorial per week. First half-year)

Site investigation. Application of engineering geology. Foundation engineering: selection; design; construction. Problems associated with house foundations. Foundation instrumentation and observed performance. Geotechnical processes, compaction. Applications of rock mechanics.

#### **52.332 Geomechanics II**

(Three lectures and one tutorial per week. Second half-year)

A selection from the following:

Further strength and stress strain properties of soils and rocks. Numerical methods applied to steady and transient fluid flow in soils. Soil dynamics applied to earthquake engineering and foundation vibrations. Earth and rock fill dams: design and construction. Soil structure interaction: beams on elastic foundations, laterally loaded piles, flexible bulkheads, tunnels, culverts, conduits and silos: design loadings. Reinforcement of soil and rock masses. Computer-oriented design methods.

#### **52.341 Structures III**

(Three lectures and one tutorial per week. Second half-year)

Direct stiffness method for truss and frame structures;

energy theorems; approximate methods for asymmetrical buildings, multibeam bridges, simple cable networks and shell structures.

### **52.361 Civil Engineering Design I**

(Two lectures and one two-hour drawing office class per week. First half-year)

Civil Engineering design with emphasis on concrete and steel structures involving continuity.

### **52.362 Civil Engineering Design II**

(Two lectures and one two-hour drawing office class per week. Second half-year)

Introduction to further design techniques including structures in which seismic considerations are important.

### **52.371 Traffic Systems Design**

(Three lectures and one tutorial per week. Second half-year)

Signal timing and capacity analysis, area control. Channelisation. Local area traffic management and calming techniques. Delay and capacity models, introduction to queueing theory and simulation. Transportation planning modelling. Impact studies. Town planning legislation. Vehicle operating costs and benefits. Economic appraisals.

### **52.381 Civil Engineering Administration**

(Two lectures and one tutorial per week, first half-year. Three lectures and one tutorial per week, second half-year)

An introduction to financial, legal and managerial principles, and their application to problems in civil engineering management. Systems approach to decision making. Topics related to professional engineering practice.

### **52.382 Management Techniques**

(Three lectures and one tutorial per week. Second half-year)

Introduction to project planning and the making and implementation of decisions.

### **52.383 Accounting for Engineers**

(Three lectures and one tutorial per week. Second half-year)

An introduction to the principles of accounting practice.

### **52.391 Public Health Engineering**

(Two lectures and one tutorial per week. First half-year)

Water use, supply and treatment. Urban drainage. Waste-water treatment and disposal. Water pollution control. Solid waste management. Air pollution control. Planning and environmental factors relevant to provision of public health engineering works.

### **52.392 Water Quality Engineering**

(Three lectures per week. Second half-year)

Chemistry and microbiology of water. Unit operations and process design in water and waste-water treatment. Engineering management of natural water quality.

### **52.393 Maritime Engineering**

(Three lectures and one tutorial per week. Second half-year)

Waves, tides and currents. Wave forces. Wave structure interaction. Floating structures. Offshore structures. Pipeline design and construction. Coastal processes. Ports and harbours. Breakwaters.

### **53.111 Electrical Engineering IG**

(Three lectures and one tutorial per week. Second half-year)

An introductory course, with principal emphasis on electric circuit theory and electronics.

### **53.121 Networks**

(Two lectures in the first half-year, one in the second half-year and one tutorial per week)

Basic network theory and network theorems. Signal waveforms. Network response. Introduction to single and three-phase A.C. circuits. A.C. bridges.

### **53.132 Linear Electronics**

(Two lectures and one tutorial per week. Second half-year)

Biassing BJTs and FETs, SOAR curves, hybrid  $\pi$ -circuits,  $h$  and  $y$  parameters, active circuit analysis, operational amplifiers - biasing, simple low-pass all-pass and high-pass filters, feedback amplifiers, frequency response of linear amplifiers.

### **53.141 Engineering Electromagnetics**

(Two lectures and one tutorial per week. First half-year)

Review of electromagnetic theory. Magnetic materials and their properties with D.C. and A.C. excitation. The magnetic circuit. The single phase transformer. Introduction to electrical machines.

### **53.181 Digital Electronics and Computer Systems**

(Two lectures and one tutorial per week)

Digital electronics: decision elements, basic logic, logic memory elements, logic families, sequential logic systems. Computer systems: Finite state systems, microprocessor systems, mathematical operations, operations on analogue signals, microprogramming.

### **53.204 Electrical Engineering Design**

(Three hours per week)

Electric wiring conventions. Regulations, standard and codes. The protection of circuits and equipment. The properties and selection of materials. Thermal design. Reliability of circuits and systems. Printed circuit techniques. Electromagnetic shielding. Computer-aided circuit analysis.

### **53.211 Electrical Engineering IIS**

(Two lectures and one tutorial per week. Second half-year)

Electronic devices, small signal amplifier theory. Analogue computing systems, simulation. Electronic logic elements, digital systems, digital arithmetic, microprocessor operation. Hybrid computation.

### **53.222 Networks and Signals**

(Three lectures and one tutorial per week. First half-year)

Bridge circuits; resonance,  $Q$ , gain bandwidth considerations, tuned coupled circuits; Laplace transforms; pole-zero diagrams and applications; Two Port coupling networks; filter design using Image Parameters, frequency and impedance transformation; filter design using appropriate methods; active filter design. Signal levels and logarithmic units, signal spectrum and transmission in band limited channels, modulation techniques, electrical noise.

### **53.232 Analogue Electronics**

(Two lectures and one tutorial per week. First half-year)

Noise, bandwidth, power amplifiers, switching circuits, thyristors, power supplies, linear and switched mode, non-linear operational amplifier circuits, multipliers, dividers, log amplifiers, analogue-digital and digital-analogue conversion, sample-and-hold.

#### **53.241 Power Apparatus and Systems**

(Three lectures and one tutorial per week. First half-year)

Multi-circuit and polyphase transformers. Motor starting and speed control. Power electronics. Synchronous machines; infinite busbar operation; load sharing; stability. Elements of power supply systems.

#### **53.251 Transmission Lines and Fields**

(Three lectures and one tutorial per week. Second half-year)

Vector analysis revision; static fields; the electric field and materials; field varying in time; Maxwell's equations; electromagnetic waves; Poynting's theorem; skin effect. Transmission lines with distributed constants; surges on lines; AC lines; standing waves, resonance and antiresonance; Smith chart; common transmission lines, parameters, higher order modes; high frequency lines, communication lines and high power lines. Introduction to antennas and radio systems.

#### **53.271 Control Systems**

(Three lectures per week. Second half-year)

Introduction to linear control systems, speed control, positional servos, process control, three term controllers, the off-set problem, closed-loop stability. Design methods based on Bode, Nyquist and Nichols plots. Root locus methods. State-space representation of dynamic systems. State variable feedback.

#### **53.281 Microcomputer Engineering**

(Two lectures and one tutorial per week. Second half-year)

Central processor architecture, memory systems, input-output, system buses, assemblers and assembly language programming, development systems, real-time industrial control using microprocessors, examples.

#### **53.301 Project in Electrical Engineering**

(Six hours per week in the first half-year, seven in the second half-year)

A student is required to submit a report on project work carried out on a topic assigned by the Head of the Department of Electrical and Electronic Engineering. The work shall be supervised by a member of the staff. The report shall carry the weight of three papers.

#### **53.304 Special Topic in Electrical and Electronic Engineering A**

(Three hours per week. First half-year)

An advanced course on a topic to be determined each year by the Head of the Department of Electrical and Electronic Engineering.

#### **53.305 Special Topic in Electrical and Electronic Engineering B**

(Three hours per week. Second half-year)

Advanced courses on topics to be determined each year by the Head of the Department of Electrical and Electronic Engineering.

#### **53.311 Applied Electricity**

(Three lectures per week. Second half-year)

A course on electrical and electronic components and

circuits leading to the study of industrial instrumentation, control systems and application of electrical energy.

#### **53.312 Electrical Engineering for Civil Engineers** (Three lectures and one tutorial per week. Second half-year)

A descriptive introduction to electric power generation, transmission and distribution systems. Three phase theory and practice. Elementary theory of the induction motor, its control, and practical applications in civil engineering systems. Electrical safety and regulations. Concepts of instrumentation in engineering; transducers, digital logic and systems; aspects of solid state devices, analogue computers and applications, microprocessors and microcomputers; control systems; telemetry in instrumentation.

#### **53.313 Analytical Techniques in Electrical Engineering**

(Three lectures per week. First half-year)

The study of a number of advanced mathematical techniques appropriate to the broad field of electrical engineering applications.

#### **53.321 Applied Network Systems**

(Three lectures per week. Second half-year)

Passive Network Synthesis: Filter concepts and Network Functions, Review of approximation techniques including Butterworth, Chebyshev, Elliptic and Bessel approximations. Frequency transformations. Foster and Cauer synthesis. Synthesis of singly and doubly terminated LC networks. Design of LC filters using filter tables.

Active Filter Synthesis: Basis of active filter synthesis. Single amplifier Biquad circuits. The 3 amplifier Biquad. Gyrators and generalised Immittance Converters. Multiple feedback filter structures. Sensitivity considerations. The effects of finite operational amplifier bandwidth on filter performance. Allpass circuits and delay equalisation. Constant phase difference networks. Operational simulation of LC ladder networks. Switched capacitor filters.

#### **53.322 Signal Processing**

(Three lectures per week. First half-year)

Analysis and processing of continuous signals. Quantitative and statistical treatment of signal distortion, random signals and electrical noise. Discrete-time signals and introduction to digital signal processing.

#### **53.332 Custom Integrated Electronic Design**

(Three lectures per week. Second half-year)

Semiconductor device modelling. Thick film circuits. Surface mounting techniques. Gate arrays. Programmable gate arrays. LSI/VLSI technology. Computer aided design of printed circuits, thick film circuits, and gate arrays. Computer aided design, checking and simulation of VLSI circuits. Testing of VLSI circuits. Application of these technologies.

#### **53.342 Power Systems**

(Three lectures per week. First half-year)

Broad overview of the generation, transmission and distribution systems. characteristics of load and generation. System economics. The power transmission line. Plant models. Behaviour under normal and abnormal conditions.

**53.343 Advanced Power System Topics**

(Three lectures per week. Second half-year)  
Computer analysis, control and protection. State estimation. Economic optimisation. Reliability. Dynamic behaviour.

**53.352 Communication systems**

(Three lectures per week. First half-year)  
The Generalised Communication System, Electrical Noise, Analogue Modulation: AM and FM. Broadband Systems: FDM TDM PCM. Transmission topics: Radio Propagation; Optical Fibre Transmission; Large Signal Behaviour; Switched Telecommunication Systems: structure and planning traffic theory. Television.

**53.353 Digital Communications**

(Three lectures per week. Second half-year)  
Advanced principles and techniques in digital transmission systems: signal coding, data compression, digital modulation, digital transmission, error detection and correction. Digital networks. Information theories. Traffic theories.

**53.362 Microwave and Optical Engineering**

(Three lectures per week. Second half-year)  
Microwave systems; waveguides; passive components, resonators and filters. Microwave network theory, waveguide discontinuities. Microwave sources. Aperture antennas. Optical communication systems; propagation in optical fibres, attenuation, step-index and graded-index fibres, sources and detectors.

**53.363 Radio Systems**

(Three lectures per week. First half-year)  
Systematic approach to electromagnetics as a basis for more advanced work in electromagnetic wave propagation, antennas and microwaves.

**53.371 Advanced Control Engineering**

(Three lectures per week. Second half-year)  
State-space analysis, relationship to transfer function methods, controllability and observability, multivariable plant. Computer simulation. Stability considerations. State variable feedback. Digital control system, design and realisation of digital controllers, adaptive controllers. Nonlinear systems, phase-plane and describing function techniques, design of controllers for nonlinear systems. Variable structure systems.

**53.382 Software Engineering**

(Three lectures per week. First half-year)  
The software life cycle, requirements definition document, software prototyping and specification, implementation issues. Data representation. Software cost estimation, testing and quality assurance, testing and debugging, system delivery, maintenance. Computer aided software engineering (CASE), object oriented programming, real time executives, programmers toolkit.

**53.383 Computer Systems**

(Three lectures per week. Second half-year)  
Computer Architecture - Main frames/micro-processors; Multiprocessing systems; Memory systems - disk, main, virtual, distributed processing; Special purpose processors; Commercial computer networking.

**53.390 Power Semiconductor Applications**

(Three lectures per week. Second half-year)  
Power devices and device physics; thyristors, GTOs, transistors, FETs, IGTs. Conversion processes: AC-DC, DC-DC, DC-AC, UPS, switched mode power supplies. DC motor drives: thyristor control, chopper control. AC motor drives: current source inverters, voltage source inverters. Motor control techniques: inverter control, reduced voltage starters. Drive system economics.

**54.111 Engineering Mathematics I**

(Three lectures and one tutorial per week)  
Basic algebra and calculus of elementary functions of a real variable, introduction to complex arguments, linear algebra and matrix methods, geometrical properties such as curvature and arch length, power-series and indeterminate forms, differentiation and integration. Application to engineering problems will be stressed and assisted by curve sketching in rectangular and polar forms and by numerical methods. Ordinary differential equations including first order, second order constant coefficient and elementary simultaneous equations. Introduction to Laplace transforms.

Partial differentiation, evaluation of multiple integrals, vector analysis, grad, div, curl and integral theorems.

Statistical and probabilistic methods, sampling theory, estimation and confidence intervals, regression and correlation, exploratory data analysis.

Problem solving, formulation and representation of algorithms, the FORTRAN language, use of the undergraduate computer system.

**54.112 Engineering Mathematics IS**

(Three lectures and one tutorial per week)  
As for 54.111 Engineering Mathematics I, plus: Introductory Computer modelling.

**54.211 Engineering Mathematics II**

(Two lectures and one tutorial per week)  
A selection from the following topics:  
Ordinary differential equations, Laplace transforms, systems of equations analytical and numerical methods.

Linear algebra: vector spaces, computational methods for solving systems of equations and eigenproblems. LU factorization. Applications.

Linear programming, simplex procedure.

Nonlinear optimisation.

Complex variable theory, analytic functions, conformal mappings, evaluation of integral. Laurent expansions, residues. Partial differential equations. Derivation of equations, one-dimensional heat and wave equations. Fourier series. Separation of variables, boundary conditions, solution of Laplace's equations in rectangular and polar co-ordinates, Bessel functions. Numerical Methods for solving PDEs.

**54.212 Engineering Mathematics IISA**

(Two lectures and one tutorial per week. First half-year)

Linear algebra, eigenvalues and eigenvectors. Ordinary differential equations, linear equations and applications, stability and phase planes. Partial differential equations, Fourier Series, separation of

variables, wave, diffusion and Laplace's equation.

#### **54.213 Engineering Mathematics IISB**

(Two lectures and one tutorial per week. Second half-year)

Engineering statistics. Model fitting, linear models and the least squares principle. Linear regression, least-squares estimates, Gauss-Markov Theorem, parameter prediction, multiple regression. Analysis of variance, confidence intervals, paired and multiple comparison problems.

#### **54.221 Computational Techniques I**

(Two contact hours per week)

Computational arithmetic, computational linear algebra, solution of equations, the eigenproblem, quadrature, interpolation and approximation. Numerical methods for ordinary differential equations. Finite differences. Nonlinear equations, Newton's methods. Software design and advanced Pascal programming.

#### **54.241 Continuum Mechanics I**

(Two lectures per week, first half-year. Three lectures per week, second half-year. One tutorial per week)

Vector and tensor analysis; analysis of stress and strain; constitutive relations and field equations; analytical and numerical solutions or problems in fluid mechanics and linear elasticity; finite difference and finite element methods. Open channel flow.

#### **54.251 Operations Research I**

(Two lectures and one tutorial per week)

Linear programming, simplex and revised simplex methods, duality and dual simplex, sensitivity and post-optimal analysis, modelling and applications. Integer programming, including cutting planes and branch and bound techniques; dynamic programming with applications; network analysis, transportation and flow problems.

#### **54.291 Engineering Science Design**

(Two contact hours per week)

Study of the design process, including conceptualization and analysis with particular reference to the design of simple structures. Systems analysis and design concepts applied to the computer solution of engineering problems in continuum mechanics and operations research, including formulation and preparation of initial specifications, implementation of algorithms, and presentation and interpretation of results

#### **54.301 Special Topic in Engineering Science A**

(Three lectures per week. First half-year)

An advanced course on a topic to be determined each year by the Head of the Department of Engineering Science.

#### **54.302 Special Topic in Engineering Science B**

(Three lectures per week. Second half-year)

An advanced course on a topic to be determined each year by the Head of the Department of Engineering Science.

#### **54.304 Project in Engineering Science**

(Equivalent in weight to two elective papers)

An investigation carried out under the supervision of a member of staff on a topic assigned by the Head of the Department of Engineering Science. A written report on the work must be submitted.

*No final examination. Grade assessed on the work*

*done and the report.*

#### **54.312 Engineering Mathematics IIISA**

(Three lectures per week. First half-year)

A course in advanced engineering mathematics including such subjects as theory of partial differential equations, method of characteristics, separation of variables in non-Cartesian co-ordinates, special functions, integral transforms, similarity solutions, nonlinear ordinary differential equations, and the calculus of variations.

#### **54.313 Engineering Analysis A**

(Three lectures per week. First half-year)

An approved choice of three modules from a list prepared each year by the Head of the Department of Engineering Science. The list include modules from the subject areas of Engineering Mathematics, Computational Techniques, Engineering Statistics, Mechanics and Operations Research.

#### **54.315 Engineering Mathematics IIISB**

(Three lectures per week. Second half-year)

A course in advanced engineering mathematics including such subjects as the theory and application of complex variables, integral transforms and integral equations.

#### **54.321 Computational Techniques II**

(Three lectures per week. First half-year)

Numerical methods for solving partial differential equations. Finite differences, finite element and boundary element methods. Computational linear algebra, the QR algorithm and solution to least-squares and eigenproblems. Introduction to unconstrained nonlinear optimisation.

#### **54.341 Continuum Mechanics II**

(Two lectures per week)

(a) Mechanics of solids including such topics as elastostatics in two and three dimensions, elastodynamics, thermoelasticity, principles of structural analysis, etc.

(b) Mechanics of fluids including such topics as potential flow, vorticity dynamics, boundary layer analysis and an introduction to compressible flow, turbulence, wave motion and hydrodynamic stability.

#### **54.343 Mechanics of Structures**

(Three lectures per week. Second half-year)

Such topics as the static, stability and dynamic analysis of framed structures, shells, membrane and cable structures.

Assignments will require a reasonable facility at computer programming.

#### **54.351 Operations Research II**

(Two lectures per week)

Introduction to deterministic and stochastic models in such areas as inventory control, reliability, decision processes, scheduling; digital computer simulation, Monte Carlo methods. (Professional practice in O.R., case studies, and computer packages with applications will be covered in Engineering Science Laboratory).

#### **54.352 Stochastic Methods in Operations Research**

(Three lectures per week. Second half-year)

The application of non-deterministic methods in Operations Research, including topics such as Markov processes, stochastic programming, time series analysis, forecasting.



**54.361 Control Theory**

(Three lectures per week. Second half-year)  
As for 53.371 Advanced Control Engineering.

**55.101 Mechanics of Solids I**

(Three lectures and one tutorial per week. First half-year)

Review of principles of static equilibrium; analysis of forces and moments using three-dimensional cartesian vectors. Reactions and degrees of freedom of joints; analysis of space frames. Axial and shear forces, bending moments and torsion. Concept of stress, principal stresses, transformation equations. Mohr circle of plane stress. Linear elastic behaviour and small strain theory. Approximate analysis of stress and strain in axial loading, bending and torsion including moments of area and other section properties; deflection of slender beams and column behaviour. Design of thin-walled pressure vessels.

**55.102 Mechanical Engineering IE**

(Three lectures and one tutorial per week. Second half-year)

Introduction to the fundamentals of thermodynamics, power cycles and heat transfer. Elementary stress analysis. Miscellaneous topics.

**55.113 Thermo Fluid Dynamics I**

(Three lectures and one tutorial per week. Second half-year)

Thermodynamic variables, thermostatics and hydrostatics. Dimensional analysis, fluids in motion and viscosity. Integral equations of conservation of mass, momentum, and energy, first and second laws of thermodynamics, entropy. Introduction to cycles.

**55.121 Applied Mechanics**

(Three lectures and one tutorial per week. First half-year)

Vector methods in mechanics. Kinematics of mechanisms. Kinetics of particles and rigid bodies in two dimensions. Linear and angular momentum, impulse, potential and kinetic energy. Control volume and applications.

**55.213 Thermo Fluid Dynamics II**

(Three lectures and one tutorial per week. First half-year)

Conservation laws, compressible flow, internal and external flows, gas mixtures and psychrometry, combustion, power and refrigeration cycles.

**55.223 Dynamics and Control**

(Three lectures and one tutorial per week. First half-year)

Kinetics of rigid bodies in two and three dimensions; moments of inertia, momentum, energy, gyroscopic motion and applications. Free and forced vibration of one and two degree of freedom systems. Damping. Rayleighs method. Derivation of transfer functions for mechanical systems. Time response and performance characterisation. Stability tests. Frequency response analysis: Bode and Nyquist methods.

**55.224 Vibrations and Control**

(Two lectures and one tutorial per week. First half-year)

Free and forced vibration of one and two degree of freedom systems. Derivation of transfer functions for mechanical systems. Time response and performance characterisation. Stability tests. Frequency response

analysis: Bode and Nyquist methods.

**55.231 Industrial Administration**

(Three lectures per week. Second half-year)

An introductory course for engineering students on the organisational, financial and human relations aspects of management theory and practice.

**55.241 Mechanics of Solids II**

(Three lectures and one tutorial per week. First half-year)

Analysis of stress and strain. Constitutive relations. Yield and fracture in metals. Bending of beams, elastic and plastic analysis of simple indeterminate beams and frames; torsion of shafts, non-circular and thin-walled sections; stability. Experimental stress analysis, testing methods; non-destructive testing.

**55.251 Heat Transfer**

(Three lectures and one tutorial per week. Second half-year)

Heat transfer by conduction, radiation and convection. Steady conduction through plane walls, curved shells, and fins; diffusion equation, heat generation, transient thermal response. Forced convection in external and internal flows; film coefficient; free convection from surfaces and in enclosed spaces. Radiation heat exchange between black or grey surfaces; three surface enclosures. Two stream heat exchanger analysis, log mean temperature difference; effectiveness, number of transfer units; heat exchanger design.

**55.261 Mechanical Engineering Design I**

(One lecture and one two-hour drawing office class per week)

the concept, design and specification of machines, mechanical plant and structures. Relationship of production and design.

**55.271 Production Technology**

(Three lectures and one tutorial per week. Second half-year)

Principles of plastic flow theory: yield criteria, incremental strain, incompressibility, flow rule, plastic work; analyses of bulk forming processes like extrusion, wire-drawing, forging, etc; introduction to sheet metal forming; theory of metal cutting, tool life, tool wear and machinability, introduction to economics of metal cutting, principles of numerical control, development of NC technology, computer-aided part programming techniques, processing of polymers, introduction to casting processes, continuous casting, gating, nucleation, heat flow and shrinkage, gas production and porosity, casting defects, solidification processes during welding.

**55.301 Project in Mechanical Engineering**

(Equivalent in weight to two elective papers)

A comprehensive investigation and report on a topic assigned by the Head of the Department of Mechanical Engineering.

*No final examination:: Grade assessed on project report and year's work.*

**55.303 Special Topic in Mechanical Engineering**

(Three lectures per week. Either first or second half-year)

An advanced course on a topic to be determined each year by the Head of the Department of Mechanical Engineering.

**55.311 Applied Fluid Mechanics**

(Three lectures per week. First half-year)  
Boundary-layer equations, turbulent flow, compressible pipe flow, water-hammer, tribology; turbo-machinery and cavitation.

**55.312 Applied Aerodynamics**

(Three lectures per week. Second half-year)  
Wing theory, aircraft performance and stability. VTOL and STOL aircraft, ground effect vehicles. Propellers, windmills. Natural winds, the earth's boundary layer. Wind effects on buildings and structures. Aeroelasticity. Compressible flow.

**55.321 Control Engineering**

(Three lectures per week. First half-year)  
Classical linear control theory as applied to mechanical and other relevant systems: an introduction to state-space methods and to digital control techniques.

**55.322 Mechanical Vibrations**

(Three lectures per week. First half-year)  
Vibration of multiple degree of freedom and continuous systems. Vibrations in rotating machinery. Vibration control: isolation, absorption, damping. Vibration measurement, frequency analysis and modal analysis. Sound and structural vibration.

**55.323 Microprocessors in Mechanical Control Systems**

(Three lectures per week. Second half-year)  
An introduction to modern control methods as applied to mechanical and other systems. Digital control algorithms and state-space techniques. Incorporation of microprocessors into mechanical systems.

**55.324 Acoustics**

(Three lectures per week. Second half-year)  
Subjective reactions. Noise control, absorption, dissipation, insulation and planning. Performance of materials. The acoustics of enclosures, rooms and electroacoustics.

**55.331 Industrial Engineering**

(Three lectures per week. First half-year)  
An introduction to the problems associated with effective industrial management and the techniques used to solve them. The course considers both the human and technological aspects of productivity improvement procedures, applied to NZ industry.

**55.333 Engineering Economics**

(Three lectures per week. Second half-year)  
A course intended to familiarise the student with the financial aspects of engineering management. Emphasis will be placed on topics such as alternative forms of costing, budgeting and profit planning, breakeven analysis, transfer pricing, replacement and maintenance policies, make or buy decisions and project cost estimation.

Techniques of evaluating project and capital equipment expenditure, including consideration of the sociological and environmental factors, will be studied for both private and public sector investments.

**55.334 Manufacturing Technology**

(Three lectures per week. Second half-year)  
Theory and practice of modern manufacturing technology: selection of optimum cutting parameters, theory of sheet metal forming: shearing, blanking and bending processes, deep drawing and punch stretching, cold roll forming and CAD in roll design,

computer applications in materials testing, die design and failure analysis; computer-aided design, manufacture and assembly, robotics, materials handling, flexible manufacturing systems, concept of computer-integrated manufacturing, planning and design of manufacturing systems.

**55.342 Strength of Materials**

(Three lectures per week. First half-year)  
Stresses, deflections and buckling conditions in flat plates, shells and structural frames. Fatigue in brittle and ductile materials. Thermal and impactive loadings on bars, beams and plates. Design of load-carrying systems constructed from brittle isotropic and fibre-composite materials, including the applications of the theories of linear fracture mechanics and orthotropic elasticity. Non-destructive testing. Failure analysis - methodology and case studies. Material selection.

**55.351 Heat and Mass Transfer**

(Three lectures per week. First half-year)  
Multidimensional heat conduction, shape factors, unsteady conduction, temperature response charts. Pool boiling. Condensation. Combined modes of heat transfer. Concentrations. Fick's law, mass diffusion and convection, mass exchangers. simultaneous heat and mass transfer.

**55.352 Applied Thermodynamics**

(Three lectures per week. Second half-year)  
Energy Resources; Various power generating options; Concepts, terminology and definitions; Irreversibility and availability. Vapour cycles; steam cycles including effects of terminal conditions, feed heating and reheating. Cogeneration and process steam. Advanced gas turbine plants, combined cycles. Combustion processes. Internal combustion cycles, dissociation and equilibrium, mechanical and turbo superchargers.

**55.361 Mechanical Engineering Design II**

(Two lectures and one two-hour drawing office class per week)

**EITHER A. Plant and process design:** Design of mechanical structures. Handling of unit loads and bulk materials. Building services and environmental equipment. Selected plant equipment, e.g. pressure vessels.

**OR B. Machine design:** Manufacturing machinery. Engines, turbo machines, rotating assemblies. Vehicles. Dynamic structures. Jig and tool design. Product design.

**AND Lectures on professional mechanical engineering practice.**

*No final examination: Grade assessed on course assignments.*

**56.101 Mineral Engineering**

(Two lectures per week)

An introduction to the mineral industry as a basis for subsequent studies in mining and mineral processing. Mineral industry, world/New Zealand; economic importance. Stages in a mineral enterprise - exploration, development, production. Selection of method of exploitation - surface, underground, in situ. Importance of reserve and grade. Introduction to the processing of minerals. Principles governing underground and surface mining methods and processing. Environmental aspects and impact of

mining and processing. Computer application in the mineral industry.

#### **56.111 Geology for Mining**

(Two lectures per week and 25 hours laboratory. Second half-year)

Ore forming materials. Geologic processes. The principles of physical and structural geology. Economic geology of New Zealand.

#### **56.201 Mineral Processing I**

(Three lectures, one tutorial per week)

Coal properties, and utilisation. Coal washability and preparation practices. Methods of mineral separation and selected plant practice. Environmental and economic factors in mineral processing.

#### **56.203 Mineral Processing Technology**

(Two lectures, one tutorial per week, first half-year)

Introduction to characteristics of particulate systems: sizing separation, separability and washability analysis. Comminution: theory and mechanics of breakage, crushing and grinding. Mineral separation.

#### **56.212 Mine Environment and Ventilation**

(Three lectures and one tutorial per week. First half-year)

Introduction to heat and mass transfer, assessment of underground comfort conditions; gases, dusts, humidity, heat flow and cooling. Air flow distribution; networks, mechanical and natural ventilation. Methane drainage. Mine lighting. Noise. Environmental considerations of surface mining. Environmental statements.

#### **56.214 Unit Operations in Mining**

(Two lectures, half tutorial per week)

Rock breaking: cutting, ripping, drilling and blasting. Materials handling: mechanics of hoisting and haulage systems. Equipment: selection, reliability and maintenance. Shaft sinking and tunnelling.

#### **56.231 Mine Surveying**

(Three lectures per week and field work. Second half-year)

Introduction to land (including topographic) surveying theory and practice. Principles of typical surveying equipment and its operation and application. Introduction to mine surveying. Photogrammetry. This paper will include attendance at a four-day field exercise prior to Fourth Year.

#### **56.301 Mineral Processing IIA**

(Three lectures per week. First half-year)

Modelling, mathematical descriptions, simulation and modelling of separation and comminution processes and circuits, on-stream analyses and mill control in mineral processing plants.

#### **56.302 Mineral Processing IIB**

(Three lectures per week. Second half-year)

Flotation; solution and surface chemistry as related to flotation reagents, conditioners, equipment, kinetics and plant practice. Design and operation of flotation circuits.

#### **56.303 Mineral Process and Plant Design**

(Two lectures per week first half-year. One lecture and three design office hours per week, second half-year)

Ore body evaluation; feasibility studies and development economics. Design studies in mineral processing operations and circuits, process integration and flow sheet development. Evaluation of laboratory

and pilot plant data. Equipment and process selection.

#### **56.304 Project in Mineral Process Engineering**

The candidate is required to submit a report on a topic in mineral engineering assigned by the Head of the Department of Mining Engineering. The work will be supervised by a member of staff.

#### **56.312 Evaluation and Mineral Economics**

(Two lectures per week and 12 hours laboratory, first half-year. Two lectures per week, second half-year)

Orebody evaluation, geostatistics. Mineral economics feasibility, taxation, metal pricing and marketing. Concept of exhaustibility and cut-off grade.

#### **56.313 Mine Design**

(One lecture per week and 12 laboratory hours, first half-year. One lecture and three design office hours per week, second half-year)

Design of mine layouts including services; environmental and economic assessments. Students will be required to do design exercises in surface and underground mining in both metalliferous and coal.

#### **56.314 Rock Mechanics**

(Three lectures per week and 15 laboratory hours. First half-year)

Behaviour of rock masses; rock properties, strength, deformation and failure. Laboratory and in situ testing, instrumentation. Analytical models of rock as linear elastic, plastic and visco-elastic media, numerical solutions. Underground excavation stability, rock-support interaction and slope stability. Ground control, rock improvement techniques and subsidence.

#### **56.315 Project in Mining Engineering**

The candidate is required to submit a report on a topic in mining engineering assigned by the Head of the Department of Mining Engineering. The work will be supervised by a member of staff.

#### **56.316 Environmental Planning for Mining**

(Three lectures per week. Second half-year)

Physical, chemical and biological impacts associated with mining and mineral processing. Environmental controls. Legislative provisions. Rehabilitation planning and maintenance. Drainage and sediment control. Erosion control.

#### **56.317 Mine Production Engineering**

(Three lectures per week. First half-year)

Mine production techniques in coal and metalliferous mining. Special topics in coal and metalliferous mining. Safety.

#### **56.318 Bulk Materials Handling**

(Three lectures per week. Second half-year)

Analysis of bins, hoppers, conveyors. Flow and mixing of mineral slurries: thickening, filtration and drying. Pelletising. Stacking, blending, homogenising, reclaiming.

#### **Practical Work**

1. Before enrolling for papers of the Third Examination, candidates for the BE Degree are required to have completed to the approval of the Faculty of Engineering a recognised course in Workshop Practice. A candidate who has attended a similar course elsewhere before enrolling at the University of Auckland may apply to the Faculty for that course to be approved. Candidates who have been exempted by the Senate from the Second Exami-

nation are not required to complete a course in Workshop Practice.

2. (a). Except as otherwise provided, candidates may not be admitted to the Degree until they have obtained approved practical experience in engineering works for at least 800 hours. Candidates should undertake such practical experience during Summer vacations and it is expected that they will have completed at least one period of work before enrolling for papers of the Third Examination. All practical work must be approved by Faculty and shall meet the requirements of the appropriate department as set out in the current School of Engineering Handbook.
- (b). The first period of practical work should permit candidates to become familiar with engineering processes and trade skills, particularly those appropriate to the branch of engineering being followed. Subsequent periods shall be related to the particular branch of engineering and may include work of a sub-professional nature. It is expected that the experience gained will be as broad as possible. The advice of the appropriate departmental member of the Practical Work Committee of the Faculty of Engineering may be sought before employment is accepted.
- (c). At the conclusion of each period of practical work a candidate must submit to the Faculty:
  - (i) a certificate signed by the employer showing the type of work carried out, the dates covered, the number of hours worked and the standard of attendance and performance;
  - (ii) a satisfactory report on the work performed.
 Official certificates and instructions on the form of report required may be obtained from the School of Engineering office. Reports shall be submitted not later than 31 March following completion of the work period. They will then be assessed and graded. Only in exceptional circumstances will late submissions be accepted. In order to allow sufficient time for assessment, final reports for candidates who wish to take part in the graduation ceremony should be submitted before 1 March.
- (d). The Faculty of Engineering may approve the reduction in the 800 hours practical work requirement for candidates who hold a New Zealand Certificate in Engineering or who have obtained substantial practical experience in engineering work before enrolment in the BE Degree Course. Any such reduction will depend on the nature and extent of employment undertaken. Evidence of such work may be required. In all cases at least one report on a total work period of not less than 400 hours must be submitted. Candidates must make application in writing to the Faculty by 1 April in the year of first enrolment in order to ascertain the requirements that must be fulfilled in each case. They are advised to consult a member of the Practical Work Committee of the Faculty of Engineering before submitting such application.

### Laboratory and Field Work

1. Laboratory work related to papers of the Second and Third Examinations of the course is undertaken in integrated programmes designated Second Year Laboratories and Third Year Laboratories.
2. In order to gain the formal recognition of having completed the laboratory work necessary for admission to the Degree, a candidate shall attend the Second Year Laboratory and Third Year Laboratory courses, carry out the experiments and submit reports, to a required standard.
3. Laboratory work related to papers of the Fourth Examination is an integral part of each paper. A candidate's satisfactory attendance and performance, including the submission of reports, forms a part of the requirement for a pass in each paper.
4. Candidates taking the papers Surveying and Traffic and Highway Engineering shall, to a required standard, undertake Field Work, including the submission of reports.
5. As part of their Degree course, candidates may be required to go on field trips to study engineering plant and works. The requirements in respect of such plant visits will be specified each year.

---

## PREScriptions FOR ME

### 50.401 Project A

### 50.421 Project C

### 50.411 Project B

### 50.431 Project D (Value two papers)

A candidate may take the equivalent of three single paper projects. For example, a candidate may take Projects A, B and C, or Project D and one of Projects A, B and C. A candidate is required to submit a report on each project carried out. These projects may include design studies, a survey and evaluation of modern advances in a branch of engineering, a small experimental or theoretical research project, the development of a new design procedure, the development of a computer package.

### 51.411 Advanced Process Control

Advanced concepts of control, stability and optimisation. Analysis of non-linear systems. Computer control.

### 51.412 Chemical Engineering Seminar

A graduate paper on a topic or topics from the advanced fields of fluid mechanics, transport phenomena, heat transfer, particulate technology, chemical reactors and fuel technology.

### 51.413 Studies in Chemical Engineering

An advanced paper on topics to be determined each year by the Head of the Department of Chemical and Materials Engineering.

### 51.414 Biochemical Engineering Seminar

A graduate paper on selected topics in biochemical engineering; biological reactors, fermentation, protein processing and enzymology.

**51.415 Advanced Chemical Engineering**

An advanced paper on selected topics such as fluid flow, rheology, heat transfer, mass transfer, separation processes.

**51.421 Advanced Materials**

An advanced paper on selected topics in materials science or materials engineering.

**51.422 Materials Seminar**

A graduate paper on a topic or topics in the field of materials to be determined each year by the Head of the Department of Chemical and Materials Engineering.

**51.423 Studies in Materials Engineering**

An advanced paper on topics to be determined each year by the Head of the Department of Chemical and Materials Engineering.

**52.401 Special Seminar in Civil Engineering A**

An advanced paper on a topic to be determined each year by the Head of the Department of Civil Engineering.

**52.402 Special Seminar in Civil Engineering B**

An advanced paper on a topic to be determined each year by the Head of the Department of Civil Engineering.

**52.411 Mechanics and Properties of Materials Seminar**

Special topics selected from recent developments in the mechanics and properties of selected materials used in civil engineering.

**52.421 Fluid Mechanics Seminar**

Special topics selected from fluid dynamics, water resources engineering, statistics and numerical methods.

**52.422 Advanced Fluid Mechanics**

Selected topics from applied fluid mechanics and hydraulics.

**52.423 Coastal Engineering**

Waves, wave theories, wave forces on structures. Breakers, tsunamis, flow induced oscillations, resonance problems, tidal estuaries. Sediment transport by waves. Topics from coastal and harbour engineering.

**52.424 Advanced Water Resources**

Selected topics from hydrology and water resources engineering

**52.431 Earthquake Engineering**

The fundamentals of seismology including earthquake waves, magnitudes and felt-intensities. The damaging effects of earthquake upon land and the constructions of man. Study of some relevant historical earthquakes. Strong earthquake motions and the vibratory response of land and buildings. Fundamentals of the earthquake-resistant design of engineering structures.

**52.432 Geomechanics Seminar**

Advanced studies of recent developments in theoretical soil mechanics.

**52.433 Applied Geomechanics**

Application of the principles of soil mechanics, rock mechanics and engineering geology to practical problems in civil engineering.

**52.434 Earth Structures**

The stability, deformation, design and construction of earth structures.

**52.441 Structural Dynamics**

Vibration theory. Linear theory of discrete and continuous systems including the shear beam and coupled shear walls. Introduction to the non-linear theory of vibration. Response of structures to earthquake, traffic and wind loading. Response spectra concepts. Normal mode analysis. Numerical integration techniques.

**52.442 Structures Seminar**

Selected topics from recent developments in structural analysis and design.

**52.443 Structural Analysis**

Analytical methods for some or all of the following structures: space frames and grids, shear wall systems, folded plate structures, bridges superstructures. Solution techniques will include approximate methods, matrix and computer methods. Optimisation techniques and computer-aided design may also be included.

**52.444 Space Structures**

Selected topics in the analysis of space structures such as cable structures, plate and shell structures. Special consideration for stability, elasticity and plasticity may also be included.

**52.451 Environmental Law**

See prescriptions for LLB, paper 25.313.

**52.461 Structural Design**

Design philosophies. Special considerations in steel, reinforced concrete, prestressed concrete and masonry structural design. The background to and the use of design codes.

**52.471 Traffic Engineering**

Selected topics from: Signal performance measures (queues, delays, stops). Coordination of signals, platoon dispersion. One-way street systems. Pedestrian activity design, capacity analysis and levels of service. Queueing theory and applications. Simulation. Design of large scale parking, street lighting.

**52.472 Transportation Engineering Seminar**

Selected topics from recent developments in the planning and design of transport facilities and systems.

**52.473 Transportation Planning**

Land use, transport and travel. Spatial interaction models. Data surveys. Forecasting techniques. Analytical models for trip generation/attraction, distribution, assignment and modal split. Urban planning models. Model and network tests. Operational, economic and environmental evaluations. Computer programmes.

**52.474 Transportation Systems Analysis**

Selected analytical techniques taken from: probability and statistics, queueing theory, simulation, linear and dynamic programming, network flow and allocation algorithms, as applied to the planning and design of transport facilities. Characteristics of transport systems and urban structure. Economic evaluation of transport projects. Transport systems planning techniques applied to urban planning.

**52.475 Highway Operations and Evaluation**

Selected topics from: Highway capacity and level of service analyses for motorways, urban arterials and rural two-lane highways. Speed prediction and vehicle operating cost modelling. Passing/climbing lane evaluation. Computer simulation packages.

Economic evaluation models and appraisal techniques.

#### **52.481 Project Management A**

Planning, organisation and control of large engineering projects.

#### **52.482 Case Studies in Project Management**

Analysis of the management of some large engineering projects currently in hand or recently completed.

#### **52.483 Project Management B**

Estimating and cost control, contracts and decisions.

#### **52.491 Public Health Engineering Seminar**

Selected topics from water and wastewater engineering pollution control.

#### **53.401 Studies in Electrical and Electronic Engineering A**

#### **53.402 Studies in Electrical and Electronic Engineering B**

#### **53.403 Studies in Electrical and Electronic Engineering C**

Advanced papers on topics to be determined each year by the Head of the Department of Electrical and Electronic Engineering.

#### **53.432 Electronic Circuits and Systems**

A graduate paper covering state of the art topics in Advanced Electronics including: computer aided circuit analysis; non-linear circuit concepts; oscillators; mixers; power amplifiers; stability; noise.

#### **53.441 Heavy Current Electronics**

Selected topics in the utilisation of thyristor devices in industrial electrical engineering applications.

#### **53.451 Digital Signal Processing**

Fast Fourier transform (FFT) discrete operations via FFT digital filters, finite impulse (FIR) and infinite impulse response (IIR); design techniques for FIR and IIR filters; hardware implementations and noise analysis. State-space synthesis and non-linear behaviour of digital filters. Signal coding and bandwidth compression techniques. Two dimensional signal and image processing.

#### **53.452 VHF and UHF Radio Communication**

A paper concerned with the planning and design of VHF and UHF Radio Communication Systems. Consideration will be given to analogue and digital systems, and both mobile and point-to-point services.

#### **53.461 Electromagnetic Theory**

Selected topics in electromagnetic theory. The emphasis is on mathematical analysis.

#### **53.471 Advanced Control Systems**

Theory of modern control systems with emphasis on optimisation techniques for both deterministic and stochastic processes. State-space modelling of dynamic systems and choice of suitable performance criteria. Examples of applications and discussion of computational problems.

#### **53.482 Advanced Microprocessor Techniques**

Review of the hardware and architecture of 8 and 16-bit devices; introduction to bit-slice technology, microprogrammed control. Input-output interfacing techniques, DMA control, interrupts, etc. Development tools - both hardware and software, assemblers, high level languages. Application devices, e.g. digital signal processors, single-chip micro controllers.

#### **54.401 Studies in Engineering Science**

A graduate paper on topics to be determined each year by the Head of the Department of Engineering Science.

#### **54.411 Studies in Engineering Mathematics**

A graduate paper in Mathematics applied to Engineering problems on such topics as the theory of ordinary differential equations, partial differential equations, perturbation methods, advanced numerical analysis, etc.

#### **54.421 Finite Element Methods**

A graduate paper on finite element formulations and applications to problems such as stress analysis, seepage, heat transfer and fluid flows.

#### **54.422 Nonlinear Optimisation**

A study of theoretical conditions for optimality in non-linear optimisation and numerical methods for the solution of systems of non-linear equations and constrained and unconstrained optimisation problems including the non-linear least-squares problem.

#### **54.441 Studies in Continuum Mechanics A**

#### **54.442 Studies in Continuum Mechanics B**

Graduate papers in Continuum Mechanics covering topics in the mechanics of solids and fluids and other continua.

#### **54.451 Studies in Operations Research A**

#### **54.452 Studies in Operations Research B**

Graduate papers in recent developments in Operations Research and applications.

#### **54.453 Advanced Systems Analysis**

A graduate paper on a selection of topics from systems analysis and operations research. This subject cannot be credited if 54.251 or 54.351 have previously been credited towards a degree.

#### **54.454 Random Processes**

A graduate paper in the theory and application of discrete and continuous random processes including topics such as queueing models, Markov processes, information theory. Monte Carlo simulation, turbulence and random vibration.

#### **54.461 Studies in Control Theory**

A graduate paper in modern Control Theory including such topics as optimal control, stochastic and non-linear systems.

#### **54.481 Geothermal Modelling**

A study of mathematical methods currently used in geothermal reservoir engineering, and an introduction to the computer modelling of geothermal flows.

#### **54.491 Bio-Engineering**

An introduction to the application of engineering principles and methods in biomedical research. Mechanical properties of living tissue: constitutive laws, structure/function relationships, myocardial and lung mechanics, haemodynamics. Biological control mechanisms. Electrophysiology. Instrumentation and measurement: principles and applications.

#### **55.401 Studies in Mechanical Engineering**

(Either half-year)

An advanced paper on topics to be determined each year by the Head of the Department of Mechanical Engineering.

#### **55.411 Fluid Dynamics**

(First half-year)

Equations of fluid motion, laminar duct flow, laminar boundary layers and free shear layers, structure of turbulence, turbulent duct flow and turbulent shear layers.

#### **55.412 Aerodynamics**

(Second half-year)

Thin-airfoil theory, distributed singularity methods, lifting-line and lifting-surface theory, vortex lift; computation of boundary layers, prediction of drag and separation; bluff body flows, wind loading.

#### **55.413 Wind Engineering**

(Second half-year)

Basic meteorology and extreme wind speed analysis; planetary boundary-layer flow; wind structure; loads on engineering structures; dynamic response to turbulence; vortex shedding and aeroelastic effects; wind tunnel testing.

#### **55.422 Mechanical Control Systems**

(Second half-year)

A selection of topics from modern control theory, directed towards the application of appropriate techniques in the description and simulation of mechanical systems. Emphasis will be placed on a structured approach to the analysis of control systems.

#### **55.434 Computer Integrated Manufacturing and Robotics**

(First half-year)

A paper dealing with advanced concepts in manufacturing engineering. Topics include the application of techniques such as computer modelling and simulation of manufacturing facilities, robotics, flexible automation, CAD/CAM and other modern management tools used for productivity improvement.

#### **55.441 Mechanics of Materials**

(First half-year)

Theory of elasticity: equations of elasticity, stress functions, energy theorems, stress waves, elastic instability. Theory of plasticity: criteria for yield and plastic flow, load bounding, the slip-line field theory. Fracture mechanics. Composite materials.

#### **55.442 Vibrations**

(Second half-year)

A selection from topics including analysis of multiple degree of freedom and continuous systems, numerical methods, random vibrations and spectral analysis, vibration measurement and testing methods, modal analysis, wave propagation, sound radiation and sound-structure interaction.

#### **55.452 Reciprocating Internal Combustion Engines**

(Second half-year)

Combustion processes; calculations for Diesel and Otto cycles, including turbocharging; ideal, fuel-air and real cycles; use of alternative fuels as supplements or replacements.

#### **55.461 Computer Graphics and Computer Aided Design**

(Second half-year)

Fundamentals of computer graphics as related to applications in engineering, the mathematics of surface and solid geometry as applied to design and manufacturing, computer aided draughting and design systems.

#### **55.471 Production Technology** (First half-year)

Tribology and lubrication applied to metal working. Joining and assembly processes. Tool and die design. Metal cutting. Deformation processing.

#### **55.472 Metal Forming**

(Second half-year)

Plasticity, analysis of deformation processes, application of upper bound and slip-line field techniques to bulk forming of metals. Properties and behaviour of sheet metals, anisotropy, strain mapping, determination of forming limits.

#### **55.491 Heat Transfer Analysis**

(First half-year)

Analytical and numerical methods for solving problems of heat transfer by conduction, radiation and convection.

#### **55.492 Convective Heat Transfer**

(Second half-year)

Conservation equations for mass, momentum and energy; laminar flow in ducts; forced laminar boundary layer flows; turbulent flow in ducts; forced convection turbulent boundary layers; natural convection boundary layers; natural convection in enclosures.

#### **55.493 Geothermal Heat and Mass Transfer**

(Second half-year)

The application of the principles of heat and mass transfer to geothermal energy technology. Topics include transmission of geothermal fluids within the reservoir and through pipe networks; heat exchangers; condensers; waste heat rejection; economic considerations.

#### **56.401 Advanced Mineral Processing**

An advanced paper on a topic or topics in mineral processing to be determined each year by the Head of the Department of Mining Engineering.

#### **56.402 Seminar in Mineral Processing**

A graduate-level paper on a selected aspect or aspects of mineral process engineering to be determined each year by the Head of the Department of Mining Engineering.

#### **56.403 Advanced Flotation**

Surface chemistry and energetics of minerals in relation to flotation. Hydration, adsorption and particle bubble attachment. Flotation kinetics. Models of batch and continuous flotation. Simulation of flotation circuits. Flotation of ultrafine materials.

#### **56.404 Magnetic and Electrical Separation**

Magnetic and electrical properties of minerals. Dynamics of ore particles in magnetic and electrical fields. Models of magnetic electrostatic and electrodynamic separation. Magnetic coagulation and filtration. Recent advances in magnetic and electrical separation equipment.

#### **56.405 Industrial Minerals**

The evaluation, processing, utilisation and development of non-metallic mineral resources.

#### **56.411 Advanced Mining Engineering**

An advanced paper on a topic or topics in mining engineering to be determined each year by the Head of the Department of Mining Engineering.

#### **56.412 Seminar in Mining Engineering**

A graduate-level paper on a selected aspect or aspects of mining engineering to be determined each year by the Head of the Department of Mining Engineering.

**56.413 Advanced Mine Ventilation**

Advanced topics in underground environmental assessment and control. Optimisation of ventilation requirements.

**56.414 Advanced Geostatistics and Resource Evaluation**

Theoretical and practical geostatistics, including the application of commercial—scale computer packages to problems of natural resource evaluation. Further study of extraction policy formulation and cutoff grade decisions.

**56.415 Advanced Rock Mechanics**

Further topics in rock mechanics.

**56.416 Tunneling and Quarrying Engineering**

The design and methods of excavation and support of tunnels. Operational aspects of quarries in New Zealand.

**86.401 Geothermal Systems and Technology**

Scope of geothermal projects, features of geothermal

systems, properties of geothermal fluids. Introduction to geothermal exploration, production and utilisation technology. Reservoir engineering, economics, environmental and legal aspects. Case histories.

*Either*

**86.402 Geothermal Production Technology**

Drilling technology and completion tests, fluid transmission, thermodynamics and fluid mechanics of geothermal fluids, well operation and analysis. Reservoir modelling and assessment, corrosion and deposition, materials.

*or*

**86.403 Geothermal Energy Utilisation**

Applied thermodynamics. Industrial, agricultural and domestic use of heat, process heat. Power cycles and electricity generation. Waste disposal, land erosion, subsidence, environmental effects and reporting, tourist development, wilderness protection. Development planning and costing.

## DIPLOMA COURSE REGULATIONS AND PRESCRIPTIONS

### DIPLOMA IN GEOTHERMAL ENERGY TECHNOLOGY

#### DipGeothermTech

*The personal course of study of every candidate must be approved by the Senate. Approval will normally be granted for courses which are in accordance with the following Regulations: for general provisions affecting their courses of study students are referred to the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General) and the Examination Regulations.*

1. Subject to the Admission Regulations, a candidate for the Diploma in Geothermal Energy Technology shall before enrolment for this Diploma:
  - (a) have been admitted or have qualified for admission to a Bachelor's Degree in Science or Engineering, or
  - (b) have reached an equivalent level of attainment in science or engineering to the approval of the Senate.
2. Admission to the course of study shall be at the discretion of the Senate on consideration of a recommendation from the Board of Studies, Geothermal Institute.
3. A candidate for the Diploma shall follow a course of study of one year.
4. The Course of study for the Diploma shall consist of three parts. The Diploma shall be granted by examination.

**Part I**

A core paper in Geothermal Systems and Technology (86.100)

**Part II****EITHER**

- (a) Geothermal Exploration for Earth Scientists (86.101) and
- (b) Geothermal Exploration Technology (86.102)

**OR**

- (c) Geothermal Production Technology (86.103) and
- (d) Geothermal Energy Utilisation (86.104).

**Part III**

A project (86.606) on some aspect of Geothermal Energy.

5. The project (86.606) shall be delivered to the Registrar by October 25 of the year of the candidate's enrolment for the Diploma, or such later date as may be approved by Senate.
6. These Regulations shall come into force on 1 January 1985.

### PRESCRIPTIONS FOR DipGeothermTech

#### DIPLOMA IN GEOTHERMAL ENERGY TECHNOLOGY

The Course of study for this Diploma is taught under the auspices of the Geothermal Institute which was established within the University of Auckland by funding from the United Nations Development Programme and the New Zealand Government. Funds are now provided by the Ministry of External Relations and Trade. Teaching will be carried out within the Faculty of Science and the School of Engineering by the academic staff, and by visiting lecturers from Government agencies and private organisations engaged in geothermal exploration and development.

Applications for admission to this Diploma course by foreign students must be made to the Board of Studies, Geothermal Institute by 1 September (15 October for New Zealand students) for entry to the course in the



following year. The number of students accepted for the course will be restricted each year.

**Note:** Any prospective student who has not passed the University Entrance Examination, who has been previously enrolled at a New Zealand University other than the University of Auckland, or who last attended an overseas university must apply for admission under the Admission Regulations as defined elsewhere in the *Calendar*.

Part 1 will be the equivalent of two papers. The examination for the Diploma shall be in three parts and must be passed as a whole.

**Part 1** Geothermal Systems and Technology (86.100)

Scope of geothermal projects. Basic facts of geothermal systems. Introduction to geothermal exploration and technology. Reservoir engineering. Chemistry of thermal fluids. Economic, environmental and legal aspects. Case Studies.

**Part 2** EITHER

(a) Geothermal Exploration for Earth Scientists (86.101)

Petrology, secondary mineralisation and alteration. Drillhole logging. Geochemistry of geothermal fluids. Geophysical investigation of geothermal fields. Estimation and assessment of thermal field potential, and

(b) Geothermal Exploration Technology (86.102)

Geological mapping techniques. Mapping and sampling of geothermal discharges. Geophysical prospecting techniques. Geochemical analysis. Drillhole logging techniques and instrumentation. Geological assessment of reservoirs.

OR

(c) Geothermal Production Technology (86.103)

Drilling techniques and completion tests, fluid transmission, thermodynamics and fluid mechanics of geothermal fluids, well operation and analysis, reservoir modelling and assessment, corrosion and deposition, materials for geothermal plant, and

(d) Geothermal Energy Utilisation (86.104)

Applied thermodynamics. Industrial, agricultural and domestic use of heat. Process heat. Power cycles and electricity generation. Waste disposal, land erosion, subsidence. Environmental effects of geothermal wastes. Environmental Impact Report preparation. Assessment of geothermal fields as undeveloped natural resources, tourist development, wilderness protection. Development planning and costing.

**Part 3**

A written project on some aspect of geothermal energy including some degree of original research by the candidate (86.606).

## DIPLOMA IN PULP AND PAPER TECHNOLOGY

### DipPulpPaper

*The personal course of study of every candidate must be approved by the Senate. Approval will normally be granted for courses which are in accordance with the following Regulations: for general provisions affecting their courses of study students are referred to the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General) and the Examination Regulations.*

1. Subject to the Admission Regulations, a candidate for the Diploma in Pulp and Paper Technology shall before enrolment for this Diploma:
  - (a) have been admitted or have qualified for admission to a Bachelor's Degree in Engineering, Forestry or Science, or
  - (b) have reached to the satisfaction of Senate an equivalent level of attainment in science or engineering, or
  - (c) have a New Zealand Certificate in Engineering or Science (or equivalent) and have completed a minimum of three years relevant industrial experience to the satisfaction of Senate.
2. Admission to the course of study shall be at the discretion of the Senate on consideration of a recommendation from the Board of Studies, Pulp and Paper Technology Diploma.
3. A candidate for the Diploma shall follow a formal course of study of 15 full-time weeks followed by a further 12 weeks full-time industrial project approved by the Board of Studies, Pulp and Paper Technology Diploma.
4. Every candidate for the Diploma shall pass in each of six papers and pass in respect of a project as follows:
  - The Forest Products Industry (191.501)
  - Mechanical Pulping (191.502)
  - Chemical Pulping (191.503)
  - Papermaking (191.504)
  - Process and Environmental Control (191.505)
  - Properties and Uses of Pulp and Paper (191.506)
 and
  - Project (191.607)

**Project**

5. A candidate must submit the written project not later than 1 December in the year of enrolment provided that the Senate may, in exceptional circumstances, extend the period.

**Time limit**

6. The requirements for the Diploma shall be completed by 1 December in the year of enrolment for the Diploma.
7. These Regulations shall come into force on 1 January 1991.

## **PRESCRIPTIONS FOR DipPulpPaper DIPLOMA IN PULP AND PAPER TECHNOLOGY**

The course of study for this Diploma is carried out in conjunction with the Pulp and Paper Research Organisation of New Zealand (PAPRO). Teaching will be carried out by staff from PAPRO and the Forest Research Institute (FRI), specialists from the pulp and paper industry, and academic staff from the University. Lectures and laboratories will be held at FRI in Rotorua, and students are expected to be domiciled in Rotorua for the duration of the formal coursework. The course fee is costed on a user-pays basis; one full-fee scholarship will be offered each year by the industry to unsponsored candidates.

1. The Forest Products Industry (191.501)  
(Five lectures and three laboratory hours per week. First half of the course)  
Forest resources of the World in general and of New Zealand in particular. Study and measurement of wood quality. Growing and harvesting wood. Industries based on wood.
2. Mechanical Pulping (191.502)  
(Three lectures and four laboratory hours per week. First half of the course)  
The science and technology of mechanical pulping of wood. Control of pulp quality. Energy consumption. Bleaching mechanical pulps. Environmental effects. Semi-chemical pulping. Mechanical pulping of non-wood raw materials.
3. Chemical Pulping (191.503)  
(Three lectures and four laboratory hours per week. First half of the course)  
The science and technology of chemical pulping of wood. The Kraft and sulphite processes. Chemical recovery. Pulp bleaching. Chlorine free bleaching. Environmental effects. Pulp cleaning and drying. Chemical pulping of non-wood raw materials.
4. Papermaking (191.504)  
(Three lectures and four laboratory hours per week for the full length of the course)  
The science and technology of stock preparation, sheet forming, pressing, drying, calendering, winding and coating. New developments in papermaking.
5. Process and Environmental Control (191.505)  
(Three lectures and three laboratory hours per week. Second half of the course)  
Review of control theory. Applications of control theory to pulp and paper industry processes. Modern trends in industrial control. Effects of pulp and papermaking processes on waterways. Control by aerobic and anaerobic treatment. Disposal of non-aqueous wastes.
6. Properties and Uses of Pulp and Paper (191.506)  
(Seven lectures and two laboratory hours per week. Second half of the course)  
Paper as a fibrous structure. Fibre properties and their effects on paper properties. End-use requirements of paper and paperboard. Science and technology of printing. Paper grades and their applications. Uses of types of pulp.
7. Project (191.607)  
(Full-time project, 12 weeks duration)  
The industrial project will be either a research project or a professional level investigation set by the course organisers in conjunction with industry and must be approved by the Board of Studies.

There will also be eleven plant visits, each occupying one day.

---

## **CERTIFICATE REGULATIONS**

### **CERTIFICATE IN GEOTHERMAL ENERGY TECHNOLOGY CertGeothermTech**

Each candidate for the Certificate has to enrol for the Diploma in Geothermal Energy Technology. The course for the Certificate in Geothermal Energy Technology normally involves attendance at all lectures, laboratories and field trips of the papers 86.100 and *either* 86.101 and 86.102 *or* 86.103 and 86.104. However, during the year the candidate may be advised by Director of the Geothermal Institute *EITHER* not to submit the project (86.606) and to continue with only those courses proceeding to a final written examination (i.e. 86.100, and *either* 86.101 and 86.102 *or* 86.103 and 86.104) *OR* to submit the project 86.606 and to continue with only two of the courses proceeding to a final written examination (86.100, 86.101, 86.102; 86.103, 86.104).

**Examinations:** Candidates will be assessed on their practical work and written tests during the course. The Certificate may be awarded for a pass in the following papers: 86.100 and *either* 86.101 and 86.102 *or* 86.103 and 86.104. *Alternatively*, the Certificate may be awarded for a pass in two of the following papers: 86.100, 86.101, 86.102, 86.103, 86.104 and a pass in the 86.606 project.

**Prerequisites:** As for Diploma in Geothermal Energy Technology.

---

# Faculty of Fine Arts

---

## *Contents*

|                                    |                                 |  |
|------------------------------------|---------------------------------|--|
| <b>Degree Course Regulations</b>   | 376<br>378                      | Degree of Bachelor of Fine Arts<br>Degree of Master of Fine Arts   |
| <b>Degree Course Prescriptions</b> | 379<br>380<br>380<br>380<br>381 | Department of Art History<br>Elam School of Fine Arts<br>Studio Theory<br>Studio for BFA<br>Studio for MFA |

## DEGREE COURSE REGULATIONS

### ELAM SCHOOL OF FINE ARTS

The Elam School of Fine Arts offers the Bachelor of Fine Arts Degree of four years' duration, and the Master of Fine Arts Degree and the Master of Philosophy Degree, each of two years' duration. Courses of study for each of these Degrees involves a proportion of studio activities and theoretical studies which can be varied to accommodate the needs of individual students.

#### Bachelor of Fine Arts (BFA)

All students entering the first year of the BFA course take a common programme which consists of practical studio activities conducted in the School of Fine Arts and two papers presented by the Department of Art History. Studio sessions are held in the morning from 9 am - 1 pm and the Art History study in the afternoons between 2 pm and 4 pm.

The first year studio programme consists of assignments and concentrated workshop sessions in design, drawing, painting, sculpture and photography. Upon the completion of the first year, some degree of specialisation is normally expected. Regular seminars and personal tutorials are essential features of the courses, as are studio theory papers dealing with historical, critical and technical topics.

#### Master of Fine Arts (MFA)

Any person wishing to enrol for the Master of Fine Arts Degree shall have passed the final year of the Bachelor of Fine Arts course with a Studio grade higher than B-

Two course options allow the proportion of practical to theoretical studies to be varied. Studio work consists of a practical performance in an aspect of painting, sculpture, printmaking, photography or design.

Candidates are required to present a course outline of their proposed programme to the Dean prior to 31 March. Graduate students are expected to base their activities in their studios during School hours, and to participate in a series of seminars on theoretical, critical and historical issues. In addition they are required to present a dissertation on a topic other than the main subject of their studio work, and to present an exhibition of their work at the end of the final year.

#### Master of Philosophy (MPhil)

The course requirements are the same as for the MFA Degree.

## THE DEGREE OF BACHELOR OF FINE ARTS BFA OPTION I AND OPTION II

*The personal course of study of every candidate must be approved by the Senate. Approval will normally be granted for courses which are in accordance with the following Regulations: for general provisions affecting their Course of study students are referred to the Enrolment and course Regulations (General), and the Examination Regulations.*

#### General Provisions

1. Subject to the Admission Regulations, a candidate for the Degree of Bachelor of Fine Arts shall:
  - (a) follow a course of study of not fewer than four years, taking either Option I or Option II prescribed in these Regulations and
  - (b) pass four Professional Examinations.
2. In these Regulations:
  - 'Papers' includes Studio I, Studio II, Studio III and Studio IV.
  - 'Prescribed or approved papers' in relation to any candidate means the following papers:
  - Studio Theory: 27.201-27.206, 27.209-27.211, 27.213-27.216, 27.233, 27.301, 27.302, 27.333.
  - Art History I: 19.151, 19.152, 19.153.
  - Art History II: 19.259, 19.260, 19.261 and 19.262.
  - Art History III: 19.301, 19.302, 19.304, 19.305, 19.306, 19.307, 19.308, 19.309, 19.310, 19.311 and any other paper (or the equivalent credits)
  - (i) prescribed for the Degree of BA, BSc or any other degree and
  - (ii) approved by the Head of the Department of Fine Arts for the course of that candidate for this Degree and by the Head of the Department in which the paper is taken.
3. The subjects of Examination for the Degree shall be:
  - First Professional Examination* 6 papers, consisting of:
    - (i) Studio I: 27.150 having the value of 4 papers, and
    - (ii) Art History I: Two papers from the following: 19.151, 19.152, 19.153.

#### Option I

*Second Professional Examination* 9 papers, consisting of:

- Either (a) (i) Studio II: 27.250 having the value of 6 papers and  
(ii) Three prescribed or approved papers.
- Or (b) (i) Studio II: 27.351 having the value of 7 papers and  
(ii) Two prescribed or approved papers.

**Note:** Students planning to take Studio III Sculpture must have passed 27.216.

**Third Professional Examination** 9 papers, consisting of:

- Either (a) (i) Studio III: 27.350 having the value of 6 papers and  
(ii) Three prescribed or approved papers.  
Or (b) (i) Studio III: 27.351 having the value of 7 papers and  
(ii) Two prescribed or approved papers.

**Note:** 27.216 is a prerequisite for entry to Studio III Sculpture but with special permission of the Head of Department may be taken as a corequisite.

**Fourth Professional Examination** 9 papers, consisting of:

- Either (a) Studio IV: 27.450 having the value of 9 papers  
Or (b) (i) Studio IV: 27.451 having the value of 7 papers and  
(ii) Two prescribed or approved papers.

## Option II

**Second Professional Examination** 9 papers consisting of:

- Either (a) (i) Studio II: 27.252 having the value of 3 papers and  
(ii) Six prescribed or approved papers.  
Or (b) (i) Studio II: 27.253 having the value of 4 papers and  
(ii) Five prescribed or approved papers.

**Note:** Students planning to take Studio III Sculpture must have passed 27.216.

**Third Professional Examination** 9 papers, consisting of:

- Either (a) (i) Studio III: 27.352 having the value of 3 papers and  
(ii) Six prescribed or approved papers.  
Or (b) (i) Studio III: 27.353 having the value of 4 papers and  
(ii) Five prescribed or approved papers.

**Note:** 27.216 is prerequisite for entry to Studio III Sculpture but with special permission of the Head of Department may be taken as a corequisite.

**Fourth Professional Examination** 9 papers, consisting of:

- (i) Studio IV: 27.452 having the value of 6 papers and  
(ii) three prescribed or approved papers.

4. All students will be required to make a formal presentation of work in Studio, or to fulfil the course work in any subject or tutorial as may be determined by the Faculty from time to time. A student who fails to comply with these requirements may be declined permission to sit the final examination.

## Studio

5. In each Professional year work for Studio shall consist of:

- (a) a formal presentation of work at the conclusion of each study period; and  
(b) a final formal presentation of work; which may include written examination papers, as required by the Dean of the Faculty.

6. A candidate shall be required to pass as a whole each Professional Examination consisting of more than one subject, so that his/her performance in all the papers of the Examination shall be considered; provided that:

- (a) a candidate who has failed to pass any such Examination as a whole may, at the discretion of the Senate, be credited with a paper or papers of that Examination, and permitted in a subsequent year to take the papers not so credited; and

- (b) a candidate who does not pass the Second Professional Examination as a whole, but is credited with a paper or papers of that Examination may, if the Senate permits, take with the papers being re-presented for that Examination a paper or papers for the Third Professional Examination.

7. Notwithstanding the provisions of Regulation 6, a student who, after two years of academic studies for this Degree, has failed to pass all the papers of the First Professional Examination shall not be permitted to enrol for the Third Professional Examination until the remaining papers of the First Professional Examination are passed.

8. In respect of every prescribed or approved paper prescribed for a Degree other than this (that is, every paper taken for this Degree other than Studio I, II, III and IV and the papers in Studio Theory) a candidate shall be required to comply with all Regulations applicable thereto for the Degree of BA, BSc or other degree (including all prerequisites, corequisites and restrictions).

## Credits

9. A candidate who has successfully completed a course or courses at a Teachers College under the control of the Auckland Teachers' Colleges Council or (from 1986) at the Auckland College of Education may be granted credits towards this Degree as provided by Regulation 14 of the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General).

## Revocations

10. (1). The course of every candidate shall be governed by these Regulations.  
(2). The Regulations governing the Degree of Bachelor of Fine Arts last published in the *University of Auckland Calendar* for 1974 are hereby revoked.  
(3). The Regulations governing the Diploma in Fine Arts and the Diploma in Fine Arts (Honours) respectively, last published in the *University of Auckland Calendar* for 1974 are hereby revoked.  
11. These Regulations shall come into force on 1 January 1975.

## THE DEGREE OF MASTER OF FINE ARTS MFA

*The personal course of study of every candidate must be approved by the Senate. Approval will normally be granted for courses which are in accordance with the following Regulations: for general provisions affecting their course of study students are referred to the Enrolment and course Regulations (General), and the Examination Regulations.*

### General Provisions

1. Subject to the Admission Regulations, a candidate for the Degree of Master of Fine Arts shall:
  - (a) before his/her enrolment for this Degree have been admitted to have qualified for admission to the Degree of Bachelor of Fine Arts, and
  - (b) have passed with a higher Grade than B - in Studio IV in their Bachelor of Fine Arts course provided that in special circumstances where the Head of the Department recommends the Senate may accept a B - pass, and
  - (c) follow a course of study of not less than two years, taking either of the Options prescribed under these Regulations.
2. In these Regulations:
 

'prescribed or approved papers' in relation to any candidate means the following papers:

Studio Theory.

Any paper other than a paper in Art History, prescribed for any degree other than this Degree and approved by the Head of the Department of Fine Arts for the course of that candidate and by the Head of the Department in which the paper is taken.

### Course Content

3. The subjects of examination for the Degree shall be:

#### Option I

First Year      Part I: Advanced Studio V Practice and Theory 27.550 having the value of four papers.

Second Year    Part II: Studio VI 27.650 having the value of four papers.

A candidate shall carry out work satisfactory to the Dean of the School of Fine Arts within an individually planned programme approved by the Head of the Department including the presentation of an exhibition of his/her work and an adequate printed catalogue thereof not later than 1 November in the year in which the work is undertaken or such later date as may be approved by the Head of the Department.

#### Option II

First Year      Part I: (a) Art History IV: Two papers approved by the Head of Department of Fine Arts being either two papers chosen from 19.400-19.413, or one paper chosen from 19.400-19.413 and one of the papers prescribed for Art History III not already credited to the Degree of Bachelor of Fine Arts; provided that papers 19.305 and 19.401 may not both be taken for this Degree, or

(b) Any two prescribed or approved papers not already credited to the Degree of Bachelor of Fine Arts.

First Year      Part II Studio V 27.551 which shall have the value of three papers. A candidate shall carry out work satisfactory to the Dean of the School of Fine Arts within an individually planned programme approved by the Head of the Department including the presentation of an exhibition of his/her work and an adequate printed catalogue thereof not later than 1 November in the year in which the work is undertaken or such later date as may be approved by the Head of the Department.

Second Year    Part III: One of the following which shall have the value of three papers:

(a) Thesis 19.601 on a special topic of Art History approved by the Head of the Department of Art History, or

(b) Thesis 27.601 on a special topic related to the candidate's programme of work for Studio V and approved by the Head of the Department of Fine Arts.

4. (1). No candidate taking Option I shall take Studio VI without having first passed in Studio V unless the Head of the Department permits the work for Studio V to be examined with the work for Studio VI in the second year of the course.
- (2). A candidate taking Option II shall not take Art History IV unless he/she has either passed eight papers in Art History including three Stage III papers or complied with such prerequisites as the Head of the Department of Fine Arts may otherwise prescribe for him/her.
- (3). In respect of any prescribed or approved paper taken in Option II and prescribed for a degree other than this, a candidate shall be required to comply with all regulations applicable thereto for that other degree (including all prerequisites, corequisites and restrictions).

### Savings and Transitional Provisions

5. (1). Except as otherwise provided in this Regulation, the course of every candidate shall be governed by these Regulations.
- (2). The Regulations governing the Degree of Master of Fine Arts which were last published in the

University of Auckland Calendar for 1974 (in this Regulation called "the old Regulations") are hereby revoked.

(3). A candidate who began the course for the Degree of Master of fine Arts in 1974 shall be entitled to the following credits:

- (a) If he/she passed Art History IV and Studio IV under the old Regulations and chooses Option I, he/she shall be credited with Studio V and one prescribed or approved paper.
- (b) If he/she passed Art History IV under the old Regulations and chooses Option II, he/she shall be credited with Art History IV.

### Honours

- 6. (a). There shall be two classes of Honours: First Class Honours and Second Class Honours. Second Class Honours shall be awarded in two divisions: First Division and Second Division.
- (b). Honours shall not be awarded if the papers in the first year in which a candidate is examined in Art History for this Degree are unsatisfactory or either the work in Studio V, VI, or the thesis at its first presentation is unsatisfactory: provided that, subject to the provisions of paragraph (c) of this Regulation, a candidate whose performance at the written examination has been seriously impaired by illness (certified as under the aegrotat Regulations) may elect, instead of applying for an aegrotat award, to present himself/herself at a subsequent written examination and still be eligible for the award of Honours.
- (c). A candidate shall be eligible for the award of Honours only upon completion of the requirements for Honours within three years of his/her first enrolment for this Degree; but this period may be extended in exceptional circumstances by the Senate.
- 7. These Regulations shall come into force on 1 January 1976.

## DEGREE COURSE PRESCRIPTIONS

### DEPARTMENT OF ART HISTORY

#### Art History I

(Two papers)

**19.151 Renaissance Art to c.1520**

**19.152 Western Art from c.1840 to the present day**

**19.153 Maori and other Polynesian Arts**

#### Art History II

(Three papers)

**19.259 Topics in 18th and early 19th Century Art**

*Prerequisites:* any two of 19.151, 19.152 or 19.153.

**19.260 Topics in Baroque Art**

*Prerequisites:* Any two of 19.151, 19.152 or 19.153.

*Restriction:* 19.257.

**\*19.261 Topics in 17th and Early 18th Century Art in Northern Europe**

*Prerequisites:* Any two of 19.151, 19.152 or 19.153.

*Restriction:* 19.258.

**19.262 Topics in 20th Century Art**

*Prerequisites:* Any two of 19.151, 19.152 or 19.153

#### Art History III

(Three papers)

**\*19.301 Special Topic in Medieval Art**

To be prescribed by the Head of Department.

*Prerequisites:* Two of 19.251-19.253 or two of 19.257-19.261.

**\*19.302 Mid-19th Century Painting in France and Britain**

*Prerequisites:* Two of 19.251-19.253 or two of 19.257-19.262.

**19.304 Dürer and his Sources and Influence**

*Prerequisites:* Two of 19.251-19.253 or two of 19.257-19.262.

**19.305 New Zealand Art (General)**

*Prerequisites:* Two of 19.251-19.253 or two of

19.257-19.262

*Corequisite:* 19.308 or 19.302 or 19.307.

**†19.306 Special Topic in Western Art after 1500**

*Prerequisites:* Two of 19.251-19.253 or two of 19.257-19.262.

**19.307 Art in the USA, 1945 to the present day**

*Prerequisites:* Two of 19.251-19.253 or two of 19.257-19.262.

**19.308 Topics in early 20th Century Art (Sculpture)**

*Prerequisites:* Two of 19.251-19.253 or two of 19.257-19.262.

**\*19.309 Women in Art**

*Prerequisites:* Two of 19.251-19.253 or two of 19.257-19.262.

*Restriction:* Paper 19.306 under 1981 Regulations.

**\*19.310 Topics in 17th Century Graphic Art**

*Prerequisites:* Two of 19.251-19.253 or two of 19.257-19.262.

**19.311 Contemporary New Zealand Art**

*Prerequisites:* Two of 19.251-19.253 or two of 19.257-19.262.

#### Art History for MFA

**†19.400 Topics in 17th Century Drawing**

**19.401 Topics in Australian and New Zealand Art (Advanced)**

**†19.402 Special Topic in Western Art before 1600**  
To be prescribed by the Head of Department.

**\*19.403 Watteau and his Sources and Influence**

**19.404 Film Studies**

**†19.405 Nicholas Poussin and 17th Century Classicism**

*Note:* A candidate who has been credited with a pass in 19.303 may not take this paper.

**19.406 Art History****\*19.407 A Topic in Medieval Art****\*19.408 A Topic in 19th Century Art****19.409 Topics in The Theory of Modern Art****19.410 Topics in 19th and 20th Century Sculpture****19.411 Modern Literature and the Visual Arts****19.412 Women in Art (Advanced)****19.413 Topics in Maori Art****ELAM SCHOOL OF FINE ARTS**

In celebration of the University Centenary, the name of the School reverted in 1983 to Elam School of Fine Arts, acknowledging John Edward Elam who, when he died in 1888, bequeathed funds to establish an art school in Auckland. The Elam School of Art & Design opened in 1890 in rooms at the Auckland Art Gallery, with E.W. Payton its first Director. The School quickly became an important influence on the artistic life of the city, becoming registered in 1900 and adding evening classes in 1902. A new building in Rutland Street provided space for the growing School from 1914, and, in 1925, A.J.C. Fisher was appointed Director, remaining in that post until his death in 1959. During the mid-30s the School moved to more spacious accommodation in the Old Grammar School in Symonds Street, using the Old Newton West Primary School after the January 1949 fire. In 1950 the School became part of Auckland University College, and began offering Diploma courses. The first Chair of Fine Arts was established in 1961 and Professor Paul J. Beadle was appointed. In 1962 the School moved to its present building in Whitaker Place. Degree courses began in 1967, and, in 1968, a separate Department of Art History was established. Professor Jolyon D. Saunders became Head of the Faculty of Fine Arts in 1977 when Professor Beadle assumed the first Personal Chair in Fine Arts. The Elam School of Fine Arts Centenary will be celebrated in 1990.

**Studio Theory****†27.201 Art Critique**

The objective is twofold; (a) to foster the student's ability to formulate and communicate concepts and opinions about art; (b) to know what is at present happening in the art community. Written reviews of contemporary art events, such as exhibitions in the city, and verbal participation during meeting sessions are essential components of the paper.

**†27.203 Design Methodology**

The study of methods used in the collection and collation of information, the recognition, analysis and description of complex problems, and the generation and presentation of solutions.

**\*27.205 History of 19th Century Photography****\*27.206 History of 20th Century Photography****†27.209 History of Photography in New Zealand**

The aim of this paper is to encourage research, documentation and dialogue on aspects of the History of Photography in New Zealand. Working on individual

and/or group projects, the emphasis will be on the study and documentation of available primary source material: photographs, albums and literature. Interviews with photographers and their contemporaries may also be undertaken.

**†27.214 Oceanic Arts Studies**

A seminar programme which introduces Fine Arts students to the living traditions of material and performing arts in Oceania, with an emphasis on Maori-tanga.

**27.215 Art and Society**

A seminar programme which considers the creative, professional and social-economic dimensions of the visual arts. It also involves a workshop undertaking for candidates to explore or advance in some idiom distinct from their primary Studio methods. All candidates are expected to maintain seminar and workshop notations and collate information pertaining to topics considered.

**†27.216 Workshop Practice (Sculpture)**

Paper 27.216 is a prerequisite for entry to Studio III Sculpture.

**Special Topics in painting, sculpture, print-making, photography or design approved by the Head of the Department.**

**27.210 Special Topic****27.211 Special Topic****27.213 Special Topic****27.233 History of Photography in New Zealand and USA****27.301 Professional Practice for Designers**

Business methods and procedures commonly used by professional designers; topics may include:

- (a) Preparation of a portfolio; (b) What to expect after graduation; (c) Correspondence; (d) Reports and report writing; (e) Fee structure; (f) Estimating fees, fee letters and contracts; (g) Business structure; (h) Setting up an office; (i) Running an office; (j) Budgeting (overheads, etc); (k) Securing work and clients; (l) Accountants and taxation; (m) Design and the Law; (n) Ethics;
- (o) Design organisations; (p) Special topics related to the individual student's requirements.

**†27.302 History of Photography in New Zealand (Advanced)**

The research, documentation and analysis of aspects of the history of photography in New Zealand. Working on individual and/or group projects, the emphasis will be on the study of primary source material: photographs, albums, literature. Interviews with photographers and their contemporaries may also be undertaken.

**Studio for BFA****Studio I****27.150**

Exploration of those disciplines which are fundamental to the development of the artist and designer. Basic elements of two and three-dimensional design (space, shape, line, rhythm, texture) and the varied properties and qualities of colour and light. The creative potential and characteristic limitations of various media



such as wood, stone, plastic, metal, glass and pigment. Methods of techniques such as welding, casting, print-making, painting and photographic media. Observation and analysis of the structure of the natural world and human environment. Drawing as an expressive means of communication, and as a vital stimulus to personal development.

### **Studio II**

#### **Option I 27.250, 27.251 and Option II 27.252, 27.253**

Individually planned programme as approved by the Dean of the Faculty of Fine Arts, with content related to the student's requirements. For example, drawing and one or more of the following: painting, print-making, photography, sculpture and design. Advanced experimentation in techniques and materials.

Note: Students planning to take Studio III Sculpture must have passed 27.216.

### **Studio III**

#### **Option I 27.350, 27.351 and Option II 27.352, 27.353**

Development of Studio II in selected fields.

Note: Prerequisite for Studio III Sculpture: 27.216. With special permission of the Head of Department 27.216 may be taken as a corequisite.

### **Studio IV**

#### **Option I 27.450, 27.451 and Option II 27.452**

Development of Studio III in selected fields.

## **Studio for MFA**

### **Studio V**

#### **Option I 27.550 and Option II 27.551**

The candidate's programme shall be a practical performance in some aspect of the fine arts. The proposed programme shall be submitted for approval to the Dean of the Faculty of Fine Arts by 31 March.

### **Studio VI**

#### **Option I 27.650**

The work in Studio VI may be in an aspect of the fine arts other than that approved for Studio V. The proposed programme shall be submitted for approval to the Dean of the Faculty of Fine Arts by 31 March.

## **Thesis for MFA**

### **Option II Either**

#### **19.601**

A thesis on a topic in Art History, to be approved by the Head of the Department of Art History. The thesis must be submitted to the Registrar by 1 November or

#### **27.601**

A thesis to embody the results obtained by the candidate of an original investigation or advanced study relative to the candidate's programme in Studio V. The proposed topic shall be submitted for approval to the Dean of the Faculty of Fine Arts by 31 March.

Note:

- \* This paper will not be taught during the current *Calendar* year.
- † This paper may not be taught during the current *Calendar* year.

# Faculty of Medicine and Human Biology

## Contents

|                        |     |  |
|------------------------|-----|--|
| <b>Degree Course</b>   | 383 | <i>School of Medicine</i>                              |
|                        | 385 | Degree of Bachelor of Human Biology                    |
| <b>Regulations</b>     | 386 | Degree of Bachelor of Medicine and Bachelor of Surgery |
|                        | 387 | Degree of Master of Medical Science                    |
|                        | 388 | Degree of Master of Audiology                          |
|                        | 390 | Degree of Master of Health Sciences                    |
|                        | 392 | Degree of Master of Public Health                      |
|                        | 393 | Degree of Doctor of Medicine                           |
| <b>Degree Course</b>   | 394 | Degree of Bachelor of Human Biology                    |
| <b>Prescriptions</b>   | 395 | Degree of Bachelor of Medicine and Bachelor of Surgery |
|                        | 397 | Degree of Master of Medical Science                    |
|                        | 399 | Degree of Master of Audiology                          |
|                        | 399 | Degree of Master of Health Sciences                    |
|                        | 399 | Degree of Master of Public Health                      |
| <b>Diploma Course</b>  | 400 | Diploma in Paediatrics                                 |
| <b>Regulations and</b> | 401 | Diploma in Gynaecology and Obstetrics                  |
| <b>Prescriptions</b>   | 402 | Diploma in Obstetrics                                  |
|                        | 403 | Higher Academic Training in Obstetrics and Gynaecology |
|                        | 403 | Refresher Training for Family Doctors and Specialists  |
|                        | 403 | <i>Postgraduate Medical Committee</i>                  |

## SCHOOL OF MEDICINE

The medical course in the University of Auckland is of six years' duration. The Degree of Bachelor of Human Biology (BHB) is awarded upon completion of the first three years, and the Degree of Bachelor of Medicine and Bachelor of Surgery (MBChB), upon completion of the full course.

### **Bachelor of Human Biology**

The curriculum in Human Biology covers a spectrum of studies from molecular biology to social psychology and the processes of disease. Introductory studies of chemistry, physics and biology lead to specialised studies of the human body and the integration of its responses. During the first year, courses in biology, chemistry and physics provide the language and concepts needed for the understanding of the applications of these sciences in medical biology. Biochemistry, immunobiology and selected aspects of anatomy and physiology are introduced. Opportunities are provided for hospital visits where lectures and case presentations relate the basic and clinical sciences.

The first year course in Community Health will focus on the distribution and determinants of disease in human populations and the strategies available for the prevention of disease and the promotion of health. Particular attention will be given to the influence of cultural and environmental factors on health.

The course in Behavioural Science extends over three years, the first focused on general principles, the second on issues of medical risk and the third on medical treatment. Topics include communication, decision-making, culture, behaviour and health, individual psychology and development, and brain-behaviour relationships.

During the second and third years, the course presents a detailed analysis of human structure and function, of the ways in which body mechanisms are disturbed, and of the ways in which disturbances are corrected. Fundamental biochemical and physiological mechanisms - largely expressed at cellular levels - and their structural bases are considered first, then the principal organ systems. The study of the locomotor and nervous systems, of the complex control of body activity, metabolism and nutrition, of reproduction and growth, and of fundamental aspects of pathology, immunobiology and pharmacology form further major units of the course. Over this period students maintain a continuing study of growth and progress of a normal child.

Admission to the first year of the course is restricted to those students who intend to complete the six year course for entry into the medical profession.

### **Bachelor of Medicine and Bachelor of Surgery**

The clinical triennium follows qualification for the award of the Degree of Bachelor of Human Biology. The Auckland Area Health Board has made available for teaching purposes all hospitals under its control; at present instruction has been arranged at the four major hospitals - Auckland, Middlemore, National Women's and North Shore. The Waikato Hospital Board also provides teaching facilities at Waikato Hospital for students.

Subjects studied include medicine, surgery, obstetrics and gynaecology, paediatrics, pathology, immunobiology, behavioural science, psychiatry, clinical pharmacology, general practice and community health together with their main sub-specialties. During their final year Trainee Interns are expected to undertake some supervised responsibility for the care of patients.

The Clinical Methods course of six weeks' duration introduces the students to the clinical examination of patients particularly physical examination and history taking. This is followed by an introductory series of lectures and symposia preceding the sequence of ward attachments in the next two years. These practical studies in hospital wards and outpatient clinics enable the student to observe and increasingly participate in the care of patients with diverse health problems in the general and special fields of medicine and surgery. During formal instruction emphasis is placed on topic teaching in which a particular disease or health problem is studied in its various aspects - medical, surgical, pathological and social.

During the Clinical Course students spend a proportion of their time in elective studies, that is pursuing in depth, subjects of particular interest to them. They also serve a period in general practice under the direction of family doctors.

### **Research**

Each department in the School of Medicine has a range of active research programmes. These cover areas of basic medical science to clinical medicine. Opportunities exist for students to undertake supervised studies leading to a Master's degree, or to a Doctor of Philosophy. Students interested in research in the School of Medicine are encouraged to consult with the Head of Department of interest, or seek general information concerning financial support or opportunities available from the Sub-Dean. (Research and Graduate Studies).

### **Master of Medical Science (MMedSc)**

This degree is taken after the completion of the BHB degree and can be taken in any of the basic medical science or clinical departments.

### **Master of Audiology**

### **Master of Health Sciences**

### **Master of Public Health**

### **Doctoral Degrees. Doctor of Philosophy (PhD)**

All departments undertake graduate teaching for the research Degree of Doctor of Philosophy (PhD) in accordance with the regulations of the University.

### **Doctor of Medicine (MD)**

This is offered as a non-supervised research Degree by thesis alone and may not be submitted until five years after graduation MBChB. The Degree is usually based on clinical research work which may be undertaken outside

the University. It is normally available to medical graduates of the University of Auckland and, under the Ad Eundem Admission Regulations to graduates of other medical schools who are working as members of the University of Auckland academic staff or who are conducting research in a Department of the Faculty of Medicine and Human Biology.

Candidates do not enrol in the normal fashion but at an appropriate stage in their research seek the recommendation of the Faculty to enrol for the Degree. Faculty's recommendation is based on a preliminary review of the topic, the methods involved in the investigation and the contribution of this work to medical knowledge. Permission to submit the thesis may be obtained after the work is completed or before it is undertaken but there is a five-year upper limitation of time between permission to submit and the actual submission of the thesis.

### Diplomas

Diploma courses are offered in the Postgraduate School of Obstetrics and Gynaecology and by the Department of Paediatrics. All clinical departments are associated with the basic and advanced vocational training for the examination and diplomas offered by the various colleges.

### Materials Fees (See Fees Regulations)

BHB I, II and III      \$50.00

MBChB I and II      \$110.00

For learning material (major texts, tapeslides, re-prints and notes) and computer facilities largely provided in the A.V. Carrell

As above and including provision and laundering of white coats, and name badges.

**Note:** All fees are subject to GST.

## DEGREE COURSE REGULATIONS

### THE DEGREE OF BACHELOR OF HUMAN BIOLOGY BHB

*The personal course of study of every candidate must be approved by the Senate. Approval will normally be granted for courses which are in accordance with the following Regulations: for general provisions affecting their courses of study students are referred to the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General), and the Examination Regulations.*

#### General Provisions

1. Except as provided in the Admission Regulations a candidate for the Degree of Bachelor of Human Biology shall follow a course of study for not fewer than three years.

#### Admission

2. (a). Admission to the course of study in Human Biology shall be at the discretion of the Senate. Application for admission to the course shall be made to the Registrar in writing before 1 October or such other date as the Senate may determine, of the year preceding that in which the applicant proposes to enrol.  
(b). Admission to Part I of the course of study shall be granted or withheld upon a consideration of the past performance of the applicant at school and in public examinations, and upon an interview where this is required.  
(c). In such exceptional circumstances as the Senate may approve or under the Admission Ad Eundem Statum Regulations, admission may be granted to an applicant to Part II and Part III.

#### Course Content

3. The course of study shall consist of three Parts. A candidate shall be required to pass as a whole each Part of the course of study: provided that a candidate, who re-enrols for a Part of the course of study having failed to pass it as a whole at the first attempt, may be allowed to carry out, to the satisfaction of the Heads of Departments concerned, alternative work in lieu of the work in that Part where his previous performance was satisfactory. § For the purpose of assessing the grade of this candidate as a whole for a Part of the course of study the Senate may approve that the satisfactory pass grade in that previous work be carried forward.

Note: §Normally a B- grade or better.

4. Except as provided in Regulation 2 (c) hereof no candidate shall be permitted to enrol in Part II of the course until he has passed Part I, or in Part III until he has passed Part II.
5. A candidate shall carry out to the satisfaction of the Senate such practical written, and tutorial work in each Part of the course of study as may be required.
6. The papers prescribed for examination for the course of study in Human Biology are:

#### Part I

Biology 60.100, 60.101, 60.102  
Physico-Chemistry 60.103, 60.104, 60.105  
Behavioural Science and Community Health 60.108

#### Part II

Anatomy 60.205  
Biochemistry 60.206  
Physiology (Medical) II 60.207  
Behavioural Science II 60.208

#### Part III

Immunobiology 60.300  
General Pathology 60.301  
Neurolocomotor Systems 60.302, 60.303  
Human Reproduction and Development 60.304  
Physiology (Medical) III 60.305, 60.306  
Pharmacology 60.307  
Behavioural Science III 60.308

7. (a). The Senate may in such exceptional cases as it thinks fit approve a personal course of study which does not conform to the foregoing Regulations.  
(b). Every application for approval under this Regulation shall be submitted by the candidate in writing to the Registrar.
8. These Regulations shall come into force on 1 January, 1989.

## THE DEGREE OF BACHELOR OF MEDICINE AND BACHELOR OF SURGERY MBChB

*The personal course of study of every candidate must be approved by the Senate. Approval will normally be granted for courses which are in accordance with the following Regulations: for general provisions affecting their courses of study students are referred to the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General), and the Examination Regulations.*

### General Provisions

1. Subject to the Admission Regulations, a candidate for the Degree of Bachelor of Medicine and Bachelor of Surgery shall before enrolment have qualified for admission to the Degree of Bachelor of Human Biology not more than one academic year previously, except where the Senate otherwise permits.
2. Each candidate shall follow a course of study of not fewer than three years.
3. (a). No candidate shall be permitted to proceed to Part II until work prescribed for Part I has been completed to the satisfaction of the Senate.  
(b). No candidate shall be permitted to proceed to Part III until the work prescribed for Parts I and II has been completed to the satisfaction of the Senate.
4. Each candidate shall follow the course of study for Part I, Part II and Part III continuously. Interrupted study may be resumed only with the approval of Senate and on such conditions as the Senate may determine.
5. On the recommendation of the Academic Sub-Dean, and at the discretion of the Senate, a candidate who fails any year of the courses may be declined permission to re-enrol in the course as a whole.

### Practical Work

6. A candidate shall carry out to the satisfaction of the Senate, such practical and clinical work in each year of the course as may be required.

### Course Content

7. The course shall consist of three Parts:

#### Part I (Year IV of the medical course)

Year Code: 90.100

Lectures, laboratory and practical work, and clinical instruction in the diagnosis and management of patients in the hospital and in the community and the provision of health services in the population at large. Disciplines taught will include Medicine, Surgery, Paediatrics, Obstetrics and Gynaecology, Psychiatry, Behavioural Science, Community Health, General Practice, Pathology, Microbiology, Immunology and Haematology and Clinical Pharmacology.

At the end of Part I (Year IV) there will be a written examination consisting of papers of Behavioural Science, in Community Medicine and in General Medicine and Surgical topics and an interdisciplinary clinical and oral examination.

#### Part II (Year V of the medical course)

Year Code: 90.200

Lectures, laboratory and practical work, and further clinical instruction in all disciplines building on the work of Part I (Year IV), with increasing emphasis on special areas in Medicine and Surgery.

At the conclusion of Part II (Year V) there will be a major examination, consisting of (a) written papers in Pathology, Clinical Pharmacology, Obstetrics and Gynaecology, Paediatrics, General Practice, Behavioural Science and two papers in General Medical and Surgical topics; (b) an inter-disciplinary clinical/oral examination in Medicine Surgery and Pathology; (c) and inter-disciplinary objective structured clinical examination (OSCE) in practical topics.

#### Part III (Year VI of the medical course)

Year Code: 90.300

Clinical work as a trainee intern and with responsibility under supervision for patients during a period of nine months together with a further three-month elective period.

8. (a). A candidate shall be deemed to pass Parts I and II of the course when the Senate so resolves after consideration of a report from the Faculty of Medicine and Human Biology as to the candidate's performance and results in his work for those Parts.  
(b). A candidate shall be deemed to have completed Part III successfully on obtaining passing assessments from each of the periods of that academic year.
9. These Regulations shall come into force on 1 January, 1987.

## THE DEGREE OF MASTER OF MEDICAL SCIENCE MMedSc

*The personal course of study of every candidate must be approved by the Senate. Approval will normally be granted for Courses which are in accordance with the following Regulations: for general provisions affecting their courses of study students are referred to the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General), and the Examination Regulations.*

**Note:** Any student wishing to enrol for this Degree must consult and obtain the approval of the Dean of Medicine and Human Biology before attending to enrol. This consultation should normally take place prior to 1 December preceding the year of intended enrolment.

### Prerequisites

1. Subject to the Admission Regulations, a candidate for the Degree of Master of Medical Science shall before enrolment for the Degree have been admitted or qualified for admission to the degree of Bachelor of Human Biology at the University of Auckland.

### General Provisions

2. (a) A candidate for the degree of Master of Medical Science shall pursue a course of study of not less than twelve months.  
(b) (i) pass in each of two papers, prescribed in regulation 3 of these regulations, and  
(ii) pass in respect of a thesis (which shall count as four papers) under the conditions prescribed in regulation 4 of these regulations.
3. The following conditions shall apply to the choice of papers:  
(a) Every candidate will choose papers in consultation with the Head of the Department in which the student is enrolled for his or her thesis. The papers are those listed in clause (b) of this regulation. No paper that has been taken for another degree shall be taken for this degree.  
(b) The papers of examination for the degree are:  
47.400 Reproductive Endocrinology  
47.401 The Physiology of Pregnancy  
65.401 Neuroanatomy  
65.405 Special Topic in Anatomy  
65.406 Special Topic in Anatomy  
66.401 Biochemistry  
66.402 Biochemistry  
66.403 Biochemistry  
67.415 Advances in Physiology  
67.416 Research Topics in Physiology  
68.403 Cell and Tissue Injury  
68.404 Cancer Biology  
68.405 Special Topic in Pathology  
69.400 General Practice  
69.401 General Practice  
†91.400 Epidemiology including Biostatistics  
†91.401 Social Sciences in Public Health  
\*91.409 Special Topic in Community Health  
92.400 Cardiovascular Medicine  
92.401 Endocrine Medicine  
\*92.402 Gastroenterology and Nutrition  
\*92.403 Gerontology  
93.400 Special Topic in Paediatrics  
93.401 Special Topic in Paediatrics  
93.405 Biology of Mammalian Growth  
93.406 Perinatal Physiology  
94.400 Psychiatry in Medicine  
94.401 Neurobiology of Psychiatric Disorders  
94.403 Health Psychology  
†94.404 Health Promotion for Individuals, Groups and Communities  
†94.405 Applied Issues in Philosophical Medical Ethics  
96.400 Special Topic in Pharmacology  
96.401 Toxicology  
96.402 Special Topic in Clinical Pharmacology  
96.404 Drug Disposition and Action  
96.406 Cardiovascular Pharmacology  
98.402 Development of Immunity  
98.403 Special Topic in Immunobiology.

**Note:** \*This paper will not be taught during the current *Calendar* year.

†This paper may not be taught during the current *Calendar* year. Not all of the remaining papers may be available.

- (c) Subject to the recommendation of the Heads of Departments concerned and the approval of the Senate, one paper may be chosen from those offered at Masters' level within the Faculty of Medicine and Human Biology or from those offered at Masters' level in any other Faculty.

**Thesis**

4. The following conditions shall apply to the thesis for the Master of Medical Science (89.651):
  - (a) The Senate shall appoint a supervisor for the candidate upon the recommendation of the Head of Department.
  - (b) The thesis shall embody the results obtained by the candidate in an investigation in some branch of the subject.
  - (c) In the case of a thesis recording laboratory work, that work shall be carried out within the University provided that the Senate, in special cases, may permit a candidate to carry out the work in an approved institute outside the University for such period or periods as may be necessary.
  - (d) The candidate shall submit his thesis to the Registrar by the date prescribed in regulation 6.

**Note:** An abstract is to be submitted with each copy of the thesis; see Examinations Regulations 15 and 16.

**Honours**

5. (a) There shall be two classes of Honours; First Class Honours and Second Class Honours. Second Class Honours shall be awarded in two divisions, First Division and Second Division.
- (b) Honours shall be awarded if a candidate completes the requirements of this degree within the time limit specified in Regulation 6 and obtains a sufficient standard in the papers and thesis or provided that a candidate who qualifies for an aegrotat or compassionate pass may retain eligibility for Honours by applying:
  - (i) for an aegrotat or compassionate pass in two papers, or
  - (ii) to resit in the year following the papers affected, or
  - (iii) for a pass under (i) and to resit the remaining paper affected under (ii).

**Time Limits**

6. (a) The requirements for this Degree shall be completed by the end of the second academic year of full time enrolment.
- (b) Notwithstanding the requirements of Regulation 6(a), a candidate with other demanding responsibilities may fulfill the requirements for this degree within 36 months of first enrolment for the degree, with eligibility for Honours, this individual course of study being determined at or before first enrolment by the Senate on the recommendation of the Head of Department.

**Exceptions**

7. The Senate, upon the recommendation of the Head or Heads of Departments concerned, may, in such exceptional circumstances as it thinks fit, approve a personal course of study which does not conform to the foregoing Regulations.
8. These regulations come into force on 1 January 1991.

---

## THE DEGREE OF MASTER OF AUDIOLOGY MAud

*The personal course of study of every candidate must be approved by the Senate. Approval will normally be granted for courses which are in accordance with the following Regulations: for general provisions affecting their courses of study students are referred to the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General), and the Examination Regulations.*

**Note:** Any student wishing to enrol for this Degree must consult the Dean of Medicine and Human Biology and obtain his approval before attending to enrol. The consultation should normally take place prior to 1 December preceding the year of intended enrolment.

**Prerequisites**

1. (a) Subject to the Admission Regulations, a candidate for the Degree of Master of Audiology, before enrolment for the Degree:
  - (i) Shall have been admitted (or have qualified for admission to) any of the following qualifying degrees:- Bachelor of Science (Honours); or Bachelor of Science; or Bachelor of Arts; or Bachelor of Human Biology; or shall have attained any other qualification approved by the Senate as equivalent to a qualifying degree; and
  - (ii) shall (subject to Regulation 2) have fulfilled the further prerequisites in the Schedule to this Regulation.
- (b) For the purposes of these Regulations, candidates for this Degree are classified according to their qualifying degree as:
  - 'BSc(Hons) candidates for this Degree'
  - 'BSc candidates for this Degree'
  - 'BA candidates for this Degree'
  - 'BHB candidates for this Degree'

**Schedule**

The further prerequisites are (subject to Regulation 2):

- (a). For BSc, BSc(Hons) or BA candidates for this Degree:
  - a pass with an average grade of C+ or better at Stage III in 12 credits of Physiology, together with at least 4 credits at Stage III level from Psychology;
  - OR a pass with an average grade of C+ or better at Stage III in 12 credits of Psychology, together with at least 6 credits at Stage III level from Physiology;
  - AND passes in the papers listed below:



|            |                                  |
|------------|----------------------------------|
| Chemistry  | 08.111 or 08.121                 |
| Biology    | 39.101 or Zoology 38.102         |
| Psychology | 32.108                           |
| Psychology | 32.109                           |
| Physics    | 31.141 or 31.151 or Music 28.113 |
| Physiology | 67.201                           |
| Psychology | 32.220                           |
| Psychology | 32.230                           |
| Psychology | 32.240                           |
| Physiology | 67.302                           |
| Physiology | 67.303                           |
| Psychology | 32.303                           |
| Psychology | 32.307                           |

(b). For BHB candidates for this Degree:

a pass with an average grade of C+ or better in 60.305/60.306 Physiology (Medical) III.

#### Variation of or Exemption from Prerequisites

2. In any special case recommended by the Dean of Medicine and Human Biology, the Senate may at its discretion:-
  - (a). vary in any way; or
  - (b). exempt the candidate wholly or partly from the appropriate prerequisites in the Schedule to Regulation 1; and may accept a lower average grade than C+ in the prerequisites in paragraphs (a) and (b) of the Schedule to Regulation 1.

#### General Provisions

3. A candidate for the Degree of Master of Audiology shall:
  - (a). pursue a course of study of not less than two academic years; and
  - (b). undertake the course of study presented under Regulation 4 (subject to Regulation 5); and
  - (c). pass *separately* the clinical or practical components of Audiology 751.401, 751.402, 751.403, 751.411, 751.412; and
  - (d). pass as a whole the examinations as set out in Regulation 4.
4. Every candidate for the Degree shall:
  - (a). in the *first* year of study (subject to Regulation 5) pass as a whole in respect of the following subjects:
 

|           |         |                            |
|-----------|---------|----------------------------|
| Audiology | 751.401 | Hearing Science            |
| Audiology | 751.402 | Basic Diagnostic Audiology |
| Audiology | 751.403 | Basic Clinical Audiology;  |

 and *one* of the following papers as prescribed for the Degree of Master of Science:
 

|            |        |                                     |
|------------|--------|-------------------------------------|
| Physiology | 67.401 | Mechanisms of Physiological Control |
| Physiology | 67.403 | Neurophysiology                     |
| Physiology | 67.405 | Methods in Physiology               |
| Psychology | 32.403 | Applied Analysis of Human Behaviour |
| Psychology | 32.404 | Sensation and Perception            |
| Psychology | 32.406 | Physiological Psychology            |
| Psychology | 32.422 | Learning Disabilities               |
| Psychology | 32.423 | Mind and Computation                |
| Psychology | 32.424 | Mind and Brain                      |
  - (b). in the *second* year of study pass in each of two papers and pass in respect of a thesis as follows:
 

|           |         |   |
|-----------|---------|---|
| Audiology | 751.411 | Advanced Diagnostic Audiology             |
| Audiology | 751.412 | Advanced Clinical Audiology               |
| Audiology | 751.601 | Thesis (which shall count as two papers). |

#### Variation of Course of Study

5. With the approval of the Dean of Medicine and Human Biology, the Dean of Science and the Head of the Department involved, a candidate may be permitted to enrol in an alternative paper prescribed for the Degree of Master of Science instead of one of the Science papers prescribed in Regulation 4 (a) above.
6. A candidate shall not enrol for a paper which he or she has already passed.

#### Thesis

7. The following conditions shall apply to the thesis for Audiology 751.601
  - (a). The Senate shall appoint a supervisor for the candidate upon the recommendation of the Dean of Medicine and Human Biology.
  - (b). The thesis shall embody the results obtained by the candidate in an investigation in some branch of the subject.
  - (c). In the case of a thesis recording laboratory work, that work shall be carried out within the University; but the Senate may permit a candidate to carry out the work in an approved institute outside the University for such period or periods as may be necessary.
  - (d). A candidate shall present the thesis in the same academic year as that in which he or she first enrolls for Audiology 751.601 or with the consent of the Dean of Medicine and Human Biology and subject to Regulation 9 of this Regulation, in any subsequent academic year.

- (e). The candidate shall submit the thesis to the Registrar by 1 November of the academic year in which it is presented or at such later date as may be agreed to by the Dean of Medicine and Human Biology.

**Note:** An abstract is to be submitted with each copy of the thesis; see Examination Regulations 15.

### Honours

8. (a). There shall be two classes of Honours; First Class Honours and Second Class Honours. Second Class Honours shall be awarded in two divisions, First Division and Second Division.
- (b). Candidates who have completed the full requirements of this Degree are eligible for the award of Honours.
- (c). Honours shall be awarded if a candidate obtains a sufficient standard in the papers and thesis; but (subject to Regulation 9) a candidate who qualifies for an aegrotat or compassionate pass may retain eligibility for Honours by applying:
  - (i) for an aegrotat or compassionate pass in one paper, or
  - (ii) to resit all the papers affected, or
  - (iii) for a pass or passes under (i) and to resit the remaining papers affected under (ii).

**Note:** In order to be eligible for Honours the candidate must complete all requirements of the Degree within the time limit specified in Regulation 9.

### Time Limits

9. (a). The requirements for this Degree shall be completed by the end of the second academic year of enrolment.
- (b). In a special case the Senate may, on the recommendation of the Dean of Medicine and Human Biology, grant the candidate:
  - (i) a time extension of three months, with continued eligibility for Honours;
  - (ii) a further time extension of three months, the candidate being no longer eligible for Honours.
- (c). In exceptional circumstances the Senate may, on such written or other evidence as it requires, at its discretion grant a reasonable extension of time to a candidate for medical or compassionate or other compelling reasons. The extension may be granted:
  - (i) whether or not there has been any extension under paragraph (b) of this Regulation; and
  - (ii) with or without continued eligibility for Honours.
10. The Senate, upon the recommendation of the Head or Heads of Departments concerned, may, in such exceptional circumstances as it thinks fit, approve a personal course of study which does not conform to the foregoing Regulations or to the Schedule below.
11. These Regulations shall come into force on 1 January 1990.

## THE DEGREE OF MASTER OF HEALTH SCIENCES MHSc

*The personal Course of study of every candidate must be approved by the Senate. Approval will normally be granted for Courses which are in accordance with the following regulations: for general provisions affecting their courses of study students are referred to the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General), and the Examination Regulations.*

*Note: Any student wishing to enrol for this degree must consult and obtain the approval of the Dean of Medicine and Human Biology before attending to enrol. This consultation should normally take place prior to 1 December preceding the year of intended enrolment.*

### Prerequisites

1. Subject to the Admission Regulations, a candidate for the Degree of Master of Health Sciences shall before enrolment for the Degree:
  - (a) have to the satisfaction of the Senate been admitted or qualified for admission to a Bachelor's or Master's degree which qualifies the candidate to practise in one of the following health professions: Medicine, Dentistry, Physiotherapy, Nursing, Human Nutrition, Optometry, Audiology, Veterinary Surgery, Medical Social Work, Public Health, Biostatistics, Epidemiology;
  - or,
  - (b) have been admitted or qualified for admission to a Bachelor's degree and have not less than two years of relevant employment experience approved by the Senate.

**Note:** The following Health Professions are recognised: Medicine, Dentistry, Physiotherapy, Nursing, Human Nutrition, Optometry, Audiology, Veterinary Surgery, Medical Social Work, Public Health, Biostatistics and Epidemiology.

### General Provisions

2. (a) A candidate for the Degree of Master of Health Sciences shall pursue a coherent course of study of not less than twelve months and:
  - (b) i) pass in each of three papers, prescribed in regulation 3 of these regulations and
  - ii) pass in respect of a thesis under the conditions in regulation 4 of these regulations (which shall count as equivalent to three papers),
  - or
  - (c) i) pass in each of five papers, prescribed in regulation 3 of these regulations and
  - ii) pass in respect of a dissertation under the conditions in regulation 5 of these regulations (which shall count as one paper).

**Papers**

3. The following conditions shall apply to the choice of papers:
- Every candidate will choose papers in consultation with the Head(s) of his or her Department(s) from those listed in clause (b) of this regulation and approved by the Dean of the Faculty of Medicine and Human Biology; provided that no paper that has been taken for another degree shall be taken for this degree.
  - The papers of examination for the degree are:
    - 47.400 Reproductive Endocrinology
    - 47.401 The Physiology of Pregnancy
    - 65.401 Neuroanatomy
    - 65.405 Special Topic in Anatomy
    - 66.401 Biochemistry
    - 66.402 Biochemistry
    - 66.403 Biochemistry
    - 67.401 Mechanisms of Physiological Control
    - 67.403 Neurophysiology
    - 67.405 Methods in Physiology
    - 68.403 Cell and Tissue Injury
    - 68.404 Cancer Biology
    - 68.405 Special Topic in Pathology
    - †91.400 Epidemiology including Biostatistics
    - †91.401 Social Sciences in Public Health
    - \*91.409 Special Topic in Community Health
    - 92.400 Cardiovascular Medicine
    - 92.401 Endocrine Medicine
    - \*92.402 Gastroenterology and Nutrition
    - \*92.403 Gerontology
    - 93.405 Biology of Mammalian Growth
    - 93.406 Perinatal Physiology
    - 94.403 Health Psychology
    - †94.404 Health Promotion for Individuals, Groups and Communities
    - 96.401 Toxicology
    - 96.404 Drug Disposition and Action
    - 96.406 Cardiovascular Pharmacology
    - 98.402 Development of Immunity
    - 98.403 Special Topic in Immunobiology

Subject to the recommendation of the Heads of Departments concerned and the approval of the Senate, up to two papers may be chosen from those offered at Master's level within the Faculty of Medicine and Human Biology, or from those offered in any other Faculty at Masters Degree level.

Note: \*This paper will not be taught during the current *Calendar* year. †This paper may not be taught during the current *Calendar* year. Not all of the remaining papers may be available.

**Thesis**

4. The following conditions shall apply to the thesis for Master of Health Sciences (788.601):
- The Senate shall appoint a supervisor for the candidate upon the recommendation of the Head of Department.
  - The thesis shall embody the results obtained by the candidate in an investigation in some branch of the subject.
  - In the case of a thesis recording laboratory work, that work shall be carried out within the University; but the Senate may permit a candidate to carry out the work in an approved institute outside the University for such period or periods as may be necessary.
  - The candidate shall submit the thesis to the Registrar by the date prescribed in regulation 7.

Note: An abstract is to be submitted with each copy of the thesis. See Examination Regulation 15.

**Dissertation**

5. The following shall apply to the dissertation for Master of Health Science (788.604).
- The Head of Department shall appoint a supervisor for the candidate.
  - The dissertation shall embody the results of research undertaken under the direct supervision of the supervisor.
  - The candidate shall submit the dissertation to the Registrar by the date prescribed in Regulation 7.

Note: An abstract is to be submitted with the dissertation. See Examination Regulation 15.

**Honours**

6. (a) There shall be two classes of Honours; First Class Honours and Second Class Honours. Second Class Honours shall be awarded in two divisions, First Division and Second Division.
- (b) Honours shall be awarded if a candidate completes the requirement of this degree within the time limit specified in Regulation 7 and obtains a sufficient standard in the papers and thesis/dissertation or provided that a candidate who qualifies for an aegrotat or compassionate pass may retain eligibility for Honours by applying:

- i) for an aegrotat or compassionate pass in up to two papers, or
- ii) to resit in the following year all the papers affected, or
- iii) for a pass or passes under (i) and to resit the remaining papers affected under (ii).

**Time Limits**

7. (a) The requirements for this Degree shall be completed by the end of the second academic year of full time enrolment, or by the end of the fifth year of part-time enrolment.
- (b) Candidates will not be eligible for Honours if the course extends beyond three years whether the enrolment is full time or part-time provided that in an exceptional case the Senate may, on the recommendation of the Head of Department, grant the candidate:
  - (i) a time extension of three months, with continued eligibility for Honours.
  - (ii) a further time extension of nine months, the candidate being no longer eligible for Honours.

**Exceptions**

8. The Senate, upon the recommendation of the Head or Heads of Departments concerned, may, in such exceptional circumstances as it thinks fit, approve a personal course of study which does not conform to the foregoing Regulations.
9. These regulations come into force on 1 January 1991.

---

## THE DEGREE OF MASTER OF PUBLIC HEALTH MPH

*The personal Course of study of every candidate must be approved by the Senate. Approval will normally be granted for Courses which are in accordance with the following regulations: for general provisions affecting their courses of study students are referred to the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General), and Examination Regulations.*

*Note:* Any student wishing to enrol for this degree must consult the Dean of Medicine and Human Biology and obtain his approval before attending to enrol. This consultation should normally take place prior to 1 October preceding the year of intended enrolment.

**Prerequisites**

1. Subject to the Admission Regulations, a candidate for the Degree of Master of Public Health shall before enrolment for the degree:
  - (a) have been admitted to or qualified for admission to a degree approved by the Senate, or
  - (b) have completed the requirements of a postgraduate public health diploma or degree or equivalent as approved by the Senate.

**General Provisions**

2. A candidate for the degree of Master of Public Health shall:
  - (a) pursue a course of study of not less than two academic years full-time or the equivalent part-time.
  - (b) complete both parts of the degree, each of which must be passed as a whole, as follows:
    - i) To complete Part I the candidate shall pass in four of the papers listed in Regulation 3 of these Regulations and shall not be permitted to advance to Part II unless a pass has been gained in each of the selected papers, including the compulsory papers;
    - ii) To complete Part II the candidate shall pass either in respect of a thesis (which shall count as four papers) or pass in each of two advanced papers together with a dissertation (which shall count as two papers).

**Papers**

3. The following conditions shall apply to the choice of papers:
  - (a) Every candidate will choose papers in consultation with the Head of the Department of Community Health from those listed in clause (b) of this Regulation; provided that no paper that has been taken for another degree shall be taken for this degree.
  - (b) The papers of examination for the degree are:
    - ti) **Part I**
      - †91.400 Epidemiology including Biostatistics
      - †91.401 Social Sciences in Public Health
 and two papers from:
      - \*91.402 Environmental Health and Health Protection
      - \*91.403 Health Economics
      - \*91.404 Health Promotion and Health Education
      - \*91.405 Health Services Management
      - \*91.406 Special Topic in Public Health
    - ii) **Part II**
      - 91.407 Advanced Epidemiology
      - 91.408 Sociology of Health and Health Care
  - (c) A candidate admitted to the course of study under Regulation 1(b) may be admitted directly to Part II.
  - (d) Subject to approval by the Heads of Department concerned, one paper may be chosen for Part II from those offered at Master's level within the Faculty of Medicine and Human Biology or in any other Faculty, provided:
    - i) that prerequisites and timetabling requirements can be met, and
    - ii) that the syllabus is not the same or substantially overlapping with any other paper taken for this degree.

**Thesis**

4. The following conditions shall apply to the thesis for Master of Public Health (91.651):
- (a) The Senate shall appoint a supervisor for the candidate upon the recommendation of the Head of Department.
  - (b) The thesis shall embody the results obtained by the candidate in an investigation in some branch of public health.
  - (c) A candidate shall present the thesis to the Registrar by the date prescribed in Regulation 7.

Note: An abstract is to be submitted with each copy of the thesis; see Examination Regulation 15.

**Dissertation**

5. The following shall apply to the dissertation for Master of Public Health (91.654)
- (a) The head of Department shall appoint a supervisor for the candidate.
  - (b) The dissertation shall embody the results of research undertaken under the direct supervision of the supervisor.
  - (c) The candidate shall submit the dissertation to the Registrar by the date prescribed in Regulation 7.

**Honours**

6. (a) There shall be two classes of Honours; First Class Honours and Second Class Honours. Second Class Honours shall be awarded in two divisions, First Division and Second Division.
- (b) Honours shall be awarded if a candidate completes the requirements of this degree within the limit specified under Regulation 7 and obtains a sufficient standard in the papers and dissertation or thesis; or provided that a candidate who qualifies for an aegrotat or compassionate pass may retain eligibility for Honours by applying:
- i) for an aegrotat or compassionate pass in two papers, or
  - ii) to resit all the papers affected, or
  - iii) for a pass or passes under (i) and to resit the remaining papers affected under (ii).

**Time Limits**

7. (a) The requirements for this degree shall be completed by the end of the second academic year of full-time enrolment, or by the end of the fifth year of part-time enrolment.
- (b) Candidates will not be eligible for Honours if the course extends beyond three years whether the enrolment is full-time or part-time provided that in an exceptional case the Senate may, on the recommendation of the Head of Department, grant the candidate:
- i) a time extension of three months, with continued eligibility for Honours.
  - ii) a further time extension of nine months, the candidate being no longer eligible for Honours.

**8. Exceptions**

The Senate, upon the recommendation of the Head or Heads of Department concerned, may, in such exceptional circumstances as it thinks fit, approve a personal course of study which does not conform to the foregoing Regulations.

9. These regulations come into force on 1 January 1991.

Note: † Part 1 may not be offered for 1991. \* These papers will not be taught in 1991.

Papers other than compulsory papers will not necessarily be offered every year.

---

## THE DEGREE OF DOCTOR OF MEDICINE MD

*The personal course of study of every candidate must be approved by the Senate. Approval will normally be granted for courses which are in accordance with the following Regulations.*

**General Provisions**

1. Except as provided in the Admission Regulations, a candidate for the Degree of Doctor of Medicine shall hold the Degree of Bachelor of Medicine and Bachelor of Surgery at the University of Auckland.
- Note: Except in special cases, admission ad eundem statum is granted only to medical graduates of other Universities who are members of the academic staff of the University of Auckland, or who are conducting research in a Department of the Faculty of Medicine and Human Biology.
2. A candidate shall be required to present a thesis (90.701) in any branch of medicine or medical science. The thesis shall be specifically written for the purposes and shall embody a critical account of original studies carried out by the candidate which may include previously published work.
3. No candidate shall submit a thesis for this Degree until at least five years after graduation to the Degree of Bachelor of Medicine and Bachelor of Surgery.

**Application to be Examined**

4. A candidate shall make application in writing to be examined. The application shall be lodged with the Registrar. It shall state the title of the thesis to be examined and be accompanied by an outline of the proposed or actual scope of the work and the methods involved.
5. As soon as reasonable possible, the Faculty of Medicine and Human Biology shall examine the application and shall make its recommendation thereon to the Senate. The Senate shall then determine whether or not the application and the title and outline of the thesis should be approved.

**Submission of the Thesis**

6. The candidate shall (subject to Regulation 3) be required to submit a thesis by lodging three copies of it with the Registrar within five years of the date on which the Senate approves and title and outline of the thesis (or within such further time as the Senate may permit).

7. The thesis shall be accompanied by a Statutory Declaration which shall:
  - (i) state the extent to which the thesis is based on the candidate's own work and identify as clearly as possible any parts which are not so based;
  - (ii) state what portion (if any) of the thesis submitted has been previously presented for a degree or diploma; and
  - (iii) declare that the thesis in substantially its present form has not been previously accepted for the award of a degree or diploma in this or any other University and is not being concurrently submitted for a degree or diploma in any other University.

#### **Examination of the Thesis**

8. On receipt of the thesis, the Senate, on recommendation of the Faculty of Medicine and Human Biology, shall appoint two External Examiners (of whom at least one is resident outside New Zealand) and one Examiner who is a member of the teaching staff of the University of Auckland.
9. The duties of each Examiner shall be:
  - (i) to report independently on the quality of the thesis and its value as a significant contribution to learning, and
  - (ii) to recommend whether or not the degree should be awarded. Where the recommendation is that the Degree should not be awarded the Examiner may recommend that the candidate be permitted to resubmit the thesis at a later date.
10. The candidate may be required to take an oral or a written examination, or both, in the field of knowledge in which the thesis lies.
11. The reports of the Examiners shall be placed before the Senate which shall determine whether or not the Degree should be awarded.

---

## **DEGREE COURSE PRESCRIPTIONS**

---

### **PRESCRIPTIONS FOR BHB**

#### **Course of Study in Human Biology -**

##### **Part I**

Departments of Anatomy, Biochemistry, Molecular Medicine, Chemistry, Immunobiology, Physics, Physiology, Psychiatry and Behavioural Science, Community Health.

##### **Biology for Medicine**

(Three papers and practical work)

**60.100, 60.101, 60.102**

Microbiology, molecular biology and bacterial genetics, human genetics; invertebrates and parasitology; introductory physiology; cells and histology; vertebrates; embryology; palaeoanthropology, evolution; current issues in biology.

##### **Physico-Chemistry**

(Three papers and practical work)

**60.103, 60.104, 60.105**

A study of the structure and properties of matter covering the following areas:

*Organic Chemistry* (nomenclature, structure, isomerism, functional group reactivity, polymers, lipids, carbohydrates, amino acids, nucleic acids).

*Biochemistry* (proteins, enzymes, polysaccharides, intermediary metabolism).

*Analytical and Physical Chemistry* (spectrophotometry, spectrometry, chromatography, radio-chemistry, chemical energetics, solution chemistry, reaction kinetics).

*Physics* (mechanics, thermodynamics, gases, fluids, surfaces, solids, electromagnetism, oscillations and waves, light and sound, optics, modern physics).

*Computing* (computers in the medical environment, microcomputer operation, analysis of medical records, computer networks and communications).

### **Behavioural Science and Community Health**

(One paper and course work)

**60.108**

Behavioural Science is concerned with the scientific study of human behaviour related to health and medicine, with particular emphasis on the individual and group. In year 1, the aim is to introduce basic psychological and behavioural principles as a foundation for the rest of the course.

#### **Course of Study in Human Biology - Part II**

Departments of Anatomy, Biochemistry, Physiology, Psychiatry and Behavioural Science.

##### **Anatomy**

(One paper and course work)

**60.205**

The study of the tissue organisation, microscopic and gross anatomy of the trunk and its organ systems, and the biology of the blood and immune system.

##### **Biochemistry**

(Two papers and course work)

**60.206**

Extension of subject-matter taught in Part I and the Biochemistry of major topics with particular reference to those relevant to Medicine.

##### **Physiology (Medical) II**

(Two papers and course work)

**60.207**

The study of circulatory, respiratory, alimentary and renal function and associated topics.

##### **Behavioural Science II**

(One paper and practical work)

**60.208**

The focus is on individuals and groups at risk for illness, with the main topics being human development across the lifespan, communication skills and health psychology. There is also an introduction to philosophical medical ethics.

## Course of Study in Human Biology - Part III

Departments of Anatomy, Biochemistry, Molecular Medicine, Pathology, Physiology, Psychiatry and Behavioural Science, Pharmacology and Clinical Pharmacology.

### Immunobiology

(One paper and practical work)

**60.300**

An introduction to the disciplines of Microbiology, Immunobiology and Haematology and their clinical importance.

### General Pathology

(One paper and course work)

**60.301**

An introduction to the mechanisms of disease.

### Neurolocomotor System

(Two papers and practical work)

**60.302, 60.303**

A study of the limbs, back, head and neck and of the nervous system including the special senses.

### Human Reproduction and Development

(One paper and practical work)

**60.304**

A study of the biology of human reproduction and sexuality; aspects of human genetics, foetal development, growth and ageing; biochemical aspects of endocrinology and nutrition.

### Physiology (Medical) III

(Two papers and course work)

**60.305, 60.306**

Studies of the integrated physiology of human organs systems including their control and the corrections of disturbances.

### Pharmacology

(One paper and course work)

**60.307**

This course covers the absorption, distribution and fate of administered drugs; drug toxicity and abuse; the evaluation of new drugs; and the mechanisms of action of drugs that affect the various homeostatic control systems of the body.

### Behavioural Science III

(One paper and practical work)

**60.308**

The focus is on the patient in care. Major topics are the health psychology, interviewing and counselling, human sexuality, ethics, and aspects of neuropsychology and life span development.

## PREScriptions FOR MBChB

The duration of the course will be three years.

### MBChB (Part I)

#### (Fourth year of the Medical Course)

##### Clinical Methods

An introduction to clinical medicine is provided during the first section of the first term. Methods of history taking and physical examination are demonstrated and practised by students. Students are also introduced to the principles underlying the

application of laboratory techniques and organ imaging to solving of patients' problems. The disciplines of behavioural science, medicine, surgery, paediatrics, psychiatry, obstetrics and gynaecology, pathology and radiology (organ imaging) contribute to the course. Lectures, symposia, case demonstrations, tutorial teaching, and bedside instruction, all play a part in this section of the course.

### Ward Attachments

During the first and second year of the course, there are eight ward attachments, each of which is of four weeks' duration. These ward attachments are not combined with whole class teaching, so that each ward experience is uninterrupted. The first four of these ward attachments take place in the first year. During the two years each student rotates through Paediatrics, Obstetrics & Gynaecology, and Psychiatry once each, through Surgery and Medicine twice each and once through a four-week period of Special Clinical Teaching which includes Geriatrics, Family Medicine, Dermatology, Ophthalmology and Radiology.

### Campus Teaching

Between ward attachments there are periods of Campus Teaching. During this time the Community Health Programme in Occupational and Environmental Health, Epidemiology and Provision of Health Care is presented. Topic teaching covering Systems of Medicine and principles of Obstetrics & Gynaecology, of Paediatrics and of Geriatrics appropriate to subsequent ward attachments is developed. Subjects appropriate to the topic teaching are covered in Pathology and Clinical Pharmacology programmes.

At the conclusion of the year there is a composite examination consisting of two written papers, and for nominated students only, a clinical/oral (viva) examination.

### MBChB (Part II)

#### (Fifth year of the Medical Course)

##### Ward Attachments

In four ward attachments students complete the series described in Part I.

##### Campus Teaching

The combined topic teaching in the systems of medicine is completed. A number of symposia on topics not included in the Systems of Medicine are covered. These include Medico-legal aspects of practice, a short course in Ethics, management of head injuries, management of patients with malignant disease, alcoholism, aspects of rehabilitation medicine and topics in Behavioural Science.

Community Health projects, small group teaching in Radiology and half class studies in General Practice take place in the last two terms. At the conclusion of the year, there is a composite examination consisting of six written papers, a clinical/oral and an interdisciplinary objective structured clinical examination.

### MBChB (Part III)

#### (Sixth year of the Medical Course)

This is a trainee intern year of 52 weeks divided into four quarters of 12 weeks each and 4 weeks' holiday.

One of these quarters is an 'Elective' period when the student may take optional training in special disciplines of medicine. A list of approved electives is provided from which to choose or students may generate new protocols.

The remaining 36 weeks are spent participating, under supervision, in the responsibility for the care of sick people in hospital and in the home.

Assessment, including clinical and oral examinations where appropriate, of the student's progress will be made at the end of each assignment.

### **Community Health**

The Community Medicine Course covers selected topics in preventive medicine, health education, epidemiology and occupational health. The object is to emphasise the importance of prevention, and to give the student an understanding of the health service and how the various arms of the service, both hospital and community based, interact with the population. In Part II students undertake an investigation of some aspects of community medicine which entails practical experience in dealing with health problems.

### **General Practice**

There are a series of seminars and visits concerning Primary Health Care and General Practice.

In the Trainee Intern Year the students are attached to an approved teaching practice for four or six weeks, during which time they see patients and discuss their management with the general practitioner, attend house visits and take part in a weekly seminar conducted by a member of the Department of General Practice.

### **Gynaecology and Obstetrics**

Gynaecology and Obstetrics will deal with the physiology, endocrinology and pathology of human reproduction and their application to the clinical practice of gynaecological and obstetric medicine. The teaching will emphasise the incorporation of the principles of this subject into total medical practice. The theoretical teaching will be included in whole class Topic Teaching during the first and second years of the course. Practical patient management will be taught during a four-week ward attachment. During the third (Trainee Intern) year, there will be a six-week attachment at National Women's Hospital, Middlemore Hospital, Waikato Hospital, or other selected base hospital. Within this period is a week of attachment to Neonatal Paediatrics.

### **Molecular Medicine**

Teaching in Molecular Medicine includes the disciplines of Microbiology, Immunology and Haematology. An introduction to microbiology and molecular genetics is taught in the first year and an introduction to concepts in immunology is taught in the second year of the course in Human Biology. In the third year of the course, medical microbiology and haematology, and clinical immunology are taught. These courses provide an integrated basis for the clinical teaching which continues throughout the course for MBChB. During the first year of the course for MBChB, clinical microbiology is taught as part of the principles of pathology, while immunology, haematology and infectious disease teaching is integrated with teaching programmes of other clinical departments.

An elective programme in Molecular Medicine is available for periods of up to three months during the third year of the course for MBChB.

### **Medicine**

Various common medical diseases affecting different organ systems of the body will be considered with emphasis on their natural history, clinical presentation, methods of diagnosis, together with principles of treatment and prevention. Clinical clerkship will provide experience both in acute general medicine and, during the second year of the course, on selected aspects of different specialities within internal medicine. Tutorial teaching will play an important part in this teaching programme in which emphasis will be placed on the quality of the written as well as the verbal case presentations.

### **Paediatrics**

The undergraduate course in Paediatrics commences with an interdisciplinary child development and family study in the second and third years of the course in Human Biology. Patient-based teaching in Paediatrics is carried out in the hospital and community setting over the three years of the clinical course.

Prevention of disease and the effect of disease on the developing child are emphasised in the departmental contribution to the course of lectures given in the first two years of the clinical course on the organic and psycho-social basis of ill health. At the end of this course of lectures students are examined in their knowledge and comprehension of the principles of Paediatrics. In the third year of the clinical course there is a period of trainee internship in Paediatrics which is mandatory and a term of elective study in the broad field of child health is offered.

### **Pathology**

Teaching in Pathology commences in the third term of the third year of the course in Human Biology, and continues throughout the first, second and third years of the course for MBChB. Subjects under the aegis of Pathology include the Morphological Basis of Disease, Chemical Pathology, and Forensic Medicine. During the first part of the first year of the course for MBChB the principles of pathology are taught on the basis of the teaching in these subjects undertaken during the latter part of the course in Human Biology. During the remainder of the first year, and through the second year, the teaching in pathology is largely integrated with the teaching programmes of other clinical departments.

An elective programme in pathology is available for periods of up to 3 months during the third year of the course.

### **Psychiatry and Behavioural Science**

With a background in normal human behaviour and the neurosciences from the Human Biology course, students will receive instructions during the clinical triennium in psychopathology and in the application of the behavioural sciences to medicine.

Psychiatry teaching, focused on the diagnosis and management of patients with psychiatric and psychological disturbance, is incorporated in full-time rotations combining theory and clinical work in the 4th or 5th and 6th years. The emphasis is on giving students a set of concepts and clinical skills to enable



them to recognise psychological and psychiatric disorders in the practice of medicine in all its branches and a sound grasp of psychopharmacology. Behavioural Science teaching takes place in whole class sessions and seminars. It aims to continue at the applied clinical level the themes covered in the first three years as well as to prepare the student to recognise behavioural aspects of medical cases, and be able to plan appropriate behavioural medicine and psychosocial interventions in general medicine.

### **Surgery**

Surgical diseases will be taught covering their natural history, pathology, methods of diagnosis (including special investigations such as radiology and clinical biochemistry), and general principles of treatment. Included in the surgical diseases will be those related to eye, ear, nose and throat, the musculo-skeletal system, the genito-urinary system, the nervous system and those related to plastic surgery. The theoretical teaching of these subjects will be done within the Topic Teaching course.

Clinical clerkships will be required in general surgery and the special divisions of surgery listed above, including the Accident and Emergency Department. Theoretical and practical teaching in anaesthesia will be given.

The examination in surgery will be part of the composite examination at the end of the second year together with assignments during the first and third years.

## **PRESCRIPTIONS FOR MMedSc**

### **Department of Anatomy**

#### **65.401 Neuroanatomy**

An introduction to experimental techniques used to detect fibre connections in the brain. The organisation of the mammalian nervous system with particular emphasis on the cellular, chemical and connective anatomy of the sensory and motor systems.

#### **65.405 Special Topic in Anatomy**

#### **65.406 Special Topic in Anatomy**

Advanced study in selected areas of anatomy usually in fields related to the thesis topic. The special topics will include biology of the extracellular matrix, developmental biology, cell structure and biomechanics.

### **Department of Biochemistry**

The general study of biochemistry at an advanced level with a specific focus on recent developments in biochemistry and molecular biology. Considerable emphasis is placed upon directed reading, tutorials and seminars in each paper.

#### **66.401 Biochemistry**

Growth factors and oncogenes, plant glycoproteins, modern methods in protein chemistry, aspects of recombinant DNA technology, methods for determination of 3D structure of proteins.

#### **66.402 Biochemistry**

Plant hormones, animal hormone action, control of gene expression, protein targeting aspects of bacterial biochemistry.

### **66.403 Biochemistry**

FAB-Mass spectrometry, lysosomal metabolism, clathrin, steroid hormone and DNA, carbohydrate transport in bacteria, comparative oxygen transport.

### **Department of Community Health**

#### **†91.400 Epidemiology including Biostatistics**

The distribution and determinants of health and disease in human populations. Analytical techniques and methods of investigation. Patterns of morbidity and mortality in the New Zealand population. Sources of health data.

#### **†91.401 Social Sciences in Public Health**

Key concepts in the social sciences and their application to health issues. Analysis of the relationship between health and society, the welfare state, and salient social, cultural and demographic features of New Zealand.

#### **\*91.409 Special Topic in Community Health**

Advanced study in selected areas of Community Health usually in fields related to the thesis topic. The selected topics will be in the areas of health economics and health promotion.

### **Department of General Practice**

#### **69.400 Special Topic in General Practice**

#### **69.401 Special Topic in General Practice**

Advanced study in such areas as community research methodology, continuing education methodology, screening for disease and health risks in the community.

### **Department of Medicine**

#### **92.400 Cardiovascular Medicine**

The course will be based on basic cardiovascular anatomy and physiology with detailed study of the pathophysiology of common cardiovascular conditions and management principles. Specific areas of study will include atherosclerosis, hypertension, coronary artery disease or heart failure.

#### **92.401 Endocrine Medicine**

The course involves basic training in endocrinology with a detailed study of homeostatic mechanisms, hormone relationships and mechanisms and measurement of hormone action. A specific research topic will be allocated in the general areas of calcium metabolism, hormone dependent cancer, or thyroid pathophysiology.

#### **\*92.402 Gastroenterology and Nutrition**

Core content of normal human physiology and pathophysiology of the gastrointestinal tract and of human nutrition. Detailed studies in selected areas tailored for particular students.

#### **\*92.403 Gerontology**

Detailed study of aspects of gerontology including demographic and social factors, clinical aspects of old age, principles of rehabilitation, administrative aspects of health services for the elderly, health promotion and education.

### **Department of Molecular Medicine**

#### **98.402 Development of Immunity**

The basis of antigen uptake and processing, genes of the major histocompatibility complex, development of thymus-derived lymphocytes and regulation of classes of immune responses.

**98.403 Special Topic in Immunobiology**

An indepth analysis of the topic in which the student is undertaking thesis research. These topics will be the development of the thymus, the structure and function of cytokines, or the structure and function of molecules belonging to the integrin family.

**Department of Obstetrics and Gynaecology****47.400 Reproductive Endocrinology**

The course will cover various aspects of reproductive endocrinology including: biosynthesis and metabolism of steroidal hormones, regulation of the gonadal function, endocrinology of the menstrual cycle, follicular maturation and ovulation, spermatogenesis, sperm transport in the female reproductive tract and fertilisation, endocrinology of pregnancy and hormonal contraception.

**47.401 The Physiology of Pregnancy**

Feto-maternal physiology including placental function, maternal adaptation to pregnancy: physiology and consequences for medical practice, endocrinology and physiology of parturition, endocrinology and physiology of lung maturation.

**Department of Paediatrics****93.400 Special Topic in Paediatrics****93.401 Special Topic in Paediatrics**

Advanced study of specific aspects of paediatrics, usually related to the field of study of the thesis research.

**93.405 Biology of Mammalian Growth**

The biochemistry and physiology of prenatal and postnatal mammalian growth with a particular emphasis on the role of genetic, endocrine, paracrine and nutritional influences. The paper will include emphasis on growth in ruminant species, the control of carcass growth, fibre growth and lactation, as well as the regulation of growth in monogastric species (eg. man).

**93.406 Perinatal Physiology**

Historical introduction, methodology of fetal investigation, fetal oxygenation, placental physiology, fetal cardiovascular physiology, ontogenesis of sleep, respiratory control, maturation of the lung, maturation of the neuroendocrine axis, control of parturition, uterine function, renal function and fluid balance, regulation of fetal growth.

**Department of Pathology****68.403 Cell and Tissue Injury**

An indepth consideration of the mechanisms involved in cell and tissue injury, the ways such injury and the response to it become manifest as disease, and a critical evaluation of the various methods used to conduct research in this field.

**68.404 Cancer Biology**

The course provides an introduction to the basic science of oncology, with particular reference to the molecular and cellular processes underlying cancer treatment.

Topics include DNA and the chemistry of its interaction with reactive anticancer drugs, recognition of DNA by proteins such as topoisomerases, polymerases and regulatory elements, and the exploitation of these processes by anticancer drugs, oncogenes and other regulatory gene products, tumour growth kinetics and tumour architecture with

particular reference to cell killing by radiotherapy and chemotherapy, and the role of host responses in cancer therapy.

**68.405 Special Topic in Pathology**

An indepth consideration of the pathology of a particular disease, group of diseases or disease process. The material covered will provide a critical scholarly and advanced course of instruction and prescribed reading in a field important to the candidates graduate studies usually because of its relevance to their thesis research.

**Department of Pharmacology and Clinical Pharmacology****96.400 Special Topic in Pharmacology**

Advanced study in a specific area, usually related to the field of study of the thesis.

**96.401 Toxicology**

Chemical toxicology (including drugs) - mainly human. Clinical and structural manifestations of toxicity, mechanistic toxicology, principles of toxicokinetics, genetic toxicology and carcinogenesis, reproductive toxicology, teratology and reproductive toxicology, neurotoxicology/immunotoxicology, statistics and epidemiology, toxicology testing, regulatory toxicology, ectotoxicology.

**96.402 Special Topic in Clinical Pharmacology**

Advanced study in a specific area, usually related to the field of study of the thesis.

**96.404 Drug Disposition and Action**

Analysis of processes which affect absorption, disposition, metabolism and excretion of drugs. Sites and mechanisms of drug action.

**96.406 Cardiovascular Pharmacology**

Mechanism of action of drugs on the cardiovascular system; drugs that alter the effects of neurotransmitters, hormones and local hormones on the cardiovascular system; drugs used to treat hypertension, cardiac arrhythmias, angina pectoris, heart failure, circulatory shock and hyperlipoproteinaemia; drugs affecting blood coagulation.

**Department of Physiology****67.415 Advances in Physiology****67.416 Research Topics in Physiology****Department of Psychiatry and Behavioural Science****94.400 Psychiatry in Medicine**

Psychosomatic relations, abnormal illness behaviour, states of chronic pain, and the interaction of medical and psychiatric disorders.

**94.401 Neurobiology of Psychiatry Disorders**

Neurochemical and electrophysiological aspects of mental disorder, including ischaemia-related neuropathologies.

**94.403 Health Psychology**

A review of the psychological factors involved in health and illness. Topics include the understanding of patient behaviour in medical settings, preventative health behaviour, psychoneuroimmunology, stress and illness.

**†94.404 Health Promotion for Individuals, Groups and Communities**

Theory and practice of health promotion based on

behavioural and community development principles for those who wish to work directly with people. Topics include health promotion philosophy and concepts, programme design, intervention methods and relevant evaluation.

#### †94.405 Applied Issues in Philosophical Medical Ethics

Analysis of current problems in medical ethics (consent, confidentiality, quality-of-life issues, allocation of resources in the health field) within the context of relevant theories in philosophical medical ethics.

### PREScriptions FOR MAud

Students who propose to undertake the MAud Degree should consult the Co-ordinator of the Course in Audiology as early as possible and preferably before the end of the academic year preceding the year of enrolment for the Degree. In consultation with the Co-ordinator of the Course in Audiology, students will select one paper from among those listed as options under Regulation 4(a) of the Regulations for the Degree of Master of Audiology. Not all the papers listed may be offered each year and a sufficient number of enrolments will be required in each case. With the approval of the Dean of Medicine and Human Biology, the Dean of Science and the Head of the Department concerned, a Master's paper from among those offered for the Degree of Master of Science may be substituted under Regulation 5 of the Regulations for the Degree of Master of Audiology.

#### Audiology

##### 751.401 Hearing Science

Acoustics; psychoacoustics; anatomy, physiology, neuroanatomy, neurophysiology and pathology of the auditory system; speech perception by the hearing-impaired; signal processing; instrumentation.

##### 751.402 Basic Diagnostic Audiology

Basic audiometric techniques (pure tone audiometry, speech audiometry, impedance audiometry, history taking, non-organic hearing loss); paediatric hearing assessment methods, occupational hearing conservation.

##### 751.403 Basic Clinical Audiology

Hearing disorders; diseases of the ear; speech and language development; aural rehabilitation; counselling; amplification strategies; hearing aid characteristics.

##### 751.411 Advanced Diagnostic Audiology

Evoked response test methods; central auditory perceptual dysfunction; site-of-lesion testing; report writing; case studies.

##### 751.412 Advanced Clinical Audiology

Hearing development in infants and children; deafness in children; genetic aspects of deafness; deafness detection in children; educational audiology; prescriptive hearing aid fitting methods; cochlear implants.

##### 751.601 Thesis in Audiology

This requires the preparation of a thesis (equivalent to two papers) on a research topic undertaken under the supervision of a staff member and written up for presentation and examination instead of written papers. Before 1 November of the preceding academic year, each candidate shall submit a proposed research

topic to the Board of Studies in Audiology for approval by the Dean of Medicine and Human Biology.

Note: Prescriptions for other papers constituting part of the Degree of Master of Audiology may be found in the appropriate sections of the *Calendar*.

### PREScriptions FOR MHSc

The papers listed under MHSc Regulation 3(b) are as prescribed for MMedSc

### PREScriptions FOR MPH

#### Department of Community Health

##### †91.400 Epidemiology including Biostatistics

The distribution and determinants of health and disease in human populations. Analytical techniques and methods of investigation. Patterns of morbidity and mortality in the New Zealand population. Sources of health data.

##### †91.401 Social Sciences in Public Health

Key concepts in the social sciences and their application to health issues. Analysis of the relationship between health and society, the welfare state, and salient social, cultural and demographic features of New Zealand.

##### \*91.402 Environmental Health and Health Protection

Description and identification of significant environmental and occupational health problems and their determinants. Strategies and policies for disease and hazard prevention and control, and their evaluation.

##### \*91.403 Health Economics

Basic concepts of economic analysis and their application in the health sector. The relationship between health and the economy, consideration of the health care industry, techniques of economic evaluation and planning.

##### \*91.404 Health Promotion and Health Education

Principles of health promotion and health education. Building healthy public policy, creating supportive environments, strengthening community action, developing personal skills, re-orienting health services, evaluating interventions.

##### \*91.405 Health Services Management

Organisation and funding of the New Zealand health system, service planning, management of change, industrial relationships, decision-making and policy development, organisational dynamics, and principles of management.

##### \*91.406 Special Topic in Public Health

In-depth consideration of some aspect of public health.

##### 91.407 Advanced Epidemiology

Advanced techniques and methods of investigation with special reference to cardiovascular disease and injury research. A problem-based approach will be adopted.

##### 91.408 Sociology of Health and Health Care

Theoretical and practical grounding in the sociological analysis of health, health processes and health institutions, with particular application to the New Zealand setting. Principal substantive areas, major theoretical and research traditions, empirical findings

Note: † This paper may not be taught during the current *Calendar* year.  
\* This paper will not be taught during the current *Calendar* year.

## DIPLOMA COURSE REGULATIONS AND PRESCRIPTIONS

### DIPLOMA IN PAEDIATRICS DipPaed

*The personal course of study of every candidate must be approved by the Senate. Approval will normally be granted for courses which are in accordance with the following Regulations: for general provisions affecting their courses of study students are referred to the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General), and the Examination Regulations.*

#### General Provisions

1. Subject to the Admission Regulations, a candidate for the Diploma in Paediatrics shall:
  - (a) enrol not later than 1 October or such later date as the Senate approves;
  - (b) on 31 December following his or her enrolment for this Diploma have held a medical qualification registrable in New Zealand, for one year, or have been a graduate from the Central Medical School of Fiji;
  - (c) normally sit the examinations in the year following his or her enrolment;
  - (d) hold or have held a resident appointment in paediatrics for at least six months in a hospital recognised for this purpose by Senate; this time may include up to three months spent in neonatal medicine;
  - (e) complete to the satisfaction of Head of Department any prescribed course requirements before being admitted to the examination; such requirements will include:
    - (i) satisfactory performance of clinical duties,
    - (ii) satisfactory participation during the course in community aspects of child care;
  - (f) be required to submit a logbook of his or her experience in community aspects of child care.

#### 2. Examinations

- (1) The examinations for the Diploma shall be:
  - (a) Written Papers 93.404 and 93.406
  - (b) Clinical
  - (c) Oral
- (2) The examinations for the Diploma will consist of a compulsory section and one of two optional sections:
  - (a) Pacific Paediatrics
  - (b) General Paediatrics
- (3) The examination will be held once a year in the Department of Paediatrics.
- (4) The diploma may be awarded with distinction.

#### 3. Exceptions

The Senate, upon the recommendation of the Head of Department of Paediatrics, may, in exceptional circumstances, approve a personal course of study which does not conform to the foregoing Regulations.

4. These Regulations shall come into force on 1 January 1991.

## PRESCRIPTION FOR DIPLOMA IN PAEDIATRICS

The Diploma in Paediatrics is a qualification which serves to recognise medical practitioners who have been trained in Paediatrics and to manage the common paediatric abnormalities. The optional component of this course allows this diploma to be applicable to two groups of medical practitioners: (a) practitioners whose primary responsibility will be focused on Polynesian children: particularly those in remote or medically developing areas and (b) practitioners who are likely to have a dominantly paediatric practice.

The examinations shall include questions on genetic and antenatal factors in development; neonatal paediatrics; assessment of growth and development, hygiene, nutrition and immunization; the diagnosis, treatment and long term management of problems arising from the child's physical, intellectual, emotional, and social needs; epidemiology of childhood disease; cultural factors and child health; general and preventive paediatrics, management of common disorders of childhood, and the practical working of the statutory and voluntary services available in New Zealand for the care of children.

The following are approved Hospitals for the purpose of Regulation 1(d)

- (1) Auckland: The Children's Hospital, National Women's Hospital, Middlemore
  - (2) Christchurch (3) Dunedin (4) Invercargill: Kew Hospital
  - (5) Lower Hutt (6) New Plymouth (7) Palmerston North
  - (8) Rotorua (9) Waikato (10) Wanganui
  - (11) Wellington (12) Whangarei
  - (13) Any other hospital which meets the current criteria for approval during tenure of the post.
  - (14) Any hospital recognised by the Royal Australasian College of Physicians for paediatric training.
- The approval of hospitals will be recognised on criteria of:
- (i) Specialist and registrar staff in general and neonatal paediatrics.
  - (ii) The number of normal and abnormal patients attending the hospital clinics.
  - (iii) The provision of graduate teaching in clinics and paediatric wards.

## DIPLOMA IN GYNAECOLOGY AND OBSTETRICS DipG&O

*The personal course of study of every candidate must be approved by the Senate. Approval will normally be granted for courses which are in accordance with the following Regulations: for general provisions affecting their courses of study students are referred to the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General), and the Examination Regulations.*

### General Provisions

1. A candidate for the Diploma in Gynaecology and Obstetrics shall:

- (a) enrol not later than 1 March for the June examination and 1 September for the December examination, or such later dates as the Senate approves; and
- (b) before sitting for Part 2 of the examination:
  - (i) hold a qualifying degree or diploma approved by the Medical Council of New Zealand for four years and be registered in New Zealand or hold equivalent Commonwealth registration for three years, or
  - (ii) be a medical diplomate of the Fiji School of Medicine of six years' standing; and
- (c) hold for at least one year the Diploma of Obstetrics of the University of Auckland or of Otago or of the Royal College of Obstetricians and Gynaecologists; and
- (d) have undertaken at least two years' training in the speciality of gynaecology and obstetrics in posts approved by the Royal College of Obstetricians and Gynaecologists provided that only one year of service at the Colonial War Memorial Hospital, Suva, shall count towards the total, and
- (e) prior to his acceptance for Part 2 of the examination, have submitted dissertations on an obstetrical and on a gynaecological subject which has been approved by the Head of the Department.

Notwithstanding anything in this Regulation, the Vice-Chancellor may on the recommendation of Senate relax or modify these conditions.

### Examinations

2. The examinations for the Diploma in Gynaecology and Obstetrics shall consist of two papers which may be taken separately or together.

**Part 1** shall consist of a written examination (two papers), 47.101, 47.102 on reproductive biology and basic medical sciences as applied to gynaecology and obstetrics. The Part 1 examination may be taken during the training period specified above in 1 (d).

#### Part 2

- (a) Written (two papers), 47.103, 47.104
- (b) Clinical
- (c) Oral

The examination shall be held at the Postgraduate School of Obstetrics and Gynaecology during June and December.

3. These Regulations shall come into force on 1 January, 1972.

## PRESCRIPTIONS FOR Dip G&O

### Part 1

The subjects covered by two papers will include basic sciences such as anatomy, biochemistry, cell biology, embryology, endocrinology, genetics, immunology, medical sociology, microbiology, pathology, pharmacology, physiology and elementary statistics. The examination will deal with those aspects of these subjects which should form part of the general education of any specialist and particularly those aspects which are applicable to obstetrics and gynaecology.

### Dissertations

Candidates are advised to discuss the preparation of their dissertations with the Head of the Department at an early stage in their training period. Both obstetric and gynaecological dissertations are designed to give candidates the opportunity to study in detail conditions of their own choice and to express their own views based on personal experience and on a study of the literature. The dissertations should show clear evidence of ability to make use of a reference library and of the English language. Socio-medical topics may be particularly suitable for one or other of the dissertations. The dissertations should be accurately typed in good English and simply bound. In general the size of the dissertations should be in the order of 3000-4000 words each and credit will be given for original contributions.

#### Part 2

Two written papers:

- (a) Obstetrics, and such aspects of endocrinology, medicine, neonatal paediatrics and surgery as are relevant to the practice of obstetrics.
- (b) Gynaecology, and such aspects of endocrinology, medicine, medical sociology and surgery as are relevant to the practice of gynaecology.

A clinical examination which will include presentation and discussion of obstetric and gynaecological cases. An oral examination in obstetrics and gynaecology. In this candidates should be prepared to discuss their dissertations, to be examined on applied anatomy, physiology and pathology, and to be shown radiographs, instruments, specimens and histological slides for comment.

## DIPLOMA IN OBSTETRICS DipObst

*The personal course of study of every candidate must be approved by the Senate. Approval will normally be granted for courses which are in accordance with the following Regulations: for general provisions affecting their courses of study students are referred to the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General), and the Examination Regulations.*

### General Provisions

1. Candidates for the Diploma in Obstetrics shall enrol at the University within the first week of their clinical attachment. (This may change from year to year but would usually be early in the months of March, June, September or December.)
  - (i) Candidates for admission to the course for the Postgraduate Diploma in Obstetrics must have held a medical qualification for one year before commencing the course and must satisfy the Faculty of Medicine that previous training and experience fit candidates to undertake the course.
  - (ii) During the course candidates must hold a resident appointment in obstetrics and gynaecology in a hospital recognised for this purpose by Senate.
  - (iii) Candidates must hold a resident appointment for at least 6 months and be engaged in training for a total time, excluding leave, of a minimum of 1600 hours. This minimum time may include up to 100 hours of formal education and up to 400 hours may be spent in a specific attachment to neonatal paediatrics.
  - (iv) Candidates will be required to submit a Logbook of their clinical experience.
  - (v) Auckland. Candidates will be required to enrol with the University of Auckland within the first week of a resident appointment at National Women's, Middlemore and/or St Helens Hospitals.
  - (vi) Other Centres. Candidates from other approved centres may be excused the lecture course providing they attend the intensive courses in obstetrics, neonatal paediatrics, family planning and medical gynaecology held by the Department of Obstetrics and Gynaecology prior to the examination.

Notwithstanding anything in this Regulation the Senate may, in such exceptional circumstances as it thinks fit, approve a personal course of study which does not conform to the foregoing Regulations.

### Examinations

2. The examinations for the diploma in Obstetrics shall be in three parts:
  - (a) Written (one three-hour paper - 47.500)
  - (b) Clinical
  - (c) Oral or objective structured Clinical Examination.
3. The examinations shall be held in the Department of Obstetrics and Gynaecology twice yearly.
4. Candidates shall apply to sit for the examination not later than 1 February or 1 August for the next succeeding examination.

## PRESCRIPTIONS FOR DipObst

This is a general practitioner qualification and serves to distinguish those general practitioners who have been trained to handle the common abnormalities encountered in obstetric practice. A six months' resident appointment to the staff of a teaching obstetric and gynaecological unit is required before the candidates are allowed to sit the examinations, but see also provision 1 (iii) of the preceding Regulations. Details of such appointments are available on application.

The examinations shall include questions on the anatomy, physiology, pathology and management of normal and abnormal pregnancy, labour and puerperium, including the care of the new-born during the first month of life. In addition, the candidates will be required to have a knowledge of the physiology and pathology of medical gynaecology, including abnormal menstruation, amenorrhoea and dysmenorrhoea, endocrine therapy, abortions, infertility and contraception, ectopic pregnancies and moles, vaginal discharges, the diagnostic facets of malignancy, and such minor surgical procedures as may be encountered in a predominantly obstetric practice.

The following are approved Hospitals for the purpose of Regulation 1 (ii):

- (1) Auckland: National Women's, Middlemore with or without rotation to St Helens Hospital
- (2) Christchurch Women's (3) Dunedin (4) Invercargill: Kew Hospital
- (5) Lower Hutt (6) New Plymouth (7) Palmerston North
- (8) Rotorua (9) Waikato (10) Wanganui
- (11) Wellington (12) Whangarei
- (13) Any other hospital which meets the current criteria for approval during the full tenure of the post.
- (14) Any hospital recognised by the Royal College of Obstetricians and Gynaecologists or the Royal Australian College of Obstetricians and Gynaecologists.

The approval of hospitals will be recognised on criteria of:

- (i) Specialist and registrar staff in obstetrics, gynaecology and neonatal paediatrics.
- (ii) The number of normal and abnormal patients attending the hospital clinics.
- (iii) The provision of graduate teaching in antenatal, postnatal and gynaecological clinics, wards and delivery rooms, including teaching in neonatal paediatrics and family planning. The post must be a continuous one of six months or more if under Regulation 1 (iii).

---

## HIGHER ACADEMIC TRAINING IN OBSTETRICS AND GYNAECOLOGY

- (i) **Membership of the Royal College of Obstetricians and Gynaecologists, the New Zealand College of Obstetricians and Gynaecologists, and the Royal Australian College of Obstetricians and Gynaecologists.**

Resident posts providing specialist training suitable for the Membership examination are available at the National Women's and associated hospitals. A formal teaching programme for both Part I and Part II examinations is provided for residents. Elective time posts in neonatal paediatrics, anaesthesia and pathology can also be arranged.

- (ii) **MSc or PhD Degrees**

Research appointments are available at the National Women's Hospital and afford the opportunity of preparing for the MSc and PhD Degrees of the University of Auckland.

Applications will be welcome from scientists and medical graduates who wish to carry out research in biochemistry, endocrinology, or the scientific background of obstetrics, gynaecology, and neonatal paediatrics.

---

## REFRESHER TRAINING FOR FAMILY DOCTORS AND SPECIALISTS

- (i) Practitioners with interests in the fields covered at the School may attend for periods of up to four weeks as visiting postgraduates. During the time they are attending the Postgraduate School attachments to the Auckland Area Health Board as Honorary Medical Officers can be made in order to facilitate the performance of practical procedures. Visitors may attend teaching sessions as well as gain practical experience tailored to their needs.
- (ii) Short courses usually of a week's duration are held at regular intervals. In addition to teaching at Diploma level advanced courses are provided.
- (iii) Departmental staff are available to participate in courses throughout New Zealand by arrangement with the Head of the Department.

---

## THE POSTGRADUATE MEDICAL COMMITTEE

The Postgraduate Medical Committee, chaired by the Associate Dean of Postgraduate Affairs in Medicine, accepts responsibility for the organisation and supervision of both graduate vocational training and continuing medical education for doctors in the Auckland region. The activities of the Committee are linked with the School of Medicine and with the hospitals under the control of the Auckland Hospital Board. Vocational training courses are run in each major discipline under the general supervision of Speciality Advisory Sub-Committees made up of practising members of the disciplines concerned including members of the academic staff. In the case of Family Medicine the programme is run under the aegis of the Royal New Zealand College of General Practitioners.

The Committee arranges in addition a wide range of courses and meetings throughout the academic year in the field of continuing medical education in all disciplines. Visits by overseas medical speakers in both the School of Medicine and the associated teaching hospitals are also arranged through the Postgraduate Office in the School under the general co-ordination of the Postgraduate Committee. A monthly bulletin of postgraduate and continuing educational activities, *This Month*, is also circulated to all doctors in the Auckland region.

Within the Postgraduate Office in the School of Medicine there is a separate section dealing with continuing education in family medicine under the supervision of the Goodfellow Director of Continuing Medical Education in General Practice. The Goodfellow Director is ex officio a member of the Committee, and is responsible for the whole range of educational programmes arranged in the field of general practice, and also the administration of a special educational resource service for general practitioners based on the Philson Library of the School of Medicine.

The members of the Postgraduate Committee for 1990 were the Chairperson, the Associate Dean of Postgraduate Affairs in Medicine, Dr C.H. Maclaurin; the Deputy Chairperson, Dr P.M. Barham; the Honorary Treasurer, Dr I.D. Reid; Dr K. Bannister; Dr J. Birbeck; Dr J.G. Buchanan; Dr H. Doerr; Dr S.W. Heap; Dr R. McIlroy; Professor J.D.K. North; Dr P. Patten; Associate Professor J.G. Richards; Dr R. Varcoe; Dr H. Stone; Dr P. Tan.

---

# Joint Boards of Study

## *Contents*

---

|                      |     |                       |
|----------------------|-----|-----------------------|
| <b>Degree Course</b> | 405 | Bachelor of Education |
| <b>Regulations</b>   | 406 | Bachelor of Theology  |

---

|                      |     |                       |
|----------------------|-----|-----------------------|
| <b>Degree Course</b> | 411 | Bachelor of Education |
| <b>Prescriptions</b> | 411 | Bachelor of Theology  |



## JOINT BOARDS OF STUDY

### Bachelor of Education

The Bachelor of Education Degree is a four-year degree taught in co-operation with the Auckland College of Education.

### Bachelor of Theology

The Bachelor of Theology Degree is offered by the University to make possible the study of both religion and theology at a tertiary level. It is administered by a Joint Board of Studies comprising appointees of the University and the Auckland Consortium for Theological Education. Constituent colleges of the Consortium at present are the College of St John and Trinity Methodist College and the Catholic Institute of Theological Education.

Students at the constituent colleges include both those who are preparing for a church or religious vocation and also those who wish to pursue the study of theology and/or religion in their various forms without any necessary commitment to either. However, because many of the present students of the constituent colleges are preparing for the ordained ministry it is appropriate that some guidance be given to those students in the development of maturity in the Christian faith and the disciplines of the Church. The primary responsibility for this assistance is undertaken by each of the constituent colleges in respect of its own members.

The complete course of education required for candidates for the ordained ministry is the responsibility of the colleges of those respective denominations but papers offered as part of the Bachelor of Theology Degree may form part of those requirements. Students contemplating the ordained ministry or any religious vocation should consult the Head of their own denominational college, or the appropriate person in their own religious tradition, for details of the particular requirements necessary.

No religious tests shall be imposed upon any person in order to entitle him or her to be enrolled for the Degree or to be a candidate for any examination or to graduate or to be an examiner/lecturer or to hold any office in connection with the Degree.

## DEGREE COURSE REGULATIONS

### THE DEGREE OF BACHELOR OF EDUCATION BEd

*The personal course of study of every candidate must be approved by the Senate. Approval will normally be granted for courses which are in accordance with the following Regulations; for general provisions affecting their courses of study students are referred to the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General), and the Examination Regulations.*

#### General Provisions

1. Subject to the Admission Regulations a candidate for the Degree of Bachelor of Education shall follow a course of study of not fewer than four years.
2. The course of study for the Degree shall consist of twenty-eight papers.
3. Every course of study for the Degree shall include:
  - (a) seven papers in the subject Education as prescribed for this Degree including three at Stage III;
  - (b) teaching studies, to the equivalent of eleven papers of which two are at 300-level;
  - (c) professional practice, to be counted as the equivalent of three papers;
  - (d) seven papers in a subject or subjects other than Education, as prescribed for other degrees of the University of Auckland, including at least three above Stage I.
4. The course of study of each student shall be subject to the approval, on behalf of the Senate, of the Joint Board of Studies.
5. The Senate, in such exceptional circumstances as it thinks fit, may, on the advice of the Joint Board, approve a personal course of study which does not conform to the foregoing Regulations.

#### Schedules

1. The papers in Education available for this degree under Regulation 3(a) shall include those set out in Schedule A.
2. Teaching Studies under Regulation 3(b) shall include units in those subjects set out in Schedule B, except that the Joint Board of Studies may as it sees fit waive such compulsory parts of these requirements or modify the options available in the light of the content of the papers the student chooses to attempt under Regulation 3(d); but in no case shall the total value of units under Regulation 3(b) be less than the equivalent of 11 papers.
3. Professional Practice under Regulation 3(c) shall be as prescribed and programmed, on behalf of the Joint Board of Studies, by the Auckland College of Education.
4. The papers to be attempted under Regulation 3(d) are to be selected by the student on the advice of the Board and with the consent of the relevant Head of Department of the University from either the Schedule for the Degree of Bachelor of Arts or the Schedule for the Degree of Bachelor of Science or both of these Schedules, except that

the Senate may approve the inclusion of papers of equivalent weighting from other degrees.

#### Schedule A

Education 14.150 Learning and Teaching in New Zealand Classrooms

Education 14.151 Human Development and Learning: Psychology and Education

Any Education paper as prescribed for the Degree of Bachelor of Arts and approved by the Senate for inclusion in this Degree.

#### Schedule B

| Units in: | Subject              | Subject Code | Subject                    | Subject Code |
|-----------|----------------------|--------------|----------------------------|--------------|
|           | Education            | 624          | Maori Culture and Language | 631          |
|           | Art Education        | 626          | Mathematics Education      | 625          |
|           | Cultural Equity      | 627          | Music Education            | 632          |
|           | Educational Media    | 628          | Physical Education         | 633          |
|           | Health Studies       | 629          | Science Education          | 634          |
|           | Language and Reading | 630          | Social Studies Education   | 635          |

The above subjects will be taught as units with two units at any level being deemed equivalent to one paper at that level. The 200-level units will have as prerequisites the appropriate 100-level material together with the compulsory 624.180 (Professional Practice I) and Language and Reading 630.100. Papers at 300-level will have 200-level prerequisites as specified, together with the compulsory 624.280 (Professional Practice II). Normally the progression in any area will be .100; .200, .201 (.202); .300, .301 (.302).

## THE DEGREE OF BACHELOR OF THEOLOGY BTheol

*The personal course of study of every candidate must be approved by the Senate. Approval will normally be granted for courses which are in accordance with the following Regulations; for general provisions affecting their courses of study students are referred to the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General), and the Examination Regulations.*

#### General Provisions

1. Subject to the Admission Regulations a candidate for the Degree of Bachelor of Theology shall follow a course of study of not fewer than three years.
2. The course of study for the Degree shall consist of twenty-one papers in subjects grouped as in Regulation 8 of these Regulations. Papers are classified in three stages, I, II, and III.
3. Each course of study for the degree shall include
  - (i) four papers in total from Group A and B, including not fewer than two from Group A, to be selected subject to the approval of the relevant Head of Department and Chairman of the Joint Board of Studies;
  - (ii) at least six papers in one Group selected from Group C D or E of which at least three are at stage III level;
  - (iii) at least eleven papers higher than Stage I of which at least nine shall be selected from Groups C D or E;
  - (iv) no more than eleven papers in one Group;
  - (v) at least two papers in the subjects Hebrew Bible, New Testament, Systematic Theology and Church History;
  - (vi) at least two papers selected from Group E.
4. For the purposes of Regulation 3 (ii), the Senate may approve the inclusion of one or more papers from one Group or discipline taken in another Group or discipline.
5. Except with the permission of the Senate, no candidate shall take in any one year more than eight papers for this Degree.
6. The total cross credits and exemptions granted to a candidate shall not exceed 10 papers for this Degree.
7. The Senate may, in exceptional cases as it thinks fit, approve a personal course of study which does not conform to the fore-going regulations. Such a course of study may include papers offered in other Faculties.
8. The subjects for this degree are grouped as follows:

Group A: The subjects listed in Group A of the Schedule to the Regulations for the Degree of Bachelor of Arts.

Group B, C, D, E as set out in the Schedule to these Regulations and as follows:

Group B: Introductory and Ancillary Topics.

Group C: Hebrew Bible; New Testament.

Group D: Systematic Theology; Church History.

Group E: Moral and Practical Theology

9. These Regulations shall come into force on 1 January 1990.

**SCHEDULE**

| Title Of Paper                           |   | Prerequisites  | Restrictions        | Qualifications |
|--|---|--|---------------------|----------------|
| <b>GROUP B</b>                           |   |  |                     |                |
| <b>INTRODUCTORY AND ANCILLARY TOPICS</b> |   |  |                     |                |
| 375.120                                  | Speech Communication A                      |  |                     |                |
| 375.130                                  | Literature and Theology A                   |  |                     |                |
| 375.131                                  | Literature and Theology B                   |  |                     |                |
| 375.140                                  | Maori Language A                            |  | 04.104              |                |
| 375.150                                  | Cross Cultural Studies                      |  | 380.150             |                |
| 375.160                                  | Introduction to Biblical Hebrew             |  | 23.100, 101, 110    |                |
| 375.161                                  | Introduction to Koine Greek                 |  | 10.100, 101         |                |
| 375.162                                  | Introduction to Syriac                      |  |                     |                |
| 375.210                                  | Maori Perspectives I                        | 04.100 or 101 or<br>104 or 375.140   | 375.110,<br>380.250 |                |
| 375.220                                  | Speech Communication B                      | 375.120  |                     |                |
| 375.240                                  | Maori Language B                            | 375.140 or 04.104  | 04.204, 205         |                |
| 375.330                                  | Maori Perspectives Research<br>Essay        | One Stage III paper<br>in Maori Studies  |                     |                |
| 375.340                                  | Maori Language C                            | 375.240  |                     |                |
| <b>GROUP C</b>                           |   |  |                     |                |
| <b>HEBREW BIBLE</b>                      |   |  |                     |                |
| Hebrew Bible I                           |   |  |                     |                |
| 376.100                                  | Introduction to the Hebrew Bible A          |  | 11.101, 376.101     |                |
| 376.101                                  | The Art of Interpreting the Hebrew<br>Bible |  | 11.101, 376.100     |                |
| Hebrew Bible II                          |   |  |                     |                |
| 376.200                                  | Introduction to the Hebrew<br>Bible B       | 376.100 or<br>376.101  |                     |                |
| * 376.210                                | Studies in TaNaK (A)                        | As for 376.200   |                     |                |
| 376.211                                  | Studies in TaNaK (B)                        | As for 376.200   |                     |                |
| 376.212                                  | Exegesis of Selected<br>Hebrew Bible Themes | 23.100 or 375.160<br>or equivalent   |                     |                |
| * 376.220                                | Early Post-Biblical<br>Judaism              | Two of 376.100,<br>101; 377.100, 101   | 12.406              |                |
| * 376.225                                | Special Topic                               |  |                     |                |
| Hebrew Bible III                         |   |  |                     |                |
| 376.310                                  | Studies in TaNaK (i)                        | 376.210 or 376.211;<br>and one other Stage II<br>paper in Hebrew Bible<br>or New Testament |                     |                |
| 376.311                                  | Studies in TaNaK (ii)                       | As for 376.311   |                     |                |
| 376.312                                  | Exegesis of Selected<br>Hebrew Bible Themes | 376.212  |                     |                |
| * 376.320                                | Hebrew Bible Theology                       | As for 376.310   |                     |                |
| * 376.325                                | Special Topic                               |  |                     |                |
| 376.330                                  | Hebrew Bible Research<br>Essay              | One Stage III paper<br>in Hebrew Bible   |                     |                |
| <b>NEW TESTAMENT</b>                     |   |  |                     |                |
| New Testament I                          |   |  |                     |                |
| 377.100                                  | Introduction to the New<br>Testament        |  | 11.113              |                |
| 377.101                                  | World of the New<br>Testament               |  |                     |                |

|                          | <b>Title Of Paper</b>                                | <b>Prerequisites</b>  | <b>Restrictions</b> | <b>Qualifications</b> |
|--------------------------|--|---|---------------------|-----------------------|
| <b>New Testament II</b>  |  |   |                     |                       |
| * 377.211                | The Synoptic Gospels                                 | 376.100 or 101;<br>and 377.100                                    |                     |                       |
| 377.212                  | The Johannine Writings I                             | As for 377.211  |                     |                       |
| 377.213                  | The Pauline Letters (A)                              | As for 377.211  |                     |                       |
| 377.214                  | The Pauline Letters (B)                              | As for 377.211  |                     |                       |
| * 377.225                | Special Topic  |   |                     |                       |
| 377.226                  | Translation and Exegesis<br>of Selected Greek Texts  | 375.161 or<br>equivalent  |                     |                       |
| * 377.227                | Translation and Exegesis<br>of Selected Syriac Texts | 375.162 or<br>equivalent  |                     |                       |
| <b>New Testament III</b> |  |   |                     |                       |
| * 377.311                | Studies in the Gospels                               | One Stage II paper in<br>New Testament, and<br>one other Stage II |                     |                       |
| 377.312                  | Apocalyptic and the<br>Apocalypse                    | New Testament or<br>Hebrew Bible paper                            |                     |                       |
| * 377.313                | Studies in the Epistles                              | 377.212   |                     |                       |
| * 377.314                | The General Letters                                  | 377.211 or<br>equivalent  |                     |                       |
| * 377.315                | The Johannine Writings II                            | 377.211   |                     |                       |
| 377.316                  | The Resurrection Traditions in<br>the New Testament  | As for 377.311  |                     |                       |
| * 377.317                | The Parables of Jesus                                | 377.226   |                     |                       |
| 377.325                  | Special Topic  |   |                     |                       |
| * 377.326                | Translation and Exegesis<br>of Selected Greek Texts  | 377.227   |                     |                       |
| * 377.327                | Translation and Exegesis<br>of Selected Syriac Texts |   |                     |                       |
| 377.330                  | New Testament Research<br>Essay                      | One Stage III paper<br>in New Testament                           |                     |                       |

---

**GROUP D**


---

**SYSTEMATIC THEOLOGY**


---

**Systematic Theology I**

378.100 Introduction to Theology

† 378.101 Contemporary Judaism

**Systematic Theology II**

378.200 God as Revealer and  
Creator

378.100 and  
379.100

378.201 Church, Ministry and  
Sacraments

As for 378.200

378.202 Christology

As for 378.200

\* 378.203 Sacramental Theology

As for 378.200

378.205 Special Topic

One of 376.100,  
376.101, 377.100,  
378.100

378.206 Theology and Science

As for 378.200

**Systematic Theology III**

378.300 God as Spirit and Trinity

One Stage II paper  
in Theology; and one  
further Stage II paper  
in Theology or Church  
History.

378.302 Issues in Contemporary  
Theology

\* 378.303 Religions of the World

Two Stage II papers in  
Theology or Church  
History, or one of each;  
or approval of Head of  
Department.

\* 378.304 Special Topic

As for 378.300

|         | Title Of Paper                                     | Prerequisites                              | Restrictions | Qualifications |
|---------|--|--|--------------|----------------|
| 378.305 | Dietrich Bonhoeffer and the German Church Struggle | As for 378.300                             |              |                |
| 378.330 | Systematic Theology Research essay                 | One Stage III paper in Systematic Theology |              |                |

## CHURCH HISTORY

### Church History I

|         |                                  |  |         |  |
|---------|----------------------------------|--|---------|--|
| 379.100 | The Church in History to 500 CE  |  |         |  |
| 379.101 | Christianity in New Zealand      |  |         |  |
| 379.102 | Introduction to Anglicanism      |  | 380.135 |  |
| 379.104 | The Church in History to 1500 CE |  | 379.100 |  |

### Church History II

|           |                               |                  |         |  |
|-----------|-------------------------------|------------------|---------|--|
| 379.200   | Church in History: 500-1600   | 379.100, 378.100 |         |  |
| * 379.201 | Reformation in Church History | As for 379.200   |         |  |
| 379.203   | Modern Church History         | As for 379.200   |         |  |
| * 379.204 | The Baptist Churches          | As for 379.200   | 379.103 |  |

### Church History III

|           |   |   |  |  |
|-----------|---|---|--|--|
| 379.300   | Church and Society in the South Pacific | Two of 379.200, 201,203   |  |  |
| 379.301   | Women in the Christian Tradition I      | As for 379.300  |  |  |
| * 379.302 | Women in the Christian Tradition II     | As for 379.300  |  |  |
| 379.303   | Twentieth Century Ecumenism             | Two Stage II papers in Theology or Church History, or one of each |  |  |
| * 379.304 | The History of Christian Spirituality   | As for 379.300  |  |  |
| * 379.325 | Special Topic                           |   |  |  |
| 379.330   | Church History Research                 | One Stage III papers in Church History, or Equivalent             |  |  |

## GROUPE

## MORAL AND PRACTICAL THEOLOGY

### Moral and Practical Theology I

|           |   |                              |         |  |
|-----------|---|------------------------------|---------|--|
| 380.100   | Introduction to Pastoral Care             |                              |         |  |
| * 380.110 | Christian Missions in History and Culture | 379.100 or 101               |         |  |
| 380.115   | Spirituality and Justice I                |                              |         |  |
| 380.120   | Religious Education-Faith and Learning    | One of 376.100, 101, 377.100 |         |  |
| 380.130   | Liturgics                                 |                              |         |  |
| 380.135   | Introduction to Anglicanism               |                              | 379.102 |  |
| 380.140   | Christian Ethics I                        |                              |         |  |
| 380.150   | Cross Cultural Studies                    |                              | 375.150 |  |

### Moral and Practical Theology II

|         |                                     |                              |  |  |
|---------|-------------------------------------|------------------------------|--|--|
| 380.200 | Pastoral Care II                    | 380.100                      |  |  |
| 380.201 | Human Development and Pastoral Care | 380.100                      |  |  |
| 380.204 | Clinical Pastoral Education         | Approval of Board of Studies |  |  |
| 380.210 | Theology of Mission                 | 380.110 or 150 or 378.100    |  |  |

|   | Title Of Paper   | Prerequisites                       | Restrictions        | Qualifications |
|---|--|-------------------------------------|---------------------|----------------|
|   | 380.211 Church and Society   | 378.100, 380.110                    |                     |                |
|   | 380.212 Mission in an Urban Context                                  | 380.110, 378.100                    |                     |                |
|   | 380.215 Spirituality and Justice II                                  | 380.115                             |                     |                |
|   | 380.225 Homiletics   | 378.100                             |                     |                |
| * | 380.226 Communication of Faith                                       | 380.110                             |                     |                |
|   | 380.230 Christian Ritual   | One paper in<br>Group D or Group E  |                     |                |
|   | 380.235 Liturgical Prayer: The Languages<br>of Time, Space and Music | 380.130 or 380.230<br>or equivalent |                     |                |
|   | 380.240 Christian Ethics II  | 380.140 or 378.100<br>or equivalent |                     |                |
|   | 380.250 Maori Perspectives   | As for 375.210                      | 375.110,<br>375.210 |                |
|   | Moral and Practical Theology III                                     |                                     |                     |                |
|   | 380.300 Advanced Pastoral Care                                       | 380.200                             |                     |                |
|   | 380.303 Special Pastoral Project                                     | 380.300                             |                     |                |

**Note:**\* This paper will not be taught during the current *Calendar* year.† This paper may not be taught during the current *Calendar* year.

## DEGREE COURSE PRESCRIPTIONS

### PRESCRIPTIONS FOR BEd

In 1990 the University introduced a four-year Bachelor of Education degree in co-operation with the Auckland College of Education.

**Schedule A Papers** As presented for the Degree of Bachelor of Arts

**Schedule B Papers** As presented by the Auckland College of Education

Full prescriptions are published by the Auckland College of Education

### PRESCRIPTIONS FOR BTheol

#### GROUP A

|                 |               |            |
|-----------------|---------------|------------|
| Ancient History | English       | German     |
| Greek           | Hebrew        | History    |
| Latin           | Maori Studies | Philosophy |
| Psychology      | Sociology     |            |

as prescribed for the Degree of Bachelor of Arts

#### GROUP B

#### INTRODUCTORY AND ANCILLARY TOPICS Stage I

##### 375.120 Speech Communication A

A basic paper in oral communication theory and practice, including the production and management of the speaking voice and effective oral interpretation of poetry and prose.

##### 375.130 Literature and Theology A

An introduction to literature and its theological value. This paper will study images of God and Christ in literature, and selected themes such as the Fall, the absence of God, suffering, hope and prophecy. Papers 375.130 and 375.131 are complementary and it is of value if both are taken in the same year.

##### 375.131 Literature and Theology B

A study of a range of literature which explores human experience and belief, and includes the Christian's journey and Christian community. Childhood, old age and death, are discussed in the context of New Zealand writing. Papers 375.130 and 375.131 are complementary and it is of value if both are taken in the same year.

##### 375.140 Maori Language A

This is an introductory paper designed to help each student acquire confidence and competence in: reading liturgical and biblical material, conversation sessions (including the writing of the same), speech making, and waiata (sung poetry).

##### 375.150 Cross Cultural Studies

This paper draws attention to the social knowledge and understanding of all the participants and utilizes this knowledge to examine the cultural, political and social implications for contemporary New Zealand society and to develop greater awareness, sensitivity and appropriate actions which express the demands of justice, reconciliation and human liberation.

##### 375.160 Introduction to Biblical Hebrew

The aim of the course is to evoke confidence and enjoyment and to gain, by the use of the existential method of learning languages, the basic skills of listening to, speaking, writing and reading of biblical Hebrew.

##### 375.161 Introduction to Koine Greek

This paper introduces the students to the language of the Greek New Testament in preparation for translation and exegesis of the Greek text of the New Testament in subsequent years.

##### 375.162 Introduction to Syriac: Language and Translation

No prior knowledge of Syriac is required. The text for translation will be specified each year.

#### Stage II

##### 375.210 Maori Perspectives I

This paper examines Maori perspectives on Maori society in the past and today. It includes the spiritual and material concepts that underlie and support Maori history and culture, as well as Maori responses to various initiatives, including those of the Church.

##### 375.220 Speech Communication B

A study of the practice and principles of public speaking, and effective speech communication in leading worship.

##### 375.240 Maori Language B

This paper is aimed at increasing the student's competence in reading, conversation, writing, speech making and waiata.

#### Stage III

##### 375.330 Maori Perspectives Research Essay

This is a reading and research paper for advanced students in Maori. It is intended to cater for specific interests, or needs, not met within the current schedule of papers offered in Maori Studies.

##### 375.340 Maori Language C

As for Maori Language B but at an advanced level.

#### GROUP C

#### HEBREW BIBLE

##### Stage I

##### 376.100 Introduction to the Hebrew Bible A

The aim of the paper is to indicate to students, methods and areas of study which illuminate the background and nature of the Hebrew Bible.

##### 376.101 The Art of Interpreting the Hebrew Bible

The paper will endeavour to give students a broad vision of the significance of the Hebrew Bible in the light of scholarship, with peculiar attention to what is of value for theological understanding today.

##### Stage II

##### 376.200 Introduction to the Hebrew Bible B

The aim of this paper is to extend the candidate's knowledge of basic Hebrew Bible studies through the Hebrew Bible.

##### \*376.210 Studies in TaNaK (A)

Torah, Prophets and Writings. An examination of the main sections of the Hebrew Bible and detailed study

of selected texts. The Tetrateuch, Deuteronomistic History, Prophets and Writings will be dealt with in a cycle over two or more years.

### **376.211 Studies in TaNaK (B)**

This paper will provide an additional Stage II exegetical option and will be similar to 376.210 but based on a different text.

### **376.212 Exegesis of Selected Hebrew Bible Themes** Translation and exegesis of selected texts in the Hebrew language.

### **\*376.220 Early Post-Biblical Judaism**

An introduction to: the history of the period from 200 BCE to 135 CE which stretches from the Seleucid domination of the region to the aftermath of the Bar Kochbar revolt; the origin and development of streams of religious thought and practice within the Judaism of this period; the influence of Hellenism and the effects of Hellenisation.

### **\*376.225 Special Topic**

For example, Archaeology and the Hebrew Bible, the Hebrew Bible and the Contemporary World, Revelation, Prophecy and Imagination, Application of the Hebrew Bible in Studies and Preaching.

### **Stage III**

### **376.310 Studies in TaNaK (i)**

An advanced study of the main sections of the Hebrew Bible covering material not dealt with at Stage II.

### **376.311 Studies in TaNaK (ii)**

As for 376.310 but based on different text(s).

### **376.312 Exegesis of Selected Hebrew Bible Themes** Translation and exegesis of selected texts in the Hebrew language. Texts specified annually.

### **\*376.320 Hebrew Bible Theology**

The aim of this paper is to draw on exegetical and introductory studies in order to explore overall theological structures on the Hebrew Bible.

### **\*376.325 Special Topic**

For example, Archaeology and the Hebrew Bible, the Hebrew Bible and the Contemporary World, Revelation, Prophecy and Imagination, Application of the Hebrew Bible in Studies and Preaching.

### **376.330 Hebrew Bible Research Essay**

This is a reading and research paper for advanced students majoring in Hebrew Bible. It is intended to cater for specific study interests or needs not met within the current schedule of paper offerings in Hebrew Bible.

## **NEW TESTAMENT**

### **Stage I**

### **377.100 Introduction to the New Testament**

This paper aims to introduce students to the critical study of the New Testament and its World.

### **377.101 World of the New Testament**

A study of the historical, political, social, economic and religious worlds that lie behind the texts of the New Testament.

### **Stage II**

### **\*377.211 The Synoptic Gospels**

A study of the interrelationship of the Synoptic Gospels, together with a more detailed study of the composition, theology and exegesis of one Gospel.

The Gospel to be studied will be selected each year.

### **377.212 The Johannine Writings I**

This paper provides an introduction to the literature of the Johannine Community and the Community behind this literature.

### **377.213 The Pauline Letters (A)**

General issues surrounding the production, use and interpretation of the Pauline corpus, together with the analysis and exegesis of one letter. The letter to be studied will be selected each year.

### **377.214 The Pauline Letters (B)**

As for 377.213 but based on a different letter.

### **\*377.225 Special Topic**

For example, Miracle Stories, the Resurrection Narratives, the Kingdom of God.

### **377.226 Translation and Exegesis of Selected Greek Texts**

Texts will be specified annually.

### **\*377.227 Translation and Exegesis of Selected Syriac Texts**

Texts will be specified annually.

### **Stage III**

### **\*377.311 Studies in the Gospels**

An advanced study of some aspect of the critical study of the Gospels, for example, the Parables, the Passion Narratives, the Sermon on the Mount.

### **377.312 Apocalyptic and the Apocalypse**

A general introduction to the development of apocalyptic and the genre of Apocalypse, its social context and interpretation.

### **\*377.313 Studies in the Epistles**

An advanced study of some aspect of the critical study of the Epistles, for example, Pauline Theology, Pauline Eschatology.

### **\*377.314 The General Letters**

An advanced study of the critical study of one or more of the General Letters. The text or theme will be chosen annually.

### **\*377.315 The Johannine Writings II**

Further Investigation of the Gospel of John is carried over into the Johannine Letters.

### **377.316 The Resurrection Traditions in the New Testament**

A study of the Resurrection Traditions in the New Testament. The paper will look at both the content and the development of the traditions from the perspectives of critical New Testament study. It will also look at how these traditions are interpreted by a selected group of contemporary theologians.

### **\*377.317 The Parables of Jesus**

A study of the parables of Jesus as a literary form, the literary and social world of the parables and an investigation of the place of the parables within individual Gospels.

### **377.325 Special Topic: In 1991, Theology and Lifestyle in the Synoptic Gospels**

A redaction-critical study of the Synoptic Gospels focusing on the Messianic lifestyle as presented in the stories of Jesus and the disciples.

### **\*377.326 Translation and Exegesis of Selected Greek Texts**

The texts will be specified annually.



**\*377.327 Translation and Exegesis of Selected Syriac Texts**

The texts will be specified annually.

**377.330 New Testament Research Essay**

This is a reading and research paper for advanced students majoring in New Testament. It is intended to cater for specific study interests or needs not met within the current schedule of paper offerings in New Testament.

**GROUP D**

**SYSTEMATIC THEOLOGY**

**Stage I**

**378.100 Introduction to Theology**

An exploration of the sources, methods and functions of systematic theology.

**†378.101 Contemporary Judaism**

An introduction to the contemporary expression of Judaism.

**Stage II**

**378.200 God as Revealer and Creator**

Contemporary approaches and interpretations of the doctrines of revelation and creation.

**378.201 Church, Ministry and Sacraments**

A study of ecclesiology carried out in the framework of the doctrine of the Holy Spirit and eschatology.

**378.202 Christology**

An introduction to the study of christology covering both historical and theological developments.

**\*378.203 Sacramental Theology**

A study of sacramentality in Christian thought and practice. The paper will focus particularly on such areas as initiation, eucharist, reconciliation, healing, marriage and ministry.

**378.205 Special Topic: In 1991, Contemporary Christian Thought from a Feminist Perspective**

An exploration of contemporary Christian feminist thought in dialogue with the Christian tradition and the experience of women.

**378.206 Theology and Science**

A study of some of the inter-relationships between theology and science.

**Stage III**

**378.300 God as Spirit and Trinity**

(a) Holy Spirit: the doctrine of the Spirit in the Bible, historical developments of the doctrine, justification and sanctification, contemporary discussions of the Spirit in relation to the Church; (b) Trinity: the biblical foundations of the doctrine of the Trinity, historical developments of the doctrine, relation of the doctrine to the Christian understanding of God and the life of faith.

**378.302 Issues in Contemporary Theology**

This will be a seminar paper in which students will be invited to study and then respond, through seminar presentation and written work, in a number of theological areas where transformation is taking place.

**\*378.303 Religions of the World**

A paper in which the thought of the major religions of the world will be studied, as well as the religious dimension of culture in New Zealand. The approach will be phenomenological.

**\*378.304 Special Topic: Critical Debates in 20th Century Theology.**

**378.305 Dietrich Bonhoeffer and the German Church Struggle**

This course is intended as a detailed study both of the theology of Dietrich Bonhoeffer and of the theological issues (involving revelation, culture, the place of Judaism in Christianity) emerging from the German Church Struggle during the Third Reich.

**378.330 Systematic Theology Research Essay**

This is a reading and research paper for advanced students majoring in Systematic Theology. It is intended to cater for specific study interests or needs not met within the current schedule of paper offerings in Systematic Theology.

**CHURCH HISTORY**

**Stage I**

**379.100 The Church in History to 500 CE**

A thematic study of the history of the Church to 500 CE.

**378.101 Christianity in New Zealand**

The first part of the paper looks at the 19th century in New Zealand: the interaction of the Gospel, missionaries and Maori; settler churches and involvement in the land wars, with one another and with New Zealand society. The second parts looks at the Church in the 20th century.

**379.102 Introduction to Anglicanism**

This course discusses the nature of Anglicanism, with particular attention to four core-themes of history, theology, spirituality and worship.

**379.104 The Church in History to 1500 CE**

A survey of Christian history up to the sixteenth century. The course will introduce students to historical method and to significant events, issues and people.

**Stage II**

**379.200 Church in History: 500-1600**

An examination of the relationship between Church, State and Society in Medieval Europe based on selected themes.

**\*379.201 Reformation Church History**

This paper will cover: (a) early attempts at reform; the conciliar movement, Wyclif and Hus; (b) major focus on the reforming achievements of Luther or Calvin; (c) the radical reformers; (d) the Catholic Reformation; (e) Reformation in England and Scotland.

**379.203 Modern Church History**

A study of the history of the Church from the 17th century to the present day.

**\*379.204 The Baptist Church**

An introduction to the origins, growth and principals of the Baptist church.

**Stage III**

**379.300 Church and Society in the South Pacific**

A study of the history of missionary impact on the South Pacific.

**379.301 Women in the Christian Tradition I**

This course looks at various approaches and problems involved in the study of women in the Christian tradition.

**\*379.302 Women in the Christian Tradition II**

This paper addresses the history of women in the Church from the time of the Reformation until the present day.

**379.303 Twentieth Century Ecumenism**

A seminar studying the origins, development and theology of the ecumenical movement in the 20th century.

**\*379.304 The History of Christian Spirituality**

An examination of aspects of the history of Christian spirituality.

**\*379.325 Special Topic**

This paper would allow for the inclusion under this heading of papers offered by other Departments of the University, for example 24.422, 24.331, 12.400.

**379.330 Church History Research Essay**

This is a reading and research paper for advanced students majoring in Church History. It is intended to cater for specific study interests or needs not met within the current schedule of paper offerings in Church History.

**GROUP E****MORAL AND PRACTICAL THEOLOGY****Stage I****380.100 Introduction to Pastoral Care**

Introduction to the principles and theology of pastoral care and counselling.

**\*380.110 Christian Missions in History and Culture**

An introduction to some of the major issues facing Christian educators.

**380.115 Spirituality and Justice I**

This paper will examine the Christian call to justice through a study of the scriptures and Church social teaching. It will explore foundational aspects of a spirituality of justice.

**380.130 Liturgics**

This paper will explore the theology and practice of contemporary Christian worship in various social and cultural contexts, especially in Aotearoa-New Zealand.

**380.120 Religious Education - Faith and Learning**

An introduction to some of the major issues facing Christian educators.

**380.135 Introduction to Anglicanism**

This course discusses the nature of Anglicanism, with particular attention to four core-themes of history, theology, spirituality and worship

**380.140 Christian Ethics I**

An introduction to the sources, methods, and praxis of Christian ethics.

**380.150 Cross Cultural Studies**

This paper draws attention to the social knowledge and understanding of all the participants and utilizes this knowledge to examine the cultural, political and social implications for contemporary New Zealand society and to develop greater awareness, sensitivity and appropriate actions which express the demands of justice, reconciliation and human liberation.

**Stage II****380.200 Pastoral Care II**

Major areas of pastoral care and counselling in the context of theory and theology.

**380.201 Human Development and Pastoral Care**

A consideration of the phases of human development and their relationship to pastoral care.

**380.204 Clinical Pastoral Education**

An intensive programme of 400 hours of supervised pastoral ministry, often undertaken in the context of a clinical setting, usually over a ten week period.

**380.210 Theology of Mission**

An examination of theology of mission.

**380.211 Church and Society**

This paper will examine the social imperative of ministry, the biblical and theological roots of social ministry, the interface between church and society, the social and political implications of the Gospel, together with models of social ministry, including community development.

**380.212 Mission in an Urban Context**

A study of justice, politics and power as they relate to specific issues of urban ministry.

**380.215 Spirituality and Justice II**

This paper will study contemporary social issues from a Christian perspective with an emphasis on Aotearoa-New Zealand. It will explore emerging themes for developing a spirituality of justice.

**380.225 Homiletics**

The theory and practice of preaching.

**\*380.226 Communication of Faith**

A study of the theology and practice of evangelism.

**380.230 Christian Ritual**

This paper will explore symbols and ritual, particularly in relation to the major Christian liturgies. It will include aspects of inculturation with research on and participation in rituals.

**380.235 Liturgical Prayer: The Languages of Time, Space and Music**

This paper explores Christian approaches to time, space and music as expressions of liturgical prayer in the tradition and in contemporary experience.

**380.240 Christian Ethics II**

A study of historical and contemporary Christian ethical thought and praxis and its relation to theology and philosophy. A special study will be made of the understanding of grace in Christian thought and its relation to ethical practice.

**380.250 Maori Perspectives**

This paper examines Maori perspectives on Maori society in the past and today.

**Stage III****380.300 Advanced Pastoral Care**

The paper is based on the action-reflection model and will focus upon the evaluation of theologically related distinctions of pastoral care and counselling.

**380.303 Special Pastoral Project**

This is a reading and research paper for advanced students majoring in Practical Theology. It is intended to cater for specific study interests or needs not met within the current schedule of paper offerings in Pastoral Care.

---

# Higher Degrees

## *Contents*

---

|               |     |                                 |
|---------------|-----|---------------------------------|
| Degree Course | 416 | Degree of Doctor of Literature  |
| Regulations   | 417 | Degree of Doctor of Science     |
|               | 418 | Degree of Doctor of Laws        |
|               | 419 | Degree of Doctor of Engineering |

---

The University offers higher doctorates in Literature, Science, Laws, and Engineering. As at other universities, these are primarily designed for graduates of the University who have subsequently published original work that has over a period given them authoritative international standing in their field. The higher doctorate is thus to be seen as a recognition of real distinction in one of these areas of study. It will be awarded rarely and after rigorous examination of a substantial and significant corpus of material.

Candidates intending to submit for examination are advised to obtain the notes *Guidance for Candidates* from the Registrar, The University of Auckland, before submitting.

## DEGREE COURSE REGULATIONS

### THE DEGREE OF DOCTOR OF LITERATURE LittD

#### General Provisions

1. Other than in exceptional circumstances, a candidate for the Degree of Doctor of Literature shall be a graduate of the University of Auckland, or that of the University of New Zealand.
2. No candidate shall present himself for the Degree of Doctor of Literature until at least eight years after graduation to his or her first degree.
3. The Degree of Doctor of Literature shall be awarded for an original contribution (or contributions) of special excellence to linguistics, literary, philosophical, social or historical knowledge.
4. The Degree shall be awarded only on work, whether sole or conjoint, published in book form or in scholarly journals in general circulation.
5. No work shall be considered for the Degree if the work, or major portion thereof, has previously formed the basis of an award of any degree or diploma in this or any other University.
6. A candidate shall make application in writing to be examined, and such application, accompanied by the fees prescribed in the Fees Regulations, shall be lodged with the Registrar together with:
  - (a) three copies of the work to be examined;
  - (b) a statutory declaration which shall:
    - (i) state the extent to which the work is the candidate's own, and (in the case of a conjoint work) identify as clearly as possible which parts are the candidate's own; and
    - (ii) state what portion (if any) of the work submitted has been previously presented for a degree or diploma of the University of Auckland or any other University; and
    - (iii) declare that the work in substantially its present form has not been previously accepted for the award of a degree or diploma in this or any other University and is not being concurrently submitted for a degree or diploma in any other University.

#### Examination Procedure

7. As soon as possible after the application has been lodged, the Senate shall appoint a Moderator who shall:
  - (a) consider the work and submit, through the Registrar, a preliminary report, which shall indicate whether, in his or her opinion, the examination should proceed; and
  - (b) state the names of not fewer than two persons recommended as suitable examiners in the field covered by the work submitted, provided that the Senate in appointing examiners under Regulation 9 of these Regulations shall not be restricted to the persons so named.
8. Upon receipt of the report of the Moderator the Senate shall decide whether to proceed with the examination. If the Senate determines that the examination shall not proceed or that the degree shall not be awarded (Regulation 12) the candidate may not lodge a further application to be examined for a higher degree until a period of five years or more has elapsed from the date of Senate's decision. If the examination is not to proceed the candidate shall be entitled to a refund of one half of the fees paid under Regulation 6 of these Regulations.
9. (a). If the examination is to proceed the Senate shall appoint two independent External Examiners of whom at least one shall be resident outside New Zealand, provided that the Senate may in its discretion appoint an additional Examiner who may be a member of the teaching staff of the University of Auckland.  
 (b). The contents of the Moderator's report shall not be communicated to the Examiners.
10. The duties of each Examiner shall be:
  - (a) to report independently on the quality of the work and its value as a significant contribution to learning; and
  - (b) to recommend whether or not the Degree should be awarded, provided that where the recommendation is that the Degree should not be awarded, the Examiner may recommend that the candidate be permitted to re-submit the work with further published work at a later date. A re-submission shall be accompanied by a further full examination fee.
11. All reports and other communications shall be sent to the Registrar who shall refer them to the Moderator.
12. The Moderator shall place the reports of the Examiners before the Senate which shall determine whether or not the Degree shall be awarded.
13. Notwithstanding anything in Regulation 12 of these Regulations the Moderator shall, where only two Examiners have been appointed and their recommendations are conflicting, submit to the Senate the name of a further person qualified to act as an Examiner and in such case the Senate shall appoint the person so named or some other suitable person to be an additional Examiner to furnish an independent report in accordance with the provisions of Regulation 10 of these Regulations, which shall be considered by the Senate together with the other reports.

## THE DEGREE OF DOCTOR OF SCIENCE DSc

### General Provisions

1. Other than in exceptional circumstances, a candidate for the Degree of Doctor of Science shall be a graduate of the University of Auckland, or of the University of New Zealand.
2. No candidate shall present himself or herself for the Degree of Doctor of Science until at least eight years after graduation to his first degree.
3. The Degree of Doctor of Science shall be awarded for an original contribution (or contributions) of special excellence in some branch of pure or applied science.
4. The Degree shall be awarded only on work, whether sole or conjoint, published in book form or in scholarly journals in general circulation.
5. No work shall be considered for the Degree if the work, or a major portion thereof, has previously formed the basis of an award of any degree or diploma in this or any other University.
6. A candidate shall make application in writing to be examined, and such application, accompanied by the fees prescribed in the Fees Regulations, shall be lodged with the Registrar together with:
  - (a) three copies of the work to be examined;
  - (b) a statutory declaration which shall:
    - (i) state the extent to which the work is the candidate's own, and (in the case of a conjoint work) identify as clearly as possible which parts are the candidate's own; and
    - (ii) state what portion (if any) of the work, submitted had been previously presented for a degree or diploma of the University of Auckland or any other University; and
    - (iii) declare that the work in substantially its present form has not been previously accepted for the award of a degree or diploma in this or any other University and is not being concurrently submitted for a degree or diploma in any other University.

### Examination Procedure

7. As soon as possible after the application has been lodged, the Senate shall appoint a Moderator who shall:
  - (a) consider the work and submit, through the Registrar, a preliminary report, which shall indicate whether, in his or her opinion, the examination should proceed; and
  - (b) state the names of not fewer than two persons recommended as suitable Examiners in the field covered by the work submitted, provided that the Senate in appointing Examiners under Regulation 9 of these Regulations shall not be restricted to the persons so named.
8. Upon receipt of the report of the Moderator the Senate shall decide whether to proceed with the examination. If the Senate determines that the examination shall not proceed or that the degree shall not be awarded (Regulation 12) the candidate may not lodge a further application to be examined for a higher degree until a period of five years or more has elapsed from the date of Senate's decision. If the examination is not to proceed the candidate shall be entitled to a refund of one half of the fees paid under Regulation 6 of these Regulations.
9. (a). If the examination is to proceed the Senate shall appoint two independent External Examiners of whom at least one shall be resident outside New Zealand.  
 (b). The contents of the Moderator's report shall not be communicated to the Examiners.
10. The duties of each Examiner shall Be:
  - (a) to report independently on the quality of the work and its value as a significant contribution to learning; and
  - (b) to recommend whether or not the Degree should be awarded, provided that where the recommendation is that the Degree should not be awarded, the Examiner may recommend that the candidate be permitted to re-submit the work with further published work at a later date. A re-submission shall be accompanied by a further full examination fee.
11. All reports and other communications shall be sent to the Registrar who shall refer them to the Moderator.
12. The Moderator shall consider the reports of the Examiners and prepare a final report based upon them which, together with the reports of the Examiners, shall be placed before the Senate and the Senate shall determine whether or not the Degree shall be awarded.
13. Notwithstanding anything in Regulation 12 of these Regulations, the Moderator shall, where the Examiners' recommendations are conflicting, submit to the Senate the name of a further person qualified to act as an Examiner, and in such case the Senate shall appoint the person so named or some other suitable person to be an additional Examiner to furnish an independent report in accordance with the provisions of Regulation 10 of these Regulations, which shall be considered by the Senate together with the other reports.

## THE DEGREE OF DOCTOR OF LAWS LLD

### General Provisions

1. Other than in exceptional circumstances, a candidate for the Degree of Doctor of Laws shall be a graduate of the University of Auckland, or of the University of New Zealand.
2. No candidate shall be eligible for the award of Degree of Doctor of Laws until at least eight years after graduation to his or her first degree.
3. The Degree of Doctor of Laws, shall be awarded for an original contribution (or contributions) of special excellence to the history, philosophy, exposition or criticism of law.
4. The Degree shall be awarded on work, whether sole or conjoint, published in book form or in scholarly journals in general circulation, but in addition to the published work the candidate may submit unpublished work in support of the application.
5. No work shall be considered for the Degree if the work or a major portion of it has previously formed the basis of an award of any degree or diploma in this or any other University.
6. Written application to be examined for the Degree, accompanied by the fees prescribed in the Fees Regulations, shall be lodged with the Registrar together with:
  - (a) three copies of the work to be examined; and
  - (b) a statutory declaration which shall:
    - (i) state the extent to which the work is the candidate's own, and (in the case of a conjoint work) identify as clearly as possible which parts are the candidate's own; and
    - (ii) state what portion (if any) of work submitted has been previously presented for a degree or diploma of the University of Auckland or any other University; and
    - (iii) declare that the work in substantially its present form has not been previously accepted for the award of a degree or diploma in this or any other University and is not being concurrently submitted for a degree or diploma in any other University.

### Examination Procedure

7. As soon as possible after the application has been lodged, the Senate shall appoint a Moderator who shall:
  - (a) consider the work and submit, through the Registrar, a preliminary report, which shall indicate whether, in his or her opinion, the examination should proceed; and
  - (b) state the names of not fewer than two persons recommended as suitable examiners in the field covered by the work submitted but the Senate in appointing examiners under Regulation 9 of these Regulations shall not be restricted to the persons so named.
8. Upon receipt of the report of the Moderator the Senate shall decide whether to proceed with the examination. If the Senate determines that the examination shall not proceed or that the degree shall not be awarded (Regulation 12) the candidate may not lodge a further application to be examined for a higher degree until a period of five years or more has elapsed from the date of Senate's decision. If the examination is not to proceed the candidate shall be entitled to a refund of one half of the fees paid under Regulation 6 of these Regulations.
9. (a). If the examination is to proceed the Senate shall appoint two independent External Examiners of whom at least one shall be resident outside New Zealand, and the Senate may in its discretion appoint an additional Examiner who may be a member of the teaching staff of the University of Auckland.  
 (b). The contents of the Moderator's report shall not be communicated to the Examiners.
10. The duties of each Examiner shall be:
  - (a) to report independently on the quality of the work and its value as a significant contribution to learning; and
  - (b) to recommend whether or not the Degree should be awarded. Where the recommendation is that the Degree should not be awarded the Examiner may recommend that the candidate be permitted to re-submit the work together with further published work at a later date. A re-submission shall be accompanied by a further full examination fee.
11. All reports and other communications shall be sent to the Registrar who shall refer them to the Moderator.
12. The Moderator shall place the reports of the Examiners before the Senate which shall determine whether or not the Degree shall be awarded.
13. Notwithstanding anything in Regulation 12 of these Regulations the Moderator shall, where only two Examiners have been appointed and their recommendations are conflicting, submit to the Senate the name of a further person qualified to act as an Examiner and in such case the Senate shall appoint the person so named or some other suitable person to be an additional Examiner to furnish an independent report in accordance with the provisions of Regulation 10 of these Regulations, which shall be considered by the Senate together with the other reports.

## THE DEGREE OF DOCTOR OF ENGINEERING DEng

### General Provisions

1. Other than in exceptional circumstances, a candidate for the Degree of Doctor of Engineering shall be a graduate of the University of Auckland, or of the University of New Zealand.
2. No candidate shall present himself or herself for the Degree of Doctor of Engineering until at least eight years after graduation to his or her first degree.
3. The Degree of Doctor of Engineering shall be awarded for an original contribution (or contributions) of special excellence in some branch of Engineering of Technology.
4. The Degree shall be awarded only on work, whether sole or conjoint, published in book form or in scholarly journals in general circulation or as designs and inventions; but in addition the candidate may submit unpublished work in support of the application.
5. No work shall be considered for the Degree if the work, or major portion thereof, has previously formed the basis of an award of any degree or diploma in this or any other University.
6. Written application to be examined for the Degree, accompanied by the fees prescribed in the Fees Regulations, shall be lodged with the Registrar together with:
  - (a) three copies of the work to be examined; and
  - (b) a statutory declaration which shall:
    - (i) state the extent to which the work is the candidate's own, and (in the case of a conjoint work) identify as clearly as possible which parts are the candidate's own; and
    - (ii) state what portion (if any) of work submitted has been previously presented for a degree or diploma of the University of Auckland or any other University; and
    - (iii) declare that the work in substantially its present form has not been previously accepted for the award of a degree or diploma in this or any other University and is not being concurrently submitted for a degree or diploma in any other University.

### Examination Procedure

7. As soon as possible after the application has been lodged, the Senate shall appoint a Moderator who shall:
  - (a) consider the work and submit, through the Registrar, a preliminary report, which shall indicate whether, in his or her opinion, the examination should proceed; and
  - (b) state the names of not fewer than two persons recommended as suitable examiners in the field covered by the work submitted but the Senate in appointing examiners under Regulation 9 of these Regulations shall not be restricted to the persons so named.
8. Upon receipt of the report of the Moderator the Senate shall decide whether to proceed with the examination. If the Senate determines that the examination shall not proceed or that the degree shall not be awarded (Regulation 12) the candidate may not lodge a further application to be examined for a higher degree until a period of five years or more has elapsed from the date of Senate's decision. If the examination is not to proceed the candidate shall be entitled to a refund of one half of the fees paid under Regulation 6 of these Regulations.
9.
  - (a). If the examination is to proceed the Senate shall appoint two independent External Examiners of whom at least one shall be resident outside New Zealand.
  - (b). The contents of the Moderator's report shall not be communicated to the Examiners.
10. The duties of each Examiner shall be:
  - (a) to report independently on the quality of the work and its value as a significant contribution to learning; and
  - (b) to recommend whether or not the Degree should be awarded. Where the recommendation is that the Degree should not be awarded the Examiner may recommend that the candidate be permitted to re-submit the work together with further published work at a later date. A re-submission shall be accompanied by a further full examination fee.
11. All reports and other communications shall be sent to the Registrar who shall refer them to the Moderator.
12. The Moderator shall consider the reports of the Examiners and prepare a final report based upon them which, together with the reports of the Examiners, shall be placed before the Senate; and Senate shall determine whether or not the Degree shall be awarded.
13. Notwithstanding anything in Regulation 12 of these Regulations, the Moderator shall, where the Examiner's recommendations are conflicting, submit to the Senate the name of a further person qualified to act as an Examiner. In that case the Senate shall appoint the person so named or some other suitable person to be an additional Examiner to furnish an independent report in accordance with the provisions of Regulation 10 of these Regulations, which shall be considered by the Senate together with the other reports.

---

# Inter Faculty

## *Contents*

---

|                                      |     |                                |
|--------------------------------------|-----|--------------------------------|
| <b>Degree Course<br/>Regulations</b> | 421 | Degree of Master of Philosophy |
|                                      | 421 | Degree of Doctor of Philosophy |

---

|   |     |                            |
|---|-----|----------------------------|
| <b>Certificate<br/>Course<br/>Regulations</b> | 423 | Certificate of Proficiency |
|   | 424 | Transitional Certificate   |

---

|                                  |     |                     |
|----------------------------------|-----|---------------------|
| <b>Inter Faculty<br/>Studies</b> | 424 | Operations Research |
|----------------------------------|-----|---------------------|

---

|  |     |   |
|--|-----|---|
| <b>Intermediate<br/>Courses for other<br/>Universities</b> | 425 | Intermediate Courses for Degrees and Diplomas |
|--|-----|---|



## DEGREE COURSE REGULATIONS

### THE DEGREE OF MASTER OF PHILOSOPHY MPhil

**Note:** A student who has qualified for a Bachelor's Degree in one Faculty but who wishes to take a Master's course which is only available in another Faculty may be permitted by Senate to do so for the Degree of Master of Philosophy.

Permission will normally be given where the Senate is satisfied that the student holds qualifications at least equivalent to the prerequisites for the Master's course concerned. In some cases, instead of MPhil, the Master's Degree of the Faculty will be approved as the course for a student particularly appropriately qualified (e.g. a student qualified in Engineering but with a Bachelor's Degree in another Faculty may be permitted to take a Master's course in Engineering for ME instead of MPhil).

*The personal course of study of every candidate must be approved by the Senate. Approval will normally be granted for courses which are in accordance with the following Regulations: for general provisions affecting their courses of study students are referred to the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General), and the Examination Regulations.*

#### General Provisions

1. Subject to the Admission Regulations, a candidate before enrolment for this Degree shall have been:
  - (a) admitted or qualified for admission to a Bachelor's Degree of this or any other University; and
  - (b) have been approved by the Senate as qualified to pursue a course of study for a Master's Degree in a particular Faculty, but the content of whose first degree is, in the opinion of the Senate, not sufficiently similar to the normal Bachelor's Degree in that Faculty.

#### Course Content

2. Every candidate for the Degree of Master of Philosophy shall comply with the Course Regulations for a Master's Degree prescribed in the Faculty in which the course of study is being pursued.
3. The Degree shall be awarded by the Senate after receipt of a certificate from the Head of the Department in which the course for the degree has been taken, stating that the candidate has completed the prescribed requirements.

#### Honours

4.
  - (a). There shall be two classes of Honours: First Class Honours and Second Class Honours. Second Class Honours shall be awarded in two divisions, First Division and Second Division.
  - (b). Honours shall not be awarded if the papers in the first year in which a candidate takes an examination for the Degree are unsatisfactory or if the thesis at its first presentation is unsatisfactory: provided, however, that a candidate whose performance at a written examination has been seriously impaired by illness or injury or exceptional circumstances beyond his or her control (certified under the aegrotat or compassionate pass provisions of the Examination Regulations) may elect, instead of applying for an aegrotat or compassionate pass, to take a subsequent written examination so that he or she shall still be eligible for the award of Honours, subject to the provision of subclause (c) of this Regulation.
  - (c). A candidate shall be eligible for the award of Honours only if he or she completes the requirements for Honours within three years of first enrolment for this Degree: provided that this period may be extended, in exceptional cases, by the Senate.
5. These Regulations shall come into force on 1 January, 1971.

### THE DEGREE OF DOCTOR OF PHILOSOPHY PhD

*The personal course of study of every candidate must be approved by the Senate. Approval will normally be granted for courses which are in accordance with the following Regulations: for general provisions affecting their courses of study students are referred to the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General), and the Examination Regulations.*

1. Every candidate for the Degree of Doctor of Philosophy shall apply to the Head of his Department for registration as such, showing:
  - (a) that he or she has the requisite preliminary qualification set out in Regulation 2 hereof; and
  - (b) that he or she has adequate training and ability to pursue a course of advanced study and research.
2. The preliminary qualification shall be:
  - (a) qualification for admission to a Bachelor's Degree with Honours, or a Bachelor's (Honours) Degree, or a Master's Degree with Honours of this University, or
  - (b) qualification for admission to a Master's Degree First Class or Second Class, or
  - (c) qualification for admission to the Degree of Bachelor of Medicine and Bachelor of Surgery together with evidence that the candidate has carried out research which, in the opinion of the Senate, is satisfactory evidence of the candidate's ability to pursue a course of advanced study and research for this Degree;
  - (d) in the case of a graduate of another University, admission to the course under the provisions of the Admission Regulations, or
  - (e) any other qualifications approved by the Senate in the particular case of any candidate.
3.
  - (a). The Senate (Deans Committee) having received a recommendation from the Head of the Department concerned (or in Engineering and Medicine and Human Biology, from the Dean concerned) shall determine if the candidate may be registered and the date and conditions of that registration.

- (b). The recommendation for registration shall include: (i) the field of study (ii) the date of registration (iii) the name of a supervisor or supervisors from members of the academic staff (iv) satisfactory evidence of the candidate's training and ability to pursue the proposed course of study (v) a statement of any language or other requirement which the candidate must satisfy as part of the course of study (vi) where submitted by the Dean of Engineering, a description of the papers required in terms of clause 8 (a) of these Regulations.
- (c). An application for registration from a qualified candidate may be declined by the Senate, acting upon the recommendation of the Head of Department, if appropriate supervision and resources are not available.
4. A candidate for a Master's Degree may, after the completion of at least one year's work for that Degree at a standard considered satisfactory by the Senate, be registered as a candidate for the Degree of Doctor of Philosophy. Any such candidate so registered may be allowed credit for the work for the Master's course if that work can form part of the doctoral thesis. The date of registration shall not be earlier than the end of the academic year in which he or she completed papers for a Master's of Bachelor's Degree with Honours.
5. (a). After being registered as a candidate for the Degree of Doctor of Philosophy the candidate shall pursue a course of advanced study and research at the University to the satisfaction of the Head of the Department and the Supervisor for a period of at least two calendar years from the date of registration, during which he or she shall work at the advanced study and research full time under the supervision of a teacher in the University; provided that:
- (i) laboratory work may be carried out in an approved institution outside the University for such limited period or periods as may be determined from time to time by the Senate;
  - (ii) field work may be carried out at such places and for such periods as the Senate may determine;
  - (iii) research requiring the use at first hand of documents or books not available within the University may be undertaken in an approved institution outside the University, for such period or periods and on such conditions as may be determined from time to time by the Senate;
  - (iv) when a candidate has completed the initial period of two years full-time study and research he or she may apply to the Senate for permission to continue as a part-time candidate. Any such application must be supported by the Supervisor and the Head of the Department.
- (b). For the purpose of this Regulation a candidate shall be deemed to work full-time if he or she has no occupation other than his or her study or research; provided that he or she may:
- (i) with the approval of his Supervisor and the Head of the Department engage for an average period of not more than six hours per week in academic work other than his or her study or research;
  - (ii) take such statutory, recreational and other holidays as are normally incidental to full-time occupation.
6. (a). Notwithstanding anything in Regulation 5, a part-time member of the academic staff
- (i) engaged in teaching or in laboratory supervision (or in both) for not more than twelve hours a week on average over the teaching weeks of the year, and
  - (ii) with no other occupation may register as a candidate for the Degree of Doctor of Philosophy. After being so registered he or she shall pursue a course of advanced study and research at the University over a period which shall, except in special circumstances to be determined by the Senate, be of at least three calendar years from the date of registration, to the satisfaction of the Head of Department and the Supervisor.
- (b). Notwithstanding anything in Regulation 5, a full-time member of the academic staff, other than a Head of the Department, may register as a candidate for the Degree of Doctor of Philosophy. After being so registered he or she shall pursue a course of advanced study and research at the University over a period which shall, except in special circumstances to be determined by the Senate, be of at least four calendar years from the date of his or her registration to the satisfaction of the Head of his or her Department and the Supervisor.
- (c). Notwithstanding anything in Regulation 5, a full-time member of the teaching staff of a Teachers' College in the Auckland area or a Technical Institute in the Auckland area or member of the staff of a recognised Research Organisation may apply for registration for the Degree of Doctor of Philosophy and shall submit with such application a statement from the Principal of the College or Institute or Head of Research Organisation that the candidate's College or Institute or Research Organisation work is such as to allow him or her to pursue a course at the University for the Degree of Doctor of Philosophy. After being registered the candidate shall pursue to the satisfaction of the Head of his or her Department and the Supervisor, a course of advanced study and research at the University over a period of at least four calendar years from the date of registration.
- (d). Notwithstanding anything in Regulation 5, a candidate who, by reason of occupation or other responsibilities, is unable to enrol full-time, and to whom paragraphs (a), (b) and (c) of this Regulation do not apply, may register for a PhD, provided that Senate (Deans Committee) is satisfied, on the evidence of the supervisor and Head of Department, that the candidate would be able to attempt at least the equivalent of two years full-time study within an initial period of four years enrolment.
7. The supervisor shall submit to the Senate, through the Head of the Department, a brief report on the progress of the candidate at the end of each year, provided that in the case of a candidate who is a member of the teaching staff of a Teachers' College or Technical Institute or member of the staff of a recognised Research Organisation the Supervisor shall submit a report at the end of each six months. A candidate's registration may be terminated by the Senate if an unfavourable report is received.

8. (a). A candidate for the Degree of Doctor of Philosophy in Engineering shall take three papers prescribed for the Degree of Master of Engineering or papers deemed by the Deans Committee to be equivalent provided that the Senate on the recommendation of the Deans Committee may waive or modify this requirement.  
(b). A candidate shall not be eligible to enrol for any other course while registered for the Degree of Doctor of Philosophy unless he or she obtains the prior permission of the Senate.
  9. (a). A candidate who has fulfilled the conditions required by these Regulations may apply at any time within six years from the date of registration to the Registrar to be examined provided that a full-time member of the academic staff, or a member of the teaching staff of a Teachers' College or Technical Institute or a member of the staff of a recognised Research Organisation, or any candidate registered in accordance with Regulation 6 (d) above, may apply at any time within eight years and this period may in special circumstances be extended by the Senate for a full-time member of the academic staff who has not while registered for the Degree been a full-time research student.  
(b). A candidate shall submit to the Registrar three bound copies of a thesis embodying the results of his or her research which shall be retained by the University.
- Note:** An abstract is to be submitted with each copy of the thesis, see Examination Regulation 15.
10. (a). After having accepted the candidate's application to be examined the Senate shall, upon the recommendation of the Head of the Department, approve the title of the thesis and shall appoint as examiners:
    - (i) the Supervisor or Supervisors,
    - (ii) one person, who shall also act as Oral Examiner, and who may be a member of the staff of this University if there is no specialist in the field at another University in New Zealand, and
    - (iii) one person who may not be a member of the staff of this University except in such circumstances as the Senate thinks fit.
 (b). The Senate may, on the recommendation of the Head of the Department, appoint a further Examiner and in exceptional circumstances two further Examiners.
  11. The Supervisor shall forward to the Registrar a certificate stating that the work described in the thesis was carried out by the candidate under his or her supervision and that the conditions laid down in Regulation 5 or 6 have been fulfilled.
  12. (a). A copy of the thesis shall be submitted to each examiner who shall report on the thesis independently. Except where the Vice-Chancellor acting on the advice of the Examiners otherwise authorises, the Supervising Examiner and one External Examiner shall together examine the candidate orally in the subject of the thesis and on the general field to which the subject belongs. The oral examination shall be held after the reports from all the examiners have been received, and not sooner than six weeks after the submission of the thesis, except in very special circumstances and with the approval of the Senate. At the request of the Oral Examiners the candidate may be required to take a written examination. The Oral Examiners shall make a joint report to the Senate on the whole examination. The Examiners may recommend that a thesis, not considered entirely suitable by them for acceptance, may be revised by the candidate for re-submission on one further occasion only.  
(b). Where a candidate registered for this Degree who has not qualified for or been awarded a Master's Degree of this University submits or re-submits a thesis not considered entirely suitable to the examiners, the Senate may recommend that the thesis be submitted for a Master's Degree without Honours in the appropriate Faculty provided that the candidate satisfies all other requirements for that Master's Degree.
  13. Senate may, in such exceptional circumstances as it thinks fit, approve a personal course of study which does not conform to the foregoing Regulations.

---

## CERTIFICATE COURSE REGULATIONS

---

### CERTIFICATE OF PROFICIENCY COP

*The personal course of study of every candidate must be approved by the Senate. Approval will normally be granted for courses which are in accordance with the following Regulations: for general provisions affecting their courses of study students are referred to the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General), and the Examination Regulations.*

1. In these Regulations a "pass" means a pass in any paper or subject or in any examinable part of a subject. "Certificate of Proficiency" means a certificate issued by the University as to a pass otherwise than for a degree or diploma.
2. With the permission of the Senate a matriculated student may be enrolled under the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General) for the purpose of obtaining a Certificate of Proficiency.
3. To obtain a Certificate of Proficiency a student who is enrolled under Regulation 2 must comply with the provisions of the Examination Regulations and pass the appropriate examinations.
4. Where a candidate has sat a paper for Certificate of Proficiency that paper may not be credited towards or repeated for a Master's Honours Degree.

5. Except as provided by Regulation 4 of these Regulations a candidate who has obtained a pass for Certificate of Proficiency may at any time have that pass credited to a degree or diploma; on condition that any prerequisite, corequisite conditions or other requirements prescribed for that degree or diploma have been complied with; but in exceptional circumstances the Senate may exempt the candidate from this requirement.
6. A candidate who (a) has obtained a pass in any subject at Master's level for a Certificate of Proficiency and (b) would have been eligible for Honours if that subject had been presented under the appropriate Master's Degree Regulations, may be awarded a Certificate of Proficiency with Honours of the appropriate class provided in those Regulations.
7. A candidate who (having completed a course of study) has been admitted to a degree, may, subject to the approval of the Senate, enrol for a further course of study prescribed for that degree; and on completing it shall be entitled to be awarded a Certificate of Proficiency.

**Note:** A member of the permanent academic staff of this University with overseas university qualifications may be permitted to enrol for a paper or a subject for Certificate of Proficiency without having to make a formal application for Admission Ad Eundem Statum.

## TRANSITIONAL CERTIFICATE TransCert

*The personal course of study of every candidate must be approved by the Senate. Approval will normally be granted for courses which are in accordance with the following Regulations: for general provisions affecting their courses of study students are referred to the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General), and the Examination Regulations.*

1. Subject to the Admission Regulations a candidate for a Transitional Certificate shall (a) have qualified for admission to a degree in this University and (b) with the approval of the Senate be enrolled in a course prescribed for a Transitional Certificate and (c) follow a course of study of not less than one year and pass the prescribed examinations and (d) comply with such of the prerequisites for that course as shall be specified in each case by the Senate.
2. The completion of the prerequisites for a Transitional Certificate shall have the effect of meeting whichever of MA Regulation 1, MSc Regulation 1, MCom Regulation 1, MBA Regulation 1, LLB Regulation 1, MJur Regulation 1, MPlan Regulation 1, ME Regulation 1, MFA Regulation 1 or MPhil Regulation 2, the Senate shall determine is appropriate, and shall have no other purposes or effect whatever.
3. To be eligible for the award of a Transitional Certificate a candidate shall be required to enrol for the degree to which it leads.
4. The subjects for examination shall be those prescribed for the Degree of BA, BSc, BCom, LLB, BMus, BMus (Performance), BArch, BPA, BPlan, BE, BFA.

## INTER FACULTY STUDIES

### Operations Research

Operations Research can be defined briefly as the application of scientific methods to the management problem. It is widely used in areas such as optimal scheduling, inventory control, decision analysis and many similar applications, both on a short-term basis and to assist in long-range planning.

Training for Operations Research is frequently inter-disciplinary and in the University there are several paths along which Operations Research may be approached. Because of this, major routes are described here, and further reference should be made to relevant prescriptions in the Faculties of Commerce, Engineering and Science.

1. In the Faculty of Science, the Department of Mathematics and Statistics offers courses which contain topics dealing with the theory and methodology of basic stochastic and deterministic techniques in Operations Research. In particular the following papers are relevant:
 

|  |        |
|--|--------|
| Applied Probability                            | 26.380 |
| Optimization in Operations Research            | 26.391 |
| Mathematical Modelling for Operations Research | 26.395 |

 Related papers are available at undergraduate and graduate level towards the Degrees BSc, BSc(Hons), MSc or towards the Diplomas DipCompSci, DipStats. Interested students should consult the Head of the Department of Mathematics and Statistics.
  2. In the Faculty of Commerce students wishing to specialise in Operations Research for the BCom Degree should consider the following papers offered by the Department of Management Science and Information Systems:
 

|                          |        |
|--------------------------|--------|
| Operations Management    | 74.200 |
| Operations Research      | 74.301 |
| Operations Research      | 74.401 |
| Mathematical Programming | 74.402 |

 together with related papers in Accounting, Computer Science, Economics, Engineering, Management Science and Information Systems and Mathematics.
- At the graduate level students may choose courses in Operations Research towards the degrees of MCom or MPhil which may include a thesis or a research essay in this area. Interested students should consult the Head of the Department of Management Science and Information Systems or of Economics.

3. In Engineering students may specialise in Operations Research within the professional degree by taking the Engineering Science Course, which includes:
- |  |        |
|--|--------|
| Operations Research I                    | 54.251 |
| Operations Research II                   | 54.351 |
| Engineering Science Design               | 54.291 |
| Project in Engineering Science           | 54.304 |
| Stochastic Models in Operations Research | 54.352 |
- Appropriate papers in such areas as computation, statistics, industrial administration and transportation are also available. The project topic can be chosen from a wide area of application in industry and corporate administration.
- At the graduate level, students may specialise in Operations Research for the degrees of ME, MPhil and PhD by choosing from:
- |                                  |        |
|----------------------------------|--------|
| Nonlinear Optimization           | 54.422 |
| Studies in Operations Research A | 54.451 |
| Studies in Operations Research B | 54.452 |
| Random Processes                 | 54.454 |
- and related papers (offered by several Engineering Departments) such as Control, Transportation, Micro-processors and Minicomputers.
- Interested students should consult the Head of the Department of Engineering Science.

## INTERMEDIATE COURSE FOR DEGREES OR DIPLOMAS FOR OTHER NZ UNIVERSITIES

Intermediate courses may be taken at the University of Auckland for a number of degrees and diplomas offered by other New Zealand Universities. Enquiries in the first instance must be made to the University concerned before any enrolment for that University is made at the University of Auckland.

A student wishing to enrol at Auckland for an Intermediate course for a degree or diploma at another University is required to include on the enrolment forms the course of study and the University for which it is being taken as an Intermediate e.g. 'ForestInt' (Forestry Intermediate for Canterbury).

A student who decides to remain at Auckland after having passed Intermediate papers for another University's course may apply to have those papers credited to an Auckland course by completing the appropriate form (Abandonment) and paying the prescribed fee of \$12.00.

---

# Centre For Continuing Education Computer Centre

## *Contents*

---

|     |                                 |
|-----|---------------------------------|
| 427 | Centre for Continuing Education |
| 428 | Computer Centre                 |
| 428 | Computer System Regulations     |

## CENTRE FOR CONTINUING EDUCATION

The Centre for Continuing Education is a Department of the University, the special function of which is to create opportunities for the whole community to attend courses and other activities for personal enjoyment and development or advancement of professional knowledge. Nearly all courses are conducted by University academic staff or outside specialists. It makes available to the general public a wide variety of courses in the humanities, sciences, music and the arts. These are usually of ten weeks or longer. Day or weekend seminars are also promoted at the Centre. A number of these will focus on issues of community concern and will have an interdisciplinary perspective.

Adults contemplating degree studies after some years away from formal education are referred to the "New Start" programmes in Arts detailed in the *Calendar* under "Preliminary Courses". Alongside the basic New Start 10 week courses are introductory courses in specific subjects, study skills, workshops and other supportive activities to assist adults recommence formal studies. A specific New Start programme for physically disabled people is offered each year.

The Preliminary Commerce Course is a year-long programme and an examination of bursary-level standard will be given at the end of the course.

The Centre is linked with the N.Z. College for Seniors and the American Elderhostel movement to provide residential educational programmes for older adults. In addition its Educational Travel Programme arranges study tours abroad for New Zealanders of all ages.

Certificate courses are conducted in (i) Adult Education, (ii) Community Studies, (iii) Women's Studies, (iv) School Leadership, (v) Training and Development. Short courses providing professional development for workers in health, education, welfare, recreation, community development are also available. Aspects of the theory and practice of Adult Education are taught in short courses within the Centre and at Stage III and Master's level within the Education Department. The Centre also promotes a wide-ranging series of seminars, courses for such professional groups as engineers, businessmen, teachers, surveyors, valuers. The Centre's Conference organisation team provides administrative services for a range of academic and professional conferences.

Publicity brochures about the Centre's activities are available on request from the Centre for Continuing Education. More information can be obtained by telephoning the Centre, 737-999 extensions 7831 or 7832, writing to the Centre for Continuing Education, University of Auckland, Private Bag, Auckland or calling at the General Office of the Centre, Old Arts Building, 22 Princes Street.

## COMPUTER CENTRE

### Central Computing Services

These are available to users throughout the University and are based on the following systems: Silicon Graphics 4D/240S and Sun 4/330 (Unix service for teaching and research users), VAX 8250 (VMS service, teaching and research) and McDonnell Douglas Series/18 (PICK service for the University's administration). The Centre operates an IBM 4341 on behalf of the Engineering School and an IBM 3081 on behalf of the Centre for Information Science. The latter also supports Library system operations and some administration workload. Remote terminals and printers connected to these systems are installed at key locations throughout the campus and in some offices and laboratories.

### Microcomputer Services

The Centre provides a purchasing service for departments and full-time members of the University wishing to obtain microcomputer units, and a maintenance service supporting them. The Sales Office for equipment and consumable supplies is located in the Centre's entrance foyer.

### Data Communications Network

As part of its support for both mainframe and microcomputer users, the Centre is also responsible for the development and operation of the University's data communications network consisting of cables throughout the campus and fibre-optic and microwave links between them. The network provides connectivity between many of the University's central and distributed computing resources and also gives users access to national and international networks, particularly the NZ Universities' Network (also known as Kawaihiko) and an Internet link to other countries.

### Data Entry

A limited service is available for the entry of data from coding sheets to microcomputer diskettes or into central mainframes.

### Advisory Services

These are available at scheduled times for users or intending users of mainframe services. User notes prepared by Computer Centre staff are available in the ground-floor terminal room and a wide range of reference manuals is available for inspection there.

### General

All use of central computing services is charged against computer resource allocations approved by the University's Computer Committee. The Centre is open from 8 am to 11.30 pm week-days only throughout the year. The mainframe systems operate continuously and terminals to them can be used at any time through

terminals in buildings to which users have entry.

### Centre for Information Science

This Centre, which at present has offices in the Commerce 1 Building, is responsible for approving teaching or research projects using the IBM 3081.

## COMPUTER SYSTEM REGULATIONS

Pursuant to section 22 of the University of Auckland Act, 1961 the Council of the University makes the following Regulations:

1. These Regulations may be cited as the Computer System Regulations 1975 and shall come into force on 1 January 1976.
2. In these Regulations, unless the context otherwise requires - "System" means any Computer system controlled and operated by the Council whether at the Computer Centre established in the University or elsewhere. "Director" in relation to any System means the person authorised by the Council to control it.
3. No student or any other member of the University shall:
  - (a) without authority of the Director gain access or attempt to gain access to the System;
  - (b) obtain or attempt to obtain from the System any information to which he or she is not entitled;
  - (c) use the system to make unauthorised use of any other system, whether in the University or outside it.
  - (d) wilfully impede or attempt to impede the operation or activity of any other user;
  - (e) use or attempt to use the System so as to cause costs to be incurred:
    - (i) by the University, without the consent of his Head of Department and the Head of any other Department concerned;
    - (ii) by any person other than the University, without the consent of that other person.
4. (a). Any breach of Regulation 3 of these Regulations shall be deemed to be a breach of the Disciplinary Regulations of the University.
  - (b). (i) Without prejudice to the application and operation of the Disciplinary Regulations, the Director may exclude from use of the System, for such period as the Director thinks fit, any person who has done anything in breach of Regulation 3 or has misused or attempted to misuse the System in any way.
  - (ii) The Director shall forthwith report any such exclusion to the Vice-Chancellor.
  - (iii) Any person so excluded may appeal to the Council against the exclusion.

**Note:** Application to use a Computer system must be made to the person in control - that is, to the Director of the Computer Centre or, in the case of a system under the control of a Head of Department, to that Head of Department or nominee.



---

# General Student and Staff Information

## Contents

---

|  |     |  |
|--|-----|--|
| <b>Student Services</b>                  | 430 | Academic Dress   |
|  | 430 | Careers Advisory Service                               |
|  | 430 | The Chapel, Chaplains, Newman Hall                     |
|  | 430 | Accommodation Service                                  |
|  | 431 | Halls of Residence                                     |
|  | 431 | Auckland UniServices Limited                           |
|  | 431 | Intellectual Property: Inventions and Patents          |
|  | 431 | Lost Property  |
|  | 432 | Parking  |
|  | 432 | Press Correspondence                                   |
|  | 432 | Counselling Service                                    |
|  | 432 | Clinical Psychology Services                           |
|  | 432 | Student Learning Unit                                  |
|  | 432 | Student Health Service                                 |
|  | 433 | Recreation Centre                                      |
|  | 433 | University Park  |
|  | 433 | The Crèche   |
|  | 433 | Harassment Procedures                                  |
|  | 433 | Telephones   |
|  | 434 | Students' Association                                  |
|  | 435 | New Zealand University Students' Association           |
|  | 435 | University of Auckland Alumni Association              |
|  | 435 | Auckland University Club (Inc.)                        |
|  | 436 | New Zealand Universities Graduates' Association (U.K.) |
| <b>Lecture and Laboratory Timetables</b> | 437 | Lecture Timetable 1991                                 |
|  | 458 | Laboratory Timetable 1991                              |

---

---

## STUDENT SERVICES

---

### ACADEMIC DRESS

The Auckland Branch of the New Zealand Federation of University Women owns a stock of Academic Gowns, Hoods and Caps (black trencher with a tassel and Tudor Bonnets). These are available for hire at all times during the year. Details may be obtained at the Registry. A student completing the requirements for a degree or diploma will receive information regarding the hire of academic dress for the Graduation Ceremony with his or her result card.

---

### CAREERS ADVISORY SERVICE

The Careers Advisory Service has five main functions:

1. To give advice and information to students and graduates of the University about career opportunities, and to put them in touch with prospective employers.
  2. To arrange the Employer Campus Visit programmes - CAREERS EXPO (held throughout the second term) and CAREERS WEEK (held in November after the exams). These programmes provide opportunities for students to meet employers on the campus and discuss employment prospects. An additional special programme, L.E.A.P., Legal Employment Advisory Programme, providing for law students to meet representatives of law firms is arranged during the May vacation.
  3. To maintain a 'Situations Vacant' service, informing students and graduates of specific opportunities offered by employers - circulating this information through direct referrals and departmental noticeboards.
  4. To increase the awareness of the community of the potential benefits of employing University graduates.
  5. To report on the first destination of graduates of the University.
- Students are encouraged to visit the Careers Advisory Service in the early stages of their University course to discuss employment prospects available to them on completion of their study programmes. The Careers Advisory Service is located in the suite of offices behind the Upper Lecture Theatre - inquiries to the Secretary in Room 10. The Service is open during normal University administrative hours. (Phone 737-702/703.)

---

### THE CHAPEL

The Maclaurin Chapel was established under a deed of trust by Sir William Goodfellow, Hon. LLD, in memory of his son, Richard Maclaurin Goodfellow, killed during service with the Fleet Air Arm in World War II, and of Professor Richard Cockburn Maclaurin, one of Auckland's most distinguished graduates. University representatives are included in the Board of Management which is responsible for administering the trust and appointing the Maclaurin Chaplain.

Services conducted in the University Chapel are non-denominational in character, and all members of the University are welcomed. Special Services are held at Orientation, Easter, Graduation, Mid-Year and End of Year. Other Special Services are as advertised. The Chapel may also be used for weddings and funerals of University students and staff and their families.

---

### CHAPLAINS

There are two chaplaincies to the University. The Roman Catholic team is based at the Catholic Student Centre, Newman Hall, 16 Waterloo Quadrant, with a priest, two lay people and a sister on the team (phone 732 097). The Maclaurin chaplaincy is non-denominational. The Chaplain, the Rev. R.J. Galvin, may be contacted in his office in the Chapel complex (phone 737-732).

---

### NEWMAN HALL

Newman Hall is the Catholic Student Centre at 16 Waterloo Quadrant. It is named after Cardinal John Henry Newman, the nineteenth century scholar.

Newman Hall is the centre for the Catholic tertiary students and staff. There is Mass each day at 1.10 pm and 6.00 pm every Wednesday.

The Theological library is at Newman Hall for the use of theology staff and students. Some of the lectures for the Bachelor of Theology degree are held at Newman Hall.

---

### ACCOMMODATION SERVICE

An accommodation service is provided without charge for students of the University. The office, which is situated in room 204 in the Northern Wing of the first floor of the Old Arts Building, has noticeboards giving details of accommodation available for occupation by students.

The University administers two blocks of flats of four or five bedrooms. These flats are leased to groups. Any group wishing to make up their numbers advertises on the Student Accommodation Office notice board so that they can meet prospective flatmates.

---

## HALLS OF RESIDENCE

The University administers two Halls of Residence. One other Hall works within the University system. The Halls offer three meals a day. There is also a University administered self-catering complex. All establishments accommodate both men and women. Applications for admission, which close on 5 October, 1990 should be addressed to the Accommodation Officer, University of Auckland, Private Bag, Auckland. Late applications are accepted for the waiting list.

**Grafton Hall**, Seafield View Road, Grafton, administered by the Presbyterian Methodist Congregational Foundation Inc., and within 15 minutes' walk of the University. Accommodation and full board is provided for 163 students.

**International House**, 27 Whitaker Place, administered by the University and within seven minutes' walk of the campus. Accommodation and full board is provided for 164 students.

**O'Rorke Hall**, 16 Mount Street, administered by the University and about five minutes' walk to the University. Accommodation and full board is provided for 356 students.

**Park Road Student Flats**, Grafton. Accommodation is provided for 44 students (12 in single rooms and 32 in shared rooms). Each room has its own bathroom but residents must share the communal kitchen. The single rooms are reserved for post-graduate students.

---

## AUCKLAND UNISERVICES LIMITED

Auckland UniServices Limited is a company legally separate from the University of Auckland but its shares are held in trust by the University. The objectives of UniServices are to:

- Commercialise university-sourced technology and innovations.

- Provide specialist consulting, testing and teaching services on a commercial basis.

- Carry out research contract work which is of a clearly commercial nature.

- Undertake any other commercial work considered to be advantageous.

- UniServices will evaluate the commercial potential of new ideas, innovations and inventions produced by

- University staff and students and, where there is judged to be a good possibility of commercialisation, will

- arrange patent protection or advise on copyright and/or confidentiality agreements.

The office of UniServices is located on the sixth floor of the School of Engineering and is open during normal working hours (phone 737-999, extensions 7808 and 7809).

All profits made by UniServices will be returned to the University of Auckland.

---

## INTELLECTUAL PROPERTY INCLUDING INVENTIONS AND PATENTS

When staff or students consider that during the course of their University activities a discovery or innovation has occurred which may have possibilities for commercial exploitation, the University requires them to disclose such a discovery to the University by informing the Auckland UniServices Limited. The Board of Directors of Auckland UniServices Limited would, in due course, make a decision as to its assignment to the University, its protection and its course of commercialisation. An agreement between the discoverer(s) and the University would then be entered into, such an agreement describing the obligations of the parties and the division of any income and expenditure.

Members of staff and students should know that prior to the granting of a provisional patent, publication is likely to render any research, result unpatentable. It is not the wish of the University, however, that this circumstance should inhibit the free publication of research work.

Copyright of journal articles and books are not included in the above requirements and the copyright will remain with the author(s).

Where research contract agreements are being negotiated on behalf of the University with clauses regarding the ownership of any future inventions or patents arising from the proposed research, then the University requires that the Auckland UniServices Limited be consulted at an early stage of these negotiations to ensure that no commitments regarding such ownership are made to funding agencies which are in conflict with University policy.

Staff or students are not to use for commercial purposes any invention or development or computer program to which they have had access while at the University without the specific approval of the University obtained through the Head of Department concerned.

---

## LOST PROPERTY

All enquiries regarding lost property should be referred to the Head Custodian of the Enquiries counter in the Registry.

---

## **PARKING**

Street parking is available for two-wheel vehicles in Symonds Street between Alfred and Wellesley Streets, in Alfred Street, in Symonds Street between Grafton Road and the Human Sciences building, Princes Street outside Māhaimā Arts Centre and School of Medicine.

Provision has been made for bicycles on the following areas: Alfred Street - Concourse, Library; Princes Street - Physics Building; Symonds Street - School of Architecture and School of Engineering, Goods Entrance and Lower Lecture Theatre Main Campus, Upper and Lower Concourses, Recreation Centre; Park Road - School of Medicine.

An area in lower Grafton Road (area No. 17) has been set aside for students' cars. Admission is by ticket only, to be purchased at the University Bookshop on production of student identification only. Tickets will be sold in booklets of 20 - \$1.00 per ticket (the 1992 fee being under review.) No charge is made for this area during the weekend or after 4 p.m. on weekdays. Students may use the parking facilities in Wynyard Street (between Grafton and Alten Roads) without charge after 5.45 p.m. any day, and at any time during the weekends.

The parking building at 36 Princes Street is available for general parking after 5.45 each evening and weekends.

---

## **PRESS CORRESPONDENCE**

Members of the University are reminded that it is normal practice to sign Press correspondence as from the University only when the writer has some special competence in the subject discussed. For members of the teaching staff, such subjects would normally be those within the area of their academic competence, and for students, matters of general student concern. Student members should indicate their student status either in the body of the letter or in the address given. On matters of general public interest, all members of the University write in their private capacity.

---

## **COUNSELLING SERVICE**

The Counselling Service is located on the upper floor of the eastern extension of the Old Arts Block, and is staffed by both full-time and part-time Counsellors all of whom are registered psychologists. In addition the service has an Adviser to Overseas Students and a Student Financial Adviser. The purpose of the Financial Adviser is to assist students who are experiencing financial difficulties and especially those in need of emergency cash. Students may also apply to various Trusts for aid, providing they meet the necessary criteria.

The Counselling Service also incorporates a Student Learning Unit which is described below.

Personal counselling and a variety of groups are available, preferably by appointment. Any enquiries should be made to the secretary, phone 737-895 (or internal extension 7895). The Service is free to all enrolled full-time students, some part-time students may be required to pay a small fee and staff are required to pay a fee per consultation (all fees are on a sliding scale). Clients may discuss any personal or social problems in complete confidence, without judgement, criticism or coercion. The Service seeks to help students learn skills for improved relationships and living, to complement their focus upon academic learning.

---

## **CLINICAL PSYCHOLOGY SERVICES**

The Clinical Psychology Services function as part of the training programme for graduate students enrolled in the diploma in Clinical Psychology. Psychology services are offered in the areas of assessment, counselling and therapeutic intervention. The staff are trainee clinical psychologists, supervised by staff members who are experienced and registered psychologists. These services are available to the general public, and students and staff of the University are welcome to make appointments. Clients are assured of complete confidentiality. Fees are charged for each session on a sliding scale dependent on income. All initial sessions are \$15 except for students, who are free. The Clinical Psychology Services are located in the Psychology Department on level 5 of the Human Sciences Building. Appointments can be made by phoning 737-999 Extension 8413.

---

## **STUDENT LEARNING UNIT**

The SLU is located on the upper floor of the eastern extension of the Old Arts Building and is staffed by part-time academic tutors with special skills for helping students develop better skills for learning. Individual consultations are available to enrolled students by appointment, phone 737-999 extension 8850. The Unit has a basic maths skills programme and a basic writing skills for academic purposes programme, as well as groups for such varied topics as reading, computing, calculators, concentration, and memory. Special educational testing and evaluation can be arranged, to assist specific learning requirements. There is a small registration fee for use of the SLU.

---

## **STUDENT HEALTH SERVICE**

This Service is located next to the Counselling Service on the upper floor of the eastern extension of the Old Arts Building.

The service is free and confidential, offering General Practice together with specialised advice for family

planning, psychiatric and psychological problems, S.T.D., gynaecology, immunisation and travel advice and minor surgery.

Appointments can be made by phoning 737-681/2/3. Urgent matters can be seen every week day in a Clinic between 9-10 a.m.

The staff comprises a full-time Medical Director, Pat Mauger, two full-time nurses, Sue Parton and Shirley Bennett, part-time male and female doctors and Reception staff giving advice and information.

There is also a sports medicine service and physiotherapy clinic situated at the Recreation Centre.

---

## RECREATION CENTRE

The Recreation Centre has been planned to meet the comprehensive range of sporting and recreational needs. The facilities available include seven squash courts, a health and fitness studio, a martial arts studio, a dance studio and the main hall which may be used for basketball, hockey, soccer, volleyball, badminton, cricket, netball, table tennis and cricket practice. A fitness assessment laboratory offering sophisticated fitness analysis is also located in the Centre. The operating costs of the centre are met by membership charges paid by users of the centre.

---

## UNIVERSITY PARK

The University Park is a 40 acre sports complex situated in Glen Innes. Sports facilities include rugby, soccer, hockey, Australian rules football and tennis. The Clubrooms contain changing rooms and extensive social facilities.

---

## THE CRECHE

The University operates two crèches primarily available for the children of students but with a limited number of places for those staff. Based on hourly use with a maximum of up to four hours at any one time, both crèches are open from 7.45 a.m. to 5 p.m. Monday to Friday during the University term. Holiday care is available during May and August. The licence is for children aged from 0-5 yrs. Staff are trained in Early Childhood Care and Education. Enrolments are accepted during enrolment week, and early enrolment at that time is advised. Both crèches will be open for casual use from the beginning of February.

For further information telephone Mrs McCulloch Ext. 7755.

Student places are also available at the Park Avenue Childcare Centre. For further information phone 379 729.

---

## HARASSMENT PROCEDURES

The University of Auckland finds harassment whether by staff or students totally unacceptable. It is committed to providing:

- procedures to investigate and/or resolve harassment complaints

- programmes to prevent the occurrence of harassment

**HARASSMENT:** whether on sexual, racial, academic, religious, sexual orientation, disability or other grounds, may involve an abuse of power, discrimination and/or offensive behaviour or unwanted attention in the pursuit of work or study or the use of the University's facilities.

**PROCEDURES:** available for the informal, confidential and expeditious resolution of harassment complaints involve:

The Contact Network, drawn from staff and students throughout the University to listen to complaints, provide support for the complainant and discuss options for dealing with the harassment. Lists of Contact Network members are available at the back of the University internal telephone directory and the "Dealing with Harassment" brochure available from Department Offices and the Students Association Officers.

The Mediator, a staff member available to support the Contact Network, assist in the resolution of harassment complaints and to develop educational and other activities aimed at preventing the occurrence of harassment. The Mediator may be contacted through the Counselling Service. The Mediator's office is located in Room 4, Lower Lecture Theatre.

**STUDENTS OR STAFF USING THE UNIVERSITY FACILITIES SHOULD NOT HESITATE IN USING THESE PROCEDURES IF THEY FEEL THEY ARE BEING HARASSED.**

---

## TELEPHONES

Telephones for student use are provided by the Students' Association in the Student Union Building. In addition, Telecom Card Telephones are provided in the Old Arts Building (Basement South Wing and adjacent to the Bank of New Zealand), the Library Building (first floor by the lifts), the Thomas Building and at the School of Engineering (adjacent to the Library), Human Science Building (adjacent to lecture theatres), School of Architecture (adjacent to the Student Coffee Bar), School of Commerce (in tunnel between Arts and Commerce Buildings), Science Building basement, adjacent to Physics Department, Ground Floor Chemistry Foyer and School of Medicine (adjacent to the Student Common Room.)

Students are not permitted to make or receive outside calls through the University main telephone system except on University business. Telecom cards are available from the University of Auckland Bookshop Limited.

## STUDENTS' ASSOCIATION

The Association is an Incorporated Society which was founded in 1891. For almost 100 years the Students Association (AUSA) has acted for the benefit of students both within and outside the University. The student body is an integral part of the University community and the members of AUSA are involved not only in the control of the University but also in fostering social, political, cultural and sporting activities within the University. AUSA is a society which is concerned with the problems and needs of students in their widest context.

The control of the business and affairs of AUSA lies with the Executive Committee which is elected annually. It is comprised of a full-time President, three part-time Officers and twelve portfolio holders, together with the Secretary - a full-time administration position. The Executive is the official mouthpiece of AUSA and takes action on behalf of AUSA to further students' interests. Through this Executive which acts as a co-ordinating body, AUSA undertakes a wide and varied number of activities.

AUSA is the link between individual students and the academic and administrative staff of the University. Students elect four representatives to Senate, one to the University Council, various representatives to departmental and faculty committees as well as to the committees of Senate and Council. The President is also a member of Council and Senate. Through its Executive, AUSA represents students in matters involving their interests within the University community.

The Students Representative Council is the political and policy making body of AUSA. The SRC acts on any matter of concern to students and all students may attend meetings and vote. These meetings are usually at 1.00 pm in the Quad outside the University Bookshop.

There are over one hundred clubs and societies affiliated to the Association covering many spheres of student interest. The sports clubs cater for almost all sporting interests and most participate in the local Auckland inter-club competitions and in the NZUSU tournaments. The cultural societies cater for a wide range of religious, academic, social, cultural and political interests. Information about these clubs and societies is available from the AUSA reception office. The Association employs a full-time Social Activities Officer and organises a large number of social functions and cultural activities. These include informal dances, the formal Graduation Ball, weekly lunch-time entertainment, film festivals and the annual Capping Festival as well as regular entertainment in the licensed student Club "Shadows". During the first two weeks of the academic year the Association organises the Orientation Festival to acquaint new students with the varied facets of University life. Various welfare activities such as school visits, blood days, emergency accommodation are co-ordinated by the Welfare Officer. The Association also employs a Disabled Students Resource Officer and a Student-Parent Resource Officer. The Disabled Students Resource Officer gives practical help and support to physically disabled students, as well as arranging access improvements, and assisting with enrolling, parking and examination needs. The Student-Parent Resource Officer looks after the needs of students who are also parents.

"*TORSO*" is the weekly newspaper published by the Association during the academic year. Traditionally, it is the vehicle for the expression of student views and news and viewpoints of interest to students, the Editor is elected annually. The Association owns Campus Radio BFM Ltd, which broadcasts on 91.8 FM throughout the year and produces the *MONITOR* magazine.

The Student Union Buildings are occupied by the Association with control and use subject to the Student Union Management Committee, which consists of six students and five University representatives including representatives of the Senate, Council and Sub Professorial staff. There are five separate blocks, with the Administration block containing Reception, Council Room, the offices of Executive, the Disabled Students Resource Officer, the Student Parent Resource Officer, the Finance department, general meeting rooms, the Publications Office, Student Travel and the radio station.

Reception is open from 9 a.m. to 5 p.m. for Association business. Nearby is the University Bookshop in which AUSA has a half interest. Students are entitled to a 10% discount. The Bookshop also provides the Association with a financial contribution in recognition of its marketing assistance. On the same level is the Social Activities Officer and the Custodians. Above these are the main common rooms. Below are the toilets and lockers, which can be hired for the year from the Custodians. The block adjacent to Alfred Street contains the TV Room, the games and billiard room, the sick bay, meeting rooms, Womenspace and the Interim Marae.

The Maidment Arts Centre on the corner of Princes and Alfred Street provides a venue for some of the cultural activities of AUSA and the University. The larger of the two theatres seats 450, while the smaller holds up to 120 people. The Centre is managed by the Theatre Management Committee which comprises five Association and four University members.

The Recreation Centre meets a comprehensive range of sporting and recreation needs. The facilities available include seven squash courts, a health and fitness studio, a martial arts studio, a dance studio and the main hall, which can cater for basketball, hockey, soccer, volleyball, badminton, netball, table tennis or cricket. The operating costs are met by membership charges paid by users of the centre. This centre is managed by the Student Recreation Committee, which comprises four Association and six University representatives. This committee also oversees University Park; 40 acres of facilities for rugby, soccer, hockey, athletics and tennis. The Clubrooms contain changing rooms and extensive social facilities.

The official AUSA Noticeboard outside the Bookshop carries information on activities and meetings as well as details on appointments of Association Representatives. In general, any student may be a representative.

The Cafeteria block is under the supervision of the Catering Manager. The main cafeteria is the only food outlet open on campus during holidays. The catering service provides freshly brewed coffee in most of its outlets and

various vending machines are situated in the student union area for out of hours requirements. The Main Cafeteria is situated on the ground floor of the catering block and provides a range of sandwiches, filled rolls, hot savouries and from the hot servery chips, fish, hot dogs etc to take away. There is a large seating area available adjacent to the cafeteria, term time only. Hours are term time 7.30 a.m. to 3 p.m.; holidays 9 a.m. to 3 p.m. The coffee lounge on the first floor provides a similar range of items but does not have a hot servery. Hours are 9 a.m. to 4 p.m. A budget meal at a subsidised price for students is served on the mezzanine floor each night (term time and holidays) from 4.30 to 6.30 p.m. There is also a chef's special meal which costs a little more. An adjacent restaurant is available for salads, steaks and omelettes. Hours 5 p.m. to 8 p.m. term time only. The milk bar and coffee bar are situated on Alfred Street. The milk bar specialises in milkshakes, thickshakes, ice creams and a wide range of sweets. Opening hours are 8.30 a.m. to 5.30 p.m. The Coffee bar has a juke box and coin operated games machines as well as food and drinks. Daily papers are sold from here and opening hours are 8 a.m. to 9 p.m. During the third term and exam time the coffee bar is open during the weekends from 8 a.m. to 6 p.m.

There are other cafeterias operating in the Human Science block and Engineering and Medical Schools. The AUSA Secondhand Bookstall located in the Functions Room (Second Floor of Student Union Building) runs during the last week of enrolment and throughout the first week of term one. The bookstall provides a valuable service for students wishing to acquire their year's textbooks at a reduced rate. In recent years, the bookstall has been ably staffed and operated by members and friends of the Auckland University Cricket Society. Opening hours are 9.00 am to 6.00pm for taking in books and 10.00 am to 6.00 pm for selling.

## THE NEW ZEALAND UNIVERSITY STUDENTS' ASSOCIATION

Formed in 1929, the New Zealand University Students' Association is the national union of New Zealand's university students, to which all seven local university students' associations are affiliated, giving a total membership of approximately 50,000.

NZUSA acts for students in all matters of national concern. Education and student welfare are NZUSA's major concerns, but it also takes stands on wider social and political issues on which students, through their representatives, have expressed their collective views.

NZUSA's National Office is in Wellington and is headed by the President along with General, Women's, Maori and Education and Welfare Vice-Presidents and two Research Officers. In addition there is one part-time officer, the National Overseas Students' Action Committee Co-ordinator.

NZUSA's policies are made by representatives of its constituent students' associations at Council Meetings twice a year. These policies are carried out under the guidance of the National Executive consisting of the Presidents of the constituent associations and the full-time elected officers of NZUSA.

NZUSA's activities are funded by an annual levy of approximately \$5.90 paid by constituent students' associations on account of each individual member. More information about NZUSA can be gained by contacting AUSA or by writing to the President, P.O. Box 10191, The Terrace, Wellington.

## THE UNIVERSITY OF AUCKLAND ALUMNI ASSOCIATION

The Alumni Association will be established in 1991 to foster links between the University and its thousands of graduates, former students and former staff. It is proposed that the Auckland University District Graduates' Association (Inc.) will be incorporated into the new Alumni Association.

Those eligible to join the Association are all past students, graduate or non-graduate, of the University of Auckland and Auckland University College, all members and past members of the Senate and Council, all members of the Court of Convocation, present and past staff members, and anyone who wishes to associate with the University and contribute towards its development and achievement.

The Alumni Office will be pleased to receive membership enquiries or to give further information about the activities of the Alumni Association. Contact Christine Smith 737-999 extension 7600.

## AUCKLAND UNIVERSITY CLUB (INC.)

Phone: 732-279.

The Auckland University Club Inc., provides the means by which former graduates can maintain close links with other graduates, with present students and with members of the University Staff. It encourages a closer relationship between the University and the professional and business community. The Club is located in its own premises at 23/25 Princes St where the facilities include a restaurant, two bars, private function room, reading room and a pool room.

Membership is open to persons over the age of 20 who are members of the Court of Convocation of the University of Auckland, graduates or diploma holders of other Universities, members of professional societies who have gained a substantial portion of their professional qualifications as students of the University of Auckland, and members of The Auckland University Students' Assn. (Inc.), and other suitable persons. Numbers are limited in terms of the club Charter to 2250. Application forms are available from the Secretary.

## THE NEW ZEALAND UNIVERSITIES GRADUATES ASSOCIATION (UK)

The New Zealand Universities Graduates' Association (UK) was formed in 1967 with the main aim of creating and fostering opportunities for graduates of New Zealand Universities to establish contact with other New Zealand graduates in the United Kingdom of Great Britain and Northern Ireland.

Other objects of the Association are the establishment of links with Universities and University organisations throughout the United Kingdom and New Zealand, and to make known to visitors the names of individuals or organisations who might be helpful to them.

Membership is open to holders of a degree or equivalent professional qualifications and associate membership is available to all members of NZUGA who are not yet graduates. Subscriptions are subject to review and in 1987-88 were member £2, Associate member £1.50, Student £0.75, husband and wife (both qualified) £3. The Secretary will be pleased to receive membership inquiries and give further information. Postal Address: Secretary: Jocelyn Cook, 132 Woodwarde Road, Dulwich, London SE 22, UK.

## LECTURE AND LABORATORY TIMETABLE

The following section contains lecture and laboratory times principally for students taking undergraduate courses in the Faculties of Arts, Commerce, Music and Science.

Timetables for the bulk of lectures in the Faculty of Architecture Property and Planning and the Schools of Engineering, Fine Arts, Law, Medicine, will appear on Departmental noticeboards at the beginning of the session.

Notes:

- (1) The timetable is a basic structure only; additional information is available from each Department.
- (2) Certain classes are held at times arranged by the Department concerned, in particular these are:
  - (i) lectures for Masters degree courses;
  - (ii) tutorials, oral and practical classes (this applies to a large number of subjects).
 In general such classes are not included in this printed timetable; details are placed on Departmental noticeboards or given out at early class meetings.
- (3) Stage I Science lectures are given in sets. Before the beginning of the session students should consult Departmental noticeboards to see which sets of lectures they are required to attend and to confirm the hours shown in the timetable.
- (4) Bracketed papers. Each bracketed paper will be taught at one or more of the times listed. Details are available from the Departments concerned.
- (5) Students will not be permitted to enrol in courses of study that have a clash in lecture times, except with the approval of the Senate.

## ABBREVIATIONS — For Building locations see map at the back of this Calendar.

|           |   |
|-----------|---|
| ACE       | Auckland College of Education, 74 Epsom Avenue, Epsom   |
| Algie LT  | Algie Lecture Theatre, 6th floor, Library Building, corner Princes and Alfred Streets   |
| ALR       | Architecture Lecture Room, Architecture Bldg, 22-26 Symonds St  |
| Arts      | New Arts (Arts1) Building, 14A Symonds Street   |
| Bot LT    | Botany Lecture Theatre, Old Biology Building (access from 3A Symonds Street)  |
| Chem      | Chemistry Building (corner Symonds and Wellesley Streets) contains the Large and Medium Lecture Theatres (Lge Chem, Med Chem) |
| CB        | Commerce B (formerly Classics Building), 5 Symonds Street   |
| CMBio LT  | Cellular and Molecular Biology Lecture Theatre, Room 220 Thomas Building (Access from 3A Symonds Street)                      |
| Comm      | Commerce 1 Building, 14 A Symonds Street  |
| Eng       | Engineering School, 24 Symonds Street   |
| HSB       | Human Science Building (entry from 10 Symonds Street)   |
| Lab 1 - 5 | Lab 1, 2 (8 Grafton Rd); Lab 3 = Arts 213, Lab 4 = Arts 214, Lab 5 = Arts 708   |
| Lib       | Library Building, corner Princes and Alfred Streets (for basement theatres B10, B15, B28)                                     |
| LLT }     | { Lower and Upper Lecture Theatres,   |
| ULT }     |   |
|           | behind Old Arts building (access from 22 Princes Street or 1A Symonds Street)   |
| Manukau   | Manukau Polytechnic, cnr Otara and East Tamaki Roads, Otara   |
| MLT       | Mathematics Lecture Theatres, Physics/Maths Bldg, 36 Princes St   |
| MS        | Maori Studies, 16 Wynyard Street  |
| Northld   | Northland Polytechnic, Whangarei  |
| OA        | Old Arts Building, 22 Princes Street (see note on page 437)   |
| OCH       | Old Choral Hall, corner Symonds and Alfred Streets  |
| PLT       | Physics Lecture Theatres, Physics/Maths Building, 36 Princes Street   |
| SLT1      | Science Lecture Theatre 1, Physics/Maths Building, 36 Princes Street  |



|                   |  |
|-------------------|--|
| Stone MC          | Stone Moot Court, 6th floor, Library Building, corner Princes and Alfred Streets                                 |
| Uni Hall          | University Hall (Old Arts Building), 22 Princes Street   |
| Zoo LT            | Zoology Lecture Theatre, Old Biology Building (access from 3A Symonds Street)                                    |
| Dept              | Departmental Room  |
| (i)(ii)(a)(b) etc | Class Streams  |
| †                 | Daggered paper - consult the department concerned to ascertain whether the paper will in fact be taught in 1991. |

**For Science only**

1-4 Quarters of year. Where teaching is for the full year, quarters or halves are not shown.

1st Quarter - Monday 4 March - Friday 19 April

2nd Quarter - Monday 22 April - Friday 21 June

3rd Quarter - Monday 24 June - Friday 9 August

4th Quarter - Monday 12 August - Friday 11 October

**For Arts, Commerce (not Graduate School of Business), and Science**

A - first HALF year only, commencing approx 4 March

B - second HALF year only, commencing approx 24 June

C - first THIRD year only, commencing approx 4 March

D - second THIRD year only, commencing approx 6 May

E - third THIRD year only, commencing approx 29 July

Y - indicates a class for the whole academic year where others in the same paper/stream are for part of the year only

As these are approximate dates, departmental noticeboards or information should be checked for details.

**Note:** The University reserves the right to introduce such changes including the addition or withdrawal of courses as it may judge to be necessary or desirable. The following Timetable is subject to change as class numbers and staff teaching commitments become stabilised.

Due to lecture room re-location, bookings indicated here for the Old Arts rooms OA033, OA035 and OA036 are only provisional at the time of printing the 1991 *Calendar*. Students intending to take any papers which are here scheduled to be taught in any of these rooms must consult the department concerned at Enrolment in order to confirm the location of all such lectures.

**LECTURE TIMETABLE 1991**

**NOTE:** All lectures last one hour unless an exceptional finish on the half hour is indicated (in brackets) and unless two consecutive hours are listed - thus T4 indicates a one-hour lecture commencing at 4 p.m. on Tuesdays whereas T4,5 indicates a two-hour lecture commencing at 4 p.m. and finishing at 6 p.m. on Tuesdays.

**ACCOUNTING & FINANCE**

|  |        |            |        |         |               |
|--|--------|------------|--------|---------|---------------|
| <b>I</b>   | 01.100 | Section I  | (i)    | MT 10   | LgeChem       |
|  |        |            | (ii)   | MT 12   | LibB10        |
|  |        |            | (iii)  | MT 2    | LibB10        |
|  |        | Section II | (i)    | W 10    | LLT           |
|  |        |            | (ii)   | W 11    | LLT           |
|  |        | Workshops  |        | T 3     | OCH2          |
|  |        |            |        | W 12    | MLT2          |
| Students will be informed with offers of place of the criteria for Section I of 01.100 |        |            |        |         |               |
|  | 01.101 |            | (i)    | T W 9   | [A-L] LLT     |
|  |        |            |        | T W 9   | [M-Z] LibB15  |
|  |        |            | (ii)   | T W 3   | [A-L] HSB1    |
|  |        |            |        | T W 3   | [M-Z] LgeChem |
|  | 01.102 |            |        | T 9,10  | Bot LT        |
|  | 01.103 |            |        | W 9,10  | SLT 1         |
| <b>II</b>  | 01.200 |            | (i)    | M 11,12 | OA039         |
|  |        |            | (ii)   | T 11,12 | OA039         |
|  |        |            | (iii)  | T 2,3   | HSB2          |
|  |        |            | (iv)   | W 11,12 | HSB2          |
|  |        | Clinics    |        | W 8,9   | OA039         |
|  |        |            |        | W 2,3   | Eng3404       |
|  |        | Workshop   |        | W 2,3   | Eng1401       |
|  | 01.201 |            |        | F 9     | Arts716       |
|  | 01.202 |            | Either | T 8,9   | UniHall       |
|  |        |            | or     | W 8,9   | OCH2          |
|  |        |            | And    | Th 2,3  | Arts716       |
|  |        |            | or     | F 3,4   | HSB1          |

(See also page 438)

|     |        |           |          |             |
|-----|--------|-----------|----------|-------------|
|     |        | Workshop  | Th 1     | Arts716     |
|     | 01.203 | (i)       | T 4,5    | LgeChem     |
|     |        | (ii)      | Th 10,11 | LibB15      |
|     |        | Clinic    | W 4      | LLT         |
|     | 01.205 | (i)       | W 3,4    | OA039       |
|     |        | (ii)      | Th 9,10  | HSB2        |
|     |        | (iii)     | Th 3,4   | OA039       |
|     | 01.206 | (i)       | W 9,10   | UniHall     |
|     |        | (ii)      | Th 11,12 | UniHall     |
|     |        | Clinics   | W 3      | Arts716     |
|     |        | A         | W 3      | ULT         |
|     |        | B         | W 5      | BotLT       |
|     |        | Y         | Th 4     | BotLT       |
|     |        | Y         |          |             |
| III | 01.300 | (i)       | T 11,12  | [A-L] ZooLT |
|     |        | (ii)      | T 11,12  | [M-Z] OCH1  |
|     |        |           | T 4,5    | [A-L] SLT1  |
|     |        |           | T 4,5    | [M-Z] OCH1  |
|     |        | Clinics   | Th 10    | StoneMC     |
|     |        |           | Th 5     | UCH1        |
|     | 01.301 | (i)       | W 8,9    | UCH1        |
|     |        | (ii)      | Th 10,11 | UCH1        |
|     |        | (iii)     | Th 2,3   | UCH1        |
|     |        | Workshops | W 10     | UCH1        |
|     |        |           | W 2      | LgeChem     |
|     |        |           | F 11     | UCH1        |
|     | 01.302 | (i)       | T 10,11  | Comm518     |
|     |        | (ii)      | T 5,6    | Arts215     |
|     |        | (iii)     | W 10,11  | Comm518     |
|     |        | (iv)      | W 2,3    | Comm518     |
|     |        | (v)       | W 5,6    | Arts716     |
|     | 01.306 | (i)       | M 2,3    | UniHall     |
|     |        | (ii)      | T 9,10   | StoneMC     |
|     | 01.307 | (i)       | M 9,10   | UCH1        |
|     |        | (ii)      | M 4,5    | UCH1        |
|     | 01.308 | (i)       | T 8,9    | Arts209     |
|     |        | (ii)      | T 3,4    | ALR1        |

**ANCIENT HISTORY**

|     |        |           |         |
|-----|--------|-----------|---------|
| I   | 12.100 | M W 5     | ULT     |
|     | 12.102 | T F 3     | LibB10  |
|     | 12.103 | M W 11    | LibB10  |
| II  | 12.210 | T 11, F 9 | OA035   |
|     | 12.211 | M W 11    | OCHG21  |
|     | 12.212 | T 9       | CB15    |
|     |        | Th 9      | Arts716 |
|     | 12.213 | T 5       | CB114   |
|     |        | Th 5      | CB115   |
|     | 12.220 | M 12      | Arts716 |
|     |        | W 12      | CB15    |
|     | 12.221 | T 10      | CB115   |
|     |        | Th 10     | Arts509 |
| III | 12.300 | M 12      | Arts716 |
|     |        | W 12      | CB15    |
|     | 12.310 | T Th 2    | OCHG21  |
|     | 12.311 | W F 2     | OCHG21  |
|     | 12.312 | T 9       | CB15    |
|     |        | Th 9      | Arts716 |
|     | 12.313 | T 5       | CB114   |
|     |        | Th 5      | CB115   |
|     | 12.321 | T 10      | CB115   |
|     |        | Th 10     | Arts509 |
|     | 12.324 | T Th 12   | CB15    |

**ANTHROPOLOGY**

|   |        |      |      |        |
|---|--------|------|------|--------|
| I | 03.100 | (i)  | T 11 | LibB28 |
|   |        | (ii) | T 6  | LibB28 |

|     |        |      |           |         |
|-----|--------|------|-----------|---------|
|     | 03.101 | (i)  | M 2       | LibB28  |
|     |        | (ii) | M 5       | LibB28  |
|     | 03.102 |      | Th 5      | LibB28  |
|     | 03.103 |      | T 2,3     | Dept    |
| II  | 03.200 |      | Th 11,12  | SLT1    |
|     | 03.201 |      | T 6,7     | Dept    |
|     | 03.206 |      | M 6       | HSB2    |
| †   | 03.207 |      | T 4       | LLT     |
|     | 03.208 |      | W 12      | OA039   |
|     | 03.209 |      | Th 11,12  | Music   |
|     | 03.211 |      | M 4,5     | HSB2    |
|     | 03.212 |      | M 2,3     | Arts209 |
|     | 03.214 |      | T 4,5     | CB115   |
|     | 03.215 |      | T 12      | HSB370  |
|     | 03.217 |      | T Th 9    | Dept    |
|     | 03.218 |      | W 4,5     | Dept    |
|     | 03.219 |      | M 11,12   | ALR1    |
| III | 03.304 |      | Th 2,3    | Dept    |
| †   | 03.306 |      | M 9,10    | Dept    |
|     | 03.308 |      | W 4,5     | Dept    |
| †   | 03.309 |      | Th 9,10   | Dept    |
|     | 03.315 |      | T 4,5     | Dept    |
|     | 03.318 |      | T 11,12   | Music   |
|     | 03.320 |      | W 6,7     | Dept    |
|     | 03.325 |      | T 9,10,11 | Dept    |
|     | 03.326 |      | Th 2,3    | Dept    |
|     | 03.327 |      | W 9       | HSB2    |
|     |        |      | W 10,11   | Dept    |
|     | 03.329 |      | M 4,5     | Dept    |
| †   | 03.330 |      | F 9,10    | Dept    |
|     | 03.331 |      | Th 11,12  | Dept    |
|     | 03.333 |      | M 6,7     | Dept    |
|     | 03.334 |      | T 4,5     | Dept    |
|     | 03.340 |      | M 11,12   | Dept    |
|     | 03.341 |      | W 2,3     | Dept    |
|     | 03.342 |      | W 2,3     | Dept    |

**ART HISTORY**

|     |        |  |       |        |
|-----|--------|--|-------|--------|
| I   | 19.151 |  | W 3   | LibB28 |
|     | 19.152 |  | F 3   | LibB28 |
|     | 19.153 |  | Th 3  | HSB2   |
| II  | 19.259 |  | M 3   | ALR1   |
|     | 19.260 |  | Th 3  | ALR1   |
|     | 19.262 |  | F 3   | ALR1   |
| III | 19.301 |  | Th 11 | Dept   |
|     | 19.304 |  | M 9   | Dept   |
|     | 19.305 |  | T 10  | Dept   |
|     | 19.307 |  | W 10  | Dept   |
|     | 19.308 |  | F 10  | Dept   |
|     | 19.311 |  | Th 10 | Dept   |

**ASIAN GEOGRAPHY**

|    |          |  |        |        |
|----|----------|--|--------|--------|
| I  | 20.130   |  | M W 12 | HSB370 |
| II | † 20.240 |  | M T 10 | HSB370 |

**ASIAN HISTORY**

|     |        |   |            |       |
|-----|--------|---|------------|-------|
| I   | 24.130 | B | W Th 5. F4 | OA029 |
|     | 24.133 | A | W Th 5. F4 | OA029 |
| II  | 24.222 | B | M T 2      | CB15  |
| III | 24.312 | B | W 2,3. F 2 | Dept  |
|     | 24.330 | A | W 2,3. F 2 | Dept  |

**ASIAN POLITICS**

|    |          |   |         |        |
|----|----------|---|---------|--------|
| II | † 30.216 | B | T Th 11 | Bot LT |
|----|----------|---|---------|--------|

|   |          |   |       |                   |         |
|---|----------|---|-------|-------------------|---------|
| <b>III</b>                              | †30.313  | B |       | M W 10            | OA029   |
| <b>ASIAN STUDIES</b>                    |          |   |       |                   |         |
| <b>I</b>                                | 97.100   |   |       | T Th 10           | Arts209 |
|   | 97.102   |   |       | T 4               | Arts215 |
|   |          |   |       | Th 4              | Arts209 |
|   | 97.103   |   |       | W 10              | OA039   |
|   |          |   |       | F 10              | ZooLT   |
|   | 97.121   |   |       | M W 12            | OCHG07  |
|   | 97.122   |   |       | T 3,4             | OCHG07  |
|   | 97.141   |   |       | Th 2              | Eng3403 |
|   |          |   |       | Th 3              | Eng3402 |
|   | 97.160   |   |       | M 4,5             | Arts209 |
| <b>II</b>                               | 97.221   |   |       | F 2,3             | OA033   |
|   | 97.222   |   |       | M W 2             | OA033   |
| <b>BIOCHEMISTRY</b>                     |          |   |       |                   |         |
| <b>II</b>                               | 66.202   |   |       | T F 2             | SLT1    |
|   | 66.203   |   |       | M 2               | SLT1    |
|   |          | A |       | Th 2              | Eng3402 |
|   |          | B |       | Th 2              | Eng3404 |
|   | 66.204   |   |       | M T F 2           | SLT1    |
|   |          | A |       | Th 2              | Eng3402 |
|   |          | B |       | Th 2              | Eng3404 |
| <b>III</b>                              | 66.301   | A |       | M T Th F 2        | ALR1    |
|   | 66.302   | B |       | M T Th F 2        | ALR1    |
| <b>BIOLOGY</b>                          |          |   |       |                   |         |
| <b>I</b>                                | 39.101   | A | (i)   | M T Th F 2        | HSB1    |
|   |          | A | (ii)  | M T Th F 4        | LibB15  |
| <b>III</b>                              | 39.311   | 2 |       | M T Th F 9        | ZooLT   |
|   | 39.314   | 4 |       | M T Th F 9        | ZooLT   |
| <b>BOTANY</b>                           |          |   |       |                   |         |
| <b>I</b>                                | 06.102   | B |       | M Th 3            | LibB28  |
|   |          | B |       | T F 3             | LibB15  |
| <b>II</b>                               | 06.250   | Y |       | M Th 9            | BotLT   |
|   | 06.251   | B |       | M T Th F 3        | BotLT   |
|   | 06.252   | A |       | M T Th F 3        | BotLT   |
| <b>III</b>                              | 06.313   | 1 |       | M T Th F 2        | BotLT   |
|   | 06.326   | A |       | M T Th F 3        | Dept    |
|   | 06.334   | 3 |       | M T Th F 2        | BotLT   |
|   | 06.335   | 4 |       | M T Th F 2        | BotLT   |
|   | † 06.341 | 2 |       | M T Th F 2        | BotLT   |
|   | 06.361   | 4 |       | M T Th F 3        | Dept    |
|   | 06.371   | 3 |       | M T Th F 3        | Dept    |
| <b>CELLULAR &amp; MOLECULAR BIOLOGY</b> |          |   |       |                   |         |
| <b>III</b>                              | 40.303   | A |       | T 5, W 9,12, Th 5 | BotLT   |
|   | 40.304   | B |       | M Th 4, T F 9     | CMBioLT |
|   | 40.305   | B |       | M W Th 9, T 5     | CMBioLT |
| <b>CHEMISTRY</b>                        |          |   |       |                   |         |
| <b>I</b>                                | 08.111   |   | (i)   | M Th 9            | LgeChem |
|   |          |   | (ii)  | M Th 11           | LgeChem |
|   |          |   | (iii) | M Th 2            | LgeChem |
|   | 08.121   |   | (i)   | T F 9             | LgeChem |
|   |          |   | (ii)  | T F 11            | LgeChem |
|   |          |   | (iii) | T F 2             | LgeChem |
| <b>II</b>                               | 08.200   |   |       | F 4               | MedChem |
|   | 08.210   |   |       | W 9,2             | MedChem |
|   | 08.220   |   |       | M Th 9            | MedChem |
|   | 08.230   |   |       | T F 9             | MedChem |
|   | 08.250   | A |       | Th 1              | MedChem |
|   | 08.260   | A |       | W 3,4             | MedChem |
| <b>III</b>                              | 08.310   |   |       | W 9               | MLT2    |

|        |       |  |        |         |
|--------|-------|--|--------|---------|
| 08.311 |       |  | W 2    | SLT1    |
| 08.320 |       |  | M 9    | SLT1    |
| 08.321 |       |  | Th 9   | SLT1    |
| 08.330 |       |  | T 9    | SLT1    |
| 08.331 |       |  | F 9    | SLT1    |
| 08.340 |       |  | T Th 2 | PLT5    |
| 08.352 | 1,2,3 |  | F 3    | MedChem |
| 08.360 | B     |  | W 3,4  | MedChem |
| 08.370 |       |  | F 2    | PLT5    |

**CHINESE**

|            |         |   |      |            |         |
|------------|---------|---|------|------------|---------|
| <b>I</b>   | 48.100) |   |      | F 11       | Arts209 |
|            | 48.101) |   | (i)  | M W 11     | CB114   |
|            |         | A |      | T 12       | CB114   |
|            |         | B |      | T 12       | Arts215 |
|            |         |   | (ii) | M 11       | CB115   |
|            |         |   |      | T 12. W 11 | Arts206 |
|            |         |   | Labs | T 9        | Lab1    |
|            |         |   |      | or T 11    | Lab1    |
|            |         |   |      | or T 11    | Lab2    |
|            |         |   |      | Th 9       | Lab1    |
|            |         |   |      | or Th 11   | Lab1    |
|            |         |   |      | or Th 11   | Lab2    |
|            | 48.102  |   |      | T Th 10    | Arts209 |
|            | 48.105  |   |      | T 4        | Arts215 |
|            |         |   |      | Th 4       | Arts209 |
|            | 48.106  |   |      | W10        | OA039   |
|            |         |   |      | F 10       | ZooLT   |
| <b>II</b>  | 48.200  |   | (i)  | M W 2      | OA036   |
|            |         |   |      | T 2        | Lab1    |
|            |         |   | (ii) | M W 2      | OA035   |
|            |         |   |      | T 2        | Lab2    |
|            | 48.201  |   |      | T Th 3     | CB115   |
|            | 48.202  |   |      | W 3. F 2   | CB114   |
| <b>III</b> | 48.300  |   |      | M 12       | OCHG10  |
|            |         |   |      | W 12 (lab) | Lab 3   |
|            |         |   |      | F 12       | OA036   |
|            | 48.301  |   |      | T Th 12    | OA029   |
|            | 48.302  |   |      | M 3        | OA036   |
|            |         |   |      | Th 2       | OA036   |
|            | 48.303  |   |      | T Th 3     | OA033   |

**CLASSICAL STUDIES**

|          |        |  |  |         |      |
|----------|--------|--|--|---------|------|
| <b>I</b> | 73.105 |  |  | T Th 11 | HSB2 |
|----------|--------|--|--|---------|------|

**COMMERCIAL LAW**

|           |        |   |       |           |         |
|-----------|--------|---|-------|-----------|---------|
| <b>I</b>  | 02.100 | Students to choose one lecture from each group i.e. two lectures in total |       |           |         |
|           |        | <i>Group A</i>  | M 12  | LibB15    |         |
|           |        |   | M 4   | HSB1      |         |
|           |        |   | W 10  | HSB1      |         |
|           |        | <i>Group B</i>  | W 3   | LLT       |         |
|           |        |   | Th 10 | HSB1      |         |
|           |        |   | Th 3  | HSB1      |         |
|           |        |   | F 10  | LibB28    |         |
| <b>II</b> | 02.200 | Clinic  | (i)   | M 9. W 11 | LibB28  |
|           |        |   | (ii)  | W Th 2    | LibB28  |
|           | 02.201 |   |       | M 10      | LLT     |
|           |        |   |       | Th 10     | LgeChem |
|           | 02.202 |   | (i)   | M 9       | LibB10  |
|           |        |   |       | M 3       | LibB10  |
|           |        |   | (ii)  | W 12      | LibB15  |
|           |        |   |       | W 4       | LibB10  |
|           | 02.203 |   |       | M 4,5     | Arts206 |
|           | 02.204 | B   |       | T 12      | LgeChem |
|           |        | B   |       | Th 12     | MedChem |

|                  |            |              |       |             |         |
|------------------|------------|--------------|-------|-------------|---------|
|                  | 02.205     |              |       | T 3,4       | Arts206 |
| III              | 02.301     |              | (i)   | W 4,5       | ZooLT   |
|                  |            |              | (ii)  | Th 8,9      | UniHall |
|                  | † 02.303   |              |       | F 8,9       | OCH1    |
|                  | 02.305     |              |       | Th 4,5      | ALR1    |
|                  | † 02.307   |              |       | F 10,11     | CB15    |
|                  | 02.308     |              |       | M 11, W 12  | MedChem |
| COMPUTER SCIENCE |            |              |       |             |         |
| I                | 07.100     | A            | (i)   | T Th F 11   | PLT1    |
|                  |            | A            | (ii)  | T F 3, W 4  | PLT1    |
|                  | 07.105     | B            | (i)   | T Th F 11   | PLT1    |
|                  |            | B            | (ii)  | T F 3, W 4  | PLT1    |
|                  | 07.111     |              | (i)   | M Th 12     | PLT1    |
|                  |            |              | (ii)  | M Th 4      | PLT1    |
| II               | 07.211     |              |       | T F 9       | OA039   |
|                  | 07.221     |              |       | M Th 3      | PLT1    |
|                  | 07.222     |              |       | M 9,10      | ULT     |
|                  | 07.230     | A            |       | M 11        | PLT1    |
| III              | † 07.301   | A            |       | W 11        | MLT1    |
|                  |            | B            |       | M 10        | SLT1    |
|                  |            | B            |       | Th 10       | OCH2    |
|                  | 07.302     | B            |       | M Th 12     | PLT3    |
|                  | 07.303     | A            |       | M Th 10     | UniHall |
|                  | 07.310     |              |       | M Th 2      | PLT2    |
|                  | 07.315     | A            |       | M Th 12     | PLT3    |
|                  | 07.330     |              |       | W 2         | PLT3    |
|                  |            |              |       | Th 9        | OCH2    |
|                  | 07.340     |              |       | M Th 4      | MedChem |
|                  | 07.351     |              |       | M Th 11     | PLT4    |
|                  | 07.352     |              |       | T F 12      | MedChem |
|                  | 07.361     | A            |       | T F 2       | PLT2    |
|                  | 07.362     | B            |       | T F 2       | PLT2    |
| DUTCH            |            |              |       |             |         |
| I                | † 421.100) | Consult Dept |       |             |         |
|                  | † 421.101) |              |       |             |         |
|                  | † 421.102) |              |       |             |         |
| ECONOMICS        |            |              |       |             |         |
| I                | 13.100     | A            | (i)   | M T W Th 10 | LibB28  |
|                  |            | A            | (ii)  | M T W Th 12 | HSB1    |
|                  |            | A            | (iii) | M T W Th 2  | LLT     |
|                  |            | A            | (iv)  | M T W Th 4  | ULT     |
|                  | 13.101     | B            | (i)   | M T W Th 10 | LibB28  |
|                  |            | B            | (ii)  | M T W Th 12 | HSB1    |
|                  |            | B            | (iii) | M T W Th 2  | LLT     |
|                  |            | B            | (iv)  | M T W Th 4  | ULT     |
| II               | 13.200     |              |       | T 11        | LibB15  |
|                  |            |              |       | Th 11       | LibB10  |
|                  | 13.201     |              |       | T Th 10     | ULT     |
|                  | 13.203     |              |       | T F 2       | Eng1401 |
|                  | 13.205     |              |       | M W 3       | OCH1    |
|                  | 13.210     | A            |       | M W 2       | OCH1    |
|                  | 13.211     | B            |       | M W 2       | OCH1    |
| III              | 13.300     |              |       | T Th 12     | AlgieLT |
|                  | 13.301     |              |       | M W 4       | BotLT   |
|                  | 13.302     |              |       | T Th 3      | Arts201 |
|                  | 13.304     |              |       | M 12, Th 4  | Arts206 |
|                  | 13.305     |              |       | M W 10      | Arts209 |
|                  | 13.306     |              |       | T W 2       | MS101   |
|                  | 13.307     |              |       | M Th 11     | Arts202 |
|                  | 13.309     |              |       | T Th 10     | SLT1    |
|                  | 13.310     |              |       | W 8,9       | Arts202 |
|                  | 13.313     |              |       | W 12, Th 9  | OCHG10  |

**EDUCATION**

|            |        |   |       |                         |         |
|------------|--------|---|-------|-------------------------|---------|
| <b>I</b>   | 14.100 |   | (i)   | T 9                     | LibB28  |
|            |        |   | (ii)  | T 5                     | LibB28  |
|            | 14.101 |   | (i)   | W 12                    | LibB28  |
|            |        |   | (ii)  | W 5                     | LibB28  |
|            | 14.108 |   |       | Consult Dept            | Northld |
|            | 14.150 |   | (i)   | M <u>10.30 (-12.30)</u> | ACE     |
|            |        |   | (ii)  | T <u>10.30 (-12.30)</u> | ACE     |
|            |        |   | (iii) | W <u>10.30 (-12.30)</u> | ACE     |
|            | 14.151 |   | (i)   | W <u>2.30 (-4)</u>      | ACE     |
|            |        |   | (ii)  | Th <u>2.30 (-4)</u>     | ACE     |
|            |        |   | (iii) | F <u>8.30 (-10)</u>     | ACE     |
| <b>II</b>  | 14.200 |   |       | M 11                    | OCH1    |
|            | 14.201 |   |       | Th 4                    | HSB370  |
|            | 14.203 |   |       | T 1,2                   | ACE     |
|            |        |   |       | W 4                     | LibB15  |
|            | 14.204 |   |       | M <u>4.30,5</u>         | ACE     |
|            | 14.206 |   |       | W 9                     | ULT     |
|            |        |   |       | W <u>4.30,5</u>         | ACE     |
|            | 14.208 |   |       | W 2                     | OCH2    |
|            | 14.210 |   |       | W 5                     | HSB370  |
|            | 14.211 |   |       | Th 12                   | LibB10  |
|            | 14.212 |   |       | W 11                    | OA029   |
| <b>III</b> | 14.300 |   |       | W <u>4.30,5</u>         | OCHG10  |
|            | 14.301 |   |       | W 4,5                   | Dept    |
|            | 14.302 |   |       | T <u>3.30,4</u>         | Arts203 |
|            | 14.303 |   |       | M 2,3                   | OCH2    |
|            | 14.305 |   |       | T 4                     | HSB2    |
|            | 14.306 |   |       | M 10,11                 | OCH2    |
|            | 14.308 |   |       | W 10,11                 | HSB370  |
|            | 14.309 | A |       | T 4,5                   | OA029   |
|            |        | A |       | W 4                     | Arts209 |
|            | 14.310 |   |       | F 2,3                   | Arts716 |
|            | 14.311 |   |       | Th 10                   | BotLT   |
|            | 14.313 |   |       | W 11,12                 | Dept    |
|            | 14.316 |   |       | T 4                     | CB114   |
|            | 14.319 |   |       | T 9,10                  | Dept    |
|            | 14.320 |   |       | Th 4,5                  | OCHG10  |
|            | 14.322 |   |       | W 10,11                 | Arts509 |
| †          | 14.327 |   |       | M 4,5                   | CB15    |
|            | 14.328 |   |       | Th 4,5                  | Dept    |
|            | 14.329 |   |       | T 10,11                 | OA036   |
|            | 14.330 |   |       | T 2                     | CB114   |
|            | 14.333 |   |       | M 4,5                   | Dept    |
|            | 14.334 |   |       | W 9,10                  | OA 036  |
|            | 14.335 |   |       | W 10,11                 | OCHG07  |
|            | 14.336 |   |       | Consult Dept            |         |

**ENGINEERING**

|          |        |   |  |          |         |
|----------|--------|---|--|----------|---------|
| <b>I</b> | 50.001 | A |  | T Th F 4 | Eng1401 |
|          |        | B |  | Th 4     | Eng1401 |
|          | 50.002 | A |  | M W 11   | Eng1401 |

**ENGLISH**

|          |        |   |      |       |        |
|----------|--------|---|------|-------|--------|
| <b>I</b> | 18.100 | Y |      | W 5   | LLT    |
|          |        | B |      | M 4   | LLT    |
|          | 18.101 | Y | (i)  | T 3   | LLT    |
|          |        | A | (i)  | M 3   | LLT    |
|          |        | Y | (ii) | T 5   | LLT    |
|          |        | A | (ii) | M 5   | LLT    |
|          | 18.103 | Y | (i)  | Th 12 | LibB28 |
|          |        | A | (i)  | M 12  | LibB28 |
|          |        | Y | (ii) | Th 4  | LibB10 |
|          |        | A | (ii) | M 4   | LLT    |
|          | 18.104 | Y |      | W 12  | LLT    |
|          |        | A |      | F 11  | LLT    |

|     |        |   |                       |            |
|-----|--------|---|-----------------------|------------|
|     | 18.105 | Y | T 12                  | LLT        |
|     |        | A | F 12                  | HSB1       |
|     | 18.113 | Y | Th <u>5,30</u>        | ACE:FILT   |
|     |        | A | M <u>5,30</u>         | ACE:FILT   |
|     | 18.115 | Y | T <u>5,30</u>         | ACE:FILT   |
|     |        | A | F <u>2,30</u>         | ACE:FILT   |
| II  | 18.200 |   | T 5                   | LibB10     |
|     | 18.201 |   | M 3                   | LibB15     |
|     | 18.205 |   | M 2,3                 | Arts209    |
|     | 18.210 |   | Th 4                  | SLT1       |
|     | 18.213 |   | T 10                  | HSB1       |
|     | 18.220 |   | M 5                   | LibB15     |
|     | 18.221 |   | T 9                   | LibB10     |
|     | 18.222 |   | W 11                  | ZoolT      |
|     | 18.223 |   | T 2,3                 | AnthroDept |
|     | 18.224 |   | Th 2,3                | AnthroDept |
|     | 18.250 |   | Th 5                  | Arts206    |
| III | 18.301 |   | M W 2                 | Arts509    |
|     | 18.302 |   | Th 4                  | Arts716    |
|     | 18.304 |   | M 10,11 (fortnightly) | Arts206    |
|     | 18.305 |   | W 12                  | OA029      |
|     | 18.306 |   | Th 12                 | Arts206    |
|     | 18.307 |   | T 2                   | OA039      |
|     | 18.308 |   | M 5                   | LibB10     |
|     | 18.315 |   | Th 2                  | Arts215    |
|     | 18.320 |   | Th 5                  | Arts716    |
|     | 18.323 |   | W 11                  | Arts209    |
|     | 18.325 |   | W 3                   | Arts209    |
|     | 18.326 |   | W 5                   | Arts215    |
|     | 18.327 |   | M 3,4                 | Arts509    |
|     | 18.328 |   | F 10,11,12            | Dept       |
|     | 18.330 |   | W 2,3                 | AnthroDept |
|     | 18.331 |   | T 4,5,6               | Arts209    |

**ENVIRONMENTAL SCIENCE**

|    |        |  |        |        |
|----|--------|--|--------|--------|
| II | 64.200 |  | M T 10 | LibB15 |
|----|--------|--|--------|--------|

**FILM & TELEVISION STUDIES**

|    |        |  |                       |        |
|----|--------|--|-----------------------|--------|
| II | 85.200 |  | W 5,6( <u>-6,30</u> ) | LibB10 |
|----|--------|--|-----------------------|--------|

**FRENCH**

|   |        |       |         |         |
|---|--------|-------|---------|---------|
| I | 34.100 | (i)   | T 10    | MS101   |
|   |        |       | Th 10   | CB15    |
|   |        | (ii)  | T 10    | OCHG10  |
|   |        |       | Th 10   | CB115   |
|   |        | (iii) | T Th 11 | HSB704  |
|   |        | (iv)  | T 11    | Arts201 |
|   |        |       | Th 11   | CB115   |
|   |        | (v)   | T 3     | MS101   |
|   |        |       | Th 3    | Arts206 |
|   |        | (vi)  | T 3     | Arts202 |
|   |        |       | Th 3    | Arts607 |

Students attend both hours in one of the above streams  
PLUS one of the following language laboratories:-

|                  |         |     |            |         |
|------------------|---------|-----|------------|---------|
|                  |         |     | T 12       | Lab5    |
|                  |         |     | T 2        | Lab5    |
|                  |         |     | W 11       | Lab5    |
|                  |         |     | W 12       | Lab4    |
|                  |         |     | W 2        | Lab5    |
|                  |         |     | Th 10      | Lab5    |
|                  |         |     | Th 12      | Lab5    |
|                  | 34.104  |     | W 4        | Arts701 |
|                  | 34.109  |     | W 3,4      | Arts215 |
|                  | 34.151) | (i) | M 9        | Lab4or5 |
|                  | 34.152) |     | T W Th F 9 | Arts206 |
| (see also p.445) |         |     | W 3        | Arts202 |



|    |        |       |             |          |
|----|--------|-------|-------------|----------|
| II | 34.200 | (ii)  | M 10        | Lab4or5  |
|    |        |       | T 10        | CB114    |
|    |        |       | W F 10. W 4 | Arts206  |
|    |        |       | Th 10       | Arts 202 |
|    |        | (i)   | M W 12      | Arts723  |
|    |        | (ii)  | M W 2       | Arts723  |
|    |        | (iii) | M 3         | Lab5     |
|    |        |       | W 3         | Arts723  |

Students attend both hours in one of the above streams

PLUS one of the following language laboratory/oral classes:-

|  |  |      |            |         |
|--|--|------|------------|---------|
|  |  |      | M 11       | Lab5    |
|  |  |      | T 9        | Lab5    |
|  |  |      | T 11       | Lab5    |
|  |  |      | T 12       | Arts607 |
|  |  |      | T 3. Th 12 | Arts719 |
|  |  |      | M 9,10     | Arts723 |
|  |  |      | W 4        | Arts723 |
|  |  | (i)  | M W 12     | Arts609 |
|  |  | (ii) | M W 2      | Arts613 |

Students attend both hours in one of the above streams

PLUS one of the following oral classes:-

|  |  |  |        |         |
|--|--|--|--------|---------|
|  |  |  | Th 10  | Arts613 |
|  |  |  | Th 11  | Arts613 |
|  |  |  | Th 12  | Arts611 |
|  |  |  | Th 2,3 | Arts611 |
|  |  |  | Th 4,5 | Arts203 |
|  |  |  | T 4    | Dept    |
|  |  |  | F 11   | Arts723 |
|  |  |  | F 9,10 | Dept    |

## GEOGRAPHY

|     |          |   |          |        |
|-----|----------|---|----------|--------|
| I   | 20.101   | B | T W Th 9 | HSB1   |
|     | 20.102   | A | T W Th 9 | HSB1   |
| II  | 20.201   |   | M W 11   | ULT    |
|     | 20.202   |   | M 2      | ULT    |
| III | 20.203   |   | W 2      | LibB10 |
|     | 20.204   |   | W 4      | HSB370 |
|     | 20.205   |   | T Th 12  | HSB2   |
|     | 20.302   |   | Th 4,5   | HSB2   |
|     | 20.303   |   | W 2,3    | HSB370 |
|     | 20.304   |   | T Th 11  | HSB370 |
|     | 20.305   |   | M 3,4    | HSB370 |
|     | † 20.310 |   | T Th 2   | HSB370 |
|     | † 20.313 |   | M T 10   | HSB370 |
|     | 20.314   |   | W 4,5    | Dept   |
|     | 20.315   |   | M T 12   | Dept   |
|     | 20.320   |   | T 3,4    | HSB370 |
|     |          |   | Th 9,10  | HSB370 |

## GEOLOGY

|     |        |   |               |         |
|-----|--------|---|---------------|---------|
| I   | 21.110 | B | M T Th 5      | MedChem |
|     | 21.111 | A | M T Th F2     | MedChem |
|     | 21.112 | B | M Th 2        | MedChem |
| II  | 21.211 | A | M W Th 2      | Dept    |
|     | 21.212 | B | M W Th 2      | Dept    |
|     | 21.213 | A | T F 2         | Dept    |
|     | 21.215 | B | T F 2         | Dept    |
| III | 21.303 |   | M 12. Th 10   | Dept    |
|     | 21.304 |   | M W 9         | Dept    |
|     | 21.305 |   | T Th 9        | Dept    |
|     | 21.306 | A | M 11. W 11,12 | Dept    |
|     | 21.310 | B | T 5. F 9      | Dept    |
|     | 21.311 | A | M W 10        | Dept    |
|     | 21.312 | B | M W 10        | Dept    |
|     | 21.318 | A | T 3. F 9      | Dept    |
|     | 21.319 | B | M Th 11       | Dept    |

|         |          |        |       |               |         |         |
|---------|----------|--------|-------|---------------|---------|---------|
| GERMAN  |          |        |       |               |         |         |
| I       | 22.100   |        | (i)   | M T Th 10     | Dept    |         |
|         |          |        | (ii)  | M Th 2        | OCHG10  |         |
|         |          |        |       | T 2           | CB115   |         |
|         |          |        | (iii) | M T Th 4      | Dept    |         |
|         | 22.101   |        |       | W 12          | Arts215 |         |
|         | 22.102   |        |       | F 10          | Arts209 |         |
|         | 22.103   |        |       | T Th 12       | Arts209 |         |
|         |          |        |       | M 11          | HSB370  |         |
|         | 22.105   |        |       | W 2           | Arts215 |         |
|         |          |        | (i)   | M T Th 10     | Dept    |         |
| II      | 22.200   |        | (ii)  | M T Th 12     | Dept    |         |
|         |          |        | (iii) | M T Th 2      | Dept    |         |
|         |          |        | (iv)  | M T Th 4      | Dept    |         |
|         | 22.202   |        | (i)   | T Th 11       | Dept    |         |
|         |          |        | (ii)  | T Th 2        | Dept    |         |
|         |          |        | (i)   | M 2           | OA039   |         |
|         |          |        |       | T 10          | Dept    |         |
|         |          |        | (ii)  | M 2           | OA039   |         |
|         |          |        |       | T 4           | Dept    |         |
|         | 22.203   |        |       | M 12, W 2     | Arts209 |         |
| III     | 22.300   |        |       | W 11, F 12    | Dept    |         |
|         | 22.301   |        |       | M 2, Th 4     | Dept    |         |
|         | 22.302   |        |       | T Th 2        | Dept    |         |
|         | 22.303   |        |       | M Th 10       | Dept    |         |
|         | 22.350   |        |       | W 2,3         | Dept    |         |
| GREEK   |          |        |       |               |         |         |
| I       | 10.100   |        |       | M Th 4        | OA036   |         |
|         | 10.101   |        |       | T W F 4       | OA036   |         |
| II      | 10.200   |        |       | M W 12        | OA033   |         |
|         | 10.201   |        |       | F 12          | OA033   |         |
| III     | 10.202   |        |       | M 10, T 4     | OCHG21  |         |
|         | 10.300   |        |       | M W 12        | OA033   |         |
|         | 10.301   |        |       | F 12          | OA033   |         |
|         | 10.302   | Y      |       | W 4           | OCHG21  |         |
|         |          | B      |       | Th 4          | OCHG21  |         |
| HISTORY |          |        |       |               |         |         |
| I       | 24.100   | B      |       | T W F 2       | LibB15  |         |
|         | 24.101   | B      |       | T W Th 4      | UniHall |         |
|         | 24.105   | A      |       | T W Th 4      | UniHall |         |
|         | 24.107   | A      |       | T W F 2       | LibB15  |         |
|         | † 24.109 | B      |       | M T Th 10     | UniHall |         |
|         | 24.122   | A      |       | M W F 3       | HSB2    |         |
|         | 24.123   | B      |       | M W F 3       | HSB2    |         |
|         | 24.130   | B      |       | W Th 5, F 4   | OA029   |         |
|         | 24.133   | A      |       | W Th 5, F 4   | OA029   |         |
|         | 24.140   | A      |       | M W 11        | LibB15  |         |
|         |          | A      |       | F 11          | LibB28  |         |
|         | 24.141   | B      |       | M W 11        | LibB15  |         |
|         |          | B      |       | F 11          | LibB28  |         |
|         | II       | 24.200 | A     |               | M T 11  | Arts215 |
|         |          | 24.201 | B     |               | M T 11  | Arts215 |
|         |          | 24.214 | B     |               | T W 4   | Arts716 |
|         |          | 24.215 | A     |               | T W 4   | Arts716 |
|         |          | 24.216 | A     |               | W 11    | Arts215 |
|         |          |        | A     |               | F 11    | ULT     |
| 24.222  |          | B      |       | M T 2         | CB15    |         |
| 24.230  |          | A      |       | W F 12        | UniHall |         |
| 24.233  |          | B      |       | W 11          | Arts215 |         |
|         |          | B      |       | F 11          | ULT     |         |
| III     | 24.234   | B      |       | W F 12        | UniHall |         |
|         | 24.307   | A      |       | T 4,5, W 4    | CB15    |         |
|         | 24.312   | B      |       | W 2,3, F 2    | Dept    |         |
|         | 24.315   | A      |       | T 10,11, W 11 | CB15    |         |

|          |   |               |         |
|----------|---|---------------|---------|
| † 24.325 | B | M 11,12. F 12 | CB15    |
| 24.329   | A | T 2,3         | OA029   |
|          | A | Th 2          | SLT1    |
| 24.330   | A | W 2,3. F 2    | Dept    |
| 24.331   | A | M 4. Th 4,5   | CB114   |
| 24.333   | B | M 4. Th 4,5   | CB114   |
| 24.334   | B | T 4,5. W 4    | CB15    |
| 24.336   | B | T 2,3         | OA029   |
|          | B | Th 2          | SLT1    |
| 24.351   | B | T 10,11. W 11 | CB15    |
| 24.353   | B | Th 10         | Arts215 |
|          | B | F 10,11       | Arts716 |
| 24.370   | A | M 11,12. F12  | CB15    |

**INDONESIAN**

|     |          |             |        |
|-----|----------|-------------|--------|
| I   | 80.100 ) | M Th 11     | OA035  |
|     | 80.100 ) | T W Th F 10 | OA035  |
|     |          | F 11 (lab)  | Lab4   |
|     | 80.104   | M W 12      | OCHG07 |
|     | 80.105   | T 3,4       | OCHG07 |
| II  | 80.200   | M Th 10     | OA036  |
|     |          | W 10        | Lab4   |
|     | 80.201   | M Th 11     | OCHG07 |
|     | 80.202   | T W 11      | OA033  |
|     | 80.203   | F 2,3       | OA033  |
|     | 80.205   | M W 2       | OA033  |
| III | 80.300   | W 11        | OA035  |
|     |          | Th 12       | OCHG21 |
|     | 80.301   | M W 10      | Dept   |
|     | 80.302   | T 10        | OCHG21 |
|     |          | F 10        | OA029  |
|     | 80.306   | M T 12      | OCHG21 |
|     | 80.307   | T 11,12     | Dept   |

**ITALIAN**

|  |                     |           |         |
|--|---------------------|-----------|---------|
| I  | 35.106 )            | M 11      | LLT     |
|  | 35.107 )            | F 10      | LibB10  |
| Students attend both the above hours and one of the following streams:   |                     |           |         |
|  | (i)                 | M 10      | Arts509 |
|  |                     | T 10      | Arts206 |
|  | (ii)                | M 9. T 11 | Arts206 |
|  | (iii)               | W Th 12   | Arts202 |
|  | (iv)                | Th F 9    | Arts202 |
|  | (v)                 | W Th 2    | Arts206 |
| In addition students attend one conversation class (details from the Department) and one of the following language laboratories: |                     |           |         |
|  |                     | M 9       | Lab1    |
|  |                     | M 3       | Lab1    |
|  |                     | T 12      | Lab1    |
|  |                     | T 3       | Lab1    |
|  |                     | T 4       | Lab5    |
|  |                     | W 3       | Lab2    |
|  |                     | Th 9      | Lab4    |
|  |                     | Th 11     | Lab3    |
|  |                     | Th 12     | Lab1    |
|  |                     | F 9       | Lab5    |
|  |                     | F 11      | Lab1    |
|  |                     | F 12      | Lab1    |
|  | 35.110              | M 3,4     | Arts716 |
|  | B                   | W 12      | Arts611 |
|  | B                   | Th 10     | Arts701 |
| II   | 35.200              | M 9       | OA029   |
|  |                     | M 2       | Lab5    |
|  |                     | T 12      | Lab4    |
|  | (see also page 448) | W 3       | Lab5    |

In addition students attend one conversation class out of:

|            |   |      |       |         |
|------------|---|------|-------|---------|
|            |   |      | M 10  | Arts611 |
|            |   |      | T 3   | Arts609 |
|            |   |      | W 2   | Arts611 |
|            |   |      | Th 12 | Arts609 |
|            |   |      | Th 12 | Arts723 |
|            |   |      | Th 3  | Arts609 |
| 35.204     | B |      | W 4,5 | Arts209 |
|            | B | (i)  | Th 2  | Arts201 |
|            | B | (ii) | Th 4  | Arts201 |
| 35.209     |   |      | W 12  | Arts209 |
|            |   | (i)  | M 3   | Arts723 |
|            |   | (ii) | T 4   | Arts723 |
| 35.210     |   |      | W 12  | Arts209 |
|            |   |      | T 3   | Arts723 |
| 35.231     |   |      | T 11  | Arts203 |
|            |   |      | Th 10 | Arts611 |
| III 35.300 |   |      | M 10  | CB114   |
|            |   | (i)  | W 2   | Lab4    |
|            |   | (ii) | Th 3  | Lab5    |

In addition students attend one conversation class out of:

|                 |  |       |           |         |
|-----------------|--|-------|-----------|---------|
|                 |  |       | M 2       | Arts607 |
|                 |  |       | T 3       | Arts611 |
|                 |  |       | Th 2      | Arts723 |
| 35.302          |  |       | M 3       | Lab3    |
|                 |  |       | Th 11     | Arts611 |
| 35.322          |  |       | T 9,10    | Arts609 |
| 35.332          |  |       | M 12      | Dept    |
|                 |  |       | W 3       | Arts701 |
| <b>JAPANESE</b> |  |       |           |         |
| I 81.100        |  |       | M T 10    | OA039   |
|                 |  |       | W 11      | OA039   |
| 81.101          |  | (i)   | W Th F 10 | CB114   |
|                 |  | (ii)  | W Th F 10 | OCHG10  |
|                 |  | (iii) | W Th F 10 | PLT3    |
|                 |  | (iv)  | W Th F 10 | PLT4    |
|                 |  | (v)   | W Th F 10 | CMBioLT |
| 81.103          |  |       | Th 2      | Eng3403 |
|                 |  |       | Th 3      | Eng3402 |
| 81.110          |  | (i)   | W 12      | CB114   |
|                 |  |       | Th 12     | OA039   |
|                 |  | (ii)  | W 12      | Arts201 |
|                 |  |       | Th 12     | HSB704  |
| II 81.200       |  |       | T 11      | SLT1    |
|                 |  |       | Th 11     | Arts215 |
| 81.201          |  |       | M W 12    | OCH1    |
| 81.202          |  |       | M 2       | Arts215 |
|                 |  |       | W Th F 3  | Lab1    |
|                 |  |       | F 2       | Lab1    |
|                 |  | (i)   | T 9       | OA036   |
|                 |  | (ii)  | T 12      | OA036   |
|                 |  | (iii) | T 2       | OA036   |
|                 |  | (iv)  | T 3       | OA036   |
| III 81.300      |  |       | T 11      | Arts716 |
|                 |  |       | W 11      | OCH1    |
| 81.301          |  |       | M 11      | Arts209 |
|                 |  |       | F 11      | HSB370  |
| 81.302          |  |       | Th 11,12  | OCHG10  |
| 81.303          |  |       | M 9       | Arts209 |
|                 |  | (i)   | T 9       | OA035   |
|                 |  | (ii)  | T 12      | OA035   |
|                 |  | (iii) | T 2       | OA035   |
|                 |  | (iv)  | T 3       | OA035   |

**KOREAN**

|            |           |            |         |
|------------|-----------|------------|---------|
| <b>I</b>   | 449.100 ) | M T W Th 9 | OCHG07  |
|            | 449.101 ) | M 11       | Lab1    |
|            |           | F 9        | Lab1    |
| <b>II</b>  | 449.102   | F 12       | OCHG07  |
|            | 449.200 ) | M 4,5      | Arts209 |
|            | )         | T F 9      | OA033   |
|            | 449.201 ) | M 12       | Lab2    |
|            | 449.202   | Th F 11    | OA033   |
| <b>III</b> | 449.300   | T Th 10    | OA033   |
|            |           | M 10       | OA033   |
|            |           | W 9        | Lab2    |
|            |           | Th 9       | OA033   |
|            | 449.301   | W F 10     | OA033   |
|            | 449.302   | T 10       | OCHG07  |
|            |           | Th 10      | OCHG21  |
|            | † 449.303 | Th 2,3     | OCHG07  |
|            |           |            |         |
|            |           |            |         |

**LATIN**

|            |        |        |        |
|------------|--------|--------|--------|
| <b>I</b>   | 09.100 | M F 9  | OA036  |
|            | 09.101 | M Th 3 | OA035  |
|            | 09.102 | M F 3  | CB115  |
|            |        | W 3    | OA029  |
|            | 09.103 | T 3    | CB15   |
| <b>II</b>  | 09.200 | Th 3   | HSB370 |
|            | 09.201 | T Th 9 | CB114  |
|            | 09.202 | W 2    | OCHG07 |
|            | 09.300 | M T 2  | OCHG07 |
| <b>III</b> | 09.301 | T Th 9 | CB114  |
|            | 09.302 | W 2    | OCHG07 |
|            |        | F 10   | OCHG07 |
|            |        | M 9    | OCHG21 |

Y  
B**LEGAL SYSTEM**

|          |        |     |           |         |
|----------|--------|-----|-----------|---------|
| <b>I</b> | 25.103 | (a) | M W Th 4  | LgeChem |
|          |        | (b) | M W Th 12 | LgeChem |
|          |        | (c) | M W Th 10 | LibB10  |
|          |        | (d) | M W Th 8  | LibB10  |

**LINGUISTICS**

|            |          |   |                       |         |
|------------|----------|---|-----------------------|---------|
| <b>I</b>   | 83.102   | A | T 12                  | LLT     |
|            |          | A | F 12                  | HSB1    |
|            |          | B | T F 12                | Dept    |
| <b>II</b>  | 83.103   |   | T W 4                 | Dept    |
|            | 83.202   |   | M 2,3                 | Arts209 |
|            | 83.203   |   | T 2,3                 | Dept    |
|            | 83.204   |   | Th 2,3                | Dept    |
|            | 83.205   |   | T Th 9                | Dept    |
| <b>III</b> | 83.300   |   | W 2,3                 | Dept    |
|            | † 83.303 |   | T F 10                | Dept    |
|            | 83.307   |   | M 10,11 (fortnightly) | Arts206 |
|            | 83.312   |   | W 12                  | OA029   |

**MANAGEMENT SCIENCE & INFORMATION SYSTEMS**

|            |        |                                 |          |         |
|------------|--------|---------------------------------|----------|---------|
| <b>I</b>   | 74.100 | (i)                             | M Th 9   | LLT     |
|            |        | (ii)                            | M Th 3   | LgeChem |
| <b>II</b>  | 74.200 | (i)                             | T Th 12  | ULT     |
|            |        | (ii)                            | T Th 2   | OCH2    |
|            | 74.220 |                                 | Th 10,11 | MedChem |
|            | 74.221 |                                 | T Th 8   | Arts215 |
|            | 74.222 |                                 | M 9,10   | ULT     |
| <b>III</b> | 74.300 | Consult Department at Enrolment |          |         |
|            | 74.301 | Consult Department at Enrolment |          |         |
|            | 74.320 |                                 | F 10,11  | Arts215 |
|            | 74.321 |                                 | W 10,11  | Arts202 |

74.323  
74.324  
74.325

W 8,9  
F 8,9  
Th 2,3

Arts716  
Arts215  
Arts202

# MANAGEMENT STUDIES & LABOUR RELATIONS

|     |          |                                 |                   |                |
|-----|----------|---------------------------------|-------------------|----------------|
| I   | 72.101   | (i)                             | T Th 8            | HSB 1          |
|     |          | (ii)                            | T 12<br>Th12      | LibB28<br>LLT  |
|     |          | (iii)                           | T 4<br>Th 4       | LibB28<br>HSB1 |
| II  | 72.204   |                                 | Th 9<br>F 9       | LibB28<br>LLT  |
|     | 72.207   |                                 | M 3, F 10         | HSB1           |
| III | 72.303   | Consult Department at Enrolment |                   |                |
|     | 72.311   | A                               | M 4,5             | OCH2           |
|     |          | A                               | Th 10,11          | ZooLT          |
|     | 72.313   | B                               | M 4,5             | OCH2           |
|     |          | B                               | Th 10,11          | ZooLT          |
|     | 72.314   |                                 | F 9,10            | Arts509        |
|     | 72.316   | A                               | T F 11            | LibB10         |
|     |          | A                               | Th 11             | ULT            |
|     | † 72.317 |                                 | W 2               | Arts202        |
|     |          |                                 | W 3 (fortnightly) | Arts206        |
|     | 72.325   | A                               | M 10              | BotLT          |
|     |          | A                               | W 10,11           | MedChem        |
|     | 72.326   | B                               | T F 11            | LibB10         |
|     |          | B                               | Th11              | ULT            |
|     | 72.340   | Consult Department at Enrolment |                   |                |

# MAORI STUDIES

|     |          |      |              |        |
|-----|----------|------|--------------|--------|
| I   | 04.100   | (i)  | M 9,10       | HSB1   |
|     |          | (ii) | M 4,5        | OA039  |
|     |          |      | Th 5         | LibB28 |
| II  | 04.101   |      | T 5          | HSB1   |
|     | 04.104   |      | M 4,5        | HSB2   |
|     | 04.202   |      | W 12         | OA039  |
|     | 04.203   |      | T 9,10       | OCH1   |
|     | 04.204   |      | Th 9         | OA039  |
| III | 04.205   |      | M 9,10       | Dept   |
|     | 04.302   |      | T F 10       | Dept   |
|     | † 04.305 |      | W 11,12      | Dept   |
|     | 04.306   |      | W 4,5, Th 12 | Dept   |
|     | 04.307   |      | Th 2,3       | Dept   |
|     | 04.308   |      | W 2,3        | Dept   |
|     | 04.310   |      | T 11,12      | Dept   |
|     | † 04.311 |      | Th 10,11     | Dept   |
|     | † 04.314 |      |              |        |

# MARKETING & INTERNATIONAL BUSINESS

|     |                  |      |          |         |
|-----|------------------|------|----------|---------|
| II  | 71.200<br>71.201 |      | W Th 8   | LibB28  |
|     |                  |      | W 10     | LibB15  |
|     |                  |      | F 12     | LibB28  |
| III | 71.300           |      | M 8,9    | OA039   |
|     | 71.301           | (i)  | T 9,10   | Arts215 |
|     |                  | (ii) | W 9,10   | Arts215 |
|     | 71.302           |      | Th 10,11 | OA039   |
|     | 71.304           |      | W 2,3    | UniHall |
|     | 71.310           |      | Th 2,3   | Arts209 |

# MATHEMATICS

|   |        |              |                 |      |
|---|--------|--------------|-----------------|------|
| I | 26.101 | (i)          | M W Th 11       | MLT2 |
|   |        | (ii)         | M Th 3          | MLT2 |
|   |        |              | W 3             | MLT1 |
|   | 26.102 |              | W 5,30 (-6.30)  | ACE  |
|   |        |              | Th 4,30 (-6.30) | ACE  |
|   | 26.105 | Consult Dept |                 |      |

|           |   |       |                          |         |
|-----------|---|-------|--------------------------|---------|
| 26.120    |   | (i)   | M Th 9 (W 9 odd weeks)   | MLT1    |
|           |   | (ii)  | M Th 12 (W 12 odd weeks) | MLT1    |
| 26.121    |   | (i)   | M Th 10 (W 10 odd weeks) | MLT1    |
|           |   | (ii)  | M Th 2 (W 2 odd weeks)   | MLT2    |
|           |   | (iii) | T F 5 (W 5 odd weeks)    | MLT3    |
|           |   | (iv)  | T F 12 (W 12 odd weeks)  | PLT1    |
| 26.122    |   | (i)   | M Th 10                  | MLT2    |
|           |   | (ii)  | T F 3                    | MLT1    |
| 26.140    |   | (i)   | T F 9                    | MLT2    |
|           |   |       | W 9 (even weeks)         | MLT1    |
|           |   | (ii)  | T F 12 (W 12 even weeks) | MLT1    |
| 26.141    |   | (i)   | T F 10 (W 10 even weeks) | MLT1    |
|           | A | (ii)  | T 2                      | ULT     |
|           | B |       | T 2                      | MedChem |
|           | Y |       | F 2                      | LibB10  |
|           | Y |       | W 2 (even weeks)         | MLT2    |
|           |   | (iii) | M Th 5 (W 5 even weeks)  | MLT3    |
|           |   | (iv)  | M Th 12                  | ZooLT   |
|           |   |       | W 12 (even weeks)        | PLT 1   |
| 26.142    |   | (i)   | T 11                     | ULT     |
|           |   | (ii)  | F 11                     | HSB2    |
| 26.165    |   | (i)   | M Th 3                   | MLT1    |
|           |   | (ii)  | T F 11                   | MLT2    |
|           |   |       | W 11 (even weeks)        | UniHall |
|           |   | (iii) | T F 3                    | UniHall |
|           |   |       | W 3 (even weeks)         | PLT2    |
| 26.175    |   |       | M Th 11 (W 11 odd weeks) | MLT 3   |
| 26.180    |   | (i)   | T W F 12                 | SLT 1   |
|           |   | (ii)  | M Th 3                   | MLT3    |
|           |   |       | W 3                      | MLT2    |
| 26.181    |   | (i)   | T F 9                    | MLT1    |
|           |   |       | W 9                      | PLT1    |
|           |   | (ii)  | T 10                     | LibB10  |
|           |   |       | W 10                     | PLT1    |
|           |   |       | F 10                     | LgeChem |
|           |   | (iii) | T F 11                   | MLT1    |
|           |   |       | W 11                     | PLT1    |
|           |   | (iv)  | T W 2                    | MLT1    |
|           |   |       | F 2                      | LibB28  |
|           |   | (v)   | T 4                      | PLT1    |
|           |   |       | W F 4                    | MLT1    |
| 26.182    |   |       | M 5.30 (-6.30)           | ACE     |
|           |   |       | T 4.30 (-6.30)           | ACE     |
| II 26.200 |   |       | M 11                     | PLT5    |
|           |   |       | M 3                      | PLT2    |
| 26.210    |   |       | T W F 9                  | MLT3    |
| 26.220    |   |       | T F 3                    | MLT2    |
|           |   |       | W 3                      | SLT1    |
| 26.221    |   |       | M W Th 9                 | CB15    |
| 26.222    | Y |       | T 11                     | LLT     |
|           | Y |       | Th 11                    | MLT1    |
|           | A |       | F 11                     | HSB1    |
|           | B |       | F 11                     | LLT     |
| 26.240    |   | (i)   | M Th 2                   | MLT 1   |
|           |   | (ii)  | T F 12                   | MLT 2   |
| 26.241    |   |       | T F 9, W 11              | PLT 5   |
| 26.260    |   | (i)   | M Th 9                   | MLT 2   |
|           |   | (ii)  | M Th 12                  | MLT 2   |
| 26.270    |   |       | T F 9                    | PLT4    |

|              |          |   |                                    |   |             |
|--------------|----------|---|------------------------------------|---|-------------|
|              | 26.280   |   |                                    | T F 10                                  | MLT3        |
|              | 26.281   |   | (i)                                | T 2                                     | MLT2        |
|              |          |   |                                    | F 2                                     | HSB2        |
|              |          |   | (ii)                               | T 4                                     | MLT1        |
|              |          |   |                                    | F 4                                     | PLT 1       |
|              | 26.290   |   |                                    | T F 4                                   | MLT2        |
|              | 26.293   |   |                                    | T W F 3                                 | MLT3        |
| III          | † 26.311 | A |                                    | M W 4                                   | PLT 4       |
|              | † 26.312 | A |                                    | Th 4,5                                  | PLT5        |
|              | 26.315   |   |                                    | M W Th 3                                | PLT 3       |
|              | 26.320   |   |                                    | T F 10                                  | MLT2        |
|              |          |   |                                    | Th 11                                   | PLT5        |
|              | 26.321   |   |                                    | M 1. T F 2                              | MLT3        |
|              | 26.325   |   |                                    | M Th 2                                  | MLT3        |
|              |          |   |                                    | W 9                                     | PLT3        |
|              | 26.330   | A |                                    | M W Th 12                               | MLT 3       |
|              | 26.331   |   |                                    | M Th 9. F 4                             | OA035       |
|              | 26.335   | B |                                    | M W Th 12                               | MLT3        |
|              | 26.340   |   |                                    | T F 12. W 2                             | MLT3        |
|              | 26.345   | A |                                    | M W 4                                   | MLT3        |
|              | 26.355   |   |                                    | T Th 4                                  | PLT 4       |
|              | 26.360   |   |                                    | M Th 10                                 | PLT5        |
|              | † 26.363 | B |                                    | M W 4                                   | MLT3        |
|              | 26.368   | B |                                    | M Th 2                                  | Dept        |
|              | 26.371   |   |                                    | M Th 12                                 | Eng         |
|              | 26.372   | A |                                    | M Th 2                                  | Eng         |
|              | 26.375   | A |                                    | T F 12                                  | PLT4        |
|              | 26.376   | B |                                    | T F 12                                  | PLT4        |
|              | 26.380   |   |                                    | T F 3 (W 3 odd weeks)                   | PLT4        |
|              | 26.381   |   |                                    | M Th 3 (W 3 even weeks)                 | PLT4        |
|              |          |   |                                    | M W Th 12                               | PLT5        |
|              | 26.382   |   |                                    | M W Th 10                               | MLT3        |
|              | 26.385   |   |                                    | T 9                                     | OCHG21      |
|              | 26.390   |   |                                    | F 9                                     | CB114       |
|              | 26.391   |   |                                    | M Th 9                                  | MLT3        |
|              |          |   |                                    | W 11 (odd weeks)                        | Eng         |
|              | 26.395   |   |                                    | T F 11                                  | MLT3        |
|              |          |   |                                    | W 11 (even weeks)                       | Eng         |
|              | 26.399   | B |                                    | W 9                                     | OCHG21      |
| <b>MUSIC</b> |          |   |                                    |   |             |
| I            | 28.100   |   | (i)                                | T W 12                                  | Dept        |
|              |          |   | (ii)                               | T 12. W 2                               | Dept        |
|              |          |   | (iii)                              | T 12. W 3                               | Dept        |
|              | 28.101   |   | (i)                                | M 12. T 11                              | Dept        |
|              |          |   | and one of the following sessions: |   |             |
|              |          |   |                                    | M 10, M <u>10.30</u> , T 10,            |             |
|              |          |   |                                    | T <u>10.30</u> , W 10, W <u>10.30</u> , |             |
|              |          |   |                                    | W <u>3.30</u> , W 4                     | Dept        |
|              |          |   | (ii)                               | T 11,3                                  | Dept        |
|              |          |   | and one of the following sessions: |   |             |
|              |          |   |                                    | M 10, M <u>10.30</u> , T 10,            |             |
|              |          |   |                                    | T <u>10.30</u> , W 10, W <u>10.30</u> , |             |
|              |          |   |                                    | W <u>3.30</u> , W 4                     | Dept        |
|              | 28.103   |   |                                    | M W 11                                  | Dept        |
|              | 28.104   |   |                                    | T 4,5                                   | Dept        |
|              | 28.105   |   | (i)                                | M 10. W 11                              | Dept        |
|              |          |   | (ii)                               | M 11. W 12                              | Dept        |
|              | 28.110   |   | (i)                                | T 3 (-3.30). F <u>2.30.3</u>            | Dept        |
|              |          |   | (ii)                               | T <u>3.30</u> (-4). F <u>2.30.3</u>     | Dept        |
|              |          |   | (iii)                              | Th 3 (-3.30). F <u>2.30.3</u>           | Dept        |
|              |          |   | (iv)                               | Th <u>3.30</u> (-4). F <u>2.30.3</u>    | Dept        |
|              | 28.113   |   |                                    | W 2                                     | PLT2        |
|              | 28.114   |   |                                    | T 2,3                                   | AnthroDept  |
|              | 28.115   |   |                                    | M W <u>4.30</u> (-5.30)                 | ACE:MusicB7 |



|                        |          |                |   |         |
|------------------------|----------|----------------|---|---------|
| II                     | 28.201   |                | T 3, Th 2   | Dept    |
|                        |          |                | and one of the following sessions:<br>M 11, M <u>11.30</u> , T 11,<br>T <u>11.30</u> , W 11, W <u>11.30</u> ,<br>Th 11, Th <u>11.30</u> | Dept    |
|                        | 28.202   |                | (i) M T 12  | Dept    |
|                        |          |                | and one of the following sessions:<br>Th 11 or 3  | Dept    |
|                        |          |                | (ii) M Th 12  | Dept    |
|                        |          |                | and one of the following sessions:<br>Th 11 or 3  | Dept    |
|                        | 28.203   |                | F 11,12   | Dept    |
|                        | 28.207   |                | T 9,10  | Dept    |
|                        | 28.210   |                | F 2,30,3  | Dept    |
|                        | 28.214   |                | Th 11,12  | Dept    |
|                        | 28.215   |                | W 9,10  | Dept    |
|                        | 28.216   |                | T 4,5   | Dept    |
|                        | 28.218   |                | W 4,5   | Dept    |
|                        | 28.223   |                | M 2,3   | Dept    |
| III                    | 28.301   | (until Easter) | Th 4,5  | Dept    |
|                        |          | (after Easter) | (i) T 3,4 (-4,30)   | Dept    |
|                        |          |                | (ii) Th 4,5 (-5,30)   | Dept    |
|                        | † 28.302 |                | Th 2,3  | Dept    |
|                        | 28.303   |                | F 11,12   | Dept    |
|                        | 28.307   |                | T 9,10  | Dept    |
|                        | 28.310   |                | W 12  | Dept    |
|                        | 28.314   |                | T 11,12   | Dept    |
|                        | 28.316   |                | W 2,3   | Dept    |
|                        | † 28.318 |                | W 4,5   | Dept    |
|                        | 28.323   |                | M 2,3   | Dept    |
|                        | † 28.324 |                | T 4,5   | Dept    |
| <b>PACIFIC STUDIES</b> |          |                |   |         |
| I                      | 79.100   | B              | T W Th 2  | ULT     |
| <b>PHARMACOLOGY</b>    |          |                |   |         |
| III                    | 96.301   |                | M Th 3  | SLT1    |
|                        | 96.302   |                | T F 8   | OA029   |
| <b>PHILOSOPHY</b>      |          |                |   |         |
| I                      | 29.100   | Y              | Th 10   | LLT     |
|                        |          | B              | F 10  | LLT     |
|                        | 29.101   |                | T 2   | LibB28  |
|                        |          |                | Th 2  | LibB15  |
|                        | 29.102   | Y              | T 10  | LLT     |
|                        |          | A              | F 10  | LLT     |
| II                     | 29.201   |                | T 10, Th 12   | Dept    |
|                        |          |                | F 10  | OA036   |
|                        | 29.203   | D,E            | M T Th 5  | ZooLT   |
|                        | 29.204   |                | W 2,3   | PLT5    |
|                        | 29.205   |                | W 4,5   | OCH2    |
|                        | 29.207   |                | Th 2,3  | CB15    |
|                        | 29.208   |                | F 11,12   | OA029   |
|                        | 29.209   | C,D            | M 11,12,2   | OA029   |
|                        | 29.210   |                | T 2,3   | Arts716 |
|                        | 29.212   |                | M 3,4   | OA029   |
|                        | 29.213   | B              | T 11,12   | CB115   |
|                        |          | B              | W 11,12   | CB115   |
| III                    | 29.302   |                | F 9,10  | Dept    |
|                        | 29.303   | C, D           | Th 11,12,2  | Arts509 |
|                        | 29.304   |                | W 11,12   | OA036   |
|                        | 29.305   |                | M W Th 3  | PLT3    |
|                        | 29.306   |                | M 9,10  | Dept    |
|                        | 29.307   |                | T 11,12   | OCHG07  |
|                        | 29.310   |                | M 2   | HSB370  |

**PHYSICS**

|            |          |     |                          |      |
|------------|----------|-----|--------------------------|------|
| <b>I</b>   | 31.101   |     | T 4,5, F 4               | PLT2 |
|            | 31.102   |     | M 4, Th 4,5              | PLT2 |
|            | 31.114   | B   | M 11                     | PLT1 |
|            |          | B   | W 11                     | MLT1 |
|            | 31.140   |     | M Th 10                  | PLT1 |
|            | 31.141   |     | M Th 9                   | PLT1 |
|            |          | (i) | M Th 2                   | PLT1 |
|            | 31.150   |     | T F 10                   | PLT1 |
|            | 31.151   |     | T F 9                    | PLT1 |
|            |          | (i) | T F 2                    | PLT1 |
| <b>II</b>  | 31.200   |     | W 2,3                    | PLT1 |
|            | 31.206   | A   | T F 3                    | PLT2 |
|            | 31.225   |     | M Th 10 (W 10 odd weeks) | PLT2 |
|            | 31.240   | A   | M Th 12 (W 12 odd weeks) | PLT2 |
|            | 31.245   |     | M Th 12 (W 12 odd weeks) | PLT2 |
|            | 31.255   |     | T F 10 (W 10 even weeks) | PLT2 |
|            |          |     |                          | PLT2 |
| <b>III</b> | 31.270   |     | T 12                     | PLT2 |
|            | 31.325   |     | T F 9                    | PLT2 |
|            | 31.326   | B   | T F 11                   | PLT2 |
|            | 31.330   | A   | M Th 2                   | PLT3 |
|            | 31.335   |     | M Th 2                   | PLT4 |
|            | 31.342   | A   | T F 11                   | PLT2 |
|            | 31.345   |     | M Th 11                  | PLT2 |
|            | 31.355   |     | M Th 9                   | PLT4 |
|            | 31.356   | A   | T F 2                    | PLT4 |
|            | † 31.370 | B   | T F 2                    | PLT4 |
|            |          |     |                          | PLT4 |

**PHYSIOLOGY**

|   |        |   |       |         |
|---|--------|---|-------|---------|
| <b>II</b>   | 67.201 |   | T F 3 | Arts215 |
| <b>III</b> All Stage III lectures are held in the Medical School: |        |   |       |         |
|   | 67.301 |   | M W 5 | LewisLT |
|   | 67.302 | A | T F 9 | Rm2284  |
|   | 67.303 | B | T F 9 | Rm2284  |

**PLANNING**

|           |        |  |        |        |
|-----------|--------|--|--------|--------|
| <b>II</b> | 36.262 |  | M T 10 | LibB15 |
|-----------|--------|--|--------|--------|

**POLITICAL STUDIES**

|            |          |   |          |         |
|------------|----------|---|----------|---------|
| <b>I</b>   | 30.100   | B | T 3      | LibB28  |
|            |          | B | W Th 3   | LibB15  |
|            | 30.106   | A | T W Th 3 | LibB15  |
|            | 30.107   | Y | M 12     | LLT     |
|            |          | A | T 12     | LibB15  |
|            | 30.109   | B | T 12     | LibB15  |
|            |          | Y | F 12     | LibB15  |
|            | 30.201   | B | W Th 2   | Arts716 |
|            | 30.204   | A | M W 11   | SLT1    |
|            | 30.209   | B | T Th 4   | OCH2    |
| <b>II</b>  | 30.211   | A | M 2      | Arts716 |
|            |          | A | T 2      | UniHall |
|            | 30.212   | B | M 2      | Arts716 |
|            |          | B | T 2      | UniHall |
|            | 30.214   | A | M 3      | OA039   |
|            |          | A | W 3      | ULT     |
|            | 30.215   | A | T Th 4   | OCH2    |
|            | † 30.216 | B | T Th 11  | BotLT   |
|            | 30.217   | B | M W 11   | SLT1    |
|            | 30.301   | B | M T 3    | OA039   |
| <b>III</b> | 30.302   | B | W Th 3   | Arts716 |
|            | 30.305   |   | M 2      | HSB370  |

|          |   |         |         |
|----------|---|---------|---------|
| 30.306   | A | W 2     | Arts716 |
|          | A | Th 2    | ULT     |
| 30.307   | B | W Th 12 | Arts716 |
| 30.309   | B | M W 4   | SLT1    |
| 30.310   |   | M 11    | HSB2    |
| 30.312   | A | T W 12  | Arts716 |
| † 30.313 | B | M W 10  | OA029   |

**PROPERTY ADMINISTRATION**

|          |  |        |      |
|----------|--|--------|------|
| I 37.100 |  | M 9,10 | ALR1 |
|----------|--|--------|------|

**PSYCHOLOGY**

|            |   |              |         |
|------------|---|--------------|---------|
| I 32.108   |   | (i) M Th 11  | LibB28  |
|            |   | (ii) M Th 4  | LibB28  |
| 32.109     |   | (i) T 11     | HSB1    |
|            |   | (ii) T 4     | HSB1    |
| 32.118     |   | Consult Dept | ACE     |
| 32.119     |   | Consult Dept | ACE     |
| II 32.210  |   | T 9          | HSB2    |
| 32.220     |   | M 3          | ULT     |
| 32.225     | A | M 3          | ULT     |
|            | B | W Th 3       | LibB10  |
| 32.230     |   | W Th 3       | LibB10  |
| 32.240     |   | F 10,11      | LibB15  |
| III 32.301 |   | W 2          | OA029   |
| 32.303     |   | T Th 10      | Dept    |
| 32.304     |   | F 10         | HSB2    |
| 32.306     |   | M 10         | HSB2    |
|            |   | Th 12        | Arts215 |
| 32.307     |   | F 2          | Dept    |
| 32.309     |   | M 9, F 12    | Dept    |
| 32.311     |   | Th 3         | Arts215 |
| 32.312     | A | T F 11       | LibB10  |
|            | A | Th 11        | ULT     |
| † 32.313   |   | T 2          | Dept    |
| 32.314     |   | W 9,10,11    | Dept    |
| 32.315     |   | M 4          | UniHall |
| 32.316     | A | M 1,2        | ALR3    |
|            | B | M 1,2        | HSB2    |

**QUANTITATIVE STUDIES**

|           |  |               |         |
|-----------|--|---------------|---------|
| I 290.100 |  | (i) T 9, F 10 | ULT     |
|           |  | Th 9          | LibB10  |
|           |  | (ii) T Th 3   | Eng1401 |
|           |  | F 3           | ULT     |
| 290.101   |  | (i) M 9       | LibB15  |
|           |  | W F 9         | LibB10  |
|           |  | (ii) M 11     | MLT1    |
|           |  | W 11          | HSB1    |
|           |  | F 12          | LgeChem |

**RUSSIAN**

|            |     |                 |       |
|------------|-----|-----------------|-------|
| I 43.100)  |     | M T W Th F 12   | OCH2  |
| 43.101)    |     | M 2 or M 3(lab) | Lab4  |
| 43.112     |     | Th 10,11        | OA029 |
| 43.113     |     | M W 4           | Dept  |
| II 43.210  |     | T 2,3           | Dept  |
|            |     | W 3 (lab)       | Lab3  |
| 43.211     | C   | M Th 2          | Dept  |
|            | Y   | F 2             | Dept  |
| 43.212     | D,E | M Th 2          | Dept  |
| III 43.310 |     | T 10,11         | Dept  |
|            |     | W 2             | Dept  |
| 43.311     |     | Th 10,11        | Dept  |
| 43.313     |     | M 10,11         | Dept  |

**SAMOAN****I** 478.100D,E  
D,ET Th 3  
W 3ULT  
ZoolT**SCANDINAVIAN STUDIES****I** 46.100 )  
46.102 )M Th 12  
T W F 12  
W 2Lab4  
Dept  
Lab1**II** 46.101  
46.200T Th 11  
M 9  
Th 9,10  
F 9,10  
W 9,10Arts209  
Lab2  
Dept  
Dept**III** 46.201  
46.202  
46.300T 9  
T 10. Th 9  
F 9,10  
W 9,10Dept  
Lab 2  
Dept  
Dept**SOCIOLOGY****I** 82.100  
82.101  
82.102  
82.104A  
B  
B  
B(i)  
(ii)W F 9  
W F 9  
M Th F 11  
T Th 12  
T Th 5LibB28  
LibB28  
HSB1  
Manukau  
Manukau**II** 82.200  
82.201A  
A  
B  
BM 10  
T 2,3  
M 10  
T 2,3Arts215  
OCH1  
Arts215  
OCH182.202  
82.204  
82.205  
82.207  
82.209  
82.210  
82.211B  
A  
B  
B  
A  
A  
AT 11,12. Th 12  
T 12. Th 9,10  
M 11,12. W 2  
Th 2. F 10,11  
Th 11,12,2  
M 11,12. W 2  
T 10,11CB114  
Arts215  
Dept  
OA039  
Dept  
Dept  
Dept**III** 82.212  
82.301  
82.305  
82.309  
82.310  
82.311  
82.312  
82.314  
82.316  
82.318  
82.319A  
Y  
B  
Y  
B  
A  
A  
Y  
A  
Y  
B  
BF 11  
F 2,3  
W 2. F 11,12  
F 2,3  
M 2,3. W 3  
T 11,2,3  
W 3. Th 10,11  
T 9,10  
F 10,11,12  
Th 3,4  
Th 11,12,2  
M 10. T 2,3Arts716  
OA029  
Dept  
OA029  
ALR3  
Dept  
Dept  
Arts716  
CB115  
Dept  
Dept  
OCHG10**SPANISH****I** 45.102(i)  
(ii)T W Th 10  
T W 11  
Th 11  
M 10Arts607  
Arts607  
Arts201  
Arts20245.103  
45.104)  
45.105)(i)  
(ii)  
(iii)  
(iv)  
(v)M T W Th 9  
M T W Th 9  
M T W Th 9  
M T W Th 9  
M T W 12Arts509  
Arts607  
Arts201  
Dept  
Arts509

(vi)

Th 12  
M T W 12HSB370  
Arts607  
Dept

(vii)

Th 12  
M T Th 12  
W 12Arts201  
Arts206  
Arts206

(viii)

M 3  
T W Th 3Arts206  
Arts509

(see also page 457)

|                            |     |       |                 |                    |
|----------------------------|-----|-------|-----------------|--------------------|
|                            |     | (ix)  | M 4<br>T W Th 4 | Arts202<br>Arts509 |
| 45.107)                    |     |       | M 11            | Dept               |
| 45.108)                    |     |       | T 11,12         | Arts611            |
|                            |     |       | W 12            | Dept               |
| II 45.200                  |     | (i)   | M 2             | Arts206            |
|                            |     |       | T 10            | Arts509            |
|                            |     | (ii)  | T 2             | Arts607            |
|                            |     |       | Th 2            | Dept               |
|                            |     | (iii) | T Th 4          | Arts607            |
| 45.202                     |     |       | Th 10,11        | Arts716            |
| 45.203                     |     |       | M 11            | Arts723            |
|                            |     |       | M 12            | Arts701            |
| 45.204                     |     |       | W 2             | OA039              |
|                            |     |       | W 3             | Arts607            |
| 45.206                     | B   |       | T 1             | Arts723            |
| 45.208                     |     | (i)   | M 10            | Arts607            |
|                            |     |       | T 11            | Arts509            |
|                            |     | (ii)  | M 11            | Arts607            |
|                            |     |       | T 12            | Arts202            |
| III 45.300                 |     | (i)   | M 10            | Arts607            |
|                            |     |       | T 11            | Arts509            |
|                            |     | (ii)  | M 11            | Arts607            |
|                            |     |       | T 12            | Arts202            |
| 45.305                     |     |       | M 3,4           | Arts607            |
| 45.306                     | B   |       | T 1             | Arts723            |
| 45.307                     |     |       | M 2             | Arts611            |
|                            |     |       | T 3             | Arts607            |
| 45.308                     |     |       | M 12            | Arts613            |
|                            |     |       | T 2             | Arts611            |
|                            |     |       | W 2             | Arts203            |
| 45.309                     |     |       | M T 10          | Dept               |
| <b>TUTORING IN SCIENCE</b> |     |       |                 |                    |
| II † 620.200               | C,E |       | W 2,3           | OCHG10             |
| <b>ZOOLOGY</b>             |     |       |                 |                    |
| I 38.102                   | B   | (i)   | M T Th F 2      | HSB1               |
|                            | B   | (ii)  | M T Th F 4      | LibB15             |
| II 38.207                  | A   |       | Th F 2          | ZooLT              |
| 38.250                     | Y   |       | M T 2           | ZooLT              |
| 38.251                     | A   |       | M T Th F 4      | ZooLT              |
| 38.252                     | B   |       | M T Th F 4      | ZooLT              |
| III 38.301                 | A   |       | M T Th F 4      | ZooLT              |
| 38.310                     | 4   |       | M T Th F 3      | ZooLT              |
| 38.315                     | 3   |       | M T Th F 3      | ZooLT              |
| 38.316                     | 3   |       | M T Th F 9      | ZooLT              |
| 38.317                     | 1   |       | M T Th F 3      | ZooLT              |
| 38.318                     | 2   |       | M T Th F 3      | ZooLT              |
| 38.320                     | 1   |       | M T Th F 9      | ZooLT              |

**LABORATORY TIMETABLE 1991**

Note: Laboratories are taken over the same period as the corresponding lectures, unless otherwise stated.

The length of the laboratories is shown as follows:

F 10-1 indicates a lab beginning at 10 am and finishing at 1 pm on Fridays.

Where only one figure is given, e.g. W 3, the lab indicated lasts from 3 pm to 4 pm on Wednesdays.

**BIOCHEMISTRY**

|     |        |                                   |           |
|-----|--------|-----------------------------------|-----------|
| II  | 66.202 | (i)                               | W 10-1    |
|     |        | (ii)                              | F 10-1    |
|     | 66.203 | (i)                               | T 10-1    |
|     |        | (ii)                              | Th 10-1   |
|     | 66.204 | Consult Optometry or Biochemistry |           |
| III | 66.301 | A                                 | M Th 10-1 |
|     | 66.302 | B                                 | M Th 10-1 |

**BIOLOGY**

|     |        |   |                                    |         |
|-----|--------|---|------------------------------------|---------|
| I   | 39.101 | A | (i)                                | T 10-1  |
|     |        | A | (ii)                               | T 10-1  |
|     |        | A | (iii)                              | W 10-1  |
|     |        | A | (iv)                               | W 10-1  |
|     |        | A | (v)                                | Th 10-1 |
|     |        | A | (vi)                               | Th 10-1 |
|     |        | A | (vii)                              | F 10-1  |
|     |        | A | (viii)                             | F 10-1  |
| III | 39.311 | 2 | W 10-1, 2-5                        |         |
|     | 39.314 | 4 | Consult Botany Dept<br>W 10-1, 2-5 |         |
|     |        |   | Consult Zoology Dept               |         |

**BOTANY**

|     |          |  |           |
|-----|----------|--|-----------|
| I   | 06.102   | (i)  | T 10-1    |
|     |          | (ii)   | W 10-1    |
|     |          | (iii)  | Th 10-1   |
|     |          | (iv)   | F 10-1    |
| II  | 06.250   | (i)  | W 10-1    |
|     |          | (ii)   | W 2-5     |
|     |          | Students may take 06.250 and various Geography papers, but must consult the Botany Dept about laboratory arrangements            |           |
|     | 06.251   | (i)  | M Th 10-1 |
|     |          | (ii)   | T F 10-1  |
|     | 06.252   | (i)  | M Th 10-1 |
|     |          | (ii)   | T F 10-1  |
| III | 06.313   | M Th 10-1  |           |
|     | 06.326   | W 10-1, 2-5  |           |
|     |          | Students wishing to take both 06.326 and 39.311 should note that the laboratories are so arranged that they can take both papers |           |
|     | 06.334   | T F 10-1   |           |
|     | 06.335   | M Th 10-1  |           |
|     | † 06.341 | T F 10-1   |           |
|     | 06.361   | T F 10-1   |           |
|     | 06.371   | W 10-1, 2-5  |           |

Consult Dept

Students wishing to take both 06.371 and 38.316 should note that the laboratories are so arranged that they can take both papers.

**CELLULAR & MOLECULAR BIOLOGY**

|     |        |             |           |
|-----|--------|-------------|-----------|
| III | 40.303 | (i)         | M Th 10-1 |
|     |        | (ii)        | T F 10-1  |
|     |        |             | T F 10-1  |
|     | 40.304 | T F 10-1    |           |
|     | 40.305 | W 10-1, 3-6 |           |

**CHEMISTRY****I 08.111/121**

Chemistry I students will be assigned to one 3-hour laboratory session chosen from the following times:

- (i) M 10-1
- (ii) M 3-6
- (iii) T 10-1
- (iv) T 3-6
- (v) Th 10-1
- (vi) Th 3-6
- (vii) F 10-1

**II 08.210 Two times in A or B chosen from:**

- M 10-1
- M 3-6
- T 10-1
- T 3-6
- W 10-1
- Th 10-1
- Th 3-6

**08.220 Two times in A or B chosen from:**

- M 10-1
- M 3-6
- T 10-1
- T 3-6
- W 10-1
- W 3-6

**08.230 Two times in A or B chosen from:**

- T 10-1
- T 3-6
- W 3-6
- Th 10-1
- Th 3-6
- F 10-1

**08.250 One time in A chosen from:**

- M 10-1
- T 2-5
- F 10-1

**08.260 One time in A chosen from:**

- M 10-1
- M 3-6
- Th 10-1
- Th 3-6

**III 08.310, 08.311 Two times in Q1, 2, 3 or 4 chosen from:**

- M 10-1
- M 3-6
- T 10-1
- T 3-6
- W 10-1
- Th 10-1
- Th 3-6

(08.310 and 08.311 may not be taken in the same quarter)

**08.320, 08.321 Two times in Q1, 2, 3 or 4 chosen from:**

- M 10-1
- M 3-6
- T 10-1
- T 3-6
- W 10-1
- W 3-6

(08.320 and 08.321 may not be taken in the same quarter)

**08.330 Two times in Q1 or 2**

- W 10-1 and one time chosen from:
- W 3-6
- Th 10-1
- Th 3-6
- F 10-1

|        |  |  |
|--------|--|--|
| 08.331 | Two times in Q3 or 4<br>W 10-1 and one time chosen from: | W 3-6<br>Th 10-1<br>Th 3-6<br>F 10-1           |
| 08.340 | Consult Dept   |  |
| 08.352 | One time in Q2,3 and 4 chosen from :                     | M 10-1<br>T 2-5<br>F 10-1                      |
| 08.360 | One time in B chosen from:                               | M 10-1<br>M 3-6<br>Th 10-1<br>Th 3-6<br>F 10-1 |
| 08.370 | B  |  |

**COMPUTER SCIENCE**

Consult Dept

**GEOGRAPHY**

|     |                            |  |
|-----|----------------------------|--|
| I   | 20.101/102                 | (i) T 11-1<br>(ii) T 2-4<br>(iii) T 4-6<br>(iv) W 10-12<br>(v) W 2-4<br>(vi) W 4-6<br>(vii) Th 10-12<br>(viii) Th 2-4<br>(ix) Th 4-6<br>(x) F 9-11<br>(xi) F 11-1<br>(xii) F 2-4 |
| II  | 20.201                     | (i) T 9<br>(ii) T 10<br>(iii) T 11<br>(iv) T 12<br>(v) T 2<br>(vi) T 3<br>(vii) T 4  |
|     | 20.202                     | (i) T 9<br>(ii) T 10<br>(iii) T 11<br>(iv) T 2<br>(v) W 8<br>(vi) W 9<br>(vii) W 12  |
|     | 20.203                     | (i) Th 9-11<br>(ii) Th 11-1<br>(iii) Th 2-4  |
|     | 20.204                     | (i) M 9<br>(ii) M 10<br>(iii) M 11<br>(iv) M 12<br>(v) M 2<br>(vi) M 3<br>(vii) M 4<br>(viii) M 5  |
| III | 20.205<br>20.302<br>20.303 | Consult Dept<br>T 9<br>(i) W 9-11<br>(ii) W 11-1   |

|          |                       |
|----------|-----------------------|
| 20.304   | M 5                   |
| 20.305   | Th 3                  |
| 20.310   | M 9                   |
| † 20.313 | (i) W 9<br>(ii) W 10  |
| 20.314   | Consult Dept          |
| 20.315   | T 5                   |
| 20.320   | (i) Th 3<br>(ii) Th 4 |

**GEOLOGY**

|     |        |   |   |
|-----|--------|---|---|
| I   | 21.111 | A | (i) T 11-1<br>(ii) T 3-5<br>(iii) W 2-4 |
|     | 21.112 | B | (i) T Th 11-1<br>(ii) T Th 3-5          |
| II  | 21.200 | 2 | W 8                                     |
|     | 21.211 | A | T 10-1                                  |
|     | 21.212 | B | T 10-1                                  |
|     | 21.213 | A | (i) W 11-1,3-5<br>(ii) T Th 3-5         |
|     | 21.215 | B | (i) W 11-1,3-5<br>(ii) T Th 3-5         |
| III | 21.300 | A | Th 2                                    |
|     | 21.303 |   | W 3-6                                   |
|     | 21.304 |   | M 3-6                                   |
|     | 21.305 |   | T 10-1                                  |
|     | 21.307 | B | Th F 3-6                                |
|     | 21.311 | A | F 10-1                                  |
|     | 21.312 | B | F 10-1                                  |
|     | 21.318 | A | Th 11-1                                 |
|     | 21.319 | B | W 11-1                                  |

**PHARMACOLOGY**

|     |        |                           |
|-----|--------|---------------------------|
| III | 96.301 | (i) T 10-1<br>(ii) W 10-1 |
|     | 96.302 | (i) T 3-6<br>(ii) F 3-6   |

(at Medical School)

**PHYSICS**

|   |                                  |   |   |
|---|----------------------------------|---|---|
| I | 31.114                           | B | Attend one from:<br>(i) T 9-11<br>(ii) T 11-1<br>(iii) Th 11-1<br>(iv) Th 2-4   |
|   | 31.140 & 150)<br>31.141 & 151)   |   | Attend one from:<br>(i) M 10-1<br>(ii) Th 10-1<br>(iii) F 10-1<br>(iv) M 3-6<br>(v) T 3-6<br>(vi) Th 3-6<br>(vii) F 3-6 |
|   | 31.140 or 150)<br>31.141 or 151) |   | Attend one from:<br>(i) M 10-1<br>(ii) Th 10-1<br>(iii) F 10-1<br>(iv) M 3-6<br>(v) T 3-6<br>(vi) Th 3-6<br>(vii) F 3-6 |

|     |                                  |   |
|-----|----------------------------------|---|
| II  | 31.225 or 240)<br>or 245 or 255) | Students taking <u>only one</u> of these papers attend one from:    |
|     | A                                | (i) M Th 3-6  |
|     | A                                | (ii) T F 3-6  |
|     | 31.225 or 245)<br>or 255)        | Students taking <u>two or more</u> of these papers attend one from: |
|     |                                  | (i) M Th 3-6  |
|     |                                  | (ii) T F 3-6  |
|     | 31.297                           | Attend one from:  |
|     | A                                | (i) M Th 4-6  |
|     | B                                | (ii) T F 4-6  |
| III | 31.390                           | Attend one from:  |
|     | A                                | (i) M Th 3-6  |
|     | A                                | (ii) T F 3-6  |
|     | 31.391                           | Attend one from:  |
|     | B                                | (i) M Th 3-6  |
|     | B                                | (ii) T F 3-6  |
|     | 31.392                           | Attend one from:  |
|     | A                                | (i) M Th 3-6  |
|     | A                                | (ii) T F 3-6  |
|     | B                                | (iii) M Th 3-6  |
|     | B                                | (iv) T F 3-6  |
|     |                                  | (v) M 3-6   |
|     |                                  | (vi) T 3-6  |
|     |                                  | (vii) Th 3-6  |
|     |                                  | (viii) F 3-6  |
|     | 31.393                           | B Th F 3-6  |

**PHYSIOLOGY**

|     |        |              |
|-----|--------|--------------|
| II  | 67.201 | (i) M 10-1   |
|     |        | (ii) Th 10-1 |
| III | 67.301 | W 2-5        |
|     | 67.302 | F 10-1       |
|     | 67.303 | F 10-1       |

(at Medical School)

**PSYCHOLOGY**  
Consult Dept**ZOOLOGY**

|     |        |   |                          |
|-----|--------|---|--------------------------|
| I   | 38.102 | B   | (i) T 10-1               |
|     |        | B   | (ii) W 10-1              |
|     |        | B   | (iii) W 2-5              |
|     |        | B   | (iv) Th 10-1             |
|     |        | B   | (v) F 10-1               |
| II  | 38.207 | A   | (i) W 10-1               |
|     |        | A   | (ii) W 2-5               |
|     |        | A   | (iii) Th 10-1            |
|     | 38.251 | A   | (i) M 10-1               |
|     |        | A   | (ii) T 10-1              |
|     |        | A   | (iii) W 10-1             |
|     | 38.252 | B   | Group A M T 10-1         |
|     |        | B   | Group B Th F 10-1        |
|     |        | Students to choose one laboratory from each group |                          |
| III | 38.301 | A   | Group A M T W 10-1       |
|     |        | A   | Group B W 2-5, Th F 10-1 |
|     |        | Students to choose one laboratory from each group |                          |
|     | 38.310 | 4   | T F 10-1                 |
|     | 38.315 | 3   | M Th 10-1                |
|     | 38.316 | 3   | Consult Dept             |
|     | 38.317 | 1   | W 10-1, 2-5              |
|     | 38.318 | 2   | Consult Dept             |
|     | 38.320 | 1   | Consult Dept             |

**REST SPACES**

The University has a number of rest spaces which students and staff with disabilities are welcome to use. Enquiries should be made in the first instance to John Lambert, Disabled Students Resource Officer, telephone 390-789.



---

# Student Allowances, Scholarships and Awards

## *Contents*

---

|     |  |
|-----|--|
| 462 | Student Allowances                       |
| 463 | Scholarships and Prizes                  |
| 464 | National Scholarships 1990               |
| 464 | University of Auckland Scholarships 1990 |
| 467 | University of Auckland Prizes 1989       |

# STUDENT ALLOWANCES, SCHOLARSHIPS AND OTHER AWARDS

## STUDENT ALLOWANCES

For the convenience of students a brief outline of allowances available through the Ministry of Education is printed below.

The official information is contained in the booklet *Student Allowances 1991*.

At the time of preparation of this Calendar (September 1990) many details for 1991 were still being decided by Cabinet. Consequently some of the information below may not be correct for 1991.

All enquiries should be made to the Student Allowances office (Room 126, Old Arts Building).

Note: Values stated are the figures as at July 1990.

### Eligibility

Students may receive assistance only if they are:

- a New Zealand citizen; or
- a person from overseas who has obtained permanent residency and signs a statutory declaration of their intention to reside permanently.

**Note:** Persons admitted to New Zealand on a study permit issued by the Department of Labour are NOT eligible for Student Allowances.

### Income Restriction

The income limit for assistance in 1991 is \$5,000 gross p.a. not including the vacation periods.

### Tenure

Students may only receive assistance for five academic years of fulltime study in a recognised course(s) unless they are enrolled in a recognised long course to study. The period of tenure for the various courses that have been recognised for tertiary grants purposes is as follows:

13 weeks: Prof LS

One Year: DipArts, DipBrC, DipCom, DipCompSci, DipDrama, DipEd, DipELT  
DipGeothermTech, DipGuid, DipLGA, DipMus(Hons), DipStats,  
DipMathsEd, PGDipSocRes, MPlan, MArch, MJur, LLM (papers only),  
MPA, MMedSc, MHB, BMus(Performance) (Hons), ME (papers only),  
Transitional Certificate

Two Years: DipCrim, DipTP, MBChB, MA, MAud, MCom, MSc, MPhil, MFA, ME, MEd, MLitt  
(papers and thesis), MMus, LLM (papers and thesis), MA/DipClinPsych,  
DipEdPsych

Three Years: BA, BCom, BHB, BMus, BPA, BSc, BTheol, DipMus

Four Years: BE, BEd, BFA, BMus(Performance), BOptom, BSc (Hons), BPlan, DipOpt,  
LLB, LLB(Hons), BCom/BSc†, BCom/BA†

Five Years: BArch, BA/BSc, BA/LLB†, BA/LLB(Hons)†, BA/BMus†, BA/BMus  
(Performance)†, BA/DipMus†, BA/DipMus(Hons)†, BCom/LLB†,  
BCom/LLB(Hons)†, BHB/MBChB, BMus/DipMus†,  
BMus/DipMus(Hons)†, BSc/BOptom, BMus (Performance)/BMus  
(Performance) (Hons), BA/MA, BA/MA/DipClinPsych,  
BSc/MSc, BSc(Hons)/MSc, BCom/MCom, LLB/LLM (papers only),  
LLB(Hons)/MJur, BMus/MMus, BE/ME (papers only) BPlan/MPlan

Six Years: LLB/LLM (papers and thesis)\*, BFA/MFA\*, BHB/MBChB/MMedSc\*,  
BHB/MHB/MBChB\*, BArch/MArch\*, BE/ME (papers and thesis)\*,  
BMus (Performance)\*/MMus (Performance)\*, BOptom/MSc (in Psych)\*  
BSc/BHB/MBChB, BA(Bio or Chem)/BHB/MBChB

Seven Years:

- Notes: (i) Conjoint courses, marked with a dagger (†), count as two courses. Other combined courses count as one course only.  
(ii) Those combinations of courses marked with an asterisk (\*) have been approved as "long" courses and can qualify for a sixth year of tenure.  
(iii) Certain courses have been designated as Courses of National Importance with a tenure of 6-7 years. Students may apply to the Director-General to receive assistance for combinations of courses regardless of any previous assistance which has been granted. A combination of a paramedical course and a suitable undergraduate course is designated as a Course of National Importance.  
(iv) A further year's fees assistance is available for Professional Legal Studies in the following combinations only: LLB/LLM/ProfLS and LLB(Hons)/MJur/ProfLS, LLB/ProfLS and LLB(Hons)/ProfLS.  
(v) Seven years "long" course in Medicine, requires a student to be admitted to BHB II on the basis of credits for the first Degree.

### Academic Performance

Students must pass more than half a fulltime course of study in any year in order to be eligible for assistance in a subsequent year.

### Application for Allowances

For 1991 students must apply for an application form on the appropriate 1991 PAF, or alternatively the application form may be collected from Student Allowances, Room 126, Old Arts Building.

## ALLOWANCES

Allowances are available according to the age of the student. There are three categories for single students:

a. Under 18 years of age, b. 18-19 years of age, c. 20 years of age and over.

For students who are married and/or have dependents, there are specific allowances which are detailed in the booklet *Student Allowances 1991*.

### a. Under 18 years of age

Transport Supplement \$11 per week if you live at home or choose to live away from home.

Transport Allowance if you live at home and have weekly public transport of more than \$20 per week; this allowance provides a subsidy of 75% of costs above \$20. Accommodation Supplement \$22 per week if you HAVE to live away from home in order to study.

Accommodation Benefit (Regional Rates Renting \$20 per week, Hostel \$22.50 (max) per week) in addition to the Accommodation Supplement for those who HAVE to live away from home in order to study.

Targeted Allowance up to \$86.14 per week where parents' combined taxable income is under \$20,956 per annum, on a pro rata scale with no payment to those whose parents' combined taxable income is over \$39,051 per annum.

Independent Circumstances Allowance \$114.86 per week for those who show they cannot live at home or cannot reasonably expect financial support from their parents. (A special application is required - refer to the Ministry of Education Booklet).

A and B Bursaries: A Bursary \$200 per annum; B Bursary \$100 per annum for those who achieved an A or B Bursary pass in the Bursaries Examination.

### b. 18-19 years of age

Basic Allowance \$46.88 per week for those who live at home or choose to live away from home.

Transport Allowance - see above as for those under 18 years.

Away From Home allowance \$69.86 per week for those who HAVE to live away from home in order to study.

Accommodation Benefit - see above as for those under 18 years.

Targeted Allowance (up to \$45 per week). Criteria are similar to those listed for under 18 years - refer to the Ministry of Education Booklet for details.

Independent Circumstances Allowance - refer to the criteria above for those under 18 years of age.

A and B Bursaries: A Bursary \$200 per annum, B Bursary \$100 per annum for those who are first year students and have gained an A or B Bursary pass in the Bursaries examination, or those who held an A or B Bursary in their last year of full-time study and passed more than half a full-time course in that year.

### c. 20 years and over

Basic allowance \$91.88 per week if you are living at home.

No transport allowance is available for those 20 years and over.

Away from home allowance \$114.86 per week.

Accommodation Benefit (Regional Rates Hostel varies according to Hostel cost)

## SCHOLARSHIPS AND PRIZES

A booklet entitled *Awards Handbook* is available without charge from the enquiry counter at the Registry, Princes Street. This booklet gives full details of the regulations governing scholarships, prizes and other awards administered by the University and details of funds available for special assistance.

### REVIEW OF SCHOLARSHIP

The Council, in awarding any scholarship, reserves the right to reduce the annual value of such scholarship at any time and from time to time during the tenure of it by any holder should the annual income of the funds of such scholarship, in the opinion of the Council, render such reduction expedient. All scholarships offered are subject to review in the event of the candidate being awarded other scholarships. Every holder of a scholarship shall be deemed to accept the award of same, subject to the above reservation, and notwithstanding that the value of such scholarship is set out specifically in the Regulations.

### RE-AWARD OF A SCHOLARSHIP DISCONTINUED BY THE ORIGINAL HOLDER

Fresh applications may be called for in any scholarship discontinued after a period of three months or more from the original date of award; the re-award in the event of this discontinuation of the scholarship to be made on the basis of the original application if possible.

## NATIONAL SCHOLARSHIPS - 1990

### BNZ Graduate Scholarship

### Commonwealth Scholarships (Australia)

### William Georgetti Scholarship

### Postgraduate Scholarships:

Austin, P.T.  
Barbour, Tanya  
Barlow, Kathryn A.  
Burr, J.P.  
Butler, Catherine  
Connell, S.D.  
Coxon, Evelyn I.  
Croxon, Bronwyn E.  
Daja, Mirella M.  
Fernando, Kristine  
Furjan, Helene M.  
Gatti, J.R.J.  
Halstead, M.A.B.  
Harland, Jenny I.  
Hayward, P.A.  
Holland, M.J.  
Howe, Lindsey G.  
Iball, Susan D.  
Ingham, J.M.  
Jones, Angela D.  
Kenwright, D.N.  
Key, P.A.  
Kralicek, A.V.  
Lennon, Tava M.

### Shirtcliffe Fellowship

### L.B. Wood Travelling Scholarship

Dance, Monica C.  
Levien, R.B.  
Koks, D.  
Liebman, A.

Austin, P.T.  
Holland, M.J.  
Key, P.A.  
Kralicek, A.V.  
Shaw, Rhonda M.  
Simester, D.I.  
Yee, T.

Mackay, J.P.  
Mangnall, R.T.  
Maroto Camino, Maria M.  
Marr, G.P.  
McKenzie, R.J.  
Newton, Karen C.  
Ng, E.W.K.  
Roberts, Nicola L.  
Robinson, Katie J.  
Rundle, C.B.  
Seaboyer, Judith A.  
Shaw, Rhonda M.  
Siim, Bronwyn G.  
Simester, A.P.  
Simester, D.I.  
Sly, I.M.P.  
Snowball, Rosalind  
Snowdon, T.K.  
Torrie, R.E.J.  
Walden, Valerie E.  
Whines, Janett R.  
White, S.R.  
Wrightson, Charlotte E.  
Yeo, E.H.  
Simester, A.P.  
Mackay, Lindsey G.

## UNIVERSITY OF AUCKLAND SCHOLARSHIPS - 1990

### Casement Aickin Memorial Bursary

### Auckland Centennial Music Festival Scholarship

### Auckland City Council Bursary in Town Planning

### Auckland City Council Queen Elizabeth II Scholarships:

Afeaki, T.B.  
Ah Kuoi, P.G.  
Ah Loo, D.R.  
Ai olupotea, Tapa'au'fa'asisina C.  
Atimalala, I.E.

Fuatai, F.  
Halafih, J.C.  
Ilolahia, Jaunnie L.  
Langahetau, Carolyn A.  
Laumatia, R.L.

Brunt, P.W.  
Calvert, Angela H.  
Corvette, Leanne M.  
Creevey, D.M.  
Eclipse, 'u  
Efaraimo, E.  
Eteuati, Faaiu B.  
Eville, Lina J.

Macartney-Filgate, Gustava M.  
Magaoa, Suzie-Anne  
McGlashan, S.H.  
Meredith, G.E.P.  
Ngau-Chun, Teresa L.A.  
Okesene, Tina  
Pa'u, P.J.  
Peters, R.A.

No Award  
Nicolls, D.M.  
Parfitt, Anna M.

Raea, P.M.  
Robertson, H.T.  
Ropati, I.L.  
Samu, Lina-Jodie  
Silao, M.A.

Suaalii, Tamasailau M.  
Tam Yam, T.  
Tapueluelu, J.V.  
Tengaru, Teiho  
Timoteo, Orepa  
Toeleli'u, Italia J.L.  
Tone, S.L.  
Ualesi, F.

Faamausili, Ionatana M.  
 Faleauto, E.G.T.  
 Fiaola, F.  
 Folo, Epenesa

Phillips, Imogen J.A.K.  
 Pokino, Jane  
 Pone, Lisi N.  
 Purcell, Pepe

Von Reiche, G.K.  
 Waith, A.  
 Yee Shaw, Suzie  
 Williams, E.J.

*Auckland City Council 1990 Commemoration Scholarship*

*Auckland Savings Bank Scholarship*  
*Marie d'Albini Scholarship*

*Anne Bellam Scholarship*

*Bishop Music Scholarships*

*Frances Briggs Memorial Bursaries in Botany*

*Broadcast Communications Lts. Scholarship*  
*R.N. Brothers Memorial Award*  
*F.D. Brown Postgraduate Science Research Scholarship*  
*Asea Brown Boveri Scholarship in Electrical Engineering*  
*Sir Peter Buck Memorial Bursary*  
*Buttle Wilson Scholarships in Finance*

*Shirley Calderwood Memorial Scholarship*  
*Chamber of Commerce Scholarship*  
*Chapman Tripp Sheffield Young Postgraduate Award*  
*Comalco Limited Scholarship in Engineering*  
*Comalco Undergraduate Scholarship in Chemical & Materials Engineering*  
*John Court Scholarship*  
*A.G. Davis Scholarship*  
*Dowelanco Bursary in Chemical & Materials Engineering*  
*Elam Art Scholarship*  
*Exicom Scholarship in Radio Communication Engineering*  
*F/O Alfred P. Fogerty Memorial Scholarships*  
*Geology Centennial Award*

*Gillies Scholarship*  
*Winifred Gimblett Scholarship*

*Belinda Godfrey Memorial Organ Scholarship*  
*Sir George Grey Scholarship*

*Sir James Gunson Scholarship*  
*Harcourts Real Estate Scholarship*  
*James Hardie & Co. Pty. Ltd. Bursary in Architecture*  
*Constance Herbert Memorial Music Scholarship*  
*Hollinrake Memorial Scholarship*  
*Robert Horton Engineering Scholarship*

*Evan Gibb Hudson Scholarship in Engineering*  
*Institution of Professional Engineers New Zealand*  
*Postgraduate Scholarship*  
*Jarden Morgan Scholarship in Finance*  
*Jarden Morgan Scholarship in Investments*  
*T.W.J. Johnson Scholarship in Clinical Medicine*  
*T.R. Johnston Scholarship*  
*Sir Alex Johnstone Scholarship*  
*Walter Kirby Singing Scholarship*  
*KRTA University of Auckland Foundation Scholarship*  
*Duffus Lubecki Scholarship*  
*Janet Bain Mackay Memorial Scholarship*  
*McConnell Dowell Postgraduate Scholarship*

Hancy, M.P.  
 Karena, H.A.  
 Robinson, L.P.  
 Shaw, Rhonda M.  
 Knüferrmann, Kirsten  
 Mosley, Kathryn J.  
 Cochran, Dianna D.  
 Webby, Helen P.  
 Brandon, S.A.  
 Hall, N.J.R.  
 Alexander, B.J.R.  
 Clearwater, M.J.  
 Mitchell, T.J.  
 Keywood, Melita D.  
 No Award  
 No Award  
 Faleauto, E.G.T.  
 Blennerhassett, M.C.  
 Horton, G.B.  
 Stone, J.B.  
 Wilson, G.J.  
 Lloyd, Suzanne L.  
 Gillespie, A.M.  
 No Award  
 Burns, C.D.  
 Thompson, C.L.  
 No Award  
 Hyde, T.M.  
 Perrins, I.T.  
 Littlewood, R.J.  
 Wheatcroft, Elizabeth  
 Bryner, Vivienne F.  
 Macdonald, A.J.  
 Horsburgh, M.K.  
 Gavey, Nicola J.  
 Newton, Karen L.  
 No Award  
 Pritchard G.  
 Storey, Elizabeth P.  
 Moot, D.J.  
 Hamilton, R.D.  
 Clements, Toni L.  
 Depledge, S.J.  
 Young, D.W.  
 Tham, G.J.J.  
 Tomlinson, K.A.  
 No Award

Hughes, G.O.  
 Hamilton, R.D.  
 Lloyd, Suzanne L.  
 Manning, P.J.  
 Lloyd, Suzanne L.  
 No Award.  
 Martelli, Lee F.  
 No Award  
 Metzler, M.R.  
 Ebbett, Rachel L.  
 Hughes, G.O.

*Medical Research Council of NZ Junior Research Awards in Health Sciences**Medical Research Council of NZ Research Award in Medical Sciences**Mercer Memorial Scholarship**National Roads Board Postgraduate Scholarship**N.Z. Federation of University Women (Auckland Branch) Postgraduate Fellowship**N.Z. Portland Cement Association Postgraduate Scholarship**N.Z. Steel Research Scholarship**Greta Ostova Violoncello Scholarship**Maurice Paykel Scholarship**Pears-Britten Scholarship in Singing**Wilhelm Penseler Scholarships in Music**Petralgas Chemicals Scholarships**Elizabeth Mary Phillips Scholarships:*

Armstrong, P.C.

Broatch, M.

Cohen, A.R.

Gong, Shifen

Gyde, R.J.

Harris, Diana R.

Jackson, Antonia A.

Koh, Karlyn Y-M

Lloyd, Amber J.

Millar, P.

Haldane, Andrea

Moselen, J.W.

Thompson, J.M.D.

Hanley, P.J.

Wong She, R.B.

Martin T.A.

No Award

Laidlaw, Tannis M.

Lee, Christina K-C.

McNeill, Heather E.

No Award

Hodgson, M.A.

Young, Jane

Ng, E.W.K.

Sly, I.M.P.

No Award

Lardner, Anne

Patston, Wendy L.

Bald, Andrea A.

Clemow, S.J.

Turnbull, A.D.

Newton, Moira E.

Okesene, Tina

Ropati, I.L.

Rockell, A.D.

Samu, Lina-Jodie V.

Shiu, May K.

Lewis, A.R.

Shaw, G.L.

Bald, Andrea A.

Campbell, Janette C.

Ladd, S.J.P.

Bradford, Miko N.

No Award

Nalden, Natalie S.

No Award

Glamuzina, Kaye L.

Mosley, Eleanor R.

No Award

Steel, Penny R.

*Grace Phillips Memorial Bursaries**Rankine & Hill Limited Engineering Scholarship**Lissie Rathbone Scholarships**Lissie Rathbone Additional Scholarship**Joe Raynes Scholarship**Kathleen Mary Reardon Memorial Music Scholarship**Reardon Postgraduate Scholarship in Music**Rive Memorial Scholarship**Sagar Scholarship for String Players**Sanders Memorial Scholarships**Michael Joseph Savage Memorial Scholarship**Senior Scholarships:*

Alexander, B.J.R.

Armstrong, P.C.

Berry, Vanessa H.

Boveland, M.J.

Brady, Anne-Mary S.

Brimblecombe, Kendrah L.M.

Carley, M.K.

Claridge, Megan R.J.

Clements, Toni L.

Cowan, B.R.

Davies, Faye M.

Ginever, Mary R.

Grouden, Mary R.

Hammond, Kay M.

Henderson, S.G.

Hicks, Lynley H.

Hodgson, M.A.

Hogan, Deborah J.

Hughes, G.O.

Intra, G.P.

Kingston, Nicola J.

Klubien, Birgitte J.

Kragten, Deborah

Lewis, A.R.

Lloyd, Suzanne

Lum, Linda N.

Maddock, T.W.

Mangall, R.T.

McElwee, B.M.L.

McKenzie, Catriona G.

Morissette, Mia L.F.

Napier, Stephanie P.

Pace, A.F.

Pederson, Amanda J.

Pritchard, G.

Rees, Catherine J.

Rogers, B.A.

Rundle, C.B.

Rundle, G.A.

Ryan, M.J.

Shaw, G.L.

Sherlock, Toni S.

Simester, D.I.

Standen, Michelle D

Steele, Joanna L.

Storey, Elizabeth P.

Thompson, M.J.

Troughton, Katrina S.

Turnbull, Cecilia M.

Vanniasingham, Ruth T.

Walker, Angela J.

Warren, Jane S.

White, Kathryn J.

Williams, M.S.

Wiri, R.K.J.

Wong She, R.B.

Woods, D.B.

Lam, T.L.

Webb, S.J.

No Award

*Siemens Bursary in Electrical & Electronic Engineering**Sinclair Scholarship**S.P.E.L.D. Association Scholarship*

Telecom New Zealand Fellowship in Telecommunications Engineering  
 Telecom New Zealand Scholarship in Telecommunications Engineering  
 Maxwell Walker Memorial Scholarship  
 Westpac Banking Corporation Scholarship

Neve, M.J.  
 Alexander, D.K.  
 No Award  
 Lloyd, Suzanne L.

## UNIVERSITY OF AUCKLAND PRIZES - 1989

AHI Prize in Glass Design  
 Andrew Memorial Prize

No Award  
 No Award

### Annual Prizes:

|   |                            |
|---|----------------------------|
| <i>Accounting and Finance</i>                       | Sim Y.G.                   |
| <i>Ancient History</i>                              | Boyes, K.A.                |
| <i>Anthropology</i>                                 | Tapsell, P.J.              |
| <i>Applied Mathematics</i>                          | Pritchard, G.              |
| <i>Architecture</i>                                 | Furjan, Helene M.          |
| <i>Art History</i>                                  | Brimblecombe, Kendrah L.M. |
| <i>Asian History</i>                                | Forsey, J.P.               |
| <i>Asian Politics</i>                               | Forsey, J.P.               |
| <i>Biblical History &amp; Literature</i>            | No Award                   |
| <i>Biochemistry</i>                                 | No Award                   |
| <i>Botany</i>                                       | Storey, R.G.               |
| <i>Cellular &amp; Molecular Biology</i>             | Snowden, Kimberley C.      |
| <i>Chemistry</i>                                    | Wardle, D.A.               |
| <i>Chinese</i>                                      | Humphrey, Marilyn A.       |
| <i>Commercial Law (Commerce)</i>                    | Sim, Y.G.                  |
| <i>Commercial Law (Law)</i>                         | Campbell, N.R.             |
| <i>Computer Science</i>                             | Torrie, R.E.J.             |
| <i>Economics</i>                                    | Wheatcroft, Elizabeth H.   |
| <i>Education</i>                                    | Scragg, Lorraine K.        |
|   | Wydeveld, Agatha C.        |
| <i>Engineering - Chemical &amp; Materials</i>       | Ackland, A.D.              |
| <i>Civil</i>  | Minson, R.J.               |
| <i>Electrical &amp; Electronic</i>                  |                            |
| <i>Engineering</i>                                  | Clemow, S.J.               |
| <i>Science</i>                                      |                            |
| <i>Mechanical</i>                                   | Tidey, S.B.                |
| <i>Mining</i>                                       | Christie, G.R.             |
|   | No Award                   |
| <i>English</i>                                      | Bradford, Miko N.          |
|   | Winstanley, Nicola J.      |
|   | Frusin, A.                 |
| <i>Equity and Succession</i>                        | Kate, Anet                 |
| <i>Fine Arts</i>                                    | Toh, D.Z.S.                |
|   | Bennett, G.W.              |
| <i>French</i>                                       | Allen, Tracey A.           |
|   | Paul, Britt S.             |
| <i>Geography</i>                                    | Cocker, Tracey L.          |
| <i>Geology</i>                                      | Becker, W.J.               |
| <i>German</i>                                       | Mawston, B.J.              |
| <i>Greek</i>  | Breckon, D.                |
| <i>Hebrew</i>                                       | No Award                   |
| <i>History</i>                                      | Hickford, M.C.             |
| <i>Human Biology</i>                                | Bryant, T.H.               |
| <i>Indonesian</i>                                   | Mercer, Julie              |
| <i>Italian</i>                                      | Yelas, Jessica M.          |
| <i>Japanese</i>                                     | Stevens, K.J.              |
| <i>Land Law</i>                                     | Napier, Stephanie P.       |
| <i>Latin</i>  | Barry, K.J.                |
| <i>Linguistics</i>                                  | Barry, K.J.                |
| <i>Management Science &amp; Information Systems</i> | Ng, Jiak See               |

*Management Studies &  
Labour Relations  
Maori Studies  
Marketing & International  
Business  
Medicine  
Music  
Optometry  
Philosophy*

*Physics  
Physiology  
Planning  
Political Studies  
Property  
Psychology  
Pure Mathematics  
Russian  
Scandinavian Studies  
Sociology  
Spanish  
Zoology*

*Philip Sidney Arden Memorial Prize  
John Asher Prizes in German Literature*

*Asian History Award  
Auckland Brick Manufacturers' Prize*

*Auckland Goethe Society Prize  
Auckland Stock Exchange Prize  
Auckland Town Planning Assoc. Prize in Town Planning  
Bartrum Memorial Prizes in Geology*

*Beecham Research Laboratories' Prize  
L.H. Briggs Memorial Prize  
Vernon Brown Memorial Award  
Alice Bush Memorial Prize  
Butland Prize  
Butterworth Prize  
J.P. Campbell Bursary  
R. Morrison Cassie Memorial Prize  
Robert Chapman Prize in Political Studies  
Chisholm Memorial Prize  
Ciba-Geigy Prize in Applied Pharmacology & Therapeutics  
Clarkson Measured Drawing Prize  
Coopers & Lybrand Prizes in Accounting*

*Cost and Management Accounting Prizes*

*Tony Cotton Memorial Prizes*

*Philip Graham Crabbe Memorial Prize  
Marian Cranwell Prize  
K.B. Cumberland Prize*

*Gary Davies Memorial Prizes*

*Davies-Sproule Memorial Prize  
Deloitte, Haskins & Sells Prizes*

*First:  
Second:*

*Honours Year:  
Stage III:*

*Graduate Award:  
Undergraduate Award:*

*First Prize:  
Second Prize:*

Jones, Shelley E.R.  
No Award

Carden, P.J.  
Dixon, S.R.  
Madden, Beverley P.D.  
Corbett, Patricia R.  
Forges, J.R.D.  
Gore, K.L.  
Stroud, Gillian M.  
Pace, A.F.  
Humphries, Karen A.  
Dodds, Marilyn J.  
Van de Geer, Sonya H.  
Rundle, G.A.  
Lynch, Ann-Marie L.  
Surendonk, T.J.  
Nathan, Joanne M.  
Mawston, B.J.  
Hanlon, Sarah J.  
Wilks, D.H.  
Knightsbridge, P.I.  
Parker, Cynthia M.  
Hafner, C.A.  
Pringle, Catherine A.  
Wilks, D.H.  
Miles, Patricia A.  
Ingham, J.F.  
Young, M.O.  
Ronayne, Sylvia  
Whineray, M.L.  
Dodds, Marilyn J.  
White, S.R.  
Bovelander, M.J.  
No Award  
Sutton, Bridget M..  
Phillips, S.V.  
Anderson, Helen L.  
Kingsford, D.P.  
Wright, Frances M.  
Coyle, S.J.  
Lander, Rachel F.  
Riddell, A.B.  
Watt, G.R.  
Poon, P.C.  
No Award  
Allen, Tracey A.  
Lowe, Anita S-B.  
Sim, Y.G.  
Wong, Amelia  
Lloyd, Suzanne L.  
Pederson, Amanda J.  
White, Tracey M.  
No Award  
Vitalis, E.T.  
Fake, D.M.  
No Award  
Benediktsson, K.  
Power, Helen C.  
Hucker, R.B.  
Mitchell, S.R.  
Bradley, M.J.  
Lloyd, Suzanne L.  
Stone, J.B.



Ernst & Young Prize in Cost and Management Accounting  
 Ernst & Young Prize in Financial Accounting  
 David Fleming Memorial Prize  
 Forensic Medicine Essay Prize

**Fowlds Memorial Prizes**

- Architecture Property & Planning

- Arts
- Commerce
- Engineering
- Fine Arts
- Law
- Medicine & Human Biology
- Music
- Science

Eric Hector Goodfellow Memorial Prize  
 James Gordon Goodfellow Memorial Prize  
 Rosemary Grice Memorial Prize  
 Habens Prize

**Haydon Prize**

W.E. Henley Prize in Clinical Medicine  
 George S. Holmes Memorial Prize  
 Holmes Consulting Group Structural Engineering Prize  
 George Hopkins Prize  
 IEE Prizes

**Iford Photography Prize**

Institute of Chartered Secretaries & Administrators' Prize  
 Institution of Production Engineers' Prize  
 A.C. Keys Memorial Prize  
 Kodak Photography Prize  
 Kupe Group Prize

T.L. Lancaster Memorial Prize in Botany  
 Dr. F. Wilson Lang Memorial Prize

Law Book Company Ltd. Prize  
 Desmond Lewis Memorial Prize  
 Arnold Lillie Prize in Geology  
 Mainzeal Construction Studies Prize  
 F.A. de la Mare Prize  
 S.R. de la Mare Prize  
 Dr. R.G. McElroy Prize  
 R.E.F. Matthews Prize in Cellular and Molecular Biology  
 Janetta McStay Prize for Pianists  
 Douglas Mews Prize  
 Monier Prizes

**Montgomery Memorial Prize**

John Mulgan Memorial Prize  
 L.D. Nathan Prizes in Marketing  
 N.Z. Automobile Assoc. Prize in Traffic Engineering  
 N.Z. Computer Society Prize  
 N.Z. Institute of Architects' Prizes

First Professional:  
 Second Professional:  
 Third Professional:  
 Fourth Professional:

N.Z. Institute of Chemistry (Auckland Branch) Prize  
 N.Z. Institute of Valuers' Prize  
 N.Z. Society of Accountants' Prizes:

Accounting I:  
 Accounting II:

Sim, Y.G.  
 Sim, Y.G.  
 No Award  
 Ball C.M.  
 Mutch, P.G.

Furjan, Helene M.  
 Frusin, A.  
 Simester, D.I.  
 Sritharan, S..  
 Raos, P.J.  
 Simester, A.P.  
 Jansen, K.L.R.  
 Gordon, Deborah M.  
 Ensor, A.J.  
 Cowan, B.R.  
 Hughes, G.O.  
 Hughes, Sarah M.  
 Bell, Shirley A.  
 Jesson, Jocelyn G.  
 Husbands, P.D.  
 Kingsford, D.P.  
 No Award  
 Minson, R.J.  
 Goldwater, M.J.  
 Mangnall, R.T.  
 Rolle, P.H.  
 Macdonald, H.C.  
 Steele, Joanna L.  
 Sly, I.M.P.  
 Mason, Toni H.  
 Haines, Tasha M.  
 Dickson, N.A.  
 Judge, Diana F.  
 No Award  
 Hardie, Claire C.  
 Syme, Jennifer L.  
 Long, J.  
 Huyen, Susan I.  
 Smith, Robyn C.M.  
 Megson, Cherie E.  
 No Award  
 Gill, Elizabeth L.  
 Key, P.A.  
 No Award  
 Ginever, Mary R.  
 Patston, Wendy L.  
 Adams, C.  
 Brebner, G.B.  
 Nustrini, Stefania  
 Surendonk, T.J.  
 Shiu, May K.  
 No Awards  
 Burr, J.P.  
 Henderson, S.G.  
 Clapperton, Belinda M.  
 Phillips, S.V.  
 Hadimioglu, Cagla J.  
 Ellis, Belinda A.B.  
 Ingham, J.F.  
 Refiti, A.I.  
 Howe, Lindsay G.  
 Tutchon, D.M.  
 Lynch, Anne-Marie  
 Anderson, E.J.

*F.E.R. Noble Memorial Prizes*

Walter O'Connell Prize in Economic History  
 Otago School of Mines Prize in Mining Engineering  
 Pathology Prize  
 Peak Rodgers and Partners Prizes in Commercial Legal Studies  
 Peat, Marwick, Mitchell & Co. Prizes: First Prize:  
 Second Prize:

*Potter Interior Systems Prizes in Architecture:*

Second Professional:  
 Third Professional:

Geoffrey Powell Prize  
 Property Management Institute Prize: First Prize:  
 Second Prize:

D.W. Pullar Prize  
 Real Estate Institute Prize  
 Richards Prize in Primary Health Care  
 Douglas Robb Prize  
 Carrick Robertson Prize  
 Roche Prize in Psychiatry  
 Christine Roigard Memorial Prize  
 Royal N.Z. College of General Practitioners' Prize  
 Rudd, Watts and Stone Prizes

Sagar Geophysics Prize  
 Sandoz Prize in Pharmacology  
 S.E.T.M.A. Timber Engineering Prize  
 C.M. Segedin Prizes in Engineering Science

Arthur Sewell Prize in English  
 Lallu Ram Sharma Prize  
 Smith, Kline & French Prize in Cardiology  
 Smith, Kline & French Prize in Gastroenterology  
 Yvonne Sogno Prizes in Finance

Squire Speedy Prize  
 Spicer & Oppenheim Prize  
 John Tinline Prize in English  
 A.L. Titchener Prize  
 Touche Ross Prize in Taxation  
 H.B. Turbott Prize in Community Health  
 G.W. Eaton Turner Prize  
 Paul Turtill Memorial Awards in Geology: Best Student:  
 Second Award:

Valuers' Registration Board Prize  
 Seiichi Waki Prizes in Physics

Wallath Prize  
 W.D. Wilson Prize  
 Wilson-Allison Memorial Prize in Dermatology  
 Maharaja Winiata Memorial Prize  
 1928 Staff Award in Mechanical Engineering

Abel, J.R.  
 Gapes, A.J.  
 Butler, M.C.B.  
 Cheyne, R.M.  
 Irvine, Helen M.  
 Simester, A.P.  
 Bennie, Elizabeth  
 Anderson, Maryanne  
 Lloyd, Suzanne L.

McGrail, J.C.  
 Arden, J.R.  
 Stanton, Tracey A.  
 Mitchell, S.R.  
 Gapes, A.J.  
 Mead, P.R.  
 Otto, J.J.  
 Dickson, N.A.  
 Seales, Donna M.  
 Kingsford, D.P.  
 Chan, W.K.  
 Clark, M.A.  
 Wilks, D.H.  
 Clark, Fay P.  
 Davies, Suzanne L.  
 McClintock, R.B.  
 Roberts, Nicola L.  
 Cowan, B.R.  
 Dwyer, S.M.  
 Hughes, G.O.  
 Taylor, A.J.  
 No Award  
 No Award  
 No Award  
 No Award  
 Blennerhasset, M.C.  
 Lloyd, Suzanne L.  
 Rundle, G.A.  
 Scowcroft, G.P.  
 Cornes, R.M.  
 Evans, J.M.  
 Pederson, Amanda J.  
 Pool, Felecity J.  
 Cheyne, R.M.  
 Lipman, M.P.  
 Hunt, A.M.  
 Megson, Cherie E.  
 Holland, M.J.  
 Lythe, G.D.  
 Spencer, M.B.  
 Knox, A.J.  
 O'Neill, D.A.  
 Mutch, P.G.  
 Tapsell, P.G.  
 Lawton, G.P.

# Legislation

## Contents

|                               |                                 |   |
|-------------------------------|---------------------------------|---|
| <b>Act of Parliament</b>      | 471                             | University of Auckland Act 1961   |
| <b>University Statutes</b>    | 473<br>474                      | Degrees and Other Academic Qualifications Statute<br>Court of Convocation Statute 1962  |
| <b>University Regulations</b> | 474<br>477<br>479<br>481<br>485 | Council Elections (Court of Convocation<br>Representatives) Regulations<br>Council Elections (Representative of Governing<br>Bodies of Secondary Schools) Regulations<br>Council Elections (Lecturers' Representative)<br>Regulations<br>Senate Elections (Lecturers' Representatives of<br>Faculties) Regulations<br>Senate Elections (Lecturers' Representatives at Large)<br>Regulations |

## UNIVERSITY OF AUCKLAND ACT 1961

### ANALYSIS

#### Title

1. Short Title and Commencement
2. Interpretation
3. Constitution of the University
4. University District and Court of Convocation

#### Powers of the Council

20. Award of certificates, etc.
21. Lectures to members of the public

## AN ACT TO CONSOLIDATE AND AMEND CERTAIN ENACTMENTS OF THE GENERAL ASSEMBLY RELATING TO THE UNIVERSITY OF AUCKLAND

BE IT ENACTED by the General Assembly of New Zealand in Parliament assembled, and by the authority of the same, as follows:

### 1. Short Title and Commencement

- (1). This Act may be cited as the University of Auckland Act 1961.
- (2). This Act shall come into force on the first day of January, nineteen hundred and sixty two.

### 2. Interpretation

In this Act, unless the context otherwise requires, -

"The Council" means the Council of the University of Auckland constituted in accordance with Part XV of the Education Act 1989:

"Lecturer" means a member of the staff of the University of Auckland who is in terms of his appointment an associate professor, a reader, a senior lecturer, or a lecturer of the University; and includes such other persons and classes of persons as the Council from time to time determines:

"Minister" means the Minister of the Crown for the time being responsible for the administration of this Act:

"Professor" means a professor of the University of Auckland; but does not include an associate professor:  
 "The Registrar" means the Registrar of the University of Auckland:  
 "The University" means the University of Auckland constituted under this Act.

### 3. Constitution of the University

(1). For the advancement of knowledge and the dissemination and maintenance thereof by teaching and research there shall be a University to be called the University of Auckland.

(2). The University shall consist of the Council, the professors emeriti, the professors, lecturers, junior lecturers, Registrar, and librarian of the University for the time being in office, the graduates and undergraduates of the University of New Zealand whose names are for the time being on the register of the Court of Convocation of the University of Auckland, and such other persons and classes of persons as the Council may from time to time determine.

(3). The University shall be a body corporate with perpetual succession and a common seal, and may hold real and personal property, and sue and be sued, and do and suffer all that bodies corporate may do and suffer.

(4). The University established under this Act is hereby declared to be the same institution as the institution of that name existing immediately before the commencement of this Act under the University of Auckland Act 1954 (as amended by the University of Auckland Amendment Act 1957), which institution was originally established under the name of the Auckland University College under the Auckland University College Act 1882.

### 4. Court of Convocation

(1). - repealed

(2). - repealed

(3). There shall be a Court of Convocation of the University.

(4). The said Court of Convocation shall consist of the persons whose names are enrolled on a register to be kept by the Registrar.

(5). Every person shall be entitled to have his name enrolled on the register of the Court of Convocation who

(a) Is a graduate of the University; or

(b) Being a graduate of the University of New Zealand either by examination at any time or by reasons of having been admitted ad eundem gradum before the first day of January, nineteen hundred and forty-three, is not by reason of that qualification, enrolled on the register of the Court of Convocation for any other University, and is otherwise qualified in accordance with statutes made by the Council to be enrolled on the register of the Court of Convocation of the University; or

(c) Not being such a graduate, is a professor or graduate full-time member of the staff of the University or a graduate member, approved by the Council as being of University status, of the staff of an institution affiliated to the University; or

(d) Is otherwise entitled in accordance with statutes made by the Council to have his name enrolled on the said register.

(6). The power of the Council under Section 194 of the Education Act 1989 to make statutes extends to making statutes for the keeping of the register of the Court of Convocation, which statutes may include provisions prescribing the persons and classes of persons who are eligible under paragraph (b) or paragraph (d) of subsection (5) of this section for membership of the said Court of Convocation and the conditions (whether as to payment of fee or otherwise) on which persons are entitled to have their names enrolled in the register of the said Court; and, subject to this Act and to the said statutes, if any, the said Court shall have power to make such rules for the conduct of its business as it thinks fit as the Council may determine.

(7). The said Court may make representations to the Council on any matter concerning the interests of the University.

### Sections 5 to 19 - repealed

### 20. Awards of Certificates, etc.

The Council shall have power, under such conditions as it thinks fit, to award certificates, fellowships, scholarships, bursaries and prizes, and to make other awards.

### 21. Lectures to Members of the Public

The Council shall have power to provide such lectures and instruction for any persons, whether or not they are members of the University, as it thinks fit, and on such conditions as it thinks fit, and may award certificates to any of them.

### Sections 22 to 53 - repealed

## DEGREES AND OTHER ACADEMIC QUALIFICATIONS STATUTE

Subject to section 194(1)(g) of the Education Amendment Act 1990, the University of Auckland is empowered to confer the following degrees and diplomas:

### *Degrees:*

Bachelor and Master of Architecture  
 Bachelor and Master of Arts  
 Master of Audiology  
 Master of Business Administration  
 Bachelor and Master of Commerce  
 Bachelor and Master of Education  
 Bachelor, Master and Doctor of Engineering  
 Bachelor and Master of Fine Arts  
 Master of Health Sciences  
 Bachelor and Master of Human Biology  
 Master of Jurisprudence  
 Bachelor, Bachelor with Honours, Master and Doctor of Laws  
 Master and Doctor of Literature  
 Bachelor of Medicine and Bachelor of Surgery  
 Doctor of Medicine  
 Master of Medical Science  
 Bachelor, Bachelor (Performance), Bachelor (Performance) with Honours, Master and Doctor of Music  
 Bachelor of Optometry  
 Master and Doctor of Philosophy  
 Bachelor and Master of Planning  
 Bachelor and Master of Property Administration  
 Master of Public Health  
 Bachelor, Bachelor with Honours, Master and Doctor of Science  
 Bachelor of Science Education  
 Master of Taxation Studies  
 Bachelor of Theology

### *Diplomas in:*

Arts  
 Broadcast Communication  
 Business  
 Clinical Psychology  
 Commerce  
 Computer Science  
 Criminology  
 Drama  
 Education  
 Educational Psychology  
 English Language Teaching  
 Geothermal Energy Technology  
 Guidance and Counselling  
 Gynaecology and Obstetrics  
 Local Government and Administration  
 Mathematical Education  
 Mathematics Education  
 Music and Music with Honours  
 Obstetrics  
 Paediatrics  
 Postgraduate Diploma in Arts  
 Postgraduate Diploma in Legal Studies  
 Postgraduate Diploma in Science  
 Postgraduate Diploma in Social Research  
 Pulp and Paper Technology  
 Science  
 Statistics

## COURT OF CONVOCATION STATUTE 1962

*Subject to confirmation on review by the Council in 1991*

Pursuant to section 4 of the University of Auckland Act 1961.

1. This Statute may be cited as the Court of Convocation Statute 1962.
2. The Registrar of the University shall prepare and maintain a register to be known as the Register of the Court of Convocation for the Auckland University District and shall (subject to section 5 hereof) enrol thereon the names and addresses (so far as such addresses are known) of all persons entitled to be so enrolled under section 4 of the said Act and under section 3 of this Statute.
3. Under and for the purposes of subsection 5 of section 4 of the said Act each person shall be entitled to have his name enrolled on the Register of the Court of Convocation (without fee) who being a graduate of the University of New Zealand either by examination at any time or by reason of having been admitted *ad eundem gradum* before the 1st day of January, 1943, is not by reason of that qualification enrolled on the Register of the Court of Convocation for any other University District in New Zealand, and
  - (i) under section 23A of the New Zealand University Act 1908 was enrolled or entitled to be enrolled on the register of the District Court of Convocation of the Auckland University District at the 31st day of December, 1961, or
  - (ii) was an undergraduate member of the University of Auckland at the 31st day of December, 1961, and became a graduate of the University of New Zealand after that date, or
  - (iii) at a date after the 31st day of December, 1961, and immediately before had resided in the Auckland University District for a period of not less than three calendar months.
4. Except as provided in section 5 hereof it shall not be necessary for any person to be so enrolled on the register to apply for enrolment.
5. Every person who is entitled to be enrolled on the register under paragraph (iii) of section 3 of this Statute may apply to the Registrar for enrolment and upon making that application and producing such evidence of the facts and matters entitling him to enrolment as the Registrar may reasonably require shall be enrolled on the register.
6. Any enrolled member of the Court may, by notice under his hand delivered to the Registrar, object to the register on the grounds that any person whose name is on the register does not possess the necessary qualifications.
7. The Registrar shall enquire into and dispose of any such objection forthwith after receiving it.
8. Any person aggrieved by any decision or act of the Registrar relating to the register may appeal therefrom to the Council by notice under his hand, addressed to the Chancellor, and delivered at the University not later than 5 o'clock on the afternoon of the seventh day on which the register is to be closed for the purposes of an impending election.
9. Every such appeal shall be heard and determined by the Council or a Committee appointed by the Council and the Registrar shall amend the register in such manner as the Council or the Committee when disposing of the appeal directs.
10. (a). Any member of the Court having changed his address shown on the register may request the Registrar to amend the register in respect of that address and the Registrar shall make such amendment accordingly.  
(b). The Registrar being satisfied (otherwise than under the preceding paragraph (a) of this section) that the address of a member of the Court has been changed may amend the register in respect of that address provided that he shall forthwith post notices of that amendment to the member at both the old and the new address.
11. The Registrar shall expunge from the register the name of any person who has died or has ceased to be entitled to be enrolled thereon, and he shall be entitled to make any amendment of name made necessary by marriage.

## THE COUNCIL ELECTIONS (COURT OF CONVOCATION REPRESENTATIVES) REGULATIONS

*Subject to confirmation on review by the Council in 1991*

1. These regulations may be cited as the Council Elections (Court of Convocation Representatives) Regulations.
2. For the purpose of conducting the elections to the Council by the Court of Convocation an electoral roll shall be prepared and revised from time to time of the names of those members of the Court who are eligible to vote in accordance with these Regulations.
3. The members of the Court who are eligible to vote at an election by the Court are those members (but no other members) who
  - (a) voted at the last two preceding elections
  - (b) (having had their names entered on the Court register since the penultimate election) voted at the last preceding election.

- (c) have had their names entered on the Court register since the last preceding election
  - (d) (not being in any of the foregoing categories) apply for a voting paper by letter delivered or posted to the Returning Officer so as to be received by him on or before 5 o'clock in the afternoon of the twenty-first day preceding the day on which the election is to be held.
4. In these Regulations and the forms contained herein:  
'the roll' means the electoral roll prepared in accordance with this regulation  
'elector' and 'voter' respectively refer to those members of the Court whose names are for the time being entered on the electoral roll.
  5. The date of election shall be determined by the Returning Officer and reported to the Council.
  6. Whenever any election is to be held the Returning Officer shall (not less than forty days before the election) by notice in at least two newspapers, published in the City of Auckland, call for nominations of candidates to be lodged with him on or before a day, to be fixed by him, being not less than ten days from the date of the first advertisement, which notice shall be in the following form (or form to the like effect):

### THE UNIVERSITY OF AUCKLAND

Election of Member(s) of the Council by the Court of Convocation for the Auckland University District.  
An election of member(s) will be held at 5.00 pm on the.....day of.....19.....  
at the office of the Registrar of the University, Princes Street, in the City of Auckland.

No person shall be recognised as a candidate at this election unless he shall have been previously nominated in a document signed by two electors, and unless such nomination paper shall have been delivered to the Returning Officer by postal delivery or otherwise not later than 5.00 pm on the ..... day of.....19.....

The roll of electors will remain open for inspection and additions until 5.00 pm on the twenty-first day before the election and will then be closed. Immediately thereafter the Returning Officer will issue the voting paper to such voters as are shown on the roll with sufficient postal address (of which the Returning Officer shall be the sole judge).

\_\_\_\_\_  
Returning Officer

7. The roll shall be closed at five o'clock in the afternoon of the twenty-first day immediately preceding the day on which an election is to be held and shall continue to be closed until the election is completed; and no name shall be entered on the roll while it is closed. Immediately thereafter the Returning Officer shall issue the voting papers simultaneously to such voters as are shown in the roll with sufficient postal address (of which the Returning Officer shall be the sole judge); nor shall any voting paper be sent to any person whose address is not within New Zealand, Cook Islands, Fiji, Western Samoa or Australia.
8. Notwithstanding anything above set out, the Returning Officer shall issue a voting paper to any elector whose name appears on the roll and who shall apply in writing to the Returning Officer for a voting paper on the ground that his voting paper is lost or destroyed or defaced or that no voting paper had been issued to him.
9. At every election the votes shall be given by sealed voting papers issued by the Returning Officer in the form prescribed by these Regulations, delivered to the Returning Officer on or before the day and time fixed for holding the election, or posted to him in a sealed envelope on or before that day.
10. In any election to fill a casual vacancy the notice of advertisement calling for nomination shall state that the vacancy is a casual one.
11. If an election for filling a casual vacancy be appointed to be held at the same time as an election for the filling of a vacancy occurring by rotation, hereinafter called an ordinary vacancy, separate voting papers shall be issued for each election and each nomination and each voting paper shall specify to which election it relates, and at the time of election the Returning Officer shall first complete the election for filling the casual vacancy or vacancies; and when such election shall be complete, he shall at once proceed to complete the election for filling the ordinary vacancy.

Note: The voting papers for overseas members to be posted airmail.

12. When two or more elections are to take place as contemplated in the last preceding Regulation, then in every advertisement relating to such an election, notice shall be given that no nomination paper will be valid, unless it distinctly indicates to which of the vacancies it shall relate.
13. Nomination shall be made by two persons qualified to vote and shall contain the written consent of the candidate to his nomination.
14. Nomination shall be in the following form (or in a form to the like effect):

### THE UNIVERSITY OF AUCKLAND

Election to be held on ..... the ..... day of ..... 19 .....

of Members of the Council by the Court of Convocation for the Auckland University District.

We and being duly qualified voters, hereby nominate .....  
 .....  
 .....

of. ....  
 for election to the Council by the Court of Convocation for the Auckland University District.

Date .....

I consent to the above nomination. ....

15. If the nominations received do not exceed the number of vacancies, the Returning Officer shall declare the candidate(s) duly elected.

16. Every voting paper shall be in the form following or to the like effect, that is to say:

A Front of voting paper:

### VOTING PAPER

#### COUNCIL OF THE UNIVERSITY OF AUCKLAND ELECTION OF MEMBERS

By the Court of Convocation  
 for the Auckland University District

|  |  |
|--|--|
|  |  |
|  |  |
|  |  |

#### Directions

There are.....vacancies. The voter may vote for any number of candidates up to the maximum number of candidates to be elected.

The voter is to put a cross (x) in the square opposite to the name or names of the candidates for whom he desires to vote.

17. A. Every voting paper shall be forwarded to the voter accompanied by an envelope, addressed to the Returning Officer.

B. Back of envelope:

**THE VOTER MUST SIGN HIS/HER NAME AND ADDRESS BELOW.**  
 (Full name in block letters)

I, .....  
 declare that I am not, by reason of my being a graduate of the University of New Zealand (either by examination at any time or by admission *ad eundem gradum* before 1 January, 1943), enrolled on the register of the Court of Convocation of any University District in New Zealand other than the Auckland University District.

SIGNATURE OF VOTER .....

ADDRESS .....

(I request the Registrar to record my address on the roll as above.)

If recorded on University records under another name, e.g. maiden name, please state

.....



18. The poll shall close at 5 o'clock on the afternoon of the day of the election; but all voting papers shall be included and counted which are received by the Returning Officer in due course by post before the close of the sixth day after the day of the election, provided the Returning Officer is satisfied that the paper was posted in accordance with the provisions of Section 9. On the seventh day after the day of the election the Returning Officer shall open and count the votes. As soon as the voting papers have been checked with the Roll the name and address shall be removed from each voting paper before the votes are counted.
19. Each candidate shall be entitled to nominate a scrutineer, who shall have the same rights and duties as those vested at the date of the poll in a scrutineer at any polls of the Auckland City Council.
20. Upon completion of the counting of votes, the Returning Officer shall forthwith declare the results of the poll.
21. The Returning Officer shall, subject to the provisions herein contained, determine conclusively all questions of detail concerning the election.
22. The Returning Officer is authorised to destroy the voting papers after a lapse of three months from the date of the official announcement of the result.  
The Council at its meeting held on 18 August, 1975, resolved:  
That in respect of elections of members of the Council of Convocation, Council adopt the following procedure in order to ensure that electors are notified of the qualifications of candidates:
  - (1) That each candidate for election be invited to send to the Registrar with his nomination paper a short statement, not exceeding 250 words, for inclusion with the voting papers.
  - (2) That the statement shall include the name, occupation, residence, degrees, academic posts held, publications, and any other relevant information provided by the candidate.
  - (3) That the Council arrange that a copy of these statements be forwarded to each elector with the voting paper.

## THE COUNCIL ELECTIONS (REPRESENTATIVE OF GOVERNING BODIES OF SECONDARY SCHOOLS) REGULATIONS

*Subject to confirmation on review by the Council in 1991*

1. These regulations may be cited as the Council Elections (Representative of Governing Bodies of Secondary Schools) Regulations 1962.
2. For the purpose of Section 6 Subsection (2) paragraph (e) of the University of Auckland Act 1961 the Governing Bodies of only such registered private secondary schools as are entitled to accredit persons for entrance to a University shall be entitled to vote for the member of Council elected under that paragraph.
3. Each of the Governing Bodies entitled under Section 6 Subsection (2) paragraph (e) of the said Act and the foregoing paragraph 2 of these Regulations shall be enrolled on the Roll of Electors. The Roll shall be revised in each year as at the 30th April.
4. The date of an Election by the Governing Bodies shall be determined by the Returning Officer and reported by him to the Council.
5. Whenever an Election is to be held, the Returning Officer shall (not less than 40 days before the Election), by notice addressed to each Elector upon the Roll, call for nominations of candidates to be lodged with him on or before a date fixed in such notice, being not less than ten days from the date of the notice. The notice shall be in the following form (or in a form to be the like effect):

### THE UNIVERSITY OF AUCKLAND

Election of one Member of Council by the Governing Bodies of certain Secondary Schools situated within the Auckland University District, under Section 6 Subsection (2) paragraph (e) University of Auckland Act 1961.

An election of one member will be held at 5.00 pm on the.....day of 19.....  
at the Office of the Registrar of the University, Princes Street, in the City of Auckland.

No person shall be recognised as a candidate at this Election unless he has been previously nominated by an Elector in a paper signed by the Chairman of that Governing Body in pursuance of a resolution in that behalf and signed also by the person nominated, and unless that nomination paper has been delivered to the Returning Officer by postal delivery or otherwise not later than 5.00 pm  
on the.....day of.....19.....

Returning Officer .....

6. Nominations shall be in the following form (or in a form to the like effect):

### THE UNIVERSITY OF AUCKLAND

Election to be held on the ..... day of ..... 19 .....  
of one Member of Council by the Governing Bodies of certain Secondary Schools situated in the  
Auckland University District, under Section 6 Subsection (2) paragraph (e) University of Auckland Act  
1961.

.....being the Governing Body of. .... School and  
being a duly qualified Elector hereby nominate .....

..... of  
..... (address)

..... (occupation)

for election to the Council by the Governing Bodies of State Secondary Schools, Technical Schools and  
Combined Schools, and such registered Private Schools as the Council of the University has determined  
by regulation in that behalf, being in all cases schools situated in the Auckland University District.

Dated this ..... day of ..... 19 .....

Chairman .....

I consent to the above nomination .....

7. A nomination shall be made by an Elector and shall contain the written consent of the candidate to his nomination.
8. If not more than one nomination is received the Returning Officer shall forthwith after the closing date for the receipt of nominations declare the candidate duly elected.
9. If more than one nomination is received the Returning Officer shall immediately after the closing date for receipt of nominations issue a voting paper to each Elector shown in the Roll as revised.
10. The Returning Officer shall also issue a voting paper to any Elector whose name appears upon the Roll, and who shall apply in writing to the Returning Officer for a voting paper on the ground that its voting paper is lost or destroyed or defaced or that no voting paper had been issued to it.
11. At every Election the votes shall be given by sealed voting papers issued by the Returning Officer in the form prescribed by these Regulations, delivered to the Returning Officer on or before the day and time fixed for holding the Election, or forwarded to him by post or otherwise, so as to reach him not later than that day and time.
12. In any Election to fill a casual vacancy the notice calling for nominations shall state that the vacancy is a casual one.
13. Every voting paper shall be in the form following (or to the like effect), and shall include occupations and addresses, as well as the names of candidates:

### THE UNIVERSITY OF AUCKLAND

Election of one Member of Council by the Governing Bodies of certain Secondary Schools situated within the Auckland University, under Section 6 Subsection (2) paragraph (e) University of Auckland Act 1961.

|  |  |
|--|--|
|  |  |
|  |  |
|  |  |

#### Directions

The voter is to cause a cross (x) to be put in the square opposite to the name of the candidate for whom he has resolved to vote.

THE CHAIRMAN OF THE VOTERS MUST COMPLETE THE CERTIFICATE ON THE BACK OF THIS CARD.

## B. Back of voting paper:

I certify that the vote made on this paper was made in pursuance of a resolution of .....  
 Governing Body of ..... School passed at a fully constituted meeting thereof.  
 Chairman .....

14. Every vote shall be made by an Elector in pursuance of a resolution passed at a meeting of the Elector.
15. Every voting paper shall be forwarded to the Elector accompanied by a stamped envelope, addressed to the Returning Officer.
16. All such envelopes shall be forwarded to the Elector accompanied by a stamped envelope, addressed to the Returning Officer.
17. Upon completion of the counting of votes, the Returning Officer shall forthwith declare the results of the poll.
18. The Returning Officer shall, subject to the provisions herein contained, determine conclusively all questions of detail concerning the election.
19. The Returning Officer is authorised to destroy the voting papers after a lapse of three months from the date of the official announcement of the result.  
 Council at its meeting on 19 July 1982 adopted the following procedures to ensure that electors are notified of the qualifications of candidates:
  - (1) That each candidate for election be invited to send to the Registrar with his nomination paper a short statement, not exceeding 250 words, for inclusion with the voting papers.
  - (2) That the statement shall include the name, occupation, residence, degrees, academic posts held, publications, and any other relevant information provided by the candidate.
  - (3) That the Council arrange that a copy of these statements be forwarded to each elector with the voting paper.

## THE COUNCIL ELECTIONS (LECTURERS' REPRESENTATIVE) REGULATIONS

*Subject to confirmation on review by the Council in 1991*

1. These Regulations may be cited as the Council Elections (Lecturers' Representative) Regulations 1978.
2. For the purposes of these Regulations, the Council determines that a person appointed for a term of not less than one year as a temporary lecturer and a person appointed for a term of not less than three years as an assistant lecturer, senior tutor or tutor, are lecturers within the definition of that term contained in Section 2 of the Act.
3. In these Regulations, unless the context otherwise requires:
  - 'the Act' means the University of Auckland Act 1961;
  - 'the Council' means the Council of the University;
  - 'election' means an election conducted under these Regulations;
  - 'elector' means a full-time lecturer and includes a person appointed full-time for a term of not less than one year as a temporary lecturer and a person appointed full-time for a term of not less than three years as an assistant lecturer, senior tutor, or tutor; but does not otherwise include any person holding a temporary appointment.
  - 'Returning Officer' refers to the Registrar of the University.
4. In the election of one member of the Council pursuant to paragraph (ca) of Subsection (2) of Section 6 of the Act:
  - (a) All electors shall be eligible to nominate candidates and to vote; and
  - (b) All electors, except those who are temporary lecturers appointed for less than two years, shall be eligible to be nominated as candidates.
5. The election shall be by secret ballot.
6. The date of the election shall be determined by the Returning Officer and reported to the Council.
7. Whenever an election is to be held the Returning Officer shall (not less than thirty-five days before the election) by notice addressed to all electors call for nomination for candidates to be lodged with him on or before the date fixed in that notice but being not less than twenty-one days from the date of the notice. The notice shall be in the following form (or in a form to the like effect):

### THE UNIVERSITY OF AUCKLAND

Election of one Member of Council by the full-time lecturers under Section 6 Subsection (2) paragraph (ca) of the University of Auckland Act 1961.

I hereby call for nominations for the Lecturers' representative on the Council. Nominations must be delivered to the Returning Officer by personal delivery or otherwise not later than 5.00 pm on .....

Every full-time lecturer (including a person appointed for a term of not less than one year as a temporary lecturer and a person appointed for a term of not less than three years as an assistant lecturer, senior tutor or tutor) is eligible to be an elector and to nominate candidates at this election. All electors, except those who are temporary lecturers for less than two years, are eligible to be nominated as candidates.

Every candidate must be nominated by two electors on a nomination form which must also be signed by the nominee.

Should an election be necessary it will be held at 5.00 pm on .....  
at the office of the Registrar of the University in Princes Street. The election will be conducted as a postal ballot.

The person elected will hold office for a term of two years (or as required, in the case of a casual vacancy).  
Nomination forms are available from the undersigned.

**RETURNING OFFICER**

8. Each nomination shall:
- be made by two electors;
  - contain the signature of the person nominated;
  - be in the following form (or in a form to the like effect):

### THE UNIVERSITY OF AUCKLAND

#### ELECTION FOR REPRESENTATIVE OF LECTURERS ON COUNCIL

ELECTION to be held on the.....day of.....19.....of one  
Member of the Council by the full-time Lecturers of the University.

We .....and

being duly qualified electors, hereby nominate

.....  
of the Department of .....  
for election to the Council by the full-time Lecturers of the University.

Date .....

I consent to this nomination .....

NOMINATIONS CLOSE AT 5.00 PM ON .....

9. If not more than one nomination is received for the vacancy, the Returning Officer shall forthwith after the closing date of nominations declare the candidate duly elected.
10. If more than one nomination is received for the vacancy, the Returning Officer shall immediately after the closing date for nominations issue a voting paper in the prescribed form to each elector.

11. The Returning Officer shall issue a voting paper to any elector who applies in writing to the Returning Officer for a voting paper on the grounds that his voting paper is lost or destroyed or defaced, or that no voting paper has been issued to him.
12. The voting paper shall be returned to the Returning Officer on or before the day and time fixed for holding the election, or sent to him by post or otherwise so as to reach him not later than that day and time.
13. In any election for a casual vacancy the notice calling for nominations shall state that the vacancy is a casual one.
14. Every voting paper shall be in the form following (or to the like effect):

**THE UNIVERSITY OF AUCKLAND**

**REPRESENTATIVE OF LECTURERS ON COUNCIL**

Election to be held at 5.00 pm on ..... 19 ..... of .....  
 ONE Member of Council by the full-time Lecturers of the University

|  |  |
|--|--|
|  |  |
|  |  |
|  |  |

**DIRECTIONS**

The voter must put and "X" in the square opposite the name of the candidate for whom he wishes to vote.  
**THE VOTER MUST SIGN HIS NAME, AND PRINT HIS NAME AND DEPARTMENT ON THE  
 BACK OF THE ENCLOSED SPECIAL ADDRESSED ENVELOPE.**

Voting papers, in sealed envelopes, must be addressed to the Returning Officer and reach him by the above day and time.

**RETURNING OFFICER**

15. On completion of the counting of votes the Returning Officer shall forthwith declare the results of the poll by notice published within the University.
16. The Returning Officer shall, subject to these Regulations, determine conclusively all questions of detail concerning an election.
17. Where there is an equality of votes between candidates and the addition of a vote would entitle any of those candidates to be declared elected, the Returning Officer shall determine by lot which candidate shall be elected.
18. The Returning Officer is authorised to destroy the voting papers after a lapse of three months from the date of the notices announcing the result of the poll.
19. The University shall be deemed a sufficient address for the issuing of notices and voting papers to electors under these regulations.

## THE SENATE ELECTIONS (LECTURERS' REPRESENTATIVES OF FACULTIES) REGULATIONS

*Subject to confirmation on review by the Council in 1991*

1. These Regulations may be cited as the Senate Elections (Lecturers' Representatives) Regulations 1978\*.
2. For the purpose of these Regulations, the Council determines that a person appointed for a term of not less than one year as a temporary lecturer and a person appointed for a term of not less than three years as an assistant lecturer, senior tutor or tutor, are lecturers within the definition of that term contained in Section 2 of the Act.
3. In these Regulations, unless the context otherwise requires:  
 'the Act' means the University of Auckland Act 1961;  
 'election' means an election conducted under these Regulations;

'elector' means a full-time lecturer and includes a person appointed full-time for a term of not less than one year as a temporary lecturer and a person appointed full-time for a term of not less than three years as an assistant lecturer, senior tutor or tutor; but does not otherwise include any person holding a temporary appointment.

'member' and 'lecturers' representative' means a member of the Senate elected by the full-time lecturers in a Faculty under section 30 of the Act and these Regulations;

'Returning Officer' refers to the Registrar of the University.

4. For the purpose of these Regulations-  
The Centre for Continuing Education is deemed to be a Faculty of the University;  
Each member of the staff of each of the Departments of Art History, Geography, Mathematics, and Psychology shall respectively be allocated by the Senate to an appropriate Faculty.
5. (i). The number of members of the Senate to be elected by the full-time lecturers under section 30 (2)(d) of the Act shall be eighteen, of which thirteen shall be elected under these Regulations.  
(ii). Those thirteen members shall be elected by secret ballot from and by the full-time lecturers of the respective Faculties of the University, as follows:  
The Faculty of Arts; three members.  
The Faculty of Science; two members.  
Each of the eight other Faculties of the University - that is:  
the Faculty of Architecture, Property and Planning,  
the Faculty of Commerce,  
the Faculty of Engineering,  
the Faculty of Fine Arts,  
the Faculty of Law,  
the Faculty of Medicine and Human Biology,  
the Faculty of Music, and  
the Centre of Continuing Education; one member.
6. In every election in a Faculty, held under these Regulations-  
(a) All electors in that Faculty shall be eligible to nominate candidates and to vote; and  
(b) All such electors, except those who are temporary lecturers appointed for less than two years, shall be eligible to be nominated as candidates.
7. Each member (other than a member elected to fill a casual vacancy) shall hold office on the Senate for a term of two years beginning on the 1st of February next following that member's election.
8. The term of office of each of the present lecturer members of the Senate shall, according to the Faculty from which that member was appointed and (in the Faculty of Arts and in the Faculty of Science) according to seniority of appointment, end as follows:  
Faculty of Architecture Property and Planning (one member) 31 January 1979  
Faculty of Arts (three members)  
The member from that Faculty whose present term of office began first 31 January 1979  
The two remaining members 31 January 1980  
Faculty of Commerce (one member) 31 January 1980  
Faculty of Engineering (one member) 31 January 1980  
Faculty of Fine Arts (one member) 31 January 1979  
Faculty of Law (one member) 31 January 1979  
Faculty of Medicine & Human Biology (one member) 31 January 1980  
Faculty of Music (one member) 31 January 1979  
Faculty of Science (two members)  
The member from that Faculty whose present term of office began first 31 January 1979  
The remaining member 31 January 1980  
Centre for Continuing Education (one member) 31 January 1979
9. If any member-  
(a) dies; or  
(b) resigns his office by writing under his hand delivered to the Registrar; or  
(c) ceases to be a full-time lecturer; or  
(d) is appointed Acting Head of a Department for a period of more than three months he shall thereupon cease to be a member, and the vacancy so created shall be deemed to be a casual vacancy.
10. (a). Elections other than elections to fill casual vacancies shall take place in the respective faculties not later than July each year so that the names of all lecturers' representatives for the subsequent year are known at the August meeting of the Senate.  
(b). An election to fill a casual vacancy shall take place within two calendar months of the arising of the casual vacancy.
11. The Registrar shall be the Returning Officer for the purpose of conducting the elections.
12. Subject to Regulation 10, the date of an election shall be determined by the Returning Officer and shall be reported to the Senate.
13. Whenever an election is to be held, the Returning Officer shall, not less than thirty-five days before the election, by notice addressed to each elector in the appropriate Faculty call for nominations of candidates to

be lodged with him on or before the date fixed in that notice but being not less than twenty-one days from the date of the notice. The notice shall be in the following form (or in a form to the like effect):

**THE UNIVERSITY OF AUCKLAND**  
**LECTURERS' REPRESENTATIVE ON SENATE**

I hereby call for nominations for the following vacancies which will occur on 1.2.90 .....

Faculty of ..... 2 vacancies

Faculty of ..... 1 vacancy

Nominations for vacancies for representatives must be delivered to the Returning Officer by personal delivery or otherwise **not later than 5.00 pm** ..... 19..... Every full-time lecturer in the appropriate Faculty (including a person appointed for a term of not less than one year as a temporary lecturer and a person appointed for a term of not less than three years as an assistant lecturer, senior tutor or tutor) is eligible to be an elector and to nominate candidates at this election.

All electors in the Faculty, except those who are temporary lecturers for less than two years, are eligible to be nominated as candidates in that Faculty.

Every candidate must be nominated by two electors in the Faculty on a nomination form which must also be signed by the nominee.

In the Departments of Art History, Geography, Mathematics and Psychology, members of staff shall be regarded as being members of the Faculty to which they have been allocated.

Elections should they be necessary, will be held at **5.00 pm on** ..... 19..... at the office of the Registrar of the University in Princes Street. The election will be conducted as a postal ballot.

The persons elected will hold office for a term of two years.

Nomination forms are available from the undersigned.

**RETURNING OFFICER**

14. Each nomination shall:

- (a) be made by two electors;
- (b) contain the signature of the person nominated
- (c) be in the following form (or in a form to the like effect):

**THE UNIVERSITY OF AUCKLAND**

**ELECTION FOR LECTURERS' REPRESENTATIVE ON SENATE**

ELECTION is to be held on the.....day of.....19.....of.....  
Member(s) of the Senate by the full-time Lecturers of the University teaching in the Faculty of

We ..... and

..... being duly qualified electors, hereby  
nominate .....

of the Department of .....for election to the Senate by the full-time  
Lecturers of the University teaching in the Faculty of

Date .....

I consent to this nomination .....

**NOMINATIONS CLOSE AT**

**5.00 PM ON THE** ..... **DAY OF** ..... 19 .....

15. If not more than one nomination is received for a vacancy, the Returning Officer shall forthwith after the closing date of nomination declare the candidate duly elected.
16. If no, or insufficient nominations are received, the Academic Committee shall submit to the Senate nomination/s to fill the vacancy/ies.
17. If more than one nomination is received for a vacancy, the Returning Officer shall immediately after the closing date for nominations issue a voting paper in the prescribed form to each elector in the appropriate faculty.
18. The Returning Officer shall also issue a voting paper to any elector who applies in writing to the Returning Officer for a voting paper on the ground that his voting paper is lost or destroyed or defaced or that no voting

- paper has been issued to him.
19. The voting papers shall then be returned to the Returning Officer on or before the day and time fixed for holding the election, or sent to him by post or otherwise so as to reach him not later than that day and time.
  20. In any election for a casual vacancy the notice calling for nominations shall state that the vacancy is a casual one.
  21. Every voting paper shall be in the form following (or to the like effect):

**THE UNIVERSITY OF AUCKLAND  
LECTURERS' REPRESENTATIVES ON SENATE  
FACULTY OF**

**VOTING PAPER**

Election to be held at 5.00 pm on.....day, the.....day of .....

19.....of ..... Members(s) of the Senate by the full-time Lecturers  
in the Faculty of ..... which for the purpose of this Election includes  
the Department of .....

|  |  |
|--|--|
|  |  |
|  |  |
|  |  |

**DIRECTIONS**

The voter must put an X in the square opposite the name of the one candidate for whom he desires to vote.

**THE VOTER MUST SIGN HIS NAME AND STATE HIS DEPARTMENT ON THE BACK OF  
THE ENCLOSED SPECIAL ADDRESSED ENVELOPE.**

Voting papers, in sealed envelopes, must be addressed to the Returning Officer and reach him by the above day and time.

**RETURNING OFFICER**

22. On completion of the counting of votes the Returning Officer shall forthwith declare the results of the poll by notice published within the University.
23. The Returning Officer shall, subject to these Regulations, determine conclusively all questions of detail concerning an election.
24. Where there is an equality of votes between candidates and the addition of a vote would entitle any of these candidates to be declared elected, the Returning Officer shall determine by lot which candidate shall be elected.
25. The Returning Officer is authorised to destroy the voting papers after a lapse of two weeks from the date of the notices announcing the result of the poll.
26. The University shall be deemed a sufficient address for the issuing of notices and voting papers to electors under these Regulations.

**Note:** \*Amended by Council 21 April, 1980 and 15 November, 1982.



## THE SENATE ELECTIONS (LECTURERS' REPRESENTATIVES AT LARGE) REGULATIONS

*Subject to confirmation on review by the Council in 1991*

Pursuant to sections 22 and 30 of the University of Auckland Act 1961, the Council of the University makes the following Regulations:

1. These Regulations may be cited as the Senate Elections (Lecturers' Representatives at Large) Regulations.
2. For the purpose of these Regulations, the Council determines that a person appointed for a term of not less than one year as a temporary lecturer and a person appointed for a term of not less than three years as an assistant lecturer, senior tutor or tutor, are lecturers within the definition of that term contained in section 2 of the Act.
3. In these Regulations, unless the context otherwise requires-  
 'the Act' means the University of Auckland Act 1961;  
 'the Council' means the Council of the University;  
 'election' means an election conducted under these Regulations;  
 'elector' means a full-time lecturer and includes a person appointed full-time for a term of not less than one year as a temporary lecturer and a person appointed full-time for a term of not less than three years as an assistant lecturer, senior tutor or tutor; but does not otherwise include any person holding a temporary appointment;  
 'member' and 'lecturers' representative' means a member of the Senate elected by the full-time lecturers under section 30 of the Act and these Regulations;  
 'Returning Officer' refers to the Registrar of the University.
4. (i). The number of members of the Senate to be elected by the full-time lecturers under section 30 (2)(d) of the Act shall be eighteen, of which five shall be elected under these Regulations (the other thirteen being elected under the Senate Elections (Lecturers' Representatives of Faculties) Regulations).  
 (ii). Those five members shall be elected by secret ballot from and by the full-time lecturers of the University.
5. In every election held under these Regulations:  
 (a) All electors shall be eligible to nominate candidates and to vote; and  
 (b) all such electors, except those who are temporary lecturers appointed for less than two years, shall be eligible to be nominated as candidates.
6. Subject to Regulation 7, each member (other than a member elected to fill a casual vacancy) shall hold office on the Senate for a term of two years beginning on the 1st day of February next following that member's election.
7. The term of office of each of the lecturer members of the Senate first elected under these Regulations shall be determined by lot so that of those members:  
 (a) The terms of 3 shall expire on 31 January 1986; and  
 (b) the terms of 2 shall expire on 31 January 1985.
8. If any member-  
 (a) dies; or  
 (b) resigns office by written notice delivered to the Registrar; or  
 (c) ceases to be a full-time lecturer; or  
 (d) is appointed Acting Head of a Department for a period of more than three months;  
 he or she shall thereupon cease to be a member, and the vacancy so created shall be deemed to be a casual vacancy.
9. (a). Elections other than elections to fill casual vacancies shall take place not later than May in each year so that the names of all lecturers' representatives for the subsequent year are known at the June meeting of the Senate.  
 (b). An election to fill a casual vacancy shall take place within two calendar months of the arising of the casual vacancy.
10. The Registrar shall be the Returning Officer for the purpose of conducting the elections.
11. Subject to Regulation 9, the date of an election shall be determined by the Returning Officer and shall be reported to the Senate.
12. Whenever an election is to be held, the Returning Officer shall, not less than thirty-five days before the election, by notice addressed to each elector call for nominations of candidates to be lodged with him on or before the date fixed in that notice but being not less than twenty-one days from the date of the notice. The notice shall be in the following form (or in a form to the like effect):

## THE UNIVERSITY OF AUCKLAND

### LECTURERS' REPRESENTATIVES (AT LARGE) ON SENATE

I hereby call for nominations for ..... vacancies which will occur on .....

Nominations for vacancies for representatives must be delivered to the Returning Officer by personal delivery or otherwise **not later than 5.00 pm** 19 .....

Every full-time lecturer (including a person appointed for a term of not less than one year as a temporary lecturer and a person appointed for a term of not less than three years as an assistant lecturer, senior tutor or tutor) is eligible to be an elector and to nominate candidates at this election.

All electors, except those who are temporary lecturers for less than two years, are eligible to be nominated as candidates.

Every candidate must be nominated by two electors on a nomination form which must also be signed by the nominee.

**Elections** should they be necessary, will be held at **5.00 pm** on ..... 19 ..... at the office of the Registrar of the University in Princes Street. The election will be conducted as a postal ballot.

The persons elected will hold office for a term of two years.  
Nomination forms are available from the undersigned.

**RETURNING OFFICER**

13. Each nomination shall:
- (a) be made by two electors;
  - (b) contain the signature of the person nominated;
  - (c) be in the following form (or in a form to the like effect):

## THE UNIVERSITY OF AUCKLAND

### ELECTION FOR LECTURERS' REPRESENTATIVE (AT LARGE) ON SENATE

ELECTION is to be held on the ..... day of ..... 19 ..... of .....

We, ..... and

..... being duly qualified electors, hereby

nominate .....

of the Department of ..... for election to the Senate by the full-time Lecturers of the University.

Date .....

I consent to this nomination .....

NOMINATIONS CLOSE AT 5.00 PM ON THE ..... DAY OF ..... 19 .....

14. If not more than one nomination is received for a vacancy, the Returning Officer shall forthwith after the closing date of nomination declare the candidate duly elected.
15. If no, or insufficient nominations are received, the Academic Committee shall submit to the Senate nomination/s to fill the vacancy/ies.
16. If more than one nomination is received for a vacancy, the Returning Officer shall immediately after the closing date for nominations issue a voting paper in the prescribed form to each elector.
17. The Returning Officer shall also issue a voting paper to any elector who applies in writing to the Returning Officer for a voting paper on the grounds that his voting paper is lost or destroyed or defaced or that no voting paper has been issued to him.
18. The voting papers shall then be returned to the Returning Officer on or before the day and the time fixed for holding the election, or sent to him by post or otherwise so as to reach him no later than that day and time.
19. In any election for a casual vacancy the notice for nominations shall state that the vacancy is a casual one.

20. Every voting paper shall be in the form following (or to the like effect):

**THE UNIVERSITY OF AUCKLAND  
LECTURERS' REPRESENTATIVES (AT LARGE)  
ON SENATE**

**VOTING PAPER**

Election to be held at 5.00pm on.....day, the.....of .....  
19 ..... of Member(s) of the Senate by the full time  
Lecturers of the University.

|  |  |
|--|--|
|  |  |
|  |  |
|  |  |

**DIRECTIONS**

There are.....vacancies. The voter may vote for any number of candidates up to the maximum number of candidates to be elected.

The Voter must put an X in the square opposite the name or names of the candidates for whom he/she desires to vote.

**THE VOTER MUST SIGN HIS/HER NAME AND STATE HIS/HER DEPARTMENT ON THE  
BACK OF THE ENCLOSED SPECIAL ADDRESSED ENVELOPE.**

Voting papers, in sealed envelopes, must be addressed to the Returning Officer and reach him by the above day and time.

**RETURNING OFFICER**

21. On completion of the counting of votes the Returning Officer shall forthwith declare the result of the poll by notice published within the University.
22. The Returning Officer shall, subject to these Regulations, determine conclusively all questions of detail concerning an election.
23. Where there is an equality of votes between candidates and the addition of a vote would entitle any of these candidates to be declared elected, the Returning Officer shall determine by lot which candidate shall be elected.
24. The Returning Officer is authorised to destroy the voting papers after a lapse of two weeks from the date of the notices announcing the result of the poll.
25. The University shall be deemed a sufficient address for the issuing of notices and voting papers to electors under these Regulations.
26. These Regulations shall come into force on 1 January 1983.

# Prescribed Texts

## Contents

|     |   |     |   |
|-----|---|-----|---|
| 489 | Introduction                            | 498 | Human Biology                                 |
| 489 | Accounting                              | 499 | Indonesian                                    |
| 489 | Ancient History                         | 499 | Italian                                       |
| 489 | Anthropology                            | 499 | Japanese                                      |
| 490 | Architecture                            | 499 | Korean  |
| 490 | Art History                             | 500 | Latin   |
| 490 | Asian Geography                         | 500 | Law   |
| 490 | Asian Politics                          | 500 | Linguistics                                   |
| 490 | Asian Studies                           | 500 | Management Science and<br>Information Systems |
| 490 | Audiology                               | 500 | Management Studies<br>and Labour Relations    |
| 490 | Biochemistry                            | 500 | Maori Studies                                 |
| 490 | Biology                                 | 501 | Marketing and International<br>Business       |
| 490 | Botany                                  | 501 | Mathematics                                   |
| 490 | Cellular and Molecular Biology          | 502 | Medicine                                      |
| 490 | Chemistry                               | 502 | Music   |
| 491 | Chinese                                 | 502 | Optometry                                     |
| 491 | Classical Studies                       | 502 | Pacific Studies                               |
| 491 | Commercial Law                          | 502 | Pharmacology                                  |
| 491 | Computer Science                        | 502 | Philosophy                                    |
| 492 | Diploma in Drama                        | 503 | Physics                                       |
| 492 | Diploma in English<br>Language Teaching | 503 | Physiology                                    |
| 492 | Dutch                                   | 503 | Planning                                      |
| 492 | Economics                               | 503 | Political Studies                             |
| 492 | Education                               | 504 | Property Administration                       |
| 493 | Engineering                             | 504 | Psychology                                    |
| 493 | English                                 | 505 | Russian                                       |
| 496 | Environmental Science                   | 505 | Samoan  |
| 496 | Film and Television Studies             | 505 | Scandinavian Studies                          |
| 496 | French                                  | 505 | Sociology                                     |
| 496 | Geography                               | 506 | Spanish                                       |
| 496 | Geology                                 | 506 | Zoology                                       |
| 497 | German                                  |     |   |
| 498 | Greek                                   |     |   |
| 498 | History                                 |     |   |

## PREScribed TEXTS

### Prescribed Texts

Prescribed texts are those texts that students should purchase.

The list of Prescribed texts for 1991 which is set out below in alphabetical subject order is not exhaustive. Additional books may be prescribed during the year. Further lists of such prescribed books may be obtained from the appropriate department.

Recommended books are those books which students may purchase if desired. Lists of recommended books and additional reading guides may be obtained from the appropriate departments.

### ACCOUNTING

#### Accounting I

01.100 A.D. Barton, *The Anatomy of Accounting* 3rd edn (University of Queensland Press, 1984).

01.101 Wilson & Chua, *Managerial Accounting: Method and Meaning* (Van Nostrand Reinhold)

01.102 C.T. Horngren & G.L. Sunden, *Introduction to Management Accounting* 6th edn (Prentice-Hall).

01.103 C.T. Horngren & G.L. Sunden, *Introduction to Management Accounting* 8th edn (Prentice-Hall).

#### Accounting II

01.200 Nikolai & Bazlpy, *Intermediate Accounting* 4th edn (PWS-Kent); Robb, Neal, Leo & Hoggett, *Company Accounting in New Zealand* 2nd edn (Wiley).

01.201 New Zealand Society of Accountants, *Financial Reporting for Primary Producers*; H. Halley, *Barton's Executorship Law & Accounts* 9th edn (Butterworths)

01.202 D.R. Hansen, *Management Accounting* (PWS-Kent, 1990).

01.203 B.E. Cushing & M.B. Romney, *Accounting Information Systems and Business Organisations* 5th edn, (Addison Wesley, 1990). 01.203 *Course Book*, purchased at enrolment.

01.205 S.R. Bishop, H.R. Crapp, G.J. Twite, *Corporate Finance* 2nd edn (Holt, Rinehart, Winston); M.A. Freeman & G.J. Twite, *Study Guide to Bishop, Crapp & Twite 'Corporate Finance'* 2nd edn (Holt, Rinehart & Winston)

01.206 C.P. Jones, *Investments: Analysis and Management* 3rd edn (Wiley).

#### Accounting III

01.300 H.J. Wolk, J.R. Francis & M.G. Tearney, *Accounting Theory: A Conceptual and Institutional Approach*, 2nd edn (PWS-Kent, Boston/Thomas Nelson Australia); *Coursebook 1991* to be purchased at enrolment.

01.301 New Zealand Society of Accountants, *New Zealand Accounting Standards*; *New Zealand Auditing Standards & Guidelines*; M.J. Pratt, *External Auditing-Theory and Practice in New Zealand* (Longman Paul).

01.302 *Case Studies and Study Guide* to be purchased at enrolment.

01.306 To be advised at enrolment.

01.307 Elton & Gruber, *Modern Portfolio Theory & Investment Analysis* 3rd edn (Wiley)

01.308 N.A. Doherty, *Corporate Risk Management: A Financial Exposition* (McGraw-Hill); J. Hull,

*Options, Futures and Other Derivative Securities* (Prentice Hall, 1989).

### ANCIENT HISTORY

#### Ancient History I

12.100 J.B. Pritchard (ed.), *The Ancient Near East* (Princeton); G. Roux, *Ancient Iraq* 2nd edn (Pelican); W.K. Simpson (ed.), *Literature of Ancient Egypt* (Yale U.P., New Haven); A.H. Gardiner, *Egypt of the Pharaohs* (O.U.P.).

12.102 O. Murray, *Early Greece*, (Fontana); J.B. Bury/R. Meiggs, *A History of Greece* (Macmillan).

12.103 M. Cary & H.H. Scullard, *A History of Rome* 3rd edn (Macmillan); M. Grant & R. Graves (eds.), *Suetonius, The Twelve Caesars* (Penguin Classic).

#### Ancient History II

12.210 A. Gardiner, *Egyptian Grammar* (Oxford); R.O. Faulkner, *A Concise Dictionary of Middle Egyptian* (Oxford).

12.211 Texts to be supplied by the Department.

12.212 A.W.H. Adkins & P. White *The Greek Polis* (U. of Chicago Press, 1986); Plutarch *The Rise and Fall of Athens* (Penguin Classics); Thucydides *History of the Peloponnesian War* (Penguin Classics); Plato *Republic* (Trans. G.M.A. Grube; Hackett).

12.220 A. Gardner, *Egypt of the Pharaohs* (O.U.P.); M. Lichtheim, *Ancient Egyptian Literature*, Vol. I (Univ. Calif. Press).

12.221 G. Roux, *Ancient Iraq* (Pelican); S. Dalley, *Mari and Karana* (Longman).

#### Ancient History III

12.300 As for 12.200

12.310 As for 12.210

12.312 As for 12.212

12.313 As for 12.213

12.321 As for 12.221

12.324 Either T.S. Brown, *The Greek Historians* (D.C. Heath, paperback) or S. Usher, *Historians of Greece and Rome* (B.C.P., paperback); Herodotus, *Histories* (Penguin Classics); Thucydides, *The Peloponnesian War* (Penguin Classics); Xenophon, *History of My Times and Persian Expedition* (Penguin Classics); Arrian, *Campaigns of Alexander* (Penguin Classics).

#### Ancient History for MA and Honours

12.401 S.N. Kramer, *The Sumerians* (Chicago, 1963) and *History Begins at Sumer* (Thames & Hudson, 1957).

12.408 Students should consult the Department.

12.422 Xenophon, *A History of My Times* (Penguin Classics).

12.440 Paul Fransden, *An Outline of the Late Egyptian Verbal System* (Academisk Forlag Copenhagen, 1974).

### ANTHROPOLOGY

#### Anthropology I

03.101 B.M. Fagan, *People of the Earth: An Introduction to World Prehistory* 6th edn (Little Brown, paperback, 1989); J. Peiffer, *The Emergence of Humankind* 4th edn (Harper & Row, 1985); B. Campbell, *Humankind Emerging* 5th edn (Scott, Foresman & Co., 1988).

03.102 R.J.I. Walker, *Ka Whawhai Tonu Matou: Struggle without end* (Penguin, 1990).

## Anthropology II

- 03.200** R. Firth, *We, the Tikopia* any edn.  
**03.201** P. Swadling, *Papua New Guinea Prehistory* any edn (PNG Nat. Mus.); P. Swadling, *Sepik-Ramu* (PNG Nat. Mus., 1988).  
**03.206** H.J. Nissen, *The Early History of the Ancient Near East 9000-2000 B.C.* (University of Chicago Press 1988); B.M. Fagan, *People of the Earth: an Introduction to World Prehistory* 6th edn (Little Brown, paperback, 1989).  
**03.207** M. Weiss & A. Mann, *Human Biology and Behavior* 4th edn (Little Brown, 1985).  
**03.208** J. Davidson, *Prehistory of New Zealand* (Longman Paul, 1984).  
**03.210** P. Spoonley, *Racism and Ethnicity* (Oxford, 1988); D. Mihaka, *Ki te whei-ao Ki te Ao-marama* (Te Ringa Mangu, 1989) or R. Walker, *Te Tau Tohotohe* (Penguin, 1987).  
**03.212** W. Labov, *Sociolinguistic Patterns* (Univ. of Pennsylvania, 1972).  
**03.214** E. Wolf, *Europe and the People Without History* (Univ of Calif. Press, 1982).  
**03.218** A. Kuper, *Anthropologists and Anthropology* (any edn).  
**03.219** R.R. Reiter (ed.), *Toward an Anthropology of Women* any edn (Monthly Review Press.)  
**Anthropology III**  
**03.300** A. Kuper, *Anthropologists and Anthropology* 1975 or later edn (Peregrine).  
**03.304** A. Ward, *A Show of Justice* (Oxford, 1973); R. Firth, *Economics of the New Zealand Maori* (Government Printer 1959/1973); J.A. Williams, *Politics of the New Zealand Maori* (Oxford, 1969/1977).  
**03.306** R.J.I. Walker, *Ka Whawhai Tonu Matou: Struggle without end* (Penguin, 1990).  
**03.314** K.C. Chang, *The Archaeology of Ancient China* 4th edn (Yale University Press, 1987); P. Bellwood, *Prehistory of the Indo-Malaysian Archipelago* (Academic Press, 1985); C. Higham, *The Archaeology of Mainland Southeast Asia* (Cambridge University Press, 1989).  
**03.320** E. Massal & J. Barrau, *Food Plants of the South Sea Islands* (South Pacific Commission Technical Bulletin).  
**03.326** S. Shennan, *Quantifying Archaeology* (Edinburgh Univ. Press, 1988).

## ARCHITECTURE

Details of any prescribed texts and reading lists will be published in the Department prior to commencement of lectures.

## ART HISTORY

- 19.153** M. Prendergast & B. Brake, *Te Aho Tapua: the Sacred Thread*.  
**19.260** R. Wittkower, *Art and Architecture in Italy 1600-1750* (Pelican History of Art, paperback, 1986).  
**19.401** B. Smith, *Australian Painting 1788-1980* (Oxford); R. Hughes, *The Art of Australia* latest edn (Penguin).

## ASIAN GEOGRAPHY

See Geography

## ASIAN POLITICS

See Political Studies

## ASIAN STUDIES

See relevant entry under Chinese, Indonesian, Japanese or Korean

## AUDIOLOGY

- 751.401** J.O. Pickles, *An Introduction to the Physiology of Hearing* 2nd edn (Academic Press); B.C.J. Moore, *An Introduction to the Physiology of Hearing* 3rd edn (Academic Press).  
**751.402** J. Katz, *Handbook of Clinical Audiology*, 3rd edn (Williams & Wilkins); M. Hannley, *Basic Principles of Auditory Assessment* 1st edn (Taylor & Francis).

## BIOCHEMISTRY

- Biochemistry I & II**  
**66.202, 66.203, 66.204, 66.301 & 66.302**  
 C.K. Mathews & K.E. van Holle, *Biochemistry* (Benjamin/Cummings, 1990).

## BIOLOGY

- Biology I**  
**39.101** H. Curtis & N.S. Barnes *Part I Biology of Cells, Part II Biology of Populations* 5th edn (Worth).

## BOTANY

- Botany I**  
**06.102** P.H. Raven, R.F. Evert & S.E. Eichhorn, *Biology of Plants* 4th edn (Worth).

## CELLULAR AND MOLECULAR BIOLOGY

- Cellular and Molecular Biology III**  
**40.303, 304, 305** There are no prescribed texts for 40.303, 40.304 or 40.305. A list of books that are recommended reading may be obtained from the Departmental Office after 1 December.

## CHEMISTRY

- Chemistry I**  
**08.111** J. McMurry, *Fundamentals of Organic Chemistry (ISE)* 2nd edn (Brooks/Cole); *Chemistry I Laboratory Manual* (available from the Department at enrolment).  
**08.121** P.W. Atkins, *General Chemistry (ISE)*, (Scientific American Books, paperback); *Chemistry I Laboratory Manual* (available from the Department at enrolment).  
**Chemistry II**  
**08.210** P.W. Atkins, *Physical Chemistry* 4th edn (Oxford).  
**08.220** D.F. Shriver, P.W. Atkins, C.H. Langford, *Inorganic Chemistry* (Oxford University Press).  
**08.230** J. McMurry, *Organic Chemistry* 2nd edn (Brooks/Cole); *Chemistry 08.230 Laboratory Manual* (available from Department at enrolment).  
**08.250** *Laboratory Manual* (available from the Department at enrolment).  
**08.260** L.G. Hargis, *Analytical Chemistry: principles and techniques* (Prentice-Hall International edn, 1988).  
**Chemistry III**  
**08.310** As for 08.210

08.311 As for 08.210

08.320 Ch. Elschenbroich and A. Salzer, *Organometallics* (VCH Publications).

08.321 As for 08.220 plus Lowe, *Quantum Chemistry*, Student Edition (Academic Press).

08.340 Brown, Floyd, Sainsbury, *Organic Spectroscopy* (Wiley, 1988).

08.352 *Chemistry 08.352 Laboratory Manual and Supplementary Schedules* (both available from the Department at enrolment).

08.370 *Laboratory Manual* (available at commencement of laboratory session)

08.360 D.A. Skoog, *Principles of Instrumental Analysis* 3rd edn (Saunders).

#### Chemistry for MSc and Honours

08.410 P.W. Atkins, *Physical Chemistry* 4th edn (Oxford).

08.411 Harris, P.W. Atkins, *Physical Chemistry* 4th edn (Oxford).

08.420 As for 08.320

08.421 As for 08.321

51.141 L.G. Hargis, *Analytical Chemistry: Principals and Techniques*, (Prentice Hall International edn 1988).

#### CHINESE

##### Chinese I

48.100 and 48.101 *Practical Chinese Reader*, Vol. I (Commercial Press, Peking); *Chinese Character Exercise Book*, Vol. I (Commercial Press, Peking); *Vocabulary List: Key to Exercises for Practical Chinese Reader*, (Commercial Press, Peking).

48.102 W.T. De Bary (ed.), *Sources of Chinese Tradition*, Vol. I (Columbia Univ. Press); Chan Wing-tsit, *A Source Book in Chinese Philosophy* (Princeton Univ. Press).

48.104 Cao Xueqin, *The Story of the Stone*, Vols. I and V, trans. D. Hawkes and J. Minford (Penguin); further materials supplied by the Department.

48.105 J. Spence, *The Gate of Heavenly Peace* (Penguin); G. Barmé & J. Minford, *Seeds of Fire* (Hill & Wang, N.Y.).

48.106 Materials supplied by Department.

##### Chinese II

48.200 *Practical Chinese Reader*, Vol. II (Commercial Press, Peking); *Chinese Character Exercise Book*, Vol II (Commercial Press, Peking). *Vocabulary List: Key to Exercises for Practical Chinese Reader*, (Commercial Press, Peking).

48.201 Materials supplied by the Department.

48.203 Lau (trans.) Confucius, *The Analects* (Penguin); Lau (trans.) Lao Tzu, *Tao-te Ching* (Penguin); further materials supplied by the Department.

##### Chinese III

48.300 *Practical Chinese Reader*, Vols. III and IV (Commercial Press, Peking).

48.301 G. Barmé & J. Minford, *Seeds of Fire* (Hill & Wang, N.Y.); further materials supplied by the Department.

48.302 Materials supplied by the Department.

48.303 Materials supplied by the Department.

##### Chinese for MA & Honours

48.400-48.421 Materials supplied by the Department.

#### CLASSICAL STUDIES

##### Classical Studies I

73.105 Homer, *Iliad*, (trans.) R. Lattimore (University of Chicago Press/Phoenix); Virgil, *Aeneid* (trans.) W.F. Jackson Knight (Penguin); Plato, *Early Socratic Dialogues* ed. Trevor J. Saunders (Penguin Classics); Seneca, *Four Tragedies and Octavia*, transl. E.F. Watling (Penguin Classics), Humphries Rolfe (ed.) Ovid, *The Art of Love* (Indiana University Press).

#### COMMERCIAL LAW

##### Commercial Law I

02.100 *Study Guide*, and materials to be purchased at enrolment.

##### Commercial Law II

02.200 To be advised at enrolment.

02.201 Farrar, *Butterworth's Commercial Law* 1st edn (Butterworths).

02.202 *New Zealand Companies & Securities Legislation* 1991 edn (Commerce Clearing House); Farrar & Russell, *Company Law and Securities Regulation in New Zealand* Wellington 1985 (Butterworths); Webb & Webb, *Principles of the Law of Partnership*, 4th edn Wellington (Butterworths).

02.203 A. Szakats, *The Law of Employment* 3rd edn (Butterworths).

02.204 *Study Guide*, and materials to be purchased at enrolment.

02.205 To be advised at enrolment.

##### Commercial Law III

02.301 *New Zealand Master Tax Guide* 1991 edn (Commerce Clearing House); *New Zealand Income Tax Legislation*, 1991 edn (Commerce Clearing House).

02.303 *New Zealand Companies & Securities Regulations*, 1991 edn (Commerce Clearing House).

02.305 *New Zealand Companies and Securities Legislation*, 1991 edn (Commerce Clearing House).

02.306 To be advised at enrolment.

02.307 To be advised at enrolment.

02.308 To be advised at enrolment.

#### COMPUTER SCIENCE

##### Computer Science I

07.100 Niguidula & van Dam (ed.), *Pascal on the Macintosh* (Addison-Wesley).

07.105 Nell Dale & Susan C. Lilly (ed.), *Pascal Plus Data Structures*, 2nd edn (D.C. Heath).

07.111 Refer to Department.

##### Computer Science II

07.211 Levy & Eckhouse (ed.), *Computer Programming and Architecture: The Vax* 2nd edn (Digital).

07.221 Refer to Department.

07.222 Refer to Department.

07.230 *Inside Macintosh*, Vol I (Addison-Wesley).

##### Computer Science III

07.301 Refer to Department.

07.303 Refer to Department.

07.310 J.P. Hayes (ed.), *Computer Architecture and Organization* 2nd edn (McGraw-Hill).

07.315 Refer to Department.

07.330 B. Hutton, *Language Implementation Lecture Notes* (Available only from Department).

- 07.340, 07.351** M.G. Lane, J.D. Mooney, *A Practical Approach to Operating Systems* (Boyd and Fraser).  
**07.352** Udi Manber (ed.), *Introduction to Algorithms: A Creative Approach* (Addison-Wesley).  
**07.361** Refer to Department.  
**07.362** Refer to Department.  
**Computer Science for MSC**  
**07.406** B. Meyer (ed.), *Object Oriented Software Construction* 1st edn (Prentice Hall).  
**07.407** Refer to Department.  
**07.409** Refer to Department.  
**07.410** Refer to Department.  
**07.415** Refer to Department.  
**07.430, 07.442** W. Stallings (ed.), *Data & Computer Communications* 2nd edn (Maxwell-Macmillan).  
**07.473** Refer to Department.

## DRAMA, DIPLOMA IN

A booklist will be available from the English Department.

## ENGLISH LANGUAGE TEACHING, DIPLOMA IN

- 18.502, 18.503, 18.506** C. Wallace, *Learning to Read in a Multicultural Society* (Prentice-Hall, 1988); E. Tarone & G. Yule, *Focus on the Language Learner* (O.U.P., 1989); R. Ellis, *Understanding Second Language Acquisition* (O.U.P., 1986); J. Richards et al, *Longman Dictionary of Applied Linguistics* (Longman, 1985); L. Ventriglia, *Conversations with Miguel and Marie* (Addison-Wesley, 1982); N. Wallerstein, *Language and Culture in Conflict* (Addison-Wesley, 1983).

## DUTCH

### Dutch I

- 421.100, 421.101** *Levend Nederlands* Rev.edn (C.U.P.); P. de Kleijn & E. Nieuwborg, *Basisswoordenboek Nederlands* (Wolters-Noordhoff, 1983).  
**421.102** W. Shetter, *The Netherlands in Perspective* (Martinus Nijhoff, 1987).

## ECONOMICS

### Economics I

- 13.100** M. Parkin, *Economics* Addison-Wesley, 1990).  
**13.101** As for 13.100 Also R. Scollay, S. St.John & J. Horsman, *Macroeconomics and the New Zealand Economy* New Edition (Longman Paul).

### Economics II

- 13.200** A.C. De Serpa, *Microeconomic Theory, Issues and Applications* 2nd edn (Allyn & Bacon, Inc)

### Economics III

- 13.304** P. Krugman & M. Obstfeld, *International Economics* (Scott, Foresman & Co., 1988); P. Lindert, *International Economics*, 8th edn (Irwin).  
**13.307** Stiglitz, *Economics of the Public Sector* 2nd edn (Norton).

## EDUCATION

### Education I

- 14.100** A. Jones, J. Marshall, G. McCulloch, L. Smith & G. Smith, *Myths & Realities* 1st edn (Dunmore).  
**14.101** E.M. Hetherington & R.D. Parke, *Child*

*Psychology: A Contemporary Viewpoint* 3rd edn (McGraw-Hill, 1986).

- 14.151** C. Peterson, *Looking through the Life span - Development Psychology* 2nd edn (Prentice Hall).

### Education II

**14.203** Gage & Berliner, *Educational Psychology* 4th edn (Houghton-Mifflin). N.B. 3rd edn will not be acceptable.

**14.204** N.E. Gronlund & R.L. Linn, *Measurement and Evaluation in Teaching* 6th edn (Maxwell Macmillan, New York, 1990).

**14.208** Marshall, *Why go to School?* 1st edn (Dunmore); C.J. Lankshear with M. Lawler, *Literacy Schooling and Revolution*, (Falmer Press, 1988).

**14.210** Lawton, *Curriculum Studies and Educational Planning* (Hodder & Stoughton, 1983).

**14.211** Cazden, *Classroom Discourse: the language of teacher and child* 1st edn (Heinemann); Lindfors, *Children's language and learning* 2nd edn (Prentice Hall).

### Education III

**14.305** Munro, Manthei & Small, *Counselling: The Skills of Problem Solving* (Longman Paul).

**14.306** Belkin, *Introduction to Counselling* 3rd edn (Brown).

**14.308** J.O. Cooper, T.E. Heron & W.L. Heward, *Applied Behaviour Analysis* (Merrill).

**14.309** D. Wood, *How Children Think & Learn* 1st edn (Basil Blackwell).

**14.310** Muuss, *Theories of Adolescence* 5th edn (Random House).

**14.311** D.L. Macmillan, *Mental Retardation in School and Society* 2nd edn (Little Brown); Hallahan & Kauffman, *Exceptional Children: Introduction to Special Education* 4th edn (Prentice-Hall); B.W. Tuckman, *Conducting Educational Research* 3rd edn (Harcourt, Brace & Jovanovich).

**14.313** J. Bell, *Doing Your Research Project* (Open University, 1987).

**14.319** K. Rayner & A. Pollatsek, *The Psychology of Reading* (Prentice Hall, 1989).

**14.320** D.J. Stipek, *Motivation to Learn*: (Prentice-Hall, 1988).

**14.327** D.J. Reid & D. Hodson, *Science for all. Teaching Science in the Secondary School* (Cassell, 1987).

**14.333** R. Walker, *Ka Whawhai Tonu Matou: Struggle Without End* (Penguin).

**14.336** R.M. Thomas & T.N. Postlethwaite (eds.), *Schooling in the Pacific Islands* (Pergamon Press 1984).

### Education for MA and Honours

**14.400** S. Ball (ed.), *Foucault and Education: discipline and knowledge* 1st edn (Routledge & Kegan Paul).

**14.404** R. Dale *The State and Education Policy* 1st edn (Open University Press).

**14.407** D. Wood, *How Children Think & Learn* 1st edn (Basil Blackwell).

**14.410** G. Egan, *The Skilled Helper* 3rd edn (Brooks/Cole); Argyris & Schon, *Theory in Practice* (Jossey-Bass, 1974).

**14.412** D.H. Barlow & M. Hersen, *Single Case Experimental Designs: Strategies for Studying Behaviour Change* 2nd edn (Pergamon).



**14.413** E. Zigler & R.M. Hodapp, *Understanding Mental Retardation* 1st edn (Cambridge University Press).

**14.414** L. Brady, *Curriculum Development*, 3rd edn (Prentice Hall).

**14.418** I. & H. Goldenberg, *Family Therapy* 2nd edn (Brooks Cole).

**14.423** W. Carr & S. Kemmis, *Becoming Critical: Education, Knowledge and Action Research* 1st edn (Falmer).

**14.424** W. Carr & S. Kemmis, *Becoming Critical: Education, Knowledge and Action Research* 1st edn (Falmer); A. Jones, G. McCulloch, J. Marshall, G.H. Smith, L.T. Smith *Myths and Realities* (Penguin).

**14.450** Brown, Cooper, Horton, Toabes & Zeldin (eds.), *Science in Schools* 1st edn (Open University Press).

**14.451** Lee Bolman & T. Deal, *Modern Approaches to Understanding and Managing Organisations* (Jossey-Bass, 1984); S. Ball, *The Micropolitics of the School* (Paper, 1987).

**14.452** J. Bell, *Doing your research project* (Open University, 1987).

**14.453** R.L. George & D. Durlin, *Group Counselling* (Prentice Hall).

## ENGINEERING

Lists of prescribed texts are available from the School of Engineering.

## ENGLISH

### English I

**18.100** Chaucer: *The Prologue* (ed.) R.T. Davis (Harrap); *The Miller's Tale* (ed.) J. Winny (Cambridge); *The Nun's Priest's Tale* (ed.) N. Coghill & C. Tolkien (Harrap); Shakespeare: *King Richard III* (New Penguin Shakespeare); *Merry Wives of Windsor* (ed.) G.R. Hibbard (New Penguin Shakespeare); *Hamlet* (ed.) A. Barton (New Penguin Shakespeare).

**18.101** Joyce, *Dubliners* (Granada); William Faulkner, *As I Lay Dying* (Penguin); Margaret Laurence, *The Diviners* (Virago); Pynchon, *The Crying of Lot 49* (Picador); Jean Rhys, *The Wide Sargasso Sea* (Penguin); *The Penguin Book of American Verse* (ed.) Geoffrey Moore (revised edition); Bertolt Brecht, *Mother Courage* (Methuen paperback); Samuel Beckett, *Krapp's Last Tape* (Faber, paperback); Caryl Churchill, *Top Girls* (Methuen); Harold Pinter, *Old Times* (Methuen); Christopher Hampton, *Savages* (Faber); Dennis Potter, *The Singing Detective* (Faber).

**18.103, 18.113** *An Anthology of 20th Century New Zealand Poetry* (ed.) Vincent O'Sullivan (O.U.P.); Katherine Mansfield, *Selected Stories* (ed.) D.M. Davin (O.U.P.) OR *Collected Stories* (Penguin); Maurice Gee, *In My Father's Den* (O.U.P./Faber); Patricia Grace, *Potiki* (Penguin); Janet Frame, *Faces in the Water* (Women's Press-Hutchinson); Robin Hyde, *Wednesday's Children* (Women's Press); Frank Sargeson, *The Stories of Frank Sargeson* (Penguin); Keri Hulme, *The Bone People* (Picador); Albert Wendt, *Pouliuli* (Penguin); Carolyn Burns, *Objection Overruled* (V.U.P.); Vincent O'Sullivan, *Billy* (V.U.P.); Stuart Hoar, *Squatter* (V.U.P.).

**18.104** Blake, *Selected Poems* (ed.) P. Butter (Dent Everyman); Wordsworth *Selected Poems* (ed.) Walford Davies (Dent, paperback); Hardy, *Tess of the D'Urbervilles* (MacMillan); Keats, *Selected Poems and Letters* (ed.) Robert Gittings (Heinemann); Jane Austen, *Emma* (O.U.P. World's Classics); T. Hughes (ed.), *A Choice of Emily Dickinson's Verse* (Faber); E.A. Poe, *Selected Tales* (World's Classics); Twain, *Huckleberry Finn* (Penguin); Eliot, *The Mill on the Floss* (O.U.P. World's Classics); Dickens, *Great Expectations* (Penguin); Bronte, *Wuthering Heights* (O.U.P. World's Classics).

**18.105, 18.115** V. Fromkin & R. Rodman, *An Introduction to Language* 4th edn (Holt, Rinehart & Winston).

### English II

**18.200** L. Benson (gen. ed.), *The Riverside Chaucer* (O.U.P., paperback); Malory, *Le Morte Darthur* (ed.) P.J.C. Field (London Medieval & Renaissance Series - Hodder & Stoughton); *York Mystery Plays* (eds.) R. Beadle & P.M. King (Clarendon) *Three Late Medieval Morality Plays* (ed.) G.A. Lester (New Mermaid, Benn); N. Davis, D. Gray et al, *A Chaucer Glossary* (Clarendon Press Oxford, paperback); *Middle English Verse Romances* (ed.) Donald B. Sands (University of Exeter).

**18.201** R. Chapman, *Linguistics and Literature - An Introduction to Literary Stylistics* (Arnold, 1973); P. Trudgill, *Sociolinguistics: An Introduction to Language and Society* (Pelican rev. edn).

**18.205** W. Labov, *Sociolinguistic Patterns* (Blackwell); P. Trudgill, *Sociolinguistics: An Introduction to Language and Society* (Pelican rev. edn).

**18.210** *The Norton Anthology of English Literature, Vol I* (Norton).

**18.213** *Macbeth, Othello, King Lear, Antony and Cleopatra* (all New Penguin Shakespeare, paperbacks); Marlowe, *Complete Plays* (Penguin); Anon, *Arden of Faversham* (New Mermaid); Webster, *The Duchess of Malfi* (New Mermaid); Tourneur, *The Revenger's Tragedy* (New Mermaid); Middleton, *The Changeling* (New Mermaid); Andrew Gurr, *The Shakespearean Stage* (Cambridge, paperback).

**18.220** Willa Cather, *My Antonia* (Virago); James Joyce, *A Portrait of the Artist as a Young Man* (Granada); E.M. Forster, *A Passage to India* (Penguin); Virginia Woolf, *Mrs Dalloway* (Panther); Samuel Beckett, *Murphy* (Pan); John Barth, *The Floating Opera/The End of the Road* (Anchor/Doubleday); E.L. Doctorow, *Ragtime* (Pan); Graham Greene, *The Comedians* (Penguin); Vladimir Nabokov, *Lolita* (Penguin); Julian Barnes, *Metroland* (Picador); Margaret Atwood, *Catseye* (Virago).

**18.221** F.E. Maning, *Old New Zealand* (Viking/Penguin); Lady Barker, *Station Life in New Zealand* (Virago); V. O'Sullivan (ed.), *An Anthology of Twentieth Century New Zealand Poetry* (O.U.P.); Herman Melville, *Typee* (Penguin); Ian Wedde, *Symmes Hole* (Penguin); Witi Ihimaera, *The Matriarch* (Picador); Maurice Shadbolt, *Season of the Jew* (Sceptre); Janet Frame, *To the Is-land* (Women's Press); Janet Frame, *The Carpathians* (Century Hutchinson, paperback); Bruce Mason, *Awatea* (VUP); Craig Harrison, *Tomorrow Will Be A*

- Lovely Day* (Longman Paul); I. Wedde, *Symme's Hole* (Penguin). Two further drama texts will be distributed by the Department.
- 18.222** Yeats, *Selected Poetry* (ed.) Jeffares (Pan); Robert Frost, *Selected Poems* (ed.) I. Hamilton (Penguin); Ezra Pound, *Selected Poems 1908-1959* (Faber, paperback); W.C. Williams, *Selected Poems* (Penguin); Wallace Stevens, *Selected Poems* (Faber, paperback); Marianne Moore, *Complete Poems* (Faber, paperbacks).
- 18.223** Roger Lass, *Phonology: An Introduction to Basic Concepts 1984* (Cambridge University Press).
- English III**
- 18.301** Bruce Mitchell and Fred C. Robinson (eds.), *A Guide to Old English: Revised with Prose and Verse Texts and Glossary* rev 4th edn (Blackwell).
- 18.302** Either L.D. Benson (ed.), *The Riverside Chaucer* (O.U.P.) or F.N. Robinson (ed.), *The Works of Geoffrey Chaucer* (O.U.P.); A.C. Cawley & J.J. Anderson (ed.) *Pearl, Cleanness, Patience, Sir Gawain and the Green Knight*; (Everyman); William Dunbar, Xeroxed poems supplied by the Department; Robert Henryson, *Poems*, D. Fox (O.U.P.).
- 18.304** E. Gordon & T. Deverson, *New Zealand English* (Heinemann, 1985); E. Gordon & T. Deverson, *Finding a New Zealand Voice* (New House, 1989).
- 18.315** Fraser & Rabkin (eds.), *Drama of the English Renaissance Vol 2: The Stuart Period* (Macmillan, U.S. paperback; Marlowe, *The Complete Plays* (Penguin); Gamin Salgado (ed.), *Three Restoration Comedies* (Penguin); George Farquhar, *The Beaux' Stratagem* (New Mermaid); Aphra Behn, *The Rover* (Regents Restoration Drama).
- 18.306** Henry Fielding, *Jonathan Wild* (Penguin); Alexander Pope, *Poems* (ed.) John Butt (Methuen); *The Beggar's Opera and Eighteenth Century Plays* (Everyman Classics); Jonathan Swift, *The Writings* (ed.) Greenberg (Norton); *Three Restoration Comedies* (ed.) G. Salgado (Penguin); Aristotle, Horace, Longinus, *Classical Literary Criticism* (Penguin); Laurence Sterne, *A Sentimental Journey* (Penguin); Henry Mackenzie, *The Man of Feeling* (O.U.P.).
- 18.307** Blake, *The Portable Blake*, (ed.) Kazin (Penguin); Wordsworth, *Selected Poems* (ed.) Stephen Gill (O.U.P.); Coleridge, *Selected Poetry and Prose* (Modern Library College edn); Keats, *The Complete Poems* (ed.) Barnard (Penguin); Scott, *The Bride of Lammermoor* (Everyman); Hogg, *Confessions of a Justified Sinner* (Oxford, paperback); Byron, *Don Juan* (Penguin); Shelley, *Selected Poems* (ed.) Webb (Dent).
- 18.308** Daniel Defoe, *Moll Flanders* (Everyman); S. Richardson, *Clarissa* (Penguin); H. Fielding, *Amelia* (Penguin); M. Brunt, *Self Control* (Pandora); F. Burney, *Evelina* (O.U.P.); Aphra Behn, *Love Letters Between a Nobleman and his Sister* (Virago); C. Lennox, *The Female Quixote* (O.U.P.); Mary Wollstonecraft, *Mary and the Wrongs of Woman* (O.U.P.); A. Radcliffe, *Mysteries of Udolpho* (O.U.P.); Jane Austen, *Northanger Abbey* (Penguin); M. Shelley, *Frankenstein* (Penguin).
- 18.320** Charles Dickens: *David Copperfield, Bleak House* (both Penguin English Library); George Eliot, *Silas Marner* (Penguin English Library); W.M. Thackeray, *Vanity Fair* (Oxford World's Classics); Charlotte Brontë, *Jane Eyre* (O.U.P. World's Classics); Thomas Hardy, *Jude the Obscure* (Penguin English Library); Alfred Tennyson *Selected Poetry* (ed.) Douglas Bush (Random House, Modern Library); Oscar Wilde, *The Picture of Dorian Grey* (Penguin); *The Importance of Being Ernest* (Methuen Student edn); John Stuart Mill, *The Subjection of Women* (M.I.T. Press); Matthew Arnold, *Selected Poems and Prose* (ed.) Miriam Allott (Dent/Everyman).
- 18.323** *In the American Tree* (ed.) Ron Silliman (National Poetry Foundation Inc, University of Main at Orono); *The Penguin Book of American Verse* (ed.) Geoffrey Moore (Penguin, rev edn).
- 18.325** Gabriel Garcia Marquez, *One Hundred Years of Solitude* (Picador); Salman Rushdie, *Midnight's Children* (Picador); Ayi Kwei Armah, *The Beautiful Ones Are Not Yet Born* (Heinemann African Series); Sembene Ousmane, *Last of the Empire* (Heinemann); Buchi Emecheta, *The Joys of Motherhood* (Flamingo); Anita Desai, *Clear Light of Day* (Penguin); Nadine Gordimer, *The Conservationist* (Penguin); V.S. Naipaul, *The Mimic Men* (Penguin); Alex La Guma, *Time of the Butcherbird* (Heinemann); Roy Heath, *Kwaku* (Flamingo); Ngugi Wa Thiong'o, *A Grain of Wheat* (Heinemann); Njabulo S. Ndebele, *Fools* (Longman).
- 18.326** Virginia Woolf, *A Room of One's Own*, (Grafton); Angela Carter, *The Passion of New Eve*, (Virago); Lydia Wevers (ed.), *Yellow Pencils* (O.U.P.); Sylvia Plath, *The Bell Jar*, (Faber); Janet Frame, *To the Is-land* (Women's Press); Margaret Atwood, *Catseye* (Virago); Kathy Lette, *Girls Night Out* (Pan); Sally Morgan, *My Place* (Fre. Arts Books); Ruby Langford, *Don't Take Your Love to Town* (Penguin); Audre Lorde, *Zami: a new spelling of my name* (Sheba Feminist Publication); Toni Morrison, *Sula* (Panther); Keri Hulme, *the bone people* (Picador); Ngahua Te Awetokuku, *Tahuri* (New Women's Press); Margaret Laurence, *The Stone Angel* (Bantam); Doris Lessing, *The Fifth Child* (Paladin); Nicole Brossard, *These Our Mothers* (Coach House Quebec Translations).
- 18.327** Henry Lawson, *The Bush Undertaker and Other Stories*, (ed.) C. Roderick (Angus & Robertson); Henry Handel Richardson, *The Fortunes of Richard Mahony*, (Penguin); Judith Wright, *A Human Patterson* (Angus & Robertson); Les Murray, *Selected Poems* (Carcenet); Patrick White, *A Fringe of Leaves* (Penguin); *Riders in the Chariot* (Penguin); Gwen Harwood, *Selected Poems* (Angus & Robertson); Elizabeth Jolley, *Miss Peabody's Inheritance* (University of Queensland, paperback); Helen Garner, *Postcards from Surfers* (Penguin); Jack Davis, *Kullark and the Dreamers* (Currency Press); Colin Johnson, *Dr Wooreddy's Prescription for Enduring the Ending of the World* (Hyland House Publishing); Ray Lawler, *Summer of the Seventeenth Doll*; Dorothy Hewett, *The Chapel Perilous*; Jack Hibberd, *A Stretch of the Imagination*; (all Currency Press, paperbacks).
- 18.331** David M. Bevington (ed.), *The Complete Works of Shakespeare* 3rd edn (Scott, Foresman);

Toril Moi, *Sexual/Textual Politics* (Methuen).

### English for MA and Honours

**18.400** Prescribed texts will include: *Beowulf* (ed.) C.L. Wren 3rd edn, revised by W.F. Bolton (Univ. of Exeter).

**18.405** Yeats, *Collected Poems* (MacMillan or Arrow); Ezra Pound, *Selected Poems 1908-59, Selected Cantos*, (Faber, paperbacks); T.S. Eliot, *Collected Poems* (Faber, paperback); William Carlos Williams: *Selected Poems, Paterson* (both Penguin); Allen Curnow, *Selected Poems* (Penguin, 1990).

**18.406** *Sonnets* (ed.) John Kerrigan (New Penguin); *Henry IV Parts 1 and 2* (ed.) A.R. Humphreys (Arden, paperback); *Coriolanus* (ed.) Philip Brockbank (Arden, paperback); *King John* (ed.) A.R. Braunmuller (Oxford, paperback); *Troilus and Cressida* (ed.) K. Palmer (Arden, paperback); *Measure for Measure* (ed.) J.W. Lever (Arden, paperback); *All's Well that Ends Well* (ed.) Barbara Everett (New Penguin); *The Poems* (ed.) F.T. Prince (Arden). *Julius Caesar* (ed.) A.R. Humphreys (Oxford paperback).

**18.407** Kaja Silverman, *The Subject of Semiotics* (O.U.P.); David Lodge (ed.), *Modern Criticism and Theory: A Reader* (Longman).

**18.409** Henrik Ibsen, *Peer Gynt*, *Ghosts and Other Plays* (both Penguin); Anton Chekov, *Plays* (Penguin); W.B. Yeats, *Collected Plays* (Macmillan); J.M. Synge, *Complete Plays* (Methuen paperback); Samuel Beckett, *Waiting for Godot, Endgame* (both Faber); Arthur Miller, *The Crucible, After the Fall* (both Penguin); Tennessee Williams, *The Rose Tattoo and Camino Real* (Penguin); Sam Shepard, *Seven Plays* (Faber); David Hare, *The Secret Rapture* (Faber); Christopher Hampton, *Tales of Hollywood* (Faber); Caryl Churchill, *Serious Money* (Methuen); Oscar Wilde, *The Importance of Being Ernest* (Penguin); G.B. Shaw, *Major Barbara* (Longman); Harold Pinter, *The Caretaker, Old Times* (both Methuen).

**18.411** L.D. Benson (ed.), *The Riverside Chaucer* (O.U.P.); R. Peck (ed.), *John Gower: Confessio Amantis* (University of Toronto).

**18.414** Joseph Conrad: *Heart of Darkness*, (Norton), *Under Western Eyes* (Oxford paperback), *The Secret Agent, Nostromo* (both Penguin); James Joyce, *Ulysses* (Penguin, Students' Edn); Virginia Woolf, *A Room of One's Own, Mrs Dalloway, To the Lighthouse, The Waves* (all Grafton).

**18.416** Gertrude Stein, *Look at Me Now and Here I am* (Penguin); Wystan Curnow, *I Will Need Words: Colin McCahon's Number and Text Paintings* (National Art Gallery); W.T.J. Mitchell, *Iconology: Image, Text, Ideology* (Chicago University Press); Michael Foucault, *This is Not a Pipe* (Univ. of California); Kathy Acker, *Blood and Guts in High School* (Grove Press); Jenny Holzer, *Signs* (Art Centre, Des Moines); Judi Freeman, *The Dada and Surrealist Word-Image* (M.I.T. Press).

**18.417** Katherine Mansfield, *Collected Stories* (Penguin or Oxford); Frank Sargeson, *The Stories of Frank Sargeson* (Longman Paul or Penguin); Vincent O'Sullivan, *Billy* (V.U.P.); Greg McGee, *Foreskin's Lament*; Renee, *Wednesday to Come, Pass It On*; Hillary Beaton, *Outside In*; Stuart Hoar, *Squatter* (all

V.U.P. paperbacks); O'Sullivan *An Anthology of 20th Century New Zealand Poetry* 3rd edn (O.U.P., 1987); Witi Ihimaera & D.S. Long (eds.), *Into the World of Light* (Heinemann); Albert Wendt (ed.), *Lali: An Anthology of Pacific Literature* (Longman Paul).

**18.418** Dryden, *All for Love* (ed.) D.M. Vieth; Otway, *Venice Preserved* (ed.) M. Kelsall; Lee, *Lucius Junius Brutus* (ed.) John Loftis (all Regents Restoration Drama paperbacks); Congreve, *The Double Dealer* (ed.) John Ross (New Mermaid); Rochester, *Poems* (ed.) Keith Walker (Blackwell); Hobbes, *Leviathan* (ed.) MacPherson (Penguin); *Five Restoration Comedies* (ed.) Brian Gibbons (New Mermaid); Dryden, *A Selection* (ed.) Conaghan (Methuen paperback) (if available); Fidelis Morgan (ed.), *The Female Wits* (Virago).

**18.420** Roger Horrocks, *On Film* 2nd edn (Heinemann); Gerald Mast & Marshall Cohen (eds.), *Film Theory and Criticism* 3rd edn (O.U.P.).

**18.422** Chinua Achebe, *Things Fall Apart* (Picador), *A Man of the People, Anthills of the Savannah* (both Heinemann); Ngugi wa Thiong'o, *A Grain of Wheat, Matigari* (both Heinemann); Rebeka Njau, *Ripples in the Pool* (Heinemann); Elizabeth Bowen, *The Last September* (Penguin); William Trevor, *Fools of Fortune* (Penguin); Seamus Heaney, *Selected Poems* (Faber); Brian Friel, *Translations, Making History* (both Faber); Sean O'Casey *Three Plays* (Macmillan); Frank McGuinness, *Observe the Sons of Ulster, Marching Towards the Somme* (both Faber); V.S. Naipaul, *A House for Mr Biswas* (Penguin); Colin Johnson, *Doctor Wooredy's Prescription for Enduring the Ending of the World* (Hyland House); Epeli Hau'ofa, *Kisses in the Nederends* (Penguin); Russell Soaba, *Maiba* (Three Continents).

**18.423** Jack London, *Martin Eden* (Penguin); Willa Cather, *The Professor's House* (Virago); William Faulkner, *The Sound and the Fury* (Norton); F. Scott Fitzgerald, *Tender is the Night* (Penguin); Carson McCullers, *The Heart is a Lonely Hunter* (Penguin); Ralph Ellison, *Invisible Man* (Penguin); Flannery O'Connor, *Everything That Rises Must Converge* (Faber); Raymond Carver, *Stories* (Picador); Louise Erdrich, *Tracks* (Picador); Thomas Pynchon, *Vineland* (Minerva); James Agee, *Let Us Now Praise Famous Men* (Houghton Mifflin); Edmund White, *States of Desire* (Picador).

**18.426** Edmund Burke, *Philosophical Enquiry into the Origin of our Ideas of the Sublime and the Beautiful* (ed.) J.T. Boulton (Blackwell); William Wordsworth, *The Prelude* (1805) (Penguin).

**18.427** Julian of Norwich, *A Revelation of Love* (ed.) Marion Glasscoe (Exeter U.P.); Margery Kempe, *The Book of Margery Kempe* (ed.) B.A. Windeatt (Exeter U.P.); Ancrene Wisse (ed.) G. Shepherd (Exeter U.P.).

**18.430** Anne Bronte, *The Tenant of Wildfell Hall* (Penguin); Charlotte Bronte, *Villette* (Penguin); Elizabeth Gaskell, *Cranford/Cousin Phillis* (Penguin); *North and South* (O.U.P./World Classics); George Eliot, *The Mill on the Floss* (World's Classics); *Middlemarch* (World's Classics); Margaret Oliphant, *Hester* (Virago); Olive Schreiner, *The Story of an African Farm* (Penguin); George Egerton, *Keynotes and Discords* (Virago); Charlotte Perkins Gilman, *The Yellow Wallpaper* (Virago); Elizabeth Barrett

Browning, *Aurora Leigh* (Women's Press); Mona Caird, *The Daughters of Danaus* (Feminist Press).

## ENVIRONMENTAL SCIENCE

64.200/36.262 G.T. Miller, *Environmental Science: An Introduction* 2nd edn (Wadsworth, 1988).

## FILM & TELEVISION STUDIES

85.200 J. Monaco, *How to Read a Film* 2 edn (New York, O.U.P.); H. Newcomb (ed.), *Television: The Critical View* 4th edn (New York, O.U.P., 1987); Barry Barclay, *Our Own Image* (Longman Paul).

## FRENCH

### French I

34.100 Omaggio, *Kaleidoscope* 2nd edn and *Cahier d'exercices* (Random House).

34.104 Departmental material.

34.109 Departmental material.

34.151, 34.152 Terrell et al, *Deux Mondes* and *Cahier d'exercices* (Random House).

### French II

34.200 J. Ollivier, *Grammaire Française* (H.B.J.); Departmental material.

34.201 Sand, *La Mare au diable* (Garnier-Flammariion); Zola, *Contes à Ninon* (Garnier-Flammariion); Gide, *L'Immoraliste* (Folio); Saint-Exupéry, *Le Petit prince* (Folio Junior); Camus, *Noces, suivi de l'Été* (Folio); Maupassant, *Boule de Suif* (L.P.); Sartre, *Le Mur* (Folio); M. Tournier, *Le Coq de Bruyère* (Folio); Mérimée, *Tamango*, *Mateo Falcone* et autres nouvelles (G-F #392); Saint-Exupéry, *Vol de nuit* (Folio).

34.202 Baudelaire, *Les Fleurs du Mal* (Univers des Lettres/Bordas); Verlaine, *Selected Poems* (Clarendon French Series/O.U.P.).

34.205 Ewert (ed.), *Marie de France: Lais* (Blackwell); Bowen (ed.), *Four farces* (Blackwell); Pathelin, *Farce de Maître P. Pathelin* (Nouveaux Classiques Larousse); Villon, *Poésies complètes* (LP); *La Farce de Maître Pathelin* (Nouveaux Cl. Larousse); *Aucassin et Nicolette* (Nouveaux Cl. Larousse).

34.214 P. Léon, *Introduction à la phonétique corrective* (Hachette/Larousse); B. Tranel, *The Sounds of French* (C.U.P.); E. Roulet, *Linguistic Theory, Linguistic Description and Language Teaching* (Longmans); D. Wilkins, *Linguistics in Language Teaching* (Arnold).

### French III

34.300 Bescherelle, *L'Art de conjuguer huit mille verbes* (Harrap/Hatier).

34.309 Mauriac, *Thérèse Desqueyroux* (LP); Anouilh, *Antigone* (Didier); Tournier, *Le Roi des aulnes* (Folio); Béhar et Carassou, *Le surréalisme. Textes et débats* (LP); Departmental materials.

34.310 Corneille, *L'Illusion comique* (Bordas); *Le Cid* (Bordas); Molière, *Tartuffe* (Bordas); *Don Juan* (Bordas); Racine, *Andromaque* (Bordas); *Les Plaideurs* (Bordas); Marivaux, *Le Jeu de l'amour et du hasard* (Bordas); *La Double inconstance* (Bordas); Beaumarchais, *Le Barbier de Séville* (Bordas), *Le Mariage de Figaro* (Bordas).

34.318 Departmental materials.

## GEOGRAPHY

For papers not listed below, see the Department of Geography *Students' Guide* available from the Secretary.

### Geography I

20.102 R.J. Johnston (ed.), *The Dictionary of Human Geography* 2nd edn (Blackwell, 1986).

### Geography II

20.203 P.J. Curran, *Principles of Remote Sensing* (Longman, 1985); G.R. Cochrane, *LANDSAT Images of New Zealand* (Action Publications, 1981).

### Geography for MA, MSc and Honours

20.440 R.N. Colwell (ed.), *Manual of Remote Sensing*, Vols. I & II 2nd edn (Am. Soc. Photogrammetry, 1983).

## GEOLOGY

### Geology I

21.110, 21.111 F. Press & R. Siever, *Earth* 4th edn (Freeman, 1985).

21.112 *Geological Map of New Zealand*, scale 1:250,000 Sheet 3, Auckland (Government Printer); *Geological Maps of New Zealand*, scale 1:1,000,000 (Government Printer) but note: purchase only the maps and not the Geological Bulletin of the same name.

### Geology II

21.200 K.A. Rodgers & J.A. Grant-Mackie, *Port Waikato Field Itinerary* (A.U. Geology Department publication, 1988); K.A. Rodgers & K.B. Sporli, *Field Geology, a Handbook of Basic Techniques and Safety Practice* (A.U. Geology Department publication, 1989).

21.211 D.H. Griffiths & R.F. King, *Applied Geophysics for Geologists and Engineers* 2nd eds (Penguin); B.E. Hobbs, W.D. Means & P.F. Williams, *An Outline of Structural Geology* (Wiley International Edition, J. Wiley & Sons, 1986).

21.212 C.W. Stearn & R.L. Carroll, *Paleontology: the record of life* (Wiley and Sons, 1989).

21.213 C.D. Gribble & A.J. Hall, *A Practical Introduction to Optical Mineralogy* (George Allen & Unwin 1985); T. Zoltai & J.H. Stout, *Mineralogy: Concepts and Principles* (MacMillan or Burgess, 1985).

21.215 E.G. Ehlers & H. Blatt, *Petrology Igneous, Sedimentary and Metamorphic* (Freeman, 1982); C.D. Gribble & A.J. Hall, *A Practical Introduction to Optical Mineralogy* (George Allen & Unwin, 1985); M.E. Tucker, *Sedimentary Petrology: an Introduction* (Blackwell Scientific Publications, 1981).

21.281, 21.284 W.C. Peters, *Exploration and Mining Geology* 2nd edn (J. Wiley & Sons, 1987).

### Geology III

21.300 J.A.E. Allum, *Photogeology and Regional Mapping* (Pergamon, 1966); K.A. Rodgers & K.B. Sporli, *Field Geology, a Handbook of Basic Techniques and Safety Practice* (A.U. Geology Department publication, 1988).

21.303 E.N.K. Clarkson, *Invertebrate Paleontology and Evolution* 2nd edn (George Allen & Unwin, 1986); N. de B. Hornibrook, R. C. Brazier & C. P.

Strong, *Manual of N.Z. Permian to Pleistocene Foraminiferal Biostratigraphy* (N.Z. Geol. Survey, Pal. Bull. 56, 1989); I.G. Speden & I.W. Keyes, *Illustrations of N.Z. Fossils* (Government Printer, D.S.I.R. Information Series 150, 1981).

**21.305** C.D. Gribble & A.J. Hall, *A Practical Introduction to Optical Mineralogy* (George Allen & Unwin, 1985); D.W. Hyndman, *Petrology of Igneous and Metamorphic Rocks* 2nd edn (McGraw Hill, 1985).

**21.306, 21.307** P. Kearey & M. Brooks, *An Introduction to Geophysical Exploration* (Blackwell, 1984).

**21.311** B.E. Hobbs, W.D. Means & P.F. Williams *An Outline of Structural Geology* (Wiley International Edition, J. Wiley & Sons, 1986).

**21.312** R. Lindholm, *A Practical Approach to Sedimentology* (George Allen & Unwin, 1987).

**21.319** Intending students should consult with Department.

**21.381** W.C. Peters, *Exploration and Mining Geology* 2nd edn (J. Wiley & Sons, 1987).

**21.382** C.R. Ward, *Coal Geology and Coal Technology* (Blackwell, 1984).

**21.386** P. Kearey & M. Brooks, *An Introduction to geophysical exploration* (Blackwell, 1984).

## GERMAN

### German I

All students and especially those intending to advance in German are strongly recommended to acquire Pasley (ed.), *Germany, a Companion to German Studies* (Methuen).

**22.100** K van Eunen et al., *Deutsch Aktiv Neu IC: Lehrbuch, Arbeitsbuch, Glossar Deutsch-Englisch* (Langenscheidt); Nexus et al., *Harrap's German Grammar* (Harrap); Terrell et al., *Collins German-English/English-German Dictionary* (Collins).

**22.101** A reader supplied by the Department.

**22.102** Dube, *The Expressionists* (Thames & Hudson); Kafka, *Metamorphosis* (Penguin); Fontane, *Effi Briest* (Penguin); J. & W. Grimm, *Selected Tales* (Penguin); T. Mann, *Death in Venice and other Stories* (Bantam Classic); Grass, *Cat and Mouse* (Picador).

**22.103** Nexus et al., *Harrap's German Grammar* (Harrap); Collins-Klett *German-English Dictionary*, Vol. I (Collins).

**22.105** Terrell et al, *Kontakte* (Random House); **German II**

**22.200** Edelhoff/Funk et al, *Deutsch Aktiv 3: Materialien für die Mittelstufe, Teil 1* (Langenscheidt); Terrell et al, *Collins German-English/English-German Dictionary* (Collins); R. & U. Hoberg, *Der kleine Duden - Deutsche Grammatik* (Duden).

**22.202** T. Mann, *Buddenbrooks* (Fischer Taschenbuch); Rilke, *Neue Gedichte* (Insel Taschenbuch); Brecht, *Mutter Courage* (Heinemann); Dürrenmatt, *Der Besuch der alten Dame* (Methuen); Herd/Obermayer (eds.), *A Glossary of German Literary Terms* (Ottago); Böll, *Die verlorene Ehre der Katharina Blum* (dtv).

**22.203** Clyne, *Language and Society in the German-Speaking Countries* (C.U.P., paperback); Chambers & Wilkie, *A Short History of the German Language*

(Methuen); further materials to be supplied by the Department.

### German III

**22.300** R. & U. Hoberg, *Der kleine Duden - Deutsche Grammatik* (Duden); Hesse, *Demian* (Suhrkamp Taschenbuch); Zweig, *Schachnovelle* (Fischer Taschenbuch); Düssenmatt, *Das Richter und Sein Henker* (rororo); Böll, *Der Vermächtnis* (Kiepenhener); selected texts to be supplied by the Department.

**22.301** Grimm, *Kinder-und Hausmärchen* Vol. I (Reclam); Paul/Bonath (eds.), *Hartmann von Aue, Der arme Heinrich* 15th edn (Niemeyer); Asher, *A Short Descriptive Grammar of Middle High German* (AUP/OUP); Heine, *Selected Verse* (Penguin); selected texts to be supplied by the Department.

**22.302** Goethe, *Novelle/Das Märchen* (Reclam); Kleist, *Die Marquise von O...* *Das Erdbeben in Chili* (Reclam); Hoffmann, *Der Sandmann/Das öde Haus* (Reclam); Büchner, *Lenz, Studienausgabe* (Reclam); Grillparzer, *Der arme Spielmann* (Reclam); Stifter, *Brigitta* (Reclam); Keller, *Romeo und Julia auf dem Dorfe* (Reclam); Goethe, *Faust, Der Tragödie erster Teil* (Reclam); Boyle, *Goethe: Faust Part I* (C.U.P.).

**22.303** Andersch, *Die Rote* (Diogenes Taschenbuch); Plenzdorf, *Dis neuen Leiden des jungen W.* (Suhrkamp Taschenbuch); Erich Hackl, *Auroras Anlaß* (Diogenes); Walser *Brandung* (Suhrkamp Taschenbuch); Köpf, *Innerfern* (Fischer Taschenbuch); Wolf, *Störfall* (Luchterhand Taschenbuch); further texts to be supplied by the Department.

**22.350** Dudenredaktion, *Deutsches Universalwörterbuch* (Duden); further texts to be supplied by the Department.

### MA and Honours

**22.400** Dudenredaktion, *Deutsches Universalwörterbuch* (Duden); Hammer, *German Grammar and Usage* (Arnold); Terrell et al., *Collins German-English/English-German Dictionary* (Collins).

**22.402** Wolfram von Eschenbach, *Parzival* Studienausgabe (de Gruyter); Asher, *A Short Descriptive Grammar of Middle High German* (AUP/OUP).

**22.404** Goethe, *Die Wahlverwandschaften* (Reclam); Goethe, *Iphigenie auf Tauris* (Reclam); Goethe, *Hermann und Dorothea* (Reclam); Schiller, *Maria Stuart* (Reclam); Jean Paul, *Leben des vergnügten Schulmeisterlein Maria Wutz* (Reclam).

**22.413** T. Mann, *Die Erzählungen* Vols 1 & 2 (Fischer Taschenbuch); Mann, *Der Fauberg* (Fischer Taschenbuch); Mann, *Joseph und Seine Brüder* Vol 2 (Fischer Taschenbuch).

**22.421** Horvath, *Geschichten aus dem Wienerwald* (Suhrkamp Taschenbuch); Handke, *Die linkshändige Frau* (Suhrkamp); Roth, *Das falsche Gewicht* (KiWi); Roth, *Radetzkymarsch* (dtv); Roth, *Hiob* (KiWi); Trotta, *Die bleierne Zeit* (Fischer Taschenbuch); Sanders-Brahms, *Deutschland, bleiche Mutter* (rororo); Kratz, *Lebenslinien* (Knaur Taschenbuch); Böll, *Ansichten eines Clowns* (dtv); H. Mann, *Professor Unrat* (rororo); Mann, *Der Untertan* (dtv).

**22.422** Dudenredaktion, *Deutsches Universalwörterbuch von A - Z* (Duden); further materials to be supplied by the Department.

**GREEK****Greek 1**

**10.100, 10.101** *Reading Greek*, 2 Vols. and *The Intellectual Revolution* (JACT Publications), and W.F. Richardson, *An Introduction to Greek Accidence* (University of Auckland), all available from the Department. Strongly recommended is: *Index to Cambridge Reading Greek Course*, (ed.) C.E. Gruzellier & R.H. Allison (Auckland University, Department of Classics).

**Greek II**

**10.200, 10.201, 10.202** Euripides, *Bacchae* (ed.) E.R. Dodds (Oxford University Press); Aristophanes, *Clouds* (ed.) K.J. Dover (Oxford University Press); Herodotus, *Histories* Book VI (ed.) E.S. Shuckburgh (Bristol Classical Press).

**10.300, 10.301, 10.302** As for Greek II.

**Greek for MA and Honours**

**10.404** Intending students should consult the Department.

**HISTORY**

The Department will issue leaflets entitled *Books Recommended for Student Purchase* relating to these papers and to others not listed below.

**History I**

**24.101** A. Nove, *An Economic History of the U.S.S.R.* (Penguin); L. Kochan, *Russia in Revolution* (Paladin, 1970); or J.N. Westwood, *Endurance and Endeavour: Russian History 1812-1986* 3rd edn (Oxford, 1987).

**24.105** J.T. Patterson, *America in the Twentieth Century* 3rd edn (Harcourt Brace Jovanovich, 1989).

**24.107** B. Brookes, C. Macdonald & M. Tennant (eds.), *Women in History: Essays on European Women in New Zealand* (Allen & Unwin, 1986); G. Riley, *Inventing the American Woman: A Perspective on Women's History, 1607-1877* (Harlan Davidson, 1987).

**24.140** T. Munch *Seventeenth Century Europe 1598-1700* (Macmillan, 1990); J. Lotherington, *Years of Renewal, European History, 1470-1600* (Edward Arnold, 1988).

**History II**

**24.201** P.N. Sawyer, *From Roman Britain to Norman England* (Methuen, paperback, 1978); M. Clanchy, *England and its Rulers, 1066-1272* (Fontana, 1983).

**24.214** A.R. Myers, *Parliaments and Estates in Europe to 1789* (London, 1975).

**24.215** K. Wrightson, *English Society 1580-1680* (Hutchinson, paperback, 1982); or J.A. Sharpe, *Early Modern England, A Social History 1550-1760* (Arnold, paperback, 1987).

**24.216** R.D. Anderson, *France 1870-1914: Politics and Society* (Routledge, 1977).

**History III**

**24.336** P. Burke, *Popular Culture in Early Modern Europe* (Gower, paperback, 1988) or B. Reay (ed.), *Popular Culture in Seventeenth-Century England* (Routledge, paperback, 1988).

**MA and Honours**

**24.404** G.R. Elton, *The Tudor Constitution* (C.U.P., 1982); M.A.R. Graves, *The Tudor Parliaments*

(Longman, paperback, 1985).

**24.410** J. Tosh, *The Pursuit of History* (Longman, paperback, 1984).

**24.429** E.P. Thompson, *The Making of the English Working Class* (Penguin, 1968).

**HUMAN BIOLOGY****Human Biology I**

**60.100, 60.101, 60.102** D.H. Cormack, *Ham's, Histology* 9th edn (J.B. Lippincott & Co.); Ville, Solomon, Martin, Martin, Berg, Davis, *Biology* 2nd edn (Saunders College Publishing); *Introduction to Molecular Biology, Genetics and Immunology* (Course Manual, Department of Molecular Biology).

**60.103, 60.104, 60.105** Nave & Nave, *Physics for the Health Sciences* 3rd edn (Saunders); T.W. Gordon

Solomons, *Organic Chemistry* 4th edn (Wiley); L. Stryer, *Biochemistry* 3rd edn (Freeman, 1988).

**60.108** *Psychology Today* 5th or 6th edn (C.R.M. books); *Hauora: Maori Standards of Health* (MRC Special Report Service, 78); *Treaty of Waitangi and Social Policy* (Royal Commission on Social Policy).

**Human Biology II**

**60.205** D.H. Cormack, *Ham's Histology* 9th edn (J.B. Lippincott & Co., hardback or softcover version, 1979); optional additional text: Wheeler Burnitt & Daniels, *Functional Histology* (Churchill Livingstone); Moore, *Before We Are Born* (W.B. Saunders); *Notes on Anatomy* (Department of Anatomy). Also one of the following texts, either Moore, *Clinically Oriented Anatomy* 2nd edn (Williams & Wilkins) or Woodbourne, *Essentials of Human Anatomy* 7th edn (O.U.P.) or Grant's *Method of Anatomy* 10th edn (ed.) J.V. Basmajian, (Williams & Wilkins); or Gardner, Gray & O'Rahilly, *Anatomy* 4th edn (W.B. Saunders). An anatomical atlas such as Grant, *Atlas of Anatomy* 10th edn (Williams & Wilkins) or Jamieson, *Illustrations in Anatomy: Section III Abdomen, Section IV Pelvis and Section V Thorax* (E. & S. Livingstone) is desirable.

**60.206** L. Stryer, *Biochemistry* 3rd edn (Freeman, 1988).

**60.207** A.C. Guyton, *Textbook of Medical Physiology* 7th edn (W.B. Saunders, 1986).

**60.208** R. Bolton, *People Skills* (Prentice-Hall, 1979); K.S. Berger, *The Developing Person Through The Life Span* (Worth, 1983).

**Human Biology III**

**60.300** *Course Manual in Immunobiology* (Department of Molecular Medicine); Joklik, Willett & Amos, *Zinsser Microbiology* 19th edn (Appleton-Century-Crofts, 1988) optional.

**60.301** Robbins, Angell & Kumar, *Basic Pathology* 4th edn (Saunders, 1987) or Robbins & Cotran, *Pathologic Basis of Disease* 4th edn (Saunders, 1989) or Anderson, Muir's *Textbook of Pathology* 14th edn (Arnold, 1990) or Rubin & Farber, *Pathology* 1st edn (Lippincott, 1988); *Course Manual in Pathology* (Department of Pathology).

**60.302, 60.303** Noback & Demarest, *The Human Nervous System, Basic Principles of Neurology* 3rd edn (McGraw-Hill); Carman, *Notes on the Anatomy of the Head and Neck* (Department of Anatomy, 1984). Also one of the following texts: Moore, *Clinically*

*Oriented Anatomy* 2nd edn (Williams & Wilkins) or Woodbourne or Grant's Method or Gardner, Gray & O'Rahilly as listed for Human Biology II.

**60.304** D.H. Cormack, *Ham's Histology* 9th edn (J.B. Lippincott & Co., hardback or softcover version, 1979); optional additional text: Wheeler, Burhill & Daniels, *Functional Histology* (Churchill Livingstone); Moore, *Before We Are Born* (W.B. Saunders); A.L.R. Findlay *Reproduction and the Fetus* (Arnold, London, 1984).

**60.305, 60.306** A.C. Guyton, *Textbook of Medical Physiology* 7th edn (Saunders).

**60.307** B.G. Katzung (ed.), *Basic and Clinical Pharmacology* 4th edn. Required reading will be placed on reserve at the Philson Library.

**60.308** Required reading will be placed on reserve at the Philson Library.

## INDONESIAN

### Indonesian I

**80.100, 80.101** Ian J. White, *BAHASA TETANG-GAKU, Coursebook and Workbook, Stage One* (Longman Cheshire Pty Ltd, 1988).

**80.103, 80.104, 80.105** Materials will be supplied by the Department.

### Indonesian II

**80.200, 80.201, 80.202, 80.203, 80.205** Materials will be supplied by the Department.

### Indonesian III

**80.300, 80.305, 80.306** Materials will be supplied by the Department.

**80.301** *Sejarah Melayu*, (Oxford University Press, Singapore and Kuala Lumpur, 1967); Dewan Bahasa dan Pustaka, *Hikayat Hang Tuah*, (Kuala Lumpur, 1964).

**80.302** To be selected in consultation with the students.

### Indonesian for MA and Honours

**80.400-409** Materials will be supplied by the Department.

## ITALIAN

### Italian I

**35.106, 35.107** *Collins pocket Italian/English English/Italian Dictionary* or *Dizionario Italiano/Inglese, Inglese/Italian* (Garzanti); (students who intend to continue with Italian should purchase the prescribed dictionary for 35.200); J. Germano & C. Schmitt, *Italian Grammar* (McGraw-Hill).

**35.110** S. Aleramo, *A Woman* (University of California Press, 1980); L. Pirandello, *Six Characters in Search of an Author* (Eyre Methuen, 1979); D. Maraini, *Woman at War* (Lighthouse Books, 1984); D. Fo & F. Rame, *Female Parts: One Woman Plays* (Methuen, 1981); E. Vittorini, *Conversation in Sicily*.

### Italian II

**35.200** C. McCormick, *Chi Cerca trova*, (Longman Cheshire); *Collins Sansoni Italian/English English/Italian Dictionary*.

**35.204** I. Calvino, *Fiabe Italiane* (Selections); N. Ginzburg, *Le voci della sera*.

**35.209** Machiavelli, *Il Principe* (M.U.P.); Castiglione, *Il Cortegiano* (Mursia).

**35.210** Machiavelli, *The Prince* (trans.) G. Ball, (Penguin); Castiglione, *The Book of the Courtier* (trans.) C. Singleton (Anchor).

**35.231** D. Fo, *Morte accidentale di un anarchico* (Einaudi); U. Betti, *Two Plays: Frana allo scala nord and L'aiuola bruciata* (Manchester U.P.) and departmental material.

### Italian III

**35.300** C. McCormick, *Chi Cerca Trova* (Longman Cheshire); *Collins Sansoni Italian/English English/Italian Dictionary*.

**35.302** Dante, *Inferno* (La Nuova Italia).

**35.322** Departmental material.

**35.332** Boccaccio, *Decameron* (Laterza); L. Pirandello, *Three Plays* (Manchester U.P.); S. Aleramo, *Una donna* (Feltrinelli) and *Il passaggio* (Serra e Riva); Italo Calvino, *Le città invisibili*.

## JAPANESE

### Japanese I

**81.100, 81.101** T. Akima, K. Henshall & T. Takagaki, *An Intensive Approach to Japanese* (Auckland University, 1991).

**81.102** D. Keene, *Anthology of Japanese Literature* (Penguin); D. Keene, *Modern Japanese Literature* (Tuttle, Tokyo); Bownas & Thwaite, *Penguin Book of Japanese Verse*.

**81.103** T.W. de Bary (ed.), *Sources of Japanese Tradition* (Columbia University).

**81.110** T. Akima, K. Henshall & T. Takagaki, *An Intensive Approach to Japanese* (Auckland University, 1991).

### Japanese II

**81.200, 81.202** Materials supplied by the Department.

**81.201** Tokai University, *Intermediate Japanese I* (Bonjin-sha).

### Japanese III

**81.300, 81.303** Materials supplied by the Department.

**81.301** Tokai University, *Intermediate Japanese I* (Bonjin-sha).

**81.302** Selections from classical Japanese literature (to be prescribed during lectures). D. Keene (ed.), *Anthology of Japanese Literature* (Penguin Classics).

### Japanese for MA and Honours

**81.401** H. Webb, *Research in Japanese Sources: A Guide* (Columbia University Press); *Nihon Bungaku Kenkyu Hikkei* (ed.) Nihon Bungaku Kyokai (Iwanami Shoten).

**81.402-409, 81.411-413** Specific texts will be prescribed during lectures.

**81.410** To be advised at enrolment.

## KOREAN

### Korean I

**449.100, 449.101** C. Park & K. Pak, *Korean I. An Intensive Course* (Yonsei University Press). Further materials supplied by the department.

**449.102** Ki-Baik Lee, *A New History of Korea* (Ilchogak).

### Korean II

**449.200, 449.201** C. Park & K. Pak, *Korean I. An Intensive Course* (Yonsei University Press).

**449.202** Materials will be supplied by the Department.

**Korean III**

**449.300, 449.301, K. Pak, Korean II, An Intensive Course**, (Yonsei University Press).

**449.302** Materials supplied by the Department.

**449.303** Materials supplied by the Department.

**LATIN****Latin I**

**09.100, 09.101** Cicero, *De amicitia* (ed.) H.E. Gould & J.L. Whiteley (Bristol Classical Press); a text in Latin poetry will also be prescribed.

**09.102, 09.103** C.T. Lewis, *Elementary Latin Dictionary* (Oxford University Press). Other texts to be supplied by the Department.

**Latin II**

**09.200, 09.201, 09.202** A.N. Sherwin-White, *Fifty letters of Pliny* (Oxford University Press); Virgil, *Georgics I and II* (ed.) R.F. Thomas, Vol. I (Cambridge University Press paperback); Horace, *Odes* (students should consult the department about recommended editions); B.L. Gildersleeve & G. Lodge, *Latin Grammar* (Macmillan) is also recommended for students intending to advance in Latin.

**Latin III**

**09.300, 09.301, 09.302** As for Latin II.

**Latin for MA and Honours**

Intending students should consult the Department.

**LAW**

Details of prescribed texts are available from the Faculty Office of the School of Law.

**LINGUISTICS****Linguistics I**

**83.102** V. Fromkin & R. Rodman, *An Introduction to Language* 4th edn (Holt, Rinehart & Winston, 1988).

**Linguistics II**

**83.202** W. Labov, *Sociolinguistic Patterns* (University of Pennsylvania, 1972).

**83.203** R. Lass, *Phonology* (C.U.P., 1984).

**Linguistics III**

**83.303** R. Clark, *Aspects of Proto-Polynesian Syntax* (Linguistic Society of N.Z., 1976).

**83.311** A. Woods et al., *Statistics in Language Studies* (C.U.P., 1986).

**MANAGEMENT SCIENCE AND INFORMATION SYSTEMS**

**74.100** D. Kroenke, *Management Information Systems* (Mitchell, 1990).

**74.200** Chase & Aquilano, *Production & Operations Management: A Life Cycle Approach* (Irwin);

**74.220** J. Senn, *Systems Analysis & Design* 2nd edn (Magraw-Hill).

**74.221** R.T. Grauer, *Structured Cobol Programming* 1st edn (Prentice-Hall).

**74.222** McFadden & Hoffer, *Database Management* 2nd edn (Benjamin-Cummings).

**74.300** Vollman, Berry & Whybark, *Manufacturing, Planning & Control Systems* 2nd edn (Dow-Jones Irwin).

**74.323** R.K. Wysocki & J. Young, *Information Systems: Management Principles in Action* (John Wiley & Sons).

**74.324** J. Fitzgerald, *Business Data Communications* 3rd edn (John Wiley & Sons).

**MANAGEMENT STUDIES AND LABOUR RELATIONS**

**72.101** G. Morgan, *Images of Organization* (Sage Publications, 1986); R. McLeman et al., *People and Enterprises* (Holt Rinehart & Winston, 1987).

**72.207** J. Deeks & P. Boxall, *Labour Relations in New Zealand* (Longman Paul, 1989).

**72.303** R. Bean, *Comparative Industrial Relations* (Croom Helm, 1985).

**72.313** W.C. Frederick, K. Davis & J.E. Post, *Business and Society: Corporate Strategy, Public Policy, Ethics* 6th edn (McGraw-Hill, 1988).

**72.314** F.X. Sligo, *Effective Communication in Business* (Software Technology (NZ) Ltd., 1988).

**72.317** G. Powell, *Women & Men in Management* (Sage, 1988); S. Dex, *The Sexual Division of Work* (Wheatseaf, Harvester, 1985).

**72.325** R.L. Daft, *Organisation Theory & Design* 3rd edn (West).

**72.326** J.A.F. Stoner & R.E. Freeman, *Management* 4th edn (Prentice-Hall, 1989); Le Boone & D.D. Bowen, *The Great Writing in Management and Organizational Behaviour* 2nd edn (Random House, 1987).

**72.421** D.S. Pugh & D.J. Hickson, *Writers on Organizations* 4th edn (Penguin Business); Charles Perrow, *Complex Organizations: A Critical Essay* 3rd edn (Random).

**MAORI STUDIES****Maori Studies I**

**04.100** B. Biggs, *Let's Learn Maori* (Reed, 1974); P.M. Ryan, *The Revised Dictionary of Modern Maori* (Heinemann, 1983).

**04.101** R.J.I. Walker, *Ka Whawhai Tonu Matou: Struggle without end* (Penguin, 1990).

**04.104** P.M. Ryan, *The Revised Dictionary of Modern Maori* (Heinemann, 1983); B. Biggs, *English-Maori Dictionary* (Reed, 1979); B. Biggs (transl. by C. Barlow), *Me Ako Taatou I Te Reo Maaori* (Billy King Holdings, 1990).

**Maori Studies II**

**04.203** J. Davidson, *Prehistory of New Zealand* (Longman Paul, 1984).

**04.204** B. Biggs, *Let's Learn Maori* (Reed, 1974); P.M. Ryan, *The Revised Dictionary of Modern Maori* (Heinemann, 1983). B. Biggs, S.M. Mead, P.W. Hohepa, *Selected Readings in Maori*; B. Biggs, C. Lane, H. Cullen, *Readings from Maori Literature*; H.W. Williams, *A Dictionary of the Maori Language* (Government Printer, 1975).

**04.205** Hoani Waititi, *Te Rangatahi II* (copies available from the Anthropology Department); H.W. Williams, *A Dictionary of the Maori Language* (Government Printer, 1975); B. Biggs, *Complete English-Maori Dictionary* (A.U.P., 1980); B. Biggs (transl. by C. Barlow), *Me Ako Taatou I Te Reo Maaori* (Billy King Holdings, 1990).



**Maori Studies III**

**04.302** R.J.I. Walker, *Ka Whawhai Tonu Matou: Struggle Without End* (Penguin, 1990).

**04.305** R. Clark, *Aspects of Proto-Polynesian Syntax* (Linguistic Society of N.Z., 1976)

**04.306** B. Biggs, *Let's Learn Maori* (Reed, 1974); H.W. Williams, *A Dictionary of the Maori Language* (Government Printer, 1975); B. Biggs, S.M. Mead, P.W. Hohepa, *Selected Readings in Maori*.

**04.307** H.W. Williams, *A Dictionary of the Maori Language* (Government Printer, 1975); *Te Paipera Tapu*; B. Biggs, *Complete English-Maori Dictionary* (Auckland University Press, 1980).

**04.308** A. Ward, *A Show of Justice* (Oxford, 1973); R. Firth, *Economics of the New Zealand Maori* (Govt Printer 1959/1973); J.A. Williams, *Politics of the New Zealand Maori* (Oxford, 1969/1977).

**04.311** *Tane-nui-a-Rangi* (University of Auckland, 1988).

**04.312** S. Hockey, *SNOBOL - Programming for the Humanities* (Oxford University Press, 1985); R. Griwold et al, *The SNOBOL Programming Language* 2nd edn (Prentice Hall, 1971).

**04.313** A. Woods et al, *Statistics in Language Studies* (Cambridge University Press, 1986).

**04.314** Sir Apirana Ngata, *Nga Moteatea* Vols. I, II, III (Reed); Makereti, *The Old-time Maori* (New Women's Classics, 1986); B. Heuer, *Maori Women* (Reed, 1972).

**Maori Studies for MA**

**04.403** Elsdon Best, *Maori Religion and Mythology* 2 vols. (Govt Printer, 1976/1982); R. De Vaux, *Ancient Israel* (McGraw-Hill, 1984).

**MARKETING AND INTERNATIONAL BUSINESS**

**71.200** E.J. McCarthy & W.D. Perreault, *Basic Marketing* 10th edn (Irwin).

**71.201** J.D. Daniels & L.H. Radebaugh, *International Business: Environments and Operations* 5th edn (Addison-Wesley, 1989); Bannock et al., *Dictionary of Economics* 4th edn.

**71.300** David A. Aaker, *Strategic Market Management* 2nd edn (John Wiley & Sons).

**71.304** P.R. Catera, *International Marketing* 7th edn (Irwin).

**MATHEMATICS****Maths I**

**26.101, 26.102** Printed material relevant to this course may be purchased from the Department at enrolment.

**26.120** Printed material relevant to this course may be purchased from the Department at enrolment.

**26.121** Printed material relevant to this course may be purchased from the Department at enrolment.

**26.122** A. Mizrahi, M. Sullivan, *Finite Mathematics with Applications* 3rd or 4th edn (Wiley International Edition).

**26.140, 26.141** J. Stewart, *Calculus* (Brooks/Cole Publishing Company, Monterey, 1987).

**26.142** H. Anton, *Calculus with Analytic Geometry* 4th edn (John Wiley & Sons Inc).

**26.180** Printed material relevant to this course may be

purchased from the Department at enrolment. Calculators: A battery powered calculator is required which has at least the following facilities: square roots, exponential and logarithmic functions, mean and standard deviation.

**26.181, 26.182** Printed material relevant to this course may be purchased from the Department at enrolment. Calculators: A battery powered calculator is required which has at least the following facilities: square roots, exponential and logarithmic functions, mean and standard deviation.

**290.100** D.T. O'Brien, D.E. Lewis, J.F. Guest, *Mathematics for Business and Economics*, International edn (Harcourt-Brace-Jovanovich, 1989).

**290.101** Printed material relevant to this course may be purchased from the Department at enrolment. Calculators: A battery powered calculator is required which has at least the following facilities: square roots, exponential and logarithmic functions, mean and standard deviation.

**Maths II**

**26.220** Printed material relevant to this course may be purchased from the Department at enrolment.

**26.221** Printed material relevant to this course may be purchased from the Department at enrolment.

**26.222** Printed material relevant to this course may be purchased from the Department at enrolment.

**26.240** J. Stewart, *Calculus* (Brooks/Cole Publishing Company, Monterey, 1987).

**26.241** Donald B. Small & John M. Hosack, *Calculus an Integrated Approach* International edn (McGraw Hill 1990).

**26.260** D.G. Zill, *A first course in differential equations with applications* 4th edn (PWS-Kent, 1989).

**26.270** W. Chester, *Mechanics* (George Allen & Unwin - student edition).

**26.290** Printed material relevant to this course may be purchased from the Department at enrolment.

**26.293** H. Emmons, A.D. Flowers, C.M. Khot, K. Mathur, *STORM* (Personalized version 2.0); *Quantitative Modelling for Decision Support* (Holden-Day, 1989).

**Maths III**

**26.325** R.P. Grimaldi, *Discrete and Combinatorial Mathematics* (Addison Wesley, 1985).

**26.330** K.G. Binmore, *Mathematical Analysis* 2nd edn (C.U.P., paperback, 1987).

**26.331** Printed material relevant to this course may be purchased from the Department at enrolment.

**26.335** E.T. Copson, *Metric Spaces*, (Cambridge University Press 1979).

**26.340** K. Rogers, *Advanced Calculus*, (Charles E. Merrill Publishing Co.)

**26.345** R.V. Churchill, J.W. Brown, R.F. Verhey, *Complex Variables and Applications* 3rd edn (McGraw Hill Book Co).

**26.376** A.C. Carlson & A. Jeffrey, *Waves* 2nd edn (Longman).

**26.391** F.S. Hillier & G.J. Lieberman, *Introduction to Operations Research* 5th edn (McGraw-Hill, 1990).

**26.395** F.S. Hillier & G.J. Lieberman, *Introduction to Operations Research* 5th edn (McGraw-Hill, 1990).

## MEDICINE

Reading lists for MBChB are published in *The Handbook of the Faculty of Medicine & Human Biology*.

## MUSIC for BA and BMUS

### Music I

28.101 A. Trubitt, & R. Hines, *Ear Training and Sight Singing Book I* (Schirmer).

28.103 D.J. Groult, *A History of Western Music* 4th edn (Norton); C. Palisca (ed.), *Norton Anthology of Western Music* 2 vols. 2nd edn (Norton).

28.104 P. Griffiths, *A Concise History of Modern Music* (Thames & Hudson); A. Copland, *What to Listen for in Music* (Mentor); C. Belz, *The Story of Rock* (O.U.P.).

28.105 O. Karolyi, *Introducing Music* (Penguin).

28.113 J. Backus, *The Acoustical Foundations of Music* 2nd edn (Norton).

### Music II

28.201 C. Palisca (ed.), *Norton Anthology of Western Music* 2 vols. 2nd edn (Norton).

28.202 J.S. Bach, 2, 3 *Part Inventions*, any edn.

28.204 F. Blume, *Renaissance and Baroque Music* (Norton paperback); H.M. Brown, *Music in the Renaissance* (Prentice Hall, 1976); D.J. Groult, *A History of Western Music* 3rd edn (Norton); C. Palisca, *Baroque Music* 2nd edn (Prentice-Hall).

28.208 D.J. Groult, *A History of Western Music* 4th edn (Norton); E. Salzman, *Twentieth Century Music: An Introduction* 2nd edn (Prentice-Hall).

28.215 S. Adler, *Workbook for the Study of Orchestration* (Norton).

28.216 D. Keane, *Tape Music Composition* (Oxford).

28.218 B. McElheran, *Conducting Technique* (O.U.P.).

28.223 J. Kerman, *Musicology* (Fontana/Collins).

### Music III

28.301 As for 28.201.

28.304 As for 28.204

28.308 As for 28.208.

### Music for Masters & Honours

28.406 W. Apel, *The Notation of Polyphonic Music 900-1600* (Medieval Academy of America).

28.409 J. Rahn, *Basic Set Theory* (Longman); H. Schenker, *Five Graphic Analyses* (Dover).

22.415 A. Blatter, *Orchestration/Instrumentation* (Longmans) or S. Adler, *The Study of Orchestration* (Norton).

## OPTOMETRY

### Optometry II

44.200 R.S. Longhurst, *Geometrical and Physical Optics* (Longmans).

44.201 W.H.A. Fincham & M.H. Freeman, *Optics* 9th edn (Butterworth, 1980).

44.205 H. Davson, *Physiology of the Eye* 4th edn (Churchill Livingstone, 1980).

44.210 R.A. Moses, *Adler's Physiology of the Eye* 8th edn (Mosby, 1986); A.G. Bennett & R.B. Rabbetts, *Clinical Visual Optics* (Butterworths, 1984); Wyszecski & Styles, *Colour Science* 2nd edn (Wiley).

### Optometry III

44.305 J. Vale & B. Cox, *Drugs and the Eye* 2nd edn (Butterworths, 1984).

44.306 A.G. Bennett & R.B. Rabbetts, *Clinical Visual Optics* (Butterworths, 1984).

44.310 R.A. Moses, *Adler's Physiology of the Eye* 8th edn (Mosby, 1986).

44.312 A.J. Phillip & J. Stone, *Contact Lenses: Textbook for Practitioner and Student* 3rd edn (Butterworth, 1989) or R.B. Mandell, *Contact Lens Practice* 3rd edn (Thomas).

44.313 Stevens, *Building Physics: Lighting* (Pergamon, 1987).

44.314 Robbins & Angell, *Basic Pathology* 3rd edn (Saunders).

44.315 J.J. Kanski, *Clinical Ophthalmology* 2nd edn (Butterworths 1989).

44.316 M. Jalie, *The Principles of Ophthalmic Lenses* (Association of Dispensing Opticians); Standards Association of New Zealand NZS1563:1963 *Spectacle Lenses*.

44.330 T.P. Grosvenor, *Primary Care Optometry* 2nd edn (1989, Professional Press); J.R. Griffin, *Binocular Anomalies; Procedures for Therapy* 2nd edn (Professional Press); A.G. Bennett & R.B. Rabbetts, *Clinical Visual Optics* (Butterworths, 1984).

### Optometry IV

44.426 T.P. Grosvenor, *Primary Care Optometry* 2nd edn (1989 Professional Press); G. Egan, *The Skilled Helper* 3rd edn (Brookes/Cole).

44.427 J.J. Kanski, *Clinical Ophthalmology* 2nd edn (Butterworths 1989).

44.431 A.J. Phillip & J. Stone, *Contact Lenses: Textbook for Practitioner and Student* 3rd edn (Butterworths, 1989).

44.432 J.E. Lovie-Kitchin & K.J. Bowman, *Age Related Macular Degeneration* (Butterworths); R.T. Jose, *Understanding Low Vision* (American Foundation for the Blind, New York); G. Mehr & A. Freid, *Low Vision* (Professional Press).

44.433 J.R. Griffin, *Binocular Anomalies; Procedures for Therapy* 2nd edn (Professional Press).

## PACIFIC STUDIES

### Samoan Language for Beginners

478.100 *Galumalemana Afeleti Hunkin, Gagana Samoa: A Samoan Language Course Book* 1st edn (Polynesian Press, paperback, 1988) with tape of Samoan language oral skills. R.W. Allardice, *A simplified Dictionary of Modern Samoan* 1st edn (Polynesian Press, paperback, 1985).

## PHARMACOLOGY

96.301, 96.302 H. Kalant, W.H.E. Roschlau & E.M. Sellers (eds.), *Principles of Medical Pharmacology* 5th edn (O.U.P., N.Y.).

## PHILOSOPHY

### Philosophy I

29.100 Plato, *The Last Days of Socrates* (Penguin); Plato, *Protagoras and Meno* (Penguin); R. Descartes, *Discourse on Method and Meditations* (Penguin).

29.102 J. Rachels, *The Elements of Moral Philosophy* (Random House paperback).

**Philosophy II**

29.203 A. Chalmers, *What is this Thing called Science?* (Queensland U.P.); T.S. Kuhn, *The Copernican Revolution* (Harvard U.P.); A. O'Hear, *An Introduction to the Philosophy of Science* (Oxford University Press).

29.204 J. Barnes (ed.), *Early Greek Philosophy* (Penguin); Plato, *Phaedrus* (Library of Liberal Arts); Plato, *The Republic* (Penguin).

29.205 Andrew Sharp, *Justice and the Maori* (O.U.P., Auckland, 1990).

29.207 J.L. Mackie, *The Miracle of Theism: Arguments for and Against the Existence of God* (Clarendon Press).

29.208 G. Berkeley et al., *The Empiricists* (Doubleday, paperback).

29.209 A. Schopenhauer, *The World as Will and Representation*, Vol I (Dover); Hegel, *The Phenomenology of Spirit*, trans. A. Miller (Clarendon Press).

29.212 Margaret P. Battin, John Fisher, Ronald Moore, Anita Silvers, *Puzzles about Art: An Aesthetics Casebook* (St. Martin's Press, New York).

29.213 J. Radcliff Richards, *The Sceptical Feminist* (Penguin), H. Eisenstein, *Contemporary Feminist Thought* (Albert Unwin).

**Philosophy III**

29.307 Paul M. Churchland, *Matter and Consciousness* (M.I.T. Press).

29.304 Aristotle, *Nicomachean Ethics* trans. Thomson (Penguin paperback); Nietzsche, *The Portable Nietzsche* ed. W. Kaufmann (Penguin); Heidegger, *Being and Time* trans. J. Macquarrie (Blackwell).

**PHYSICS****Physics I**

31.100 D.C. Giancoli, *The Ideas of Physics* 3rd edn (Harcourt, Brace, Jovanovich)

31.101 Lloyd Motz, Jefferson Weaver, *The Story of Physics* (Plenum 1989).

31.102 Test to be advised at enrolment.

31.104 Test to be advised at enrolment.

31.140 Halliday & Resnick, *Fundamentals of Physics - Extended version* 3rd edn (Wiley, 1988); *Laboratory Manual of First Year Practical Physics* published by and available from the Department of Physics.

31.141 as for 31.140

31.150 as for 31.140

31.151 as for 31.140

**Physics II, II, MSc and Honours**

Lists of prescribed texts are available from Department Office by 1 December of the year prior to enrolment.

**PHYSIOLOGY****Physiology (Science) II**

67.201 Guyton, *Physiology of the Human Body* 6th edn (Saunders).

**Physiology (Science) III**

67.301, 67.302 Berne & Levy, *Physiology* 2nd edn (Mosby, 1988).

67.303 Guyton, *Basic Neuroscience - Anatomy & Physiology* (Saunders, 1987).

**PLANNING**

36.251, 36.351, 36.451 A. Faludi (ed.), *A Reader in Planning Theory* (Pergamon); R.B. Riddell, *Regional Development Policy* (Gower, 1985); R.B. Riddell, *Ecodevelopment* (Gower, 1981); D.S.I.R. *Land Alone Endures* (D.S.I.R.).

36.252, 36.352, 36.452 B. Williams, *District Planning in N.Z.* (N.Z.P.I.); Sheppard & McVeagh, *Town Planning* (Brooker).

36.353, 36.456 F.S. Chapin & E.J. Kaiser, *Urban Land Use Planning* (University of Illinois); K. Lynch, *A Theory of Good City Form* (M.I.T. Press); I. McHarg, *Design With Nature* (Doubleday).

**POLITICAL STUDIES****Political Studies I**

30.100 K. Janda, J.M. Berry and J. Goldman, *The Challenge of Democracy: Government in America* 2nd edn (Houghton Mifflin, 1989); A.J. Cigler and B.A. Loomis (eds.), *American Politics: Classic and Contemporary Readings* (Houghton Mifflin, 1989).

30.106 R.C. Macridis (ed.), *Foreign Policy in World Politics* 7th edn (Prentice-Hall, paperback, 1989).

30.107 H. Gold (ed.), *New Zealand Politics in Perspective* 2nd edn (Longman Paul, 1989).

30.109 Some of: Plato, *The Republic* (Penguin, 1970); Aristotle, *Politics* (Penguin, rev. edn, 1981), Augustine, *City of God* (Penguin, 1984); Thomas Aquinas, *On Politics and Ethics* (Norton, paperback, 1988); Machiavelli, *The Prince and Selected Discourses* (Bantam, 1984); Thomas Hobbes, *Leviathan* (Penguin, 1985); John Locke, *Two Treatises of Government* (C.U.P.); I. Hampsher-Monk, *The Political Philosophy of Edmund Burke* (Longman, 1987); Michael Foot and I. Kramnick (eds.), *The Thomas Paine Reader* (Penguin, 1987); Mary Wollstonecraft, *A Vindication of the Rights of Women* (Penguin 1985); Jeremy Bentham, *A Fragment on Government* (C.U.P., 1988); R.C. Tucker, *The Marx-Engels Reader* (Norton, paperback, 1978).

**Political Studies II**

30.201 P. Dunleavy, A. Gamble & G. Peele (eds.), *Developments in British Politics* 3rd edn (Macmillan, 1990).

30.204 S. Hoadley, *The New Zealand Foreign Affairs Handbook* (O.U.P., paperback, 1989).

30.209 R.N. Berki, *Socialism* (J.M. Dent, 1975).

30.211 J. Greenwood & D. Wilson, *Public Administration in Britain Today* (Unwin Hyman, paperback, 1989); H. Gold (ed.), *New Zealand Politics in Perspective* 2nd edn (Longman Paul, 1989).

30.212 R. Smith & L. Watson (eds.), *Politics in Australia* (Allen & Unwin, 1989).

30.214 J. Lively, *Democracy* (Blackwell, 1975); R. Mulgan, *Democracy and Power in New Zealand* 2nd edn (O.U.P., paperback, 1989).

30.215 S. White, *USSR: A Superpower in Transition* (Pulse, paperback, 1988); S. White, *Gorbachev in Power* (C.U.P., paperback, 1990).

30.217 R. Crocombe, *The South Pacific* 5th edn (University of South Pacific, paperback, 1989).

**Political Studies III**

- 30.301** C.V. Crabb, *Invitation to Struggle: Congress, the President and Foreign Policy* 3rd edn (Congressional Quarterly Press, paperback, 1989).
- 30.302** J. Barber & J. Barrat, *South Africa's Foreign Policy* (C.U.P. paperback); H.W. Van der Merwe, *Pursuing Justice & Peace in South Africa* (Routledge, paperback); H. Wolpe, *Race, Class and the Apartheid State* (Unesco/Currey, paperback); James Mutambirwa, *South Africa: The Sanctions Mission. Report of the Eminent Church Persons Group* (Zed/WCC, paperback); S. Johnson (ed.), *South Africa: No Turning Back* (Macmillan, paperback).
- 30.305** Preliminary Reading (no prescribed texts): W.E. Connolly, *The Terms of Political Discourse* (Martin Robertson, 1983); N.P. Barry, *An Introduction to Modern Political Theory* (Macmillan, 1981).
- 30.306** C. Marsh, *Exploring Data* (Polity Press, paperback, 1988); or B.H. Erikson and T.A. Nosanchuk, *Understanding Data* (Open University Press, paperback, 1977).
- 30.307** W. Nicoll & T.C. Salmon, *Understanding the European Communities* (Philip Allan, paperback, 1990); Karen Dowisha, *Eastern Europe, Gorbachev and Reform* (C.U.P., paperback, 1990).
- 30.309** P. Barwise & A. Ehrenberg, *Television and its Audience* (Sage, paperback, 1988); J. Fiske & J. Hartley, *Reading Television* (Methuen, paperback, 1978); R. Berman, *How Television Sees its Audience* (Sage, paperback, 1987).
- 30.310** B.G. Peters, *The Politics of Bureaucracy* 3rd edn (Longman, paperback, 1989); J.Q. Wilson, *Bureaucracy: What Government Agencies Do and Why They Do It* (Basic, 1989).
- 30.312** J. Porritt, *Seeing Green* (Basil Blackwell, 1984); L.R. Brown et al., *State of the World 1990* (W.W. Norton, 1989); Michael Tobias (ed.), *Deep Ecology* (Avant Books, 1988).
- Political Studies for MA and Honours**
- 30.402** W. Hampton, *Local Government and Urban Politics* (Longman, paperback, 1987); G. Stoker, *The Politics of Local Government* (Macmillan, paperback, 1988); E.B. Sharp, *Urban Politics and Administration* (Longman, paperback, 1990); or D.L. Martin, *Running City Hall: Municipal Administration in America* 2nd edn (University of Alabama, paperback, 1990).
- 30.403** G. Murdock, *The Political Economy of Information* (Polity); W. Martin, *The Information Society* (Aslib).
- 30.407** T. Hobbes, *Leviathan* (Penguin); A. Sharp, *Political Ideas of the English Civil Wars* (Longman, 1983, 1988); John Locke, *Two Treatises of Government* (ed.) Peter Laslett (C.U.P.).
- 30.410** J. Rawls, *A Theory of Justice* (O.U.P., 1972); R. Nozick, *Anarchy, State and Utopia* (Blackwell, 1974).
- 30.412** L.J. Barker & T.W. Barker (eds.), *Civil Liberties and the Constitution: Cases and Commentaries* 5th edn (Prentice-Hall, 1986).
- 30.420** M. Harrop & W. Miller, *Elections and Voters* (Macmillan, paperback, 1987).

**PROPERTY ADMINISTRATION**

- 37.200** R.L. Jefferies, *Urban Valuation in New Zealand*, Vol. 1, 2nd edn (N.Z. Institute of Valuers, Wellington, 1990); R.L. Jefferies (ed.), *Urban Valuation in New Zealand* Vol 2, (N.Z. Institute of Valuers, 1990).
- 37.209, 37.304** R.A. Bell, *Investment Property: Income Analysis and Appraisal*, (N.Z. Institute of Valuers, 1988).
- 37.210** W.K.S. Christiansen, *Fundamentals of Property Management* (Butterworths, 1989).
- 37.305** W.K.S. Christiansen, *Mahoney's Urban Land Economics* (N.Z. Institute of Valuers, 1991).
- Reading lists will be published in the Department prior to the commencement of lectures.

**PSYCHOLOGY****Psychology I (for Arts and Science)**

- 32.108** N.R. Carlson, *Psychology: The Science of Behavior* 3rd edn (Allyn & Bacon, Inc.); M. Carlson & N.R. Carlson, *Study Guide for Psychology: The Science of Behavior* 3rd edn (Allyn & Bacon, Inc.).
- 32.109** N.R. Carlson, *Psychology: The Science of Behavior* 3rd edn (Allyn & Bacon, Inc.); M. Carlson & N.R. Carlson, *Study Guide for Psychology: The Science of Behavior* 3rd edn (Allyn & Bacon, Inc.); *Psychology I Laboratory Manual* available from the University Bookshop.
- 32.118** N.R. Carlson, *Psychology: The Science of Behavior* 3rd edn (Allyn & Bacon, Inc.); M. Carlson & N.R. Carlson, *Study Guide for Psychology: The Science of Behavior* 3rd edn (Allyn & Bacon, Inc.).
- 32.119** N.R. Carlson, *Psychology: The Science of Behavior* 3rd edn (Allyn & Bacon, Inc., 1990); M. Carlson & N.R. Carlson, *Study Guide for Psychology: The Science of Behavior* 3rd edn (Allyn & Bacon, Inc. 1990); *Psychology I Laboratory Manual* available from the University Bookshop.
- Psychology II (for Arts and Science)**
- 32.210** I. Beale, M. Davison, B. Alsop & D. Elliffe, *Reinforcement and Stimulus Control* (Psychology Department U.A.) available at enrolment.
- 32.220** R.J. Irwin, *Laboratory Work in Sensory Psychology* (available from the University Bookshop); J. Best, *Cognitive Psychology* 2nd edn (West Pub lishing, 1989).
- 32.230** D.P. Kimble, *Biological Psychology* (Holt, Rinehart & Winston, 1988).
- 32.240** G.M. Vaughan (ed.), *Topics in Social Psychology* 4th edn (1991) available at end of Term I for courses in second half year. Refer to Psychology Handbook for information concerning Developmental Psychology.
- Psychology III (for Arts and Science)**
- 32.301** A. Anastasi, *Psychological Testing* 6th edn (MacMillan, 1987).
- 32.303** J. R. Anderson, *Cognitive Psychology and its Implications* 3rd edn (W.H. Freeman, 1990).
- 32.304** C.F. Monte, *Beneath the Mask* 3rd edn (Holt, Rinehart & Winston, 1987); H. Yensen, K. Hague & T. McCreanor, *Honouring the Treaty* (Penguin, 1989).
- 32.306** D.C. Howell, *Statistical Methods for Psychology* 2nd edn (Duxbury/P.W.S.).

**32.307** B.C.J. Moore, *Introduction to the Psychology of Hearing* 2nd edn (Academic Press, 1982).

**32.311** *Selected Readings in Social Psychology* available at enrolment.

**32.315** G.C. Davison & J.M. Neale, *Abnormal Psychology: An Experimental Clinical Approach* 5th edn (Wiley, 1990).

**32.316** C. Peterson, *Looking Forward Through the Lifespan* 2nd edn (Prentice-Hall, 1989).

**Psychology for MA, MSc and Honours**

**32.403** A. Kazdin, *Single Case Research Design* (O.U.P., 1982); Cooper, Heron & Howard, *Applied behaviour analysis* (Merrill, 1987).

**32.408** A.R. Luria, *The Working Brain* (Harmondsworth, Penguin, 1973); M.D. Lezak, *Neuropsychological Assessment* 2nd edn (O.U.P., 1982).

**32.409** G.C. Davison & J.M. Neale, *Abnormal Psychology: An Experimental Clinical Approach* 5th edn (Wiley, 1990).

**32.419** D.C. Howell, *Statistical Methods for Psychology* 2nd edn (Duxbury/P.W.S.).

**32.421** Bandler & Grinder, *Structure of Magic*, Vol. I, (S.B.B., 1975); R.J. Corsini, D. Wedding (eds.), *Current Psychotherapies* 4th edn (Peacock, 1989); D. Epston & M. White, *Literate means to therapeutic ends* (Dulwich, 1989); J.I. Kepner, *Body Process* (G.I.C., 1987); J. Singh & P. Rosier, *Nobody's Perfect* (N.W.P., 1989).

**32.422** Torgeson & Wong, *Psychological and educational perspectives on learning disabilities* (Academic Press, 1986).

## RUSSIAN

Only prescribed books for Russian I, II and III and certain MA papers are indicated below. A handbook, reading lists and additional teaching materials are available from the Department.

### Russian I

**43.100, 43.101** V. Kostomarov (ed.), R. Baker (adapt.), *Russkii iazyk dlia vsekh*, 3 vols. (Russkii iazyk); A.S. Romanov, *Romanov's Russian-English English-Russian Dictionary* (Pocket Books) or A. Romanov, E. Wedel, *Langenscheidt's Russian-English English-Russian Dictionary* (Langenscheidt).

**43.112** N.V. Riasanovsky, *A History of Russia* (Oxford, any edition).

**43.113** F.M. Dostoevsky, *Crime and Punishment* (Penguin); I.S. Turgenev, *Fathers and Sons* (Penguin); L.N. Tolstoy, *Anna Karenina* (Penguin); I.S. Turgenev, *A Month in the Country* (Penguin); A.P. Chekhov, *Lady with a Lapdog and Other Stories* (Penguin); A.P. Chekhov, *Plays* (Penguin); E.I. Zamyatin, *We* (Penguin).

### Russian II

**43.210** P.A. Davis, D.V. Oprendeck, *Making Progress in Russian* (Xerox Publishers).

**43.211** C.E. Gribble, *Russian Root List* (Slavica); D. Obolensky (ed.), *The Heritage of Russian Verse* (Indiana).

**43.212** A.S. Pushkin, *Povesti Belkina* (Blackwell); N.V. Gogol, *Shinel* (Blackwell); I.S. Turgenev, *Zhivye moshchi* (available from Department); A.P. Chekhov, *Dama s sobachkoi* (Blackwell).

## Russian III

**43.310** C. Townsend, *Continuing with Russian* (Slavica).

**43.311** Material available from the Department.

**43.313** D. Obolensky (ed.), *The Heritage of Russian Verse* (Indiana), with additional poetry texts by Blok, Tsvetayeva, Esenin, Akhmatova & Brodsky, and with prose texts by Bunin, Babel, Zoshchenko, Aksekov & Shukshin available from the Department.

**Russian for MA and Honours**

**43.410** A.D. Nakhimovsky & R.L. Leed, *Advanced Russian* (Slavica); C. Townsend, *Continuing with Russian* (Slavica).

**43.411** W.S. Hamilton, *Introduction to Russian Phonology and Word Structure* (Slavica); M.I. Levin, *Russian Declension and Conjugation, a Structural Description with Exercises* (Slavica).

## SAMOAN

see Pacific Studies page 502

## SCANDINAVIAN STUDIES

### Scandinavian Studies I

**46.100, 46.102** U. Göransson-Lindholm, *Nyborjar-svenska-Textbok* (Kursverksamheten); Beite et al., *Basic Swedish Grammar* (Almqvist & Wiksell); *Modern engelsk-svensk/svensk-engelsk ordbok* (Prisma).

**46.101** Turner & Nordquist, *The Other European Community* (Weidenfeld & Nicolson); Ibsen, *Hedda Gabler and Other Plays* (Penguin); Strindberg, *Three Plays* (Penguin); Bergman, *Wild Strawberries* (Lorrimer, paperback); Bergman, *Fanny & Alexander* (Pantheon Books, paperback).

### Scandinavian Studies II

**46.200** Beite et al., *Basic Swedish Grammar* (Almqvist & Wiksell); Nyborg, *Svenska som mål Bok I* (Folkuniversitetet); *Modern engelsk-svensk/svensk-engelsk ordbok* (Prisma).

**46.201** Bergman, *A Short History of the Swedish Language* (Swedish Institute). Further texts available from the Department.

**46.202** Ibsen, *A Doll's House and Other Plays* (Penguin); *Hedda Gabler and Other Plays* (Penguin); Bergman, *The Seventh Seal* (Lorrimer). Further texts by Holberg and Strindberg available from the Department.

### Scandinavian Studies III

**46.300** Beite et al., *Basic Swedish Grammar* (Almqvist & Wiksell); Lindholm, *Svensk grammatik*; Bruzeaus et al., *Mera svenska Textbok* (Kursverksamheten); *Modern engelsk-svensk/svensk-engelsk ordbok* (Prisma).

**46.301** Bergman, *A Short History of the Swedish Language* (Swedish Institute). Further texts available from the Department.

**46.302** Ibsen, *A Doll's House and Other Plays* (Penguin); *Hedda Gabler and Other Plays* (Penguin); Bergman, *The Seventh Seal* (Lorrimer). Further texts by Holberg, Strindberg, Lagerkvist and Hjalmar Bergman available from the Department.

**SOCIOLOGY****Sociology I**

82.100 A. Giddings, *Sociology* (Polity Press, 1989).

82.101 D. Bedggood, *Rich & Poor in New Zealand* (available from Department); P. Spoonley, D. Pearson & I. Shirley (eds.), *New Zealand: Sociological Perspectives* (Dunmore Press, 1982).

82.102 E.J. Hobsbawm, *Age of Revolutions* (Abacus, 1977).

82.104 Philip Jones, *Theory and Method in Sociology* (Bell & Hyman, 1985); Paul Spoonley et al., (eds.), *New Zealand Society* 2nd edn (Dunmore, 1989).

**Sociology II**

82.200 A. Giddings, *Capitalism and Modern Social Theory* (Cambridge, 1973); A. Giddings, *Social Theory and Modern Sociology* (Polity Press, 1987).

82.201 to 82.212

Reading lists available from the Department.

**Sociology III and MA**

Reading lists are available from the Department.

**SPANISH****Spanish I**

45.102 Kattan-Ibarra & Connell, *Working with Spanish* Level I Coursebook: *First Year Departmental Workbook and Tape Manual* (supplied).

45.103 E. Galeano, *Open Veins of Latin America* (Monthly Review Press).

45.104, 45.105 Da Silva, *Beginning Spanish* 6th edn (Harper & Row); *First Year Departmental Workbook and Tape Manual* (supplied).

45.107, 45.108 J. Howley, *Spanish Twice a Week* (Uniprint).

**Spanish II**

45.200 Bretz/Dvorak/Kirschner, *Pasajes. Lengua* 2nd edn (Random House).

45.202 Sender, *Réquiem por un campesino español* (Destino); García Morales, *El sur* (Anagrama); Buero Vallejo, *El concierto de San Ovidio* (Castalia); García Lorca, *La casa de Bernarda Alba* (Catedra).

45.203 Unamuno, *Niebla* (Colección Austral: Espasa-

Calpe); Borges, *Ficciones* (Alianza/Emecé); Jeremy Hawthorne, *Unlocking the Text* (Edward Arnold); other material will be provided.

45.204 Modernist poetry (supplied); Sábato, *El túnel* (Harrap); Solórzano (ed.), *Teatro hispanoamericano II* (F.C.E.); Gallegos, *Doña Bárbara*; Cuentos, *Poetry* (supplied).

45.208 L. Miquel López/Neus Sans Baulenas, *¿A que no sabes...?* (Lourdes); *Third Year Departmental Coursebook*.

**Spanish III**

45.300 L. Miquel López/Neus Sans Baulenas, *¿A que no sabes...?* (Lourdes); *Third Year Departmental Coursebook* (supplied).

45.305 Neruda, *Residencia en la tierra* (Catedra); Rulfo, *Pedro páramo* (F.C.E.); Solórzano, *Teatro hispanoamericano I* (F.C.E.); Carpentier, *Cuentos completos* (Bruguera); Borges, *Ficciones* (supplied).

45.307 Allende, *La casa de los espíritus* (Plaza y Janés); Valenzuela, *Cola de lagartija* (Bruguera); Peri Rossi, *La nave de los locos* (Seix Barral); Rodoreda, *La plaza del diamante* (Edhasa); Chacel, *Memorias de Leticia Valle* (Lumen); Tusquets, *El amor es un juego solitario*.

45.309, 45.425 Peter Newmark, *A Textbook of Translation* (Prentice Hall).

45.424 Soriano, *Mujer y hombre* (Plaza y Janés).

**ZOOLOGY****Zoology I**

38.102 Villee, Walker & Barnes, *General Zoology* 6th edn (Sanders).

**Advanced Zoology**

38.207 D. Rowntree, *Statistics Without Tears* (Penguin, 1981).

38.250 M. Begon, J.L. Harper, & L.R. Townsend, *Ecology: individuals, populations and communities* (Blackwell, 1986).

38.317 P.G. Fenimore, *Plant Pests and their Control* (Butterworths, 1982); R.R. Scott (ed.), *New Zealand Pest and Beneficial Insects* (Lincoln University College, 1984).

## SUMMARY OF SUBJECT CODES

|    |   |     |  |
|----|---|-----|--|
| 01 | Accounting & Finance                                    | 60  | Human Biology                              |
| 02 | Commercial Law  | 63  | Behavioural Science                        |
| 03 | Anthropology  | 64  | Environmental Science                      |
| 04 | Maori Studies   | 65  | Anatomy                                    |
| 06 | Botany  | 66  | Biochemistry                               |
| 07 | Computer Science  | 67  | Physiology                                 |
| 08 | Chemistry   | 68  | Pathology                                  |
| 09 | Latin   | 69  | General Practice                           |
| 10 | Greek   | 70  | Business Administration                    |
| 11 | Biblical History & Literature                           | 71  | Marketing & International Business         |
| 12 | Ancient History   | 72  | Management Studies & Labour Relations      |
| 13 | Economics   | 73  | Classical Studies                          |
| 14 | Education; Guidance & Counselling                       | 74  | Management Science & Information Systems   |
| 16 | Educational Psychology                                  | 75  | Drama                                      |
| 18 | English   | 76  | Systems Analysis                           |
| 19 | Art History   | 79  | Pacific Studies                            |
| 20 | Geography   | 80  | Indonesian                                 |
| 21 | Geology   | 81  | Japanese                                   |
| 22 | German  | 82  | Sociology                                  |
| 23 | Hebrew  | 83  | Linguistics                                |
| 24 | History   | 84  | Environmental Studies                      |
| 25 | Law   | 85  | Film & Television Studies                  |
| 26 | Mathematics   | 86  | Energy Technology                          |
| 27 | Fine Arts   | 89  | Medical Science                            |
| 28 | Music   | 90  | Medicine (MBChB)                           |
| 29 | Philosophy  | 91  | Community Health                           |
| 30 | Political Studies;<br>Local Government & Administration | 92  | Medicine                                   |
| 31 | Physics   | 93  | Paediatrics                                |
| 32 | Psychology  | 94  | Psychiatry                                 |
| 34 | French  | 95  | Surgery                                    |
| 35 | Italian   | 96  | Pharmacology                               |
| 36 | Planning  | 97  | Asian Studies                              |
| 37 | Property Administration                                 | 98  | Molecular Medicine                         |
| 38 | Zoology   | 115 | Architecture                               |
| 39 | Biology   | 191 | Pulp & Paper Technology                    |
| 40 | Cellular & Molecular Biology                            | 290 | Quantitative Studies                       |
| 43 | Russian   | 375 | Introductory & Ancillary Topics (Theology) |
| 44 | Optometry   | 376 | Hebrew Bible                               |
| 45 | Spanish   | 377 | New Testament                              |
| 46 | Scandinavian Studies                                    | 378 | Systematic Theology                        |
| 47 | Obstetrics & Gynaecology                                | 379 | Church History                             |
| 48 | Chinese   | 380 | Moral & Practical Theology                 |
| 50 | Engineering, General                                    | 421 | Dutch                                      |
| 51 | Chemical & Materials Engineering                        | 449 | Korean                                     |
| 52 | Civil Engineering                                       | 478 | Samoan                                     |
| 53 | Electrical & Electronic Engineering                     | 620 | Tutoring in Science                        |
| 54 | Engineering Science                                     | 621 | Science, General                           |
| 55 | Mechanical Engineering                                  | 625 | Mathematics Education                      |
| 56 | Mining Engineering                                      | 634 | Science Education                          |
| 59 | Languages & Literature                                  | 751 | Audiology                                  |
|    |   | 788 | Health Sciences                            |

# **DIRECTORY** *(The Postal Address for all Departments is The University of Auckland, Private Bag, Auckland)*

|   |                               |                             |
|---|-------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| Academic Registrar                        | Registry Building             | 24 Princes Street           |
| Accommodation Officer                     | Old Arts Building             | 22 Princes Street           |
| Accounts                                  | Old Arts Building             | 22 Princes Street           |
| Accounting & Finance                      | Commerce Building             | 18 Symonds Street           |
| Acoustics Research & Testing Service      | Architecture Building         | 22 Symonds Street           |
| Administration                            | Registry Building             | 24 Princes Street           |
| Alumni Office                             | Room 2, Lower Lecture Theatre | 3A Symonds Street           |
| Anatomy                                   | School of Medicine            | 85 Park Road                |
| Ancient History - refer Classics          |                               | 5 Alten Road                |
| Animal Research Laboratories              | School of Medicine            | 85 Park Road                |
| Anthropology                              | Human Sciences Building       | 10 Symonds Street           |
| Architecture Property & Planning          | Architecture Building         | 22/26 Symonds Street        |
| Art History                               | Art History Building          | 11 Symonds Street           |
| Asian History - refer History             | History Building              | 5 Wynyard Street            |
| Asian Geography - refer Geography         | Human Sciences Building       | 10 Symonds Street           |
| Asian Languages & Literature              | Asian Languages Building      | 9 Symonds Street            |
| Auckland UniServices Ltd                  | Engineering Building          | 20 Symonds Street           |
| Auckland University Press                 |                               | 9 Grafton Road              |
| Audio Visual Centre                       | Science Building              | 23 Symonds Street           |
| Bank of New Zealand                       | Old Arts East Wing            | 5 Symonds Street            |
| Behavioural Science                       | School of Medicine            | 85 Park Road                |
| Biochemistry                              | Science Building              | 23 Symonds Street           |
| Bookshop                                  | Student Union Building        | 34 Princes and High Streets |
| Botany                                    | Thomas Building               | 3 Symonds Street            |
| Botany - deliveries                       | Thomas Building               | 3A Symonds Street           |
| Cafeteria                                 | Student Union                 | 34 Princes Street           |
| Careers Adviser                           | Upper Lecture Theatre (rear)  | 3A Symonds Street           |
| Cashier                                   | Old Arts Building             | 22 Princes Street           |
| Catholic Chaplains                        | Newman Hall                   | 16 Waterloo Quadrant        |
| Cellular & Molecular Biology              | Thomas Building               | 3 Symonds Street            |
| Cellular & Molecular Biology - deliveries | Thomas Building               | 3A Symonds Street           |
| Centre for Information Science            |                               | 3A Symonds Street           |
| Centre for Pacific Studies                |                               | 22 Wynyard Street           |
| Chapel and Chaplains                      | Maclaurin Chapel              | 18 Princes Street           |
| Chemistry                                 | Science Building              | 23 Symonds Street           |
| Chemistry - deliveries                    | Science Building              | 40 Wellesley Street E.      |
| Childcare Centre                          |                               | 22 Park Avenue              |
| Chinese                                   | Asian Languages Building      | 9 Symonds Street            |
| Classics & Ancient History                |                               | 5 Alten Road                |
| Commerce Faculty Office                   | Commerce I Building           | 18 Symonds Street           |
| Commercial Law                            | Old Choral Hall               | 7 Symonds Street            |
| Community Health                          | School of Medicine            | 85 Park Road                |
| Computer Centre                           | Computer Centre Building      | 24 Symonds Street           |
| Computer Science                          | Science Building              | 38 Princes Street           |
| Conference Centre                         | Architecture Building         | 22 Symonds Street           |
| Continuing Education                      | Old Arts Building             | 22 Princes Street           |
| Counsellors                               | Old Arts East Wing            | 5 Symonds Street            |
| Creche                                    |                               | 30-32 Wynyard Street        |
| Custodians Office                         | Science Building              | 23 Symonds Street           |
| Drama Theatre                             | Arts I Building               | 14A Symonds Street          |
| Economics                                 | Old Choral Hall               | 7 Symonds Street            |
| Education                                 | Fisher Building               | 18 Waterloo Quadrant        |
| Engineering                               | Engineering Building          | 20 Symonds Street           |
| Engineering - deliveries                  | Engineering Building          | 3 Grafton Road              |
| English                                   | Arts I Building               | 14A Symonds Street          |
| Enquiries                                 | Registry Building             | 24 Princes Street           |
| Environmental Science                     | Human Sciences Building       | 10 Symonds Street           |
| Equal Employment Opportunities Office     | Lower Lecture Theatre         | 3A Symonds Street           |
| Federation of University Women            | Old Government House, Annexe  | 3A Symonds Street           |
| Finance Registrar                         | Old Arts Building             | 22 Princes Street           |
| Fine Arts - pedestrian access             | Fine Arts Building            | 28 Symonds Street           |
| Fine Arts - deliveries                    | Fine Arts Building            | 20 Whitaker Place           |
| French - refer Romance Languages          | Arts I Building               | 14A Symonds Street          |
| General Practice                          | School of Medicine            | 85 Park Road                |



|                                      |   |                       |
|--------------------------------------|---|-----------------------|
| Geography                            | Human Sciences Building   | 10 Symonds Street     |
| Geology                              | Science Building  | 23 Symonds Street     |
| Geothermal Institute                 | Architecture Building   | 26 Symonds Street     |
| Germanic Languages & Literature      | German Building   | 10 Grafton Road       |
| Graduate School of Business          | Commerce 1 Building   | 18 Symonds Street     |
| Grafton Hall                         |   | 40 Seafield View Road |
| Greek - refer Classics               |   | 5 Alten Road          |
| Grounds Dept                         |   | 3 Symonds Street      |
| Gymnasium                            | Recreation Centre   | 17 Symonds Street     |
| Higher Education Research Office     | Fisher Building   | 18 Waterloo Quadrant  |
| History                              | History Building  | 5 Wynyard Street      |
| Human Sciences Building              |   | 10 Symonds Street     |
| Indonesian                           | Asian Languages Building  | 9 Symonds Street      |
| Information & Public Affairs Officer | Old Arts Building   | 22 Princes Street     |
| International House                  |   | 27 Whitaker Place     |
| Italian - refer Romance Languages    | Arts I Building   | 14A Symonds Street    |
| Japanese                             | Asian Languages Building  | 9 Symonds Street      |
| Kenneth Maidment Theatre             | Maidment Arts Centre  | 8 Alfred Street       |
| Korean                               | Asian Languages Building  | 9 Symonds Street      |
| Language Laboratories B and D        | Library Building  | 5 Alfred Street       |
| Language Laboratories 1 and 2        |   | 8 Grafton Road        |
| Language Laboratories 3, 4 and 5     | Arts I Building   | 14A Symonds Street    |
| Latin - refer Classics               |   | 5 Alten Road          |
| Law                                  | Library Building  | 5 Alfred Street       |
| Lecture Theatres & Rooms:            |   |                       |
| Architecture (ALR)                   | Architecture Building   | 22 Symonds Street     |
| Botany (BotLT)                       | Old Biology Building  | 3A Symonds Street     |
| Cell Biology (CMBioLT)               | Thomas Building   | 3A Symonds Street     |
| Chemistry (Chem)                     | Science Building  | 23 Symonds Street     |
| Conference Centre                    |   | 22 Symonds Street     |
| Engineering (Eng)                    | Engineering Building  | 20 Symonds Street     |
| Human Sciences (HSB)                 | Human Sciences Building   | 10 Symonds Street     |
| Library (Lib)                        | Library Building  | 5 Alfred Street       |
| Mathematics (MLT)                    | Science Building  | 38 Princes Street     |
| Medical                              | School of Medicine  | 85 Park Road          |
| Old Arts (OA)                        | Old Arts Building   | 22 Princes Street     |
| Old Choral Hall (OCH)                | Old Choral Hall   | 7 Symonds Street      |
| Physics (PLT)                        | Science Building  | 38 Princes Street     |
| Upper and Lower<br>(ULT & LLT)       |   | 3A Symonds Street     |
| Zoology (ZooLT)                      | Old Biology Building  | 5 Symonds Street      |
| Leigh Laboratory                     | Goat Island Bay Road, R.D., Leigh,<br>(Phone Warkworth 422-6111 or 793-934) | North Auckland        |
| Liaison Office                       | Lower Lecture Theatre (rear)  | 3A Symonds Street     |
| Library:                             |   |                       |
| Main                                 | Library Building  | 3-5 Alfred Street     |
| Main - deliveries                    | Library Building  | 26 Princes Street     |
| Architecture                         | Architecture Building   | 22 Symonds Street     |
| Asian Languages & Literatures        | Asian Languages Building  | 9 Symonds Street      |
| Audio Visual                         | Arts I Building   | 14A Symonds Street    |
| Biological Sciences                  | Thomas Building   | 3A Symonds Street     |
| Bio. Sciences - deliveries           | Thomas Building   | 3 Symonds Street      |
| Continuing Education                 | Old Arts Building   | 22 Princes Street     |
| Engineering                          | Engineering Building  | 20 Symonds Street     |
| Engineering - deliveries             | Engineering Building  | 3 Grafton Road        |
| Fine Arts                            | Fine Arts Building  | 20 Whitaker Place     |
| Geography                            | Human Sciences Building   | 10 Symonds Street     |
| Geology                              | Geology Building  | 3A Symonds Street     |
| Law                                  | Library Building  | 5 Alfred Street       |
| Maori Studies (Te Hukatai)           |   | 16 Wynyard Street     |
| Medicine (Philson Library)           | Medical School  | 85 Park Road          |
| Music                                | Music Building  | 31 Princes Street     |
| Science                              | Science Building  | 38 Princes Street     |
| Linguistics - refer Anthropology     | Human Sciences Building   | 10 Symonds Street     |
| Maidment Arts Centre                 |   | 8 Alfred Street       |

|  |                            |                        |
|--|----------------------------|------------------------|
| Main Stores - Services                   | Arts I Building            | 29 Wynyard Street      |
| Maintenance                              | Human Sciences Building    | 13-19 Wynyard Street   |
| Management Science & Info. Systems       | Commerce I Building        | 18 Symonds Street      |
| Management Studies & Labour Relations    | Commerce I Building        | 18 Symonds Street      |
| Maori Studies                            | Human Sciences Building    | 10 Symonds Street      |
| Marketing & International Business       | Commerce I Building        | 18 Symonds Street      |
| Marae                                    |                            | 16 Wynyard Street      |
| Mathematics                              | Science Building           | 38 Princes Street      |
| Medicine                                 | School of Medicine         | 85 Park Road           |
| Music                                    | School of Music            | 6 Symonds Street       |
| Music-Piano Studies                      |                            | 18 Grafton Road        |
| Newman Hall                              | Catholic Tertiary Centre   | 16 Waterloo Quadrant   |
| Norman Spencer Student Apartments        |                            | 9 St Stephens Avenue   |
| 'Number 14'                              |                            | 14 Whitaker Place      |
| Obstetrics and Gynaecology               | National Women's Hospital  | Claude Road, Epsom     |
| Old Arts Building                        |                            | 22 Princes Street      |
| Old Choral Hall                          |                            | 7 Symonds Street       |
| Old Government House                     |                            | 3A Symonds Street      |
| Optometry                                | Medical School             | 85 Park Road           |
| O'Rorke Hall                             |                            | 16 Mount Street        |
| Paediatrics                              | School of Medicine         | 85 Park Road           |
| Park Road Student Flats                  |                            | 70 Seafield View Road  |
| Pathology                                | School of Medicine         | 85 Park Road           |
| Personnel                                | Registry Building          | 24 Princes Street      |
| Pharmacology                             | School of Medicine         | 85 Park Road           |
| Pharmacy and Post Office Agency          | Old Arts East Wing         | 5 Symonds Street       |
| Philosophy                               |                            | 3 Alfred Street        |
| Photographer - refer Audio Visual Centre | Science Building           | 23 Symonds Street      |
| Physico-Chemistry                        | School of Medicine         | 85 Park Road           |
| Physics                                  | Science Building           | 38 Princes Street      |
| Physics- deliveries                      | Science Building           | 40 Wellesley Street E. |
| Physiology                               | School of Medicine         | 85 Park Road           |
| Planning                                 | Architecture Building      | 22/26 Symonds Street   |
| Political Studies                        | Political Studies Building | 14 Symonds Street      |
| Property                                 | Architecture Building      | 26 Symonds Street      |
| Psychiatry and Behavioural Science       | School of Medicine         | 85 Park Road           |
| Psychology                               | Human Sciences Building    | 10 Symonds Street      |
| Recreation Centre                        |                            | 17 Symonds Street      |
| Registry                                 |                            | 24 Princes Street      |
| Romance Languages                        | Arts I Building            | 14A Symonds Street     |
| Russian                                  | Human Sciences Building    | 10 Symonds Street      |
| Scandinavian Studies                     | German Building            | 10 Grafton Road        |
| Senior Common Room                       | Old Government House       | 3A Symonds Street      |
| Services - Administration                | Human Sciences Building    | 11 Wynyard Street      |
| Sociology                                | Human Sciences Building    | 10 Symonds Street      |
| Spanish - refer Romance Languages        | Arts I Building            | 14 A Symonds Street    |
| Staff Registrar                          | Registry Building          | 24 Princes Street      |
| Staff Development Officer                | Fisher Building            | 18 Waterloo Quadrant   |
| Student Accommodation                    | Old Arts Building          | 22 Princes Street      |
| Student Cafeteria                        |                            | 34 Princes Street      |
| Student Counsellors                      | Old Arts East Wing         | 5 Symonds Street       |
| Student Health                           | Old Arts East Wing         | 5 Symonds Street       |
| Student Learning Unit                    | Old Arts East Wing         | 5 Symonds Street       |
| Student Union                            |                            | 34 Princes Street      |
| Theatre, Student Activities Officer      | Student Union Building     | 34 Princes Street      |
| Thomas Building                          |                            | 3A Symonds Street      |
| Thomas Building- deliveries              |                            | 3 Symonds Street       |
| Undergraduate Reading Room               | Old Government House       | 3A Symonds Street      |
| University Bookshop                      | Student Union Building     | 34 Princes Street      |
| University Club                          |                            | 23/25 Princes Street   |
| University Park                          |                            | 85 Merton Road         |
| University Press                         | Auckland University Press  | 9 Grafton Road         |
| Uniprint                                 |                            | 176 Kapa Road, Orakei  |
| Works Registrar                          | Old Choral Hall            | 7 Symonds Street       |
| Zoology                                  | Thomas Building            | 3A Symonds Street      |
| Zoology - deliveries                     | Thomas Building            | 3 Symonds Street       |

## INDEX

- A**
- Abandonments, 69
  - Abstracts, 84
  - Academic Dress, 85-86
  - Academic Dress hire, 430
  - Academic Requirements and Unsatisfactory Progress, 65
  - Accommodation Service, 430
  - Accounting & Finance, Department of, 277
  - Acoustics (for Music), 245-246
  - Additional Lectures, 70
  - Addition of papers and subjects, 63-64
  - Admission, 59-60
    - ad eundem statum, 59, 75
    - provisional entrance, 60
    - special, 60, 75
  - Aegrotat pass, 83-84
  - Alcohol, 91
  - Alterations to courses, 63-64
  - Alumni Association, 435
  - Ancient History, 152-155
  - Anthropology, 139-143
  - Anthropology, Department of, 139-145
  - Architecture Property and Planning, Faculty of, 320-346
  - Architecture, Department of, 320-334
  - Arms of the University, 15
  - Art History, Department of, 145, 379-380
  - Arts, Faculty of, 97-188
  - Asian Geography, 160, 161
  - Asian History, 164, 165, 166
  - Asian Languages and Literatures, 145-149
  - Asian Politics, 171
  - Asian Studies, 145-146
  - Auckland University Club, 435
  - Awards Handbook, 463
- B**
- Biblical History and Literature, 155
  - Biochemistry, Department of, 222
  - Biology (for BHB), 394
  - Biology (for BSc), 223, 244, 252, 253, 254
  - Botany, Department of, 223-224
  - Bursaries, *see* Student Allowances
- C**
- Calendar, 9-14
  - Careers Advisory Service, 430
  - Catering Services, 434-435
  - Cellular and Molecular Biology, Department of, 224-225
  - Centre for Pacific Studies, 168
  - Certificates:
    - Courses of Instruction in a Single Instrument, 318-319
    - Geothermal Energy Technology, 374
    - Principles and Practice of Radiochemistry, 261
  - Certificate of Proficiency, 423-424
  - Certificate - Transitional, 424
  - Chapel, 430
  - Chaplains, 430
  - Chemistry, Department of, 225-229
  - Chinese, 146-147
  - Classical Studies, 152
  - Classics and Ancient History, Department of, 149-155
  - Commerce, Faculty of, 262-286
  - Commercial Law, Department of, 278-279
  - Compassionate Pass, 84
  - Computer Centre, 427-428
  - Computer Science, Department of, 229-231
    - Commerce papers, 267-268
    - Science papers, 196-197
  - Computer System Regulations, 428
  - Conceded Passes, 83
  - Continuing Education, Centre for, 427
  - Copyright, 95
  - Council meetings, 9-14
    - members, 16
  - Counselling Service, 432
  - Course prescriptions for Degrees:
    - Accounting & Finance, 277-278
    - Ancient History, 152-155
    - Anthropology, 139-143
    - Architecture, 329-334
    - Art History, 145, 379-380
    - Asian Geography, 160, 161
    - Asian History, 164, 165, 166
    - Asian Politics, 171,
    - Asian Studies, 145-146
    - Audiology, 399
    - Biblical History and Literature, 155
    - Biochemistry, 222
    - Biology for BHB, 394
    - Biology for BSc, 223, 224, 252, 253, 254
    - Business Administration, 283
    - Botany, 223-224
    - Cellular and Molecular Biology, 224-225
    - Chemistry, 225-229
    - Chinese, 146-147
    - Classical Studies, 152
    - Commercial Law, 278-279
    - Computer Science, 229-231
    - Dutch, 163-164
    - Economics, 279-280
    - Education, 155-158, 217, 231, 411
    - Engineering, 357-372
    - English, 159-160
    - Environmental Science, 231
    - Film & T.V. Studies, 160
    - Fine Arts, 380-381
    - French, 173-174
    - Geography, 160-162, 231-233
    - Geology, 233-237
    - German, 162-163
    - Greek, 151-152
    - Hebrew, 164
    - History, 164-167
    - Human Biology, 394-395
    - Indonesian, 147-148
    - Italian, 175
    - Japanese, 148-149
    - Jurisprudence, 299-301
    - Korean, 149
    - Latin, 150-151
    - Law, 295-298

- Law, (Honours), 295-298, 298-299
- Linguistics, 144-145
- Management Science and Information Systems, 280-281
- Management Studies and Labour Relations, 281-282
- Maori Studies, 143-144
- Marketing and International Business, 282-283
- Mathematics and Statistics, 238-242
- Medical Science, 242
- Medicine, 394-397
- Music, 168, 313-314
- Music (Performance), 314-315
- Music (Performance) with Honours, 315
- Optometry, 243-244
- Pacific Studies, 168
- Pharmacology for BSc, 244-245
- Philosophy, 168-170, 245
- Physics, 170, 245-249
- Physiology for BSc, 249-250
- Planning, 344-346
- Political Studies, 170-171
- Property Administration, 338-339
- Psychology, 171-173, 250-252
- Russian, 177-178
- Samoan, *see* Pacific Studies
- Scandinavian Studies, 163
- Science Education, 217-218
- Social Work, 178
- Sociology, 178-179
- Spanish, 176-177
- Taxation Studies, 283-284
- Theology, 411-414
- Tutoring in Science, 252
- Zoology, 252-255
- Course Prescriptions for Diplomas:
  - Broadcast Communication, 180-181
  - Business, 285-286
  - Clinical Psychology, 256
  - Commerce, 286
  - Computer Science, 257
  - Drama, 181-182
  - English Language Teaching, 184-185
  - Geothermal Energy Technology, 372-373
  - Gynaecology and Obstetrics, 401
  - Local Government and Administration, 186
  - Mathematics Education, 258-259
  - Music, 317
  - Music with Honours, 318
  - Obstetrics, 402
  - Paediatrics, 400
  - Postgraduate Legal Studies, 302
  - Postgraduate Social Research, 188
  - Pulp & Paper Technology, 374
  - Statistics, 260
- Course Prescriptions for Professional Examinations:
  - Accounting, 284
  - Architecture, 327-328
  - Legal Studies, 299
- Course Regulations for Degrees - *see* Degree Regulations
- Course Regulations for Diplomas:
  - Arts, 180
  - Broadcast Communication, 180
  - Business, 284-285
  - Clinical Psychology, 256
  - Commerce, 286
  - Computer Science, 257
  - Criminology (*discontinued*), 301
  - Drama, 181
  - Education, 182
  - Educational Psychology, 183
  - English Language Teaching, 184
  - Geothermal Energy Technology, 360-361
  - Guidance and Counselling, 185
  - Gynaecology and Obstetrics, 401
  - Legal Studies, 301-302
  - Local Government and Administration, 185-186
  - Mathematics Education, 257-258
  - Music, 315-317
  - Music with Honours, 317-318
  - Obstetrics, 402
  - Paediatrics, 400
  - Postgraduate Arts, 187
  - Postgraduate Science, 260-261
  - Postgraduate Social Research, 187
  - Pulp & Paper Technology, 384
  - Science, 259
  - Statistics, 260
- Course Regulations for Professional Examinations:
  - Membership of NZ. Society of Accountants, 284
  - Institute of Architects & AERB Special Exam, 327-328
  - Admission as Barrister and Solicitor, 299
- Creche, 433
- Credits, 67-69
  - Auckland Technical Institute, 68
  - Centre for Continuing Education, 68-69
  - Teachers' College, 67-69
- Cross-credits, 65-67
- D**
  - Dates of Terms, 9-14
  - Deans, 17-18
  - Degree, Completion of, at another University, 69
  - Degrees, Conferring of, 85-86
  - Degree Courses, *see* Course Prescriptions for Degrees
  - Degrees, Honorary, 86
  - Degree Regulations (and Schedules):
    - Bachelor of Architecture, 321-326
    - Arts, 98-130
      - Commerce, 263-272
      - Education, 405-406
      - Engineering, 348-354
      - Fine Arts, 376-377
      - Human Biology, 385
      - Laws, 288-291
      - Laws (Honours), 291-292
      - Medicine and Surgery, 386
      - Music, 304-306
      - Music (Performance), 306-308
      - Music (Performance) (Hons), 309
      - Optometry, 212-215
      - Planning, 340-343
      - Property Administration, 334-337
      - Science, 192-208
      - Science (Honours), 209-212
      - Science Education, 215-217

Theology, 406-410  
 Master of Architecture, 326-327  
 Arts, 131-137  
 Audiology, 388-390  
 Business Administration, 274-276  
 Commerce, 272-274  
 Education, 137-138  
 Engineering, 354-356  
 Fine Arts, 378-379  
 Health Sciences, 390-392  
 Jurisprudence, 294-295  
 Laws, 293-294  
 Literature, 138-139  
 Medical Science, 387-388  
 Music, 310-311  
 Philosophy, 421  
 Planning, 343-344  
 Property Administration, 337-338  
 Public Health, 392-393  
 Science, 218-221  
 Taxation Studies, 276-277  
 Degrees and Other Academic Qualifications  
   Statute, 473  
 Doctor of Engineering, 419  
   Laws, 418  
   Literature, 416  
   Medicine, 393-394  
   Music, 312-313  
   Philosophy, 421-423  
   Science, 417  
 Deletions of papers and subjects, 63-64  
 Diploma courses *see* Course prescriptions for  
   Diplomas  
 Discipline, Regulations, 90-93  
   Library, 95  
   Computer System, 428  
 Doctorates, *see* Degree Regulations  
   Tuition and Research Fees, 88-90  
 Dutch, 163-164

**E**

Economics, Department of, 279-280  
 Education, Department of, 155-158, 217, 231, 411  
 Elam School of Fine Arts, 376, 380-381  
 Eligibility to Enrol, 59-61, 65  
 Eligibility to sit Examinations, 80  
 English, Department of, 159-160  
 Engineering, Faculty of, 347-374  
 Enrolment 1991, 59-61, 71-79  
 Enrolment:  
   eligibility, 59-61, 65  
   extramural, 78-79  
   late, 75  
   limitations, 71-74  
   pre-enrolment, 61, 71-74  
   timetable 1991, 75-77  
 Enrolment & Course, Regulations (General), 61-70  
 Entrance, Provisional, 60  
 Environmental Science, 231  
 Examinations, 80-85  
   aegrotat and compassionate passes, 83-84  
   availability of scripts, 83  
   conceded passes, 83  
   conduct, 80-82  
   grades and marks, 82

marking of scripts, 82-83  
 open and restricted book, 81  
 recount of marks, 83  
 restricted passes, 82  
 theses, 84  
 'Exclusion', *see* Unsatisfactory Progress  
 Exempted papers, courses, subjects, 69  
 Extramural enrolment, 78-79  
   at Massey University, 78-79

## F

Failure in a paper, course, after two attempts, 63  
 Failure to make satisfactory academic progress, 65  
 Fees, 86-90  
   examination, 87  
   general, 86-87  
   late, 64, 88  
   payment of, 64  
   refunds, 64-65  
   Students' Association, 87  
   tuition and research, 88-90  
   welfare, 87  
 Film & Television Studies, 160  
 Fine Arts, Faculty of, 375-381  
   Elam School of, 376, 380-381  
 Fines:  
   disciplinary, 91-92  
   library, 94, 95  
   penalties, 88  
 Foreign Language Reading Examination, 211, 220,  
   221  
   French, 174  
   German, 162  
 French, 173-174  
 Full time study, Definitions, 79-80

## G

General Statutes and Regulations, 59-96  
 Geography, Department of, 160-162, 231-233  
 Geothermal Institute, 372-373, 374  
 German, 162-163  
 Germanic Languages and Literature,  
   Department of, 162-164  
 Geology, Department of, 233-237  
 Graduate School of Business, 283  
 Graduates:  
   Alumni Association, 435  
   N.Z. Association, 436  
   Club, 435  
   Honorary, 18  
 Graduation, 85-86  
 Grafton Hall, 431  
 Greek, 151-152  
 Group B subjects (for BA), 130

## H

Halls of Residence, 431  
   International House, 431  
   Grafton Hall, 431  
   O'Rorke Hall, 431  
   Park Road Student Flats, 431  
 Harassment procedures, 433  
 Health Service, Student, 432-433  
 Hebrew, 164

Higher Degrees, 415-419  
 Doctor of Engineering, 419  
 Doctor of Laws, 418  
 Doctor of Literature, 416  
 Doctor of Science, 417  
 History, Department of, 164-167  
 History, University of Auckland, 5-7  
 Honorary Degrees, award of, 86  
 Honorary Graduates, 18

**I**  
 Indonesian, 147-148  
 Intermediate Courses,  
   Other Universities, 425  
 Intellectual Property, 412  
 Inter-Faculty Studies, 406-407  
 International House, 431  
 Inventions and Patents, 412  
 Italian, 175

**J**  
 Japanese, 148-149  
 Joint Boards of Study, 404-414  
   Education, 387-388, 411  
   Theology, 387, 388-410, 411-414

**K**  
 Korean, 149

**L**  
 Laboratory Timetable, 1991, 458-460  
 Late Enrolment, 63, 75  
 Latin, 150-151  
 Law, Faculty of, 287-302  
 Lecture Timetable, 1991, 436-457  
 Legislation, 471-487  
 Leigh Laboratory, 237-238  
 Library, 93-95  
   hours, 93  
 Limitations on Enrolment, 71-74  
 Limited entry papers and courses, 71-74  
 Linguistics, 144-145  
 Lost Property, 431

**M**  
 Maclaurin Chapel, 430  
 Maidment Arts Centre, 435  
 Management Science and Information Systems,  
   Department of, 280-281  
 Management Studies and Labour Relations,  
   Department of, 281-281  
 Maori Studies, 143-144  
 Map, Campus, 516  
 Marine Research Laboratory,  
   *see* Leigh Laboratory  
 Marketing and International Business,  
   Department of, 282-283  
 Marking of Scripts, 82-83  
 Massey University, tuition at, 78-79  
 Mathematics and Statistics,  
   Department of, 238-242  
 Matriculation, 59  
 McGregor Museum, 255

Medical Science, 242  
 Medicine and Human Biology, Faculty of, 382-403  
   Higher Academic and Refresher Training, 403  
   School of, 383-384  
 Molecular Medicine, Department of, 397-398  
 Music, BA papers, 168  
   course for non-degree students, 318-319  
 Music, Faculty of, 303-319

**N**  
 Newman Hall, 430  
 New Start Programme, 95-96  
 NZ Federation of University Women, 430  
 NZ University Students' Association, 435  
 NZ Universities Graduates' Association (UK), 436  
 Non-matriculated students, 59, 65

**O**  
 Obstetrics & Gynaecology, Higher Training, 403  
 Refresher Training for Family Doctors, 403  
 Officers of the University, 16  
 Operations Research, 406-407  
 Optometry, 243-244  
 Overseas educational qualifications, 60, 75  
 Overseas Students Unit, 75

**P**  
 Pacific Studies, 168  
 Parking, 91, 432  
 Park Road Student Flats, 431  
 Patents, 431  
 Payment of Fees, 64, 65  
 Penalties for late enrolment, 63, 88  
 Personal Interest Course, 59  
 Pharmacology and Clinical Pharmacology,  
   Department of, 244-245  
 Philosophy, Department of, 168-170, 245  
   Master of, 421  
   Doctor of, 421, 423  
 Philosophy of Science, 245  
 Physics, Department of, 170, 245-249  
 Physiology, Department of, 249-250  
 Planning, Department of, 340-346  
 Political Studies, Department of, 170-171  
 Postgraduate Medical Committee, 403  
 Pre-enrolment Application Regulations, 61  
 Pre-enrolment, 71-74  
 Preparatory Preliminary Courses, 95-96  
   German, 162  
   Latin, 150  
 Prerequisites, *see* Degree Regulations  
 Prescribed Texts, 489-506  
 Press correspondence, 432  
 Prizes: 467-470  
   University of Auckland 1989, 467-470  
 Professores Emeriti, 19-20  
 Professional Examinations, *see* Course  
   Prescriptions for professional examinations  
 Property, Department of, 334-339  
 Provisional Entrance, 60  
 Psychology:  
   Clinical Psychology Services, 432  
   Department of, 171-173, 250-252

## Q

Quantitative Studies, 277

## R

Radiochemistry, 261  
 Recreation Centre, 433  
 Research Engineering, 357  
 Research Fees, 88-90  
 Rest Spaces, 460  
 Restricted Passes, 82  
 'Restrictions' on Enrolment, *see* Limitations on Enrolment  
 Recount of marks, 83  
 Romance Languages, Department of 173-177  
 Russian, 177-178

## S

Scandinavian Studies, 163  
 Science, Faculty of, 189-261  
 Scholarships and other Awards, 463-470  
 Scholarships, University of Auckland 1990, 464-467  
 Scholarships, National, 1990, 464  
 Senate:  
   meetings, 9-14  
   members, 17  
 Smoking, 91, 95  
 Society of Accountants, 284  
 Social Research, Postgraduate Diploma in, 188  
 Social Work, Master of Arts in, 178  
 Sociology, 178-179  
 Spanish, 176-177  
 Special Admission, 60  
 Staff:  
   Academic, 20-50  
   General, 52-57  
   Library, 50-51  
 Statutes and Regulations of the University:  
   Academic Dress Regulations, 85-86  
   Admission Regulations, 59-60  
   Award of Honorary Degrees Regulations, 86  
   Computer System Regulations, 428  
   Conferring of Degrees and Academic Dress, 85-86  
   Court of Convocation Statute, 474  
   Council Elections (Regulations), 474-477  
   Court of Convocation Representatives, 474-477  
   Representatives of Governing Bodies of Secondary Schools, 477-479  
   Lecturers' Representatives, 479-481  
   Disciplinary Regulations, 90-93  
   Enrolment and Course (General) Regulations, 61-70  
   Extramural Enrolment Regulations, 78-79  
   Extramural Enrolment Statute, 78  
   Examination Regulations, 80-85

Fees Regulations 86-90  
 Library Regulations, 93-95  
 Limitation of Entry, 71  
 Pre-enrolment Application Regulations, 61  
 Senate Elections, Lecturers' Representatives of Faculties Regulations, 481-484  
 Lecturers' Reps. at Large Regulations, 485-487  
 Student Allowances, 462-463  
 Student Counselling, 432  
 Student Health Service, 432-433  
 Student Learning Unit, 432  
 Students' Association, 434-435  
 Studio:  
   Fine Arts, 380-381  
 Subject Codes, summary of, 507  
 Supplementary courses, *see* Preparatory courses

## T

Telephones, 433  
 Terms, 61  
   dates, 9-14  
 Theses, 84  
   *see also* the Regulations for individual degrees  
 Texts, prescribed, 1991, 489-506  
 Theology, 405, 406-410, 411-414  
 Timetables, 1991, 436-457  
   Enrolment, 1991, 75-77  
   Lecture, 1991, 436-457  
   Laboratory, 1991, 458-460  
 Transfer from another NZ University, 59, 75  
 Transitional Certificate, 424  
 Tuition Fees, 88-90  
 Tutoring in Maths, 239  
 Tutoring in Science, 252

## U

UniServices Ltd, 431  
 University (Other) Intermediate Courses, 425  
 University of Auckland Foundation, 5  
 University of Auckland Act 1961, 471-472  
 Unsatisfactory Progress, 65

## V

Vice-Chancellor's Special Powers, 70

## W

Welfare Services, 432-433  
 Wellesley Programme, 95-96  
 Withdrawals from course, paper or subject, 63-64

## Y

## Z

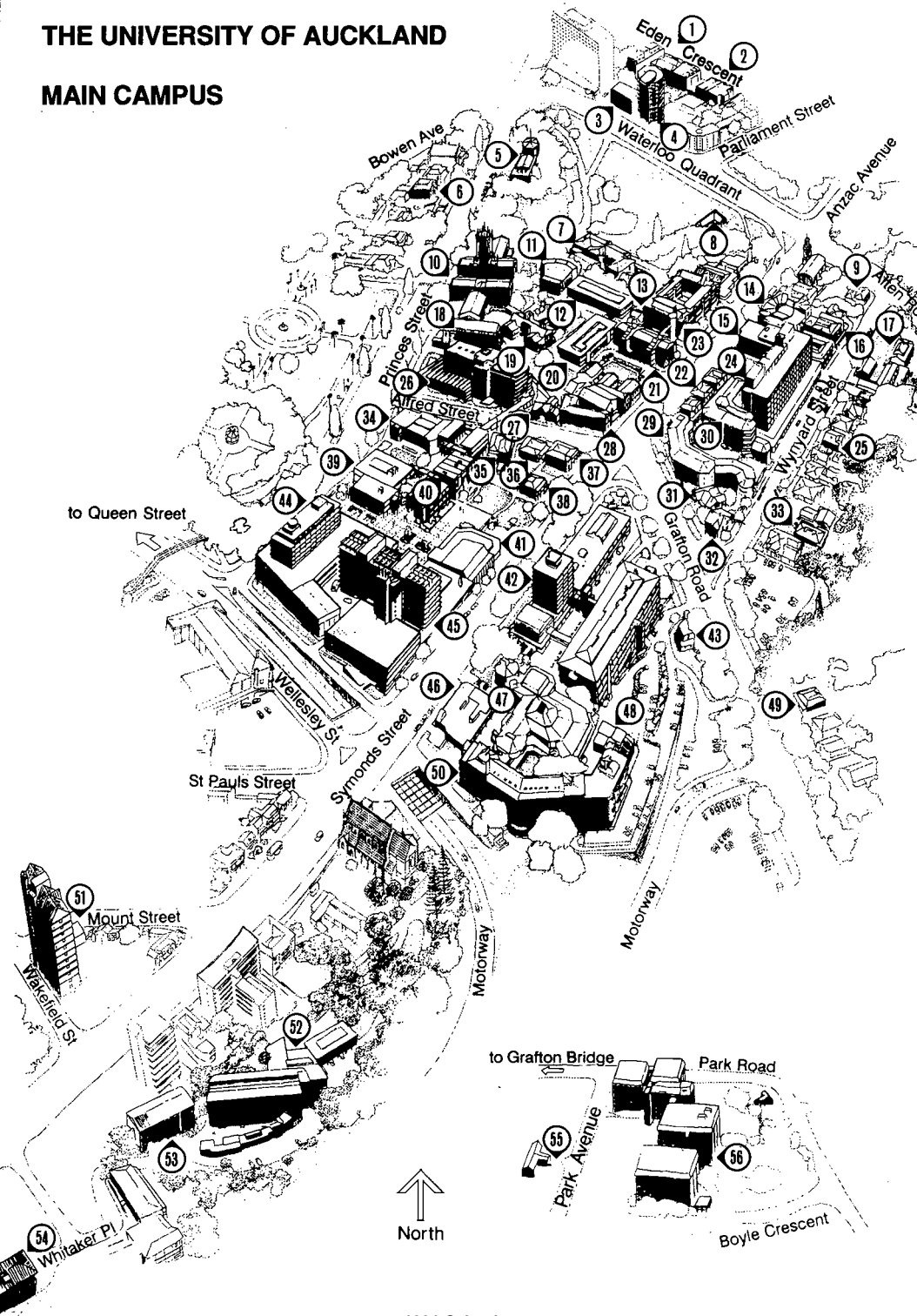
Zoology, Department of, 252-255  
 Zoology (McGregor) Museum, 255

---

*Editing:* Vaughan Preece, Richard Bolley  
*Pagemaking:* Margaret Janes, with assistance from  
 Pearl Chaly, Lesley Cavanagh, Neville Ryan, Page Makers Ltd, Uniprint Auckland  
*Printing:* Sovereign Print, Riccarton, Christchurch  
 (Ken Smith, Regional Sales Manager - Auckland)

THE UNIVERSITY OF AUCKLAND

MAIN CAMPUS





# KEY TO CAMPUS MAP

|  |       |
|--|-------|
| Academic Registry                      | No 18 |
| Accounting & Finance                   | 29    |
| Acoustics                              | 48    |
| Alumni Office                          | 11    |
| Anthropology                           | 24    |
| Architecture                           | 47    |
| Art History                            | 38    |
| Asian Languages & Literatures          | 37    |
| Auckland Uniservices Ltd               | 42    |
| Auckland University Press              | 43    |
| Audio Visual Centre                    | 45    |
| Bank of New Zealand                    | 19    |
| Biochemistry                           | 45    |
| Bookshop                               | 40    |
| Botany                                 | 23    |
| Careers Advisory Service               | 11    |
| Cashier                                | 10    |
| Catholic Chaplains                     | 3     |
| Cellular & Molecular Biology           | 23    |
| Centre for Information Science         | 12    |
| Centre for Pacific Studies             | 25    |
| Chapel & Chaplains                     | 5     |
| Chemistry                              | 45    |
| Childcare Centre                       | 55    |
| Chinese                                | 37    |
| Classics & Ancient History             | 9     |
| Commerce                               | 29    |
| Commercial Law                         | 28    |
| Computer Centre                        | 46    |
| Computer Science                       | 44    |
| Conference Centre                      | 47    |
| Continuing Education                   | 10    |
| Creche                                 | 33    |
| Custodians                             | 45    |
| Drama Theatre                          | 30    |
| Economics                              | 28    |
| Education                              | 4     |
| Engineering                            | 42    |
| English                                | 30    |
| Environmental Science                  | 15    |
| Equal Employment Opportunities         | 11    |
| Finance Registry                       | 10    |
| Fine Arts                              | 52    |
| French                                 | 30    |
| Geography                              | 15    |
| Geology                                | 45    |
| Geothermal Institute                   | 50    |
| Germanic Languages & Literature        | 32    |
| Graduate School of Business            | 29    |
| Grounds Dept                           | 8     |
| Higher Education Research Office       | 4     |
| History                                | 16    |
| Human Sciences Building                | 24    |
| Indonesian                             | 37    |
| Information & Public Affairs           | 10    |
| Italian                                | 30    |
| Japanese                               | 37    |
| Korean                                 | 37    |
| Language Laboratories B & D            | 26    |
| Language Laboratories 1 & 2            | 31    |
| Language Laboratories 3, 4 & 5         | 30    |
| Law                                    | 26    |
| Lecture Theatres:                      |       |
| Architecture (ALR)                     | 50    |
| Botany (BotLT)                         | 21    |
| Cellular & Molecular Biology (CMBiolT) | 23    |
| Chemistry (Chem)                       | 45    |
| Conference Centre                      | 47    |
| Engineering (Eng)                      | 42    |
| Human Sciences (HSB)                   | 24    |
| Library (Lib)                          | 26    |
| Mathematics (MLT)                      | 44    |
| Medical                                | 56    |

|  |       |
|--|-------|
| Old Arts (OA)                            | No 10 |
| Old Choral Hall (OCH)                    | 28    |
| Physics (PLT)                            | 44    |
| Upper & Lower (ULT & LLT)                | 11    |
| Zoology (ZoolT)                          | 21    |
| Liaison Office                           | 13    |
| Libraries                                |       |
| General                                  | 26    |
| Architecture                             | 47    |
| Asian Languages & Literatures            | 26    |
| Audio Visual                             | 30    |
| Biological Sciences                      | 23    |
| Continuing Education                     | 10    |
| Engineering                              | 42    |
| Fine Arts                                | 52    |
| Geography                                | 15    |
| Geology                                  | 45    |
| Law                                      | 26    |
| Maori Studies (Te Hukatai)               | 17    |
| Medicine                                 | 56    |
| Music                                    | 14    |
| Science                                  | 44    |
| Maident Arts Centre                      | 34    |
| Main Stores - Services                   | 30    |
| Maintenance                              | 24    |
| Management Science & Information Systems | 29    |
| Management Studies & Labour Relations    | 29    |
| Maori Studies                            | 17    |
| Marae                                    | 17    |
| Marketing & International Business       | 29    |
| Mathematics & Statistics                 | 44    |
| Medical School                           | 56    |
| Music                                    | 14    |
| Music - Piano Studies                    | 49    |
| Newman Hall                              | 3     |
| "Number Fourteen"                        | 53    |
| NZ Federation of University Women        | 7     |
| Olds Arts Building                       | 10    |
| Old Choral Hall                          | 28    |
| Old Government House                     | 7     |
| Optometry (1991 location)                | 56    |
| O'Rourke Hall                            | 51    |
| Pharmacy & Post Office Agency            | 19    |
| Philosophy                               | 27    |
| Photographers                            | 45    |
| Physio-Chemistry                         | 56    |
| Physics                                  | 44    |
| Planning                                 | 50    |
| Political Studies                        | 22    |
| Property                                 | 50    |
| Psychology                               | 24    |
| Recreation Centre                        | 41    |
| Registry                                 | 18    |
| Romance Languages                        | 30    |
| Russian                                  | 24    |
| Scandinavian Studies                     | 32    |
| Senior Common Room                       | 7     |
| Sociology                                | 24    |
| Spanish                                  | 30    |
| Staff Development Officer                | 4     |
| Staff Registry                           | 18    |
| Student Accommodation                    | 10    |
| Student Cafeteria/Student Union          | 39    |
| Student Cafeteria/Human Sciences         | 24    |
| Student Counsellors                      | 19    |
| Student Health                           | 19    |
| Student Learning Unit                    | 19    |
| Student Union                            | 40    |
| Thomas Building                          | 23    |
| Undergraduate Reading Room               | 7     |
| University Club                          | 6     |
| Works & Services Registry                | 28    |
| Zoology                                  | 23    |

## SHORT INDEX

|  |            |
|--|------------|
| <b>OFFICERS AND STAFF .....</b>                | <b>16</b>  |
| <b>GENERAL STATUTES AND REGULATIONS.....</b>   | <b>58</b>  |
| <b>PRE-ENROLMENT AND ENROLMENT .....</b>       | <b>71</b>  |
| <b>FEES .....</b>                              | <b>86</b>  |
| <b>COURSE REGULATIONS AND PRESCRIPTIONS</b>    |            |
| <b>ARTS.....</b>                               | <b>97</b>  |
| <b>SCIENCE.....</b>                            | <b>189</b> |
| <b>COMMERCE.....</b>                           | <b>262</b> |
| <b>LAW .....</b>                               | <b>287</b> |
| <b>MUSIC .....</b>                             | <b>303</b> |
| <b>ARCHITECTURE PROPERTY AND PLANNING ..</b>   | <b>320</b> |
| <b>ENGINEERING .....</b>                       | <b>347</b> |
| <b>FINE ARTS .....</b>                         | <b>375</b> |
| <b>MEDICINE AND HUMAN BIOLOGY .....</b>        | <b>382</b> |
| <b>JOINT BOARDS OF STUDY .....</b>             | <b>404</b> |
| <b>HIGHER DEGREES.....</b>                     | <b>415</b> |
| <b>CERTIFICATE OF PROFICIENCY .....</b>        | <b>423</b> |
| <b>GENERAL INFORMATION .....</b>               | <b>429</b> |
| <b>LECTURE AND LABORATORY TIMETABLES .....</b> | <b>436</b> |
| <b>SCHOLARSHIPS AND AWARDS .....</b>           | <b>461</b> |
| <b>LEGISLATION.....</b>                        | <b>471</b> |
| <b>PRESCRIBED TEXTS.....</b>                   | <b>488</b> |
| <b>CAMPUS DIRECTORY .....</b>                  | <b>508</b> |
| <b>INDEX TO CALENDAR .....</b>                 | <b>511</b> |
| <b>CAMPUS MAP .....</b>                        | <b>516</b> |